

# FD2 Series FlexDraper® Combine Header with FM200 Float Module

Operator's Manual

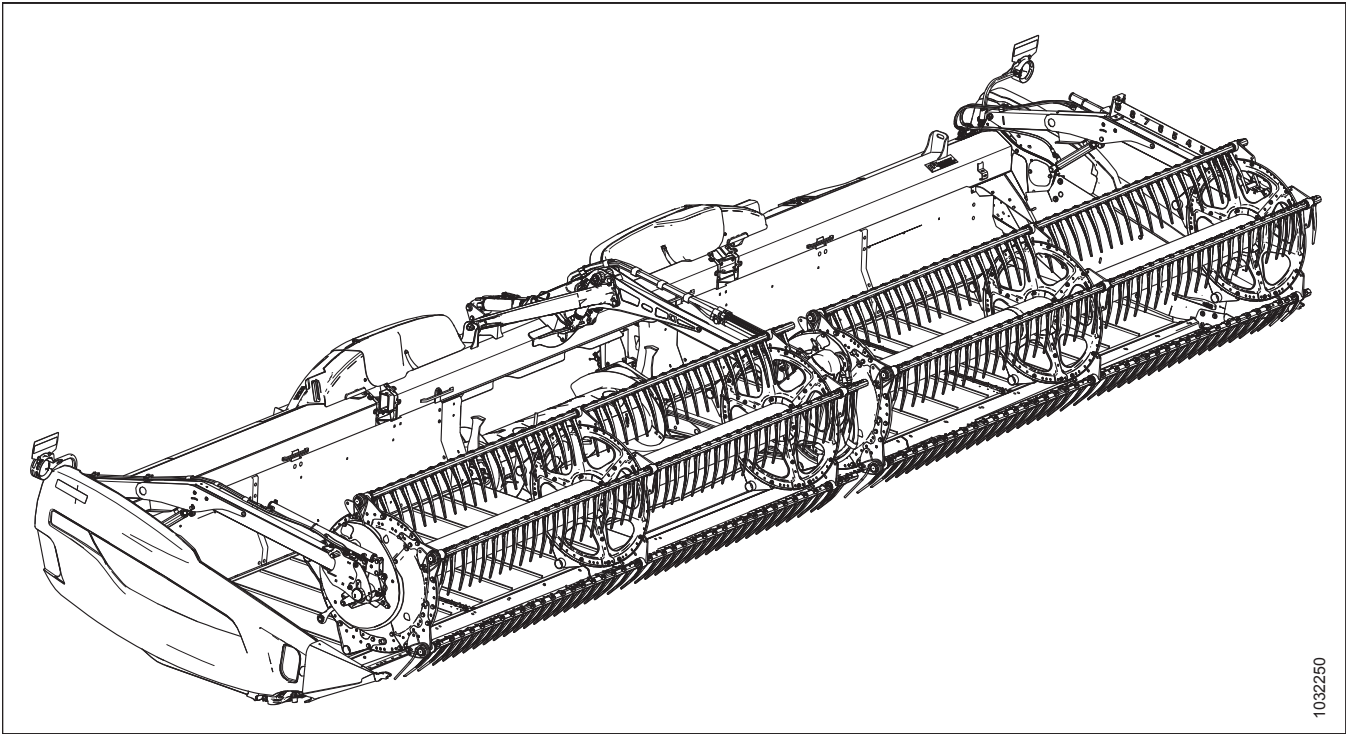
215394 Revision A

Original Instruction

*Featuring MacDon FLEX-FLOAT Technology™*

*The Harvesting Specialists.*

FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header




Published: December 2020

© 2020 MacDon Industries, Ltd.

The information in this publication is based on the information available and in effect at the time of printing. MacDon Industries, Ltd. makes no representation or warranty of any kind, whether expressed or implied, with respect to the information in this publication. MacDon Industries, Ltd. reserves the right to make changes at any time without notice.

# Declaration of Conformity

 <h2 style="margin: 0;">EC Declaration of Conformity</h2>	
<p>[1] <b>MacDon</b>                  MacDon Industries Ltd.                  680 Moray Street,                  Winnipeg, Manitoba, Canada                  R3J 3S3</p>	<p>[4] As per Shipping Document</p> <p>[5] September 30, 2020</p>
<p>[2] Combine Header</p> <p>[3] MacDon FD2 Series</p>	<p>[6] _____                  Christoph Martens                  Product Integrity</p>

EN	BG	CZ	DA
<p>We, [1]</p> <p>Declare, that the product:</p> <p>Machine Type: [2]</p> <p>Name &amp; Model: [3]</p> <p>Serial Number(s): [4]</p> <p>fulfils all the relevant provisions of the Directive 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Harmonized standards used, as referred to in Article 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Place and date of declaration: [5]</p> <p>Identity and signature of the person empowered to draw up the declaration: [6]</p> <p>Name and address of the person authorized to compile the technical file:</p> <p>Benedikt von Riedesel                  General Manager, MacDon Europe GmbH                  Hagenaauer Straße 59                  65203 Wiesbaden (Germany)                  bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Ние, [1]</p> <p>декларираме, че следният продукт:</p> <p>Тип машина: [2]</p> <p>Наименование и модел: [3]</p> <p>Сериен номер(а) [4]</p> <p>отговаря на всички приложими разпоредби на директива 2006/42/ЕО.</p> <p>Използвани са следните хармонизирани стандарти според чл. 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Място и дата на декларацията: [5]</p> <p>Име и подпис на лицето, упълномощено да изготви декларацията: [6]</p> <p>Име и адрес на лицето, упълномощено да състави техническия файл:</p> <p>Бенедикт фон Рийдесел                  Управител, MacDon Europe GmbH                  Hagenaauer Straße 59                  65203 Wiesbaden (Германия)                  bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>My, [1]</p> <p>Prohlašujeme, že produkt:</p> <p>Typ zařízení: [2]</p> <p>Název a model: [3]</p> <p>Sériové(á) číslo(a): [4]</p> <p>splňuje všechna relevantní ustanovení směrnice 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Byly použity harmonizované standardy, jak je uvedeno v článku 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Místo a datum prohlášení: [5]</p> <p>Identita a podpis osoby oprávněné k vydání prohlášení: [6]</p> <p>Jméno a adresa osoby oprávněné k vyplnění technického souboru:</p> <p>Benedikt von Riedesel                  generální ředitel, MacDon Europe GmbH                  Hagenaauer Straße 59                  65203 Wiesbaden (Německo)                  bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Vi, [1]</p> <p>erklærer, at produktet:</p> <p>Maskintype [2]</p> <p>Navn og model: [3]</p> <p>Serienummer (-numre): [4]</p> <p>Opfylder alle bestemmelser i direktiv 2006/42/EF.</p> <p>Anvendte harmoniserede standarder, som henviser til i paragraf 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Sted og dato for erklæringen: [5]</p> <p>Identitet på og underskrift fra den person, som er bemyndiget til at udarbejde erklæringen: [6]</p> <p>Navn og adresse på den person, som er bemyndiget til at udarbejde den tekniske fil:</p> <p>Benedikt von Riedesel                  Direktør, MacDon Europe GmbH                  Hagenaauer Straße 59                  D-65203 Wiesbaden (Tyskland)                  bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>

DE	ES	ET	FR
<p>Wir, [1]</p> <p>Erklären hiermit, dass das Produkt:</p> <p>Maschinentyp: [2]</p> <p>Name &amp; Modell: [3]</p> <p>Seriennummer (n): [4]</p> <p>alle relevanten Vorschriften der Richtlinie 2006/42/EG erfüllt.</p> <p>Harmonisierte Standards wurden, wie in folgenden Artikeln angegeben, verwendet 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Ort und Datum der Erklärung: [5]</p> <p>Name und Unterschrift der Person, die dazu befugt ist, die Erklärung auszustellen: [6]</p> <p>Name und Anschrift der Person, die dazu berechtigt ist, die technischen Unterlagen zu erstellen:</p> <p>Benedikt von Riedesel                  General Manager, MacDon Europe GmbH                  Hagenaauer Straße 59                  65203 Wiesbaden                  bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Nosotros [1]</p> <p>declaramos que el producto:</p> <p>Tipo de máquina: [2]</p> <p>Nombre y modelo: [3]</p> <p>Números de serie: [4]</p> <p>cumple con todas las disposiciones pertinentes de la directriz 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Se utilizaron normas armonizadas, según lo dispuesto en el artículo 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Lugar y fecha de la declaración: [5]</p> <p>Identidad y firma de la persona facultada para draw redactar la declaración: [6]</p> <p>Nombre y dirección de la persona autorizada para elaborar el expediente técnico:</p> <p>Benedikt von Riedesel                  Gerente general - MacDon Europe GmbH                  Hagenaauer Straße 59                  65203 Wiesbaden (Alemania)                  bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Meie, [1]</p> <p>deklareerime, et toode</p> <p>Seadme tüüp: [2]</p> <p>Nimi ja mudel: [3]</p> <p>Seerianumberid: [4]</p> <p>vastab kõigile direktiivi 2006/42/EÜ asjakohastele sätetele.</p> <p>Kasutatud on järgnevaid harmoniseeritud standardeid, millele on viidatud ka punktis 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Deklaratsiooni koht ja kuupäev: [5]</p> <p>Deklaratsiooni koostamiseks volitatud isiku nimi ja allkiri: [6]</p> <p>Tehnilise dokumendi koostamiseks volitatud isiku nimi ja aadress:</p> <p>Benedikt von Riedesel                  Peadirektor, MacDon Europe GmbH                  Hagenaauer Straße 59                  65203 Wiesbaden (Saksamaa)                  bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Nous soussignés, [1]</p> <p>Déclarons que le produit :</p> <p>Type de machine : [2]</p> <p>Nom et modèle : [3]</p> <p>Numéro(s) de série : [4]</p> <p>Est conforme à toutes les dispositions pertinentes de la directive 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Utilisation des normes harmonisées, comme indiqué dans l'Article 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Lieu et date de la déclaration : [5]</p> <p>Identité et signature de la personne ayant reçu le pouvoir de rédiger cette déclaration : [6]</p> <p>Nom et adresse de la personne autorisée à constituer le dossier technique :</p> <p>Benedikt von Riedesel                  Directeur général, MacDon Europe GmbH                  Hagenaauer Straße 59                  65203 Wiesbaden (Allemagne)                  bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>

# EC Declaration of Conformity

IT	HU	LT	LV
<p>Noi, [1] Dichiariamo che il prodotto: Tipo di macchina: [2] Nome e modello: [3] Numero(i) di serie: [4] soddisfa tutte le disposizioni rilevanti della direttiva 2006/42/CE.</p> <p>Utilizzo degli standard armonizzati, come indicato nell'Articolo 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Luogo e data della dichiarazione: [5] Nome e firma della persona autorizzata a redigere la dichiarazione: [6] Nome e persona autorizzata a compilare il file tecnico: Benedikt von Riedesel General Manager, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Germania) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Mi, [1] Ezennel kijelentjük, hogy a következő termék: Gép típusa: [2] Név és modell: [3] Szériaszám(ok): [4] teljesíti a következő irányelv összes vonatkozó előírásait: 2006/42/EK.</p> <p>Az alábbi harmonizált szabványok kerültek alkalmazásra a 7(2) cikkely szerint:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>A nyilatkozattétel ideje és helye: [5] Azon személy kiléte és aláírása, aki jogosult a nyilatkozat elkészítésére: [6] Azon személy neve és aláírása, aki felhatalmazott a műszaki dokumentáció összeállítására: Benedikt von Riedesel Vezérigazgató, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Németország) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Mes, [1] Pareiškiamė, kad šis produktas: Mašinos tipas: [2] Pavadinimas ir modelis: [3] Serijos numeris (-iai): [4] atitinka taikomus reikalavimus pagal Direktyvą 2006/42/EB.</p> <p>Naudojami harmonizuoti standartai, kai nurodoma straipsnyje 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Deklaracijos vieta ir data: [5] Asmens tapatybės duomenys ir parašas asmens, atitinkantis šią deklaraciją: [6] Vardas ir pavardė asmens, kuris įgaliotas sudaryti šį techninį failą: Benedikt von Riedesel Generalinis direktorius, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Vokietija) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Mēs, [1] Deklarējam, ka produkts: Mašīnas tips: [2] Nosaukums un modelis: [3] Sērijas numurs(-i): [4] Atbilst visām būtiskajām Direktīvas 2006/42/EB prasībām.</p> <p>Piemēroti šādi saskaņotie standarti, kā minēts 7. pantā 2. punktā:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Deklarācijas parakstīšanas vieta un datums: [5] Tās personas vārds, uzvārds un paraksts, kas ir pilnvarota sagatavot šo deklarāciju: [6] Tās personas vārds, uzvārds un adrese, kas ir pilnvarota sastādīt tehnisko dokumentāciju: Benedikts fon Rīdzelis Generāldirektors, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Vācija) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>
<p>Wij, [1] Verklaren dat het product: Machinetype: [2] Naam en model: [3] Serienummer(s): [4] voldoet aan alle relevante bepalingen van de Richtlijn 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Geharmoniseerde normen toegepast, zoals vermeld in Artikel 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Plaats en datum van verklaring: [5] Naam en handtekening van de bevoegde persoon om de verklaring op te stellen: [6] Naam en adres van de geautoriseerde persoon om het technisch dossier samen te stellen: Benedikt von Riedesel Algemeen directeur, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Duitsland) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>My nižej podpisani, [1] Oświadczamy, że produkt: Typ urządzenia: [2] Nazwa i model: [3] Numer serijny/numery seryjne: [4] spełnia wszystkie odpowiednie przepisy dyrektywy 2006/42/WE.</p> <p>Zastosowaliśmy następujące (zharmonizowane) normy zgodnie z artykułem 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Data i miejsce oświadczenia: [5] Imię i nazwisko oraz podpis osoby upoważnionej do przygotowania deklaracji: [6] Imię i nazwisko oraz adres osoby upoważnionej do przygotowania dokumentacji technicznej: Benedikt von Riedesel Dyrektor generalny, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Niemcy) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Nós, [1] Declaramos, que o produto: Tipo de máquina: [2] Nome e Modelo: [3] Número(s) de Série: [4] cumpre todas as disposições relevantes da Directiva 2006/42/CE.</p> <p>Normas harmonizadas aplicadas, conforme referido no Artigo 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Local e data da declaração: [5] Identidade e assinatura da pessoa autorizada a elaborar a declaração: [6] Nome e endereço da pessoa autorizada a compilar o ficheiro técnico: Benedikt von Riedesel Gerente Geral, MacDon Europa Ltda. Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Alemanha) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Noi, [1] Declarăm, că următorul produs: Tipul mașinii: [2] Denumirea și modelul: [3] Număr (numere) serie: [4] corespunde tuturor dispozițiilor esențiale ale directivei 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Au fost aplicate următoarele standarde armonizate conform articolului 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Data și locul declarației: [5] Identitatea și semnătura persoanei împuternicite pentru întocmirea declarației: [6] Numele și semnătura persoanei autorizate pentru întocmirea cărții tehnice: Benedikt von Riedesel Manager General, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Germania) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>
<p>Mi, [1] Izjavljujemo da proizvod Tip mašine: [2] Naziv i model: [3] Serijski broj(ovi): [4] Ispunjava sve relevantne odredbe direktive 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Korišćeni su usklađeni standardi kao što je navedeno u članu 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Datum i mesto izdavanja deklaracije: [5] Identitet i potpis lica ovlašćenog za sastavljanje deklaracije: [6] Ime i adresa osobe ovlašćene za sastavljanje tehničke datoteke: Benedikt von Riedesel Generalni direktor, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Nemačka) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Mi, [1] Intygat att produkten: Maskintyp: [2] Namn och modell: [3] Serienummer: [4] uppfyller alla relevanta villkor i direktivet 2006/42/EG.</p> <p>Harmonierade standarder används, såsom anges i artikel 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Plats och datum för intyget: [5] Identitet och signatur för person med befogenhet att upprätta intyget: [6] Namn och adress för person behörig att upprätta den tekniska dokumentationen: Benedikt von Riedesel Administrativ chef, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Tyskland) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Mi, [1] izjavljamo, da izdelek: Vrsta stroja: [2] Ime in model: [3] Serijska/-e številka/-e: [4] ustreza vsem zadanim določbam Direktive 2006/42/ES.</p> <p>Uporabljeni usklajeni standardi, kot je navedeno v členu 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Kraj in datum izjave: [5] Istovetnost in podpis osebe, opolnomočene za pripravo izjave: [6] Ime in naslov osebe, pooblaščenca za pripravo tehnične datoteke: Benedikt von Riedesel Generalni direktor, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Nemčija) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>My, [1] týmto prehlasujeme, že tento výrobok: Typ zariadenia: [2] Názov a model: [3] Výrobné číslo: [4] splňa príslušné ustanovenia a základné požiadavky smernice č. 2006/42/ES.</p> <p>Použitie harmonizované normy, ktoré sa uvádzajú v článku č. 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Miesto a dátum prehlásenia: [5] Meno a podpis osoby oprávnenej vypracovať toto prehlásenie: [6] Meno a adresa osoby oprávnenej zostaviť technický súbor: Benedikt von Riedesel Generálny riaditeľ, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Nemecko) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>



# EC Declaration of Conformity

[1] **MacDon**

MacDon Industries Ltd.  
680 Moray Street,  
Winnipeg, Manitoba, Canada  
R3J 3S3

[4] As per Shipping Document

[5] September 30, 2020

[2] Float Module

[6] \_\_\_\_\_

[3] MacDon FM200

Christoph Martens  
Product Integrity

EN	BG	CZ	DA
<p>We, [1]</p> <p>Declare, that the product:</p> <p>Machine Type: [2]</p> <p>Name &amp; Model: [3]</p> <p>Serial Number(s): [4]</p> <p>fulfils all the relevant provisions of the Directive 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Harmonized standards used, as referred to in Article 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Place and date of declaration: [5]</p> <p>Identity and signature of the person empowered to draw up the declaration: [6]</p> <p>Name and address of the person authorized to compile the technical file:</p> <p>Benedikt von Riedesel General Manager, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Germany) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Ние, [1]</p> <p>декларираме, че следният продукт:</p> <p>Тип машина: [2]</p> <p>Наименование и модел: [3]</p> <p>Серийен номер(а) [4]</p> <p>отговаря на всички приложими разпоредби на директива 2006/42/ЕО.</p> <p>Използвани са следните хармонизирани стандарти според чл. 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Място и дата на декларацията: [5]</p> <p>Име и подпис на лицето, упълномощено да изготви декларацията: [6]</p> <p>Име и адрес на лицето, упълномощено да състави техническия файл:</p> <p>Бенедикт фон Рийдесел Управител, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Германия) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>My, [1]</p> <p>Prohlašujeme, že produkt:</p> <p>Typ zařízení: [2]</p> <p>Název a model: [3]</p> <p>Sériové(á) číslo(a): [4]</p> <p>spĺňuje všechna relevantní ustanovení směrnice 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Byly použity harmonizované standardy, jak je uvedeno v článku 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Místo a datum prohlášení: [5]</p> <p>Identita a podpis osoby oprávněné k vydání prohlášení: [6]</p> <p>Jméno a adresa osoby oprávněné k vyplnění technického souboru:</p> <p>Benedikt von Riedesel generální ředitel, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Německo) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Vi, [1]</p> <p>erklærer, at produktet:</p> <p>Maskintype [2]</p> <p>Navn og model: [3]</p> <p>Serienummer (-numre): [4]</p> <p>Opfylder alle bestemmelser i direktiv 2006/42/EF.</p> <p>Anvendte harmoniserede standarder, som henviser til i paragraf 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Sted og dato for erklæringen: [5]</p> <p>Identitet på og underskrift fra den person, som er bemyndiget til at udarbejde erklæringen: [6]</p> <p>Navn og adresse på den person, som er bemyndiget til at udarbejde den tekniske fil:</p> <p>Benedikt von Riedesel Direktør, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 D-65203 Wiesbaden (Tyskland) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>
DE	ES	ET	FR
<p>Wir, [1]</p> <p>Erklären hiermit, dass das Produkt:</p> <p>Maschinentyp: [2]</p> <p>Name &amp; Modell: [3]</p> <p>Seriennummer (n): [4]</p> <p>alle relevanten Vorschriften der Richtlinie 2006/42/EG erfüllt.</p> <p>Harmonisierte Standards wurden, wie in folgenden Artikeln angegeben, verwendet 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Ort und Datum der Erklärung: [5]</p> <p>Name und Unterschrift der Person, die dazu befugt ist, die Erklärung auszustellen: [6]</p> <p>Name und Anschrift der Person, die dazu berechtigt ist, die technischen Unterlagen zu erstellen:</p> <p>Benedikt von Riedesel General Manager, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Nosotros [1]</p> <p>declaramos que el producto:</p> <p>Tipo de máquina: [2]</p> <p>Nombre y modelo: [3]</p> <p>Números de serie: [4]</p> <p>cumple con todas las disposiciones pertinentes de la directriz 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Se utilizaron normas armonizadas, según lo dispuesto en el artículo 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Lugar y fecha de la declaración: [5]</p> <p>Identidad y firma de la persona facultada para draw redactar la declaración: [6]</p> <p>Nombre y dirección de la persona autorizada para elaborar el expediente técnico:</p> <p>Benedikt von Riedesel Gerente general - MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Alemania) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Meie, [1]</p> <p>deklareerime, et toode</p> <p>Seadme tüüp: [2]</p> <p>Nimi ja mudel: [3]</p> <p>Seerianumbrid: [4]</p> <p>vastab kõigile direktiivi 2006/42/EÜ asjakohastele sätetele.</p> <p>Kasutatud on järgnevaid harmoniseeritud standardeid, millele on viidatud ka punktis 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Deklaratsiooni koht ja kuupäev: [5]</p> <p>Deklaratsiooni koostamiseks volitatud isiku nimi ja allkiri: [6]</p> <p>Tehnilise dokumendi koostamiseks volitatud isiku nimi ja aadress:</p> <p>Benedikt von Riedesel Peadirektor, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Saksamaa) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Nous soussignés, [1]</p> <p>Déclarons que le produit :</p> <p>Type de machine : [2]</p> <p>Nom et modèle : [3]</p> <p>Numéro(s) de série : [4]</p> <p>Est conforme à toutes les dispositions pertinentes de la directive 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Utilisation des normes harmonisées, comme indiqué dans l'Article 7(2):</p> <p>EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Lieu et date de la déclaration : [5]</p> <p>Identité et signature de la personne ayant reçu le pouvoir de rédiger cette déclaration : [6]</p> <p>Nom et adresse de la personne autorisée à constituer le dossier technique :</p> <p>Benedikt von Riedesel Directeur général, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Allemagne) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>

# EC Declaration of Conformity

IT	HU	LT	LV
<p>Noi, [1] Dichiariamo che il prodotto: Tipo di macchina: [2] Nome e modello: [3] Numero(i) di serie: [4] soddisfa tutte le disposizioni rilevanti della direttiva 2006/42/CE.</p> <p>Utilizzo degli standard armonizzati, come indicato nell'Articolo 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Luogo e data della dichiarazione: [5] Nome e firma della persona autorizzata a redigere la dichiarazione: [6] Nome e persona autorizzata a compilare il file tecnico: Benedikt von Riedesel General Manager, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Germania) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Mi, [1] Ezennel kijelentjük, hogy a következő termék: Gép típusa: [2] Név és modell: [3] Szériaszám(ok): [4] teljesíti a következő irányelv összes vonatkozó előírásait: 2006/42/EK.</p> <p>Az alábbi harmonizált szabványok kerültek alkalmazásra a 7(2) cikkely szerint:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>A nyilatkozattétel ideje és helye: [5] Azon személy kiléte és aláírása, aki jogosult a nyilatkozat elkészítésére: [6] Azon személy neve és aláírása, aki felhatalmazott a műszaki dokumentáció összeállítására: Benedikt von Riedesel Vezérigazgató, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Németország) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Mes, [1] Pareiškiami, kad šis produktas: Mašinos tipas: [2] Pavadinimas ir modelis: [3] Serijos numeris (-iai): [4] atitinka taikomus reikalavimus pagal Direktyvą 2006/42/EB.</p> <p>Naudojami harmonizuoti standartai, kai nurodoma straipsnyje 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Deklaracijos vieta ir data: [5] Asmens tapatybės duomenys ir parašas asmens, atitinkantis šią deklaraciją: [6] Vardas ir pavardė asmens, kuris įgaliotas sudaryti šį techninį failą: Benedikt von Riedesel Generalinis direktorius, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Vokietija) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Mēs, [1] Deklarējam, ka produkts: Mašīnas tips: [2] Nosaukums un modelis: [3] Sērijas numurs(-i): [4] Atbilst visām būtiskajām Direktīvas 2006/42/EB prasībām.</p> <p>Piemēroti šādi saskaņotie standarti, kā minēts 7. pantā 2. punktā:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Deklarācijas parakstīšanas vieta un datums: [5] Tās personas vārds, uzvārds un paraksts, kas ir pilnvarota sagatavot šo deklarāciju: [6] Tās personas vārds, uzvārds un adrese, kas ir pilnvarota sastādīt tehnisko dokumentāciju: Benedikts fon Rīdzelis Generāldirektors, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Vācija) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>
<p>Wij, [1] Verklaren dat het product: Machinetype: [2] Naam en model: [3] Serienummer(s): [4] voldoet aan alle relevante bepalingen van de Richtlijn 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Geharmoniseerde normen toegepast, zoals vermeld in Artikel 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Plaats en datum van verklaring: [5] Naam en handtekening van de bevoegde persoon om de verklaring op te stellen: [6] Naam en adres van de geautoriseerde persoon om het technisch dossier samen te stellen: Benedikt von Riedesel Algemeen directeur, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Duitsland) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>My niżej podpisani, [1] Oświadczamy, że produkt: Typ urządzenia: [2] Nazwa i model: [3] Numer serijny/numery seryjne: [4] spełnia wszystkie odpowiednie przepisy dyrektywy 2006/42/WE.</p> <p>Zastosowaliśmy następujące (zharmonizowane) normy zgodnie z artykułem 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Data i miejsce oświadczenia: [5] Imię i nazwisko oraz podpis osoby upoważnionej do przygotowania deklaracji: [6] Imię i nazwisko oraz adres osoby upoważnionej do przygotowania dokumentacji technicznej: Benedikt von Riedesel Dyrektor generalny, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Niemcy) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Nós, [1] Declaramos, que o produto: Tipo de máquina: [2] Nome e Modelo: [3] Número(s) de Série: [4] cumpre todas as disposições relevantes da Directiva 2006/42/CE.</p> <p>Normas harmonizadas aplicadas, conforme referido no Artigo 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Local e data da declaração: [5] Identidade e assinatura da pessoa autorizada a elaborar a declaração: [6] Nome e endereço da pessoa autorizada a compilar o ficheiro técnico: Benedikt von Riedesel Gerente Geral, MacDon Europa Ltda. Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Alemanha) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Noi, [1] Declarăm, că următorul produs: Tipul mașinii: [2] Denumirea și modelul: [3] Număr (numere) serie: [4] corespunde tuturor dispozițiilor esențiale ale directivei 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Au fost aplicate următoarele standarde armonizate conform articolului 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Data și locul declarației: [5] Identitatea și semnătura persoanei împuternicite pentru întocmirea declarației: [6] Numele și semnătura persoanei autorizate pentru întocmirea cărții tehnice: Benedikt von Riedesel Manager General, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Germania) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>
<p>Mi, [1] Izjavljujemo da proizvod Tip mašine: [2] Naziv i model: [3] Serijski broj(ovi): [4] Ispunjava sve relevantne odredbe direktive 2006/42/EC.</p> <p>Korišćeni su usklađeni standardi kao što je navedeno u članu 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Datum i mesto izdavanja deklaracije: [5] Identitet i potpis lica ovlašćenog za sastavljanje deklaracije: [6] Ime i adresa osobe ovlašćene za sastavljanje tehničke datoteke: Benedikt von Riedesel Generalni direktor, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Nemačka) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Mi, [1] Intygat att produkten: Maskintyp: [2] Namn och modell: [3] Serienummer: [4] uppfyller alla relevanta villkor i direktivet 2006/42/EG.</p> <p>Harmonierade standarder används, såsom anges i artikel 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Plats och datum för intyget: [5] Identitet och signatur för person med befogenhet att upprätta intyget: [6] Namn och adress för person behörig att upprätta den tekniska dokumentationen: Benedikt von Riedesel Administrativ chef, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Tyskland) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>Mi, [1] izjavljamo, da izdelek: Vrsta stroja: [2] Ime in model: [3] Serijska/-e številka/-e: [4] ustreza vsem zadanim določbam Direktive 2006/42/ES.</p> <p>Uporabljeni usklajeni standardi, kot je navedeno v členu 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Kraj in datum izjave: [5] Istovetnost in podpis osebe, opolnomočene za pripravo izjave: [6] Ime in naslov osebe, pooblaščenca za pripravo tehnične datoteke: Benedikt von Riedesel Generalni direktor, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Nemčija) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>	<p>My, [1] týmto prehlasujeme, že tento výrobok: Typ zariadenia: [2] Názov a model: [3] Výrobné číslo: [4] splňa príslušné ustanovenia a základné požiadavky smernice č. 2006/42/ES.</p> <p>Použitie harmonizované normy, ktoré sa uvádzajú v článku č. 7(2):</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EN ISO 4254-1:2013 EN ISO 4254-7:2009</p> <p>Miesto a dátum prehlásenia: [5] Meno a podpis osoby oprávnenej vypracovať toto prehlásenie: [6] Meno a adresa osoby oprávnenej zostaviť technický súbor: Benedikt von Riedesel Generálny riaditeľ, MacDon Europe GmbH Hagenauer Straße 59 65203 Wiesbaden (Nemecko) bvonriedesel@macdon.com</p>

## Introduction

This instructional manual contains information on the FD2 Series FlexDraper® and the FM200 Float Module. It must be used in conjunction with your combine operator's manual.

The FD2 Series FlexDraper® is specially designed to work well in all straight cut conditions, whether cutting on or above the ground, using a three-piece flexible frame to closely follow ground contours. The FM200 Float Module is used to attach an FD2 Series FlexDraper® to most makes and models of combines.

### Carefully read all the material provided before attempting to use the machine.

Use this manual as your first source of information about the machine. If you follow the instructions provided, your header will work well for many years. Contact your Dealer if you need assistance, information, or additional copies of this manual.

MacDon provides warranty for Customers who operate and maintain their equipment as described in this manual. A copy of the MacDon Industries Limited Warranty Policy, which explains this warranty, should have been provided to you by your Dealer. Damage resulting from any of the following conditions will void the warranty:

- Accident
- Misuse
- Abuse
- Improper maintenance or neglect
- Abnormal or extraordinary use of the machine
- Failure to use the machine, equipment, component, or part in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions

The following conventions are used in this document:

- Right and left are determined from the operator's position. The front of the header faces the crop; the back of the header attaches to the float module and combine.
- Unless otherwise noted, use the standard torque values provided in Chapter [8.1 Torque Specifications, page 661](#).

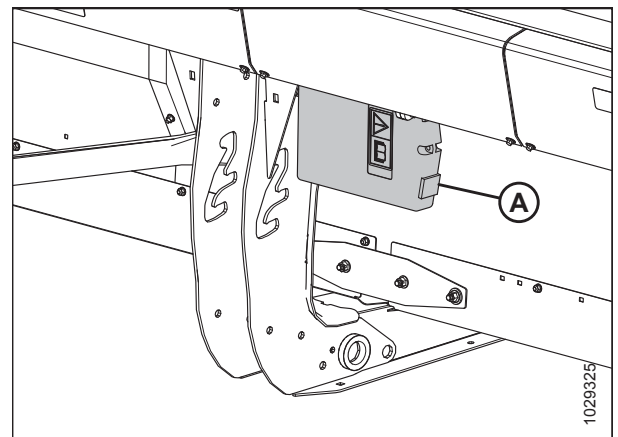
When setting up the machine or making adjustments, review and follow the recommended machine settings in all relevant MacDon publications. Failure to do so may compromise machine function and machine life and may result in a hazardous situation.

The Table of Contents and Index will guide you to specific areas of this manual. Study the Table of Contents to familiarize yourself with how the information is organized.

Keep this manual handy for frequent reference and to pass on to new Operators or Owners. The manual storage case (A) is located at the rear of the header, beside the right outer leg.

Call your MacDon Dealer if you need assistance, information, or additional copies of this manual.

This document is available in English, German, and Portuguese.



**Manual Storage Location**

## Summary of Changes

The following list provides an account of major changes from the previous version of this document.

Section	Summary of Change	Internal Use Only
<i>Declaration of Conformity, page i</i>	Updated for 2021.	Tech Pubs
<i>Model and Serial Number, page x</i>	Updated serial number plate location.	ECN 60051
<i>2.2 FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header and FM200 Float Module Specifications, page 21</i>	Updated for 2021.	Tech Pubs
<i>2.3 FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header Dimensions, page 24</i>	Updated for 2021.	Tech Pubs
<i>3.6.2 Header Settings, page 46</i>	Updated topic.	Tech Pubs
<i>3.7 Header Operating Variables, page 61</i>	Updated topic.	Tech Pubs
<i>Adjusting ContourMax™ Wheels with Foot Switch, page 63</i>	Added topic.	Tech Pubs
<i>Adjusting ContourMax™ Wheels with Claas Integration Kit, page 64</i>	Added topic.	ECN 60571
<i>Adjusting ContourMax™ Wheels with John Deere Integration Kit, page 65</i>	Added topic.	ECN 60628
<i>Selecting the Default Function for the Multi-Function Lever Toggle Switch (With Claas Integration Kit), page 66</i>	Added topic.	Tech pubs
<i>Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 70</i>	Added information on how to release the float setting indicator Added header position information.	Product Support
<i>Locking/Unlocking Header Wings, page 75</i>	Updated topic.	Tech Pubs
<i>Operating in Flex Mode, page 78</i>	Updated topic.	Tech Pubs
<i>Disabling Flex Frown Limiter, page 80</i>	Added topic.	Product Support
<i>Enabling Flex Frown Limiter, page 81</i>	Added topic.	Product Support
<i>Checking Wing Balance, page 82</i>	Updated procedure.	ECN 60775
<i>Adjusting Wing Balance, page 89</i>	Updated topic.	Tech Pubs ECN 60775
<i>Optional Reel Drive Sprockets, page 99</i>	Updated topic for two speed reel sprocket. Updated image.	Engineering, ECN 60588
<i>3.7.6 Reel Speed, page 99</i>	Updated topic.	Engineering
<i>3.7.8 Side Draper Speed, page 101</i>	Updated topic.	Engineering
<i>3.7.10 Reel Height, page 105</i>	Updated topic.	Engineering
<i>Repositioning Fore-Aft Cylinders – Triple Reel, page 115</i>	Added topic.	Tech Pubs
<i>Checking and Adjusting Fore-Aft Position Sensor, page 117</i>	Added topic.	Tech Pubs



Section	Summary of Change	Internal Use Only
<i>Checking Upper Cross Auger for Interference, page 126</i>	Added topic.	Tech Pubs
<i>Removing Crop Dividers, page 127</i>	Clarified step and updated image.	Product Support
<i>Optional Rice Divider Rods, page 132</i>	Updated image.	ECN 60570
<i>3.8.5 10 Volt Adapter (MD #B7241) – New Holland Combines Only, page 142</i>	Updated bundle number and image	ECN 59665
<i>Setting up Auto Header Height Control – New Holland CR Series, page 282</i>	Removed content.	Product Support
<i>Moving Left Outboard Wheel From Transport to Working Position – ContourMax™ Option, page 301</i>	Added topic.	Tech Pubs
<i>3.12.3 Converting from Transport to Field Position (Option), page 301</i>	Updated title.	Tech pubs
<i>3.12.4 Converting from Field to Transport Position (Option), page 310</i>	Updated title	Tech pubs
<i>Moving Left Outboard Wheel From Working to Transport Position, page 310</i>	Added topic.	Tech Pubs
Auger Flighting Topics	Removed old auger flighting procedures	Tech Pubs
<i>4.1.1 Narrow Configuration – Auger Flighting, page 324</i>	Added new auger flighting topic.	Tech Pubs
<i>4.1.2 Medium Configuration – Auger Flighting, page 327</i>	Added new auger flighting topic.	Tech Pubs
<i>4.1.3 Wide Configuration – Auger Flighting, page 330</i>	Added new auger flighting topic.	Tech Pubs
<i>4.1.4 Ultra Narrow Configuration – Auger Flighting, page 332</i>	Added new auger flighting topic.	Tech Pubs
<i>4.1.5 Ultra Wide Configuration – Auger Flighting, page 336</i>	Added new auger flighting topic.	Tech Pubs
<i>4.1.6 Removing Bolt-On Flighting, page 337</i>	Added new auger flighting topic.	Tech Pubs
<i>4.1.7 Installing Bolt-On Flighting, page 340</i>	Added new auger flighting topic.	Tech Pubs
<i>4.1.8 Installing Additional Bolt-On Flighting – Ultra Narrow Configuration Only, page 343</i>	Added new auger flighting topic.	Tech Pubs
<i>4.9.1 Detaching Header from FM200 Float Module, page 404</i>	Added trim spring information.	Product Support
<i>4.9.2 Attaching Header to FM200 Float Module, page 408</i>	Added trim spring information. Added cable tie colors. Updated hazard statement Removed steps to raise the reel.	Product Support
<i>4.10 Attaching Side-Hill Driveline to a Combine, page 414</i>	Side-hill information added.	ECN 60423

Section	Summary of Change	Internal Use Only
<i>4.11 Detaching Side-Hill Driveline From a Combine, page 415</i>	Side-hill information added.	ECN 60423
<i>Every 25 Hours, page 425</i>	Added feed deck bearing inspection information.	Engineering
<i>Every 250 Hours, page 432</i>	Added reel bearing greasing.	ECR 60881
<i>Every 500 Hours, page 434</i>	Removed reel bearing greasing.	ECR 60881
<i>5.4.1 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir, page 442</i>	Updated topic	Product Support
<i>5.6.1 Removing Driveline Connecting Float Module to Combine, page 446</i>	Side-hill information added.	ECN 60423
<i>5.6.2 Installing Driveline Connecting Float Module to Combine, page 447</i>	Side-hill information added.	ECN 60423
<i>5.8.6 Spare Knives, page 483</i>	Updated image.	ECN 60579
<i>Adjusting Knife Guards and Guard Bar, page 491</i>	Updated topic with new straightening tool.	ECN 60553
<i>Installing Feed Draper Idler Roller, page 542</i>	Updated images and text.	Product Support
<i>Replacing Feed Draper Idler Roller Bearing, page 544</i>	Updated images and text.	Product Support
<i>5.14.1 Removing Stripper Bars, page 553</i>	Updated topic.	Product Support
<i>5.14.2 Installing Stripper Bars, page 554</i>	Updated topic.	Product Support
<i>5.16.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 572</i>	Updated tables.	Engineering
<i>Measuring Reel Clearance, page 572</i>	Updated topic.	Engineering
<i>5.16.3 Centering Reel, page 579</i>	Updated topic, added image.	Product Support
<i>Tightening Reel Drive Chain, page 607</i>	Updated tool usage for tensioning reel drive chain.	Engineering
<i>5.17.2 Reel Drive Sprocket, page 608</i>	Updated topic.	Product Support
<i>5.17.3 Changing Reel Speed Chain Position with Two Speed Kit Installed, page 610</i>	Added topic.	Product Support
<i>5.17.5 Reel Drive Motor, page 613</i>	Updated reel information	Product Support
<i>Installing Reel Drive Motor, page 614</i>	Updated screw torque.	Product Support
<i>Replacing AGCO Reel Speed Sensor, page 619</i>	Updated sensor gap.	Product Support
<i>Replacing John Deere Reel Speed Sensor, page 620</i>	Updated sensor gap.	Product Support
<i>Replacing CLAAS 400 Series Reel Speed Sensor, page 620</i>	Updated sensor gap.	Product Support
<i>Replacing CLAAS Reel Speed Sensor, page 621</i>	Updated sensor gap.	Product Support
<i>5.18.4 Changing Tow Bar Hitch Connection from Pintle to Clevis, page 625</i>	Added topic.	Tech pubs

<b>Section</b>	<b>Summary of Change</b>	<b>Internal Use Only</b>
<i>5.18.5 Changing Tow Bar Hitch Connection from Clevis to Pintle, page 627</i>	Added topic.	Tech pubs
<i>6.1.4 Rice Divider Rod Kit, page 633</i>	Updated image and bundle number	ECN 60570
<i>6.2.1 Rock Retarder Kit, page 635</i>	Updated bundle numbers.	ECN 59336
<i>6.2.2 VertiBlade™ Vertical Knife Kit, page 635</i>	Added Vertiblade™ hydraulic packaging kits.	ECN 59676
<i>6.4.1 ContourMax™ Contour Wheels Kit, page 638</i>	Added contourmax contour wheels hydraulic packaging kits. Updated image. Corrected naming of product.	ECN 59338 ECN 60247
<i>6.4.2 EasyMove™ Transport System, page 639</i>	Added collector numbers.	ECN 59990
<i>6.4.3 ContourMax™ Foot switch Kit, page 640</i>	Added image.	Product Support
<i>6.4.4 Side Hill Stabilizer Kit, page 640</i>	Added image.	Product Support
<i>6.4.7 Stubble Light Kit, page 642</i>	Added image.	Product Support
<i>Recommended Fluids and Lubricants, page</i> inside back cover	Updated knife drive box oil quantity, and hydraulic system oil quantity	ECN 60234

## Model and Serial Number

Record the model number, serial number, and model year of the header, float module, and transport/stabilizer wheel option (if installed) in the spaces provided.

### FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header

Header Model: \_\_\_\_\_  
Serial Number: \_\_\_\_\_  
Model Year: \_\_\_\_\_

The header's serial number plate (A) is located on the back of the header, beside the right endsheet.

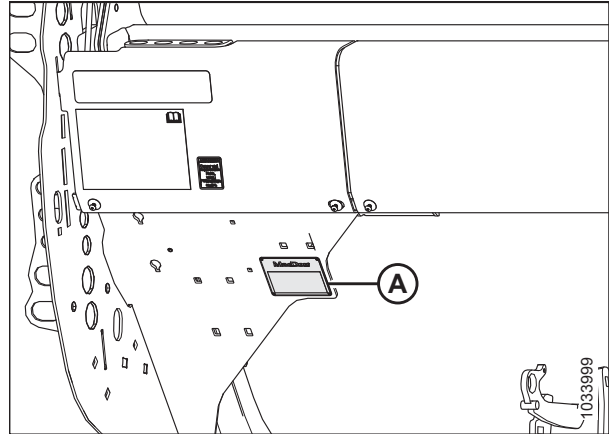


Figure 1: Header Serial Number Plate Location

### FM200 Float Module for Combine

Serial Number: \_\_\_\_\_  
Model Year: \_\_\_\_\_

The float module's serial number plate (A) is located on the top left side of the float module.

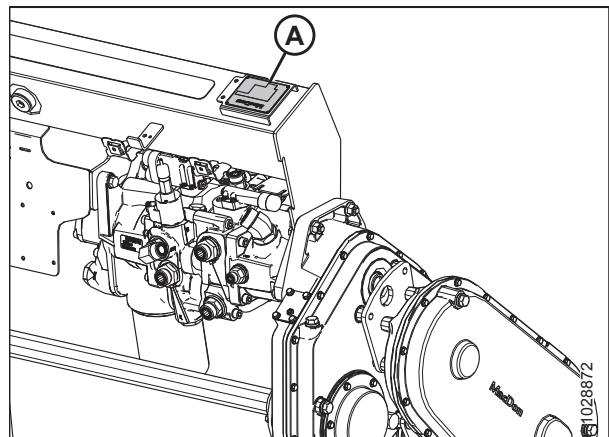


Figure 2: Float Module Serial Number Plate Location

### EasyMove™ Transport Option

Serial Number: \_\_\_\_\_  
Model Year: \_\_\_\_\_

The EasyMove™ transport's serial number plate (A) is located on the right axle assembly.

#### NOTE:

The transport is an option and may not be installed on this machine.

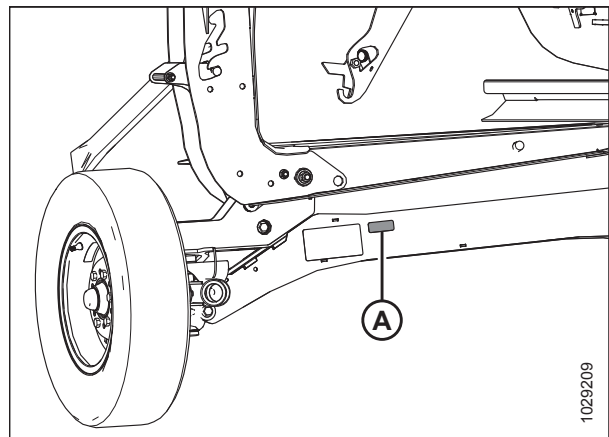


Figure 3: EasyMove™ Transport Option

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Declaration of Conformity .....	i
Introduction .....	v
Summary of Changes.....	vi
Model and Serial Number .....	x
<b>Chapter 1: Safety .....</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1.1 Safety Alert Symbols .....</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1.2 Signal Words .....</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>1.3 General Safety .....</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>1.4 Maintenance Safety .....</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>1.5 Hydraulic Safety .....</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>1.6 Safety Signs .....</b>	<b>7</b>
1.6.1 Installing Safety Decals.....	7
<b>1.7 Safety Decal Locations.....</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>1.8 Understanding Safety Signs .....</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>Chapter 2: Product Overview .....</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>2.1 Definitions .....</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>2.2 FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header and FM200 Float Module Specifications .....</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>2.3 FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header Dimensions.....</b>	<b>24</b>
<b>2.4 FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header Component Identification.....</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>2.5 FM200 Float Module Component Identification .....</b>	<b>26</b>
<b>Chapter 3: Operation.....</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>3.1 Owner/Operator Responsibilities .....</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>3.2 Operational Safety.....</b>	<b>30</b>
3.2.1 Header Safety Props .....	30
3.2.2 Reel Safety Props .....	31
Engaging Reel Safety Props.....	31
Disengaging Reel Safety Props .....	32
3.2.3 Header Endshields .....	33
Opening Header Endshields.....	33
Closing Header Endshields.....	34
Checking and Adjusting Header Endshields.....	35
Removing Header Endshields.....	37
Installing Header Endshields .....	38
3.2.4 Reel Drive Cover .....	38
Removing Reel Drive Cover .....	38
Installing Reel Drive Cover.....	39
3.2.5 Flex Linkage Cover .....	40
Removing Flex Linkage Covers.....	40
Installing Flex Linkage Covers.....	41
3.2.6 Daily Start-Up Check.....	42
<b>3.3 Break-in Period .....</b>	<b>43</b>

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>3.4</b>	Shutting down the Combine .....	44
<b>3.5</b>	Cab Controls .....	45
<b>3.6</b>	Header Setup .....	46
3.6.1	Header Attachments .....	46
3.6.2	Header Settings .....	46
3.6.3	Optimizing Header for Straight Combining Canola .....	57
	Checking and Adjusting Feed Auger Springs .....	57
3.6.4	Reel Settings .....	59
<b>3.7</b>	Header Operating Variables .....	61
3.7.1	Cutting off the Ground .....	61
	Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels .....	62
	Adjusting Stabilizer / EasyMove™ Transport Wheels .....	62
	Adjusting ContourMax™ Wheels with Foot Switch .....	63
	Adjusting ContourMax™ Wheels with Claas Integration Kit .....	64
	Adjusting ContourMax™ Wheels with John Deere Integration Kit .....	65
	Selecting the Default Function for the Multi-Function Lever Toggle Switch (With Claas Integration Kit) .....	66
3.7.2	Cutting on the Ground .....	67
	Adjusting Inner Skid Shoes .....	68
	Adjusting Outer Skid Shoes .....	68
3.7.3	Header Float .....	69
	Checking and Adjusting Header Float .....	70
	Locking/Unlocking Header Float .....	75
	Locking/Unlocking Header Wings .....	75
	Operating in Flex Mode .....	78
	Operating in Rigid Mode .....	79
	Disabling Flex Frown Limiter .....	80
	Enabling Flex Frown Limiter .....	81
3.7.4	Wing Balance .....	82
	Checking Wing Balance .....	82
	Adjusting Wing Balance .....	89
3.7.5	Header Angle .....	91
	Adjusting Header Angle from Combine .....	93
3.7.6	Reel Speed .....	99
	Optional Reel Drive Sprockets .....	99
3.7.7	Ground Speed .....	100
3.7.8	Side Draper Speed .....	101
	Adjusting Side Draper Speed .....	102
	Feed Draper Speed .....	103
3.7.9	Knife Speed Information .....	103
	Checking Knife Speed .....	104
3.7.10	Reel Height .....	105
	Checking and Adjusting Reel Height Sensor .....	105
	Replacing Reel Height Sensor .....	108
3.7.11	Reel Fore-Aft Position .....	109
	Adjusting Reel Fore-Aft Position .....	111
	Repositioning Fore-Aft Cylinders – Double Reel .....	111
	Repositioning Fore-Aft Cylinders – Triple Reel .....	115
	Checking and Adjusting Fore-Aft Position Sensor .....	117
3.7.12	Reel Tine Pitch .....	119

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Reel Cam Settings .....	120
Adjusting Reel Cam .....	123
3.7.13 Upper Cross Auger .....	124
Adjusting Upper Cross Auger Position.....	124
Checking Upper Cross Auger for Interference .....	126
3.7.14 Crop Dividers .....	127
Removing Crop Dividers.....	127
Installing Crop Dividers .....	129
3.7.15 Crop Divider Rods.....	130
Removing Crop Divider Rods.....	131
Installing Crop Divider Rods .....	131
Optional Rice Divider Rods .....	132
3.7.16 Setting Auger Position.....	133
<b>3.8 Auto Header Height Control .....</b>	<b>136</b>
3.8.1 Sensor Operation .....	137
3.8.2 Sensor Output Voltage Range – Combine Requirements .....	137
3.8.3 Checking Voltage Limits .....	137
3.8.4 Replacing Float Height Sensor .....	140
3.8.5 10 Volt Adapter (MD #B7241) – New Holland Combines Only .....	142
3.8.6 AGCO IDEAL™ Series Combines .....	142
Setting up the Header – AGCO IDEAL™ Series.....	142
Setting Minimum Reel Speed and Calibrating Reel – AGCO IDEAL™ Series .....	146
Setting up Automatic Header Controls – AGCO IDEAL™ Series .....	148
Calibrating the Header – AGCO IDEAL™ Series .....	149
Operating the Header – AGCO IDEAL™ Series .....	152
Reviewing Header In-Field Settings – AGCO IDEAL™ Series.....	153
3.8.7 Case IH 130 and 140 Series Mid-Range Combines .....	154
Setting up the Header on the Combine Display – Case IH 5130/6130/7130; 5140/6140/7140.....	154
Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – Case IH 5130/6130/7130; 5140/6140/7140.....	156
Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – Case IH 5130/6130/7130, 5140/6140/7140 .....	159
Setting Preset Cutting Height – Case 5130/6130/7130, 5140/6140/7140 .....	160
3.8.8 Case IH, 120, 230, 240, and 250 Series Combines.....	163
Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – Case IH, 120, 230, 240, and 250 Series Combines.....	163
Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – Case IH120, 230, 240, and 250 Series Combines.....	165
Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – Case IH Combines with Version 28.00 or Higher Software.....	169
Checking Reel Height Sensor Voltages – Case IH Combines .....	172
Setting Preset Cutting Height – Case IH, 120, 230, 240, and 250 Series Combines.....	174
3.8.9 Challenger and Massey Ferguson 6 and 7 Series Combines.....	175
Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – Challenger and Massey Ferguson .....	175
Engaging the Auto Header Height Control – Challenger and Massey Ferguson .....	177
Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – Challenger and Massey Ferguson .....	177
Adjusting the Header Height – Challenger and Massey Ferguson.....	180
Adjusting the Header Raise/Lower Rate – Challenger and Massey Ferguson.....	180
Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control – Challenger and Massey Ferguson .....	181
3.8.10 CLAAS 500 Series Combines .....	182
Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – CLAAS 500 Series .....	182
Setting Cutting Height – CLAAS 500 Series.....	184
Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control – CLAAS 500 Series .....	186
Adjusting Auto Reel Speed – CLAAS 500 Series.....	189

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

3.8.11	CLAAS 600 and 700 Series Combines .....	191
	Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series .....	191
	Setting Cutting Height – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series .....	194
	Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series .....	194
	Adjusting Auto Reel Speed – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series .....	195
	Calibrating Reel Height Sensor – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series .....	197
	Adjusting Auto Reel Height – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series .....	200
3.8.12	CLAAS 7000/8000 Series Combines .....	201
	Setting up the Header – CLAAS 7000/8000 Series .....	201
	Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – CLAAS 7000/8000 Series .....	202
	Setting Cut and Reel Height Preset – CLAAS 7000/8000 Series .....	205
	Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control – CLAAS 7000/8000 Series .....	205
	Adjusting Auto Reel Speed – CLAAS 7000/8000 Series .....	206
	Calibrating Reel Height Sensor – CLAAS 7000/8000 Series .....	208
3.8.13	Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and S Series Combines .....	210
	Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series .....	210
	Engaging the Auto Header Height Control – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series .....	211
	Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series .....	213
	Turning off the Accumulator – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series .....	214
	Adjusting the Header Raise/Lower Rate – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series .....	215
	Adjusting Ground Pressure – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series .....	215
	Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series .....	216
	Troubleshooting Alarms and Diagnostic Faults – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series .....	217
3.8.14	Gleaner S9 Series Combines .....	218
	Setting up the Header – Gleaner S9 Series .....	218
	Setting Minimum Reel Speed and Calibrating Reel – Gleaner S9 Series .....	223
	Setting up Automatic Header Controls – Gleaner S9 Series .....	224
	Calibrating the Header – Gleaner S9 Series .....	227
	Operating the Auto Header Height Control – Gleaner S9 Series .....	231
	Reviewing Header In-Field Settings – Gleaner S9 Series .....	232
3.8.15	John Deere 70 Series Combines .....	233
	Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – John Deere 70 Series .....	233
	Calibrating Feeder House Speed – John Deere 70 Series .....	236
	Adjusting the Manual Header Raise/Lower Rate – John Deere 70 Series .....	236
	Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – John Deere 70 Series .....	238
	Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control – John Deere 70 Series .....	239
3.8.16	John Deere S and T Series Combines .....	240
	Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – John Deere S and T Series .....	240
	Adjusting the Manual Header Raise/Lower Rate – John Deere S and T Series .....	243
	Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – John Deere S and T Series .....	244
	Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control – John Deere S and T Series .....	246
	Setting Preset Cutting Height – John Deere S and T Series .....	247
	Calibrating Feeder House Fore-Aft Tilt Range – John Deere S and T Series .....	250
	Checking Reel Height Sensor Voltages – John Deere S and T Series .....	252
	Calibrating Reel Height Sensor – John Deere S and T Series .....	256
3.8.17	John Deere S7 Series Combines .....	258
	Setting up Header – John Deere S7 Series .....	258
	Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – John Deere S7 Series .....	262
	Calibrating Feeder House – John Deere S7 Series .....	264
	Calibrating Header – John Deere S7 Series .....	267



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

3.8.18 New Holland Combines – CR/CX Series – 2014 and Prior .....	270
Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – New Holland CR/CX Series .....	270
Setting up Auto Header Height Control – New Holland CR/CX Series .....	272
Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – New Holland CR/CX Series .....	273
Calibrating Maximum Stubble Height – New Holland CR/CX Series .....	275
Adjusting Header Raise Rate – New Holland CR/CX Series .....	276
Setting the Header Lower Rate – New Holland CR/CX Series .....	276
Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control – New Holland CR/CX Series .....	277
Setting Preset Cutting Height – New Holland CR/CX Series .....	278
3.8.19 New Holland Combines – CR Series – 2015 and Later .....	279
Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – New Holland CR Series .....	279
Setting up Auto Header Height Control – New Holland CR Series .....	282
Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – New Holland CR Series .....	285
Checking Reel Height Sensor Voltages – New Holland CR Series .....	288
Setting Preset Cutting Height – New Holland CR Series .....	289
Setting Maximum Work Height – New Holland CR Series .....	290
Configuring Reel Fore-Aft, Header Tilt, and Header Type – New Holland CR Series .....	291
<b>3.9 Leveling Header .....</b>	<b>294</b>
<b>3.10 Unplugging the Cutterbar .....</b>	<b>297</b>
<b>3.11 Unplugging the Float Module Feed Draper .....</b>	<b>298</b>
<b>3.12 Transporting the Header .....</b>	<b>299</b>
3.12.1 Transporting Header on Combine .....	299
3.12.2 Towing .....	300
Attaching Header to Towing Vehicle .....	300
Towing the Header .....	300
3.12.3 Converting from Transport to Field Position (Option) .....	301
Moving Left Outboard Wheel From Transport to Working Position – ContourMax™ Option .....	301
Removing Tow-Bar .....	302
Storing Tow-Bar .....	305
Moving Front (Left) Wheels into Field Position .....	306
Moving Rear (Right) Wheels into Field Position .....	308
3.12.4 Converting from Field to Transport Position (Option) .....	310
Moving Left Outboard Wheel From Working to Transport Position .....	310
Moving Front (Left) Wheels into Transport Position .....	311
Moving Rear (Right) Wheels into Transport Position .....	312
Removing Tow-Bar from Storage .....	314
Attaching Tow-Bar .....	315
<b>3.13 Storing the Header .....</b>	<b>319</b>
<b>Chapter 4: Header Attachment/Detachment .....</b>	<b>321</b>
<b>4.1 FM200 Feed Auger Configurations .....</b>	<b>321</b>
4.1.1 Narrow Configuration – Auger Flighting .....	324
4.1.2 Medium Configuration – Auger Flighting .....	327
4.1.3 Wide Configuration – Auger Flighting .....	330
4.1.4 Ultra Narrow Configuration – Auger Flighting .....	332
4.1.5 Ultra Wide Configuration – Auger Flighting .....	336
4.1.6 Removing Bolt-On Flighting .....	337
4.1.7 Installing Bolt-On Flighting .....	340
4.1.8 Installing Additional Bolt-On Flighting – Ultra Narrow Configuration Only .....	343

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

4.1.9 Removing Feed Auger Fingers .....	346
4.1.10 Installing Feed Auger Fingers .....	348
<b>4.2 FM200 Setup .....</b>	<b>350</b>
4.2.1 Using Auger Flighting .....	350
4.2.2 Using Stripper Bars .....	350
<b>4.3 AGCO (Challenger, Gleaner, and Massey Ferguson) Combines .....</b>	<b>351</b>
4.3.1 Attaching Header to an AGCO (Challenger, Gleaner, or Massey Ferguson) Combine .....	351
4.3.2 Detaching Header from a Challenger, Gleaner, or Massey Ferguson Combine .....	355
<b>4.4 AGCO IDEAL™ Series Combines .....</b>	<b>359</b>
4.4.1 Attaching Header to an AGCO IDEAL™ Series Combine .....	359
4.4.2 Detaching Header from an AGCO IDEAL™ Series Combine .....	362
<b>4.5 Case IH Combines .....</b>	<b>365</b>
4.5.1 Attaching Header to Case IH Combine .....	365
4.5.2 Detaching Header from Case IH Combine .....	370
<b>4.6 CLAAS Combines .....</b>	<b>373</b>
4.6.1 Attaching Header to CLAAS Combine .....	373
4.6.2 Detaching Header from CLAAS Combine .....	376
4.6.3 Attaching Header to CLAAS 7000/8000 Series Combine .....	380
4.6.4 Attaching Header to CLAAS Tucano Combine .....	383
<b>4.7 John Deere Combines .....</b>	<b>388</b>
4.7.1 Attaching Header to John Deere Combine .....	388
4.7.2 Detaching Header from John Deere Combine .....	392
<b>4.8 New Holland Combines .....</b>	<b>395</b>
4.8.1 Attaching Header to New Holland CR/CX Combine .....	395
4.8.2 Detaching Header from New Holland CR/CX Combine .....	399
4.8.3 CR Feeder Deflectors .....	402
<b>4.9 Attaching and Detaching Header to and from FM200 Float Module .....</b>	<b>404</b>
4.9.1 Detaching Header from FM200 Float Module .....	404
4.9.2 Attaching Header to FM200 Float Module .....	408
<b>4.10 Attaching Side-Hill Driveline to a Combine .....</b>	<b>414</b>
<b>4.11 Detaching Side-Hill Driveline From a Combine .....</b>	<b>415</b>
<b>Chapter 5: Maintenance and Servicing .....</b>	<b>417</b>
5.1 Preparing Machine for Servicing .....	417
5.2 Maintenance Requirements .....	418
5.2.1 Maintenance Schedule/Record .....	418
5.2.2 Break-In Inspection .....	421
5.2.3 Preseason Servicing .....	421
5.2.4 End-of-Season Service .....	422
5.2.5 Checking Hydraulic Hoses and Lines .....	423
5.3 Lubrication and Servicing .....	424
5.3.1 Service Intervals .....	424
Every 10 Hours .....	424

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

Every 25 Hours .....	425
Every 50 Hours .....	426
Every 100 Hours .....	430
Every 250 Hours .....	432
Every 500 Hours .....	434
5.3.2 Greasing Procedure .....	434
5.3.3 Lubricating Reel Drive Chain .....	435
5.3.4 Lubricating Auger Drive Chain .....	436
5.3.5 Lubricating Header Drive Main Gearbox.....	438
Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Main Gearbox.....	438
Adding Oil to Header Drive Main Gearbox.....	439
Changing Oil in Header Drive Main Gearbox .....	439
5.3.6 Lubricating Header Drive Completion Gearbox .....	440
Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Completion Gearbox.....	440
Adding Oil to Header Drive Completion Gearbox .....	440
Changing Oil in Header Drive Completion Gearbox .....	441
<b>5.4 Hydraulics .....</b>	<b>442</b>
5.4.1 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir .....	442
5.4.2 Adding Oil to Hydraulic Reservoir.....	442
5.4.3 Changing Oil in the Hydraulic Reservoir.....	443
5.4.4 Changing Oil Filter.....	444
<b>5.5 Electrical System .....</b>	<b>445</b>
5.5.1 Replacing Light Bulbs .....	445
<b>5.6 Header Drive .....</b>	<b>446</b>
5.6.1 Removing Driveline Connecting Float Module to Combine .....	446
5.6.2 Installing Driveline Connecting Float Module to Combine.....	447
5.6.3 Removing Driveline Guard .....	449
5.6.4 Installing Driveline Guard .....	451
5.6.5 Adjusting Chain Tension – Main Gearbox .....	453
5.6.6 Adjusting Chain Tension – Completion Gearbox.....	455
<b>5.7 Auger .....</b>	<b>457</b>
5.7.1 Adjusting Feed Auger to Pan Clearance .....	457
5.7.2 Checking Feed Auger Drive Chain Tension .....	459
5.7.3 Adjusting Feed Auger Drive Chain Tension.....	461
5.7.4 Removing Auger Drive Chain .....	464
5.7.5 Installing Auger Drive Chain .....	467
5.7.6 Using Auger Flighting.....	470
5.7.7 Auger Fingers .....	470
Removing Feed Auger Fingers .....	470
Installing Feed Auger Fingers .....	472
Checking Auger Finger Timing .....	475
Adjusting Auger Finger Timing .....	476
<b>5.8 Knife .....</b>	<b>478</b>
5.8.1 Replacing Knife Section .....	478
5.8.2 Removing Knife .....	479
5.8.3 Removing Knifehead Bearing.....	480

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

5.8.4	Installing Knifehead Bearing	481
5.8.5	Installing Knife	481
5.8.6	Spare Knives	483
5.8.7	Pointed Knife Guards and Hold-Downs	484
	Pointed Knife Guards on Single-Knife Headers	485
	Pointed Knife Guards on FD235 Double-Knife Header	486
	Pointed Knife Guards on FD240 Double-Knife Header	487
	Pointed Knife Guards on FD241 Double-Knife Header	488
	Pointed Knife Guards on FD245 Double-Knife Header	489
	Pointed Knife Guards on FD250 Double-Knife Header	490
	Adjusting Knife Guards and Guard Bar	491
	Replacing Pointed Knife Guards	493
	Checking Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards	494
	Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards	495
	Replacing Pointed Center Knife Guard – Double-Knife	496
	Checking Center Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards	498
	Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards	500
5.8.8	Plug-Free™ Knife Guards and Hold-Downs	501
	Plug-Free™ Knife Guards on Single-Knife Headers	502
	Plug-Free™ Knife Guards on Double-Knife Headers – All Models Except FD241	503
	Plug-Free™ Knife Guards on FD241 Double-Knife Header	504
	Replacing Plug-Free™ Knife Guards or End Knife Guards	505
	Checking Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards	506
	Adjusting Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards	507
	Replacing Center Knife Guard – Double-Knife	508
	Checking Center Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards	510
	Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards	512
5.8.9	Knifehead Shield	512
	Installing Knifehead Shield	513
<b>5.9</b>	<b>Knife Drive System</b>	<b>514</b>
5.9.1	Knife Drive Box	514
	Checking Oil Level in Knife Drive Box	514
	Checking Mounting Bolts	515
	Removing Knife Drive Box	515
	Removing Knife Drive Box Flywheel	518
	Installing Knife Drive Box Flywheel	518
	Installing Knife Drive Box	519
	Changing Oil in Knife Drive Box	524
5.9.2	Knife Drive Motor	525
	Removing Knife Drive Motor	525
	Installing Knife Drive Motor	527
<b>5.10</b>	<b>Feed Draper</b>	<b>529</b>
5.10.1	Replacing Feed Draper	529
5.10.2	Checking and Adjusting Feed Draper Tension	533
5.10.3	Feed Draper Drive Roller	534
	Removing Feed Draper Drive Roller	534
	Installing Feed Draper Drive Roller	536
	Removing Feed Draper Drive Roller Bearing	537
	Installing Feed Draper Drive Roller Bearing	539
5.10.4	Feed Draper Idler Roller	540
	Removing Feed Draper Idler Roller	540

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Installing Feed Draper Idler Roller.....	542
Replacing Feed Draper Idler Roller Bearing.....	544
<b>5.11 Lowering Feed Deck Pan .....</b>	<b>548</b>
<b>5.12 Raising Feed Deck Pan .....</b>	<b>550</b>
<b>5.13 Checking Link Holder Hooks.....</b>	<b>551</b>
<b>5.14 FM200 Stripper Bars and Feed Deflectors.....</b>	<b>553</b>
5.14.1 Removing Stripper Bars .....	553
5.14.2 Installing Stripper Bars .....	554
5.14.3 Replacing Feed Deflectors on New Holland CR Combines .....	554
<b>5.15 Header Side Drapers.....</b>	<b>556</b>
5.15.1 Removing Side Drapers .....	556
5.15.2 Installing Side Drapers.....	557
5.15.3 Adjusting Side Draper Tension .....	558
5.15.4 Adjusting Side Draper Tracking .....	559
5.15.5 Draper Roller Maintenance .....	561
Inspecting Draper Roller Bearing .....	561
Removing Side Draper Deck Idler Roller.....	561
Replacing Side Draper Deck Idler Roller Bearing .....	563
Installing Side Draper Deck Idler Roller .....	565
Removing Side Draper Drive Roller .....	566
Replacing Side Draper Drive Roller Bearing.....	569
Installing Side Draper Drive Roller.....	570
<b>5.16 Reel.....</b>	<b>572</b>
5.16.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar .....	572
Measuring Reel Clearance .....	572
Adjusting Reel Clearance.....	575
5.16.2 Reel Frown.....	578
Adjusting Reel Frown.....	578
5.16.3 Centering Reel .....	579
5.16.4 Reel Fingers.....	579
Removing Steel Fingers.....	580
Installing Steel Fingers .....	580
Removing Plastic Fingers.....	581
Installing Plastic Fingers .....	583
5.16.5 Tine Tube Bushings.....	584
Removing Bushings from Reels.....	584
Installing Bushings onto Reels .....	588
5.16.6 Reel Endshields.....	596
Replacing Reel Endshields at Outboard Cam End.....	596
Replacing Reel Endshields at Inboard Cam End .....	598
Replacing Reel Endshields at Outboard Tail End .....	600
Replacing Reel Endshields at Inboard Tail End.....	602
Replacing Reel Endshield Supports.....	604
<b>5.17 Reel Drive.....</b>	<b>606</b>
5.17.1 Reel Drive Chain Tension .....	606
Loosening Reel Drive Chain .....	606
Tightening Reel Drive Chain .....	607
5.17.2 Reel Drive Sprocket .....	608

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Removing Reel Drive Single Sprocket.....	608
Installing Reel Drive Single Sprocket.....	609
5.17.3 Changing Reel Speed Chain Position with Two Speed Kit Installed.....	610
5.17.4 Double-Reel or Triple Reel Drive U-Joint.....	611
Removing Double-Reel or Triple Reel Drive U-Joint.....	611
Installing Double-Reel or Triple Reel U-Joint.....	612
5.17.5 Reel Drive Motor.....	613
Removing Reel Drive Motor.....	613
Installing Reel Drive Motor.....	614
5.17.6 Replacing Drive Chain on Double Reel or Triple Reel.....	617
5.17.7 Replacing Reel Speed Sensor.....	619
Replacing AGCO Reel Speed Sensor.....	619
Replacing John Deere Reel Speed Sensor.....	620
Replacing CLAAS 400 Series Reel Speed Sensor.....	620
Replacing CLAAS Reel Speed Sensor.....	621
<b>5.18 Transport System (Option).....</b>	<b>622</b>
5.18.1 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque.....	622
5.18.2 Checking Axle Bolt Torque.....	622
5.18.3 Checking Tire Pressure.....	624
5.18.4 Changing Tow Bar Hitch Connection from Pintle to Clevis.....	625
5.18.5 Changing Tow Bar Hitch Connection from Clevis to Pintle.....	627
<b>Chapter 6: Options and Attachments.....</b>	<b>631</b>
<b>6.1 Crop Delivery.....</b>	<b>631</b>
6.1.1 Crop Lifter Storage Rack Kit.....	631
6.1.2 Divider Storage Bracket Kit.....	632
6.1.3 Grain Crop Lifter Kit.....	632
6.1.4 Rice Divider Rod Kit.....	633
6.1.5 Full Interface Filler Kit.....	633
6.1.6 Full Length Upper Cross Auger.....	634
<b>6.2 Cutterbar.....</b>	<b>635</b>
6.2.1 Rock Retarder Kit.....	635
6.2.2 VertiBlade™ Vertical Knife Kit.....	635
<b>6.3 FM200 Float Module.....</b>	<b>636</b>
6.3.1 Feed Auger High-Wear Flighting Extension Kit.....	636
6.3.2 Hydraulic Reservoir Extension Kit.....	636
6.3.3 Stripper Bar Kit.....	637
<b>6.4 Header.....</b>	<b>638</b>
6.4.1 ContourMax™ Contour Wheels Kit.....	638
6.4.2 EasyMove™ Transport System.....	639
6.4.3 ContourMax™ Foot switch Kit.....	640
6.4.4 Side Hill Stabilizer Kit.....	640
6.4.5 Stabilizer Wheel Kit.....	641
6.4.6 Steel Skid Shoes Kit.....	641
6.4.7 Stubble Light Kit.....	642

TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

**Chapter 7: Troubleshooting..... 643**

- 7.1 Crop Loss at Cutterbar ..... 643
- 7.2 Cutting Action and Knife Components ..... 646
  - 7.2.1 Adjusting Knife Guards and Guard Bar ..... 649
- 7.3 Reel Delivery ..... 652
- 7.4 Header and Drapers ..... 655
- 7.5 Cutting Edible Beans ..... 657

**Chapter 8: Reference ..... 661**

- 8.1 Torque Specifications ..... 661
  - 8.1.1 Metric Bolt Specifications ..... 661
  - 8.1.2 Metric Bolt Specifications Bolting into Cast Aluminum ..... 663
  - 8.1.3 O-Ring Boss Hydraulic Fittings – Adjustable ..... 664
  - 8.1.4 O-Ring Boss Hydraulic Fittings – Non-Adjustable ..... 666
  - 8.1.5 O-Ring Face Seal Hydraulic Fittings ..... 667
  - 8.1.6 Tapered Pipe Thread Fittings ..... 668
- 8.2 Conversion Chart ..... 670

**Index ..... 671**

**Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ..... 685**





# Chapter 1: Safety

Understanding and following safety procedures consistently will help to ensure the safety of machine operators and bystanders.

## 1.1 Safety Alert Symbols

The safety alert symbol indicates important safety messages in this manual and on safety signs on the machine.

This symbol means:

- **ATTENTION!**
- **BECOME ALERT!**
- **YOUR SAFETY IS INVOLVED!**

Carefully read and follow the safety message accompanying this symbol.

### Why is safety important to you?

- Accidents disable and kill
- Accidents cost
- Accidents can be avoided



Figure 1.1: Safety Symbol

## 1.2 Signal Words

Three signal words, **DANGER**, **WARNING**, and **CAUTION**, are used to alert you to hazardous situations. Two signal words, **IMPORTANT** and **NOTE**, identify non-safety related information.

Signal words are selected using the following guidelines:

### **DANGER**

Indicates an imminently hazardous situation that, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

### **WARNING**

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation that, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practices.

### **CAUTION**

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation that, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may be used to alert against unsafe practices.

### **IMPORTANT:**

Indicates a situation that, if not avoided, could result in a malfunction or damage to the machine.

### **NOTE:**

Provides additional information or advice.

## 1.3 General Safety

Protect yourself when assembling, operating, and servicing machinery.

### CAUTION

The following general farm safety precautions should be part of your operating procedure for all types of machinery.

Wear all protective clothing and personal safety devices that could be necessary for the job at hand. Do **NOT** take chances. You may need the following:

- Hard hat
- Protective footwear with slip-resistant soles
- Protective glasses or goggles
- Heavy gloves
- Wet weather gear
- Respirator or filter mask

In addition, take the following precautions:

- Be aware that exposure to loud noises can cause hearing impairment or loss. Wear suitable hearing protection devices such as earmuffs or earplugs to help protect against loud noises.



Figure 1.2: Safety Equipment



Figure 1.3: Safety Equipment

- Provide a first aid kit in case of emergencies.
- Keep a properly maintained fire extinguisher on the machine. Be familiar with its proper use.
- Keep young children away from machinery at all times.
- Be aware that accidents often happen when the Operator is tired or in a hurry. Take time to consider the safest way. **NEVER** ignore warning signs of fatigue.

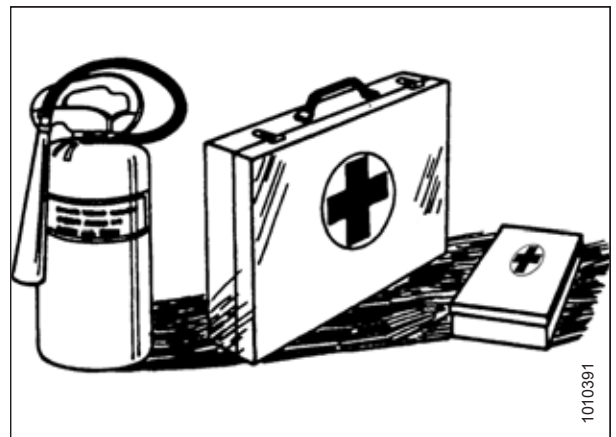


Figure 1.4: Safety Equipment

## SAFETY

- Wear close-fitting clothing and cover long hair. **NEVER** wear dangling items such as scarves or bracelets.
- Keep all shields in place. **NEVER** alter or remove safety equipment. Make sure driveline guards can rotate independently of shaft and can telescope freely.
- Use only service and repair parts made or approved by equipment manufacturer. Substituted parts may not meet strength, design, or safety requirements.



Figure 1.5: Safety around Equipment

- Keep hands, feet, clothing, and hair away from moving parts. **NEVER** attempt to clear obstructions or objects from a machine while the engine is running.
- Do **NOT** modify the machine. Unauthorized modifications may impair machine function and/or safety. It may also shorten the machine's life.
- To avoid injury or death from unexpected startup of the machine, **ALWAYS** stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

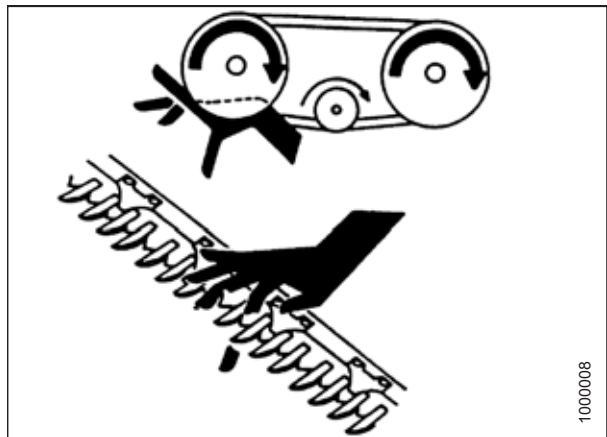


Figure 1.6: Safety around Equipment

- Keep service area clean and dry. Wet and/or oily floors are slippery. Wet spots can be dangerous when working with electrical equipment. Be sure all electrical outlets and tools are properly grounded.
- Keep work area well lit.
- Keep machinery clean. Straw and chaff on a hot engine are fire hazards. Do **NOT** allow oil or grease to accumulate on service platforms, ladders, or controls. Clean machines before storage.
- **NEVER** use gasoline, naphtha, or any volatile material for cleaning purposes. These materials may be toxic and/or flammable.
- When storing machinery, cover sharp or extending components to prevent injury from accidental contact.



Figure 1.7: Safety around Equipment

## 1.4 Maintenance Safety

Protect yourself when servicing machinery.

To ensure your safety while maintaining machine:

- Review the operator's manual and all safety items before operation and/or maintenance of the machine.
- Place all controls in Neutral, stop the engine, set the park brake, remove the ignition key, and wait for all moving parts to stop before servicing, adjusting, and/or repairing.
- Follow good shop practices:
  - Keep service areas clean and dry
  - Be sure electrical outlets and tools are properly grounded
  - Keep work area well lit



Figure 1.8: Safety around Equipment

- Relieve pressure from hydraulic circuits before servicing and/or disconnecting the machine.
- Make sure all components are tight and that steel lines, hoses, and couplings are in good condition before applying pressure to hydraulic systems.
- Keep hands, feet, clothing, and hair away from all moving and/or rotating parts.
- Clear the area of bystanders, especially children, when carrying out any maintenance, repairs, or adjustments.
- Install transport lock or place safety stands under the frame before working under the machine.
- If more than one person is servicing the machine at the same time, be aware that rotating a driveline or other mechanically-driven component by hand (for example, accessing a lubricant fitting) will cause drive components in other areas (belts, pulleys, and knives) to move. Stay clear of driven components at all times.
- Wear protective gear when working on the machine.
- Wear heavy gloves when working on knife components.

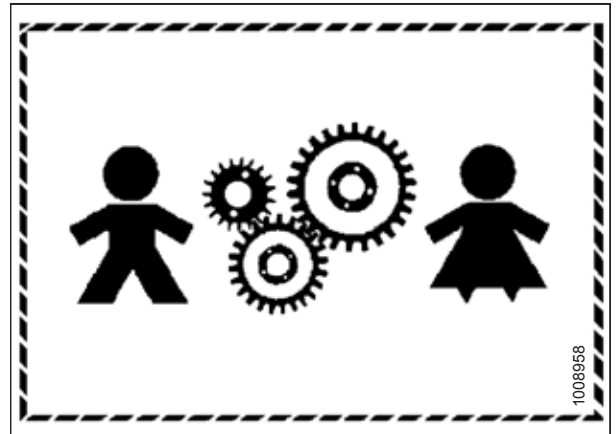


Figure 1.9: Equipment NOT Safe for Children



Figure 1.10: Safety Equipment

## 1.5 Hydraulic Safety

Protect yourself when assembling, operating, and servicing hydraulic components.

- Always place all hydraulic controls in Neutral before leaving the operator's seat.
- Make sure that all components in the hydraulic system are kept clean and in good condition.
- Replace any worn, cut, abraded, flattened, or crimped hoses and steel lines.
- Do **NOT** attempt any makeshift repairs to hydraulic lines, fittings, or hoses by using tapes, clamps, cements, or welding. The hydraulic system operates under extremely high-pressure. Makeshift repairs will fail suddenly and create hazardous and unsafe conditions.

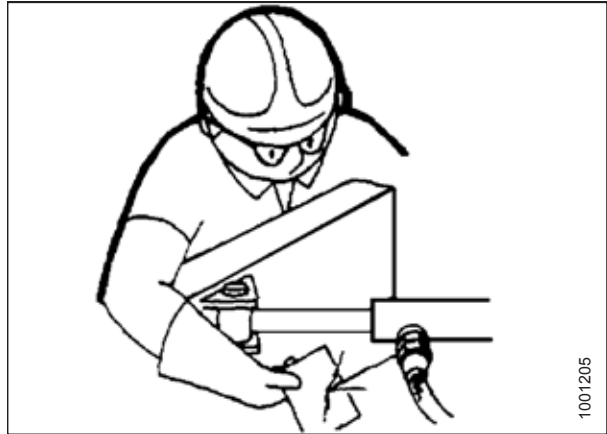


Figure 1.11: Testing for Hydraulic Leaks

- Wear proper hand and eye protection when searching for high-pressure hydraulic leaks. Use a piece of cardboard as a backstop instead of hands to isolate and identify a leak.
- If injured by a concentrated high-pressure stream of hydraulic fluid, seek medical attention immediately. Serious infection or toxic reaction can develop from hydraulic fluid piercing the skin.



Figure 1.12: Hydraulic Pressure Hazard

- Make sure all components are tight and steel lines, hoses, and couplings are in good condition before applying pressure to a hydraulic system.

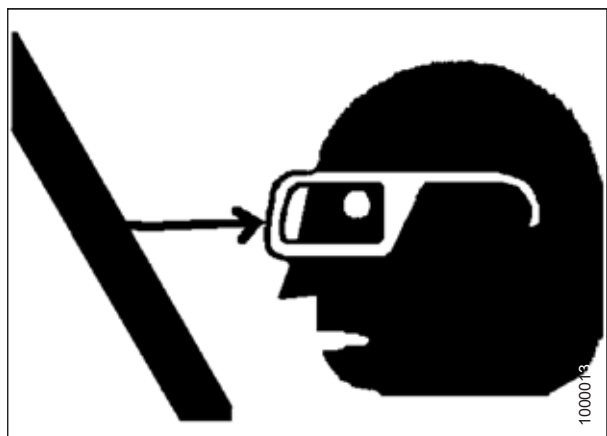


Figure 1.13: Safety around Equipment

## 1.6 Safety Signs

Safety signs are usually yellow decals, and are placed on the machine where there is a risk of personal injury, or where the operator has to take extra precaution before operating controls. Operator manuals and technical manuals identify the location and meaning of all safety signs placed on the machine.

- Keep safety signs clean and legible at all times.
- Replace safety signs that are missing or illegible.
- If the original part on which a safety sign was installed is replaced, be sure the repair part displays the current safety sign.
- Replacement safety signs are available from your MacDon Dealer Parts Department.

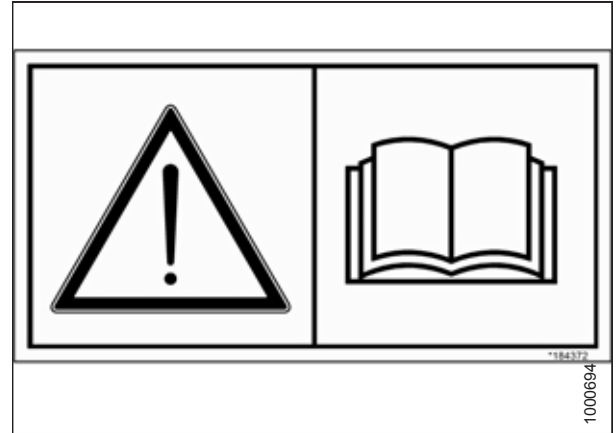


Figure 1.14: Operator's Manual Decal

### 1.6.1 Installing Safety Decals

If a safety decal is damaged it should be replaced.

1. Decide exactly where you are going to place the decal.
2. Clean and dry the installation area.
3. Remove the smaller portion of the split backing paper.
4. Place the decal in position and slowly peel back the remaining paper, smoothing the decal as it is applied.
5. Prick small air pockets with a pin and smooth out.

## 1.7 Safety Decal Locations

Safety signs are usually yellow decals, and are placed on the machine where there is a risk of personal injury, or where the operator has to take extra precaution before operating controls.

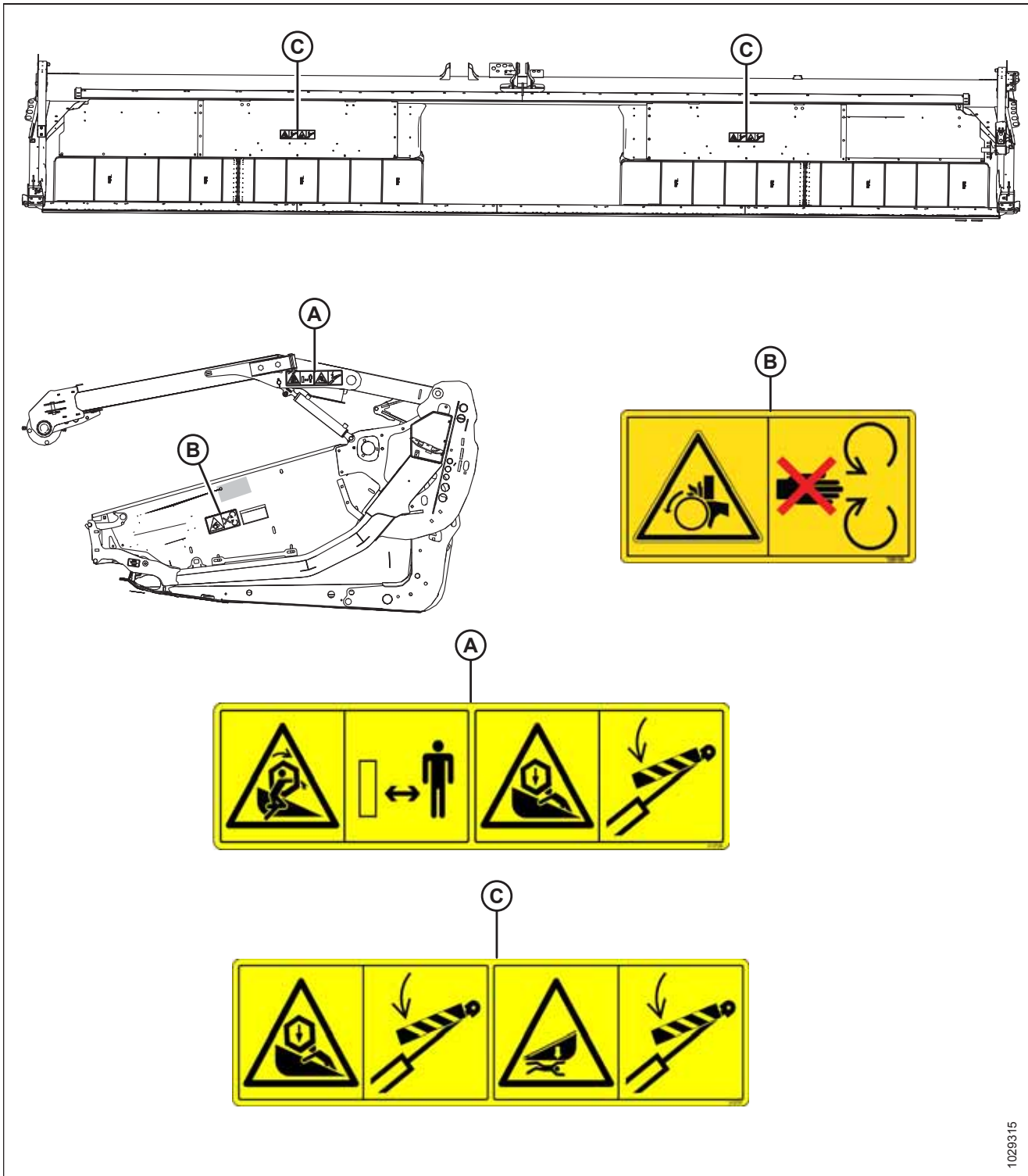


Figure 1.15: Endsheets, Reel Arms, and Backsheet

A - MD #313726 – Reel Entanglement/ Hazard (Two Locations)

B - MD #288195 – Danger, Rotating Part (Two Locations)

C - MD #313727 – Reel/Header Hazard

1029315



SAFETY

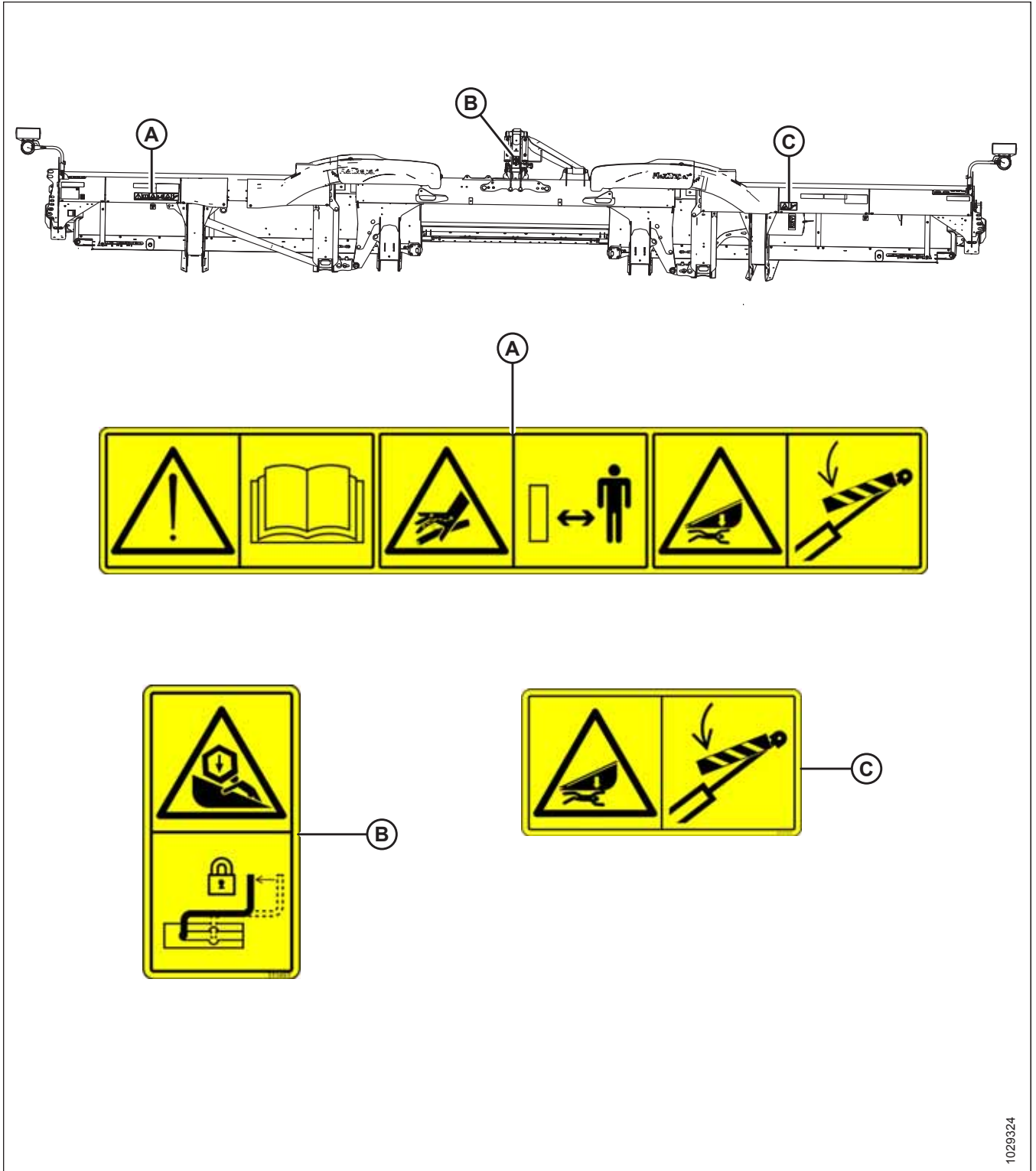


Figure 1.16: Backtube

A - MD #313725 – Read Manual / High Pressure Fluid / Header Hazard  
C - MD #313733 – Header Crushing Hazard

B - MD #311493 – Center Prop Lock

1029324

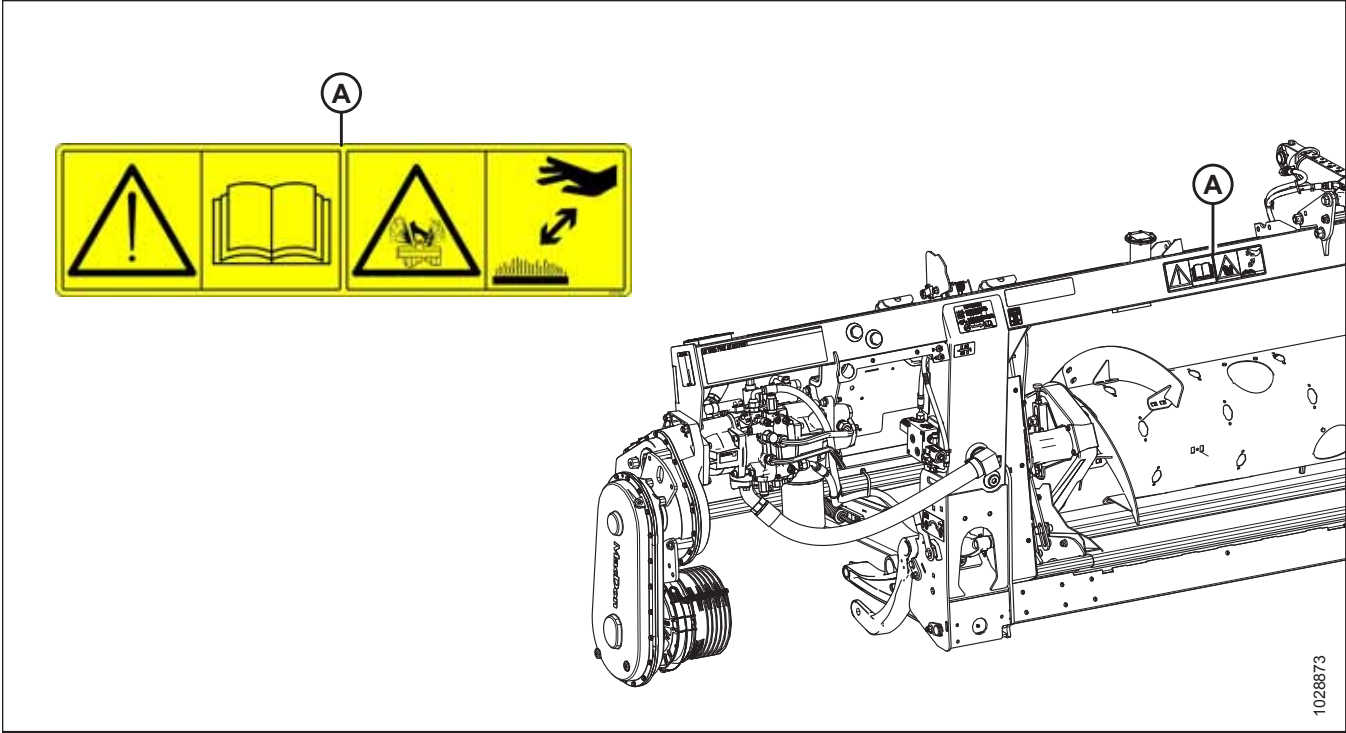


Figure 1.17: FM200 Float Module

A - MD #313728 – Read Manual / Fluid Spray Hazard

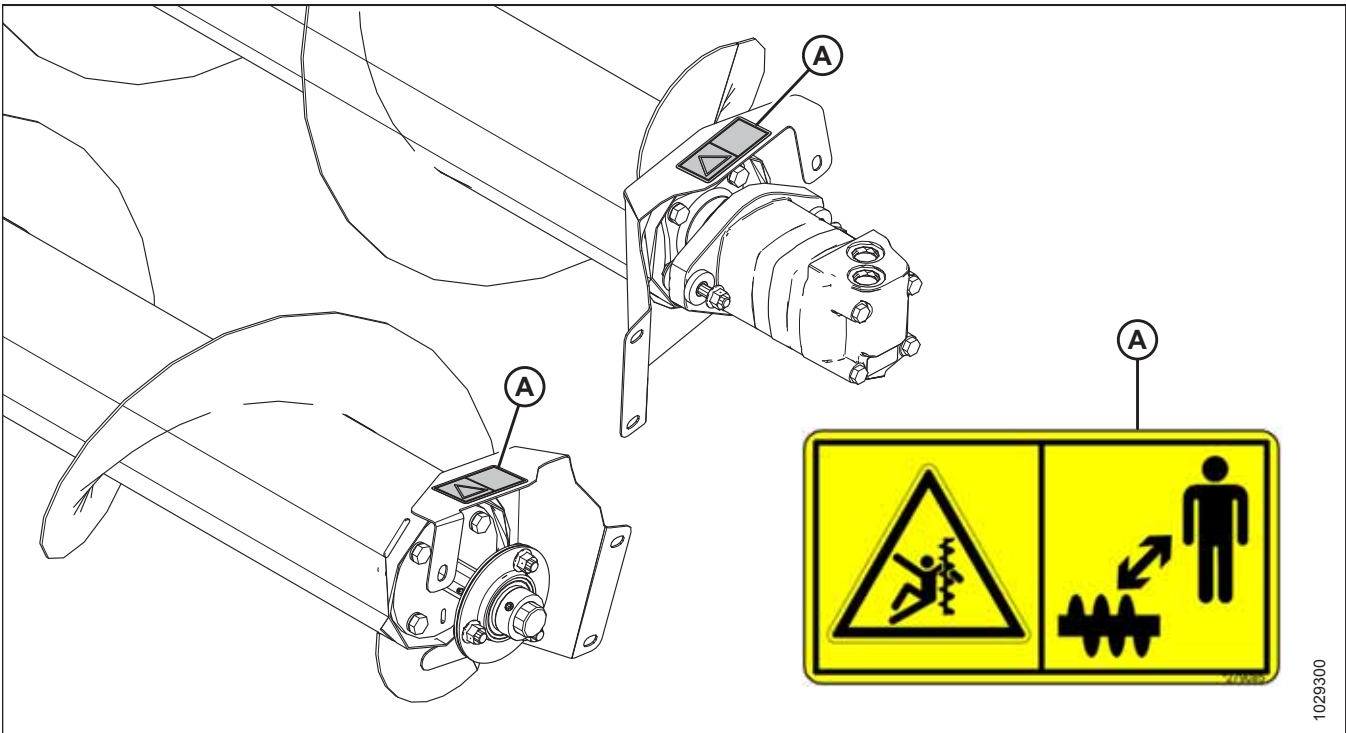
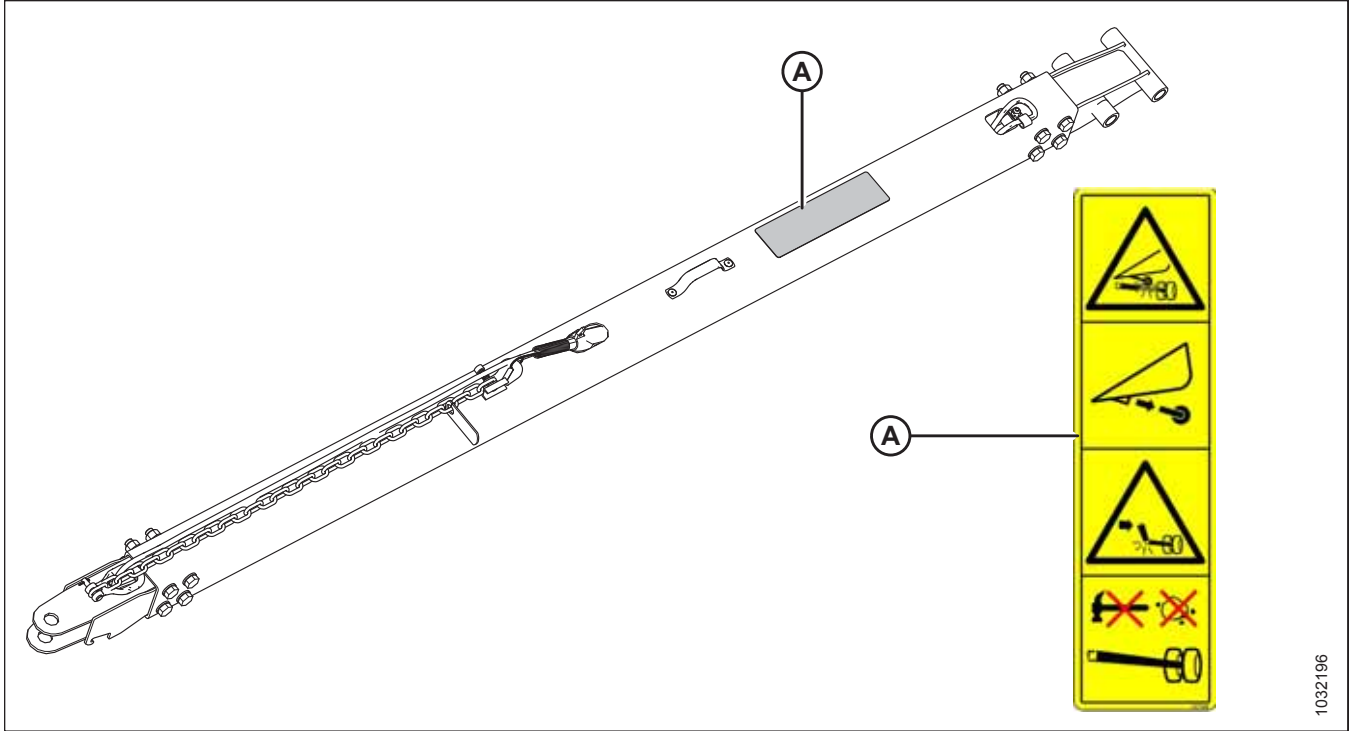


Figure 1.18: Upper Cross Auger

A - MD #279085 – Auger Warning

SAFETY



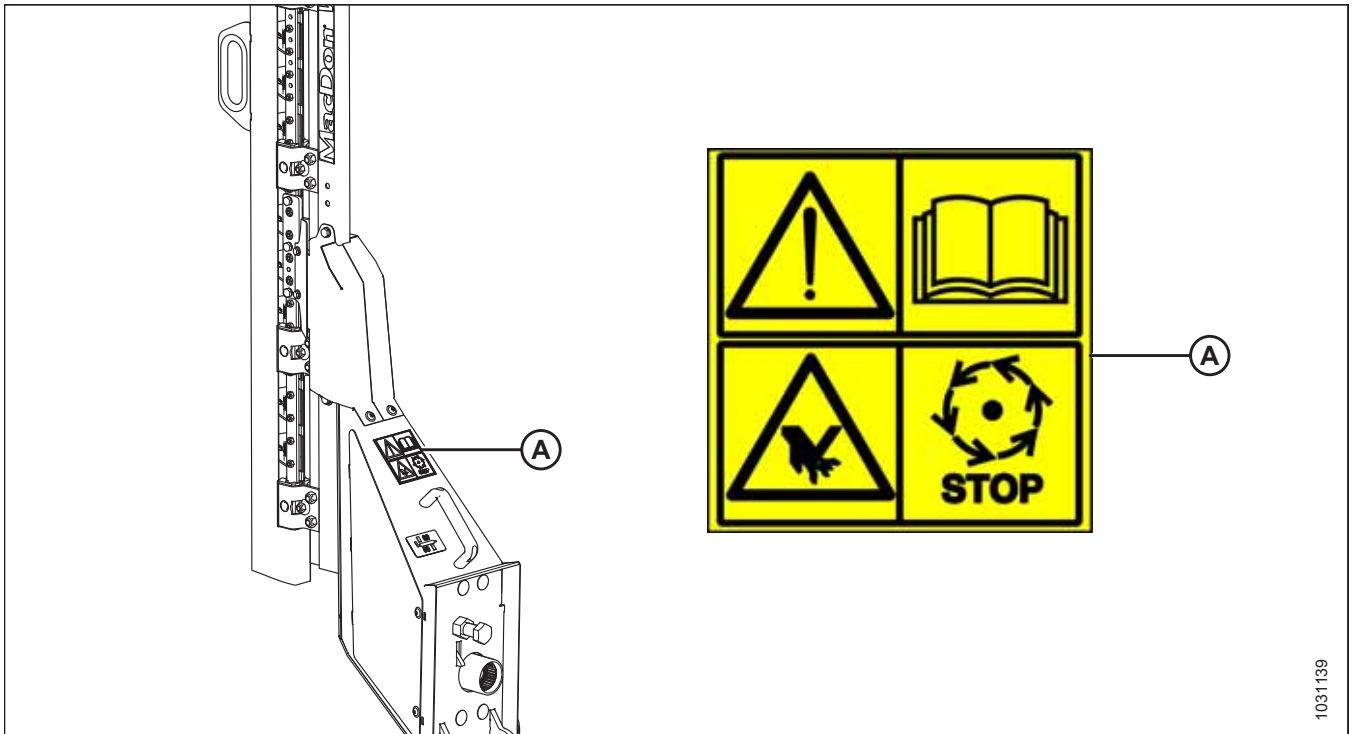
1032196

Figure 1.19: EasyMove™ Transport System – Tow-Bar

A - MD #327588 – Hitch Damage Hazard

NOTE:

The short tow-bar is shown; the long tow-bar is similar.



1031139

Figure 1.20: Vertical Knife

A - MD #313881 – Knife Hazard

## 1.8 Understanding Safety Signs

Make sure you understand the meanings of all safety signs placed on the machine.

### MD #174436

High-pressure oil hazard

#### WARNING

To prevent serious injury, gangrene, or death:

- Do **NOT** go near leaks.
- Do **NOT** use a finger or skin to check for leaks.
- Lower the load or relieve hydraulic pressure before loosening fittings.
- High-pressure oil can easily puncture skin, and can cause serious injury, gangrene, or death.
- If injured, seek emergency medical help. Immediate surgery is required to remove oil.



Figure 1.21: MD #174436

### MD #220799

Loss of control hazard

#### WARNING

To prevent serious injury or death from loss of control:

- Ensure the tow-bar lock mechanism is locked.



Figure 1.22: MD #220799

### MD #279085

Auger entanglement hazard

#### DANGER

To prevent injury from the rotating auger:

- Stand clear of the auger while the machine is running.
- Stop the engine and remove the key before servicing auger.
- Do **NOT** reach into moving parts while the machine is running.



Figure 1.23: MD #279085

## SAFETY

### MD #288195

Rotating object pinch hazard

#### CAUTION

To prevent injury:

- Stop the engine and remove the key before opening the shield.
- Do **NOT** operate without shields in place.

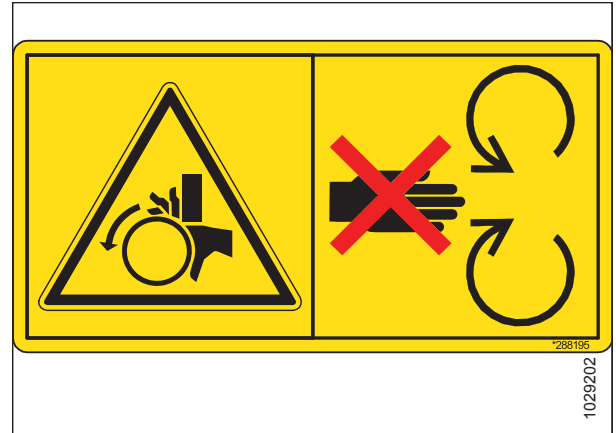


Figure 1.24: MD #288195

### MD #311493

Center Prop Lock

#### DANGER

- To prevent injury from the fall of a raised reel; fully raise the reel. Stop the engine and remove the key, and engage the mechanical safety lock on each reel support arm before working on or under the reel.



Figure 1.25: MD #311493

### MD #313725

Read manual / high pressure fluid / header crushing hazard

#### DANGER

To prevent injury or death from improper or unsafe machine operation:

- Read the operator's manual and follow all safety instructions. If you do not have a manual, obtain one from your Dealer.
- Do **NOT** allow untrained persons to operate the machine.
- Review safety instructions with all Operators every year.
- Ensure that all safety signs are installed and legible.
- Make certain everyone is clear of the machine before starting the engine and during operation.
- Keep riders off of the machine.
- Keep all shields in place and stay clear of moving parts.
- Disengage the header drive, put the transmission in Neutral, and wait for all movement to stop before leaving the operator's position.

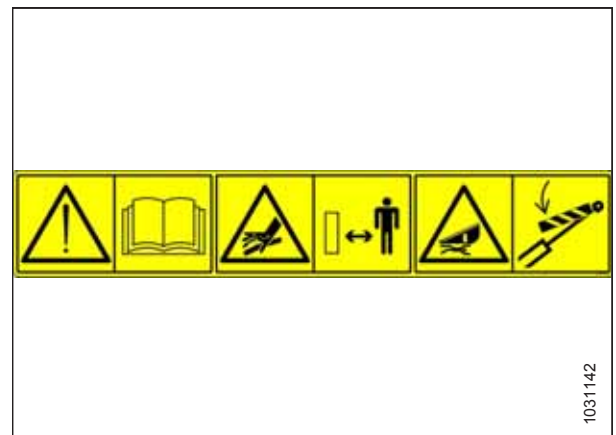


Figure 1.26: MD #313725

## SAFETY

- Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before servicing, adjusting, lubricating, cleaning, or unplugging the machine.
- Engage the safety locks to prevent lowering of raised unit before servicing in the raised position.
- Use a slow moving vehicle emblem and flashing warning lights when operating on roadways unless prohibited by law.

To prevent injury or death from fall of a raised header:

- Fully raise the header, stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the mechanical safety locks on the combine before going under the header.
- Alternatively, rest the header on the ground, stop the engine, and remove the key before servicing.

### WARNING

To prevent serious injury, gangrene, or death:

- Do **NOT** go near leaks.
- Do **NOT** use a finger or skin to check for leaks.
- Lower the load or relieve hydraulic pressure before loosening fittings.
- High-pressure oil can easily puncture skin, and can cause serious injury, gangrene, or death.
- If injured, seek emergency medical help. Immediate surgery is required to remove oil.

### MD #313726

Reel entanglement / reel crushing hazard

### DANGER

- To prevent injury from entanglement with the rotating reel; stand clear of the header while the machine is running.
- To prevent injury from the fall of the raised reel; fully raise the reel, stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the mechanical safety lock on each reel support arm before working on or under the reel.



Figure 1.27: MD #313726

## SAFETY

### MD #313727

Reel/header hazard

#### DANGER

- To prevent injury from the fall of the raised reel; fully raise the reel, stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the mechanical safety lock on each reel support arm before working on or under the reel.

To prevent injury or death from the fall of a raised header:

- Fully raise the header, stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the mechanical safety locks on the combine before going under the header.
- Alternatively, rest the header on the ground, stop the engine, and remove the key before servicing.

### MD #313728

General hazard pertaining to machine operation and servicing / Hot fluid spray hazard

#### DANGER

To prevent injury or death from improper or unsafe machine operation:

- Read the operator's manual and follow all safety instructions. If you do not have a manual, obtain one from your Dealer.
- Do **NOT** allow untrained persons to operate the machine.
- Review safety instructions with all Operators every year.
- Ensure that all safety signs are installed and legible.
- Make certain everyone is clear of the machine before starting the engine and during operation.
- Keep riders off of the machine.
- Keep all shields in place and stay clear of moving parts.
- Disengage the header drive, put the transmission in Neutral, and wait for all movement to stop before leaving the operator's position.
- Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before servicing, adjusting, lubricating, cleaning, or unplugging the machine.
- Engage safety locks to prevent the lowering of a raised unit before servicing it in the raised position.
- Use a slow moving vehicle emblem and flashing warning lights when operating on roadways unless prohibited by law.

#### CAUTION

To prevent injury:

- Do **NOT** remove the fluid fill cap when the machine is hot.



Figure 1.28: MD #313727

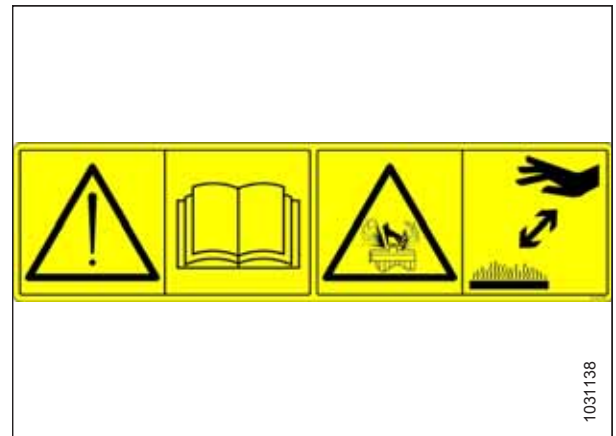


Figure 1.29: MD #313728

## SAFETY

- Allow the machine to cool down before opening the fluid fill cap
- Fluid is under pressure and may be hot.

### MD #313733

Header crushing hazard

#### DANGER

To prevent injury or death from the fall of a raised header:

- Fully raise the header, stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the mechanical safety locks on the combine before going under the header.
- Alternatively, rest the header on the ground, stop the engine, and remove the key before servicing.



Figure 1.30: MD #313733

### MD #313881

General hazard pertaining to machine operation and servicing / knife hazard

#### DANGER

To prevent injury or death from improper or unsafe machine operation:

- Read the operator's manual and follow all safety instructions. If you do not have a manual, obtain one from your Dealer.
- Do **NOT** allow untrained persons to operate the machine.
- Review safety instructions with all Operators every year.
- Ensure that all the safety signs are installed and legible.
- Make certain everyone is clear of the machine before starting the engine and during operation.
- Keep riders off of the machine.
- Keep all shields in place and stay clear of moving parts.
- Disengage the header drive, put the transmission in Neutral, and wait for all movement to stop before leaving the operator's position.
- Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before servicing, adjusting, lubricating, cleaning, or unplugging the machine.
- Engage the safety locks to prevent lowering of the raised unit before servicing it in the raised position.
- Use a slow moving vehicle emblem and flashing warning lights when operating on roadways unless prohibited by law.



Figure 1.31: MD #313881

#### WARNING



## SAFETY

To prevent injury from sharp cutting knife:

- Wear heavy canvas or leather gloves when working with the knife.
- Be sure no one is near the vertical knife when removing or rotating the knife.

### MD #327588

Hitch damage hazard

### DANGER

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Remove the left contour wheel before transporting the header with transport.
- Do **NOT** tow a header if the transport hitch is damaged.



Figure 1.32: MD #327588



## Chapter 2: Product Overview

Specifications provide the dimensions, details, and performance criteria for the various FD2 FlexDraper® sizes and configurations

### 2.1 Definitions

The following terms and acronyms may be used in this manual.

Term	Definition
API	American Petroleum Institute
ASTM	American Society of Testing and Materials
Bolt	A headed and externally threaded fastener that is designed to be paired with a nut
Center-link	A hydraulic cylinder link between the header and machine used to change header angle
CGVV	Combined gross vehicle weight
Export header	Header configuration typical outside North America
FD2 Series header	MacDon FD230, FD235, FD240, FD245, FD241, or FD250 FlexDraper® header
FFFT	Flats from finger tight
Finger tight	Finger tight is a reference position where sealing surfaces or components are making contact with each other, and fitting has been tightened to a point where fitting is no longer loose
FM200	Float module used with a FD2 Series header for combining
FSI	Float setting indicator
GVW	Gross vehicle weight
Hard joint	A joint made with use of a fastener where joining materials are highly incompressible
Hex key	A tool of hexagonal cross-section used to drive bolts and screws that have a hexagonal socket in head (internal-wrenching hexagon drive); also known as an Allen key and various other synonyms
hp	Horsepower
HPT display	Harvest Performance Tracker display module on an M1 Series Windrower
JIC	Joint Industrial Council: A standards body that developed standard sizing and shape for original 37° flared fitting
n/a	Not applicable
North American header	Header configuration typical in North America
NPT	National Pipe Thread: A style of fitting used for low-pressure port openings. Threads on NPT fittings are uniquely tapered for an interference fit
Nut	An internally threaded fastener that is designed to be paired with a bolt
ORB	O-ring boss: A style of fitting commonly used in port openings on manifolds, pumps, and motors
ORFS	O-ring face seal: A style of fitting commonly used for connecting hoses and tubes. This style of fitting is also commonly called ORS, which stands for O-ring seal

## PRODUCT OVERVIEW

Term	Definition
SAE	Society of Automotive Engineers
Screw	A headed and externally threaded fastener that threads into preformed threads or forms its own thread into a mating part
Soft joint	A joint made with use of a fastener where joining materials are compressible or experience relaxation over a period of time
Tension	Axial load placed on a bolt or screw, usually measured in Newtons (N) or pounds (lb.)
TFFT	Turns from finger tight
Torque	The product of a force X lever arm length, usually measured in Newton-meters (Nm) or foot-pounds (lb-ft)
Torque angle	A tightening procedure where fitting is assembled to a precondition (finger tight) and then nut is turned farther a number of degrees to achieve its final position
Torque-tension	The relationship between assembly torque applied to a piece of hardware and axial load it induces in bolt or screw
UCA	Upper cross auger
Washer	A thin cylinder with a hole or slot located in the center that is to be used as a spacer, load distribution element, or locking mechanism

## 2.2 FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header and FM200 Float Module Specifications

The following symbols and letters are used in specification tables.

### FD2 | FM200 | Attachments

S: standard / O<sub>F</sub>: optional (factory installed) / O<sub>D</sub>: optional (dealer installed) / -: not available

Cutterbar			
Effective cutting width (distance between crop divider points; cut width plus divider gather)			
FD230		9.2 m (361 in.)	S
FD235		10.7 m (421 in.)	S
FD240		12.2 m (481 in.)	S
FD241		12.5 m (493 in.)	S
FD245		13.7 m (541 in.)	S
FD250		15.3 m (601 in.)	S
Cutterbar lift range		Varies with combine model	S
Knife			
Single-knife drive (FD230–FD240): hydraulic motor mounted to enclosed heavy duty MacDon knife drive box on the left side of header.			O <sub>F</sub>
Double knife drive (FD235–FD250): one hydraulic motor, untimed, one mounted to enclosed heavy duty MacDon knife drive box on each side of header.			O <sub>F</sub>
Knife stroke		76 mm (3 in.)	S
Single-knife speed (strokes per minute)	FD230 and FD235	1200–1500 spm	S
Single-knife speed (strokes per minute)	FD240	1200–1400 spm	S
Double-knife speed (strokes per minute)	FD235, FD240, FD241, FD245, and FD250	1200–1500 spm	S
Knife Sections			
Over-serrated, ClearCut™, QuickChange, bolted, 3.5 serrations per cm (9 serrations per inch)			S
Knife overlap at center (double-knife headers)		3 mm (1/8 in.)	S
Guards and Hold-Downs			
Guard: ClearCut™ pointed, forged and double heat treated (DHT) Hold-down: forged, single adjustment bolt			O <sub>F</sub>
Guard: PlugFree™, forged and double heat treated (DHT) Hold-down: forged, dual adjustment bolt			O <sub>F</sub>
Guard Angle (Cutterbar on the Ground)			
Center-link retracted		1.7 degrees	S
Center-link extended		8.9 degrees	S

**PRODUCT OVERVIEW**

<b>Draper and Decks</b>			
Draper width		1.27 m (50 in.)	S
Draper drive		Hydraulic	S
Draper speed: FM200 Float Module controlled		209 m/min. (687 fpm)	S
Delivery opening width		1905 mm (75 in.)	S
<b>PR15 Pick-Up Reel</b>			
Quantity of tine tubes		5 or 6 tine tubes	
Center tube diameter: all reel sizes except FD235 single span		203 mm (8 in.)	S
Finger tip radius	Factory-set	800 mm (31 1/2 in.)	S
Finger tip radius	Adjustment range	766–800 mm (30 3/16–31 1/2 in.)	S
Effective reel diameter (via shaped cam action)		1.650 m (65 in.)	S
Finger length		290 mm (11 in.)	S
Finger spacing (nominal, staggered on alternate bats)		100 mm (4 in.)	S
Reel drive		Hydraulic	S
Reel speed (adjustable from cab, varies with combine model)		0–67 rpm	S
<b>FM200 Float Module</b>			
Feed draper	Width	2 m (78 11/16 in.)	S
Feed draper	Speed	107–122 m/min (350–400 fpm)	S
Feed auger	Width	1.630 m (64 1/8 in.)	S
Feed auger	Outside diameter	559 mm (22 in.)	S
Feed auger	Tube diameter	356 mm (14 in.)	S
Feed auger	Speed (varies with combine model)	191–195 rpm (varies with combine model)	S
Oil reservoir capacity		75 liters (20 US gallons)	S
Oil type		Single grade transmission/hydraulic fluid (THF).	—
THF viscosity at 40°C (104°F)		60.1 cSt	—
THF viscosity at 100°C (212°F)		9.5 cSt	—

**PRODUCT OVERVIEW**

Driveline overall length	21-tooth spline	Maximum (extended)	1524.4 mm (60 in.)	O <sub>F</sub>
Driveline overall length	21-tooth spline	Minimum (compressed)	990.7 mm (39 in.)	O <sub>F</sub>
Driveline overall length	6-tooth spline	Maximum (extended)	1546.8 mm (60 7/8 in.)	O <sub>F</sub>
Driveline overall length	6-tooth spline	Minimum (compressed)	1013 mm (39 7/8 in.)	O <sub>F</sub>
<b>Upper Cross Auger</b>				O <sub>D</sub>
Outside diameter			330 mm (13 in.)	—
Tube diameter			152 mm (6 in.)	—
<b>Stabilizer Wheel / EasyMove™ Transport</b>				O <sub>D</sub>
Wheels			38 cm (15 in.)	—
Tires			225/75 R-15	—
<b>Weight</b>				
Estimated weight range – base header with float module – variances are due to different package configurations.				
9.1 m (30 ft.) header	North America		3495 kg (7706 lb.)	
10.7 m (35 ft.) header	North America		3694–3712 kg (8146–8184 lb.)	
12.2 m (40 ft.) header	North America		3876–3979 kg (8547–8774 lb.)	
12.5 m (41 ft.) header	North America		3983–4015 kg (8783–8852 lb.)	
	Export		4,287–4,340 kg (9,452–9,569 lb.)	
13.7 m (45 ft.) header	North America		4,498–4,555 kg (9,916–10,043 lb.)	
	Export		4,635–4,692 kg (10,218–10,345 lb.)	
15.2 m (50 ft.) header	North America		4508–4551 kg (9940–10,036 lb.)	
	Export		4,853–4,916 kg (10,699–10,838 lb.)	

## 2.3 FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header Dimensions

When operating a header it is important to know the dimensions of the machine.

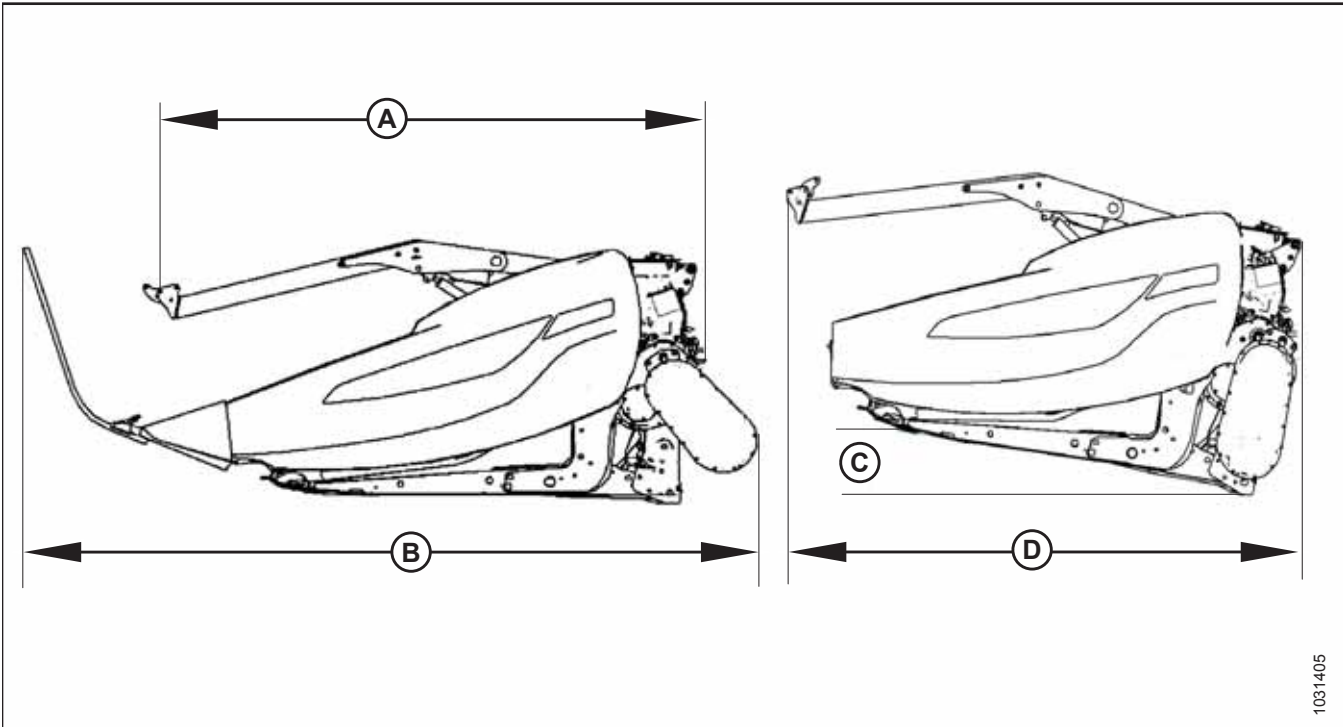


Figure 2.1: Header Dimensions

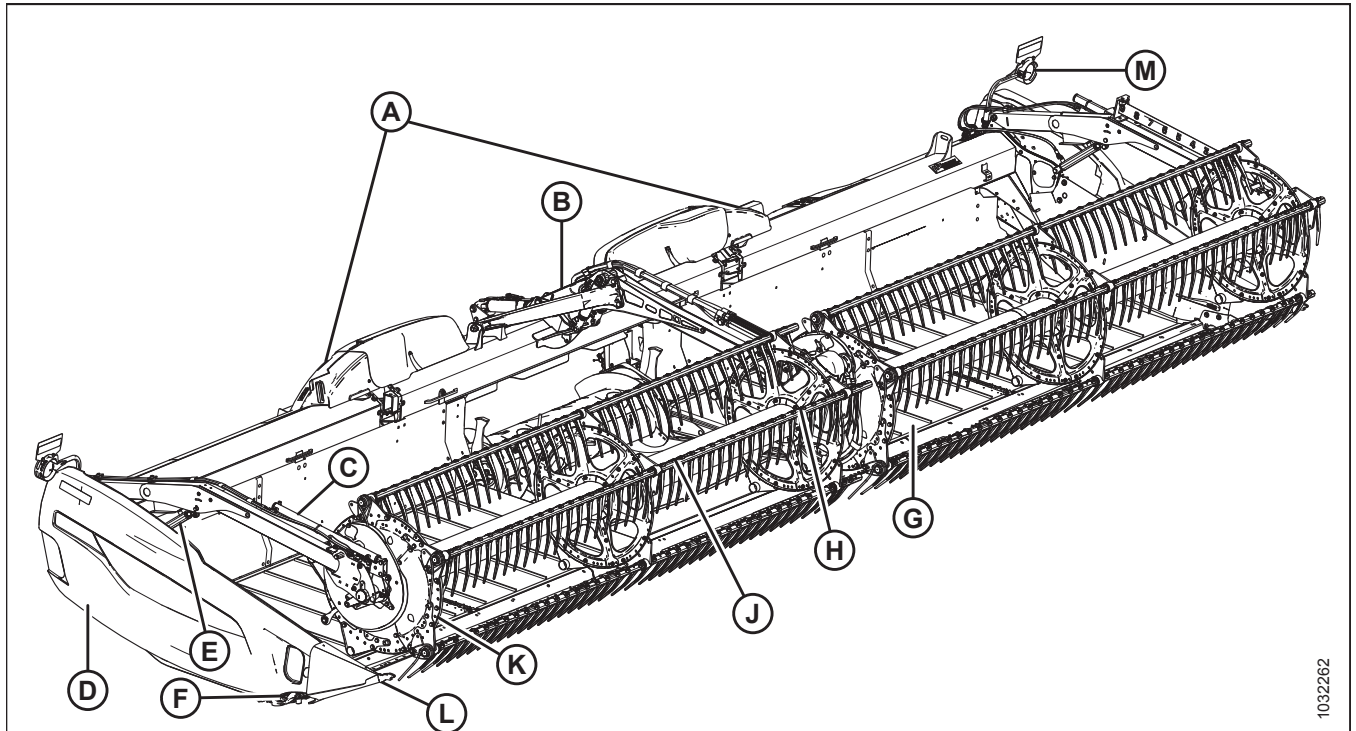
Table 2.1 Header Dimensions

Frame and Structure		
Feature Being Measured	Reference to Figure 2.1, page 24	Dimension
Header width in field mode	—	Cut width + 500 mm (19 1/5 in.)
Cutterbar width	—	Cut width - 500 mm (19 1/5 in.)
Header width in transport position with FM200 installed (shortest center-link)	(A) Gearbox rotated (storage), dividers removed (refer to 2.1, page 24)	2.6 m (103 in.)
Header width in transport position with FM200 installed (shortest center-link)	(B) Gearbox operational, standard dividers installed (refer to 2.1, page 24)	3.5 m (138 in.)
Header width in transport position with reel fully retracted and FM200 installed (shortest center-link)	Gearbox rotated, dividers removed (refer to 2.1, page 24)  Angle (C) required to achieve transport width (D)  <b>NOTE:</b> Dimension (D) can be decreased by using a transport trailer with greater angle.	8° 2.591 m (102 in.)



## 2.4 FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header Component Identification

The FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header is made up of multiple components.



1032262

Figure 2.2: FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header Components

A - Wing Float Linkage  
D - Endshield  
G - Side Draper  
K - Reel Endshield

B - Center Reel Arm  
E - Reel Lift Cylinder  
H - Center Reel Drive  
L - Crop Divider

C - Reel Fore-Aft Cylinder  
F - Knife Drive Box (inside endshield)  
J - Pick-up Reel  
M - Header Light (except Europe)

## 2.5 FM200 Float Module Component Identification

The FM200 Float Module is made up of multiple components.

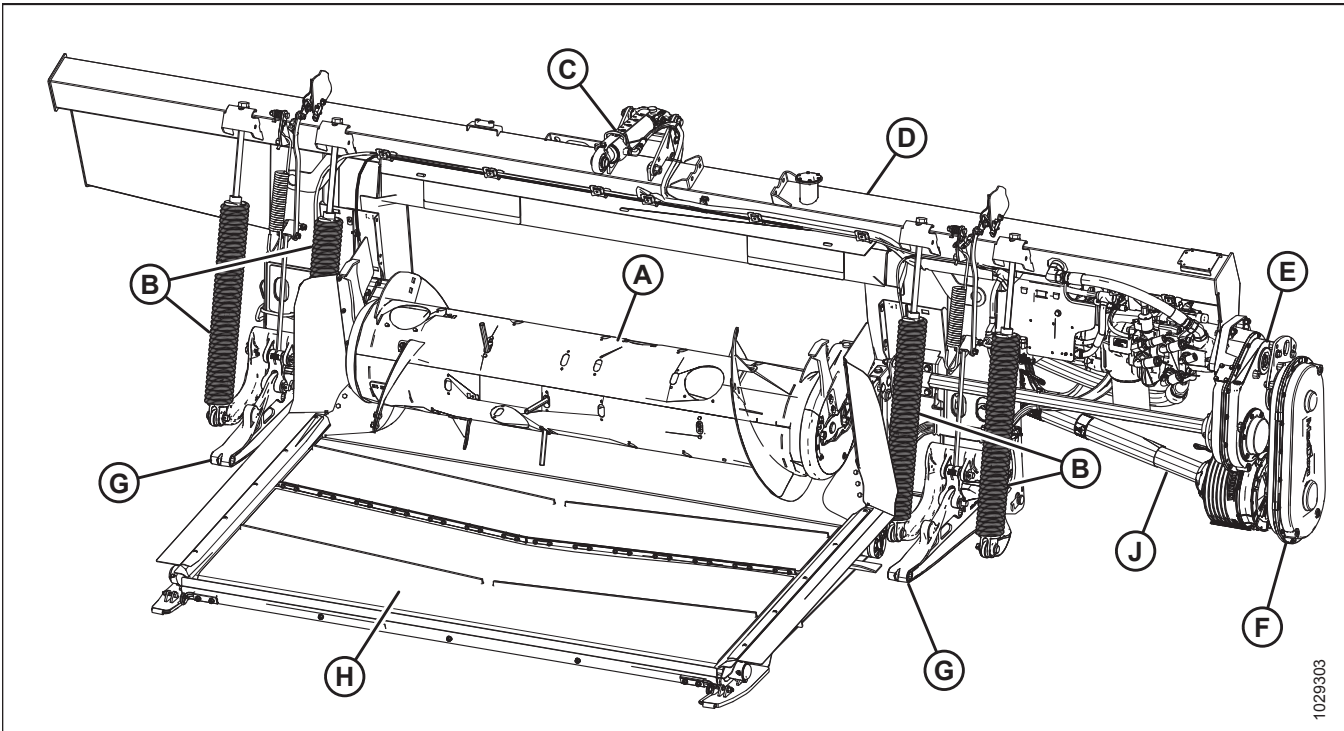


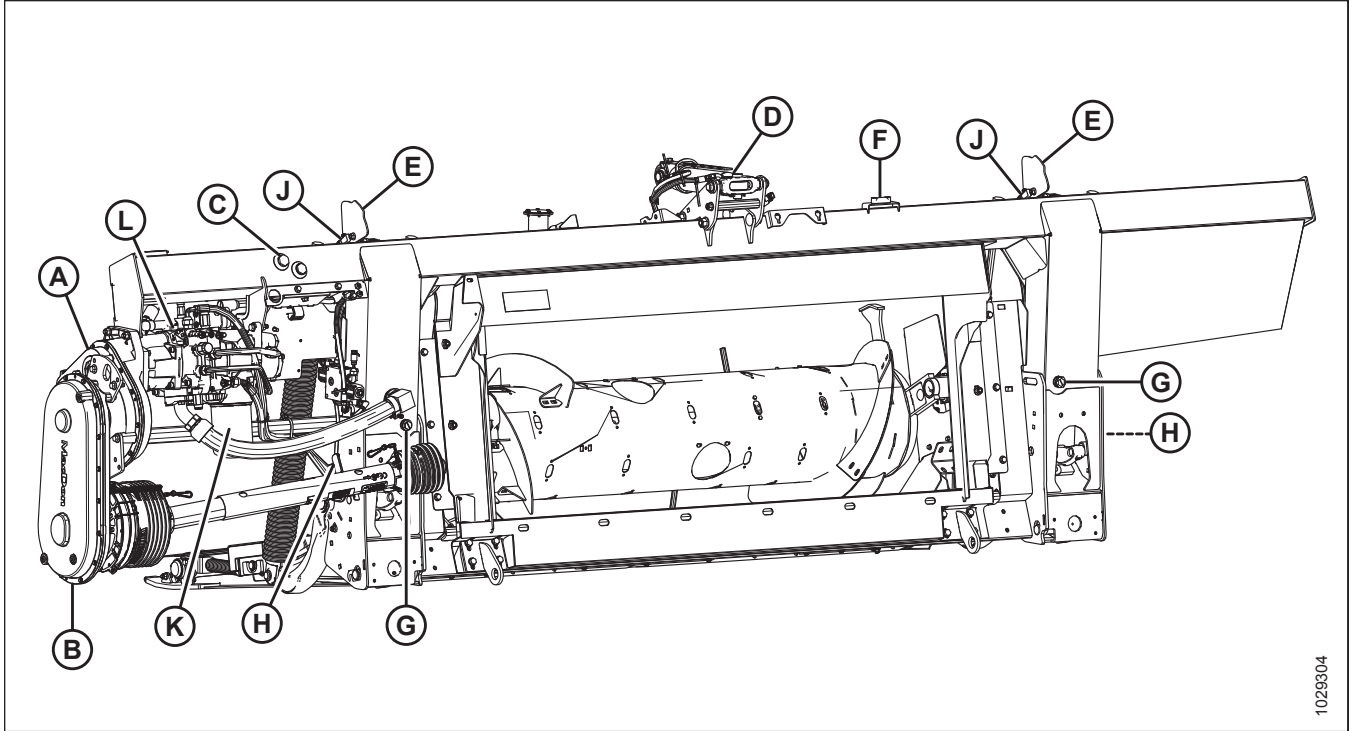
Figure 2.3: Header Side of FM200 Float Module

A - Feed Auger  
D - Hydraulic Reservoir  
G - Header Support Arms

B - Header Float Springs  
H - Feed Draper

C - Center-Link  
E - Main Gearbox  
F - Completion Gearbox  
J - Driveline

PRODUCT OVERVIEW



1029304

Figure 2.4: Combine Side of FM200 Float Module

A - Main Gearbox  
D - Center-Link  
G - Drain Plug (x2)  
K - Hydraulic Filter

B - Completion Gearbox  
E - Header Height Control Indicator (x2)  
H - Float Lock Handle (x2)  
L - Knife, Side Draper, and Feed Draper Pump

C - Reservoir Oil Level Sight Glass  
F - Bubble Level  
J - Auto Header Height Control (AHHC) Sensor (x2)



## Chapter 3: Operation

### 3.1 Owner/Operator Responsibilities



#### CAUTION

- It is your responsibility to read and understand this manual completely before operating the header. Contact your MacDon Dealer if an instruction is not clear to you.
- Follow all safety messages in the manual and on safety decals on the machine.
- Remember that YOU are the key to safety. Good safety practices protect you and the people around you.
- Before allowing someone to operate the header, for however short a time or distance, make sure they have been instructed in its safe and proper use.
- Review the manual and all safety related items with all Operators annually.
- Be alert for other Operators not using recommended procedures or not following safety precautions. Correct these mistakes immediately, before an accident occurs.
- Do NOT modify the machine. Unauthorized modifications may impair the function and/or safety of the machine and may reduce the length of service you receive from your machine.
- The safety information given in this manual does not replace safety codes, insurance needs, or laws governing your area. Be sure your machine meets the standards set by these regulations.

## 3.2 Operational Safety

### CAUTION

Adhere to the following safety precautions:

- Follow all safety and operational instructions provided in your operator's manuals. If you do not have a combine manual, get one from your Dealer and read it thoroughly.
- Never attempt to start the engine or operate the machine except from the operator's seat.
- Check the operation of all controls in a safe, clear area before starting work.
- Do NOT allow riders on the combine.



Figure 3.1: No Riders

### CAUTION

- Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.
- Avoid travelling over loose fill, rocks, ditches, or holes.
- Drive slowly through gates and doorways.
- When working on inclines, travel uphill or downhill whenever possible. Be sure to keep transmission in gear when travelling downhill.
- Never attempt to get on or off a moving machine.
- Do NOT leave operator's station while the engine is running.
- To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of a machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before adjusting or removing plugged material from the machine.
- Check for excessive vibration and unusual noises. If there is any indication of trouble, shut down and inspect the machine. Follow proper shutdown procedure. For instructions, refer to the header operator's manual.
- Operate only in daylight or good artificial light.

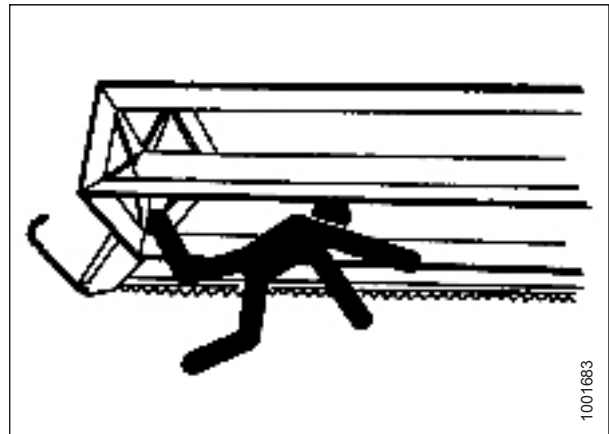


Figure 3.2: Bystander Safety

### 3.2.1 Header Safety Props

The header safety props located on the header lift cylinders prevent the lift cylinders from unexpectedly retracting and lowering the header. For instructions, refer to your combine operator's manual.

### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under header for any reason.

### 3.2.2 Reel Safety Props

The reel safety props are located on the reel support arms and prevent the reel from unexpectedly lowering.

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

#### IMPORTANT:

To prevent damage to the reel support arms, do **NOT** transport the header with the reel safety props engaged.

#### *Engaging Reel Safety Props*

##### *Outer reel arms*

1. Raise reel to maximum height.
2. Lift up on safety prop (A) and push forward to remove prop off hook (B).

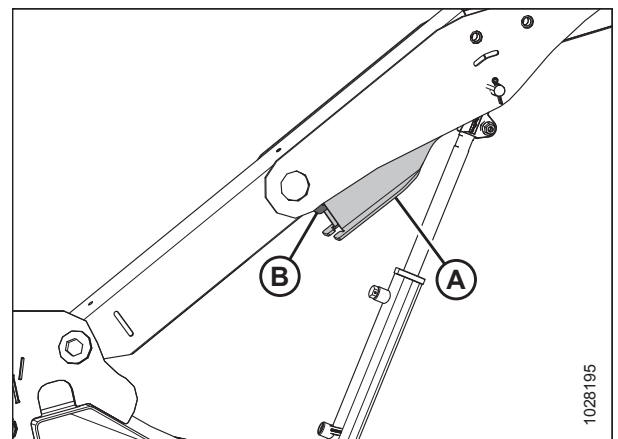


Figure 3.3: Outer Right Arm

3. Lower safety prop (A) and engage on the cylinder shaft as shown. Repeat on the opposite arm.

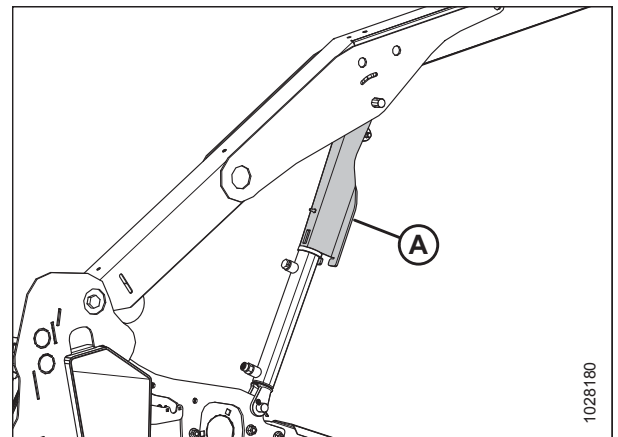


Figure 3.4: Engaged Reel Safety Prop – Outer Right Arm

## OPERATION

### Center reel arm

4. Rotate handle (A) to release the spring tension and allow the spring to guide the pin into the locked position.

#### NOTE:

For triple-reel headers, the illustration shows the center right arm. The center left arm is opposite.

5. On triple-reel headers, repeat previous step on the center left arm.
6. Lower reel until safety props contact the outer arm cylinder mounts and the center arm pins.

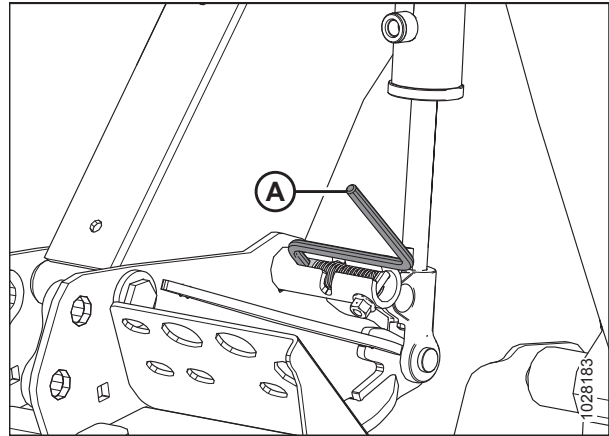


Figure 3.5: Engaged Reel Safety Prop – Center Arm

### Disengaging Reel Safety Props

#### Outer reel arms

1. Raise the reel to its maximum height.
2. Move reel safety prop (A) up onto hook (B) under the reel arm. Repeat on the opposite arm.

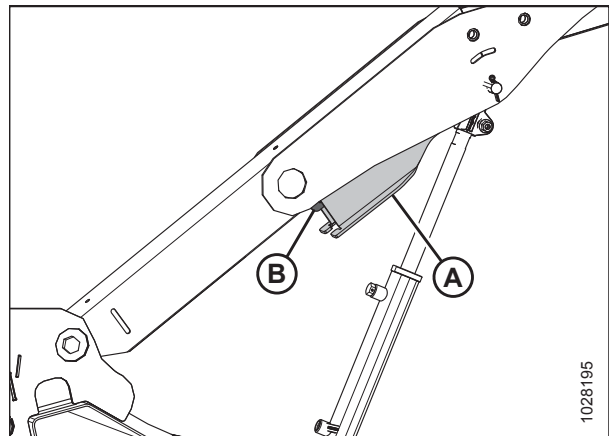


Figure 3.6: Reel Safety Prop – Right Outer Arm

#### Center reel arm

3. Move handle (A) outboard and into slot (B) to put the pin in the unlocked position.
4. On triple-reel headers, repeat previous step on the center left arm.

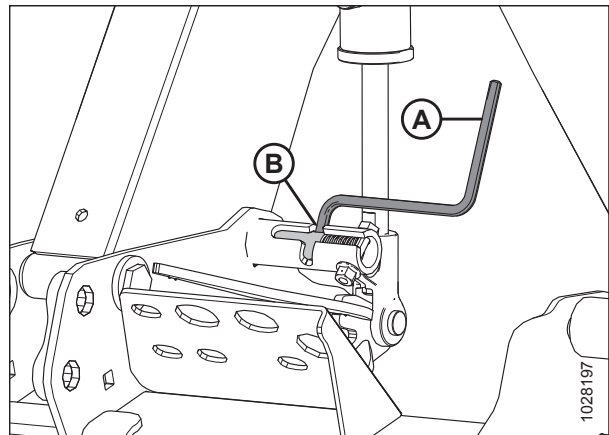


Figure 3.7: Reel Safety Prop – Center Arm



### 3.2.3 Header Endshields

A hinged, polyethylene endshield is fitted on each end of the header.

#### Opening Header Endshields

1. Push release lever (B) using access hole (A) on the backside of the header endshield to unlock the shield.

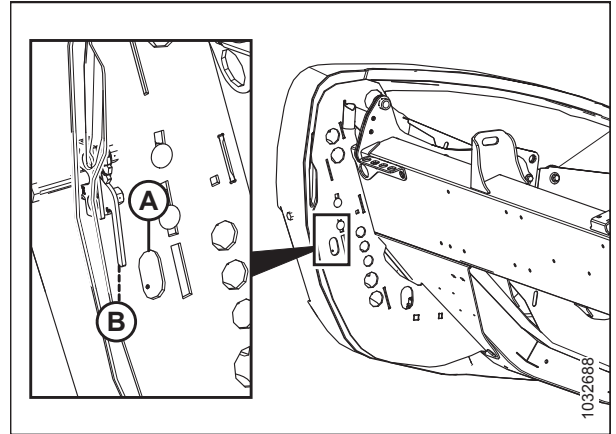


Figure 3.8: Left Header Endshield

2. Pull header endshield (A) open. The header endshield is retained by tab (B) and will open in direction (C).

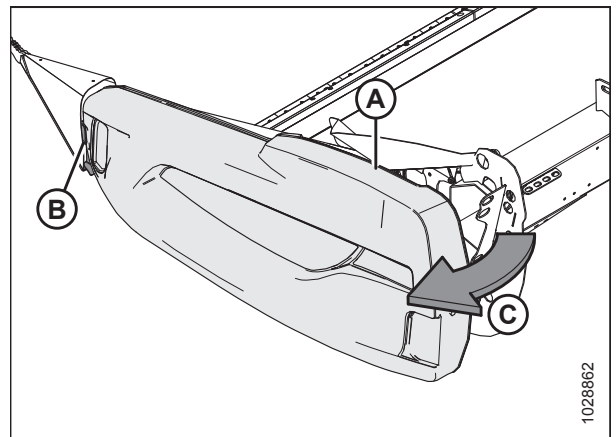


Figure 3.9: Left Header Endshield

3. If additional clearance is required, pull the header endshield free of tab (A) and the swing shield toward the rear of the header.
4. Engage safety latch (B) on hinge arm (C) to secure the shield in the fully open position.

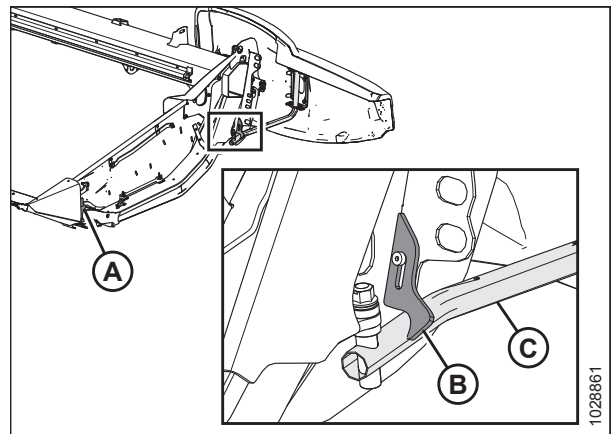


Figure 3.10: Left Header Endshield

## OPERATION

### Closing Header Endshields

1. If the endshield is fully opened and secured behind the header, disengage lock (A) to allow header endshield (B) to move.
2. Rotate header endshield toward the front of the header.

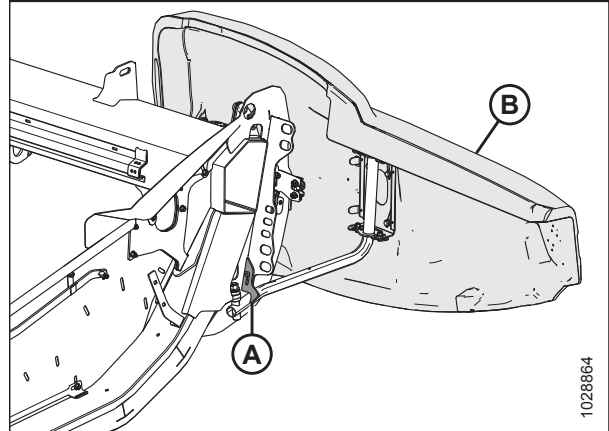


Figure 3.11: Left Header Endshield

3. While closing, ensure header endshield (A) does not contact the top of endsheet (B). If adjustment is required, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Endshields, page 35](#).

#### IMPORTANT:

The aluminum endsheet will be damaged if the weight of the plastic endshield rests on it.

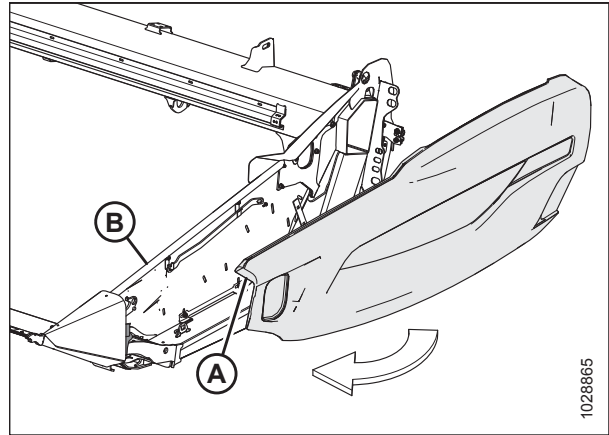


Figure 3.12: Left Header Endshield

4. Insert the front of the header endshield behind hinge tab (B) and into the divider cone.
5. Swing the header endshield in direction (A) into closed position. Engage two-stage latch (C) with a firm push.

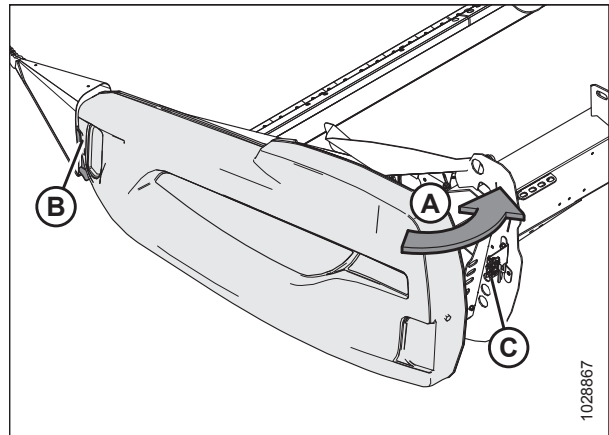


Figure 3.13: Left Header Endshield

## OPERATION

### IMPORTANT:

Check that the header endshield is locked. Ensure bolt (A) is fully engaged on two-stage latch (B) to prevent the header endshield from opening while operating the header.

### NOTE:

The header endshield is transparent in the illustration to show the latch.

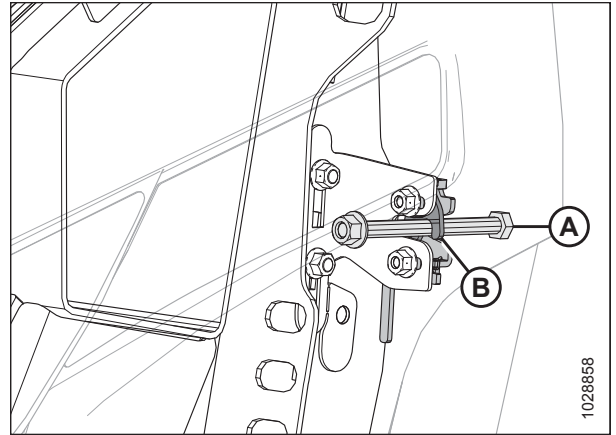


Figure 3.14: Two-Stage Latch

### Checking and Adjusting Header Endshields

Header endshields are subject to expansion or contraction caused by large temperature variations. The position of the header endshield can be adjusted to compensate for dimensional changes.

### IMPORTANT:

Damage to the aluminum endsheet will result if the weight of the plastic header endshield rests on it.

1. Check if gap (A) between header endshield (B) and endsheet (C) is 1–3 mm (0.04–0.12 in.).

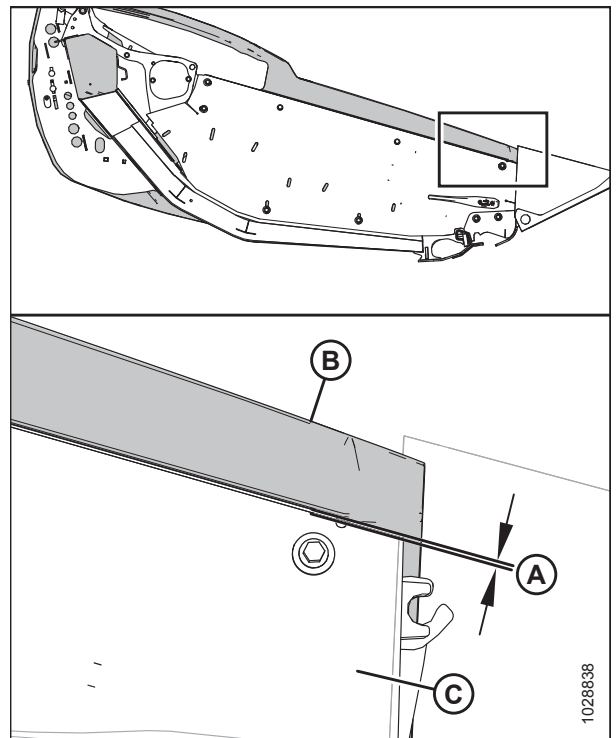


Figure 3.15: Gap between Header Endshield and Endsheet

## OPERATION

2. If adjustment is required, adjust support bracket (A) as follows:
  - a. Loosen bolts (B).
  - b. Move support bracket (A) up or down as required to achieve correct clearance.
  - c. Retighten hardware.

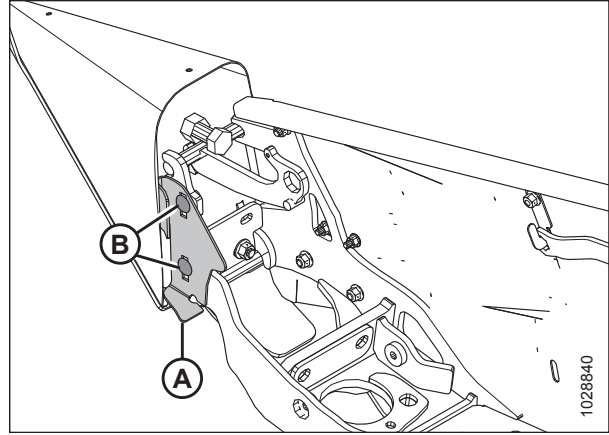


Figure 3.16: Header Endshield Support Bracket

3. Check if gap (A) between front of the header endshield and support bracket (B) is 6–10 mm (1/4–3/8 in.).

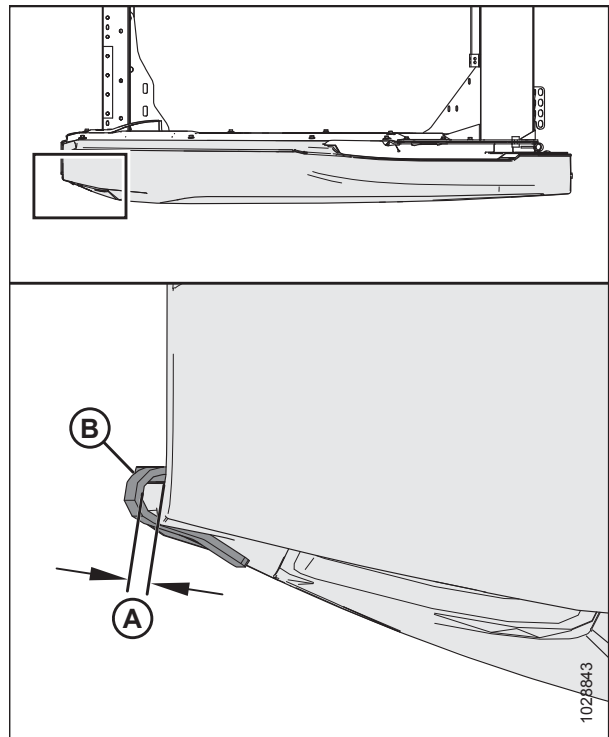


Figure 3.17: Gap between Header Endshield and Support Bracket

## OPERATION

4. If adjustment is required, adjust the position of hinge arm (A) as follows:
  - a. Loosen four nuts (B).
  - b. Slide brackets (C) and hinge arm (A) fore or aft as required to achieve correct clearance.
  - c. Retighten hardware.

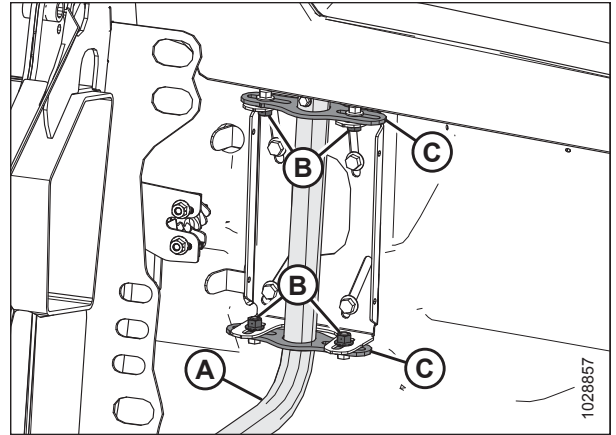


Figure 3.18: Left Header Endshield

### IMPORTANT:

After making adjustments, ensure bolt (A) is fully engaged on two-stage latch (B) to prevent the header endshield from opening during operation.

### NOTE:

The header endshield is shown transparent in the illustration.

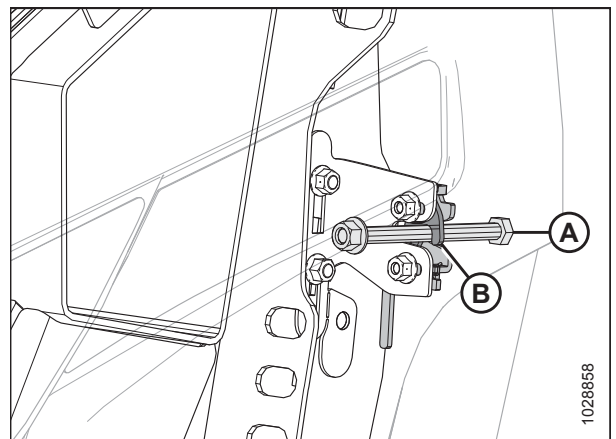


Figure 3.19: Two-Stage Latch

### Removing Header Endshields

1. Fully open the header endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 33](#).
2. Engage latch (A) to prevent endshield movement.
3. Remove self-tapping screw (B).
4. Slide header endshield upwards and remove from hinge arm (C).
5. Place header endshield away from work area.

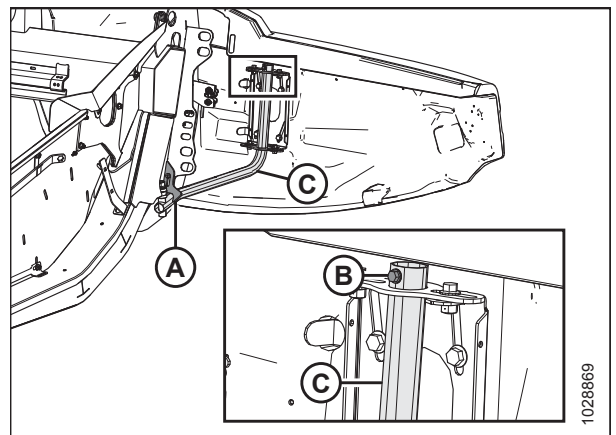


Figure 3.20: Left Header Endshield

## OPERATION

### Installing Header Endshields

1. Guide header endshield onto hinge arm (C) and slowly slide it downwards.
2. Install self-tapping screw (B).
3. Disengage latch (A) to allow header endshield movement.
4. Close header endshield. For instructions, refer to [Closing Header Endshields, page 34](#).

#### NOTE:

Header endshields may expand or contract when subjected to large temperature changes. The header endshield position can be adjusted to compensate for dimensional changes. For instructions, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Endshields, page 35](#).

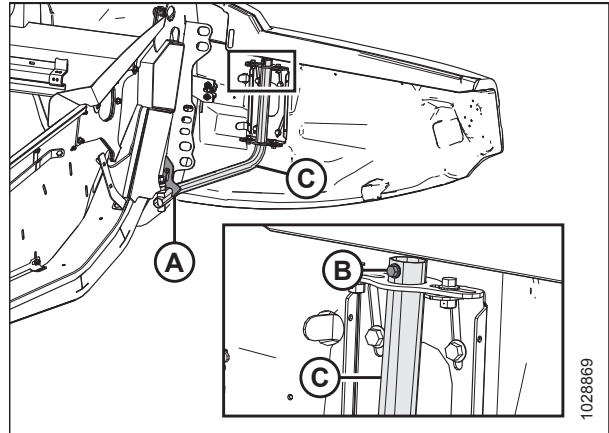


Figure 3.21: Left Header Endshield

### 3.2.4 Reel Drive Cover

The reel drive cover protects the reel drive components from dirt and debris.

#### Removing Reel Drive Cover



#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Start the engine.
2. Adjust the reel fully forward.
3. Lower the header fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Rotate spring latch (A) up and over the back plate.

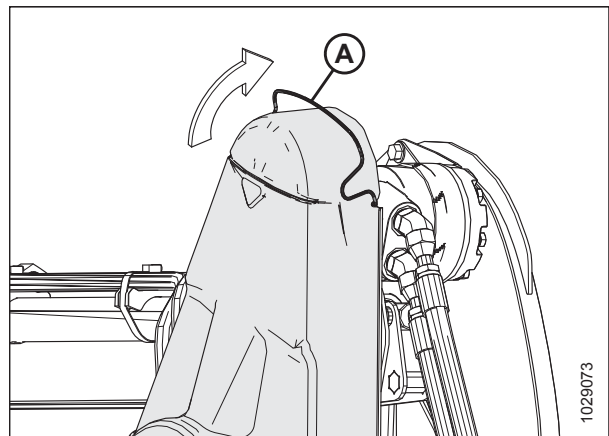


Figure 3.22: Upper Drive Cover

## OPERATION

6. Unclip upper cover (A) from the lower cover at locations (B), and remove the upper cover. Keep the two clips engaged on the lower cover.

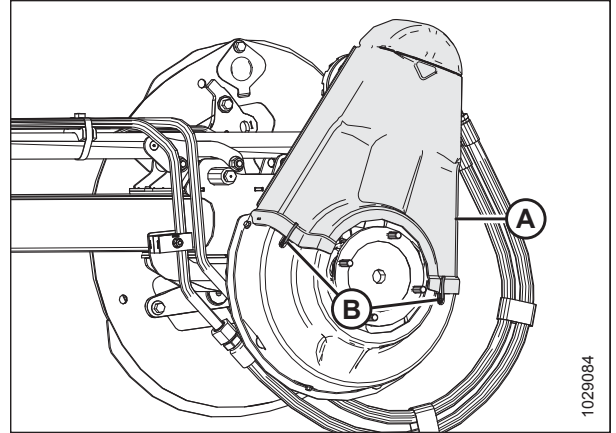


Figure 3.23: Upper Drive Cover

7. If necessary, remove lower cover (B), by removing three bolts (A).

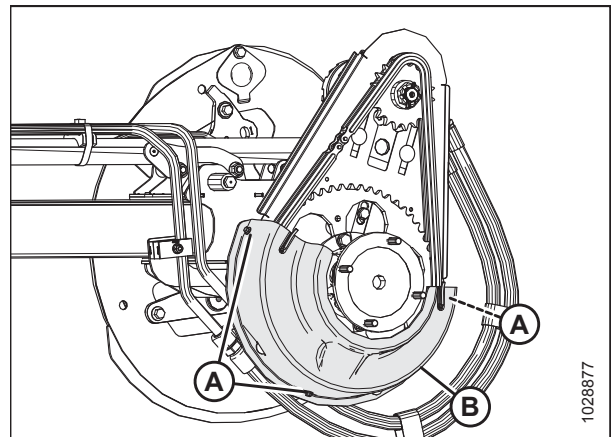


Figure 3.24: Lower Drive Cover

### Installing Reel Drive Cover

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Position lower drive cover (B) (if previously removed) onto the reel drive, and secure with three bolts (A).

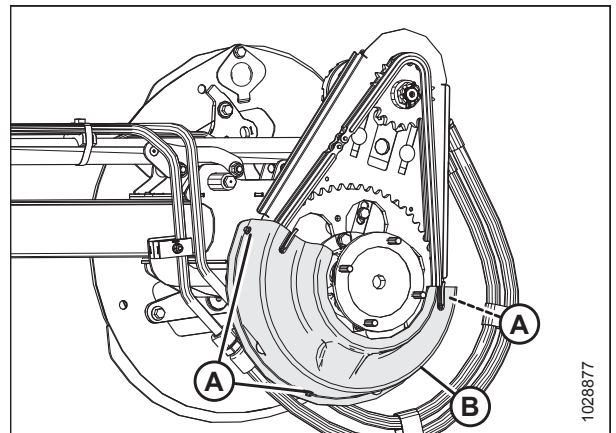


Figure 3.25: Lower Drive Cover

## OPERATION

3. Position upper cover (A) onto the reel drive, and secure in place using two clips (B) on the lower cover.

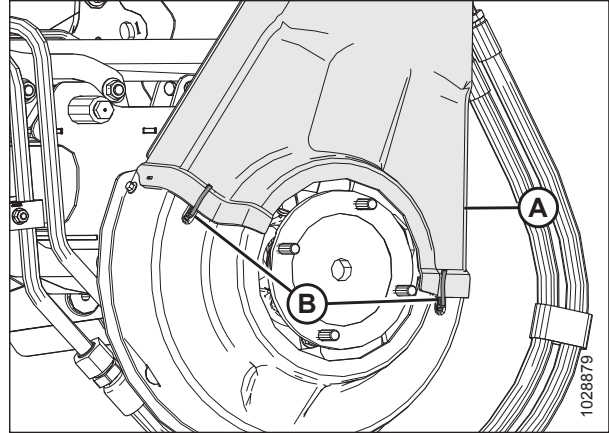


Figure 3.26: Upper Drive Cover

4. Rotate spring latch (A) down to secure the upper cover to the reel drive. Ensure V-shaped loop (C) points down, and the spring end remains inserted into back plate hole (B) on both sides of the reel drive.

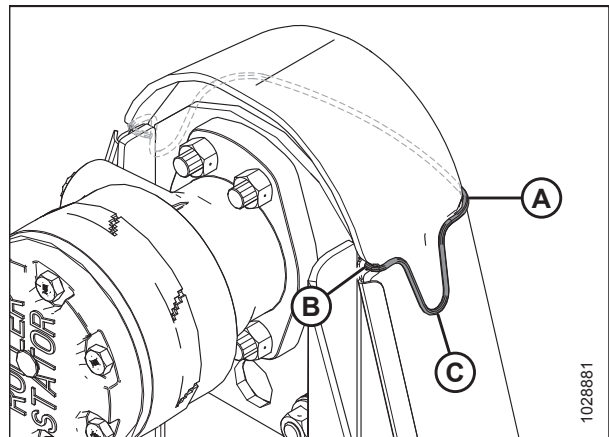


Figure 3.27: Reel Drive

### 3.2.5 Flex Linkage Cover

Plastic covers are attached to the header frame to protect the header wing balance mechanism from debris and weather.

#### *Removing Flex Linkage Covers*

#### **DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Lower the header fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.



## OPERATION

3. Remove hair pin (A) and lynch pin (B) that secure flex linkage cover (C) to the backtube.
4. Slide the flex linkage cover inboard, then lift the flex linkage cover upward to remove.

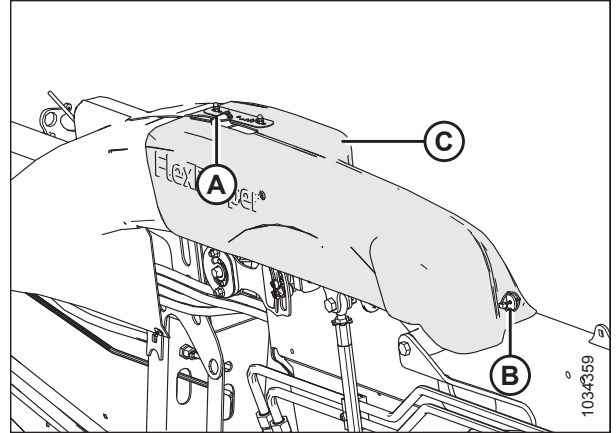


Figure 3.28: Flex Linkage Cover – Left Side

### Installing Flex Linkage Covers

1. Lower flex linkage cover (A) over the linkage. Ensure slots (B) line up with tabs (C) and (D).
2. Slide the flex linkage cover outboard so tab (D) extends beyond slot.

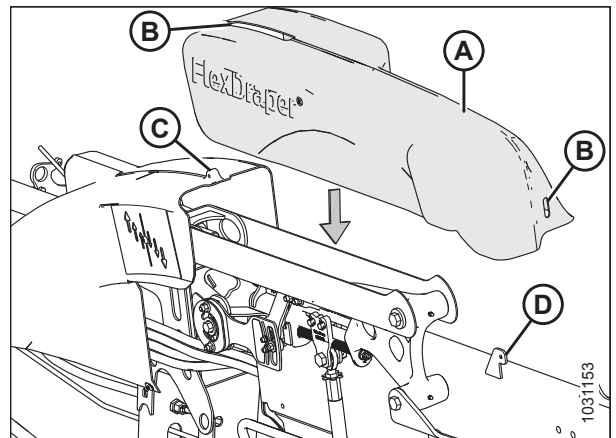


Figure 3.29: Flex Linkage Cover – Left Side

3. Secure flex linkage cover (C) in place with hair pin (A), and lynch pin (B).

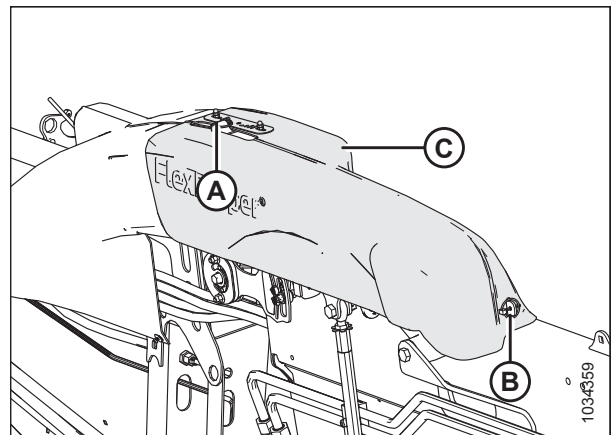


Figure 3.30: Flex Linkage Cover – Left Side

### 3.2.6 Daily Start-Up Check

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Clear the area of other persons, pets, etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.
- Wear close-fitting clothing and protective shoes with slip-resistant soles.
- Remove foreign objects from the machine and surrounding area.
- Carry with you any protective clothing and personal safety devices that could be necessary through the day. Do NOT take chances. You may need a hard hat, protective glasses or goggles, heavy gloves, a respirator or filter mask, or wet weather gear.
- Protect against noise. Wear a suitable hearing protective device such as ear muffs or ear plugs to protect against objectionable or uncomfortably loud noises.



Figure 3.31: Safety Devices

Complete the following tasks each day before start-up:

1. Check the machine for leaks and any parts that are missing, broken, or not working correctly.

**NOTE:**

Use proper procedure when searching for pressurized fluid leaks. For instructions, refer to [5.2.5 Checking Hydraulic Hoses and Lines, page 423](#).

2. Clean all lights and reflectors on the machine.
3. Perform all daily maintenance. For instructions, refer to [5.2.1 Maintenance Schedule/Record, page 418](#).

### 3.3 Break-in Period

#### **WARNING**

Before investigating an unusual sound or attempting to correct a problem, shut off the engine and remove the key.

#### **NOTE:**

Until you become familiar with the sound and feel of your new header, be extra alert and attentive.

After attaching the header to the combine for the first time, follow these steps:

1. Operate the machine with the reels, drapers, and knives running slowly for 5 minutes. Watch and listen **FROM THE OPERATOR'S SEAT** for binding or interfering parts.

#### **NOTE:**

Reels and side drapers will not operate until oil flow fills the lines.

2. Refer to [5.2.2 Break-In Inspection, page 421](#) and perform all specified tasks.

## 3.4 Shutting down the Combine

Before leaving the operator's seat for any reason, shut down the combine.

### DANGER

**To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.**

To shut down the combine, do the following:

1. Park on level ground whenever possible.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Place all controls in NEUTRAL or PARK.
4. Disengage the header drive.
5. Lower and fully retract the reel.
6. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
7. Wait for all movement to stop.

## 3.5 Cab Controls

### **WARNING**

Be sure all bystanders are clear of machine before starting engine or engaging any header drives.

For instructions, refer to your combine operator's manual for identification of the following in-cab controls:

- Header engage/disengage control
- Header height
- Header angle
- Ground speed
- Reel speed
- Reel height
- Reel fore-aft position

## 3.6 Header Setup

### 3.6.1 Header Attachments

Several optional attachments that can improve your header's performance are available. Optional attachments can be ordered and installed by your MacDon Dealer.

Refer to *6 Options and Attachments, page 631* for descriptions of available items.

### 3.6.2 Header Settings

The following tables provide a guideline for setting up the FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header; however, the suggested settings can be changed to suit various crops and conditions not covered in the tables.

For reel settings, refer to *3.6.4 Reel Settings, page 59*.

For FM200 auger configurations, refer to *4.1 FM200 Feed Auger Configurations, page 321*.

**NOTE:**

Increase side draper speed for increased performance due to increased crop material or due to increased ground speed.

Table 3.1 Recommended FD2 Series / FM200 Draper Header Settings for Cereals

Stubble Height	102 (<4)									
Stabilizer Wheels <sup>1</sup>	Storage									
Skid Shoe Position	Up or middle									
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting <sup>2</sup>	Header Angle <sup>3,4</sup>	Reel Cam	Reel Speed % <sup>5</sup>	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger			
Light	Off	8	B – C	3	10–15	6 or 7	Not required			
Normal	On	7	B – C	2	10	6 or 7	Not required			
Heavy	On	7	B – C	2	10	6 or 7	Recommended			
Lodged	Off	7	B – C	3 or 4	5–10	4 or 5	Not required			
Stubble Height	102–203 (4–8)									
Stabilizer Wheels	As required									
Skid Shoe Position	Down for lodged crop conditions, middle or down for other crop conditions									
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting <sup>2</sup>	Header Angle <sup>3,4</sup>	Reel Cam	Reel Speed % <sup>5</sup>	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger			
Light	Off	8	B – C	4	10–15	6 or 7	Not required			
Normal	On	7	A	2	10	6 or 7	Not required			
Heavy	On	7	A	2	10	6 or 7	Recommended			
Lodged	Off	7	D	3 or 4	5–10	4 or 5	Not required			

1. Stabilizer wheels are used to limit the side-to-side movement when cutting off the ground in rolling terrain and to minimize bouncing.
2. Setting on FM200 draper control.
3. Set header angle as shallow as possible (setting A) with center-link and skid shoes while maintaining cutting height.
4. Cutting height is controlled with a combination of skid shoes and header angle.
5. Percentage above ground speed.

Table 3.1 Recommended FD2 Series / FM200 Draper Header Settings for Cereals (continued)

Stubble Height	203+ (8+)							
Stabilizer Wheels	As required							
Skid Shoe Position	Not applicable							
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting <sup>2</sup>	Header Angle <sup>3, 4</sup>	Reel Cam	Reel Speed % <sup>5</sup>	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger	
Light	Off	8	A	4	10-15	6 or 7	Not required	
Normal	On	7	A	2	10	6 or 7	Not required	
Heavy	On	7	B - C	2	10	6 or 7	Not required	
Lodged	Off	7	B - C	3 or 4	5-10	4 or 5	Not required	



Table 3.2 Recommended FD2 Series / FM200 Draper Header Settings for Lentils

Stubble Height	On ground									
Stabilizer Wheels <sup>6</sup>	Storage									
Skid Shoe Position	Up or middle									
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting <sup>7</sup>	Header Angle <sup>8,9</sup>	Reel Cam	Reel Speed % <sup>10</sup>	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger			
Light	On	8	B – C	2	5–10	6 or 7	Not required			
Normal	On	7	B – C	2	10	6 or 7	Not required			
Heavy	On	7	B – C	2	10	6 or 7	Not required			
Lodged	On	7	D	2	5–10	6 or 7	Not required			

6. Stabilizer wheels are used to limit the side-to-side movement when cutting off the ground in rolling terrain and to minimize bouncing.
7. Setting on FM200 draper control.
8. Set header angle as shallow as possible (setting A) with center-link and skid shoes while maintaining cutting height.
9. Cutting height is controlled with a combination of skid shoes and header angle.
10. Percentage above ground speed.

Table 3.3 Recommended FD2 Series / FM200 Draper Header Settings for Peas

Stubble Height	On ground							
Stabilizer Wheels <sup>11</sup>	Storage							
Skid Shoe Position	Up or middle							
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting <sup>12</sup>	Header Angle <sup>13, 14</sup>	Reel Cam	Reel Speed % <sup>15</sup>	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger	
Light	On	7	B – C	2	5–10	6 or 7	Recommended	
Normal	On	7	B – C	2	10	6 or 7	Recommended	
Heavy	On	7	B – C	2	10	4 or 5	Recommended	
Lodged	On	7	D	2	5–10	4 or 5	Recommended	

11. Stabilizer wheels are used to limit the side-to-side movement when cutting off the ground in rolling terrain and to minimize bouncing.
12. Setting on FM200 draper control.
13. Set header angle as shallow as possible (setting A) with center-link and skid shoes while maintaining cutting height.
14. Cutting height is controlled with a combination of skid shoes and header angle.
15. Percentage above ground speed.

Table 3.4 Recommended FD2 Series / FM200 Draper Header Settings for Canola

Stubble Height	102–203 (4–8)										
Stabilizer Wheels <sup>16</sup>	As required										
Skid Shoe Position	Down for light or heavy crop conditions, middle or down for normal or lodged crop conditions										
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting <sup>17</sup>	Header Angle <sup>18, 19</sup>	Reel Cam	Reel Speed % <sup>20</sup>	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger	Light	Normal	Heavy	Lodged
Light	On	7	A	2	5–10	6 or 7	Recommended				
Normal	On	7	B – C	1	10	6 or 7	Recommended				
Heavy	On	8	B – C	1	10	3 or 4	Recommended				
Lodged	On	7	D	2	5–10	3 or 4	Recommended				
Stubble Height	203+ (8+)										
Stabilizer Wheels <sup>16</sup>	As required										
Skid Shoe Position	Not applicable										
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting <sup>17</sup>	Header Angle <sup>18, 19</sup>	Reel Cam	Reel Speed % <sup>20</sup>	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger	Light	Normal	Heavy	Lodged
Light	On	7	A	2	5–10	6 or 7	Recommended				
Normal	On	7	B – C	2	10	6 or 7	Recommended				
Heavy	On	8	B – C	1 or 2	10	3 or 4	Recommended				
Lodged	On	7	D	2 or 3	5–10	3 or 4	Recommended				

16. Stabilizer wheels are used to limit the side-to-side movement when cutting off the ground in rolling terrain and to minimize bouncing.

17. Setting on FM200 draper control.

18. Set header angle as shallow as possible (setting A) with center-link and skid shoes while maintaining cutting height.

19. Cutting height is controlled with a combination of skid shoes and header angle.

20. Percentage above ground speed.

Table 3.5 Recommended FD2 Series / FM200 Draper Header Settings for California Rice

Stubble Height	102 (<4)						
Stabilizer Wheels <sup>21</sup>	Storage						
Skid Shoe Position	Up or middle						
Crop Condition	Divider Rods <sup>22</sup>	Draper Speed Setting <sup>23</sup>	Header Angle <sup>24, 25</sup>	Reel Cam	Reel Speed % <sup>26</sup>	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger
Light	Rice divider rod	4	D	2	10-15	6 or 7	Not required
Normal	Rice divider rod	4	B - C	2	10	4 or 5	Not required
Heavy	Rice divider rod	4	B - C	2	10	4 or 5	Not required
Lodged	Rice divider rod	4	D	2	5-10	4 or 5	Not required
Stubble Height	102-203 (4-8)						
Stabilizer Wheels <sup>21</sup>	As required						
Skid Shoe Position	Middle or down						
Crop Condition	Divider Rods <sup>22</sup>	Draper Speed Setting <sup>23</sup>	Header Angle <sup>24, 25</sup>	Reel Cam	Reel Speed % <sup>26</sup>	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger
Light	Rice divider rod	4	D	3	10-15	6 or 7	Not required
Normal	Rice divider rod	4	B - C	3	10	6 or 7	Not required
Heavy	Rice divider rod	4	B - C	3	10	6 or 7	Not required
Lodged	Rice divider rod	4	D	4	5-10	6 or 7	Not required

21. Stabilizer wheels are used to limit the side-to-side movement when cutting off the ground in rolling terrain and to minimize bouncing.  
 22. The rice divider rod is available. Rice divider rod not required on both ends of header.  
 23. Setting on FM200 draper control.  
 24. Set header angle as shallow as possible (setting A) with center-link and skid shoes while maintaining cutting height.  
 25. Cutting height is controlled with a combination of skid shoes and header angle.  
 26. Percentage above ground speed.

Table 3.5 Recommended FD2 Series / FM200 Draper Header Settings for California Rice (continued)

Stubble Height	203+ (8+)						
Stabilizer Wheels <sup>21</sup>	As required						
Skid Shoe Position	Not applicable						
Crop Condition	Divider Rods <sup>22</sup>	Draper Speed Setting <sup>23</sup>	Header Angle <sup>24, 25</sup>	Reel Cam	Reel Speed % <sup>26</sup>	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger
Light	Rice divider rod	4	A	3	10-15	6 or 7	Not required
Normal	Rice divider rod	4	B - C	3	10	6 or 7	Not required
Heavy	Rice divider rod	4	B - C	3	10	6 or 7	Not required
Lodged	Rice divider rod	4	D	4	5-10	6 or 7	Not required

Table 3.6 Recommended FD2 Series / FM200 Draper Header Settings for Delta Rice

51-152 (2-6)									
Stubble Height	51-152 (2-6)								
Stabilizer Wheels <sup>27</sup>	As required								
Skid Shoe Position	Middle or down								
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting <sup>28</sup>	Header Angle <sup>29, 30</sup>	Reel Cam	Reel Speed % <sup>31</sup>	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger		
Light	Off	6	D	2 or 3	10-15	6 or 7	Not required		
Normal	Off	6	B - C	2 or 3	10	6 or 7	Not required		
Heavy	Off	6	B - C	2 or 3	10	6 or 7	Not required		
Lodged	Off	6	D	3 or 4	5-10	4 or 5	Not required		
Stubble Height	152+ (6+)								
Stabilizer Wheels <sup>27</sup>	As required								
Skid Shoe Position	Not applicable								
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting <sup>28</sup>	Header Angle <sup>29, 30</sup>	Reel Cam	Reel Speed % <sup>31</sup>	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger		
Light	Off	6	A	2 or 3	10-15	6 or 7	Not required		
Normal	Off	6	B - C	2 or 3	10	6 or 7	Not required		
Heavy	Off	6	B - C	2 or 3	10	6 or 7	Not required		
Lodged	Off	6	D	3 or 4	5-10	4 or 5	Not required		

27. Stabilizer wheels are used to limit the side-to-side movement when cutting off the ground in rolling terrain and to minimize bouncing.

28. Setting on FM200 draper control.

29. Set header angle as shallow as possible (setting A) with center-link and skid shoes while maintaining cutting height.

30. Cutting height is controlled with a combination of skid shoes and header angle.

31. Percentage above ground speed.

Table 3.7 Recommended FD2 Series / FM200 Draper Header Settings for Edible Beans

Stubble Height	On ground						
Stabilizer Wheels <sup>32</sup>	Storage						
Skid Shoe Position	Up or middle						
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting <sup>33</sup>	Header Angle <sup>34, 35</sup>	Reel Cam	Reel Speed % <sup>36</sup>	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger
Light	On	8	D	2	5-10	6 or 7	Not required
Normal	On	7	B - C	2	10	6 or 7	Not required
Heavy	On	7	B - C	2	10	6 or 7	Not required
Lodged	On	7	D	2	5-10	6 or 7	Not required

32. Stabilizer wheels are used to limit the side-to-side movement when cutting off the ground in rolling terrain and to minimize bouncing.

33. Setting on FM200 draper control.

34. Set header angle as shallow as possible (setting A) with center-link and skid shoes while maintaining cutting height.

35. Cutting height is controlled with a combination of skid shoes and header angle.

36. Percentage above ground speed.

Table 3.8 Recommended FD2 Series / FM200 Draper Header Settings for Flax

Stubble Height	51-153 (2-6)						
Stabilizer Wheels <sup>37</sup>	As required						
Skid Shoe Position	Down for lodged crop conditions, middle or down for other crop conditions						
Crop Condition	Divider Rods	Draper Speed Setting <sup>38</sup>	Header Angle <sup>39, 40</sup>	Reel Cam	Reel Speed % <sup>41</sup>	Reel Position	Upper Cross Auger
Light	On	8	B - C	2	5-10	6 or 7	Not required
Normal	On	7	A	2	10	6 or 7	Not required
Heavy	On	7	B - C	2	10	6 or 7	Not required
Lodged	On	7	D	2	5-10	6 or 7	Not required

37. Stabilizer wheels are used to limit the side-to-side movement when cutting off the ground in rolling terrain and to minimize bouncing.

38. Setting on FM200 draper control.

39. Set header angle as shallow as possible (setting A) with center-link and skid shoes while maintaining cutting height.

40. Cutting height is controlled with a combination of skid shoes and header angle.

41. Percentage above ground speed.



### 3.6.3 Optimizing Header for Straight Combining Canola

Ripe canola can be straight combined, but most varieties are very susceptible to shelling and subsequent seed loss. This section provides recommended attachments, settings, and adjustments to optimize FD2 Series FlexDraper® Headers for straight combining canola.

#### **Recommended attachments**

The optimization includes the following modifications to the header:

- Installing a full-length upper cross auger
- Installing vertical knives

#### **NOTE:**

Each kit includes installation instructions and the necessary hardware. For more information, refer to [6 Options and Attachments, page 631](#).

#### **Recommended settings**

Optimizing the header requires adjustments to the following settings:

- Loosen auger spring tension. For instructions, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Feed Auger Springs, page 57](#).
- Setting reel speed equal to ground speed and increase as required. For instructions, refer to [3.7.6 Reel Speed, page 99](#).
- Set the side draper speed to position six on in-cab side draper speed control. For instructions, refer to [3.7.8 Side Draper Speed, page 101](#).
- Adjusting reel height so that fingers just engage the crop. For instructions, refer to [3.7.10 Reel Height, page 105](#).
- Adjusting reel fore-aft position. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 111](#).
- Moving the reel fore-aft cylinders to the alternative aft location. For instructions, refer to [Repositioning Fore-Aft Cylinders – Double Reel, page 111](#) or [Repositioning Fore-Aft Cylinders – Triple Reel, page 115](#).
- Setting reel cam to position 1. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Reel Cam, page 123](#).
- Set auger to floating position. For instructions, refer to [3.7.16 Setting Auger Position, page 133](#).

#### **Checking and Adjusting Feed Auger Springs**

The feed auger has an adjustable spring tensioning system that allows the auger to float on top of the crop instead of crushing and damaging it. The factory-set tension is adequate for most crop conditions.



#### **DANGER**

**To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop engine, remove key, and engage safety props before going under header for any reason.**

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Raise the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the header safety props.

## OPERATION

5. Check the thread length protruding past nut (A). Length should be 22–26 mm (7/8–1 in.).

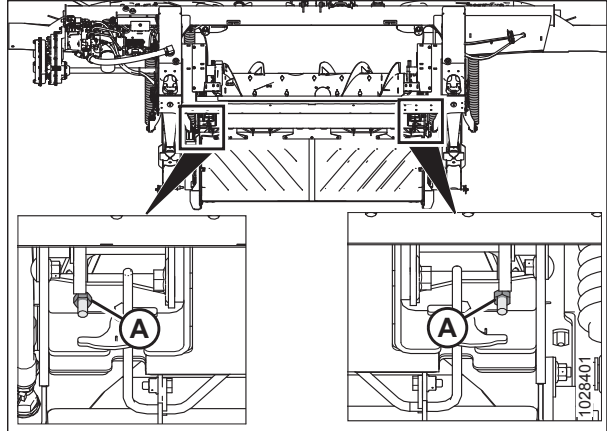


Figure 3.32: Spring Tensioner

*If adjustment is required, follow these steps:*

1. Loosen upper jam nut (A) on the spring tensioner.  
**NOTE:**  
Upper jam nut is located on other side of the plate.
2. Turn lower nut (B) until thread (C) protrudes 22–26 mm (7/8–1 in.).
3. Tighten jam nut (A).
4. Repeat Steps 1, page 58 to 3, page 58 on opposite side.

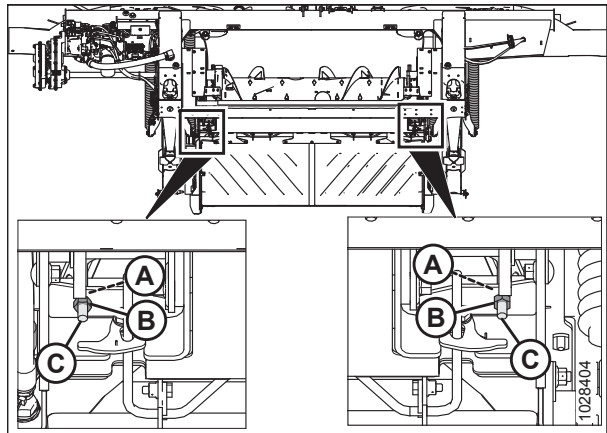
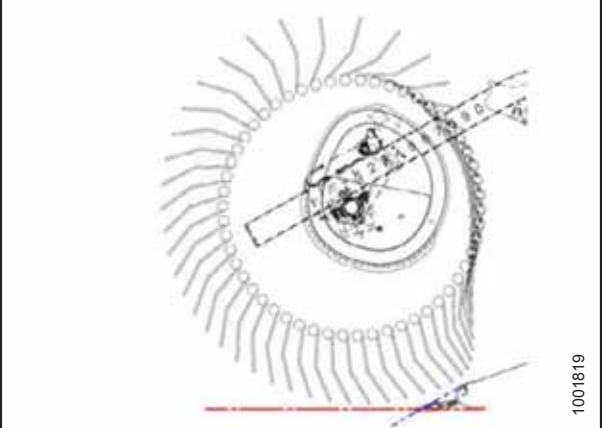
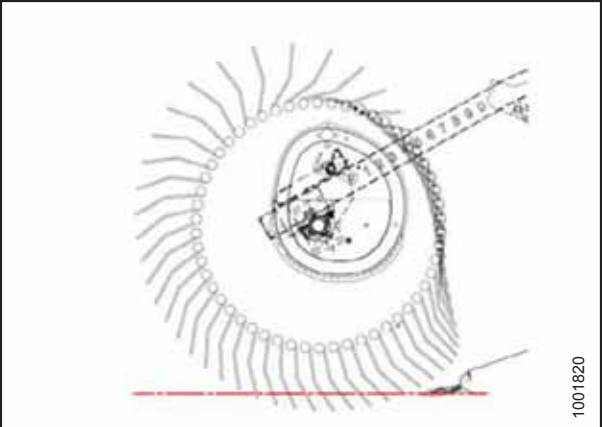


Figure 3.33: Spring Tensioner

### 3.6.4 Reel Settings

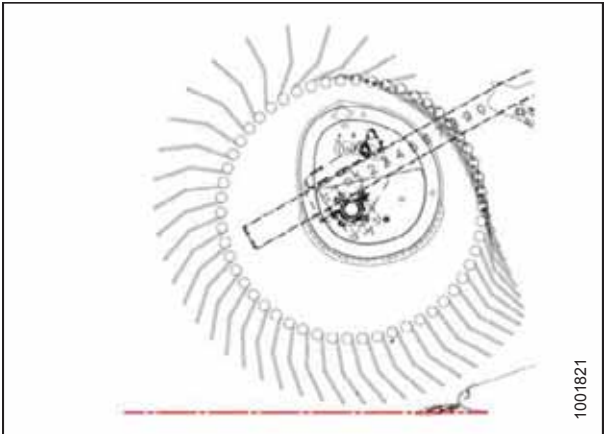
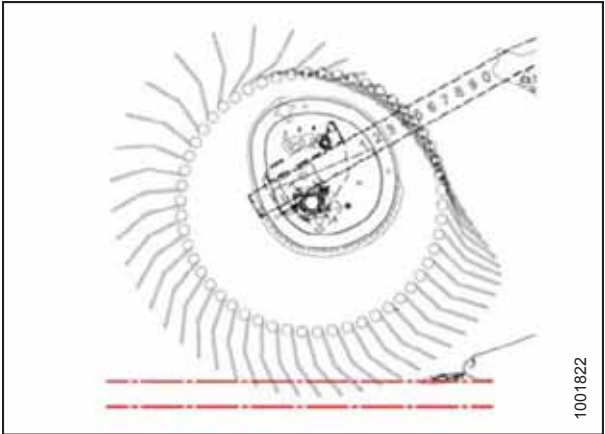
For proper operation of the reel follow the settings in the table below for optimal performance.

**Table 3.9 FD2 Series Recommended Reel Settings**

Cam Setting Number (Finger Speed Gain)	Reel Position Number	Reel Finger Pattern
1 (0)	6 or 7	
2 (20%)	6 or 7	

## OPERATION

**Table 3.9 FD2 Series Recommended Reel Settings (continued)**

Cam Setting Number (Finger Speed Gain)	Reel Position Number	Reel Finger Pattern
3 (30%)	3 or 4	
4 (35%)	2 or 3	

**NOTE:**

- Adjust the reel forward to get closer to the ground while tilting the header back. Fingers/tines will dig into the ground at extreme reel-forward positions, so adjust the skid shoes or header angle to compensate. Adjust the reel rearward to position the reel farther away from the ground when tilting the header forward.
- Header tilt can be increased to position the reel closer to the ground, or decreased to position the reel farther from the ground, while keeping material flowing onto drapers.
- To leave the maximum amount of stubble in lodged crop, raise the header and increase the header tilt to keep the reel close to the ground. Position the reel fully forward.
- The reel may have to be moved back to prevent lumps or plugging on the cutterbar in thinner crops.
- Minimum crop carrying capacity (minimum area of exposed draper between the reel and the header backsheet) occurs with the reel in the farthest aft position.
- Maximum crop carrying capacity (maximum area of exposed draper between the reel and the header backsheet) occurs with the reel in the farthest forward position.
- Due to the nature of the cam action, the tip speed of the fingers/tines at the cutterbar becomes higher than that of the reel speed at higher cam settings. For more information, refer to [Table 3.9, page 59](#).

## 3.7 Header Operating Variables

Satisfactory function of the header in all situations requires making proper adjustments to suit various crops and conditions.

Correct operation reduces crop loss and increases productivity. As well, proper adjustments and timely maintenance will increase the length of service you receive from your machine.

The variables listed in Table 3.10, page 61 and detailed on the following pages will affect the performance of your header.

You will quickly become adept at adjusting the machine to achieve the results you desire. Most of the adjustments have been preset at the factory, but the settings can be changed to suit crop conditions.

**Table 3.10 Operating Variables**

Variable	Refer to
Cutting height	<a href="#">3.7.1 Cutting off the Ground, page 61</a> ; <a href="#">3.7.2 Cutting on the Ground, page 67</a>
Header float	<a href="#">3.7.3 Header Float, page 69</a>
Header angle	<a href="#">3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91</a>
Reel speed	<a href="#">3.7.6 Reel Speed, page 99</a>
Ground speed	<a href="#">3.7.7 Ground Speed, page 100</a>
Draper speed	<a href="#">3.7.8 Side Draper Speed, page 101</a>
Knife speed	<a href="#">3.7.9 Knife Speed Information, page 103</a>
Reel height	<a href="#">3.7.10 Reel Height, page 105</a>
Reel fore-aft position	<a href="#">3.7.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 109</a>
Reel tine pitch	<a href="#">3.7.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 119</a>
Crop divider rods	<a href="#">3.7.14 Crop Dividers, page 127</a>
Feed auger configurations	<a href="#">4.1 FM200 Feed Auger Configurations, page 321</a>

### 3.7.1 Cutting off the Ground

The header's design allows you to cut crop above the ground at a desired stubble height. The cutting height will vary depending on factors including crop type, crop conditions, etc.

There are two options available for cutting off the ground:

- The stabilizer wheel system is designed to minimize bouncing at the header ends and may be used to float the header to achieve an even cutting height when cutting above ground level in cereal grains. The system produces even stubble height and greatly reduces Operator fatigue.

**NOTE:**

Flex Headers must have the wings locked rigid when using the stabilizer wheel system.

- The ContourMax™ gauge wheels provide consistent cutting height information back to the header so it can flex, maintain accurate and consistent cutting height, and still use the combine's auto height control seamlessly. The gauge wheels contact the ground, which allows the cutterbar to remain at a fixed height above the ground even through rolling contours. There is no adjustment necessary to the factory auto height control settings.

**NOTE:**

Flex Headers must have the wings unlocked when using the ContourMax™ system.

## OPERATION

The stabilizer wheel system (or stabilizer/transport wheel system) cutting height is controlled using a combination of the combine header height control.

If stabilizer wheels are installed, refer to [Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels, page 62](#) to change the wheel position.

If stabilizer/transport wheels are installed, refer to [Adjusting Stabilizer / EasyMove™ Transport Wheels, page 62](#) to change the wheel position.

If the ContourMax wheels are installed, refer to [Adjusting ContourMax™ Wheels with Foot Switch, page 63](#) to change the wheel position.

### Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels

A properly adjusted header will achieve a balance between the amount of header weight carried by the float and the amount carried by the stabilizer wheels.

Refer to [3.6.2 Header Settings, page 46](#) for recommended use in specific crops and crop conditions.

### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Raise the header until the stabilizer wheels are off the ground. Shut down engine and remove the key.
2. Hold axle pivot handle (B); do **NOT** lift.

#### NOTE:

Lifting the handle will make the system harder to take out from slot (C).

3. Pull suspension handle (A) rearward to remove pin from slot (C).
4. Lift the wheel using support (B) to desired height position, and engage the support channel into center slot (C) in the upper support.
5. Suspension handle (A) should snap into slot. If not push in (for middle and lower position) or pull in (for top position) suspension handle to ensure it is seated into the slot.
6. Use the combine's Auto Header Height Control (AHHC) to automatically maintain cutting height. For instructions, refer to [3.8 Auto Header Height Control, page 136](#) and your combine operator's manual for details.

#### NOTE:

The height sensor on the FM200 Float Module must be connected to the combine height control system in the cab.

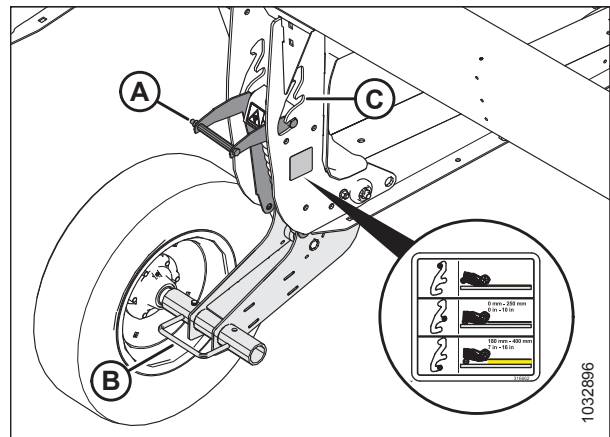


Figure 3.34: Stabilizer Wheel

### Adjusting Stabilizer / EasyMove™ Transport Wheels

A properly adjusted header will achieve a balance between the amount of header weight carried by the float and the amount carried by the stabilizer/EasyMove™ transport wheels.

### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

## OPERATION

1. Raise the header so the stabilizer/EasyMove™ transport wheels are off the ground.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Check that the float is working properly. For instructions, refer to *Checking and Adjusting Header Float*, page 70.
4. Hold axle pivot handle (C); do **NOT** lift.

**NOTE:**

Lifting the handle will make the system harder to take out from slot (B).

5. Pull suspension handle (A) rearward to remove pin from slot (B).
6. Adjust wheel to desired slot position.
7. Suspension handle (A) should snap into slot. If not, push in (for middle position) or pull in (for top position) suspension handle to ensure it is seated into the slot.

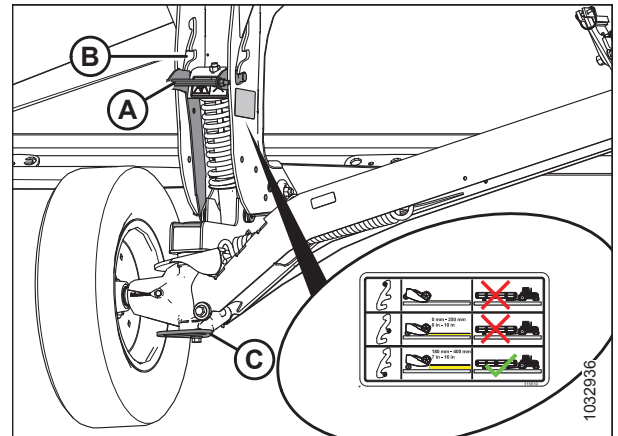


Figure 3.35: Right Wheel

8. Hold axle pivot handle (A); do **NOT** lift.

**NOTE:**

Lifting the handle will make the system harder to take out from slot.

9. Pull suspension handle (B) rearward to remove pin from slot.
10. Adjust wheel to desired slot position.
11. Suspension handle (B) should snap into slot. If not, pull out suspension handle to ensure it is seated into the slot.
12. Use the combine's auto header height control (AHHC) to automatically maintain cutting height. For instructions, refer to *3.8 Auto Header Height Control*, page 136 and your combine operator's manual for details.

**NOTE:**

The height sensor on the FM200 Float Module must be connected to the combine header control module in the cab.

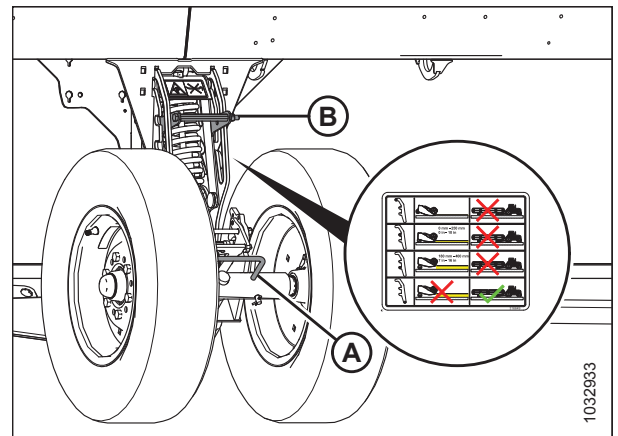


Figure 3.36: Left Wheel

### *Adjusting ContourMax™ Wheels with Foot Switch*

The ContourMax™ wheel option mirrors the contours of the ground, and can be adjusted between 4 inches (100 mm) and 10 inches (250 mm) from the ground surface.

1. Locate the ContourMax™ foot switch installed the cab.
2. Press and hold the foot switch to activate the ContourMax™ Wheels.

**NOTE:**

When the contour max foot switch is activated and the reel fore-aft button is pressed on the combine control, the contour max wheels will move regardless of the fore-aft/header tilt switch position. Refer to Table 3.11, page 64.

3. Operate the hydraulic controls on the multifunction handle to move the wheels to the desired height.

## OPERATION

4. Release the footswitch to deactivate the ContourMax™ Wheels. The header tilt, and the fore-aft functions should operate normally.

**Table 3.11 Control Logic Chart**

Activated Switch				
ContourMax™ Foot Switch Condition	Fore-Aft / Header Angle Switch Position		Combine Multifunction Handle Controls	
	Fore-Aft	Angle	Reel Fore	Reel Aft
—	X	—	Reel forward	Reel back
—	—	X	Header angle extend	Header angle retract
X	—	X	ContourMax™ retract (decrease cut height)	ContourMax™ extend (increase cut height)
X	X	—		

### *Adjusting ContourMax™ Wheels with Claas Integration Kit*

The ContourMax™ wheel option mirrors the contours of the ground, and can be adjusted between 4 inches (100 mm) and 10 inches (250 mm) from the ground surface.

**NOTE:**

Functions controlled by the multi-function trigger rocker switch will be available only when the header function switch is in the VARIO table extend/retract position.

1. Press HOTKEY switch (A) on the operator's console to deck plate position (the header icon [A] with the arrows pointing to each other).



Multi-Function Trigger Rocker Switch



## OPERATION

- If the combine is equipped with the standard lever, push toggle (A) up while simultaneously pressing the reel fore-aft button.
  - Reel fore will retract the contour wheels, decreasing the cut height
  - Reel aft will extend the contour wheels, increasing the cut height.

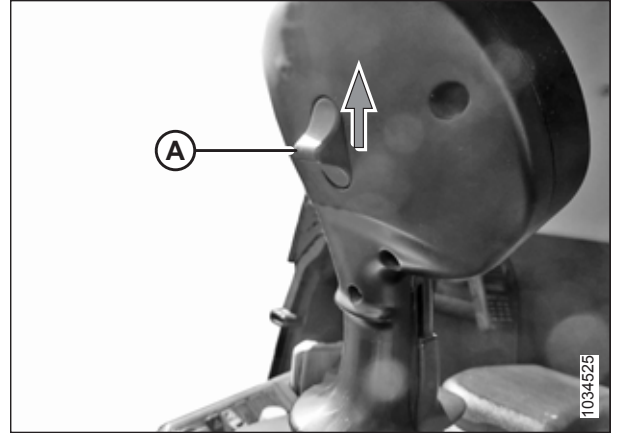


Figure 3.37: Standard Multi-Function Lever

- If the combine is equipped with the CMOTION multi-function lever, pull the multi-function trigger rocker switch (A) toward you while simultaneously pressing the reel fore-aft button.
  - Reel fore will retract the contour wheels, decreasing the cut height.
  - Reel aft will extend the contour wheels, increasing the cut height.

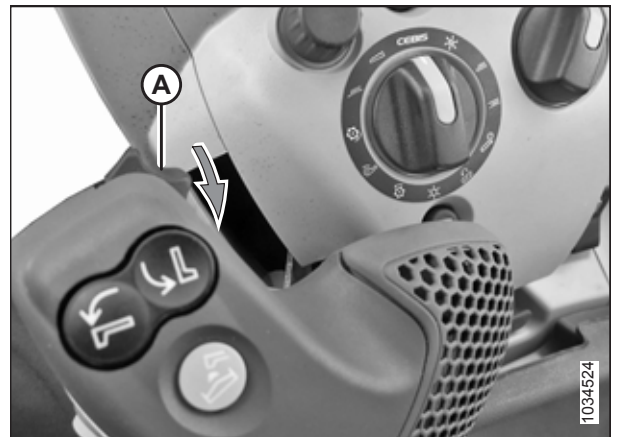


Figure 3.38: CMOTION Multi-Function Lever

### *Adjusting ContourMax™ Wheels with John Deere Integration Kit*

The ContourMax™ wheel option mirrors the contours of the ground, and can be adjusted between 4 inches (100 mm) and 10 inches (250 mm) from the ground surface.

- Locate the multi function lever attached to the console.
- Double tap reel lower button (B).

#### **NOTE:**

A double tap consists of two presses of the button within 0.5 second.

- Press the reel fore-aft button to move the contour Max®.
  - Reel fore (C) (left) will retract the contour wheels, decreasing the cut height
  - Reel aft (D) (right) will extend the contour wheels, increasing the cut height.
- To exit Contour Max® wheels adjustment mode, press the reel raise button (A) once or wait for fifteen seconds.

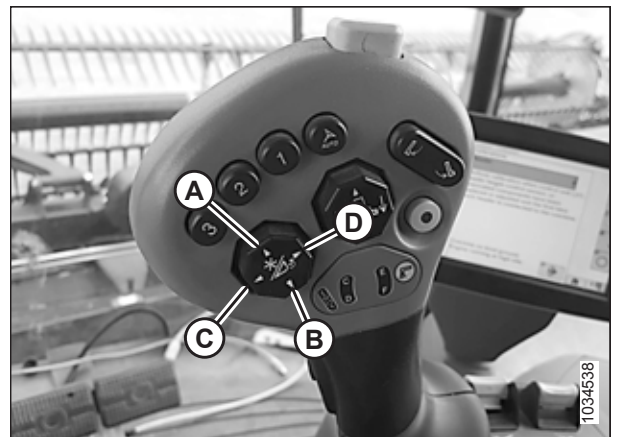


Figure 3.39: Multi-function Handle

## OPERATION

### *Selecting the Default Function for the Multi-Function Lever Toggle Switch (With Claas Integration Kit)*

The operator can select the default function for the multi-function trigger rocker switch. For example, when cutting on the ground the default function can be set to the pitch control cylinder and when cutting off the ground the default function can be set to the contour wheels. The only indication of the default function is by what moves when the multi-function trigger rocker switch is operated.

### CAUTION

Be sure all bystanders are clear of machine before starting engine or engaging header drives.

1. Start the engine.

**To select pitch control as the default toggle function. do the following:**

2. If the combine is equipped with the standard lever, push the toggle (A) up while simultaneously pressing the reel fore button. Hold for 30 seconds.

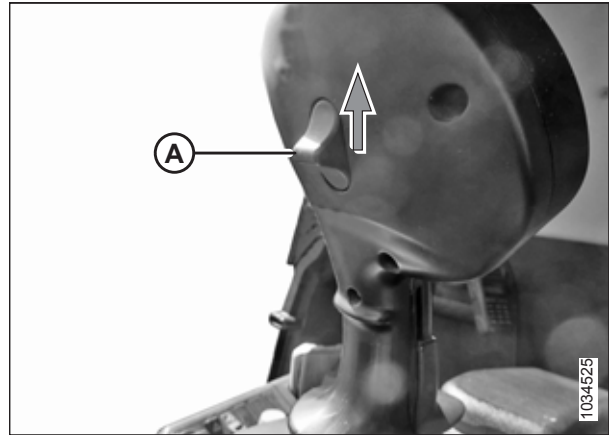


Figure 3.40: Standard Lever

3. If the combine is equipped with the CMOTION multi-function lever, pull the multi-function trigger rocker switch (A) toward you while simultaneously pressing the reel fore button. Hold for 30 seconds.

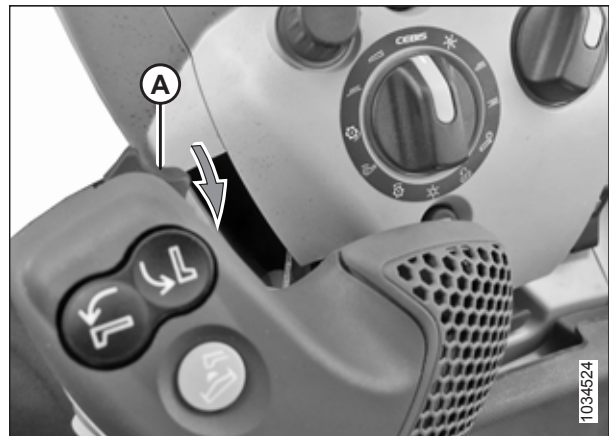


Figure 3.41: CMOTION Lever

**To select contour wheel as the default toggle function. do the following:**

## OPERATION

4. If the combine is equipped with the standard lever, push the toggle (A) up while simultaneously pressing the reel aft button. Hold for 30 seconds.

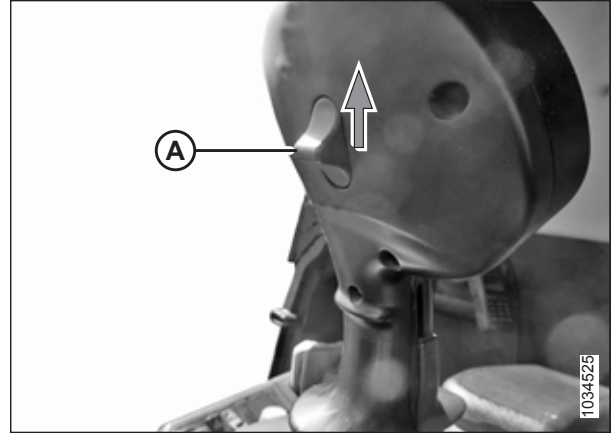


Figure 3.42: Standard Lever

5. If the combine is equipped with the CMOTION multi-function lever, pull the multi-function trigger rocker switch (A) toward you while simultaneously pressing the reel aft button. Hold for 30 seconds.

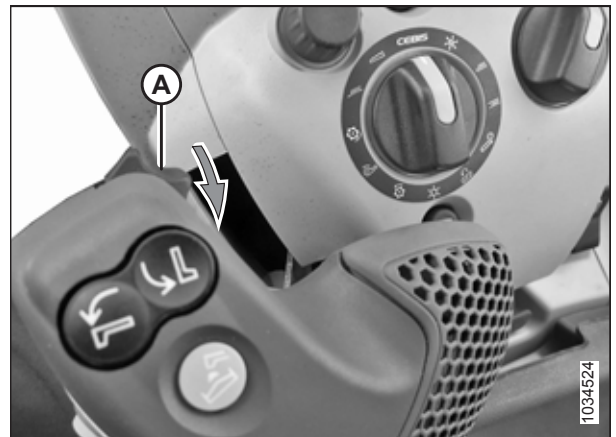


Figure 3.43: CMOTION Lever

### 3.7.2 Cutting on the Ground

Cutting height will vary depending on crop type, crop conditions, cutting conditions, etc.

Cutting on the ground is performed with the header fully lowered and the cutterbar on the ground. The orientation of the knife and knife guards relative to the ground (header angle) is controlled by the skid shoes and the center-link—it is **NOT** controlled by the header lift cylinders. The skid shoes and center-link allow you to adjust to field conditions and maximize the amount of material cut while reducing damage to the knife caused by stones and debris.

The header float system floats the header over the surface to compensate for ridges, trenches, and other variations in ground contour to prevent the cutterbar from pushing into the ground or leaving uncut crop.

Refer to the following for additional information:

- [Adjusting Inner Skid Shoes, page 68](#)
- [Adjusting Outer Skid Shoes, page 68](#)
- [3.7.3 Header Float, page 69](#)
- [3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91](#)

## OPERATION

### Adjusting Inner Skid Shoes

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under header for any reason.

1. Raise header to full height.
2. Shut off the engine, remove key then engage safety props.
3. Raise the stabilizer wheels or slow speed transport wheels fully (if installed). For instructions, refer to the following:
  - [Adjusting Stabilizer / EasyMove™ Transport Wheels, page 62](#)
  - [Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels, page 62](#)
4. Remove lynch pin (A) from each skid shoe.
5. Hold shoe (B) and remove pin (C) by disengaging from the frame and pulling away from the shoe.
6. Raise or lower skid shoe (B) to achieve the desired position using the holes in support (D) as a guide.
7. Install pin (C) in the desired position on support (D), engage in frame, and secure with lynch pin (A).
8. Check that all skid shoes are adjusted to the same position.

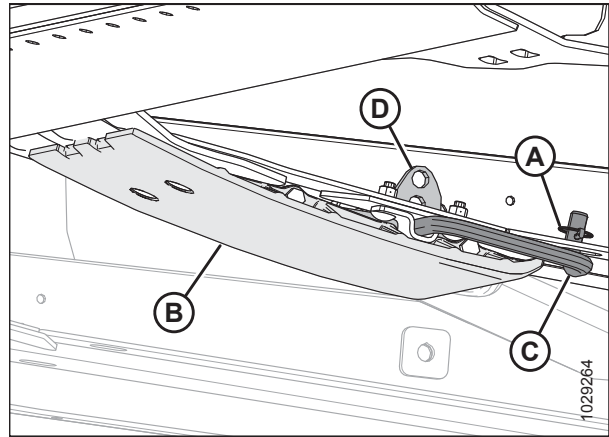


Figure 3.44: Inner Skid Shoe

9. Adjust the header angle to the desired working position using the machine's header angle controls. If the header angle is not critical, set it to the mid-position.
10. Check the header float. For instructions, refer to [3.7.3 Header Float, page 69](#).

### Adjusting Outer Skid Shoes

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under header for any reason.

1. Raise the header to its full height.
2. Shut off the engine, remove the key from the ignition then engage safety props.
3. Raise the stabilizer wheels or slow speed transport wheels fully (if installed). For instructions, refer to the following:
  - [Adjusting Stabilizer / EasyMove™ Transport Wheels, page 62](#)
  - [Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels, page 62](#)

## OPERATION

4. Remove lynch pin (A) from each skid shoe (B).
5. Hold skid shoe (B) and remove pin (C) by disengaging from the frame and pulling away from the shoe.
6. Raise or lower skid shoe (B) to achieve the desired position using the holes in the support plate as a guide.
7. Reinstall pin (C) in the desired position on the support plate, and secure with lynch pin (A).
8. Check that all skid shoes are adjusted to the same position.
9. Check the header float. For instructions, refer to [3.7.3 Header Float, page 69](#).

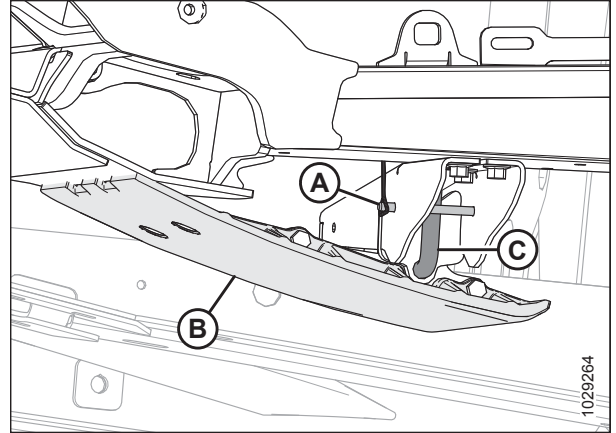


Figure 3.45: Outer Skid Shoe

### 3.7.3 Header Float

The header float system reduces the ground pressure at the cutterbar allowing the header to more easily follow the ground and quickly respond to sudden ground contour changes or obstacles.

Header float is indicated on the float indicator (A). Values 0 to 4 represent the force of the cutterbar on the ground with 0 being the minimum and 4 being the maximum. They also represent where the header is at in the float range, 0 being the bottom end of the float range and 4 being the top end of the float range.

**NOTE:**

The indicator on the left side of the float module is for float indication and float settings; the indicator on the right side is for float settings only.

The maximum force is determined by the tension on the float module's adjustable float springs. Float can be changed to suit field and crop conditions and is dependent on what options have been installed on the header.

**NOTE:**

The small number set (B) at the top of the float indicator is used to check and adjust the float setting. For instructions, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 70](#).

The FD2 FlexDraper header for combines performs best with minimum ground pressure under normal conditions. Readjust the float if adding optional attachments to the header that affect header weight.

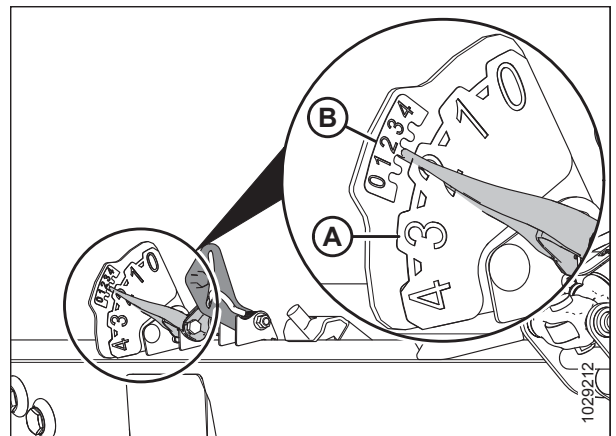


Figure 3.46: Float Indicator – Left Side

## OPERATION

1. Set the float for cutting on the ground as follows:
  - a. Ensure the header float locks are disengaged. For instructions, refer to [Locking/Unlocking Header Float, page 75](#).
  - b. Lower the feeder house using the combine header controls until float indicator (A) reaches the desired float value (cutterbar ground force). Set the float indicator initially to float value 2 and adjust as necessary.
2. Set the float for cutting off the ground as follows:
  - a. Adjust the gauge wheels. For instructions, refer to [3.7.1 Cutting off the Ground, page 61](#).
  - b. Note the float value on the float indicator and maintain this value during operation (disregard minor fluctuations on the indicator).

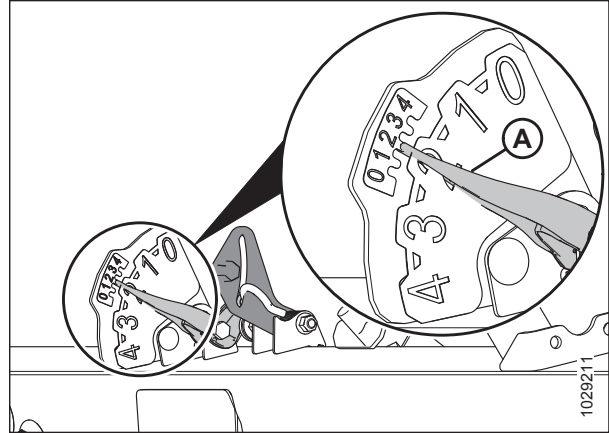


Figure 3.47: Cutting on the Ground

### Checking and Adjusting Header Float

The header is equipped with a suspension system that floats the header over the ground to compensate for ridges, trenches, and other variations in ground contour. If the header float is not set properly, it may cause the cutterbar to push into the ground or leave uncut crop. This procedure describes how to check the header float and adjust to the factory-recommended settings.

#### IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** use the float module springs to level the header.

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

Use the following guidelines when adjusting the float:

- Set the header float as light as possible (without causing excessive bouncing) to prevent knife component breakage, pushing soil, and soil build-up at the cutterbar in wet conditions.
- To avoid excessive bouncing and an uneven cut with a light float setting, use a slower ground speed.
- When cutting off the ground, use the stabilizer wheels in conjunction with the header float to minimize bouncing at the header ends and to control cut height. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels, page 62](#).

#### NOTE:

If adequate header float cannot be achieved using all of the available adjustments, an optional heavy-duty spring is available. See your MacDon Dealer or refer to the parts catalog for ordering information.

## OPERATION

1. Park the combine on a level surface.
2. Locate spirit level (A) on top of the float module frame. Check that the bubble is in the center. If adjustment is required, refer to [3.9 Leveling Header, page 294](#).
3. Position the header so that the cutterbar is 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground.

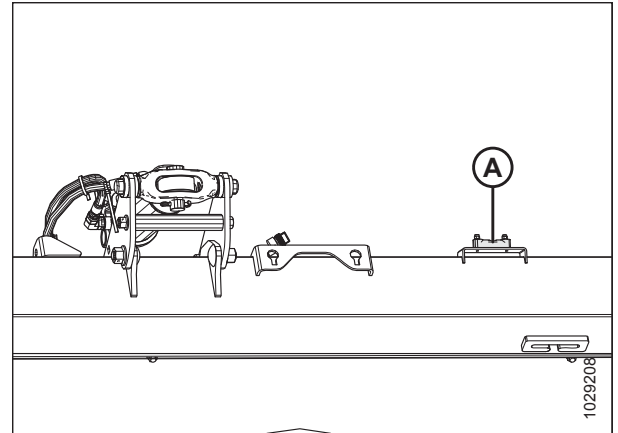


Figure 3.48: Spirit Level

4. Adjust the reel fore-aft to position 6 on indicator bracket (A) located on the left arm.

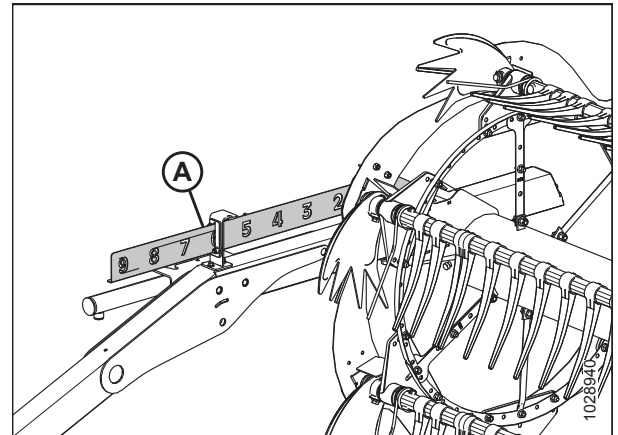


Figure 3.49: Fore-Aft Position

5. Adjust center-link (A) so that indicator (B) is at position D on the gauge.
6. Lower the reel fully.
7. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
8. Lock the header wings. For instructions, refer to [Locking/Unlocking Header Wings, page 75](#).

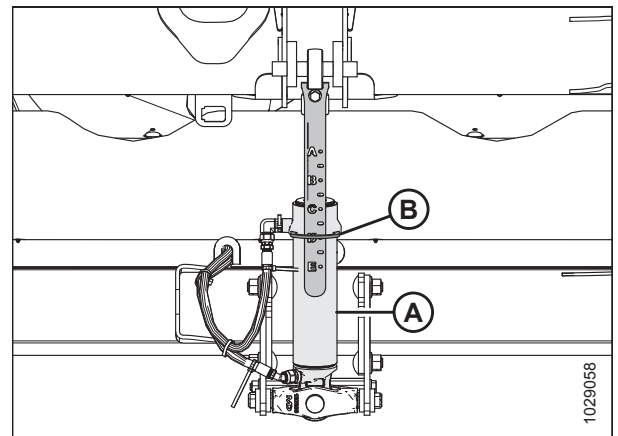


Figure 3.50: Center-Link

## OPERATION

- Disengage both header float locks by pulling float lock handle (A) away from the float module and pushing the float lock handle down and into position (B) (**UNLOCK**).

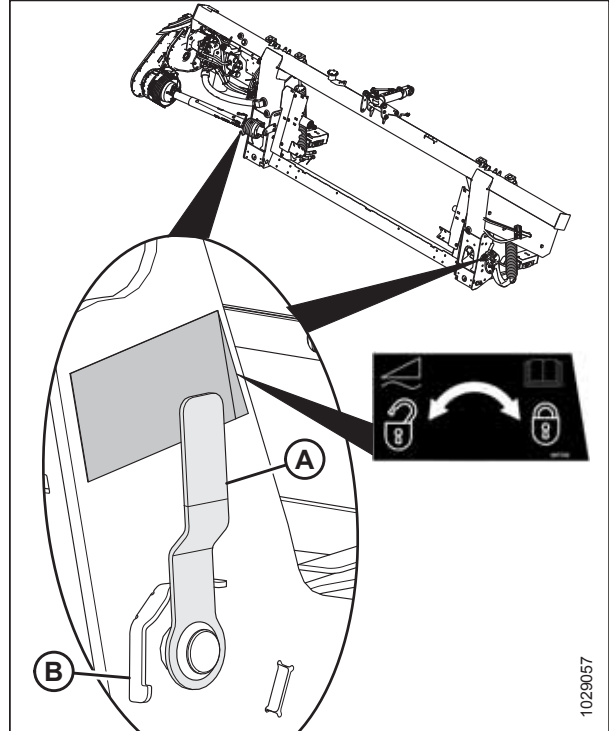


Figure 3.51: Header Float Lock in Locked Position

- Open the left endshield. For instructions, refer to *Opening Header Endshields, page 33*.
- Remove hairpin (A) securing tool (B) to tool holder bracket on the left endsheet.
- Remove tool (B), and reinstall hairpin to tool holder.

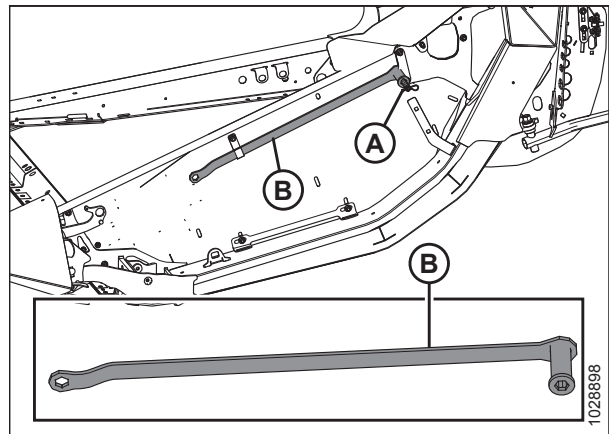


Figure 3.52: Tool Location



## OPERATION

13. Lift float setting lever (A) by hand to remove any slack.
14. Place tool (B) on the float setting lever. The tool should be slightly angled towards the front of the header.

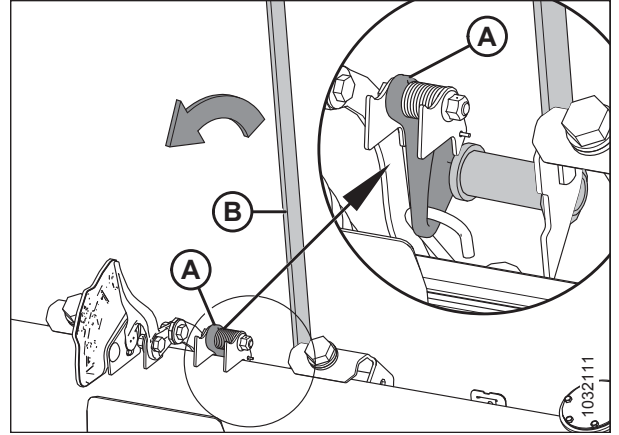


Figure 3.53: Float Setting Assembly – Left

15. Pull down on tool (B) towards the back of the header until lever (A) is over center and will not return to its original position. Remove the tool and repeat on the opposite side.
16. On the same side that you are adjusting, push header down 76 mm (3 in.) and then let go, and recheck the float setting. If the setting remains out of range, proceed with adjustment.

### NOTE:

Pushing down on (shaking) the header releases friction and prevents gauge errors.

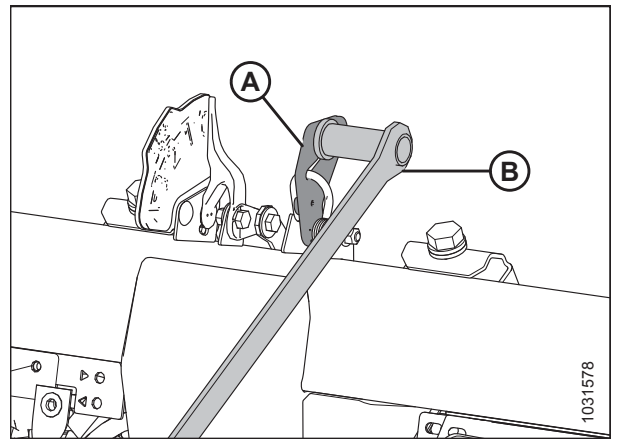


Figure 3.54: Float Setting Assembly – Left

17. Check smaller float setting indicator (FSI) (B) for the current float value. The arm on the FSI should be pointed at the 2.
  - If arm (A) on FSI (B) is higher than 2, the header is heavy.
  - If the reading on FSI (B) is lower than 2, the header is light.

### NOTE:

The larger numbers are for the float height indicator and used when operating the header in the field.

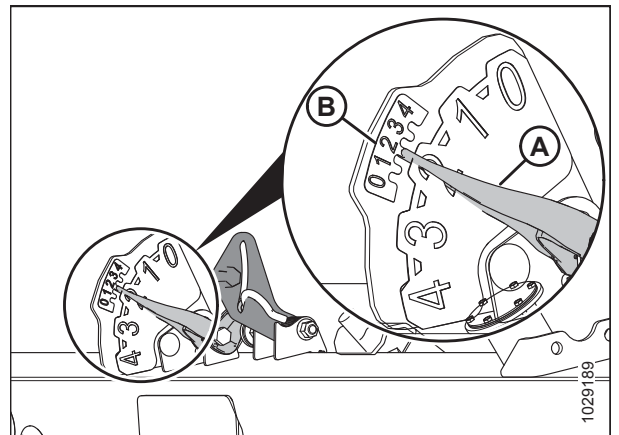


Figure 3.55: Float Setting Indicator (FSI) – Left

## OPERATION

18. To access float spring adjustment bolts (A), loosen bolts (C) and rotate spring locks (B).

**NOTE:**

For the following step, each pair of bolts (A) must be adjusted equally.

19. To increase float and (decrease ground force), turn both adjustment bolts (A) on the left side of the header clockwise. Repeat adjustment at opposite side.

To decrease the float and (increase ground force), turn left adjustment bolts (A) counterclockwise. Repeat adjustment at opposite side.

20. Repeat the sequence of shaking the header, and then checking the FSI reading between adjustments (Steps 16, page 73 to 19, page 74) until both FSI gauges read 2, or until the desired value is achieved on both sides of the header.
21. Lock adjustment bolts (A) with spring locks (B). Ensure bolt heads (A) are engaged in the spring lock cutouts. Tighten bolts (C) to secure spring locks in place.
22. Once the float adjustment is complete, use the tubular portion of the tool to push the FSI over. Repeat at opposite side.

**NOTE:**

Do **NOT** use the box end of the tool, as the FSI will snap over and could pull the tool out of the operators hands.

23. Proceed to *Adjusting Wing Balance*, page 89.

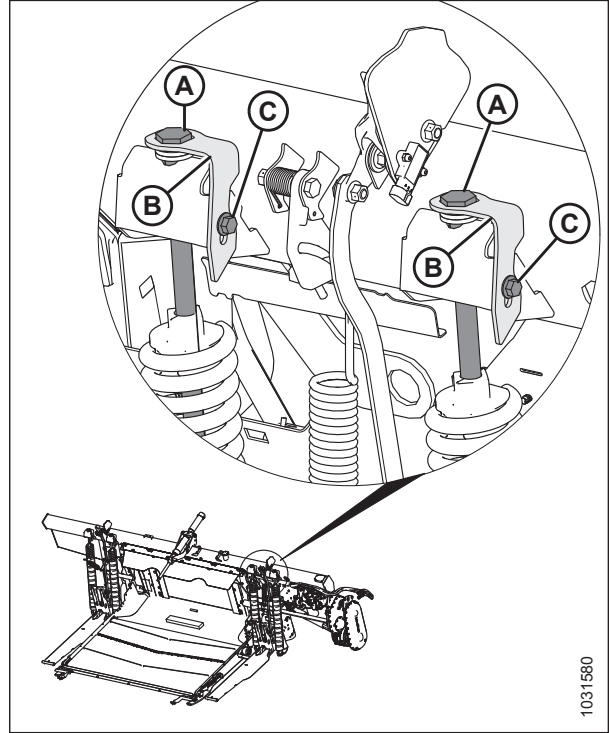


Figure 3.56: Float Adjustment – Left

## OPERATION

### Locking/Unlocking Header Float

Two header float locks—one on each side of the float module—lock and unlock the header float system.

#### IMPORTANT:

The float locks must be engaged when the header is being transported with the float module attached so there is no relative movement between the float module and the header. The float locks also must be locked when detaching from the combine to enable the feeder house to release the float module.

To disengage (unlock) float locks, pull float lock handle (A) into position (B). In this position, the header is unlocked, and can float with respect to the float module.

To engage (lock) float locks, push float lock handle (A) into position (C). In this position, the header cannot move with respect to the float module.

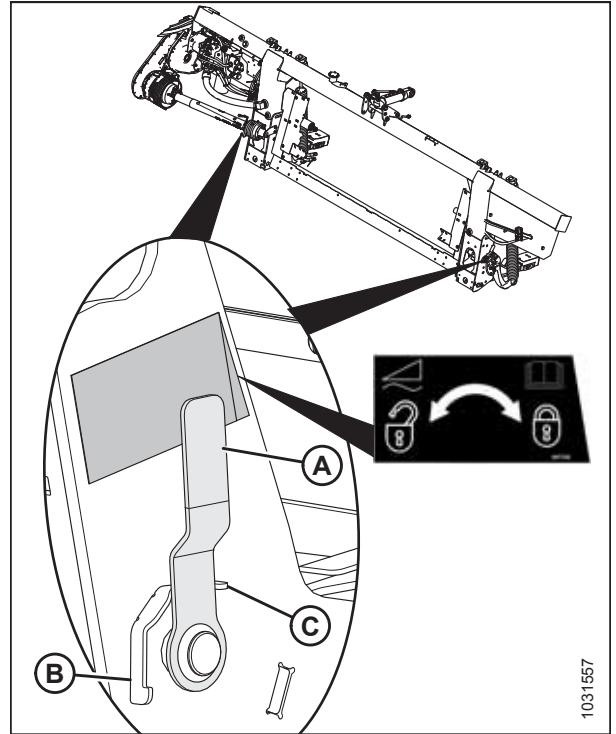


Figure 3.57: Float Lock – in Locked Position

### Locking/Unlocking Header Wings

Locking the wings allows the header to be operated as a rigid header with the cutterbar straight.

1. Lock wing by moving spring handle (A) to the top slot as shown. There should be an audible click when you move the spring handle indicating that the internal mechanism engaged or disengaged. If the lock mechanism does not engage, proceed to Step 3, [page 76](#).

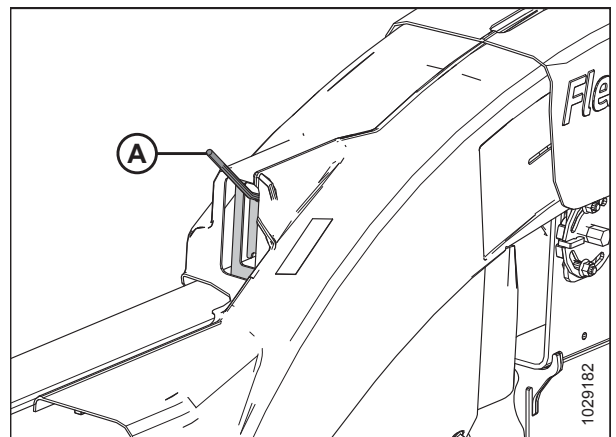


Figure 3.58: Wing in Locked Position

## OPERATION

Unlocking the wings allows the three sections to move independently to follow the ground contours. When the wings are unlocked, they are free to move up and down.

2. Wing is unlocked when the spring handle (A) is at the bottom slot as shown. There should be an audible click when you move the spring handle indicating that the internal mechanism engaged or disengaged. If the lock mechanism does not disengage, proceed to Step 3, page 76.

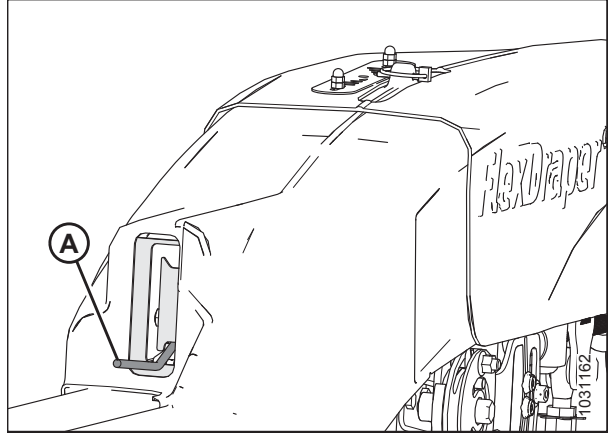


Figure 3.59: Wing in Unlocked Position

3. Remove hairpin (A) securing tool to holder bracket on left endsheet.
4. Remove tool (B) and reinstall hairpin to tool holder.

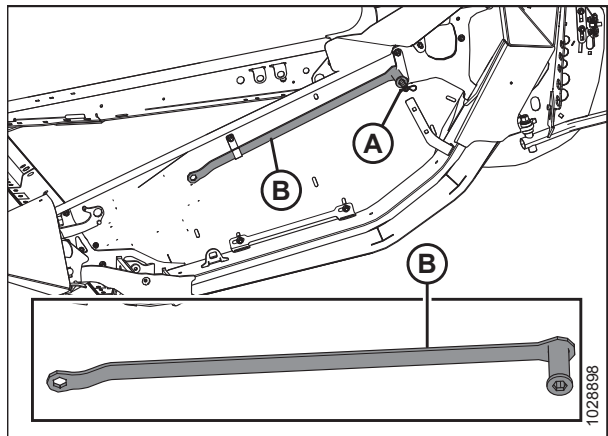


Figure 3.60: Left Endsheet

### NOTE:

Parts hidden for clarity.

5. Attach flex checker cable (A) to flex checker cable lock (B).

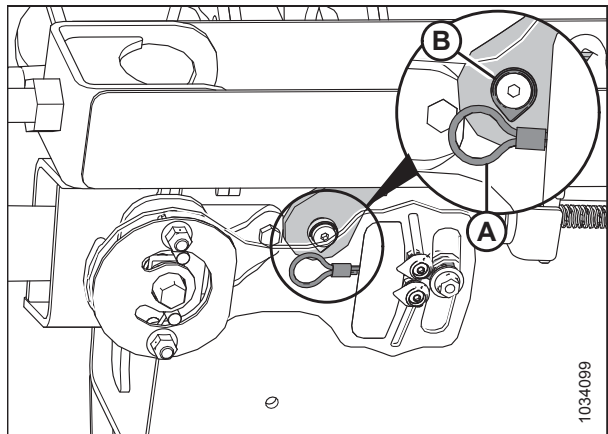


Figure 3.61: Flex Checker Cable Lock – Left Side

## OPERATION

6. Use tool (A) on wing balance plate (B) to move wing up/down until you hear the lock click.

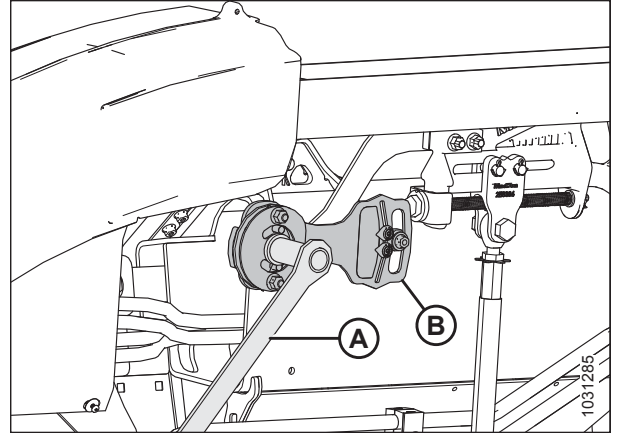


Figure 3.62: Wing Lock Mechanism

### NOTE:

Parts hidden for clarity.

7. Detach flex checker cable (A) from flex checker cable lock (B).

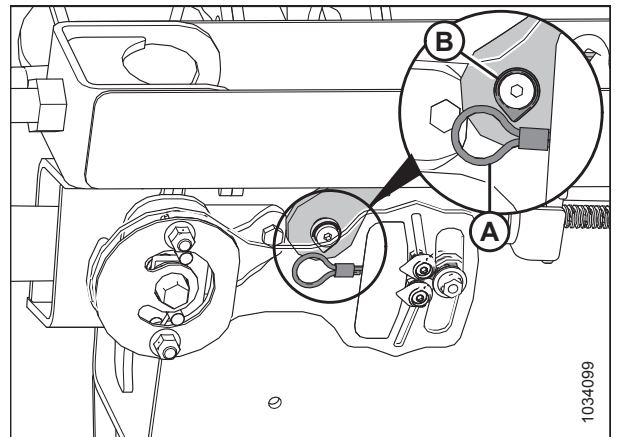


Figure 3.63: Flex Checker Cable Lock – Left Side

8. Return tool (B) to its storage position, and secure with hairpin (A).

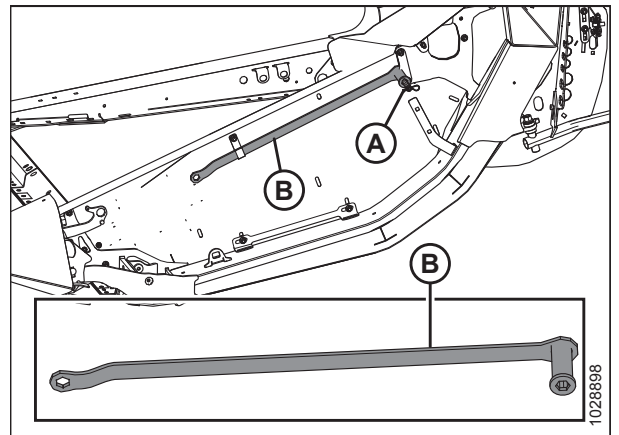


Figure 3.64: Left Endsheat

## OPERATION

### Operating in Flex Mode

The header is designed to operate with the cutterbar on the ground. The three sections move independently to follow the ground contours. When the wings are unlocked, they are free to move up and down.

#### Unlock the wings as follows:

1. Move spring handle (A) in the lower slot to unlock the wing. You should hear the lock disengaged.
2. If the lock link does not disengage, move the wing by raising and lowering the header, changing the header angle, or driving the combine until it disengages.
3. If the lock still does not disengage, continue to next step.

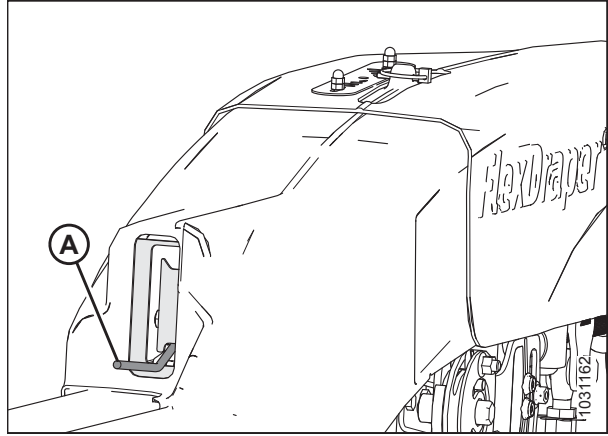


Figure 3.65: Wing in Unlocked Position

4. Remove hairpin (A) securing tool to bracket on left endsheet.
5. Remove tool (B), and reinstall hairpin to bracket.

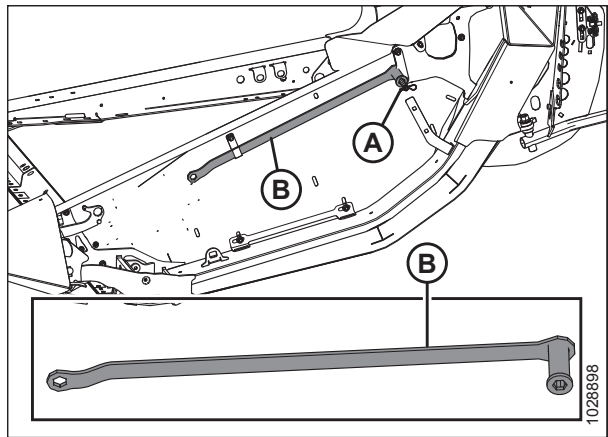


Figure 3.66: Left Endsheet

#### NOTE:

Parts hidden for clarity.

6. Attach flex checker cable (A) to flex checker cable lock (B).

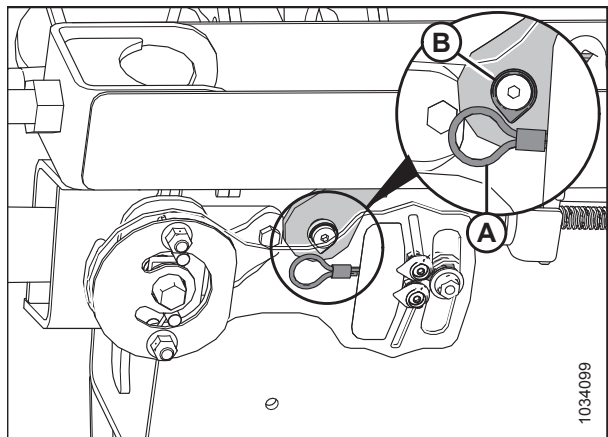


Figure 3.67: Flex Checker Cable Lock – Left Side

## OPERATION

7. Use tool (A) on plate (B) to move the wing up and down until the lock disengages.

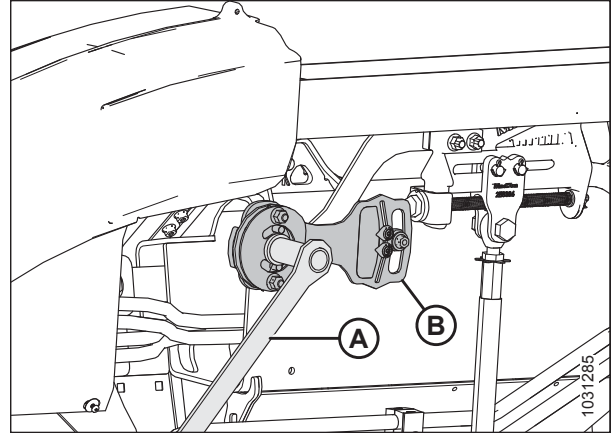


Figure 3.68: Wing Lock in Unlocked Position

### NOTE:

Parts hidden for clarity.

8. Detach flex checker cable (A) to flex checker cable lock (B).
9. Return tool (A) to storage position and reinstall the linkage cover.
10. If necessary, balance the wing. For instructions, refer to [3.7.4 Wing Balance, page 82](#).

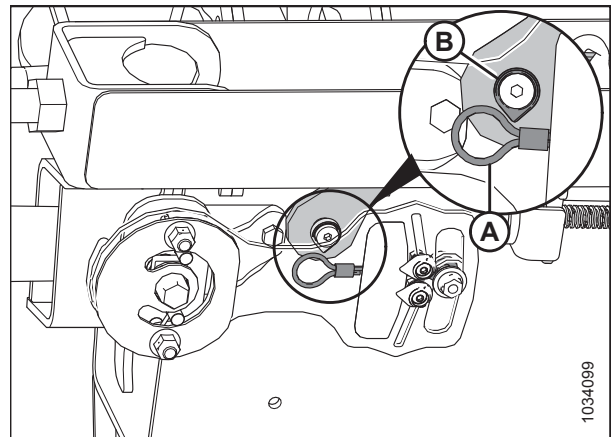


Figure 3.69: Flex Checker Cable Lock – Left Side

### NOTE:

With the header attached to a combine, wings locked and straight, lynch pin (A) should point to the center of indicator (B). If not, calibrate the indicator by loosening bolts (C) that fasten to the shield and adjust its position. While harvesting with the wings unlocked, the indicator should periodically move through the range. If the indicator remains stuck at either end of the range, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 70](#) and [Checking Wing Balance, page 82](#)

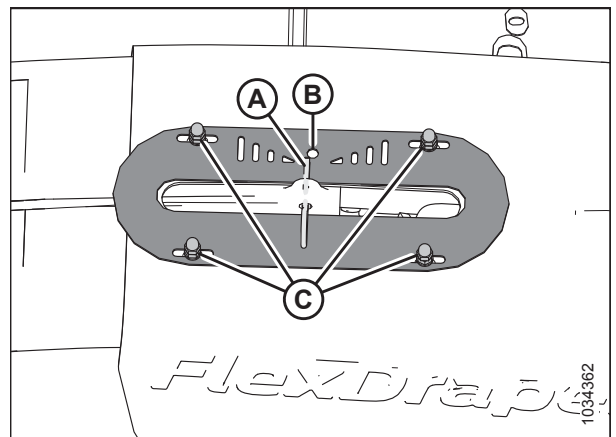


Figure 3.70: Wing Movement Indicator on Top of Flex Linkage Cover – Left Side Shown

### *Operating in Rigid Mode*

The three sections will be **locked** and operate as a rigid cutterbar.

Locking the wings allows the header to be operated as a rigid header with the cutterbar straight.

Lock the wings as follows:

## OPERATION

1. Move spring handle (A) in the upper slot to lock the wing. The locking should be audible.
2. If the lock link does not engage, move the wing by raising and lowering the header, changing the header angle, or driving the combine until it engages.
3. If the lock still does not engage, continue to Step 4, [page 80](#).
4. Remove the flex linkage cover. For instructions, refer to [Removing Flex Linkage Covers, page 40](#).

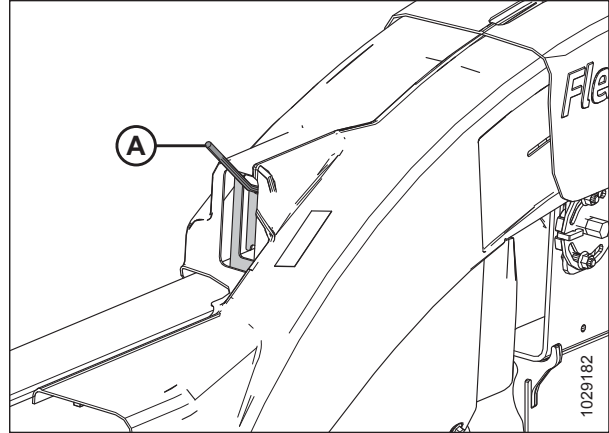


Figure 3.71: Wing in Locked Position

5. Remove hairpin (A) securing wrench to wrench holder bracket on left endsheet.
6. Remove wrench (B) from storage location, and reinstall hairpin to wrench holder.

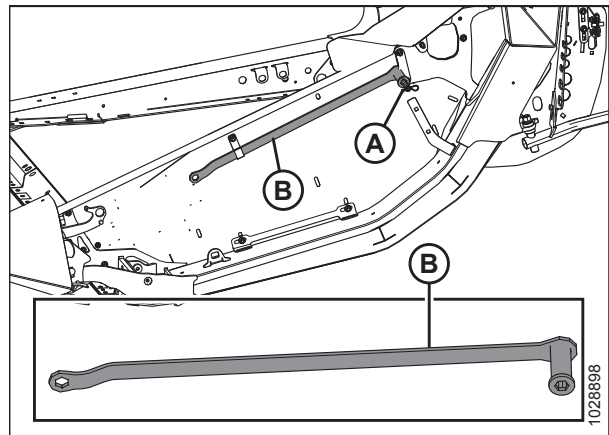


Figure 3.72: Left Endsheet

7. Use wrench (A) on plate (B) to move the wing up and down until the lock engages.
8. Return wrench (A) to storage position, and reinstall the linkage cover.
9. Reinstall flex linkage cover. For instructions, refer to [Installing Flex Linkage Covers, page 41](#).

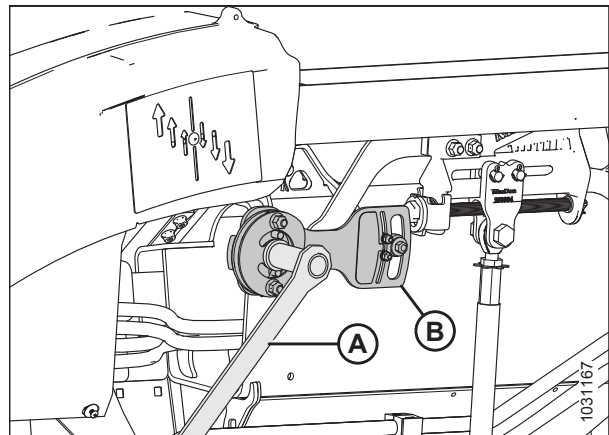


Figure 3.73: Wing in Locked Position

### *Disabling Flex Frown Limiter*

Disabling the flex frown limiter increases the flex range which can help the header follow ground contours on uneven terrain, and may be preferred when a close reel to cutterbar relationship is not critical, such as when harvesting tall crops like standing cereals or canola.



## OPERATION

### NOTE:

When the flex float limiter plate is removed, the reel to cutterbar clearance will not be able to be as close, and will require adjustment. Refer to [5.16.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 572](#) for specifications.

1. Park the combine on a level surface.
2. Lock the header wings. For instructions, refer to [Locking/Unlocking Header Wings, page 75](#).
3. Extend the hydraulic center-link fully.
4. Lower the header fully.
5. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
6. Remove two bolts (A).
7. Remove flex frown limiter plate (B).

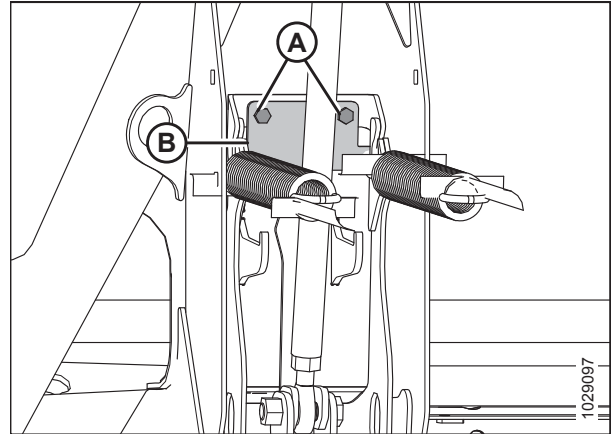


Figure 3.74: Flex Frown Limiter Plate

8. Flip limiter plate (B) upside down.
9. Install flex frown limiter plate (B).
10. Reinstall two bolts (A).
11. Repeat on the opposite side.
12. To avoid cutting off reel fingers when the header forms a frown shape, adjust the reel finger clearance, refer to [5.16.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 572](#) for specifications.

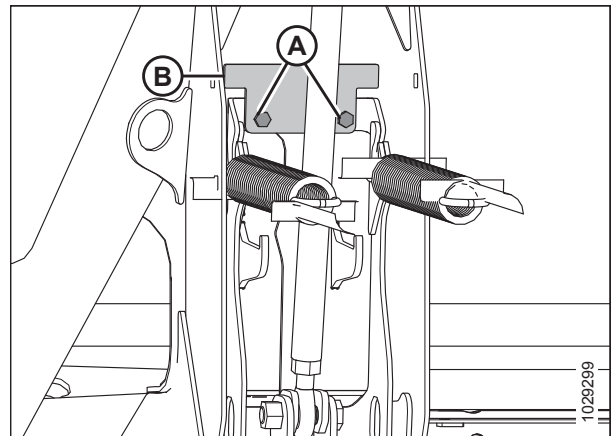


Figure 3.75: Flex Frown Limiter Plate

### *Enabling Flex Frown Limiter*

Enabling the flex frown limiter limits the header's ability to frown, allowing the reel to be very close to the cutterbar, which is ideal for harvesting short crops such as lentils, lodged peas, or short soybeans.

### NOTE:

When installing the flex float limiter plate, the reel to cutterbar clearance will be to closer and should be adjusted. Refer to [5.16.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 572](#) for specifications.

1. Park the combine on a level surface.
2. Lock the header wings. For instructions, refer to [Locking/Unlocking Header Wings, page 75](#).

## OPERATION

3. Lower the header fully.
4. Extend the hydraulic center-link fully.
5. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
6. Remove two bolts (A).
7. Remove flex frown limiter plate (B).

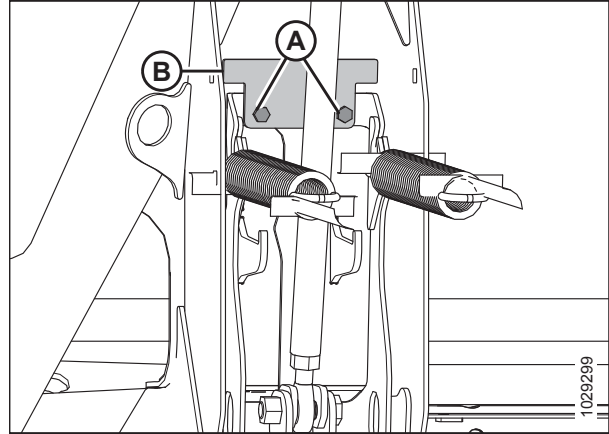


Figure 3.76: Flex Frown Limiter Plate

8. Flip limiter plate (B) upside down.
9. Install flex frown limiter plate (B).
10. Reinstall two bolts (A).
11. Repeat on the opposite side.
12. Adjust the reel finger clearance, refer to [Adjusting Reel Clearance, page 575](#) for specifications.

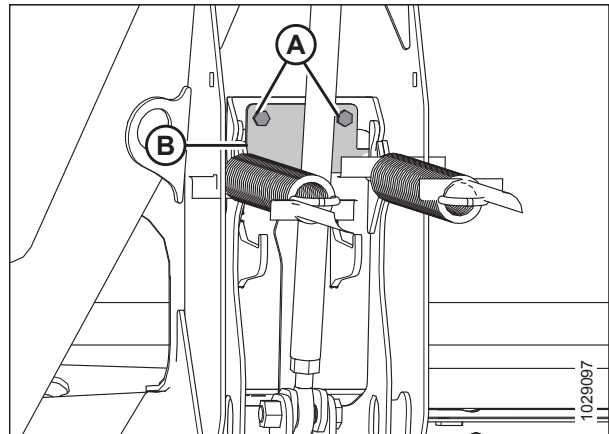


Figure 3.77: Flex Frown Limiter Plate

### 3.7.4 Wing Balance

#### IMPORTANT:

Before proceeding, the header float must be set properly. For instructions, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 70](#).

The header wing balance allows the wings to react to changing ground conditions. If set too light, the wings will bounce or not follow ground contours, leaving uncut crop. If set too heavy, the end of the header will dig into the ground. After the header float has been set, the wings must be balanced for the header to follow the ground contours properly.

#### Checking Wing Balance

Wing balance is important for ground following. Operators should check the balance of each wing if there are issues with following the ground.

#### IMPORTANT:

To ensure correct wing balance readings, make sure the header float is set properly before proceeding. For instructions, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 70](#).

**WARNING**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before adjusting machine.

If a header wing has a tendency to be in a smile (A) or a frown (B) position, and the header is missing crop or pushing dirt, the wing balance may require adjusting.

**NOTE:**

The header wings are balanced when it takes an equal amount of force to move a wing up or down.

**WARNING**

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

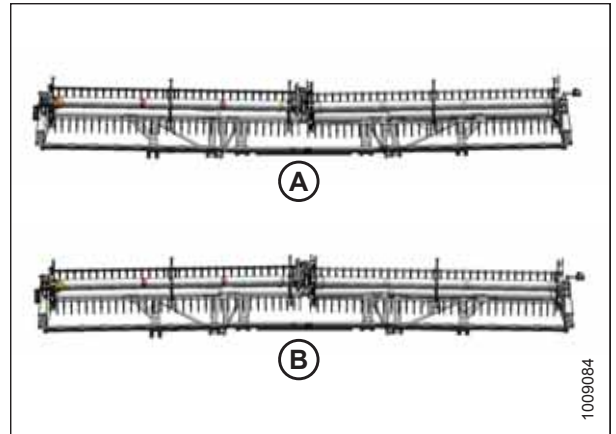


Figure 3.78: Wing Imbalance

1. Adjust the reel fore-aft to position 6 on indicator bracket (A) located on the left arm.
2. Lower the reel fully.

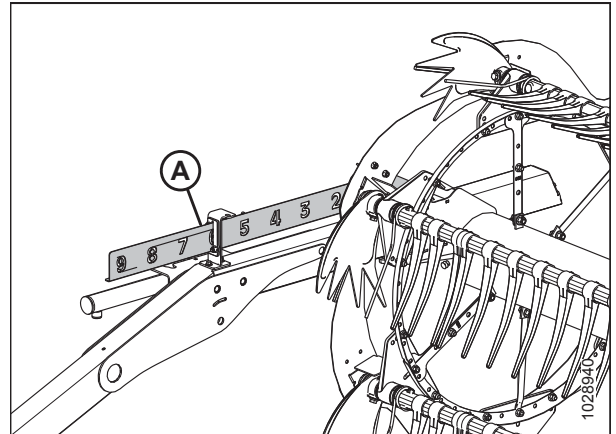


Figure 3.79: Fore-Aft Position

3. Adjust center-link (A) so that indicator (B) is at position D on the gauge.
4. If installed, move the transport wheels so that they are supported by the header. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Stabilizer / EasyMove™ Transport Wheels, page 62](#).
5. Park the combine on a level surface.
6. Position the header until it is 254–306 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground.

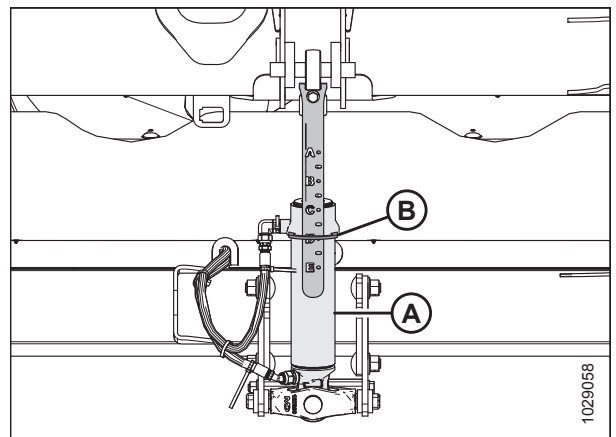


Figure 3.80: Center-Link

## OPERATION

7. Locate spirit level (A) on top of the float module frame. Check that the bubble is in the center. If adjustment is required, refer to [3.9 Leveling Header, page 294](#).
8. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
9. Remove the linkage cover. For instructions, refer to [Removing Flex Linkage Covers, page 40](#).
10. Open left header endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 33](#).

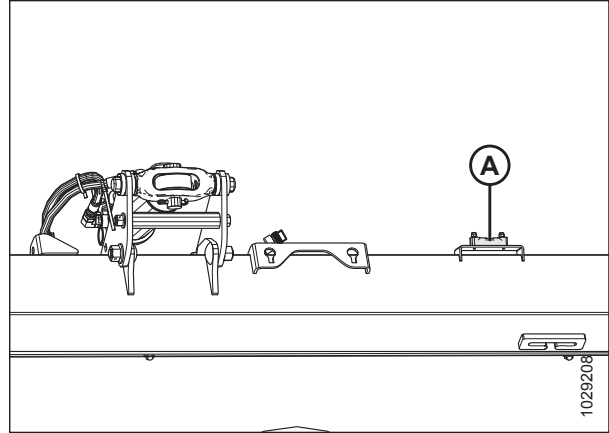


Figure 3.81: Spirit Level

### NOTE:

Parts hidden for clarity.

11. Attach flex checker cable (A) to flex checker cable lock (B).

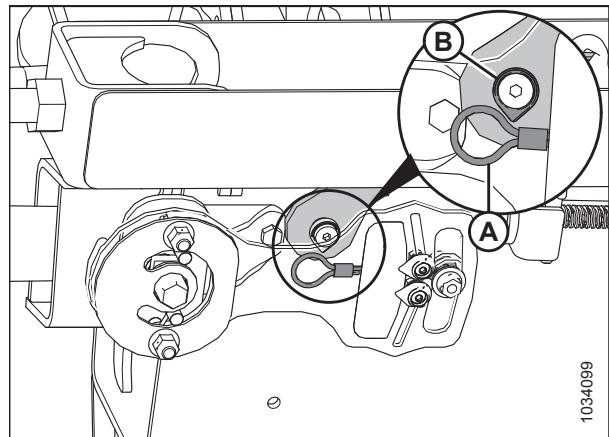


Figure 3.82: Flex Checker Cable Lock – Left Side

12. Remove hairpin (A) securing tool to tool holder bracket on left endsheet.
13. Remove tool (B), and reinstall hairpin to tool holder.

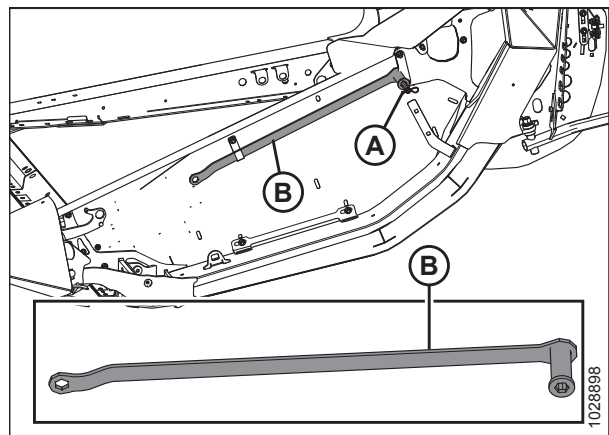


Figure 3.83: Left Endsheets

## OPERATION

14. Unlock the wing you are checking by moving spring handle (A) to the lower (UNLOCK) position. Unlock **ONLY** the wing you are checking. Ensure the opposite wing is locked.

**NOTE:**

There should be an audible click when you move the spring handle indicating that the internal mechanism engaged or disengaged.

15. If the internal lock mechanism does not engage, move the wing with tool (B) until you hear an audible click.

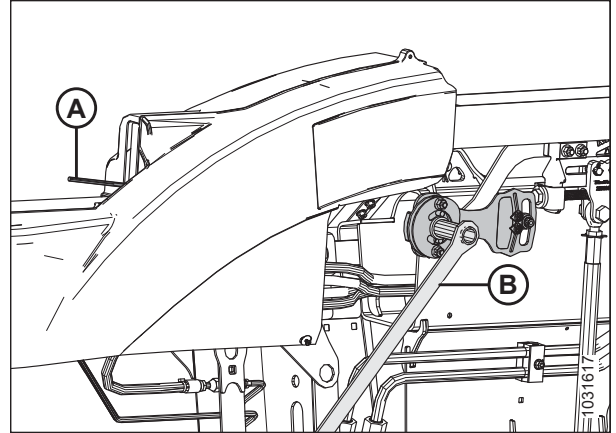


Figure 3.84: Wing Unlocked Position

16. Ensure float checking toggles (A) are disengaged (down) on both sides of the float module.
17. Ensure float locks (B) are engaged (up) on both sides of the float module.

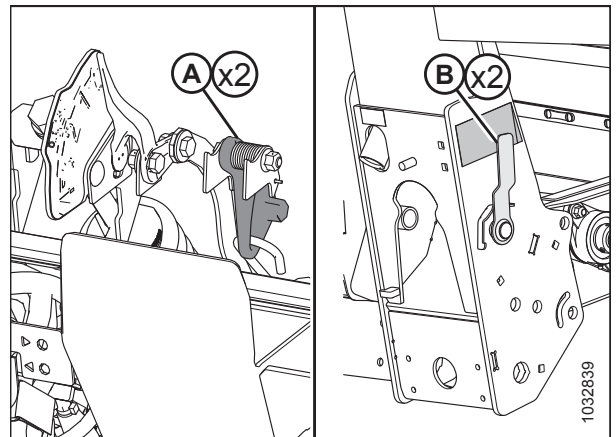


Figure 3.85: Checker Plate Assembly

## OPERATION

18. On checker plate assembly (A), pinch two indicators (B) together with your fingers to reset the indicators against the spring (C) located behind the plate.

**NOTE:**

Checker plate assembly (A) made transparent in illustration to show spring (C).

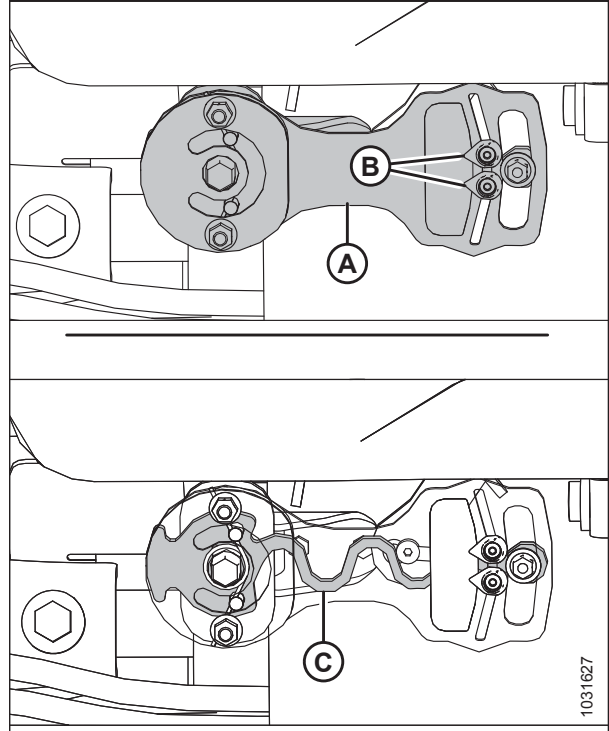


Figure 3.86: Checker Plate Assembly

19. Pull tool (C) down to rotate checker plate assembly (A) until pin (B) bottoms out at the end of slot. The lower indicator (D) will move down to give the first reading.

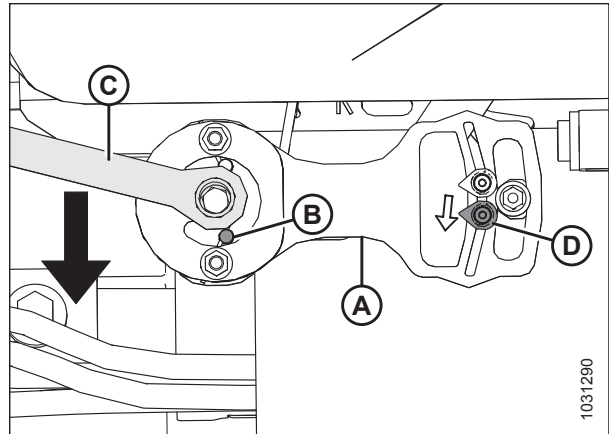


Figure 3.87: Checker Plate Assembly

## OPERATION

20. Push tool (C) up to rotate checker plate assembly (A) until pin (B) bottoms out at the end of slot. Upper indicator (D) will move up to give the second reading.
21. For the most accurate reading, perform Steps 19, page 86 and 20, page 87 twice before noting the reading.

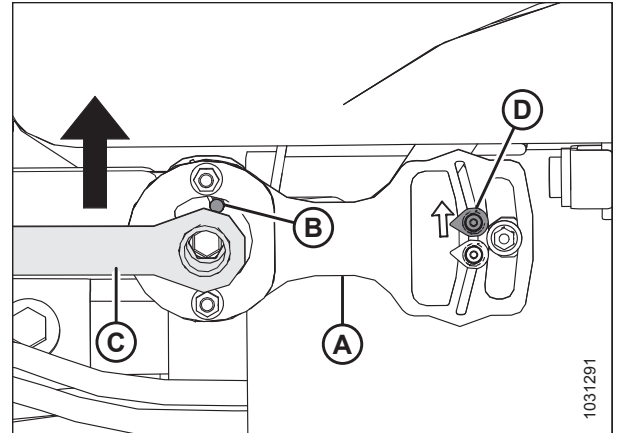


Figure 3.88: Checker Plate Assembly

22. Refer to decal (A) and compare the two readings.

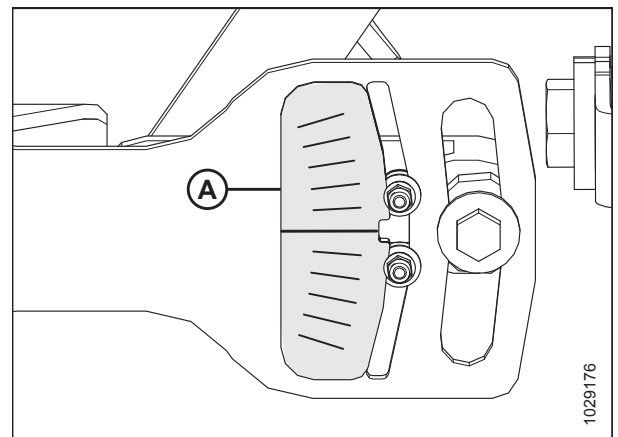


Figure 3.89: Flex Checker Decal Location

- (A) – If both indicators move equally, then the wing is balanced; no adjustment is required. Reinstall the linkage cover, and repeat the procedure on the opposite wing. For instructions, refer to *Installing Flex Linkage Covers, page 41*.
- (B) – If the top indicator moved more than the bottom indicator, then the wing is too light and must be made heavier. For instructions, refer to *Adjusting Wing Balance, page 89*.
- (C) – If the bottom indicator moved more than the top indicator, then the wing is too heavy and must be made lighter. For instructions, refer to *Adjusting Wing Balance, page 89*.

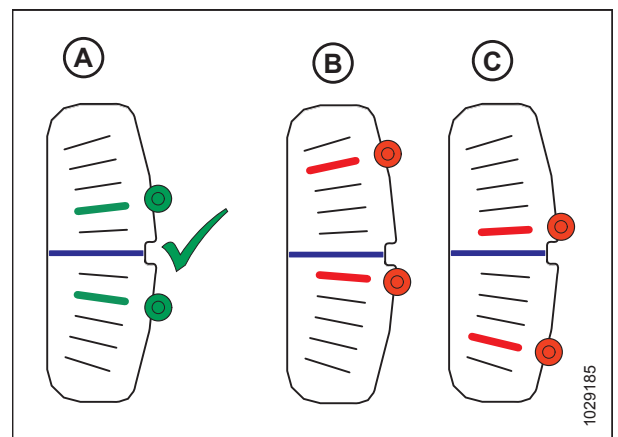


Figure 3.90: Wing Balance Reference

## OPERATION

### NOTE:

Parts hidden for clarity.

23. Disconnect flex checker cable (A) from flex checker cable lock (B).
24. Install the linkage cover. Refer to *Installing Flex Linkage Covers, page 41*.

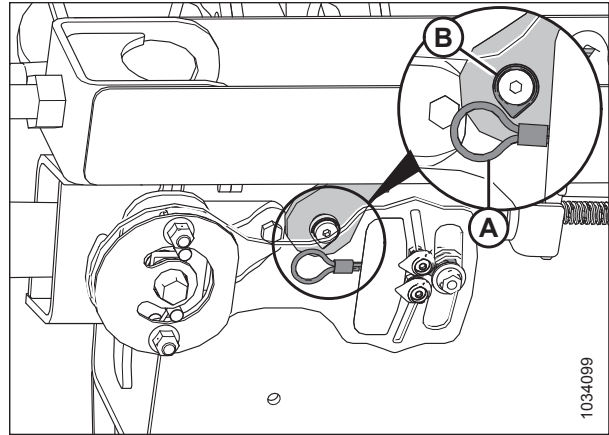


Figure 3.91: Flex Checker Cable Lock – Left Side

25. Remove hairpin (A) securing tool to tool holder bracket on left endsheet.
26. Remove tool (B), and reinstall hairpin to tool holder.

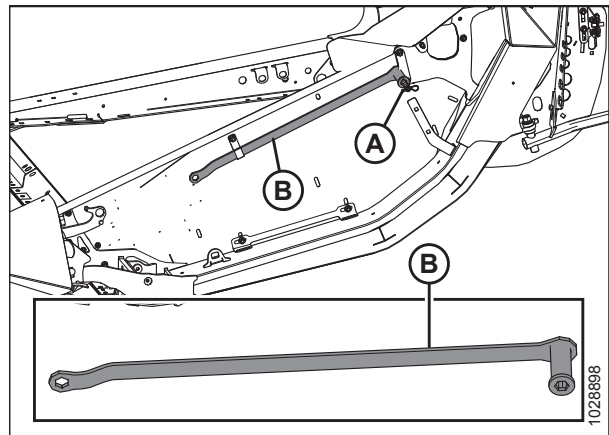


Figure 3.92: Left Endsheets



## OPERATION

### Adjusting Wing Balance

Wing balance is important for ground following. Operators should adjust the balance of each wing if there are issues with following the ground.

#### **WARNING**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before adjusting machine.

This procedure describes how to adjust the balance of each wing. Before proceeding, refer to [Checking Wing Balance, page 82](#) to determine if adjustments are necessary.

#### **IMPORTANT:**

To ensure correct wing balance readings, make sure the header float is set properly before proceeding. For instructions, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 70](#). The float module must be sitting level before performing any adjustments.

#### **NOTE:**

Parts hidden for clarity.

1. Attach flex checker cable (A) to flex checker cable lock (B).

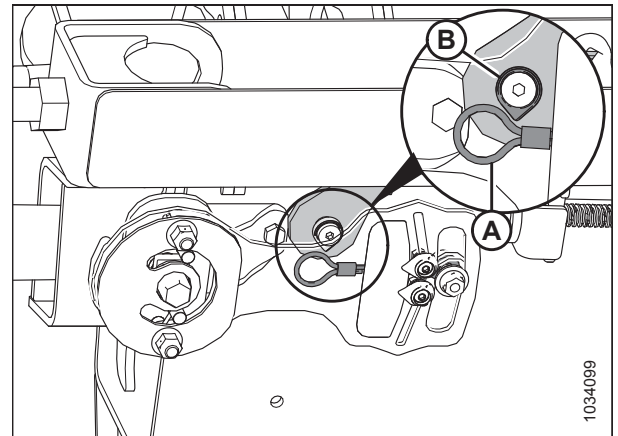


Figure 3.93: Flex Checker Cable Lock – Left Side

2. Remove hairpin (A) securing tool to tool holder bracket on left endsheet.
3. Remove tool (B), and reinstall hairpin to tool holder.

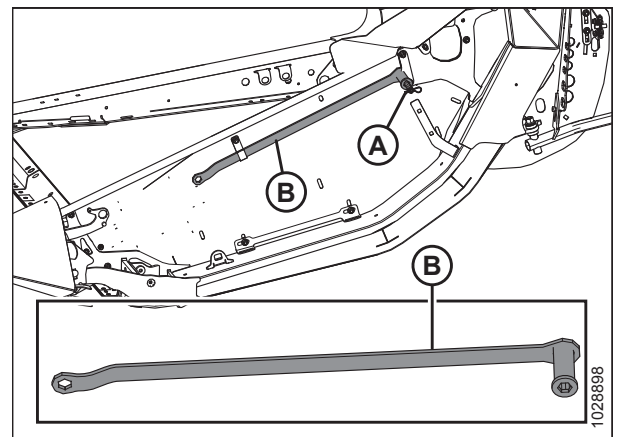


Figure 3.94: Left Endsheet

## OPERATION

- Ensure spring handle (A) is in the lower (UNLOCK) position. Unlock **ONLY** the wing you are adjusting. Keep the opposite wing locked.

### NOTE:

There should be an audible click when you move the spring handle indicating that the internal mechanism engaged or disengaged.

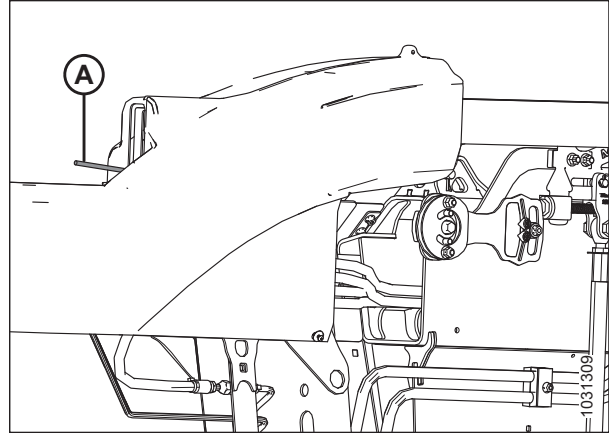


Figure 3.95: Wing in Unlocked Position

- On flex checker plate, pinch indicators (A) and (B) together with your fingers.
- Use tool (C) to rotate flex checker plate up until pin reaches the end of slot. The lower indicator (B) will move down to give the first reading.
- Use tool (C) to rotate flex checker plate down until pin reaches the end of slot. The upper indicator (A) will move up to give the second reading.
- Repeat Steps 6, page 90 and 7, page 90. Refer to 3.97, page 90 and compare the two readings as follows:
  - Condition A – the wing is too light; make wing heavier.
  - Condition B – the wing is too heavy; make wing lighter
  - Condition C – wing balance correctly adjusted. Reinstall the linkage cover, and repeat the procedure on the opposite wing.
- If the wing is too light (Condition A), make it heavier by turning adjuster bolt (A) to move clevis (B) in direction (C).
- If the wing is too heavy (Condition B), make it lighter by turning adjuster bolt (A) to move clevis (B) in direction (D).
- Recheck wing balance. Adjust as required until wing is balanced (Condition C).
- Move the spring handle to the upper (LOCK) position.
- If the lock does not engage, move the wing up and down with tool until it locks.

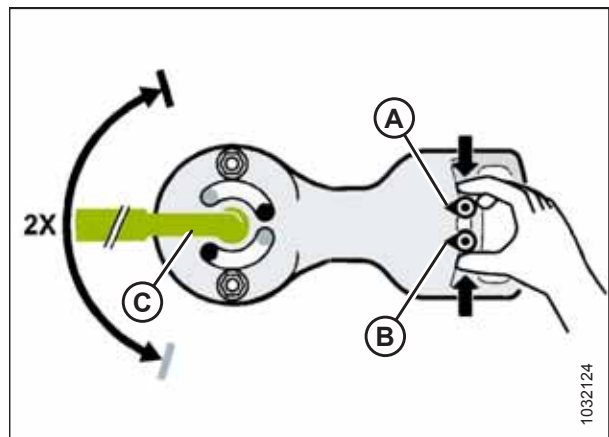


Figure 3.96: Wing Balance Adjustment – Left Side Shown

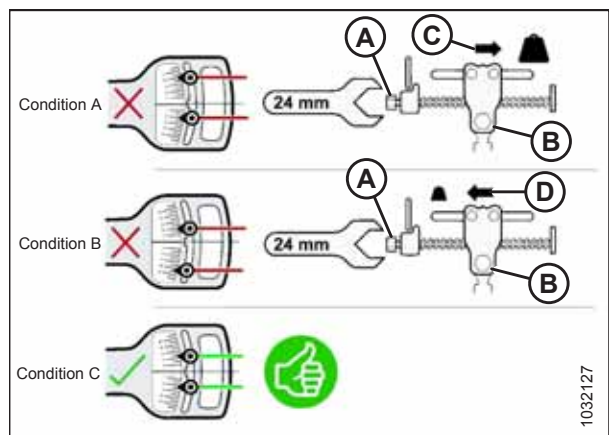


Figure 3.97: Wing Balance Adjustment – Left Side Shown

## OPERATION

### NOTE:

Parts hidden for clarity.

14. Remove flex checker cable (A) from flex checker cable lock (B).
15. Repeat the procedure on the opposite side.

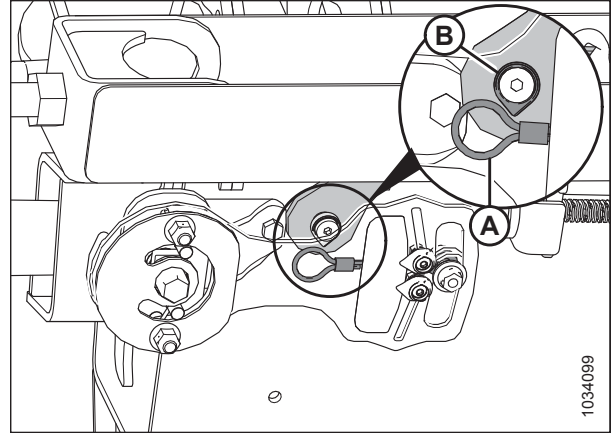


Figure 3.98: Flex Checker Cable Lock – Left Side

16. Return tool (B) to its storage position, and secure with hairpin (A).
17. Reinstall the linkage cover. For instructions, refer to or .

### NOTE:

Adjustment to the main float may be required to maintain good wing balance when operating in the field. For instructions, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Float](#), page 70.

18. If the cutterbar is not straight when the wings are in lock mode, then further adjustments are required. Contact your MacDon Dealer.

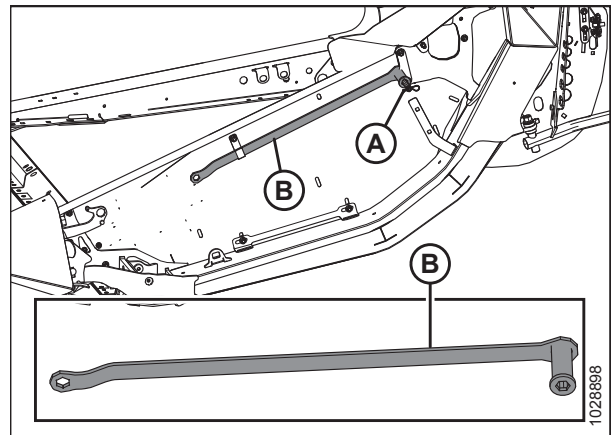


Figure 3.99: Left Endsheet

### 3.7.5 Header Angle

Header angle is adjustable to accommodate different crop conditions and/or soil types and can be adjusted using the center-link between the combine and the header. Some combines have an adjustable feeder house, which provides the operator an alternate method for controlling header angle.

Refer to [Adjusting Header Angle from Combine](#), page 93 for combine-specific adjustment details.

Header angle (A) is the angle between the header and the ground.

The header angle controls distance (B) between the cutterbar knife and the ground and is critical when cutting crop at ground level.

Adjusting the header angle pivots the header at the point of skid shoe/ground contact (C).

Guard angle (D) is the angle between the upper surface of the cutterbar guards and the ground.

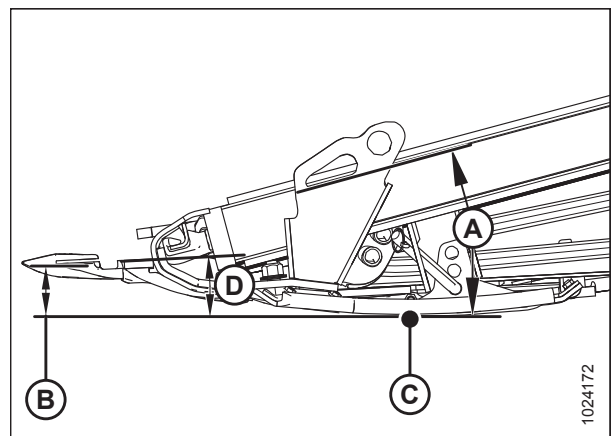


Figure 3.100: Header Angle

## OPERATION

1. Set the header angle according to the type and condition of crop and soil as follows:
  - a. Use shallower settings (A) (position **A** on the indicator) for normal cutting conditions and wet soil to reduce soil buildup at the cutterbar. Shallow angle settings also minimize damage to the knife in stony fields.
  - b. Use steeper settings (E) (position **E** on the indicator) for lodged crops and crops that are close to the ground such as soybeans.

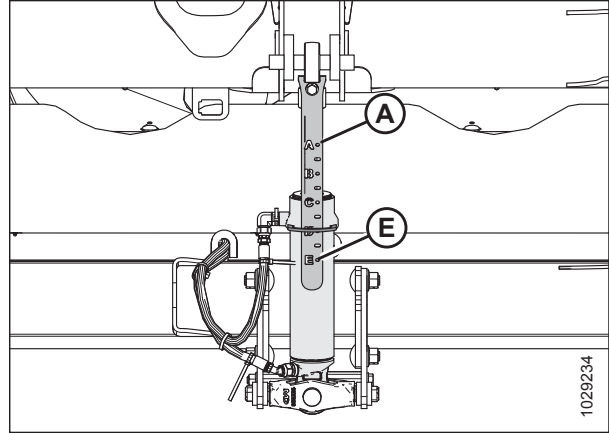


Figure 3.101: Center-Link

Shallowest angle (A) (center-link fully retracted) is at 1.7°, and produces the highest stubble when cutting on the ground.

Steepest angle (E) (center-link fully extended) is at 8.9°, and produces the lowest stubble when cutting on the ground.

Choose an angle that maximizes performance for your crop and field conditions.

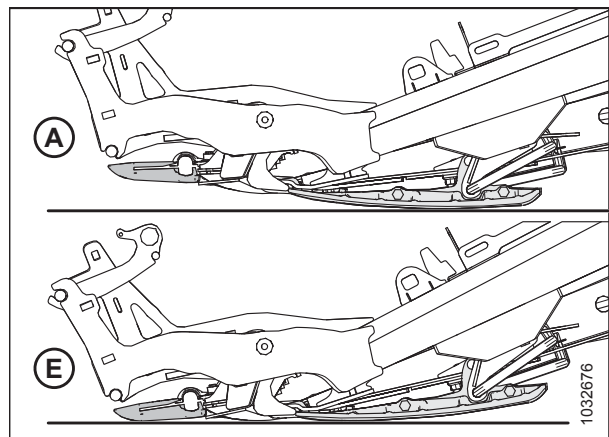


Figure 3.102: Guard Angles

## OPERATION

### *Adjusting Header Angle from Combine*

The header angle is adjusted from the combine cab with a switch on the operator's control handle and an indicator on the center-link or on the monitor in the cab. The header angle is determined by the length of the center-link between the combine float module and the header, or by tilting the feeder house on selected combines.

#### **Case combines:**

Case combines use control handle switches to adjust the center-link to change the header angle.

1. Press and hold SHIFT button (A) on the backside of the control handle and press switch (B) to tilt the header forward or press switch (C) to tilt the header back.



Figure 3.103: Case Combine Controls

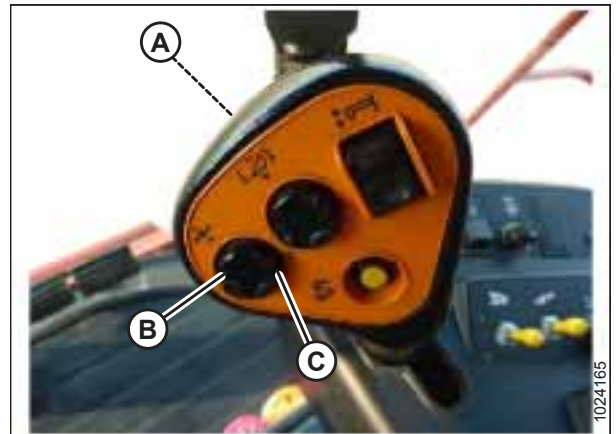


Figure 3.104: Case Combine Controls

## OPERATION

### ***New Holland combines:***

New Holland combines use control handle switches to adjust the center-link to change the header angle.

1. Press and hold SHIFT button (A) on the backside of the control handle and press switch (B) to tilt the header forward (steeper angle) or switch (C) to tilt the header back (shallower angle).

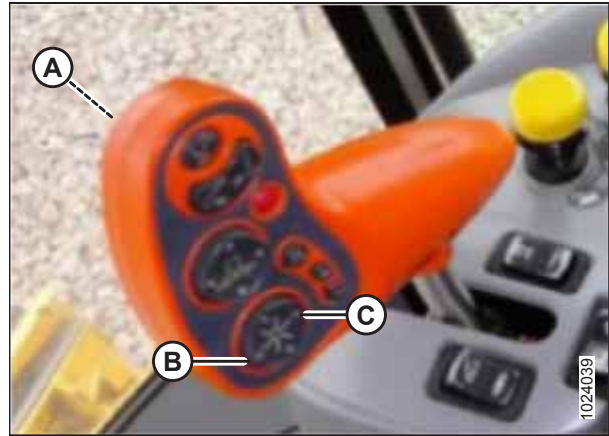


Figure 3.105: New Holland CR/CX Controls

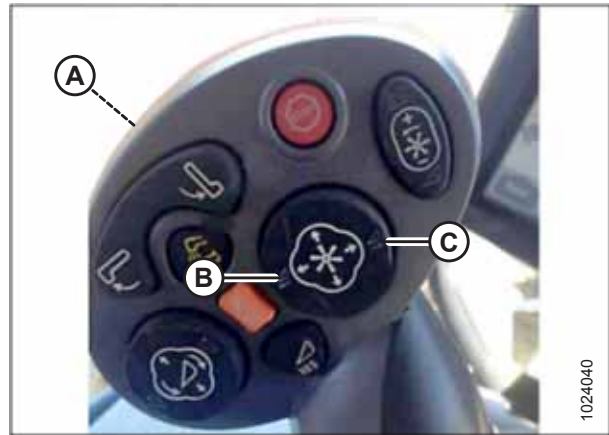


Figure 3.106: New Holland CR/CX Controls

## OPERATION

### AGCO combines:

AGCO combines use a combination of the reel fore-aft switches on the control handle and a dealer-installed auxiliary rocker switch, which toggles between reel fore-aft and header tilt functionality. The location of the rocker switch varies with combine model.

1. **Gleaner A only:** Open armrest cover (A) to expose a row of switches.
2. Press dealer-installed rocker switch (B) to HEADER TILT position.

#### NOTE:

Gleaner A shown in the image, other Challenger and Massey Ferguson combine models have rocker switch on the console (not shown).

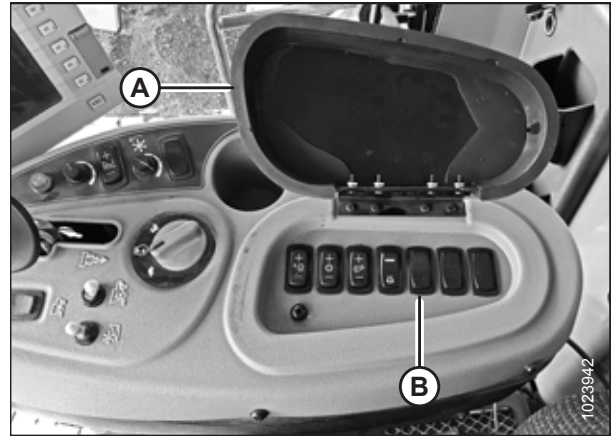


Figure 3.107: Gleaner A Console

3. To tilt the header forward (steeper angle), press button (A) on control handle. To tilt the header back (shallower angle), press button (B) on control handle.



Figure 3.108: Gleaner Controls

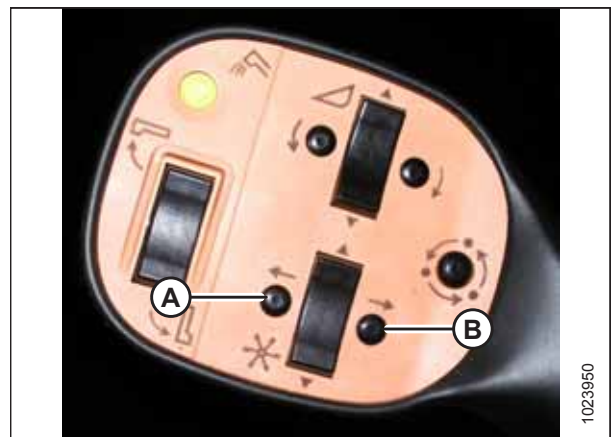


Figure 3.109: Gleaner Controls

## OPERATION



Figure 3.110: Challenger/Massey Ferguson Controls

### **CLAAS combines:**

**CLAAS (with factory-installed fore-aft / header tilt switch):** Newer CLAAS combines use a combination of the reel fore-aft switches on the control handle and a factory-installed auxiliary rocker switch which toggles between reel fore-aft and header tilt functionality.

1. Press HOTKEY switch (A) on the operator's console to deck plate position (the header icon [B] with the arrows pointing to each other).

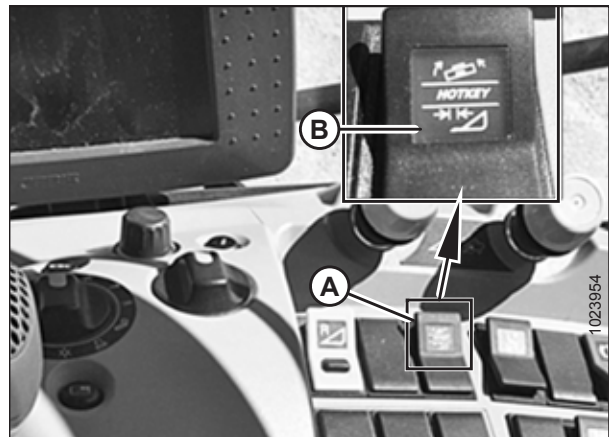


Figure 3.111: CLAAS 700 Console



## OPERATION

2. Press and hold switch (A) on the rear of the control handle.
3. To tilt the header forward (steeper angle), press switch (C).  
To tilt the header back (shallower angle), press switch (B).

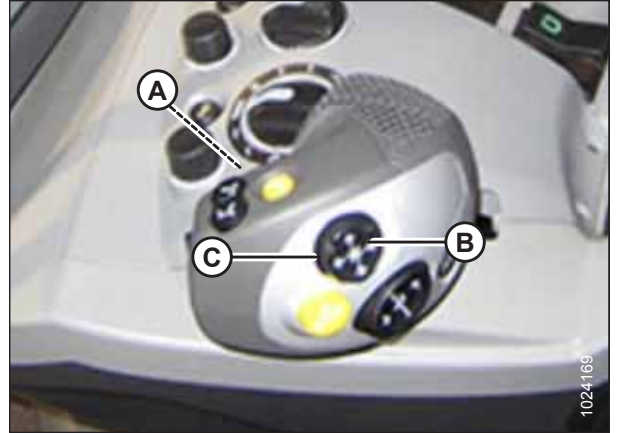


Figure 3.112: CLAAS 600/700 Control Handle

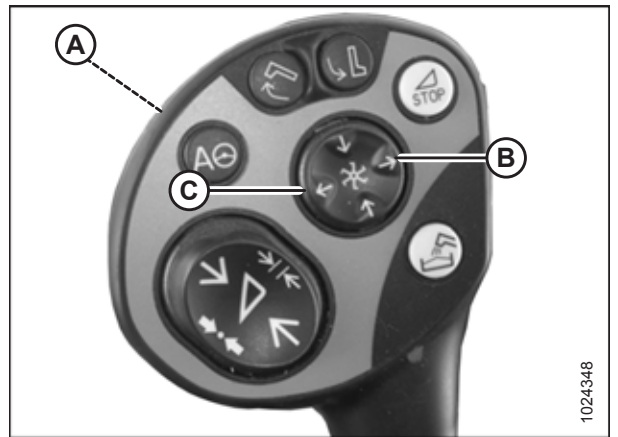


Figure 3.113: CLAAS 500 Control Handle

### *John Deere combines:*

**John Deere S700:** S700 Series combines can use a feeder house deckplate tilting system for header fore-aft adjustment. Set the deckplate at a mid-point position, and use the MacDon fore-aft and header tilt system for tilt functionality.

### **IMPORTANT:**

Damage to equipment may occur if both the deckplate and MacDon header tilt are adjusted to their maximum range.

1. To tilt the header forward (steeper angle), press switch (A).  
To tilt the header back (shallower angle), press switch (B).



Figure 3.114: John Deere 700 Controls

## OPERATION

**John Deere (except S700 Series):** John Deere combines use a combination of the reel fore-aft switches on the control handle and a Dealer-installed auxiliary rocker switch which toggles between reel fore-aft and header tilt functionality.

1. Press reel fore-aft / header tilt switch (A) on the console into HEADER TILT position.

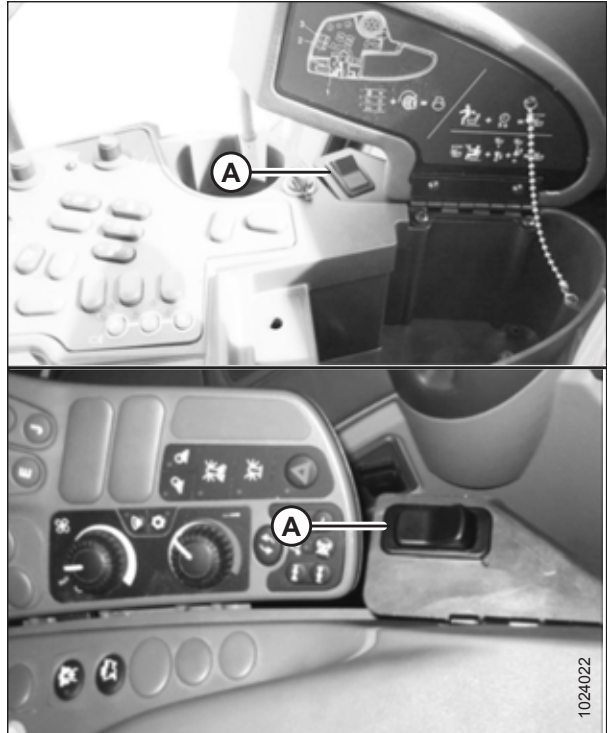


Figure 3.115: John Deere Consoles

2. To tilt the header forward (steeper angle), press switch (A).  
To tilt the header back (shallower angle), press switch (B).



Figure 3.116: John Deere Control Handle

## OPERATION

### *Versatile combines:*

Versatile combines use a combination of reel fore-aft switches on the control handle and a factory-installed auxiliary rocker switch on the combine control console that toggles between reel fore-aft and header tilt functionality.

1. Press ON switch (A) on console to place controls in HEADER TILT mode.
2. To tilt the header forward (steeper angle), press button (B) on control handle. To tilt the header back (shallower angle), press button (C) on control handle.



Figure 3.117: Versatile Control Handle and Console

### 3.7.6 Reel Speed

Reel speed is one of the factors that determines how crop is moved from the cutterbar onto the drapers.

The reel performs best when it appears to be driven by the ground. It should move the cut crop evenly through the cutterbar and onto the drapers without bunching and with minimal disturbance.

In standing crop, reel speed should be slightly higher than, or equal to, ground speed.

In flattened crop or crop that is leaning away from the cutterbar, the reel speed needs to be higher than the ground speed. To achieve this, either increase the reel speed or decrease the ground speed.

Excessive shattering of grain heads or crop loss over the header backtube may indicate that the reel speed is too high. Excessive reel speed also increases reel component wear and overloads the reel drive.

#### **NOTE:**

Excessive reel speed will also cause the reel circuit to go over relief. The reel will speed up and slow down at each bat when operating in heavy, tough, and lodged crops. Reducing the reel speed, so it is closer to the ground speed, will still allow the reel to lift the crop while not trying to pull it out of the ground. This will also reduce seed loss from the reel trying to comb through the crop, instead of just lifting it.

Slower reel speeds can be used with nine-bat reels, which is advantageous in shatter-prone crops.

For recommended reel speeds in specific crops and conditions, refer to [3.6.2 Header Settings, page 46](#).

The reel speed is adjustable using the controls in the combine cab. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual for adjustment details.

#### *Optional Reel Drive Sprockets*

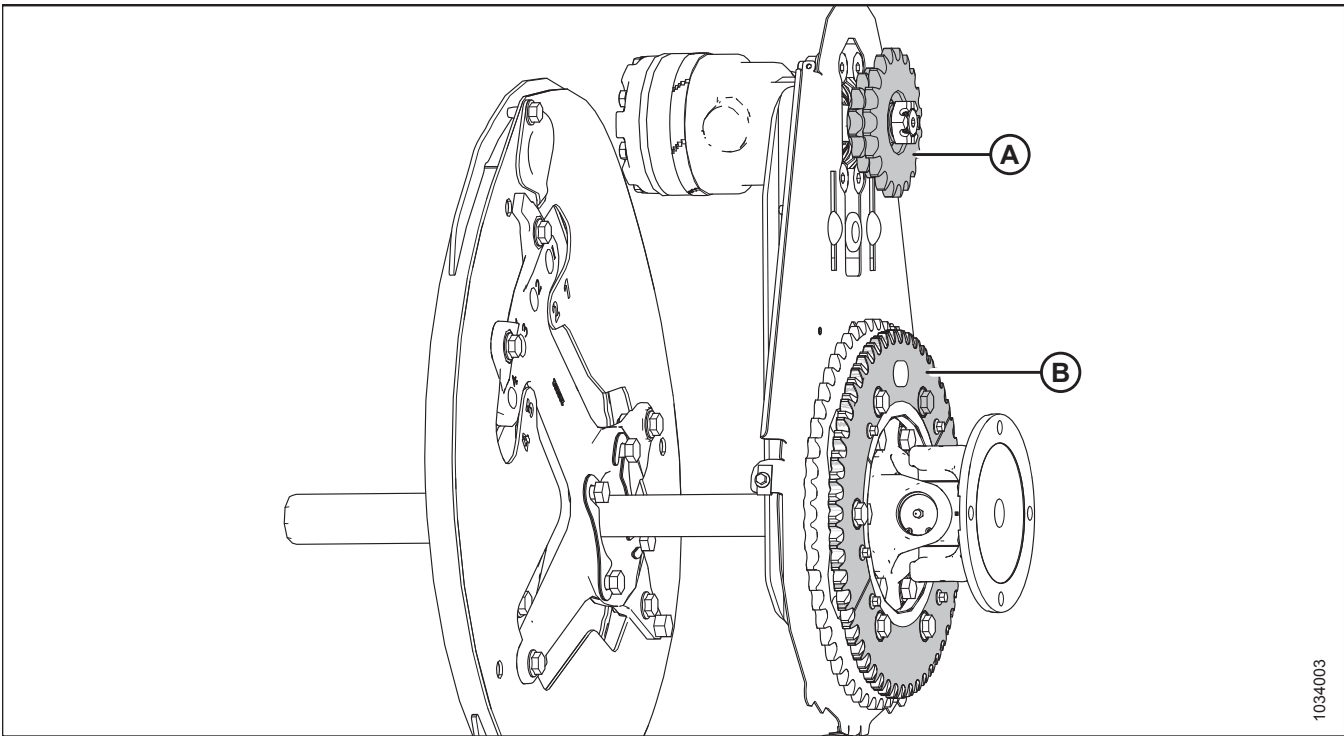
Optional sprockets for use in special crop conditions are available as an alternative to the factory-installed single sprocket.

The header is factory-equipped with a 19-tooth reel drive single sprocket, which is suitable for most crops. Replacing the 19-tooth reel drive single sprocket with optional dual reel drive sprocket (A) will provide more torque to the reel in heavy cutting conditions. With the optional dual reel drive sprocket installed, an optional 52-tooth sprocket can also be added on top of the existing 56-tooth lower sprocket that will allow for higher reel speed in light crops when operating at increased ground speed. With these two optional sprockets installed, switching from high-torque to high-speed and vice versa will be

## OPERATION

quick and easy. For sprockets information, refer to Table 3.12, page 100, and contact your MacDon Dealer for ordering information.

**Figure 3.118: Reel Drive with Optional Sprockets**



A - Dual Reel Drive Sprocket (MD #273451, MD #273452, or MD #273453)<sup>42</sup>

B - 52-Tooth Sprocket (MD #273689)<sup>43</sup>

**Table 3.12 Optional Sprockets**

Sprocket	Machine Hydraulics	Combine	Application	Optional Drive Sprocket
Dual reel drive sprocket (A)	13.79 MPa (2000 psi)	Gleaner Transverse Rotary, Case IH 7010, 8010, 7120, 8120, 88 Series	Combining down rice	10/20 tooth
Dual reel drive sprocket (A)	17.24 MPa (2500 psi)	CLAAS 500, 700 Series, Challenger Axial Rotary	Combining down rice	12/20 tooth
Dual reel drive sprocket (A)	20.68 MPa (3000 psi)	New Holland CR, CX	Combining down rice	14/20 tooth
Lower sprocket (B)	—	All	Light crops	52 tooth

### 3.7.7 Ground Speed

Operating at the proper ground speed will cleanly cut crop and evenly distribute crop material.

Reduce ground speed in difficult cutting conditions to reduce loads on cutting components and drives.

Use lower ground speeds in very light crops (e.g., short soybeans) to allow the reel to pull in short plants. Start at 4.8–5.8 km/h (3.0–3.5 mph) and adjust as required.

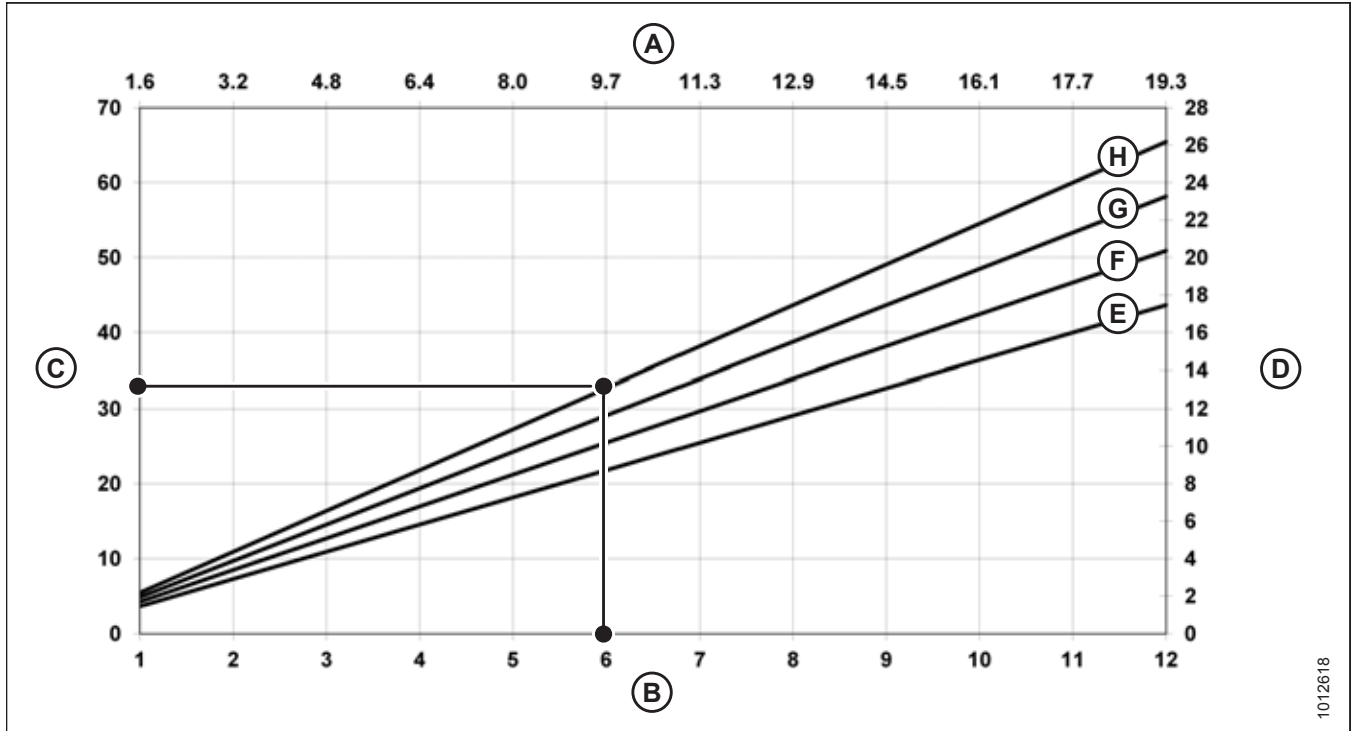
42. These sprockets are sold separately (individual parts).

43. This sprocket is included in kit MD #311882.

## OPERATION

Higher ground speeds may require heavier float settings to prevent excessive bouncing that causes uneven cutting and possible damage to the cutting components. If ground speed is increased, draper and reel speeds should generally be increased to handle the extra material.

Figure 3.119, page 101 illustrates the relationship between ground speed and area cut for the various sized headers.



**Figure 3.119: Ground Speed versus Acres**

A - Kilometers/Hour  
D - Hectares/Hour

B - Miles/Hour  
E - 9.1 m (30 ft.)  
H - 13.7 m (45 ft.)

C - Acres/Hour  
F - 10.7 m (35 ft.)

**Example:** A 12.2 m (40 ft.) header operating at a ground speed of 9.7 km/h (6 mph) would produce a cut area of approximately 11.3 hectares (28 acres) in one hour.

### 3.7.8 Side Draper Speed

Operating with the correct draper speed is an important factor for achieving good flow of cut crop away from the cutterbar.

Side draper speed must be optimized for crop density, ground speed, and feeder house capacity. Side drapers that run too fast, will pull crop off the cutterbar, and can result in crop bunches at the feed draper. Side drapers that run too slow, will allow the feed draper to pull crop off of the side drapers, and can result in uneven feeding also.

Adjust the draper speed to achieve efficient crop feeding onto the float module feed draper. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Side Draper Speed, page 102](#).

## OPERATION

### Adjusting Side Draper Speed

The side drapers carry the cut crop to the float module feed draper, which then feeds it into the combine. The speed is adjustable to suit a variety of crops and crop conditions.

Side drapers (A) are driven by hydraulic motors and a pump that is powered by the combine feeder house drive through a gearbox on the float module. Side draper speed is adjustable in cab on the side draper speed control, which regulates the flow to the draper hydraulic motors.

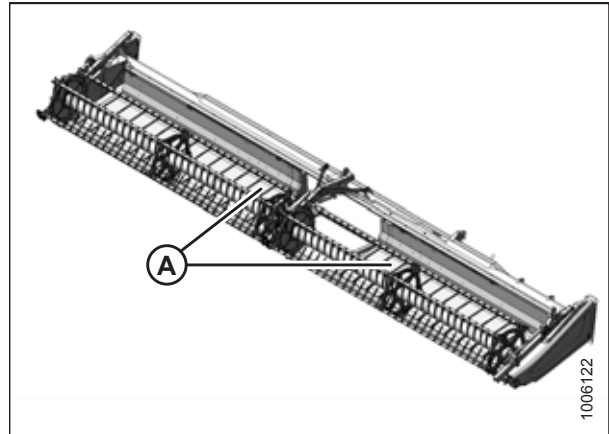


Figure 3.120: Side Drapers

1. Rotate knob (A) to setting 6 as a starting point.

**NOTE:**

Switch (B) activates the header tilt or reel fore-aft controls. For instructions on header tilt or reel fore-aft controls, refer to [Adjusting Header Angle from Combine, page 93](#).

**NOTE:**

For CNH combines the switch to activate the header tilt or reel fore-aft controls is on the back of the ground speed lever (GSL).

2. For recommended draper settings, refer to one of the following:
  - [3.6.2 Header Settings, page 46](#)
  - [3.6.3 Optimizing Header for Straight Combining Canola, page 57](#)

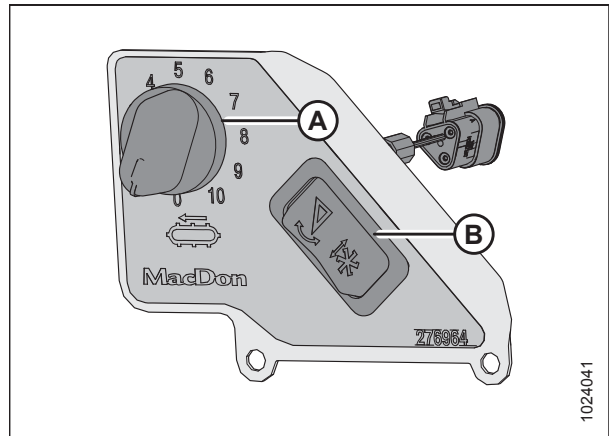


Figure 3.121: In-Cab Side Draper Speed Control

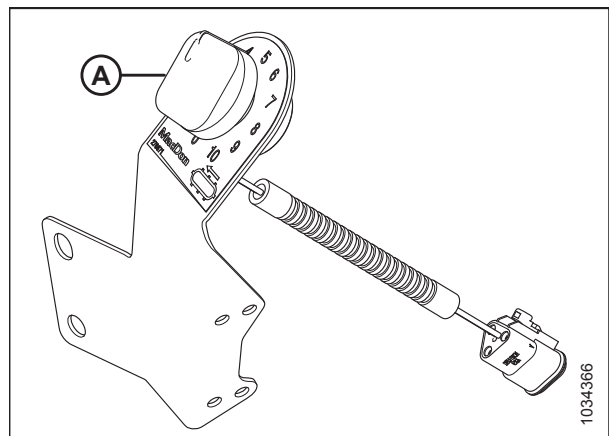


Figure 3.122: CNH In-Cab Side Draper Speed Control

## OPERATION

### *Feed Draper Speed*

The feed draper moves the cut crop from the side drapers into the float module feed auger.

The float module feed draper (A) is driven by a hydraulic motor and a pump that is powered by the combine feeder house drive through a gearbox on the float module.

The feed draper speed is determined by the combine feeder house speed and cannot be independently adjusted.

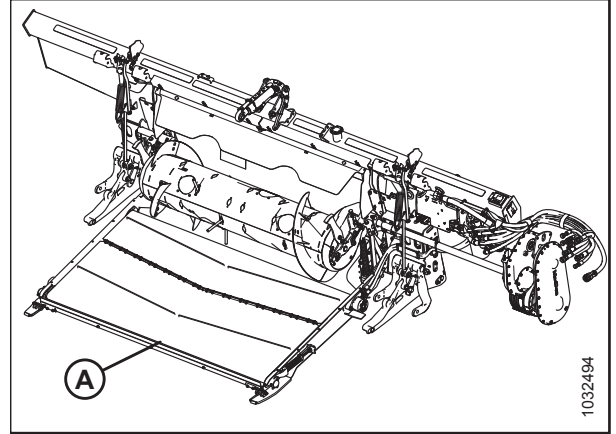


Figure 3.123: FM200 Float Module

### 3.7.9 Knife Speed Information

The header knife drive is powered by the integrated pump.

Table 3.13 Feeder House Speed

Combine	Feeder House Speed (rpm)
Case IH	580
Challenger	625
CLAAS <sup>44</sup>	420
Gleaner	625
John Deere	490
Massey Ferguson	625
New Holland	580

44. The rear shaft speed on CLAAS combines is 420 rpm (speed shown on cab display monitor also will be 420). The output shaft speed is actually 750 rpm.

## OPERATION

### NOTE:

All sizes of headers are set to 650 rpm. This knife speed will work fine in normal cutting conditions.

### IMPORTANT:

Ensure the knife speed is within the range of rpm values in Table 3.14, page 104. For instructions, refer to *Checking Knife Speed*, page 104.

### IMPORTANT:

Set knife speed at maximum to avoid risk of overspeeding and failing the knife if the feederhouse speed is adjusted.

Table 3.14 FD2 Series Header Knife Speed

Header	Recommended Knife Drive Speed Range (rpm)	
	Single-Knife Drive	Double-Knife Drive
FD230	600–750	—
FD235	600–700	600–750
FD240	600–650	600–750
FD241	—	600–750
FD245	—	600–750
FD250	—	600–750

### Checking Knife Speed



### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Open the endshield. For instructions, refer to *Opening Header Endshields*, page 33.



### WARNING

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

3. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
4. Engage the header drive, and run the combine at operating rpm.
5. Run the float module and header for 10 minutes to warm up oil to 38°C (100°F).
6. Measure the rpm of flywheel (A) with a hand-held photo tachometer.

### NOTE:

One revolution (rpm) is equivalent to two knife strokes (spm) (1 rpm=2 spm).

7. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
8. Compare flywheel rpm measurement with the rpm values in the knife speed chart. For more information, refer to *3.7.9 Knife Speed Information*, page 103.
9. Contact your MacDon Dealer if the pulley rpm measurement exceeds the specified rpm range for your header.

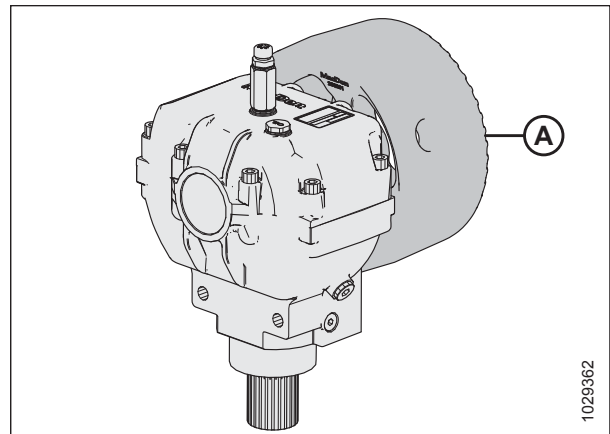


Figure 3.124: Flywheel



### 3.7.10 Reel Height

The reel operating position depends on the type of crop and cutting conditions. Set the reel height and fore-aft position to carry material past the knife and onto the drapers with minimal damage to the crop. For more information, refer to [3.7.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 109](#).

The reel height is controlled manually or with button presets on the ground speed lever (GSL) in the combine cab. Refer to your combine operator’s manual for instructions on controlling reel height or setting up auto reel height presets. Where applicable, this manual contains instructions for presetting reel height on selected combines. Refer to [3.8 Auto Header Height Control, page 136](#) for more information.

**Table 3.15 Reel Position**

Crop Condition	Reel Position
Lodged rice	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lower the reel</li> <li>• Change reel speed and/or cam setting</li> <li>• Change fore-aft position by extending the reel</li> </ul>
Bushy or heavy standing (all)	Raised

The following conditions might result if the reel is set too low:

- Crop loss over the header backtube
- Crop disturbance on the drapers caused by the reel fingers
- Crop being pushed down by the tine tubes
- Tall crop being wrapped around the reel drive and ends

The following conditions might result if the reel is set too high:

- Cutterbar plugging
- Crop lodging and being left uncut
- Grain stalks dropping ahead of cutterbar

For recommended reel heights for specific crops and crop conditions, refer to [3.6.2 Header Settings, page 46](#).

**IMPORTANT:**

Maintain adequate clearance to prevent fingers contacting the knife or the ground. For instructions, refer to [5.16.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 572](#).

#### *Checking and Adjusting Reel Height Sensor*

The output voltage range of the auto reel height sensor can be checked from inside the combine or manually at the sensor. For in-cab instructions, refer to the combine operator’s manual.

**IMPORTANT:**

Ensure minimum reel height is properly set before adjusting reel height sensor. For instructions, refer to [5.16.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 572](#).

## OPERATION

Reel height sensor (A) is located on the right endsheet and connects to the right reel arm.

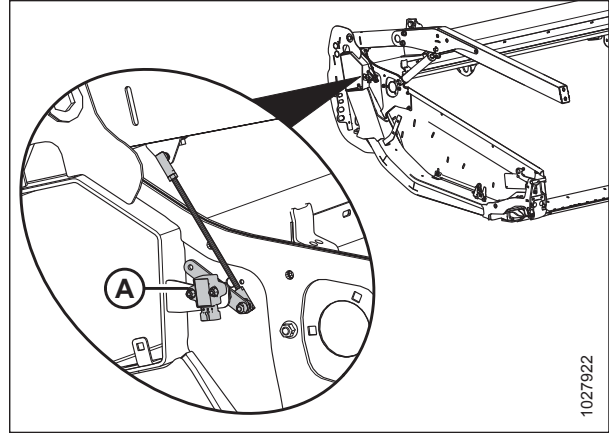


Figure 3.125: Reel Height Sensor Location

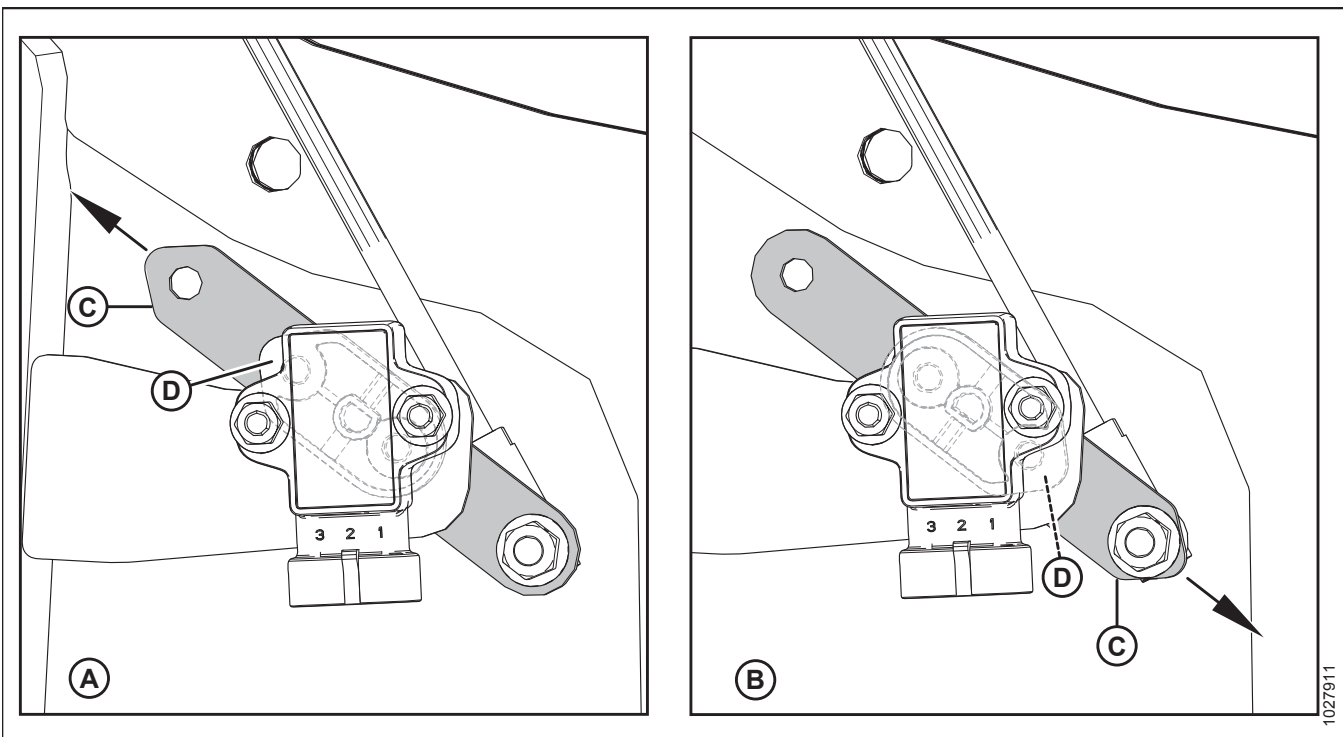


Figure 3.126: Sensor Arm/Pointer Configurations

A - John Deere, CLAAS, AGCO IDEAL™ Configuration

B - Case/New Holland Configuration

C - Sensor Arm

D - Sensor Pointer (Located Between Sensor and Sensor Arm)

### NOTE:

In configuration **A**, the arrow indicates that the pointed end of the sensor arm is pointed toward the back of the header.

In configuration **B**, the arrow indicates that the pointed end of the sensor arm is pointed toward the front of the header.

Check that sensor arm (C) and pointer (D) are configured properly for your machine, refer to [Figure 3.126, page 106](#).

### IMPORTANT:

To measure the output voltage of the reel height sensor, the combine engine needs to be running and supplying power to the sensor. Always engage the combine parking brake and stay away from the reel.

## OPERATION

**Table 3.16 Reel Height Sensor Voltage Limits**

Combine Type	Voltage Range	
	X Voltage (Reel Raised)	Y Voltage (Reel Lowered)
AGCO IDEAL™	3.9–4.3 V	0.7–1.1 V
Case/New Holland	0.7–1.1 V	3.9–4.3 V
CLAAS	3.9–4.3 V	0.7–1.1 V
John Deere	3.9–4.3 V	0.7–1.1 V

**NOTE:**

For CLAAS combines: To avoid a collision of the reel with the cab, the machine is equipped with an automatic reel height limitation. Some CLAAS combines have an automatic shutoff feature that engages when the automatic reel height limitation is reached. When raising the header by more than 80%, the reel is automatically lowered. The automatic lowering of the reel can be manually overridden, and a warning will appear on the CEBIS terminal.

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

**⚠ WARNING**

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

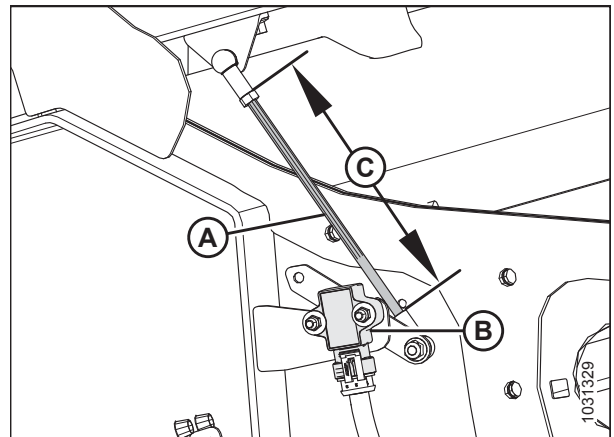
*To check the voltage range manually, follow these steps:*

1. Engage combine parking brake.
2. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
3. Lower the reel fully.
4. Use the combine display or a voltmeter (if measuring the sensor manually) to measure voltage range **Y**. Refer to Table 3.16, page 107 for range requirements.
5. If using a voltmeter, measure the voltage between the ground (pin 2 wire) and the signal (pin 3 wire) at the reel height sensor (B).
6. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
7. Adjust length of threaded rod (A) to modify voltage range **Y**.

**NOTE:**

Dimension (C) is factory set to 164.5 mm (6.5 in).

8. Repeat checking and adjusting until voltage range **Y** is within the range specified.



**Figure 3.127: Reel Height Sensor – Right Reel Arm with Reel Down**

## OPERATION

9. Start the engine, and fully raise the reel.
10. Use the combine display or a voltmeter (if measuring the sensor manually) to measure voltage range **X**. Refer to Table 3.16, page 107 for range requirements.
11. If using a voltmeter, measure the voltage between the ground (pin 2 wire) and the signal (pin 3 wire) at the reel height sensor (A).
12. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
13. Loosen two M5 hex nuts (B) and rotate sensor (A) to achieve voltage range **X**.
14. Repeat checking and adjusting until voltage range **X** is within the range specified.
15. Start the engine and fully lower the reel.
16. Recheck voltage range **Y** and ensure it is still within the range specified. Adjust if required.

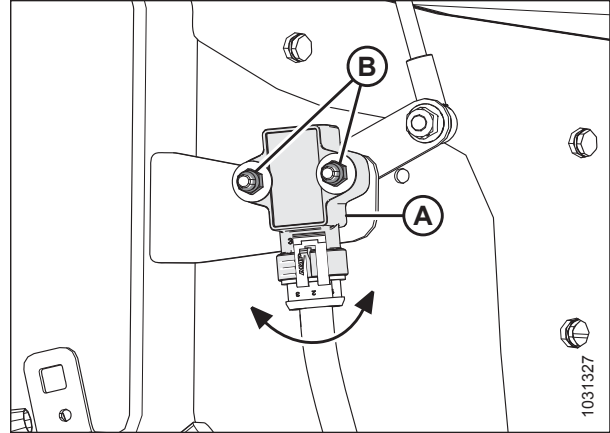


Figure 3.128: Reel Height Sensor – Right Reel Arm with Reel Up

### Replacing Reel Height Sensor

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before making adjustments to the machine.

1. Start the engine.
2. Lower the reel fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Disconnect harness from sensor (A).
5. Remove two hex head bolts (B) from sensor arm (C). Retain hardware for reinstallation.

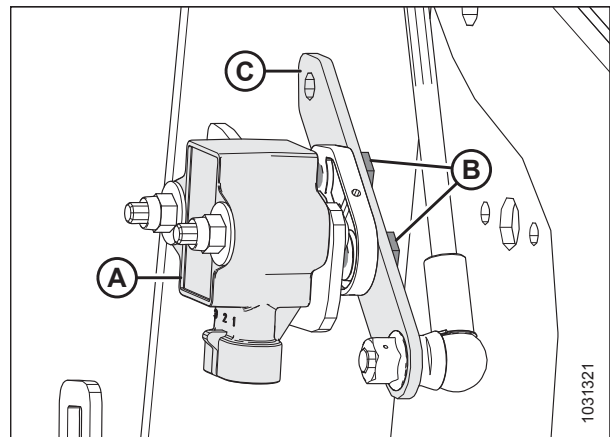


Figure 3.129: Reel Height Sensor – Right Reel Arm

## OPERATION

6. Remove two nyloc nuts, washers, and bolts (A) securing sensor (B) to the header frame. Remove sensor.
7. Install new sensor (B) to bracket (C) on header frame, and attach using retained bolts (A), washers, and nyloc nuts. Torque bolts (A) to 2–3 Nm (17–27 lbf·in).

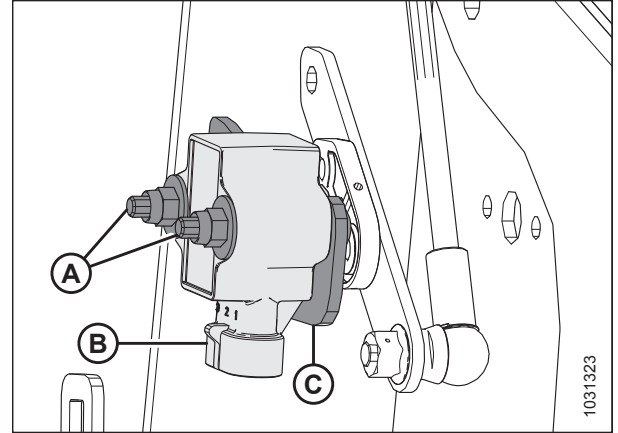


Figure 3.130: Reel Height Sensor – Right Reel Arm

8. Secure sensor arm (B) using retained hex head bolts (A). Ensure sensor pointer (C) is installed in the same direction as the pointed end of sensor arm (B).
9. Torque bolts (A) to 4 Nm (35 lbf·in).
10. Connect the sensor to the harness.
11. Check the sensor voltage range. For instructions, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Reel Height Sensor, page 105](#).

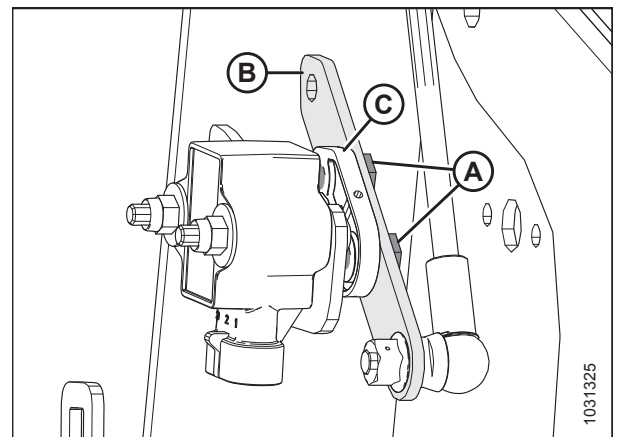


Figure 3.131: Reel Height Sensor – Right Reel Arm

### 3.7.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position

Reel fore-aft position is a critical factor for achieving the best results in adverse conditions. The factory-recommended reel position has the position marker centered over numbers (4–5 on the indicator). This suits normal conditions, but the fore-aft position can be adjusted as required using the controls inside the cab.

The reel can be moved approximately 155 mm (6 in) farther aft by repositioning the fore-aft cylinders on the header's reel arms to accommodate certain crop conditions.

- For double-reel headers, refer to [Repositioning Fore-Aft Cylinders – Double Reel, page 111](#).
- For triple-reel headers, refer to [Repositioning Fore-Aft Cylinders – Triple Reel, page 115](#).

## OPERATION

The reel position indicator (A) is located at the left reel arm. Bracket (B) is the reel fore-aft position marker.

For straight standing crop, center the reel over the cutterbar (4–5 on indicator).

For crops that are down, tangled, or leaning, it may be necessary to move the reel ahead of the cutterbar (lower number on indicator).

**NOTE:**

If experiencing difficulty picking up flattened crop, adjust to a steeper header angle. Refer to [3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91](#) for adjustment instructions. Adjust reel position only if header angle adjustments are not satisfactory.

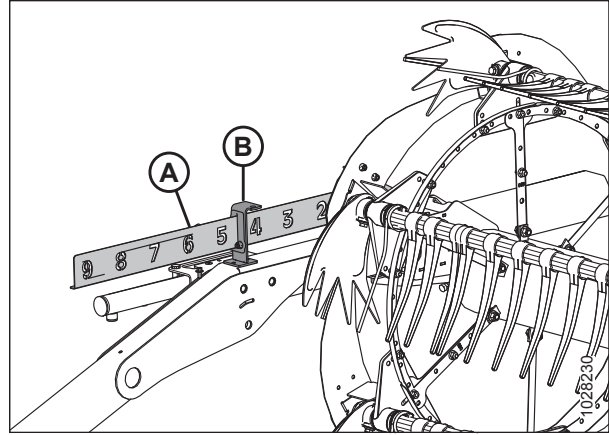


Figure 3.132: Fore-Aft Indicator

**NOTE:**

In crops that are difficult to pick up such as rice, or severely lodged crops that require full forward positioning of the reel, set the reel tine pitch to provide proper placement of the crop onto the drapers. Refer to [3.7.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 119](#) for adjustment details.

### Adjusting Reel Fore-Aft Position

1. Select FORE-AFT mode on the selector switch in the cab.
2. Operate the hydraulics to move the reel to the desired position while using fore-aft indicator (A) as a reference. Bracket (B) is the position marker.
3. Check the reel clearance to cutterbar after making changes to the cam setting. Refer to the following for measurement and adjustment procedures:
  - [5.16.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 572](#)
  - [5.16.2 Reel Frown, page 578](#)

**IMPORTANT:**

Operating with the reel too far forward can result in the fingers contacting the ground. When operating with the reel in this position, lower the skid shoes or adjust the header tilt as required to prevent damaging the fingers.

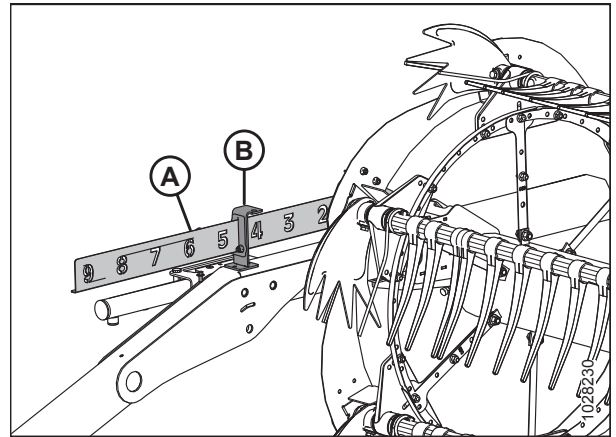


Figure 3.133: Fore-Aft Indicator

### Repositioning Fore-Aft Cylinders – Double Reel

The reel can be moved approximately 155 mm (6 in.) farther aft by repositioning the fore-aft cylinders on the reel arms. This may be desirable when straight-combining canola.



**DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

**IMPORTANT:**

Ensure all fore-aft cylinders are set to the same position.

1. Position reel fully aft with support arms horizontal.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Remove hairpin (A) securing wrench to wrench holder bracket on left endsheet.
4. Remove wrench (B), and reinstall hairpin to wrench holder.

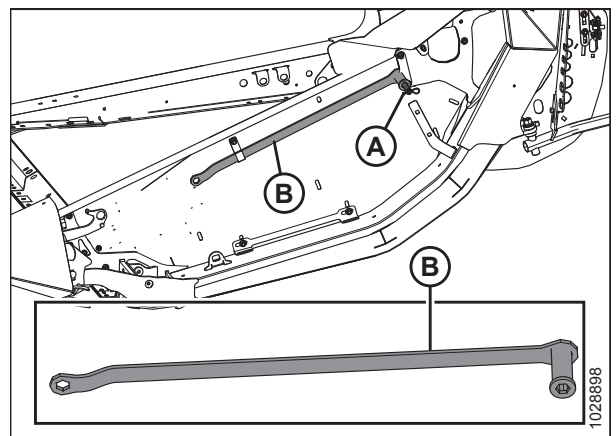


Figure 3.134: Left Endsheets

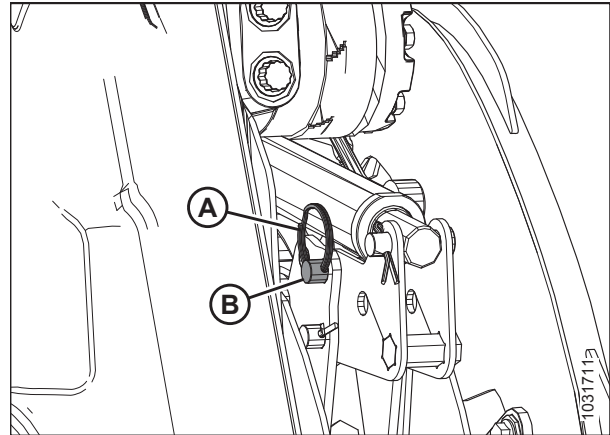
## OPERATION

**Reposition the center cylinder as follows:**

**NOTE:**

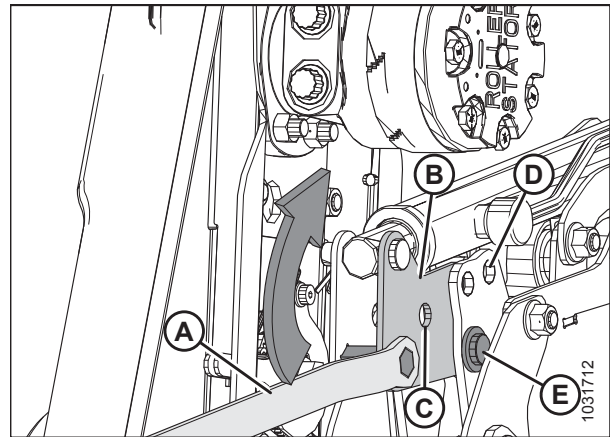
There are two center cylinders on triple reel headers.

5. Remove split ring (A), clevis pin (B), and washer securing the center fore-aft cylinder in the forward position.



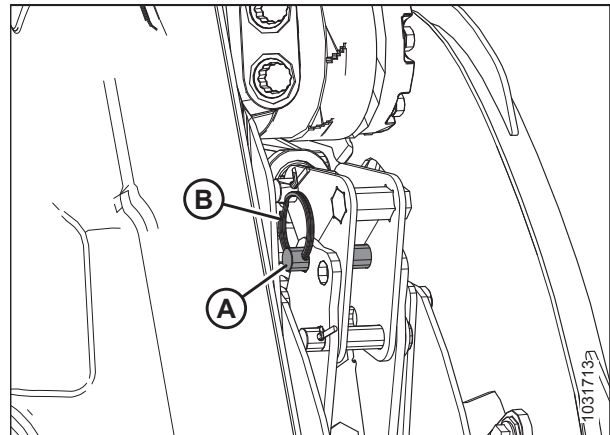
**Figure 3.135: Center Arm Cylinder – Forward Position**

6. Use wrench (A) to push bracket (B) rearward until hole (C) aligns with hole (D). The reel will move rearward as bracket (B) rotates on bottom pin (E).



**Figure 3.136: Center Arm Cylinder – Forward Position**

7. When the bracket holes are lined up, secure in aft position with clevis pin (A), washer, and split ring (B).



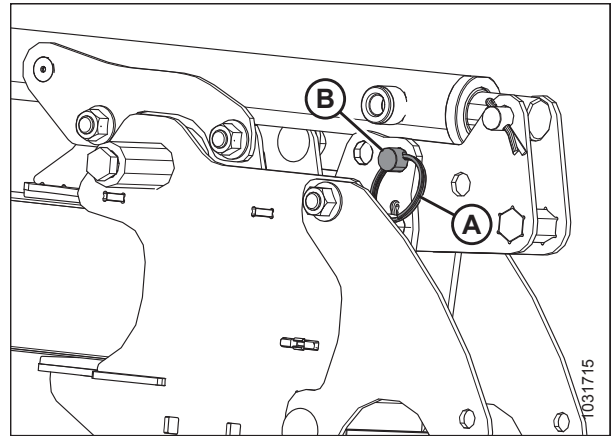
**Figure 3.137: Center Arm Cylinder – Aft Position**



## OPERATION

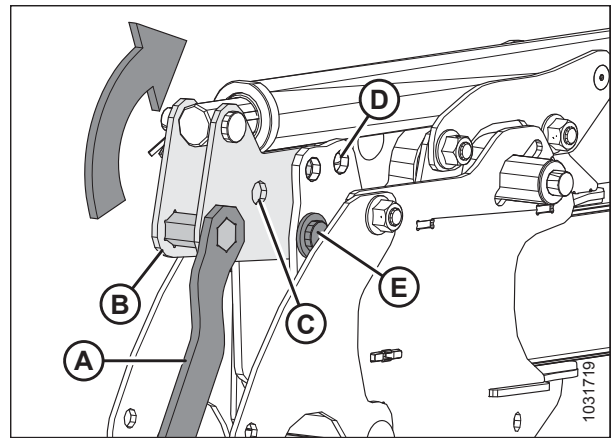
### *Reposition the outer right cylinder as follows:*

1. Remove split ring (A), clevis pin (B), and flat washer securing the right fore-aft cylinder in the forward position.



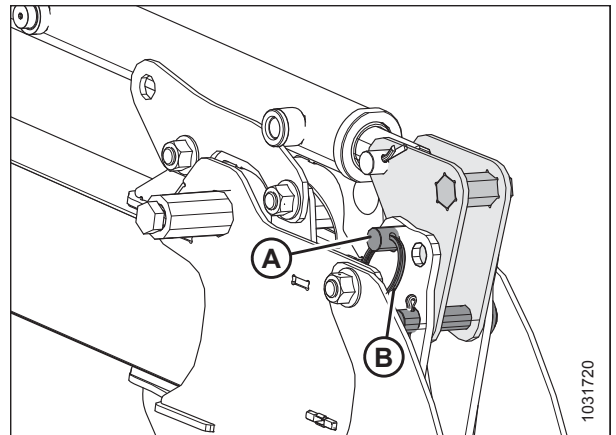
**Figure 3.138: Right Arm Cylinder – Forward Position**

2. Use wrench (A) to push bracket (B) rearward until hole (C) aligns with hole (D). The reel will move rearward as bracket (B) rotates on bottom pin (E).



**Figure 3.139: Right Arm Cylinder – Forward Position**

3. When the bracket holes are lined up, secure in aft position with clevis pin (A), washer, and split ring (B).

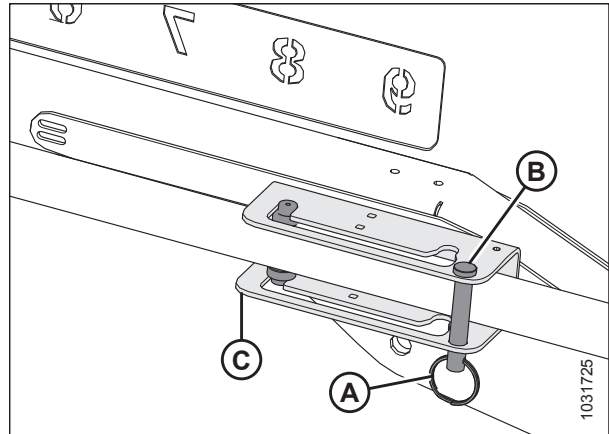


**Figure 3.140: Right Arm Cylinder – Aft Position**

## OPERATION

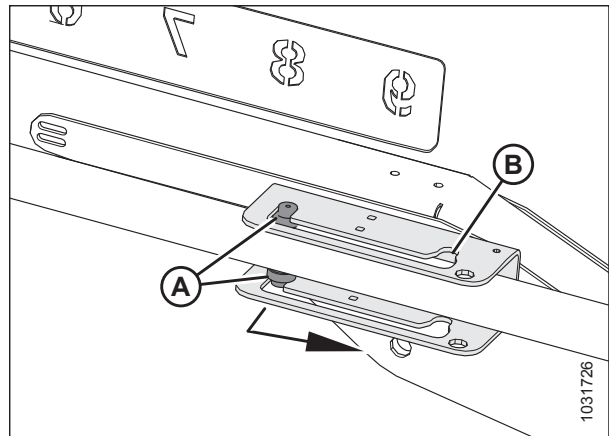
### **Reposition the outer left cylinder as follows:**

1. Remove split ring (A) and clevis pin (B) securing the left cylinder in forward position on cylinder bracket (C).



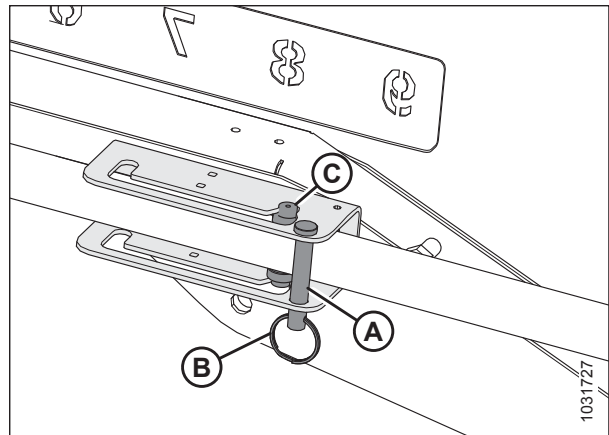
**Figure 3.141: Left Arm Cylinder – Forward Position**

2. Grab hold of the cylinder, and use guides (A) to slide the cylinder along the bracket slot and into aft position (B).



**Figure 3.142: Left Arm Cylinder – Forward Position**

3. Reinstall clevis pin (A) and split ring (B) to secure the cylinder in aft position (C) on the bracket.



**Figure 3.143: Left Arm Cylinder – Aft Position**

4. Check reel clearance to backsheet, upper cross auger (if installed), and reel braces.
5. Adjust reel tine pitch (if required). For adjustment procedures, refer to [3.7.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 119](#).

## OPERATION

### *Repositioning Fore-Aft Cylinders – Triple Reel*

The reel can be moved approximately 155 mm (6 in.) farther aft by repositioning the fore-aft cylinders on the reel arms. This may be desirable when straight-combing canola.

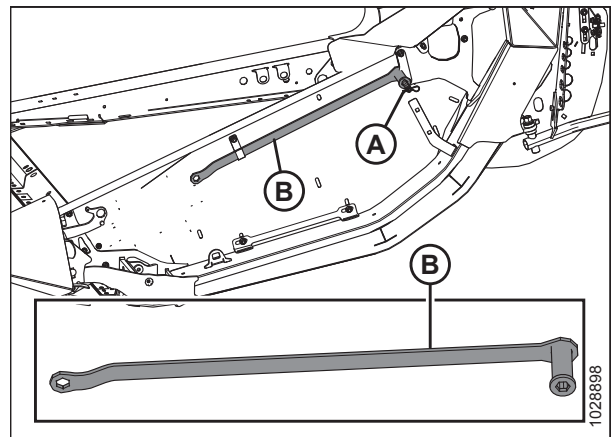
### **DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

#### **IMPORTANT:**

Ensure all fore-aft cylinders are set to the same position.

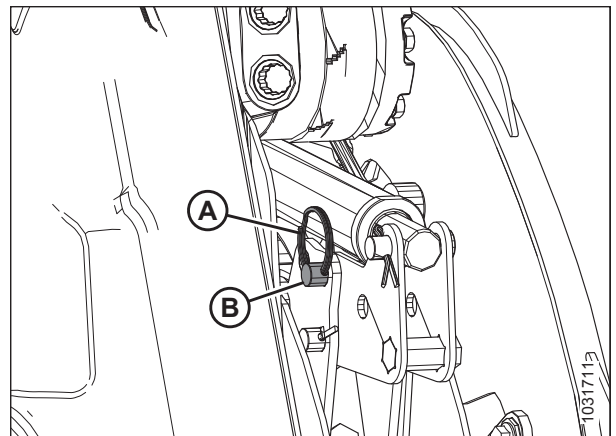
1. Position reel fully aft with support arms horizontal.
2. Stop engine and remove key.
3. Remove hairpin (A) securing wrench to wrench holder bracket on left endsheet.
4. Remove wrench (B), and reinstall hairpin to wrench holder.



**Figure 3.144: Left Endsheet**

*Reposition the center left and center right fore-aft cylinders as follows:*

5. Remove split ring (A) and clevis pin (B) securing the center fore-aft cylinder in the forward position.



**Figure 3.145: Center Left Arm Cylinder – Forward Position**

## OPERATION

6. Use wrench (A) to push bracket (B) rearward until hole (C) aligns with hole (D). The reel will move rearward as bracket (B) rotates on bottom pin (E).

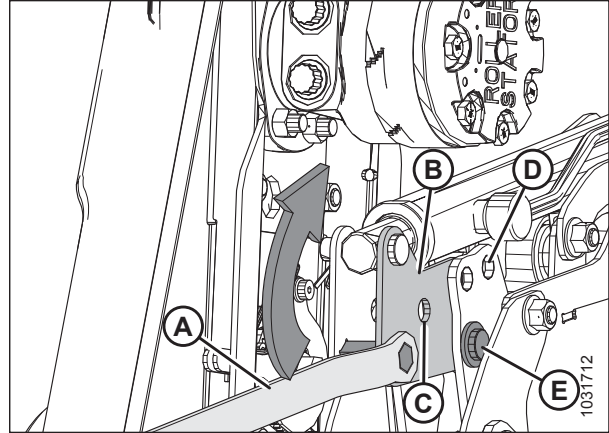


Figure 3.146: Center Left Arm Cylinder – Forward Position

7. When the bracket holes are lined up, secure in aft position with clevis pin (A) and split ring (B).

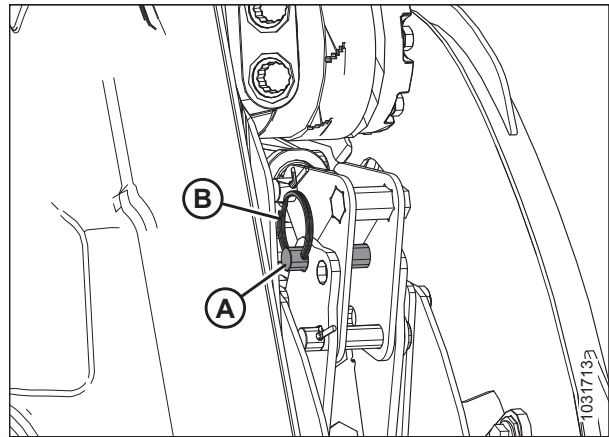


Figure 3.147: Center Left Arm Cylinder – Aft Position

### ***Reposition the outer left and outer right fore-aft cylinders as follows:***

1. Remove split ring (A) and clevis pin (B) securing the left cylinder in forward position on cylinder bracket (C).

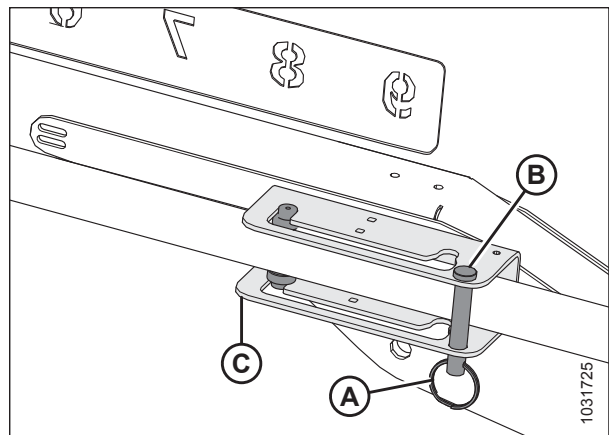


Figure 3.148: Outer Left Arm Cylinder – Forward Position

## OPERATION

- Grab hold of the cylinder, and use guides (A) to slide the cylinder along the bracket slot and into aft position (B).

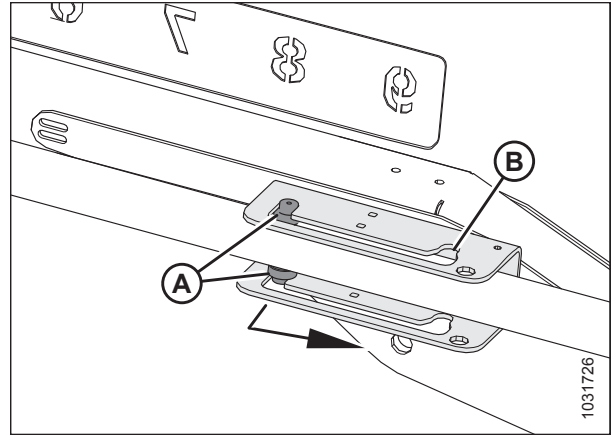


Figure 3.149: Outer Left Arm Cylinder – Forward Position

- Reinstall clevis pin (A) and split ring (B) to secure the cylinder in aft position (C) on the bracket.

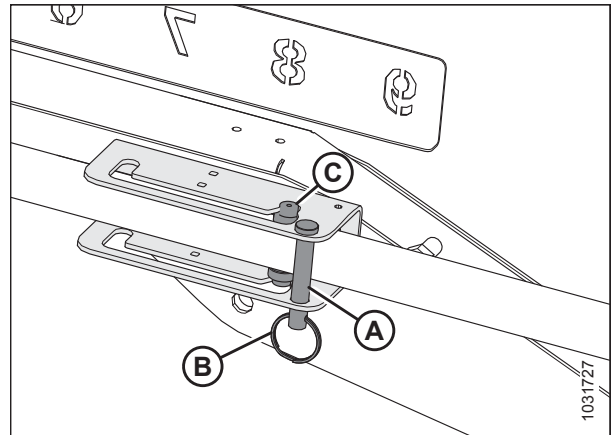


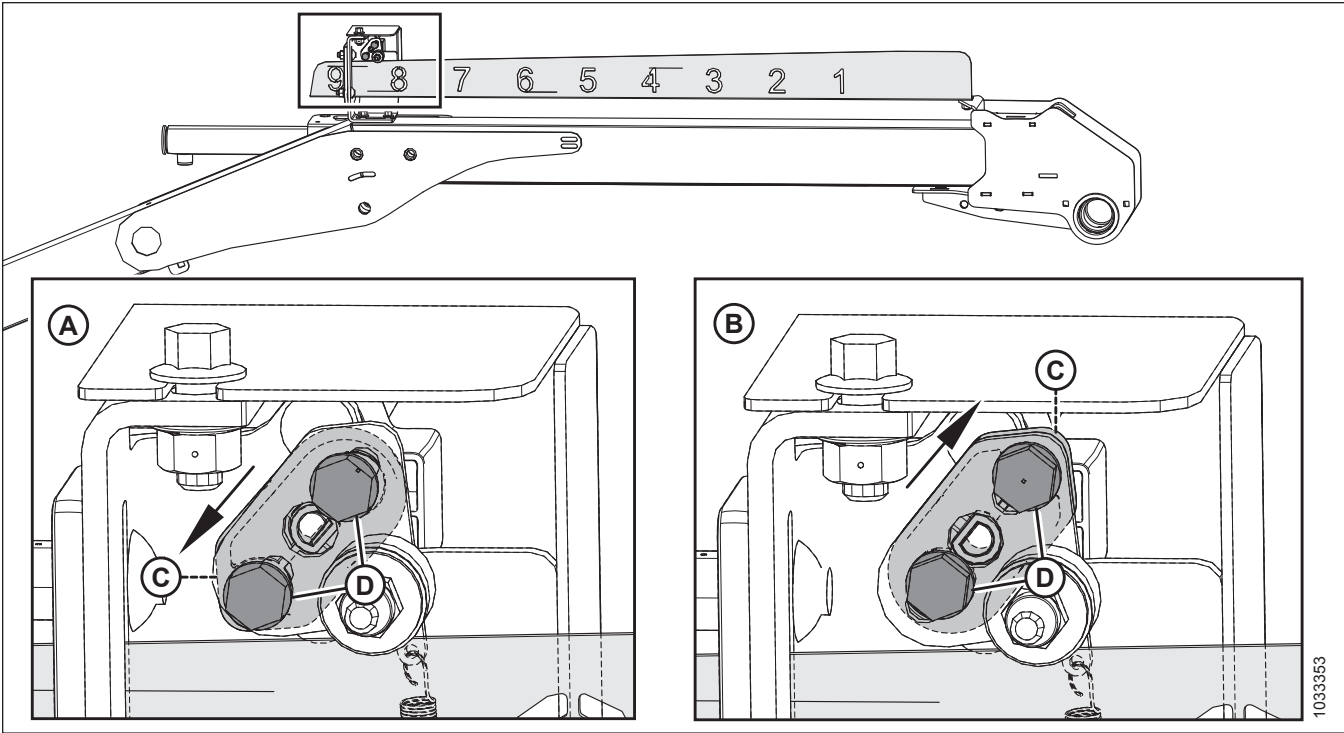
Figure 3.150: Outer Left Arm Cylinder – Aft Position

- Check reel clearance to backsheet, upper cross auger (if installed), and reel braces.
- Adjust reel tine pitch (if required). For adjustment procedures, refer to [3.7.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 119](#).

### *Checking and Adjusting Fore-Aft Position Sensor*

Note the orientation of sensor arm (C) and hardware (D). Ensure that the sensor arm is configured properly for your machine; refer to [Figure 3.151, page 118](#).

## OPERATION



**Figure 3.151: Sensor Arm Configurations**

A - John Deere, CLAAS, AGCO IDEAL Configuration

B - Case/New Holland Configuration

C - Sensor Arm

D - Mounting Hardware

### IMPORTANT:

To measure the output voltage of the fore-aft sensor, the combine engine needs to be running and supplying power to the sensor. Always engage the combine parking brake and stay away from the reel.

### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

### WARNING

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

## OPERATION

1. Start the engine.
2. Adjust the reel to the fully forward position. Dimension (B) (from the sensor bracket to the end of the indicator) should be 62.1–72.1 mm (2.4–2.8 in.).

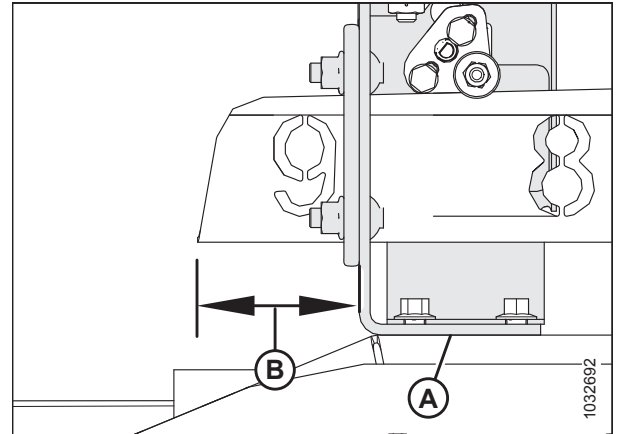


Figure 3.152: Fore-Aft Bracket

3. Use the combine display or a voltmeter (if measuring the sensor manually) to measure voltage range. If using a voltmeter, check sensor (A) voltage between pin 2 (ground) and pin 3 (signal).

Table 3.17 Fore-Aft Sensor Voltage Range

CNH	0.7–1.1 V
John Deere, CLAAS, AGCO	3.9–4.3 V

4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. If adjustment is required, loosen hardware (A) and rotate sensor (B) until voltage is in the correct range.
6. Once sensor adjustment is complete, torque hardware to 250 Ncm (22 lbf-in).

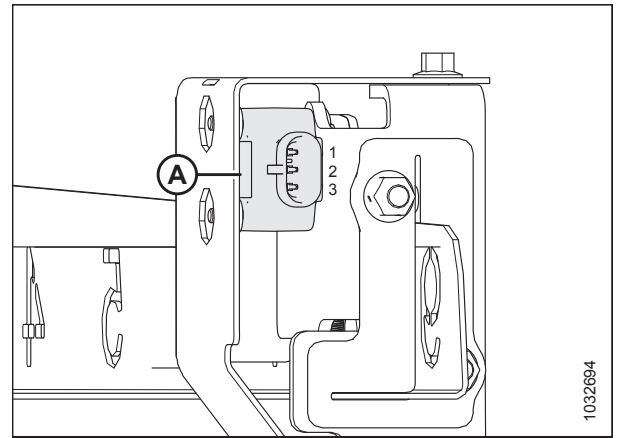


Figure 3.153: Fore-Aft Sensor

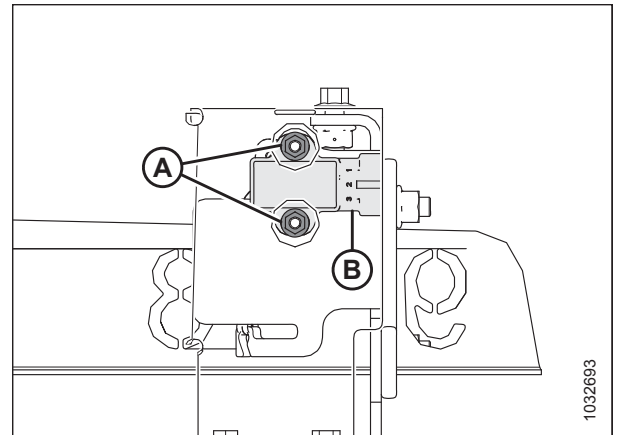


Figure 3.154: Fore-Aft Sensor

### 3.7.12 Reel Tine Pitch

#### IMPORTANT:

The following describes the conceptual and operational guidelines of the pick-up reel. Please read carefully before operating the machine.

## OPERATION

The pick-up reel is designed to pick up flattened and severely lodged crops. Because the cam setting is mainly used to determine how the crop gets delivered onto the drapers, it is not always necessary to increase the tine pitch (select a higher cam setting) to pick up lodged crops.

The positioning of the fingers relative to the ground (tine pitch) is not significantly affected by the cam setting. For example, with the cam position range at 33°, the corresponding finger pitch range is only 5° at the lowest point of the reel's rotation.

For the best results, use the minimum cam setting that delivers the crop past the rear edge of the cutterbar and onto the drapers. For more information, refer to [3.6.2 Header Settings, page 46](#).

### Reel Cam Settings

The following outlines the function of each cam setting and provides set-up guidelines for various crop conditions.

The setting numbers are visible above the slots on the cam disc. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Reel Cam, page 123](#).

**Cam Position 1, Reel Position 6 or 7** delivers the most even crop flow onto the drapers without fluffing or disturbing the material.

- This setting will release crop close to the cutterbar and works best if the cutterbar is on the ground.
- Some crops will not be delivered past the cutterbar when the cutterbar is raised off the ground and the reel is pushed forward; therefore, set the initial reel speed approximately equal to the ground speed.

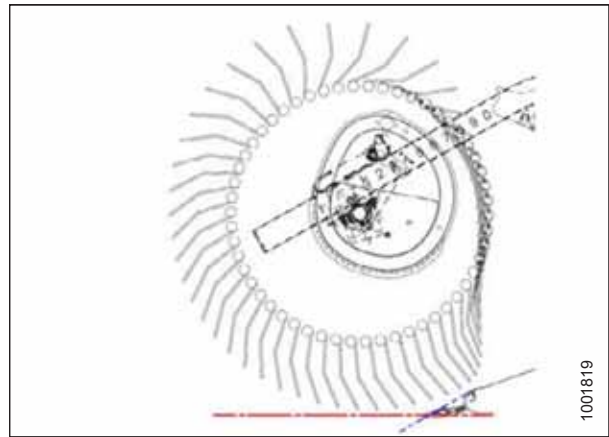


Figure 3.155: Finger Profile – Position 1

**Cam Position 2, Reel Position 3 or 4** is the recommended starting position for most crops and conditions.

- If the crop is stalling on the cutterbar when the reel is in the forward position, increase the cam setting to push the crop past the rear edge of the cutterbar.
- If the crop is getting fluffed or if there is a disruption to the flow across the drapers, decrease the cam setting.
- This setting generates a fingertip speed that is approximately 20% faster than the reel speed.

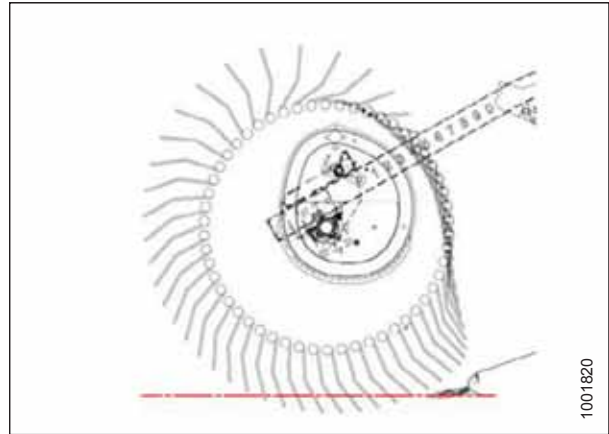


Figure 3.156: Finger Profile – Position 2



## OPERATION

**Cam Position 3, Reel Position 6 or 7** is mainly used to leave long stubble.

- This position allows the reel to reach forward and lift the crop across the knife and onto the drapers.
- This setting generates a fingertip speed that is approximately 30% faster than the reel speed.

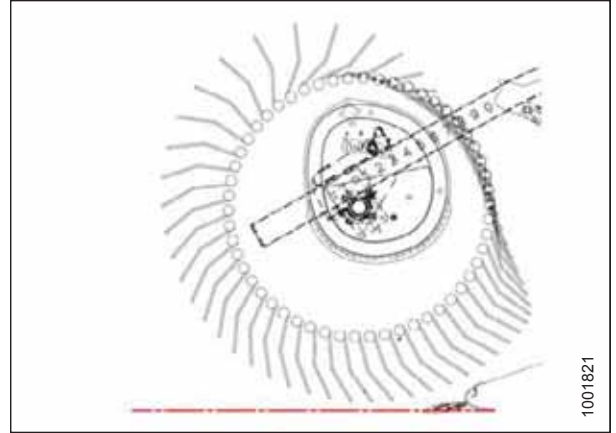


Figure 3.157: Finger Profile – Position 3

**Cam Position 4, Reel Position 2 or 3** is used with the reel fully forward to leave the maximum amount of stubble in lodged crops.

- This position allows the reel to reach forward and lift the crop across the knife and onto the drapers.
- This setting generates a fingertip speed that is approximately 35% faster than the reel speed.

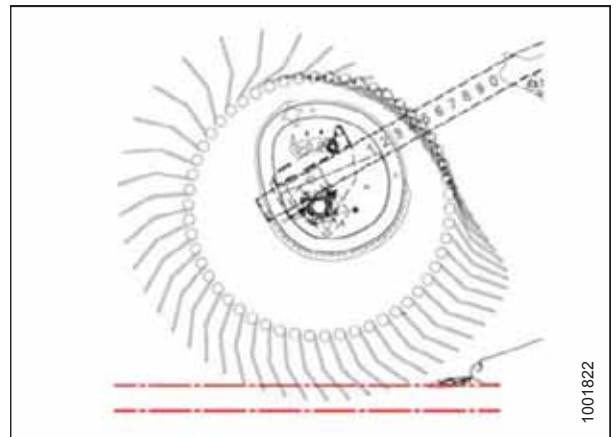


Figure 3.158: Finger Profile – Position 4

**Cam Position 4, Header Angle at Maximum, and Reel Fully Forward** provides the maximum amount of reel reach below the cutterbar to pick up lodged crops.

- Leaves a significant amount of stubble when cutting height is set to approximately 203 mm (8 in.). In damp materials such as rice, it is possible to double the ground speed because of the reduction of cut material.
- This setting generates a fingertip speed that is approximately 35% faster than the reel speed.

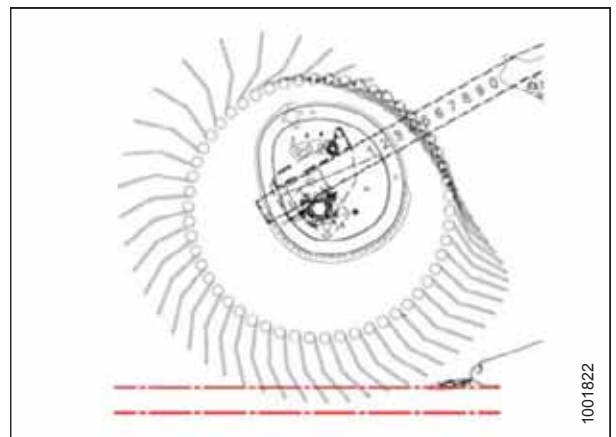


Figure 3.159: Finger Profile – Position 4

### IMPORTANT:

The reel to cutterbar clearance should always be checked following adjustments to reel tine pitch and reel fore-aft positions (refer to [5.16.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 572](#)). Refer to [3.6.2 Header Settings, page 46](#) for recommended reel tine pitch in specific crops and crop conditions.

## OPERATION

**NOTE:**

Higher cam settings with the reel fore-aft position set between 4–5 sharply decrease the draper capacity because the reel disrupts the crop flow across the drapers and the fingers engage the crop that is moving on the drapers. High cam settings are recommended only with the reel at, or close to, full forward settings.

## OPERATION

### *Adjusting Reel Cam*

The pick-up reel is designed to pick up flattened and severely lodged crops. The reel cam setting is mainly used to determine how the crop gets delivered onto the drapers, it is not always necessary to increase the tine pitch (select a higher cam setting) to pick up lodged crops.

### **DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

#### **NOTE:**

Adjustments need to be made on all the reel cams. There are two cams on double reels and three cams on triple reels.

1. Turn latch pin (A) counterclockwise using a 3/4 in. wrench to release the cam disc.
2. Use the wrench on bolt (B) to rotate the cam disc and align latch pin (A) with the desired cam disc hole position (C) (1 to 4).

#### **NOTE:**

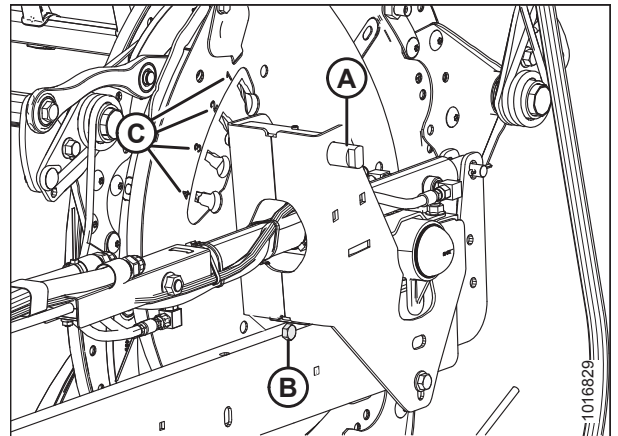
Bolt (B) is positioned through the cam disc (transparent view shown in illustration for improved clarity).

3. Turn latch pin (A) clockwise to engage and lock the cam disc.

#### **IMPORTANT:**

Ensure the cam is secured into position before operating the machine.

4. Repeat above procedure for next reel.



**Figure 3.160: Cam Disc Positions**

### 3.7.13 Upper Cross Auger

The Upper Cross Auger (UCA) improves crop feeding into the center of the header in heavy crop conditions. It is ideal for high-volume harvesting forages, oats, canola, mustard, and other tall, bushy, hard-to-convey crops.

The Operator can use shutoff valve (A) to turn off the UCA when it is not needed.

**NOTE:**

Even though UCA is shut off it still needs to be greased at the regular intervals because of the movement of the wings.

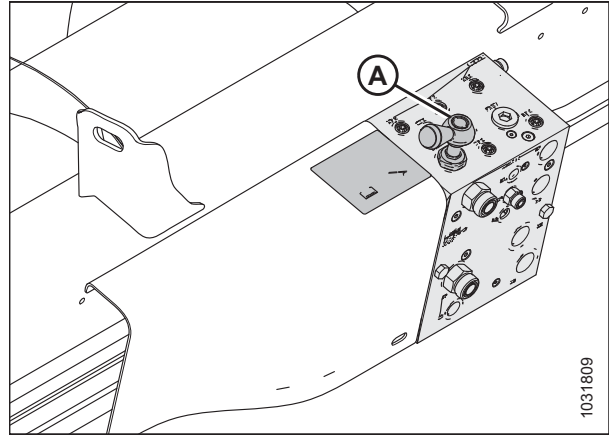


Figure 3.161: Shutoff Valve

#### *Adjusting Upper Cross Auger Position*

The Upper Cross Auger (UCA) has an adjustable mount that enables you to adjust the auger position for specific harvesting conditions. Headers with three-piece augers have two adjustable mounts—one on each end of the center auger.

**NOTE:**

For primary and secondary front bolt position details, refer to Figure 3.164, page 125.

The mount(s) are initially installed in the rear-most position, with front bolt (A) in the primary position. This is the recommended position for most conditions.

With front bolt (A) in the primary position, the auger and reel are safe to run in any position. The auger position can be adjusted to a limited extent by changing the position of the mount with respect to rear bolt (B).

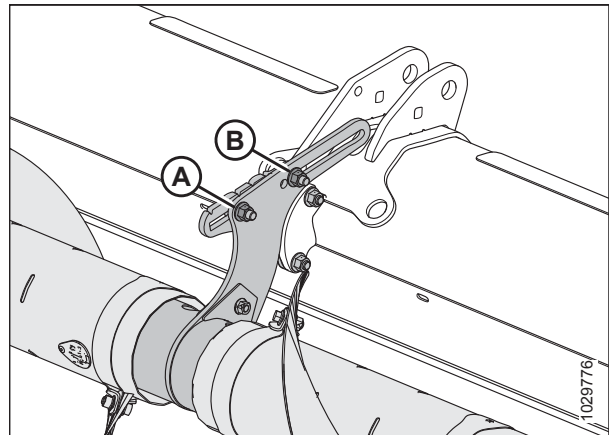
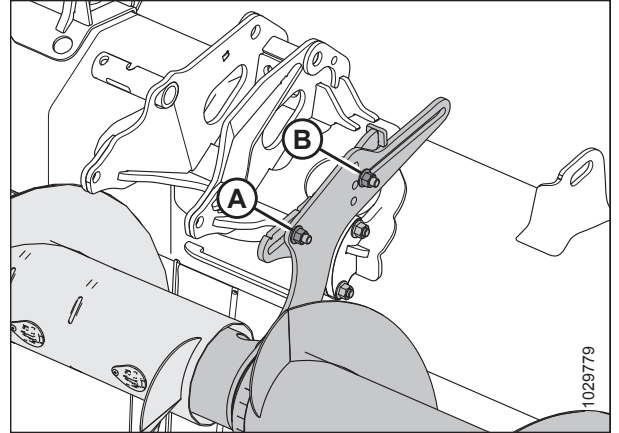


Figure 3.162: Initial Position of Adjustable Mounts – Two-Piece Auger

## OPERATION



**Figure 3.163: Initial Position of Adjustable Mounts – Three-Piece Auger**

When the front bolt is moved to secondary position (B), the auger position can be adjusted to a greater extent. For three-piece augers, additional secondary positions (B) are available to raise and lower the auger if desired. When the front bolt is in one of these positions, the fore-aft adjustment is limited to prevent interference with the feed auger and header frame.

### **IMPORTANT:**

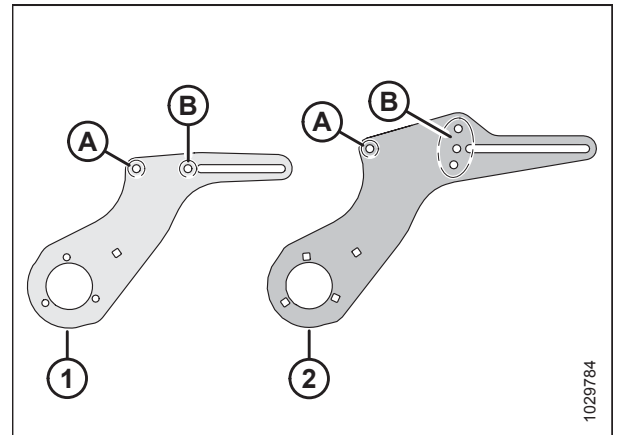
When the front bolt is in one of secondary positions (B), and the reel is in its rear-most position, the reel fingers and cam arms may contact the upper cross auger, damaging it. When you move the reel all the way back (for example, when harvesting canola), you must also move the upper cross auger all the way back to allow sufficient clearance between the reel fingers and the auger.

Move the auger forward to:

- Help convey light crops, especially on side hills
- Improve feeding of light crops
- Reduce reel carry over or crop flow disruption caused by the reel

Move the auger rearward to:

- Increase the available volume for conveying heavy crop
- Keep the auger close to the deflectors to prevent crop from getting behind the auger and wrapping



**Figure 3.164: Adjustable Mount Details**

- 1 - Mount on a Two-Piece Auger      2 - Mount on a Three-Piece Auger  
A - Primary Position for Front Bolt      B - Secondary Position(s) for Front Bolt

## OPERATION

### *To adjust the auger position, follow these steps:*

1. Locate the adjustable mount, sticking up out of the center support assembly on two-piece augers, and out of the ends of the center auger on three-piece augers.

#### **NOTE:**

The illustration at right shows the left adjustable mount on a three-piece auger. The adjustable mount on a two-piece auger is similar, but has only one secondary position for the front bolt instead of three. Refer to [Figure 3.164, page 125](#) for more details.

2. If desired, relocate front bolt and nut (A). They have two possible locations on two-piece augers (one primary and one secondary), and four possible locations on three-piece augers (one primary and three secondary).
3. Loosen front nut (A) and rear nut (B) just enough to allow the adjustable mount to slide.
4. Move the mount to the desired position.
5. Retighten nuts (A) and (B). Torque to 69 Nm (51 lbf-ft).
6. If a three-piece upper cross auger is installed, repeat these steps on the second adjustable mount.

#### **NOTE:**

On headers with three-piece augers, make sure both mounts are in the same position.

7. After adjusting the auger position, check for interference between the reel fingers and the upper cross auger and between the cam arms and the upper cross auger throughout the entire hydraulic fore-aft range of the reel. For instructions, refer to [Checking Upper Cross Auger for Interference, page 126](#).

### *Checking Upper Cross Auger for Interference*

A poorly-adjusted upper cross auger (UCA) can make contact with header components. The UCA center support(s) provide the necessary range to avoid contact.

## **WARNING**

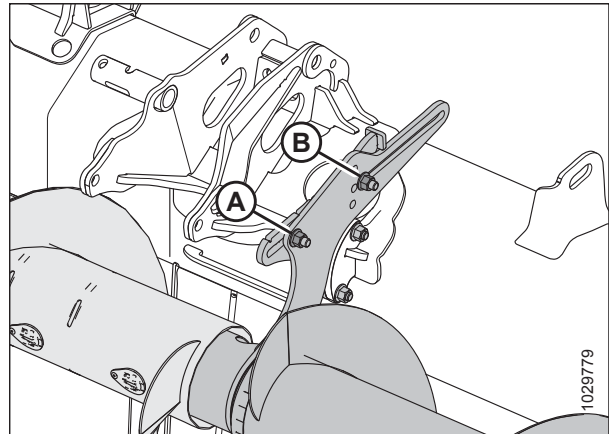
**Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.**

1. Start the engine.
2. Fully retract the reel fore/aft fully to bring the reel as close as possible to the UCA.

#### **NOTE:**

The reel cam adjustment can remain in the desired position, but UCA clearance should be rechecked if adjusted.

3. Place 254–356 mm (10–14 in) blocks under the cutterbar at both ends of the header, and lower the reel onto the blocks to form a smile shape.



**Figure 3.165: Initial Position of Adjustable Mounts – Three-Piece Auger**

## OPERATION

4. Manually rotate the UCA (A) and ensure a minimum of 10 mm (13/32 in.) clearance between UCA and the following locations:

- Reel cam arms (B)
- Reel fingers (C)
- Reel cylinder supports (D)
- **FD241 and larger:** Split frame joint (E)

If adjustment is required, refer to [Adjusting Upper Cross Auger Position, page 124](#).

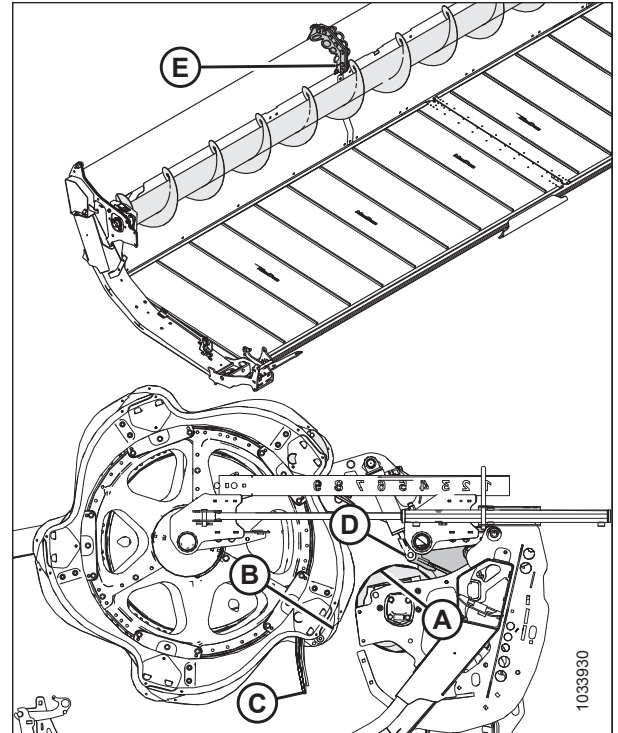


Figure 3.166: UCA Clearance Check Locations

### 3.7.14 Crop Dividers

Crop dividers are used to help divide the crop when harvesting. They are removable to allow installation of vertical knives and to decrease transport width.

#### Removing Crop Dividers

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under header for any reason.

1. Lower reel and raise header. For instructions, refer to your combine operator's manual for instructions.
2. Stop engine and remove key.
3. Engage safety props. For instructions, refer to your combine operator's manual for instructions.
4. Open endshields. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 33](#).

## OPERATION

5. Remove lynch pin (A).
6. Hold onto crop divider (E).
7. Rotate nut (B) on divider latch (C) forward to disengage it from bolt (D).

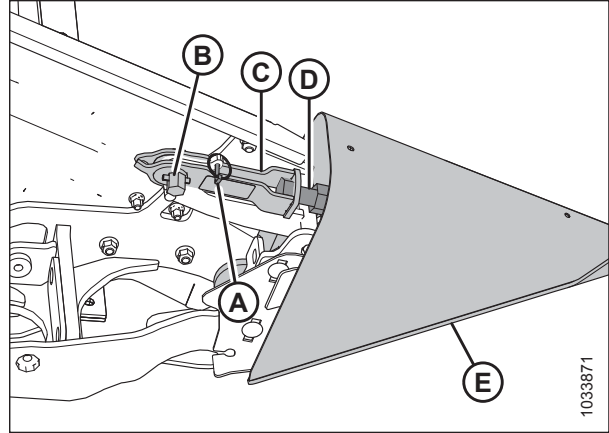


Figure 3.167: Crop Divider with Latch

8. Lower crop divider (A), and remove from endsheet.
9. Close endshield. For instructions, refer to [Closing Header Endshields, page 34](#).

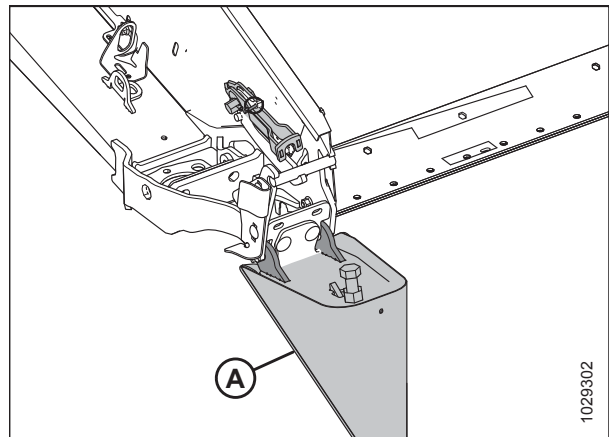


Figure 3.168: Crop Divider with Latch

10. If installed, place crop divider (A) onto optional storage position on bracket (B).
11. If not installed, place crop dividers in a safe location.

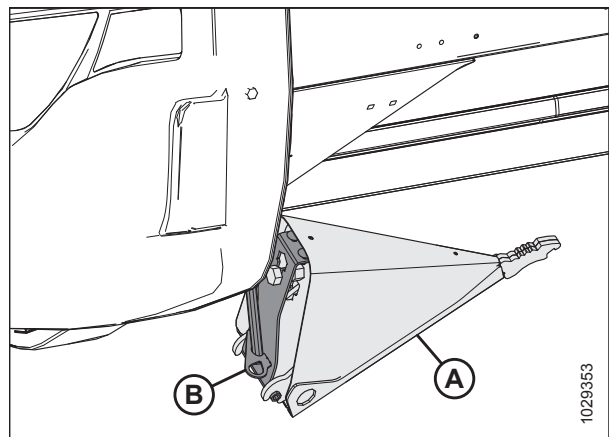


Figure 3.169: Optional Crop Divider Storage



## OPERATION

### Installing Crop Dividers

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under header for any reason.

1. Lower reel and raise header. For instructions, refer to your combine operator's manual for instructions.
2. Stop engine and remove key.
3. Engage safety props. For instructions, refer to your combine operator's manual for instructions.
4. If optional storage bracket is installed. Remove crop divider (A) from storage position by lifting the crop divider so that bolt (B) clears the slot in storage bracket (C).
5. If not installed, retrieve crop dividers from where they were stored.
6. Open endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 33](#).

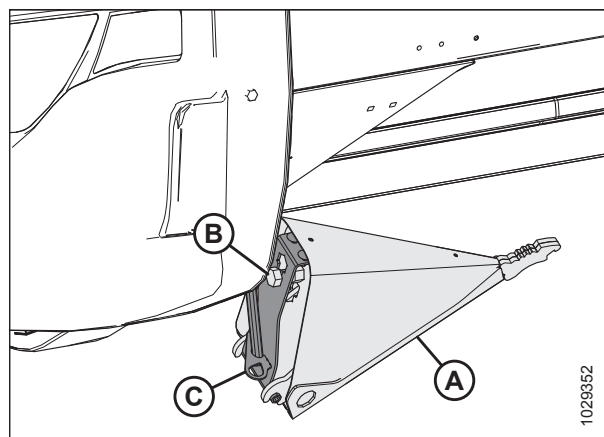


Figure 3.170: Optional Crop Divider

7. Insert crop divider lugs (A) into holes in the endsheet as shown.
8. Remove lynch pin (B) from latch (C).

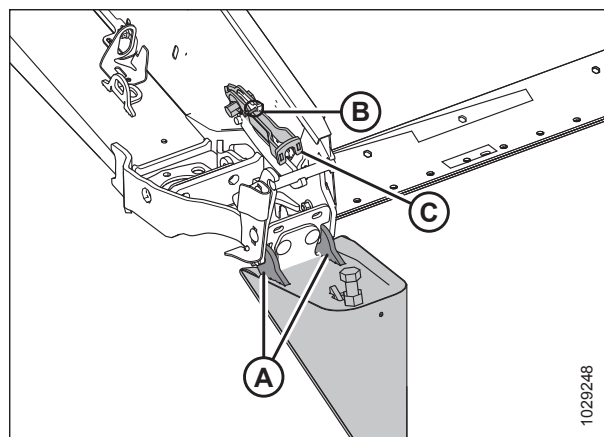


Figure 3.171: Crop Divider with Latch

## OPERATION

- Lift forward end of latch (A) and crop divider (B).

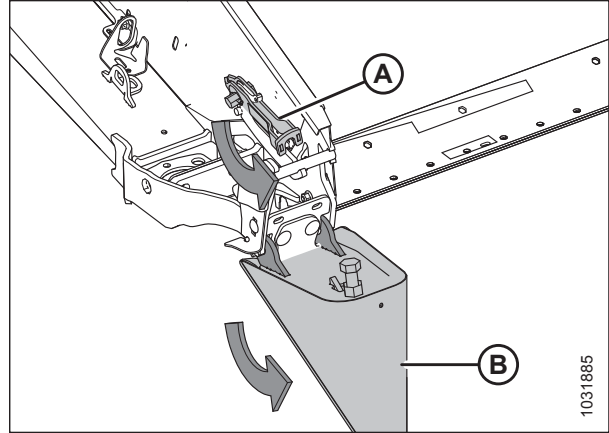


Figure 3.172: Crop Divider with Latch

- Engage latch (A) onto crop divider bolt (B).
- Rotate nut (D) on latch (A) counter-clockwise to engage lock.

**NOTE:**

Nut (D) requires a torque of 40–54 Nm (30–40 lbf-ft) to close the latch. If adjustment is required, loosen latch (A) and adjust bolt (B) to correct the amount of torque required.

- Secure with lynch pin (C).
- Close the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Closing Header Endshields, page 34](#).

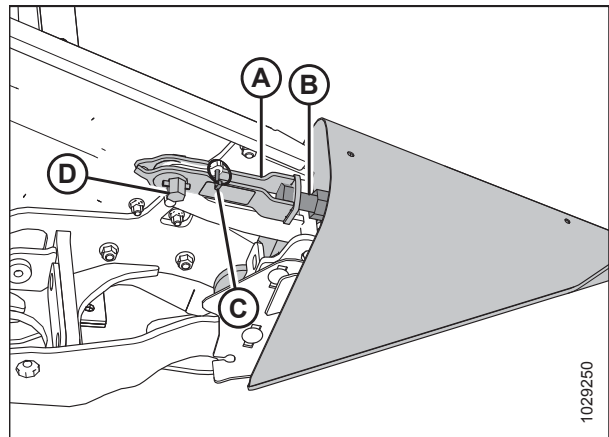


Figure 3.173: Crop Divider with Latch

### 3.7.15 Crop Divider Rods

Crop divider rods are used in conjunction with crop dividers. The removable crop divider rods are most useful when crop is bushy or down. In standing crops, using only crop dividers is recommended.

Table 3.18 Crop Divider Rods Recommended Use

With Divider Rods		Without Divider Rods
Alfalfa	Lodged cereal	Edible beans
Canola	Peas	Milo
Flax	Soybeans	Rice
Grass seed	Sudan grass	Soybeans
Lentils	Winter forage	Standing cereal

## OPERATION

### Removing Crop Divider Rods

1. Loosen bolt (B) and remove crop divider rod (A) from both sides of the header.

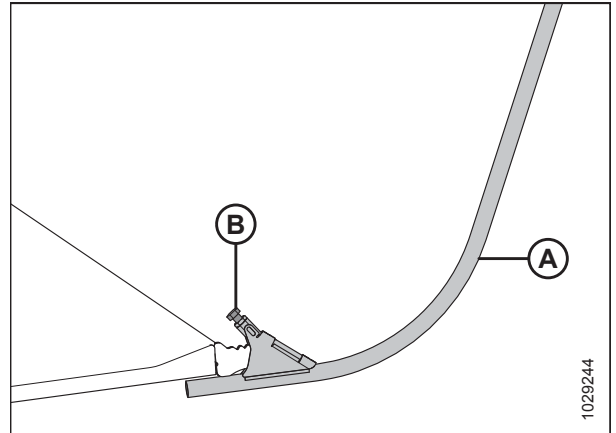


Figure 3.174: Crop Divider Rod

2. Store both crop divider rods (B) on the right endsheet, and secure with lynch pin (A).

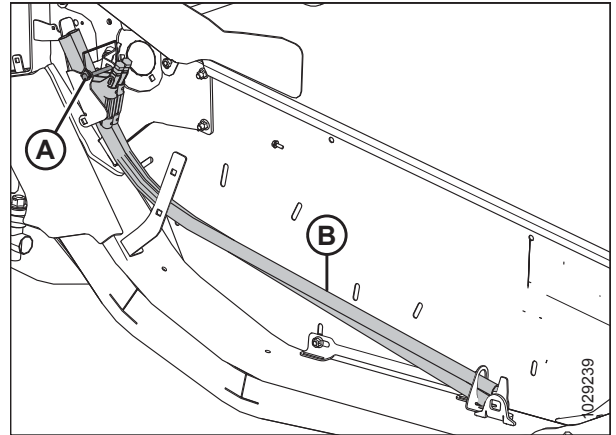


Figure 3.175: Right Endsheet

### Installing Crop Divider Rods

1. Undo lynch pin (A) securing divider rods (B) to the header endsheet, and remove divider rods from storage location.
2. Reinstall lynch pin (A).

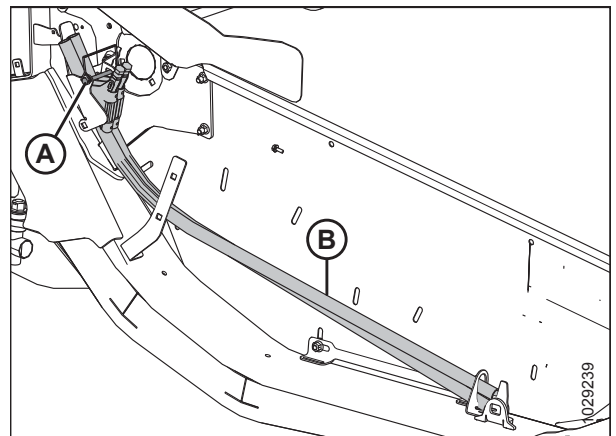


Figure 3.176: Divider Rods in Storage Location at Right Header Endsheet

## OPERATION

3. Position crop divider rod (A) on tip of crop divider as shown and tighten bolt (B).
4. Repeat procedure at opposite end of header.

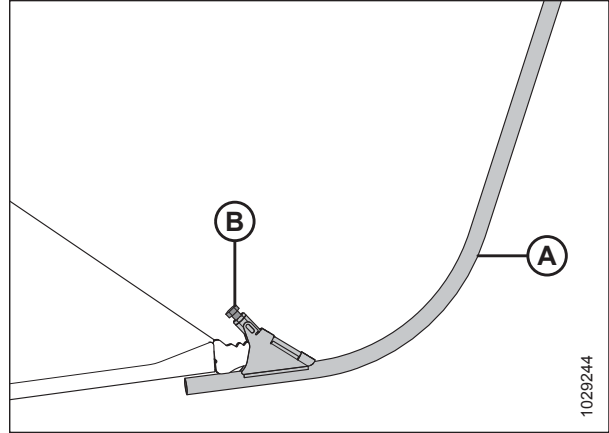


Figure 3.177: Divider Rod on Crop Divider

### *Optional Rice Divider Rods*

Optional rice divider rods provide improved performance in tall and tangled rice crops.

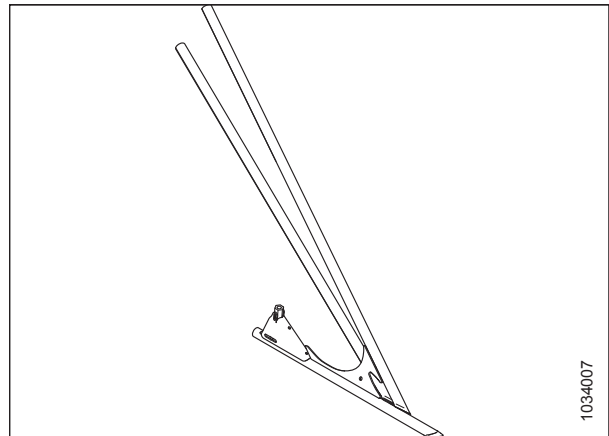


Figure 3.178: Optional Divider Rod for Rice

Rice divider rods are stored at the rear of both endsheets on storage bracket (A) and secured in place with pin (B). The installation and removal of these rods are the same as the procedures for standard crop divider rods.

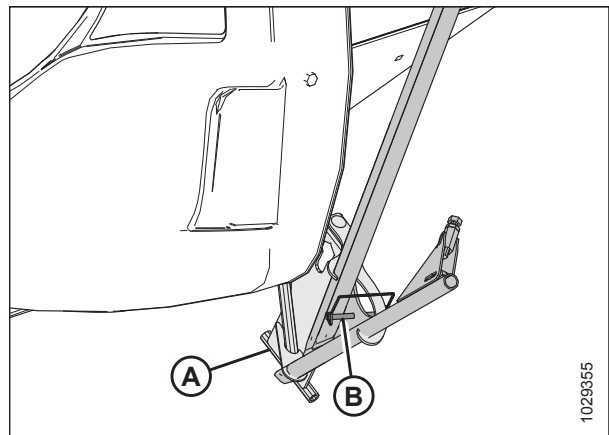


Figure 3.179: Rice Divider Rod Storage

### 3.7.16 Setting Auger Position

The auger position has two settings—floating and fixed. The factory setting is the floating position, and is recommended for most crop conditions.

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under header for any reason.

Auger float adjustment arms (A) are located at the bottom left and bottom right of the float module.

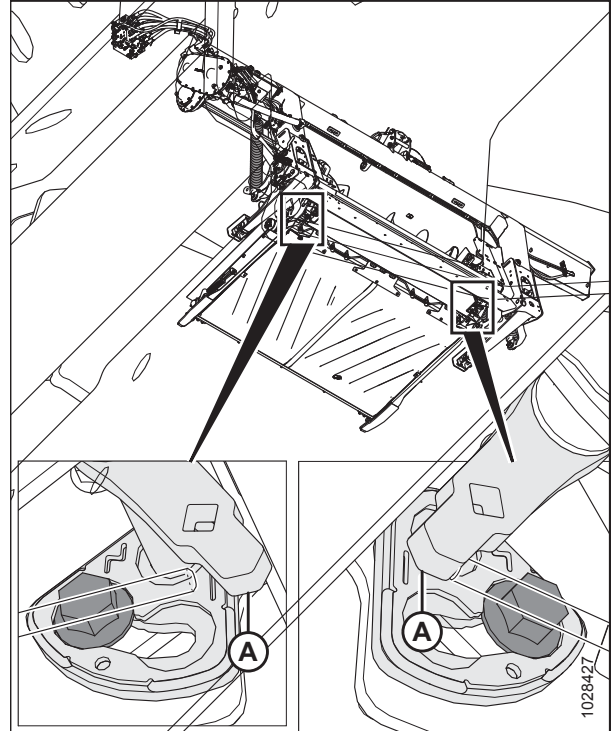


Figure 3.180: Auger Float Adjustment Arms

If bolt (A) is next to floating symbol (B), the auger is in the floating position. If bolt (A) is next to fixed symbol (C), the auger is in the fixed position.

#### CAUTION

Make sure left and right brackets are set to the same position; two bolts (A) must be in the same location to prevent damage to the machine during operation.

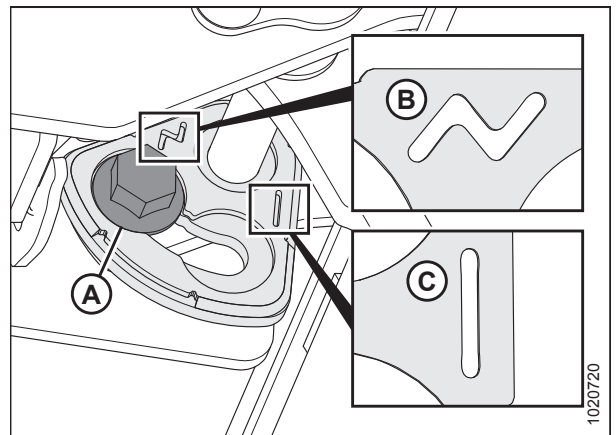
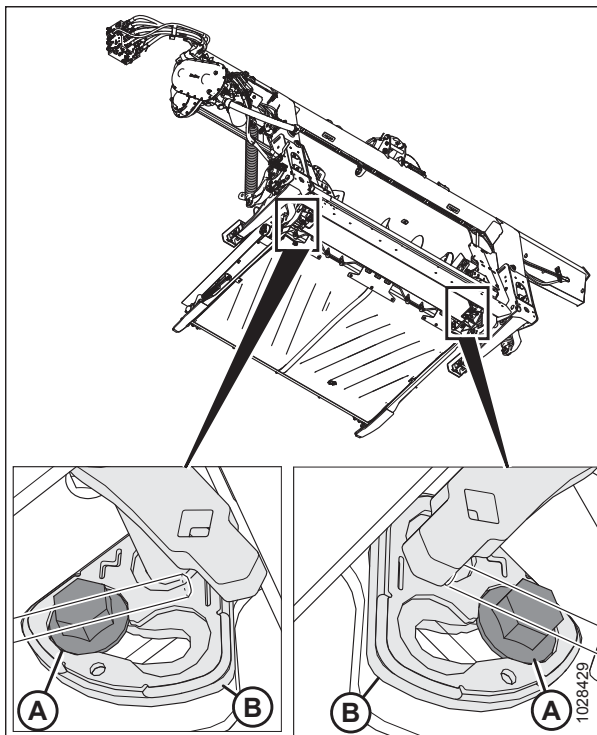


Figure 3.181: Auger Float Positions

## OPERATION

**To set the auger position, follow these steps:**

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Raise the header fully.
3. Engage the header safety props.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Using a 21 mm wrench, loosen bolt (A) until the bolt head is clear of bracket (B).



**Figure 3.182: Feed Auger Float Adjustment**

## OPERATION

- Using a breaker bar in the square hole on arm (B), move arm forward until bolt (A) is in the slot on bracket next to the fixed symbol.

**NOTE:**

If changing the auger position from fixed to floating, move arm in opposite direction.

- Tighten bolt (A) to 122 Nm (90 lbf·ft).

**IMPORTANT:**

Bolt (A) must be properly seated in recess on bracket before tightening bolt. If arm (B) can be moved after tightening bolt, then bolt (A) is not seated properly.

- Repeat on opposite side.

**IMPORTANT:**

Bolt (A) on each side of the float module must be in the same position to prevent damage to the machine during operation.

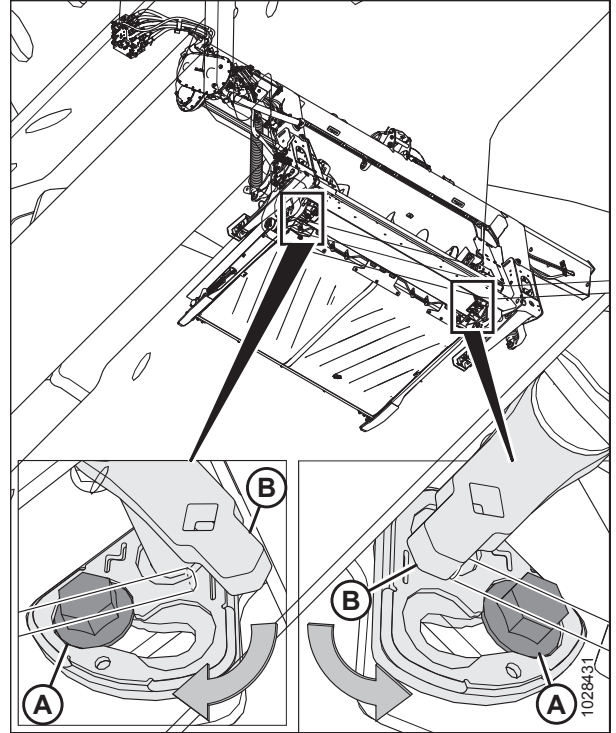
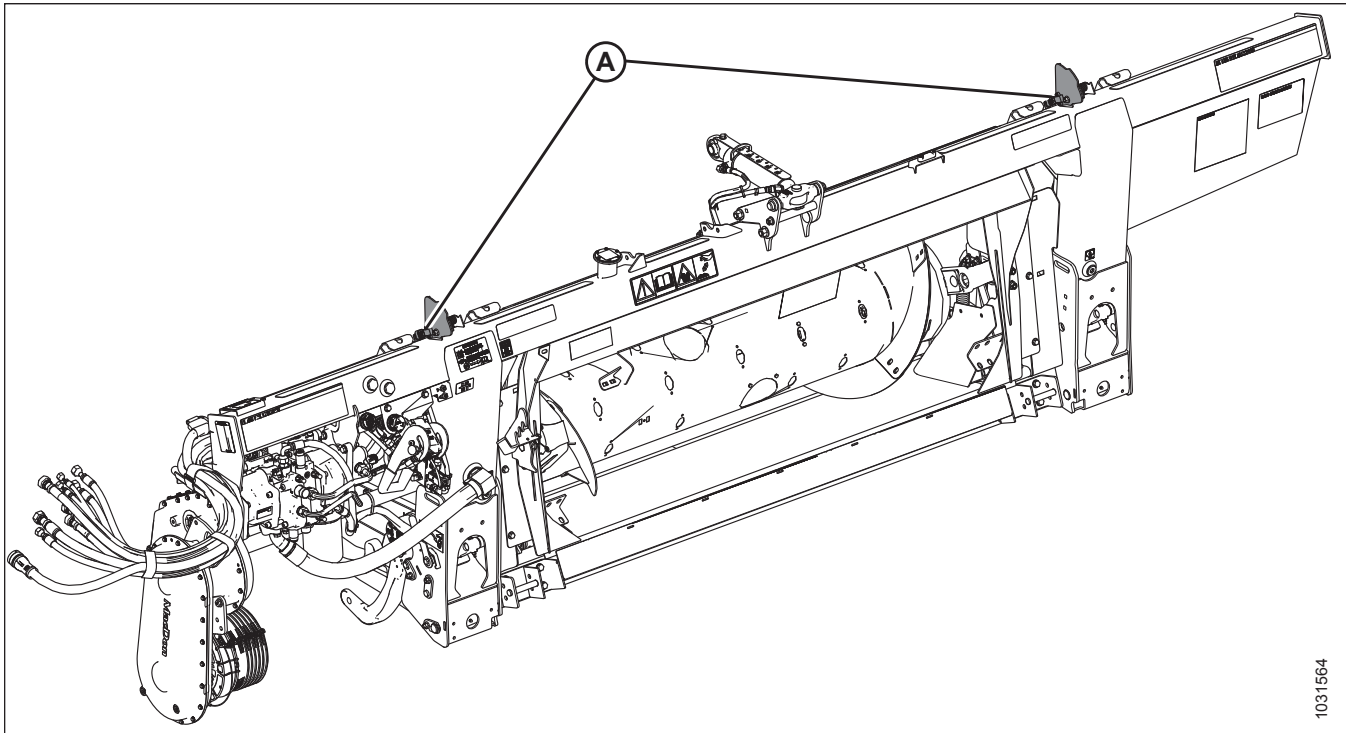


Figure 3.183: Feed Auger Float Adjustment

### 3.8 Auto Header Height Control

MacDon's auto header height control (AHHC) feature works in conjunction with the AHHC option available on certain combine models.

There are two float height sensors (A) installed on the float setting indicators on the float module. These sensors send signals to the combine allowing it to maintain a consistent cutting height and an optimum float as the header follows ground contours.



**Figure 3.184: FM200 Float Module**

FM200 Float Modules are factory-equipped for AHHC; however, before using the AHHC feature, you must do the following:

1. Ensure that the AHHC sensor's output voltage range is appropriate for the combine. For more information, refer to [3.8.2 Sensor Output Voltage Range – Combine Requirements, page 137](#).
2. Prepare the combine to use the AHHC feature (applies only to some combine models—refer to the following instructions for your combine).
3. Calibrate the AHHC system so that the combine can correctly interpret data from the height sensor on the float module (refer to the following instructions for your combine).

**NOTE:**

Once calibration is complete, you are ready to use the AHHC feature in the field. Individual combine settings can improve AHHC performance (refer to your combine instruction manual).

Refer to the following instructions for your specific combine model:

- [3.8.6 AGCO IDEAL™ Series Combines, page 142](#)
- [3.8.8 Case IH, 120, 230, 240, and 250 Series Combines, page 163](#)
- [3.8.9 Challenger and Massey Ferguson 6 and 7 Series Combines, page 175](#)
- [3.8.10 CLAAS 500 Series Combines, page 182](#)
- [3.8.11 CLAAS 600 and 700 Series Combines, page 191](#)



## OPERATION

- [3.8.13 Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and S Series Combines, page 210](#)
- [3.8.14 Gleaner S9 Series Combines, page 218](#)
- [3.8.15 John Deere 70 Series Combines, page 233](#)
- [3.8.16 John Deere S and T Series Combines, page 240](#)
- [3.8.18 New Holland Combines – CR/CX Series – 2014 and Prior, page 270](#)
- [3.8.19 New Holland Combines – CR Series – 2015 and Later, page 279](#)

### 3.8.1 Sensor Operation

The position sensors supplied with the auto header height control (AHHC) system are hall-effect sensors. Normal operating signal voltages for the sensors fall between 10% (0.5 VDC) and 90% (4.5 VDC). An increase in sensor voltage correlates to a decrease in ground pressure, or if you are cutting off the ground on gauge wheels an increase in the header cut height.

Sensor errors result in a 0 V signal, indicating a faulty sensor, incorrect supply voltage, or a damaged wiring harness.

### 3.8.2 Sensor Output Voltage Range – Combine Requirements

The auto header height control (AHHC) sensor output must be within a specific voltage range for each combine, or the AHHC feature will not work properly.

**Table 3.19 Combine Voltage Limits**

Combine	Low Voltage Limit	High Voltage Limit	Range
Case IH 5088/6088/7088, 5130/6130/7130, 7120/8120/9120, 7230/8230/9230, and 7240/8240/9240	0.5 V	4.5 V	2.5 V
Challenger B, C, and IDEAL™ Series	0.5 V	4.5 V	2.5 V
CLAAS 500/600/700 Series, 7000/8000 Series, and Tucano Series	0.5 V	4.5 V	2.5 V
Fendt IDEAL™ Series	0.5 V	4.5 V	2.5 V
Gleaner A6, R, and S Series	0.5 V	4.5 V	2.5 V
John Deere 70, S, and T Series	0.5 V	4.5 V	2.5 V
Massey Ferguson 9005, 9500, and IDEAL™ Series	0.5 V	4.5 V	2.5 V
New Holland CR/CX - 5 V system	0.7 V	4.3 V	2.5 V
New Holland CR/CX - 10 V system	2.8 V	7.2 V	4.1–4.4 V
Rostelmash Torum and RSM161 Series	0.5 V	4.5 V	2.5 V
Versatile RT490	0.5 V	4.5 V	2.5 V

### 3.8.3 Checking Voltage Limits

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

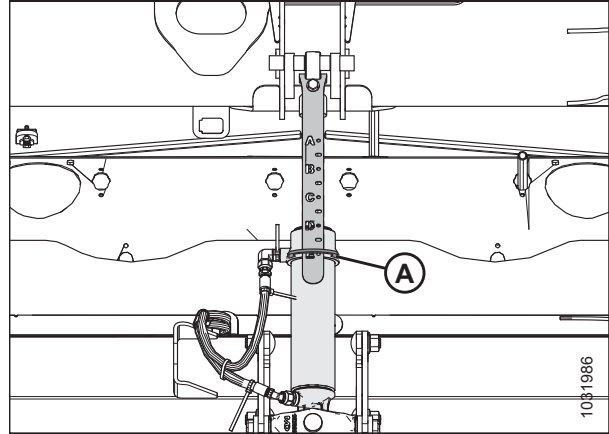
1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Park the combine on a level surface.

## OPERATION

3. Position the header so that the cutterbar is 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground.

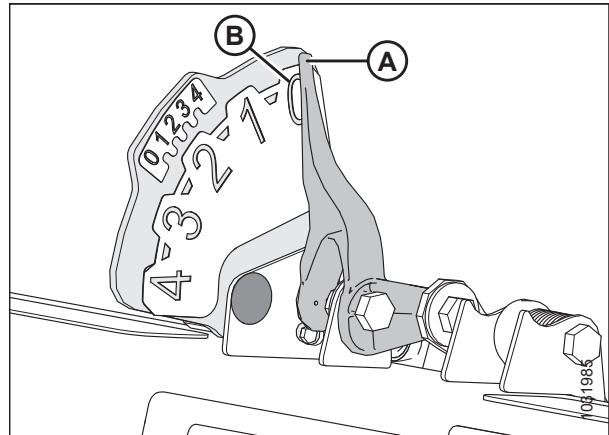
### **Checking sensor high voltage limit:**

4. Extend the guard angle until header angle indicator (A) is at E.



**Figure 3.185: Center-Link**

5. Float indicator pointer (A) should be at 0 (B).
6. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.



**Figure 3.186: Left Float Indicator – View from Rear**

## OPERATION

7. Check that the float lock linkage is on the down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

**NOTE:**

If the header is **NOT** on its down stops, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the AHHC system. If the header is not on down stops, refer to [3.9 Leveling Header, page 294](#) for instructions.

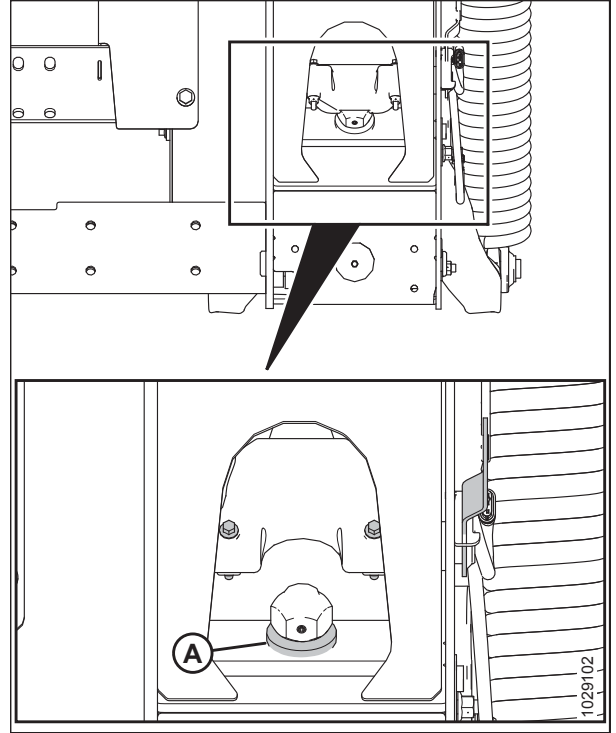


Figure 3.187: Down Stop Washer

8. Locate connector P600 (A) at the left front of the float module.
9. Remove plug cap (B).
10. Turn the key to the run position.
11. Check P600 for power from the combine. There should be 5V at pin 7.
  - Pin 7 - FM2215E – signal
  - Pin 8 - FM2515E – ground
12. On connector P600, confirm voltage of 3.8–4.3 V from left sensor (pins 1 and 8), and right sensor (pins 3 and 8).
  - Pin 1 - FM3326A – left sensor signal
  - Pin 3 - FM3328A – right sensor signal
  - Pin 8 - FM2515E – ground

**NOTE:**

The average of both sensors is what is sent to the combine.

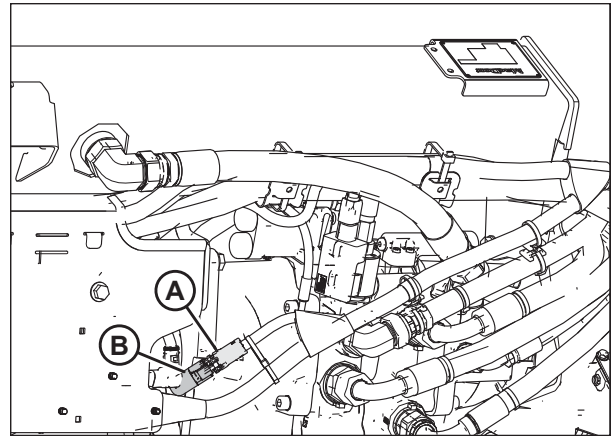


Figure 3.188: Left Float Indicator – View from Rear

## OPERATION

### Checking sensor low voltage limit:

13. Extend the guard angle until header angle indicator (A) is at E.

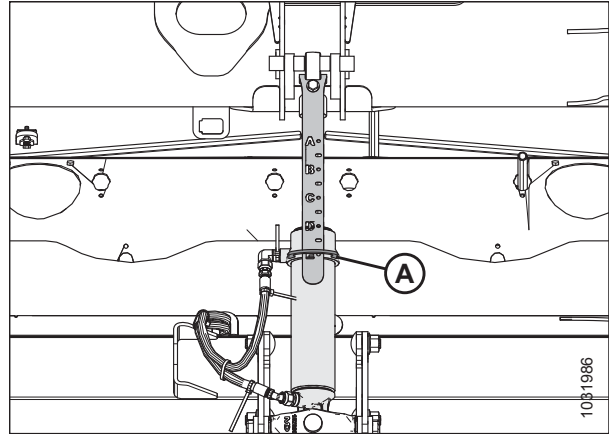


Figure 3.189: Center-Link

14. Fully lower header on the ground, float indicator pointer (A) should be at 4 (B).
15. Turn the key to the run position.
16. On connector P600, confirm voltage of 0.7–1.2 V from left sensor (pins 1 and 8), and right sensor (pins 3 and 8).
  - Pin 1 - FM3326A – left sensor signal
  - Pin 3 - FM3328A – right sensor signal
  - Pin 8 - FM2515E – ground

#### NOTE:

The average of both sensors is what is sent to the combine.

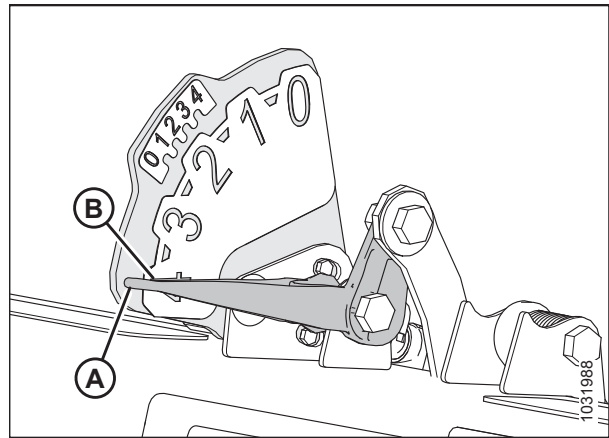


Figure 3.190: Left Float Indicator – View from Rear

### 3.8.4 Replacing Float Height Sensor

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

#### NOTE:

This procedure can be completed on either side of the float module.

1. Park the combine on a level surface.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Lower the reel fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

## OPERATION

5. Disconnect harness plug P537 (C) from the sensor on the left side of the float module.

**NOTE:**

If replacing the float height indicator sensor on the right side of the float module, disconnect plug P539.

6. Remove bolt (A).
7. Remove indicator plate (B) with sensor.

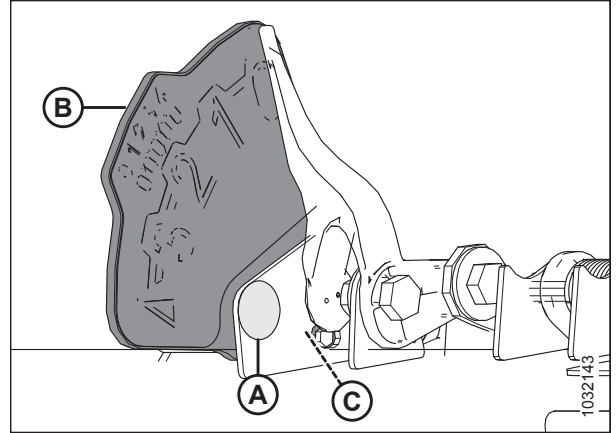


Figure 3.191: Float Setting Indicator – Left

8. Remove two bolts and nuts (A).
9. Remove and discard old sensor (B).
10. Install new sensor (B), so the plug is facing down.
11. Install two bolts and nuts (A).

**NOTE:**

Bolt heads should be on the same side as the decal.

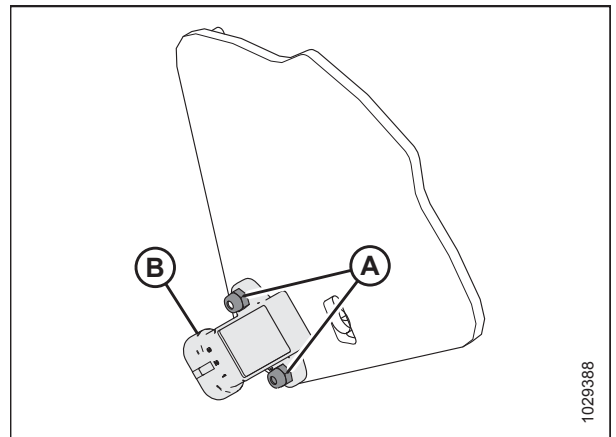


Figure 3.192: Float Height Sensor

12. Install indicator plate (B) with sensor.
13. Install bolt (A).
14. Connect harness plug (C).

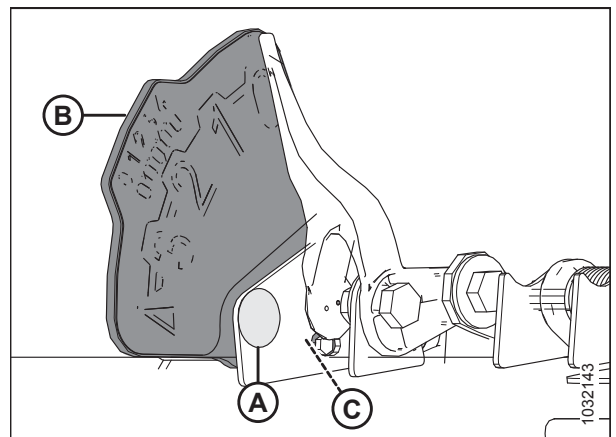


Figure 3.193: Float Setting Indicator – Left

### 3.8.5 10 Volt Adapter (MD #B7241) – New Holland Combines Only

New Holland combines with a 10 V system require the 10 V adapter (A) (MD #B7241) for proper calibration of the auto header height control (AHHC) feature.

If a 10 V New Holland combine does not have the adapter installed, the AHHC output will always read 0 V, regardless of sensor position.

To check sensor voltages, refer to [3.8.3 Checking Voltage Limits, page 137](#).

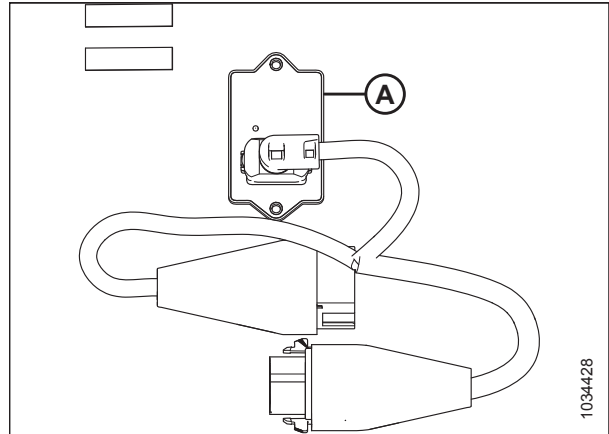


Figure 3.194: 10 V Adapter (MD #B7241)

### 3.8.6 AGCO IDEAL™ Series Combines

#### Setting up the Header – AGCO IDEAL™ Series

**NOTE:**

Up-to-date illustrations of the AGCO IDEAL™ Series combine display were not available at time of publishing. For instructions, refer to the combine operator’s manual for updates.

AGCO Tyton terminal (A) is used to set up and manage a MacDon header on an IDEAL™ series combine. Use the touch screen display to select the desired item on the screen.



Figure 3.195: AGCO IDEAL™ Operator Station

- A - Tyton Terminal
- B - Control Handle
- C - Throttle
- D - Header Control Cluster

## OPERATION

1. On the top right of the home screen, touch COMBINE icon (A). The COMBINE MAIN MENU opens.

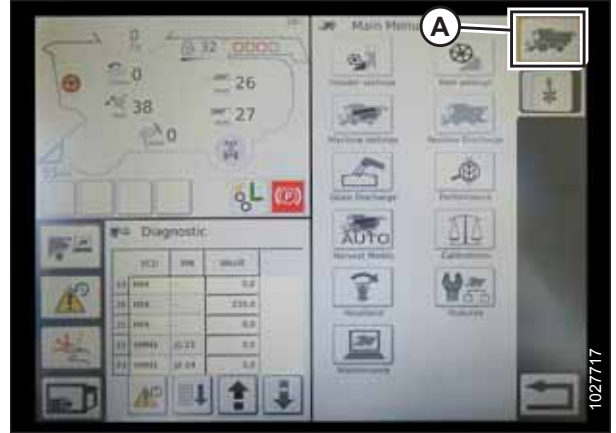


Figure 3.196: Combine Icon on Home Page

2. On the COMBINE MAIN MENU, touch HEADER SETTINGS (A). The HEADER SETTINGS page opens.

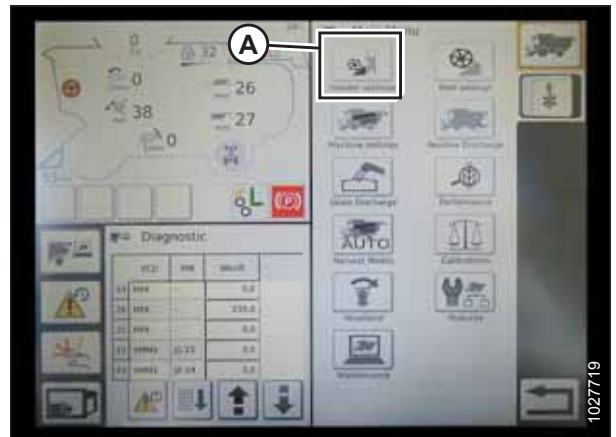


Figure 3.197: Header Settings in Combine Main Menu

## OPERATION

3. Touch HEADER CONFIGURATION field (A). A dialog box showing predefined headers opens.
  - If your MacDon header is already set up, it appears on the header list. Touch the MacDon header title (B) to highlight the selection in blue, and then touch green check mark (E) to continue.
  - If only default header (D) is shown, touch ABC button (C), and use the on-screen keyboard to enter the MacDon header information. When complete, select one of the following options to return to the HEADER SETTINGS page:
    - Green check mark (E) saves the settings
    - Garbage can icon (F) deletes the highlighted header from the list
    - Red X (G) cancels the change(s)

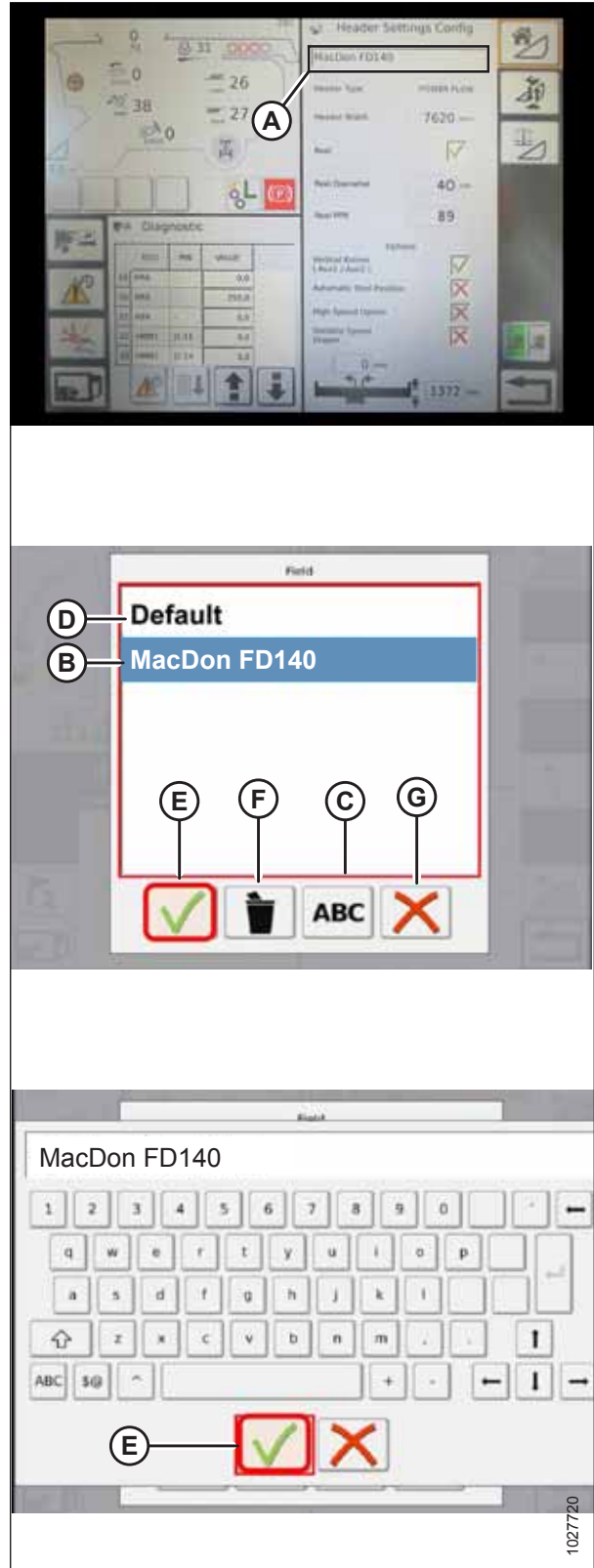


Figure 3.198: Header Configuration Menu on Header Settings Page



## OPERATION

- To specify the type of header installed on the machine, touch HEADER TYPE field (A).

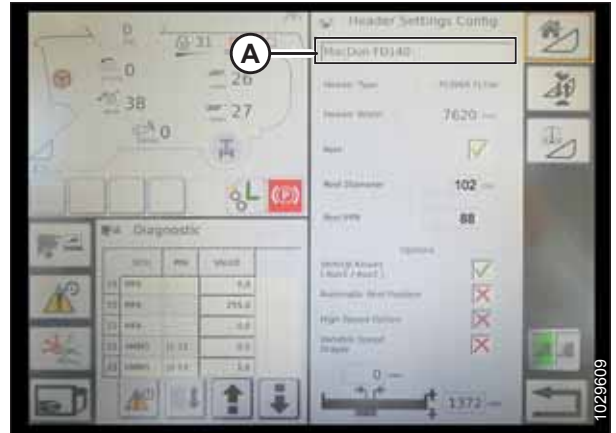


Figure 3.199: Header Settings

- Make sure that REEL check box (A) is checked.

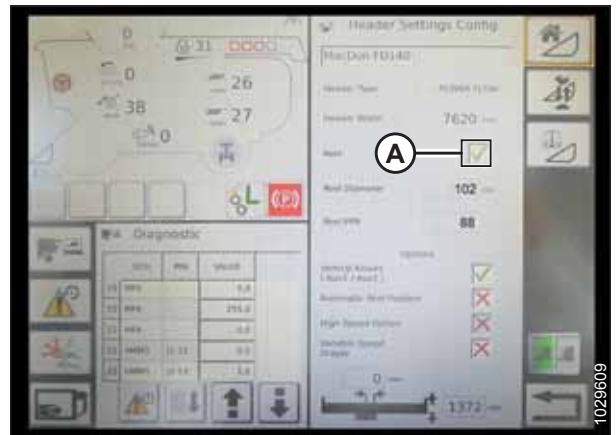


Figure 3.200: Header Settings

- Touch REEL DIAMETER field (A) and a numeric keypad displays. Enter **13** for a MacDon reel.
- Touch REEL PPR (Pulses Per Revolution) field (B) and enter **18** as the value for your MacDon header.

**NOTE:**

PPR is determined by the number of teeth on the reel speed sprocket.

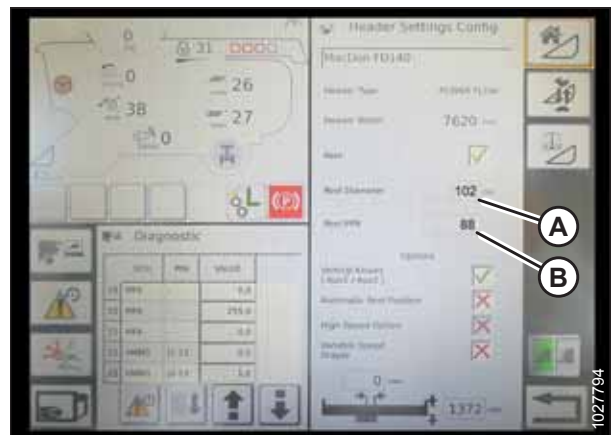


Figure 3.201: Header Settings

## OPERATION

8. Touch green check mark (B) at the bottom of numeric keypad (A) when complete, or the red X to cancel.

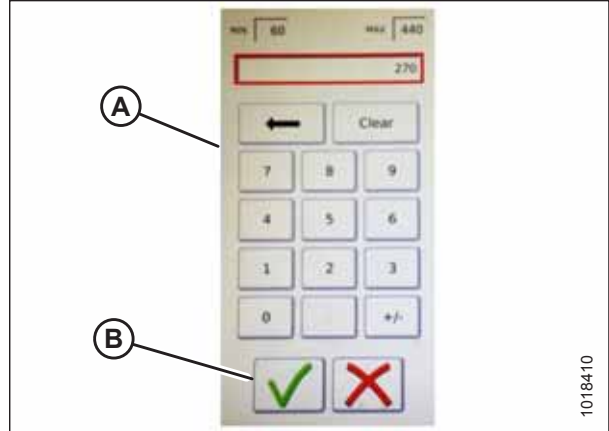


Figure 3.202: Numeric Keypad

9. When complete, touch green check mark (A) at the bottom of the HEADER SETTINGS page.

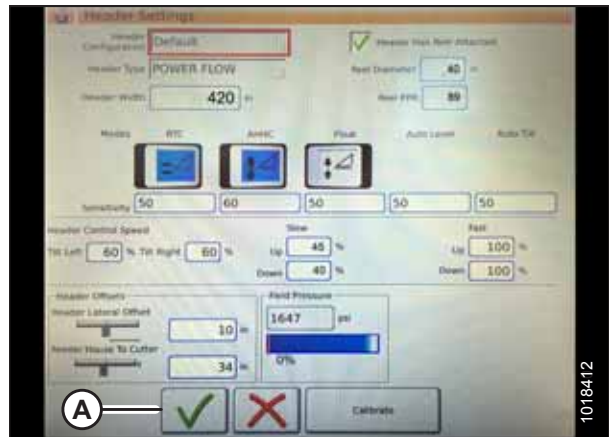


Figure 3.203: Header Settings Page

### Setting Minimum Reel Speed and Calibrating Reel – AGCO IDEAL™ Series

#### **WARNING**

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

#### **NOTE:**

Up-to-date illustrations of the IDEAL™ series combine display were not available at time of publishing. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

## OPERATION

1. From the COMBINE MAIN MENU, touch REEL SETTINGS (A) to open the REEL SETTINGS page.

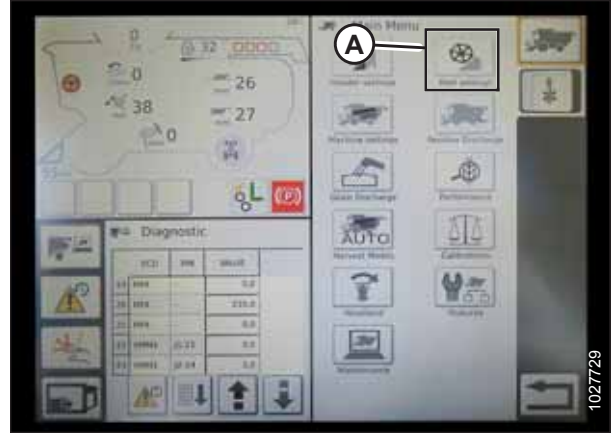


Figure 3.204: Reel Settings on Combine Main Menu

2. To set minimum reel speed, touch SPEED MINIMUM FIELD (B). The on-screen keyboard displays. Enter the desired value. Touch the green check mark to accept the new value, or the red X to cancel. The reel speed is shown in miles per hour (mph) and rotations per minute (rpm).

**NOTE:**

At the bottom of the REEL SETTINGS page, the reel diameter and reel pulses per revolution (PPR) are displayed. These values have already been set in the HEADER SETTINGS page.

3. Reel speed is calibrated on the REEL SETTINGS page by touching CALIBRATE button (A) in the top right of the page.

**NOTE:**

The CALIBRATION WIZARD opens and displays a hazard warning.

4. Make sure to meet all the conditions listed in the CALIBRATION WIZARD warning. Press the green check mark to accept and start reel calibration. Pressing the red X will cancel the calibration procedure.



Figure 3.205: Reel Settings Calibration



Figure 3.206: Calibration Wizard

## OPERATION

5. A message appears in the CALIBRATION WIZARD stating that reel calibration has started. The reel will begin turning slowly and increase to high speed. A progress bar is provided. If necessary, touch the red X (not shown) to cancel. Otherwise, wait for the message that reel calibration has completed successfully. Touch the green check mark to save the calibrated settings.



Figure 3.207: Calibration Progress

### Setting up Automatic Header Controls – AGCO IDEAL™ Series

Automatic header functions are configured on the HEADER SETTINGS page.

#### NOTE:

Up-to-date illustrations of the IDEAL™ series combine display were not available at time of publishing. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. **Automatic Control Functions:** There are toggle (OFF/ON) switches on the HEADER SETTINGS page for the automatic control functions. For MacDon headers, ensure the following two functions are enabled as shown:

- RTC (return to cut) (A)
- AHHC (automatic header height control) (B)

All other switches are disabled (not highlighted).

2. **Sensitivity** setting (C) controls how responsive a control (RTC or AHHC) is to a given change in sensor feedback. The setting fields are located directly below the toggle switches. To enter a new sensitivity setting, touch the setting field below the specific toggle switch, and enter the new value in the on-screen keyboard.

- Increase sensitivity if the combine does not change the feeder position quickly enough when in Auto Mode.
- Decrease sensitivity if the combine hunts for a position in Auto Mode.

#### NOTE:

Recommended sensitivity starting points for MacDon headers are:

- **50** for RTC (A)
- **60** for AHHC (B)

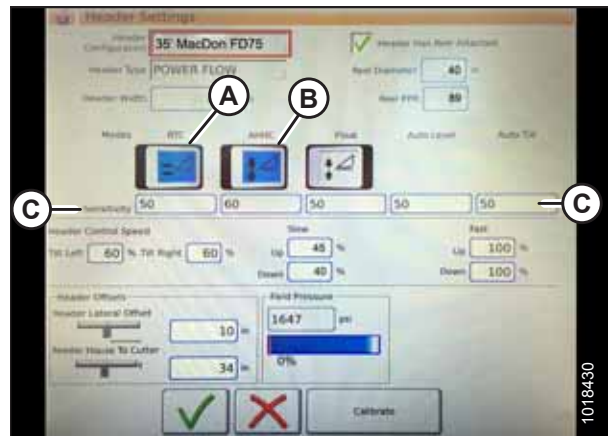


Figure 3.208: Automatic Controls and Sensitivity Settings

## OPERATION

3. **Header Speed:** HEADER CONTROL SPEED area (A) on the HEADER SETTINGS page is used to adjust the following speeds:

- Tilt left and right is the lateral tilt of the combine faceplate
- Header up and down (slow and fast speeds) is a two-stage button with slow speed on the first detent and fast on the second

### NOTE:

Recommended header control speed starting points are:

- Slow: Up 45/Down 40
- Fast: Up 100/Down 100

4. **Header Offsets (A):** Offset distances are important for yield mapping. There are two adjustable dimensions on the HEADER SETTINGS page:

- Header Lateral Offset: the distance between the centerline of the header and the centerline of the machine. This should be set at **0** for a MacDon header.
- Feeder House to Cutter: the distance from the machine interface to the cutterbar. This should be set at **68** for a MacDon header.

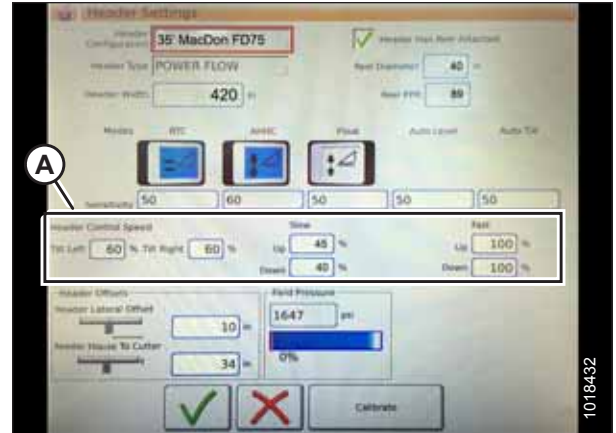


Figure 3.209: Header Speed Control Settings

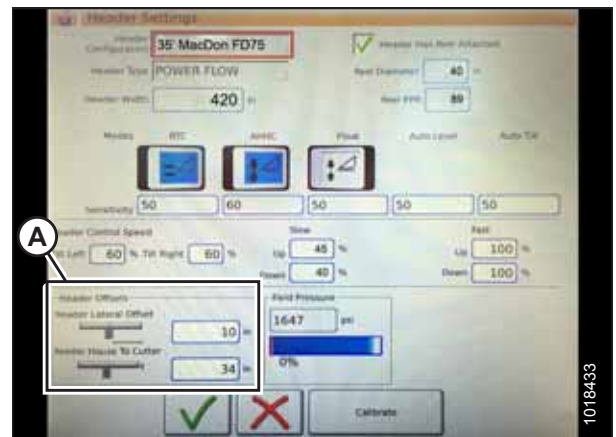


Figure 3.210: Header Offset Settings

### Calibrating the Header – AGCO IDEAL™ Series

The auto header control functions are configured on the HEADER SETTINGS page.

### WARNING

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

### NOTE:

Up-to-date illustrations of the IDEAL™ series combine display were not available at time of publishing. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

## OPERATION

1. On the COMBINE MAIN MENU, touch HEADER SETTINGS (A).

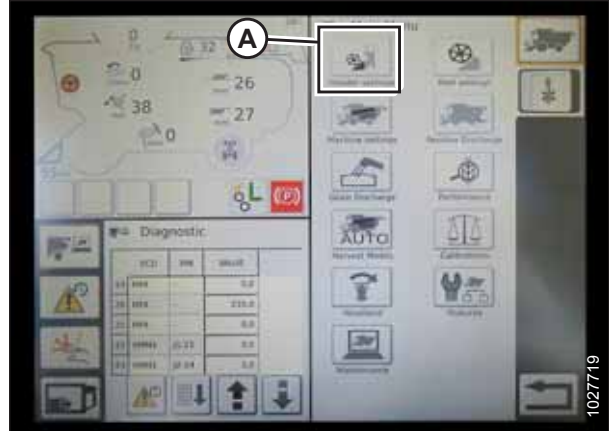


Figure 3.211: Combine Main Menu

2. Touch HEADER CALIBRATE (A) at the right side of the HEADER SETTINGS CONFIG page.

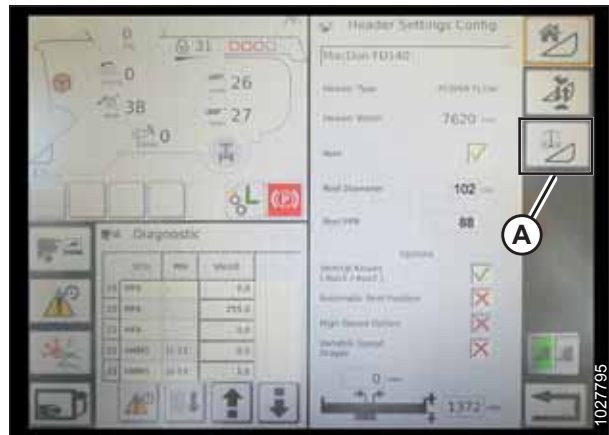


Figure 3.212: Header Settings Page

3. The hazard warning for HEADER CALIBRATION appears. Make sure that all conditions are met.
4. Touch the green check mark at the bottom of the page to start the calibration and follow the on-screen commands.



Figure 3.213: Header Calibration Warning

## OPERATION

A progress bar is provided and the calibration can be stopped by touching the red X. The header moves automatically and erratically during this process.

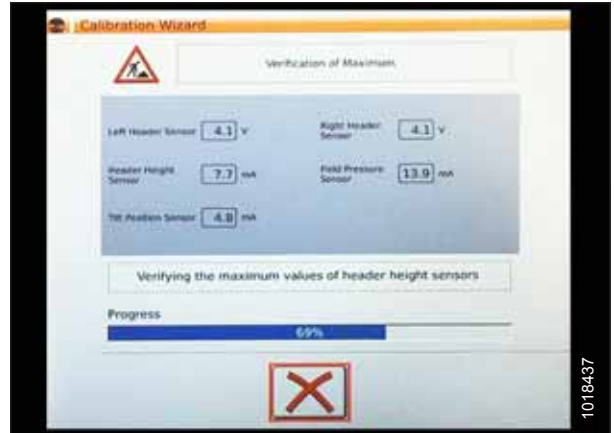


Figure 3.214: Calibration in Progress

5. When the calibration is complete:

- Review summary information (A)
- Review green check marks confirming calibrated functions (B)
- Touch check mark (C) to save

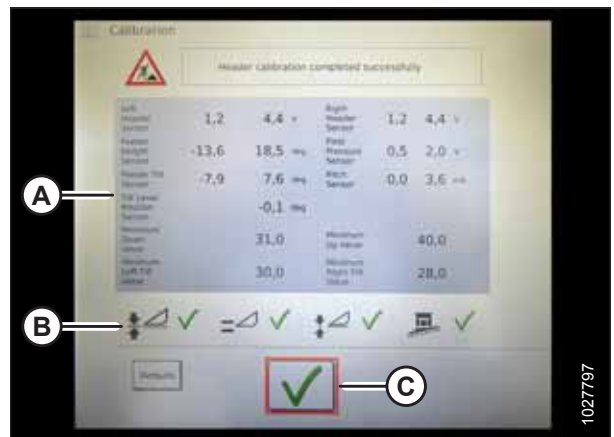


Figure 3.215: Completed Calibration Page

### NOTE:

Touch CALIBRATIONS icon (A) on MAIN MENU page to display the CALIBRATION MENU where you can choose from a variety of calibrations including header and reel calibration.



Figure 3.216: Direct Calibration Menu

## OPERATION

### Operating the Header – AGCO IDEAL™ Series

#### NOTE:

Up-to-date illustrations of the IDEAL™ Series combine display were not available at time of publishing. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

The following controls are used to operate the auto header height control (AHHC) functions:

- Tyton terminal (A)
- Control handle (B)
- Throttle (C)
- Header control cluster (D)

For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual to familiarize yourself with the controls.



Figure 3.217: AGCO IDEAL™ Operator Station

1. With the header running, set lateral tilt to MANUAL by pressing switch (A) so the light above switch is off.
2. Engage the AHHC by pressing switch (B) so light above switch is on.



Figure 3.218: Header Control Cluster

3. Press AHHC control switch (A) on the control handle to engage the AHHC. The header moves to the current setpoint position.



Figure 3.219: AHHC on Control Handle



## OPERATION

4. Use HEADER HEIGHT SETPOINT control dial (A) as necessary to fine-tune the position.



Figure 3.220: Header Control Cluster

### Reviewing Header In-Field Settings – AGCO IDEAL™ Series

#### NOTE:

Up-to-date illustrations of the IDEAL™ Series combine display were not available at time of publishing. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. To view header group settings, touch HEADER icon (A) on the right side of the home page.
2. The following information is displayed:
  - CURRENT POSITION of header (B).
  - SETPOINT cut-off position (C) (indicated by red line)
  - HEADER symbol (D) – touch to adjust the setpoint cut-off position using the adjustment wheel on the right side of the Tyton terminal.
  - CUT HEIGHT for AHHC (E) – fine-tune with the header height setpoint control dial on the header control cluster.
  - HEADER WORKING WIDTH (F)
  - HEADER PITCH (G)
3. Touching a field opens the on-screen keyboard so that values can be adjusted. Enter the new value and touch the green check mark when complete.

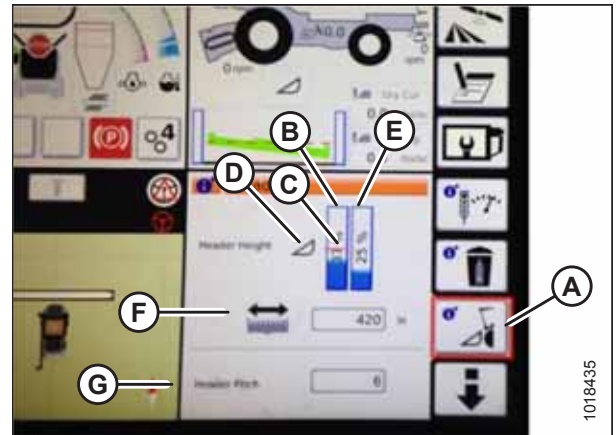


Figure 3.221: Header Groups

#### NOTE:

Adjustment wheel (A) is located on the right of the Tyton terminal.



Figure 3.222: Adjustment Wheel on Right of Tyton Terminal

## OPERATION

### NOTE:

HEADER HEIGHT SETPOINT control dial (A) is on the header control cluster.



Figure 3.223: Header Control Cluster

### 3.8.7 Case IH 130 and 140 Series Mid-Range Combines

#### Setting up the Header on the Combine Display – Case IH 5130/6130/7130; 5140/6140/7140

1. On the main page of the combine display, select TOOLBOX (A).

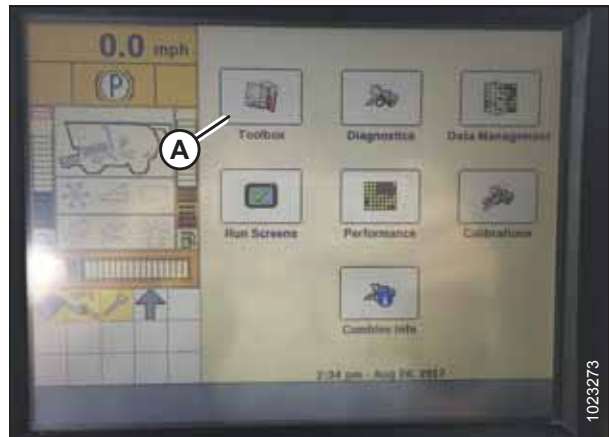


Figure 3.224: Case IH Combine Display

2. Select HEAD 1 tab (A). The HEADER SETUP page displays.

### NOTE:

To locate the HEAD 1 tab, you may need to scroll to the right using side arrows (C).

3. From CUTTING TYPE menu (B), select PLATFORM.

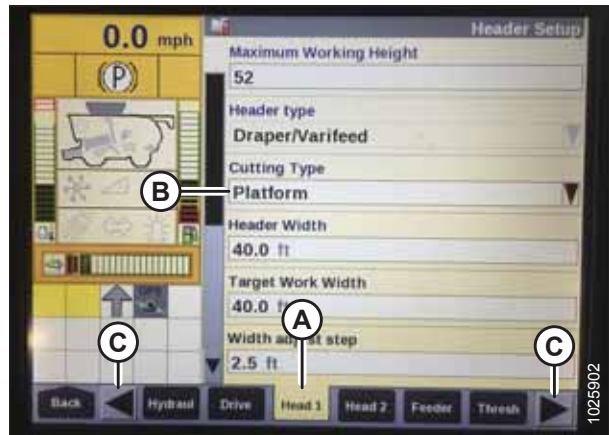


Figure 3.225: Case IH Combine Display

## OPERATION

4. Select HEAD 2 tab (A). The HEADER SETUP 2 page displays.
5. From HEADER PRESSURE FLOAT menu (B), select NOT INSTALLED.
6. From DRAPER GRAIN HEADER STYLE menu (C), select FLEX 2000 SERIES.

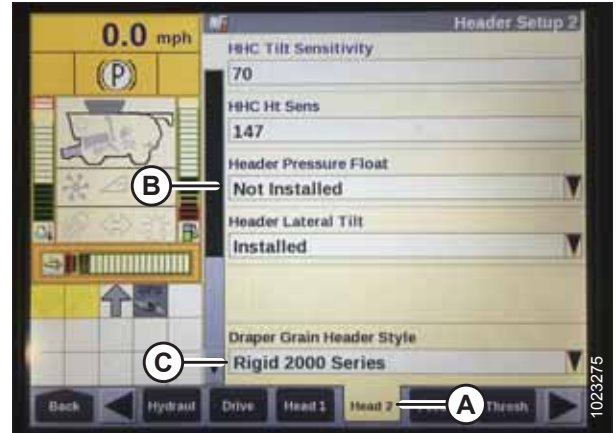


Figure 3.226: Case IH Combine Display

7. Locate HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY field (A), and set as follows:
  - **If using a two-sensor system:** Set HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY to 250.
  - **If using a single-sensor system:** Set HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY to 180.

**NOTE:**

If hunting occurs during operation, decrease this setting by 20 points at a time until hunting no longer occurs.

8. Set HHC TILT SENSITIVITY (B) to 150. Increase or decrease as desired.



Figure 3.227: Case IH Combine Display

9. From REEL DRIVE TYPE menu (A), select one of the following:
  - 4 if you are using a standard 19-tooth drive sprocket.
  - 5 if you are using an optional high-torque 14-tooth drive sprocket.
  - 6 if you are using an optional high-torque 10-tooth drive sprocket.

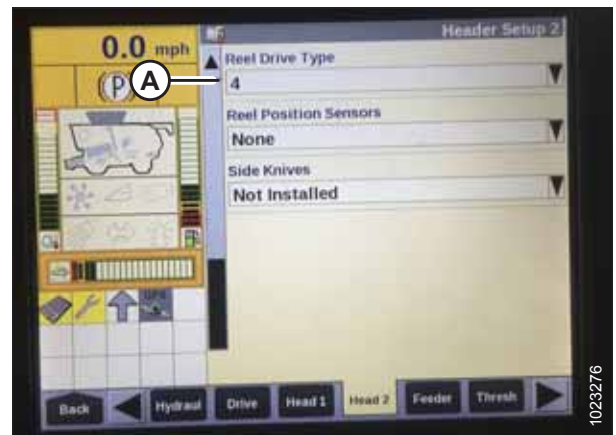


Figure 3.228: Case IH Combine Display

## OPERATION

10. From REEL HEIGHT SENSOR menu (A), select YES.



Figure 3.229: Case IH Combine Display

11. Locate AUTOTILT field (A).

- **If using a two-sensor system:** Select YES in the AUTOTILT field.
- **If using a single-sensor system:** Select NO in the AUTOTILT field.



Figure 3.230: Case IH Combine Display

### *Checking Voltage Range from Combine Cab – Case IH 5130/6130/7130; 5140/6140/7140*

#### **NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to combine controls or display since this document was published. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

#### **WARNING**

**Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.**

1. Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.

## OPERATION

2. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

**NOTE:**

If the header is not on down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the auto header height control (AHHC) system. If the header is not on down stops, refer to [3.9 Leveling Header, page 294](#) for instructions.

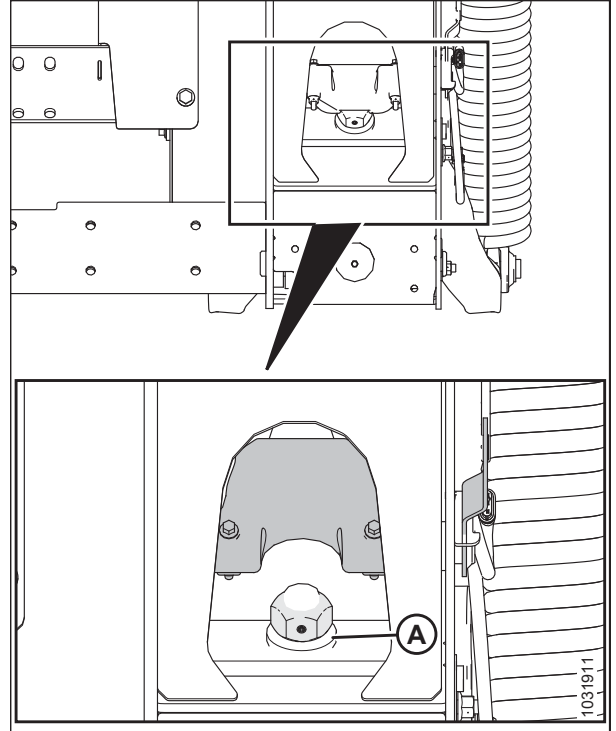


Figure 3.231: Float Lock

3. If pointer is not on zero, loosen bolt (A) and slide float indicator plate (B) until pointer (C) is on 0 (D).
4. Tighten bolt (A).

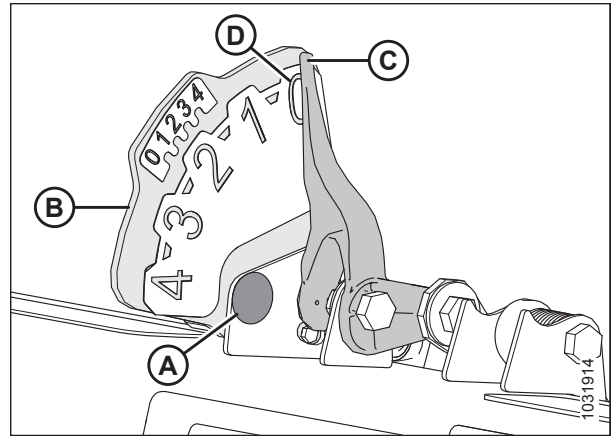


Figure 3.232: Float Indicator

## OPERATION

5. Ensure header float is unlocked.
6. On the main page of the combine display, select DIAGNOSTICS (A). The DIAGNOSTICS page opens.

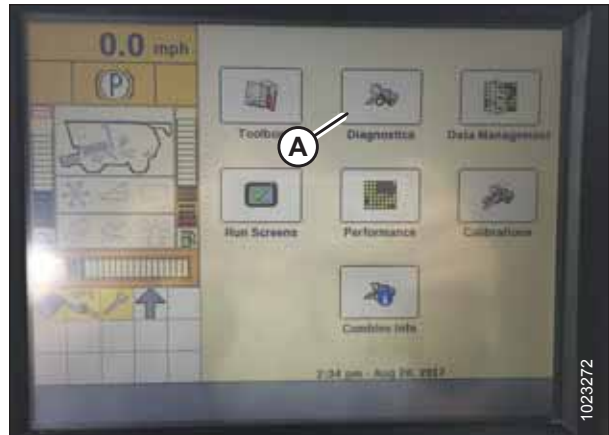


Figure 3.233: Case IH Combine Display

7. Select SETTINGS (A). The SETTINGS page opens.
8. From the GROUP menu, select HEADER (B).

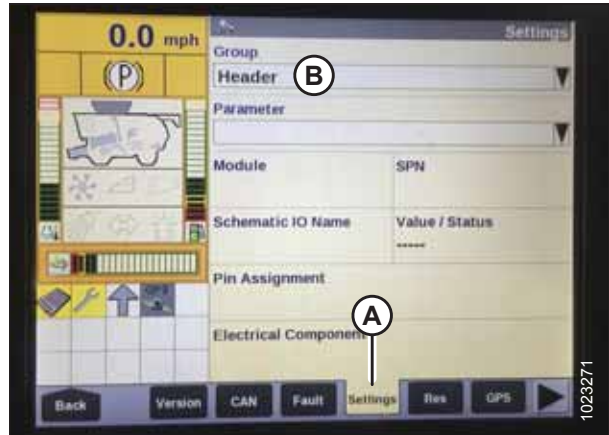


Figure 3.234: Case IH Combine Display

9. From the PARAMETER menu, select LEFT HEIGHT/TILT SENSOR (A).



Figure 3.235: Case IH Combine Display

## OPERATION

10. The SETTINGS page updates to display the voltage in VALUE/STATUS field (A). Lower the feeder house fully, and then raise it 254–306 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground to view the full range of voltage readings.



Figure 3.236: Case IH Combine Display

### *Calibrating Auto Header Height Control – Case IH 5130/6130/7130, 5140/6140/7140*

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust center-link back to desired header angle. Refer to [3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91](#).



### **WARNING**

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

#### **NOTE:**

This procedure applies to combines with a software version below 28.00. For instructions on calibrating the AHHC for combines with software version 28.00 or above, refer to [Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – Case IH Combines with Version 28.00 or Higher Software, page 169](#).

#### **NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

#### **NOTE:**

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.

1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
2. Ensure all header and float module electrical and hydraulic connections are made.
3. Start the combine engine, but do **NOT** engage separator or feeder house.

## OPERATION

4. Locate HEADER CONTROL switch (A) on the right console, and set to HT (this is AHHC mode).
5. Hold the DOWN button for 10 seconds, or until the combine feeder house has been lowered all the way down (the feeder house will stop moving).
6. Push the RAISE button and hold it until the feeder house travels all the way up. It will stop 61 cm (2 ft.) above ground for 5 seconds, then it will resume lift. This is an indication that calibration is successful.

### NOTE:

If float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

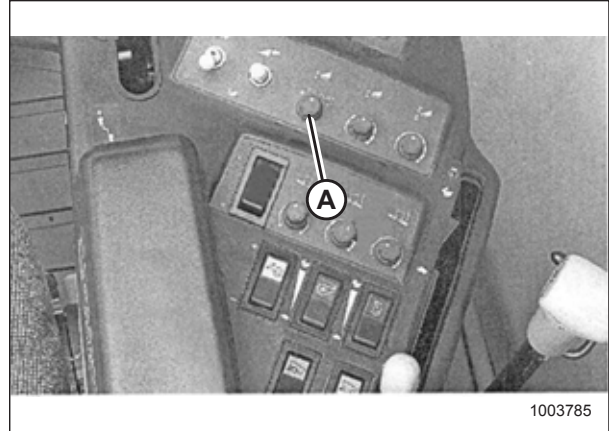


Figure 3.237: Right Console

### Setting Preset Cutting Height – Case 5130/6130/7130, 5140/6140/7140

To set preset cutting height, follow these steps:

### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.



## WARNING

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

### NOTE:

Indicator (A) should be at position 0 (B) with the header 254–306 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground. When the header is on the ground, the indicator should be at position 1 (C) for low ground pressure, and at position 4 (D) for high ground pressure. Crop and soil conditions determine the amount of float to use. The ideal setting is as light as possible without header bouncing or missing crop. Operating with heavy settings prematurely wears the cutterbar wearplates.

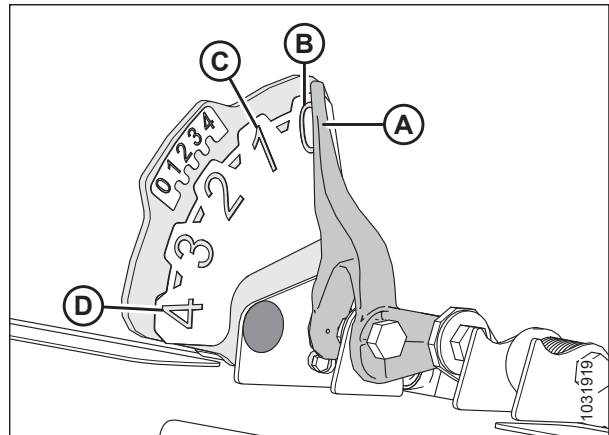


Figure 3.238: Float Indicator



## OPERATION

1. Engage separator and header.
2. Manually raise or lower the header to the desired cutting height.
3. Press 1 on button (A). A yellow light next to the button will illuminate.

**NOTE:**

When setting presets, always set header position before setting reel position. If header and reel are set at the same time, the reel setting will not be saved.

4. Manually raise or lower the reel to the desired working position.
5. Press 1 on button (A). A yellow light next to the button will illuminate.
6. Manually raise or lower the header to a second desired cutting height.
7. Press 2 on button (A). A yellow light next to the button will illuminate.
8. Manually raise or lower the reel to the desired working position.
9. Press 2 on button (A). A yellow light next to the button will illuminate.

Up and down arrows should now appear in MANUAL HEIGHT box (A) on the RUN 1 page on the combine display. This indicates that the auto header height control (AHHC) is functioning.



Figure 3.239: Case Combine Console



Figure 3.240: Case Combine Console



Figure 3.241: Case Combine Display – Run 1 Page

## OPERATION

10. To enable the presets, activate AHHC button (A) to place the header on the ground. To enable the first preset, tap the button once. To enable the second preset, tap the button twice.

To lift the header to maximum working height, hold the SHIFT button on the back of the control handle while tapping AHHC button (A).



Figure 3.242: Case Combine Control Handle

11. The maximum working height can be adjusted on the HEADER SETUP page on the combine display. Enter the desired height in MAXIMUM WORKING HEIGHT field (A).



Figure 3.243: Case Combine Display – Header Setup Page

12. If you need to change the position of one of the presets, you can fine-tune this setting with button (A) on the combine console.



Figure 3.244: Case Combine Console

### 3.8.8 Case IH, 120, 230, 240, and 250 Series Combines

#### Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – Case IH, 120, 230, 240, and 250 Series Combines

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator’s manual for updates.

**⚠ DANGER**

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.
2. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

**NOTE:**

If the header is not on down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the auto header height control (AHHC) system. If the header is not on down stops, refer to [3.9 Leveling Header, page 294](#) for instructions.

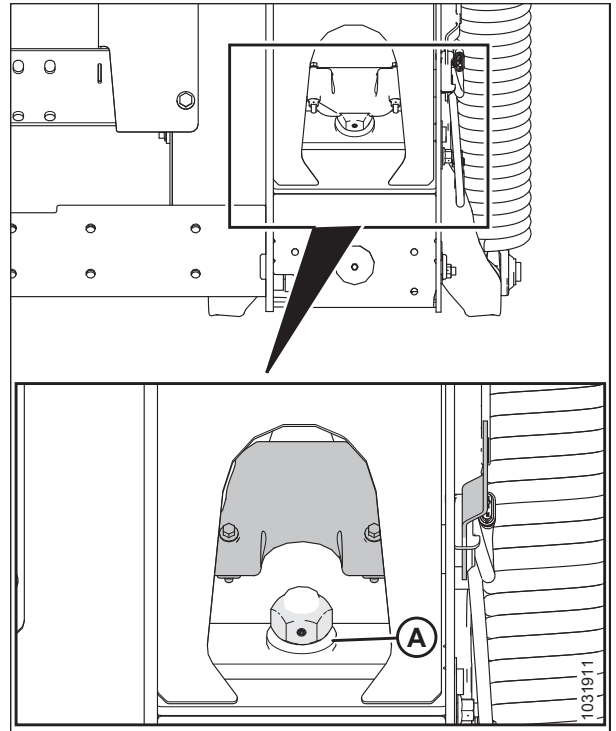


Figure 3.245: Float Lock

3. If pointer is not on zero, loosen bolt (A) and slide float indicator plate (B) until pointer (C) is on 0 (D).
4. Tighten bolt (A).

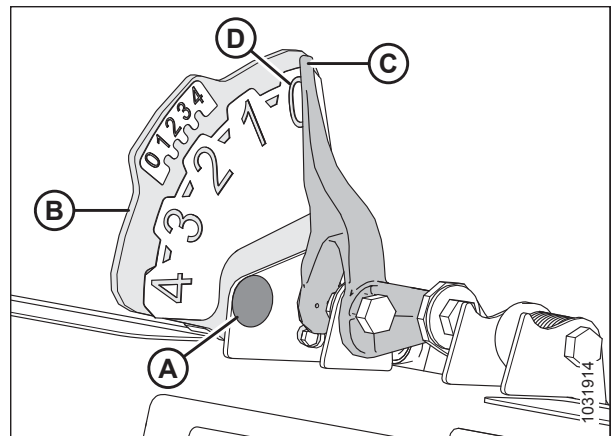


Figure 3.246: Float Indicator

## OPERATION

5. Ensure header float is unlocked.
6. Select DIAGNOSTICS (A) on the MAIN page. The DIAGNOSTICS page opens.
7. Select SETTINGS. The SETTINGS page opens.

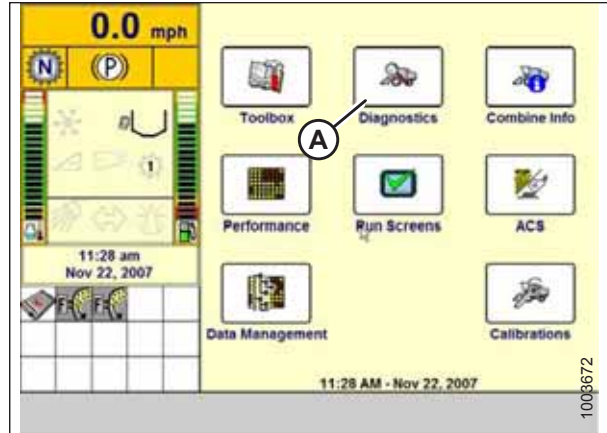


Figure 3.247: Case IH Combine Display

8. Select GROUP arrow (A). The GROUP dialog box opens.

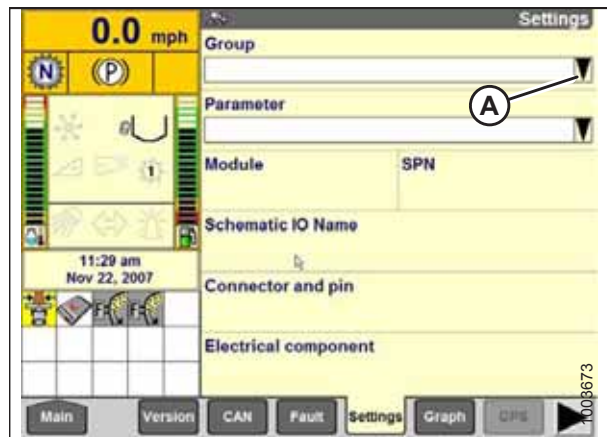


Figure 3.248: Case IH Combine Display

9. Select HEADER HEIGHT/TILT (A). The PARAMETER page opens.

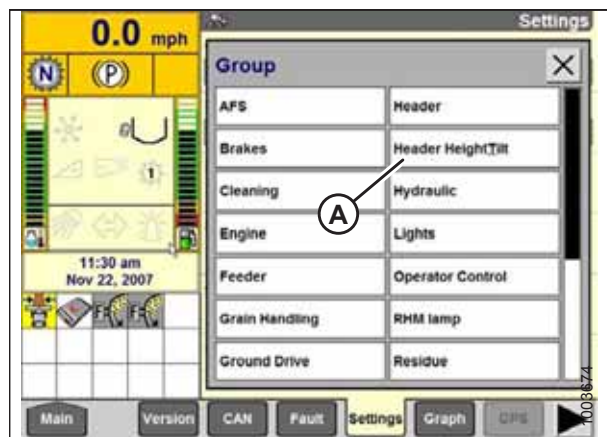


Figure 3.249: Case IH Combine Display

## OPERATION

10. Select LEFT HEADER HEIGHT SEN (A), and then select GRAPH button (B). The exact voltage is displayed at top of page. Raise and lower the header to see the full range of voltage readings.

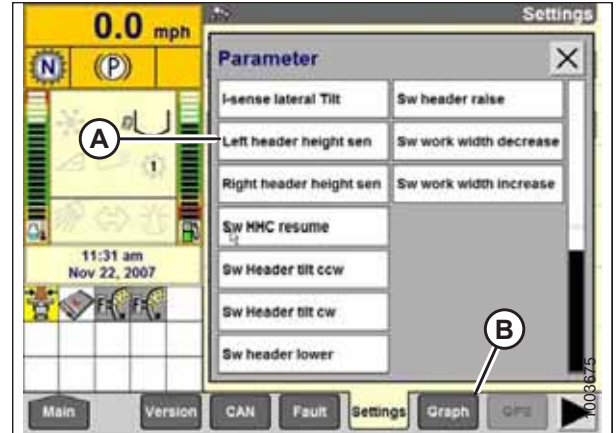


Figure 3.250: Case IH Combine Display

### *Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – Case IH120, 230, 240, and 250 Series Combines*

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91](#).



### **WARNING**

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

#### **NOTE:**

This procedure applies to combines with a software version below 28.00. For instructions on calibrating the AHHC for combines with software version 28.00 or above, refer to [Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – Case IH Combines with Version 28.00 or Higher Software, page 169](#).

#### **NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

#### **NOTE:**

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.

1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
2. Ensure all header and float module electrical and hydraulic connections are made.

## OPERATION

3. Select TOOLBOX (A) on the MAIN page.

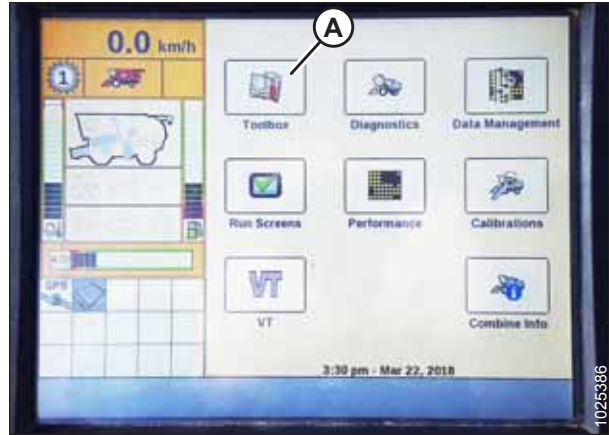


Figure 3.251: Case IH Combine Display

4. Select HEADER tab (A).

**NOTE:**

To locate the HEADER tab, you may need to scroll to the right using side arrows (C).

5. Set appropriate HEADER STYLE (B).



Figure 3.252: Case IH Combine Display

6. Set AUTO REEL SPEED SLOPE.

**NOTE:**

The AUTO REEL SPEED SLOPE value automatically maintains the speed of the reel relative to ground speed. For example, if the value is set to 133, then the reel will turn be faster than ground speed. The reel should normally be slightly faster than ground speed; however, adjust the value according to crop conditions.

7. Set HEADER PRESSURE FLOAT to NO if equipped, and ensure REEL DRIVE is HYDRAULIC.

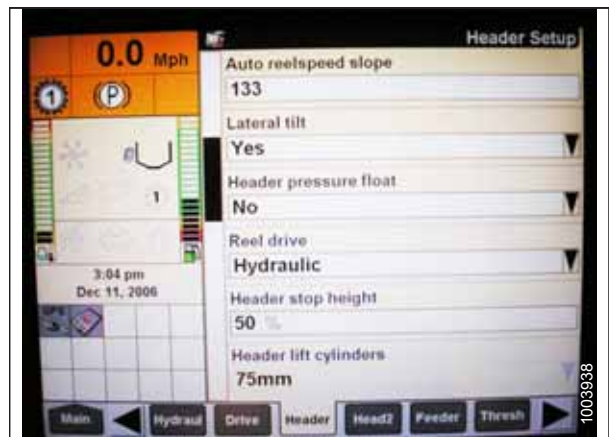


Figure 3.253: Case IH Combine Display

## OPERATION

8. Install REEL FORE-BACK to YES (if applicable).

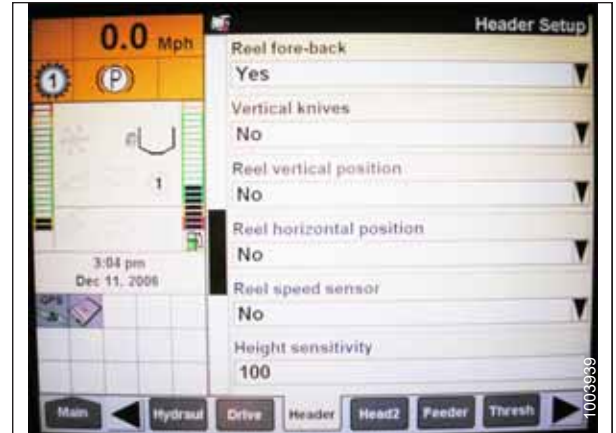


Figure 3.254: Case IH Combine Display

9. Locate HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY field (A), and set as follows:

- **If using a two-sensor system:** Set HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY to 250.
- **If using a single-sensor system:** Set HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY to 180.

**NOTE:**

If hunting occurs during operation, decrease this setting by 20 points at a time until hunting no longer occurs.

10. Set HHC TILT SENSITIVITY (B) to 150. Increase or decrease as desired.



Figure 3.255: Case IH Combine Display

11. Install FORE/AFT CONTROL and HDR FORE/AFT TILT (if applicable).



Figure 3.256: Case IH Combine Display

## OPERATION

12. Press HEAD2 (A) at bottom of page.
13. Ensure HEADER TYPE (B) is DRAPER.

**NOTE:**

If recognition resistor is plugged in to header harness, you will not be able to change this.

14. Set CUTTING TYPE (C) to PLATFORM.
15. Set appropriate HEADER WIDTH (D) and HEADER USAGE (E).

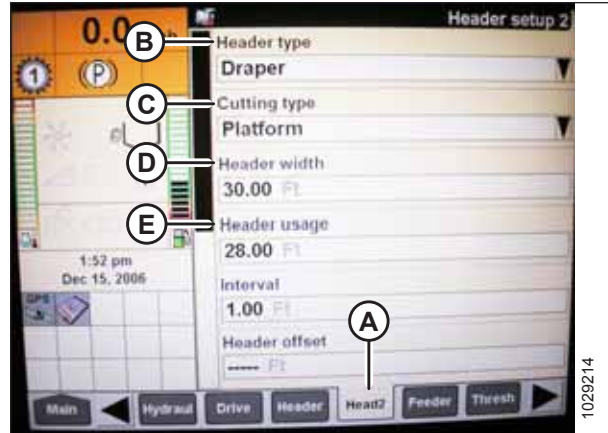


Figure 3.257: Case IH Combine Display

16. From the REEL HEIGHT SENSOR menu, select YES (A).



Figure 3.258: Case IH Combine Display

17. Locate AUTOTILT field (A).

- **If using a two-sensor system:** Select YES in the AUTOTILT field.
- **If using a single-sensor system:** Select NO in the AUTOTILT field.

**NOTE:**

If float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.



Figure 3.259: Case IH Combine Display



## OPERATION

### Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – Case IH Combines with Version 28.00 or Higher Software

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91](#).

#### **WARNING**

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

#### **NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

#### **NOTE:**

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.

1. Ensure header center-link is set to **D**.
2. Raise header on down stops and unlock float.
3. Place wings in locked position.
4. Select TOOLBOX (A) on the MAIN page.

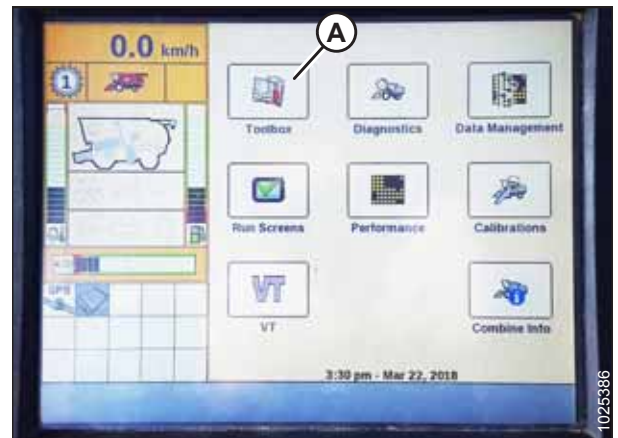


Figure 3.260: Case IH Combine Display

5. Select HEAD 1 tab (A).

#### **NOTE:**

To locate the HEAD 1 tab, you may need to scroll to the right using side arrows (B).

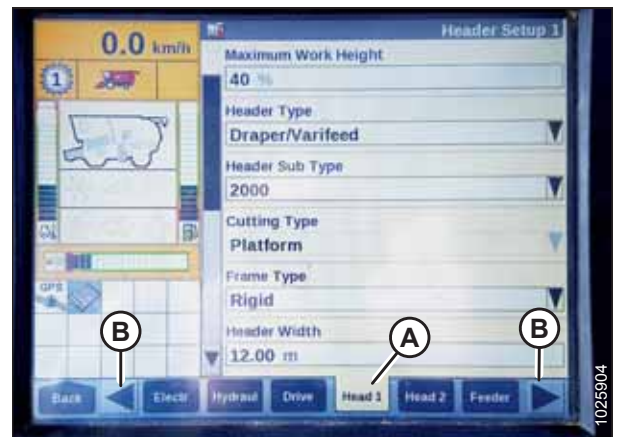


Figure 3.261: Case IH Combine Display

## OPERATION

6. Locate the HEADER SUB TYPE field.
7. Select 2000 (A).



Figure 3.262: Case IH Combine Display

8. Select HEAD 2 tab (A).
9. In HEADER SENSORS field (B), select ENABLE.
10. In HEADER PRESSURE FLOAT field (C), select NO.
11. In HEIGHT/TILT RESPONSE field (D), select FAST.
12. In AUTO HEIGHT OVERRIDE field (E), select YES.
13. Press down arrow (F) to go to the next page.

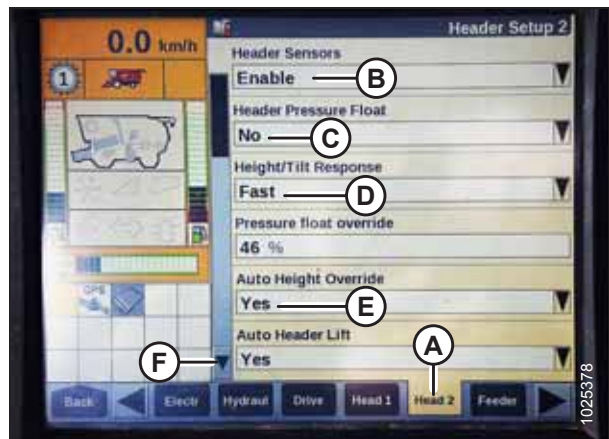


Figure 3.263: Case IH Combine Display

14. Locate HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY field (A), and set as follows:
  - **If using a single-sensor system:** Set HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY to 180.
  - **If using a two-sensor system:** Set HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY to 250.

**NOTE:**

If hunting occurs during operation, decrease this setting by 20 points at a time until hunting no longer occurs.

15. Set HHC TILT SENSITIVITY (B) to 150. Increase or decrease as desired.



Figure 3.264: Case IH Combine Display

## OPERATION

16. From the REEL HEIGHT SENSOR menu, select YES (A).



Figure 3.265: Case IH Combine Display

17. Locate AUTOTILT field (A).

- **If using a two-sensor system:** Select YES in the AUTOTILT field.
- **If using a single-sensor system:** Select NO in the AUTOTILT field.



Figure 3.266: Case IH Combine Display

### NOTE:

Icons (A) and (B) appear on the monitor only after engaging the separator and header, and then pressing HEADER RESUME button on the control panel.

18. Ensure AUTO HEIGHT icon (A) appears on the monitor and is displayed as shown at location (B). When the header is set for cutting on the ground, this verifies that the combine is correctly using the sensor on the header to sense ground pressure.

### NOTE:

AUTO HEIGHT field (B) may appear on any of the RUN tabs and not necessarily on the RUN 1 tab.



Figure 3.267: Case IH Combine Display

## OPERATION

19. Select CALIBRATION on the combine display, and press the right arrow navigation key to enter the information box.
20. Select HEADER (A), and press ENTER. The CALIBRATION dialog box opens.

**NOTE:**

You can use the up and down navigation keys to move between options.

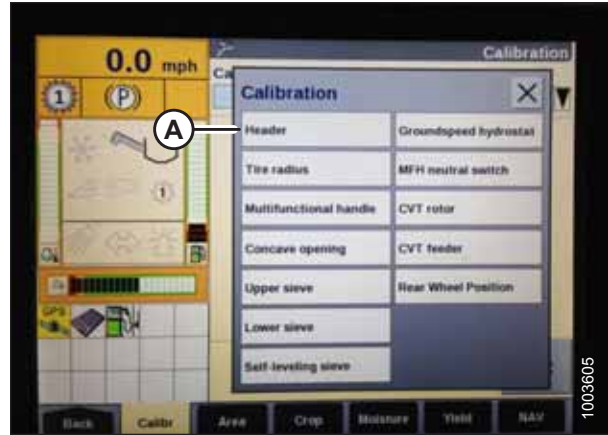


Figure 3.268: Case IH Combine Display

21. Follow the calibration steps in the order in which they appear in the dialog box. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.

**NOTE:**

Pressing the ESC key during any of the steps or letting the system sit idle for more than 3 minutes will cause the calibration procedure to stop.

**NOTE:**

Refer to your combine operator's manual for an explanation of any error codes.



Figure 3.269: Case IH Combine Display

22. When all steps have been completed, CALIBRATION SUCCESSFUL message is displayed on the page. Exit the CALIBRATION menu by pressing the ENTER or ESC key.

**NOTE:**

If float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

### Checking Reel Height Sensor Voltages – Case IH Combines

#### **WARNING**

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

## OPERATION

1. On the main page of the combine display, select DIAGNOSTICS (A). The DIAGNOSTICS page opens.

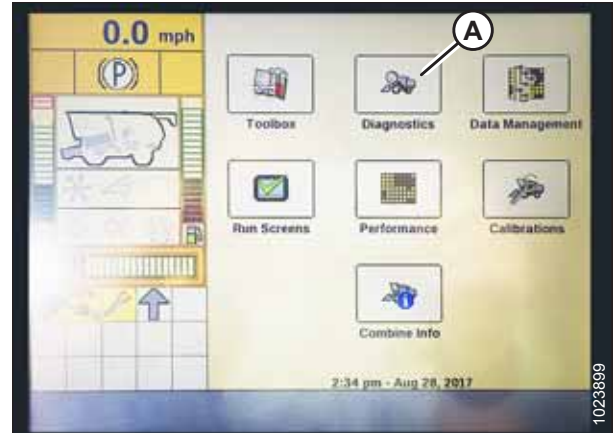


Figure 3.270: Case IH Combine Display

2. Select SETTINGS tab (A). The SETTINGS page opens.
3. From the GROUP menu, select HEADER (B).
4. From the PARAMETER menu, select REEL VERTICAL POSITION (C).



Figure 3.271: Case IH Combine Display

5. Select GRAPH tab (A). The REEL VERTICAL POSITION graph displays.
6. Lower the reel to view high voltage (B). The voltage should be 4.1–4.5 V.
7. Raise the reel to view low voltage (C). The voltage should be 0.5–0.9 V.
8. If either voltage is out of range, refer to *Checking and Adjusting Reel Height Sensor*, page 105.

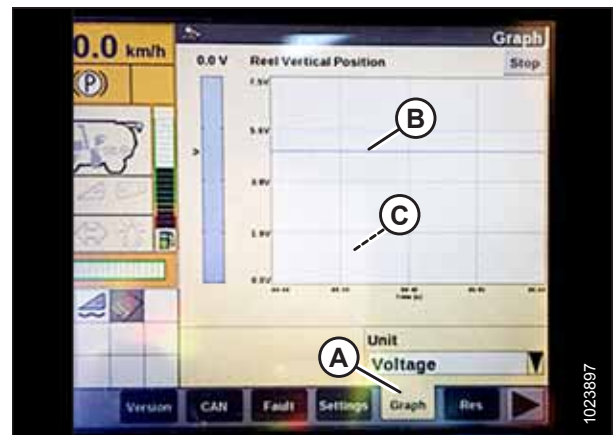


Figure 3.272: Case IH Combine Display

## OPERATION

### Setting Preset Cutting Height – Case IH, 120, 230, 240, and 250 Series Combines

To set the preset cutting height, follow these steps:

#### **WARNING**

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

#### **NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

#### **NOTE:**

Indicator (A) should be at position 0 (B) with the header 254–306 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground. When the header is on the ground, the indicator should be at position 1 (C) for low ground pressure, and at position 4 (D) for high ground pressure. Crop and soil conditions determine the amount of float to use. The ideal setting is as light as possible without header bouncing or missing crop. Operating with heavy settings prematurely wears the cutterbar wearplates.

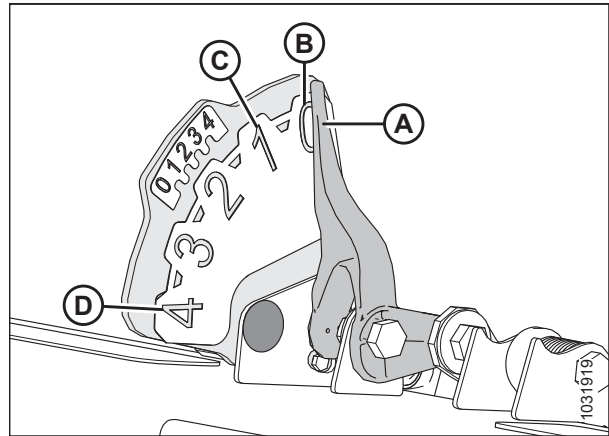


Figure 3.273: Float Indicator

1. Engage separator and header.
2. Manually raise or lower header to a desired cutting height.
3. Press SET #1 switch (A). Light (C) beside switch (A) will illuminate.

#### **NOTE:**

Use switch (E) for fine adjustments.

#### **NOTE:**

When setting presets, always set header position before setting reel position. If header and reel are set at the same time, the reel setting will not save.

4. Manually raise or lower the reel to the desired position.
5. Press SET #1 switch (A). Light (C) beside switch (A) will illuminate.
6. Manually raise or lower the header to a second desired cutting height.
7. Press SET #2 switch (B). Light (D) beside switch (B) will illuminate.
8. Manually raise or lower the reel to a second desired working position.
9. Press SET #2 switch (B). Light (D) beside switch (B) will illuminate.

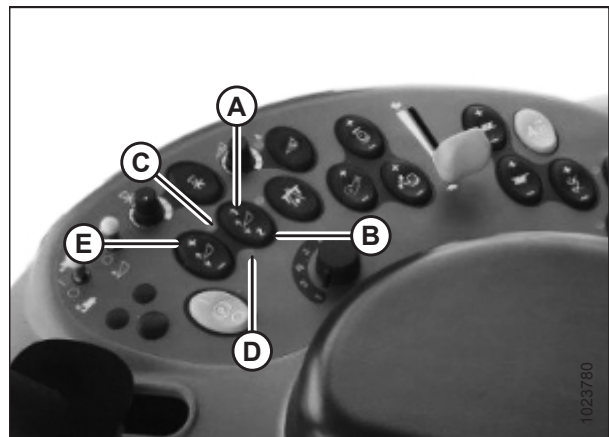


Figure 3.274: Case Combine Controls

## OPERATION

10. To swap between set points, press HEADER RESUME (A).
11. To raise header at headlands, press and hold SHIFT button (B) at the back of the control handle and press HEADER RESUME switch (A). To lower header, press HEADER RESUME switch (A) once to return to header preset height.

**NOTE:**

Pressing HEADER RAISE/LOWER switches (C) and (D) disengages AUTO HEIGHT mode. Press HEADER RESUME (A) to re-engage.



Figure 3.275: Case Combine Controls

### 3.8.9 Challenger and Massey Ferguson 6 and 7 Series Combines

#### Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – Challenger and Massey Ferguson



**WARNING**

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.
2. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

**NOTE:**

If the header is not on down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation, causing a malfunction of the auto header height control (AHHC) system. If the header is not on down stops, refer to [3.9 Leveling Header, page 294](#) for instructions.

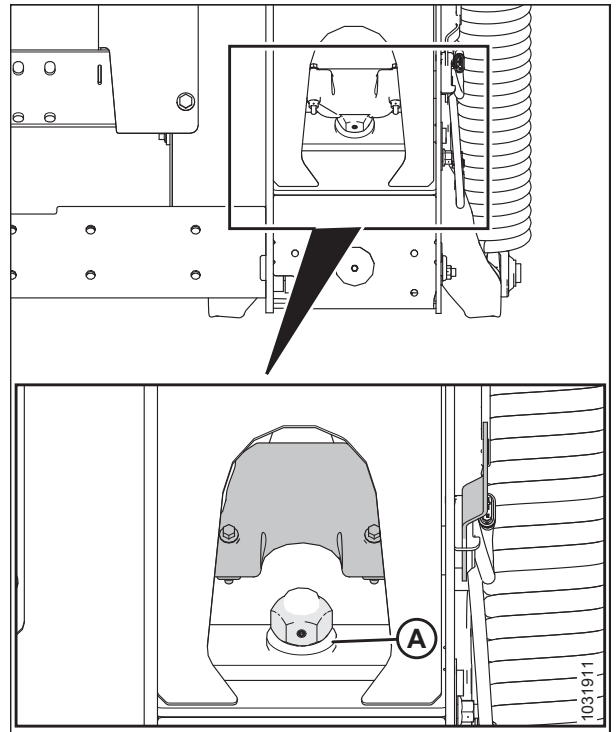


Figure 3.276: Float Lock

## OPERATION

- Loosen bolt (A) and slide float indicator plate (B) until pointer (C) is on 0 (D).
- Tighten bolt (A).

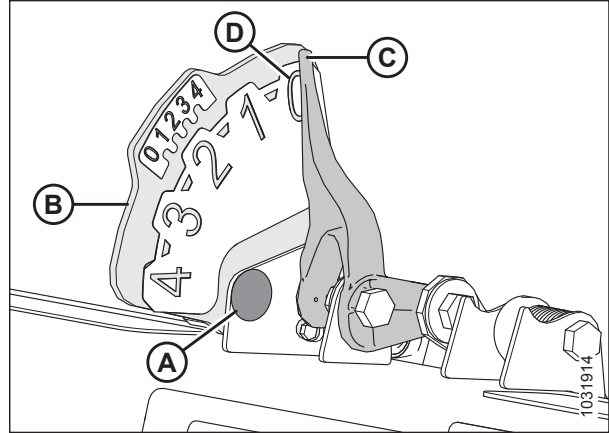


Figure 3.277: Float Indicator

- Go to the FIELD page on the combine monitor, and then press the diagnostics icon. The MISCELLANEOUS page displays.
- Press VMM DIAGNOSTIC button (A). The VMM DIAGNOSTIC page displays.

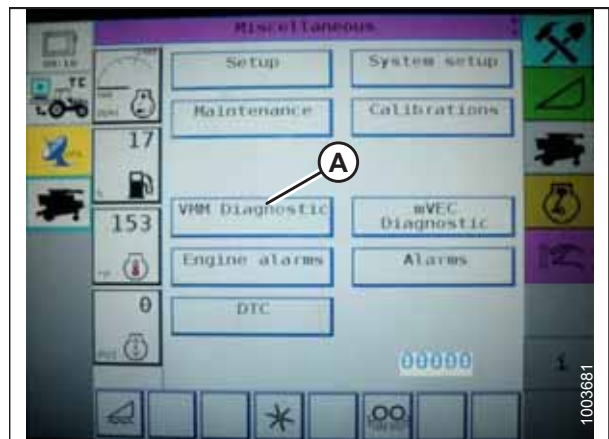


Figure 3.278: Challenger Combine Display

- Go to ANALOG IN tab (A), and then select VMM MODULE 3 by pressing the text box below the four tabs. The voltage from the AHC sensor is now displayed on page as HEADER HEIGHT RIGHT POT and HEADER HEIGHT LEFT POT. The readings may be slightly different.

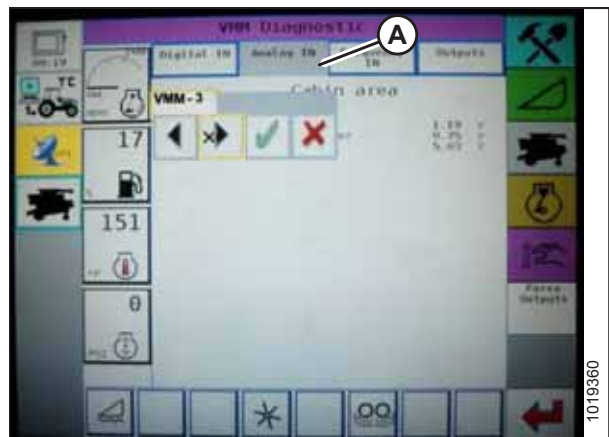


Figure 3.279: Challenger Combine Display



## OPERATION

- Fully lower the combine feeder house (float module should be fully separated from the header).

**NOTE:**

You may need to hold the HEADER DOWN switch for a few seconds to ensure the feeder house is fully lowered.

- Read voltage.
- Raise the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.
- Read voltage.
- If the sensor voltage is not within the low and high limits, or if the range between the low and high limits is insufficient, adjust the voltage limits. For instructions, refer to or [3.8.3 Checking Voltage Limits, page 137](#).



Figure 3.280: Challenger Combine Display

### Engaging the Auto Header Height Control – Challenger and Massey Ferguson

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator’s manual for updates.

The following system components are required in order for the auto header height control (AHC) to work:

- Main module (PCB board) and header driver module (PCB board) mounted in card box in fuse panel module (FP)
- Multifunction control handle operator inputs
- Operator inputs mounted in the control console module (CC) panel

**NOTE:**

In addition to the above components, the electrohydraulic header lift control valve is an integral part of the system.

Engage the AHC as follows:

- Scroll through the header control options on the combine display using the header control switch until AHC icon (A) is displayed in the first message box. The AHC will adjust the header height in relation to the ground according to the height setting and sensitivity setting.

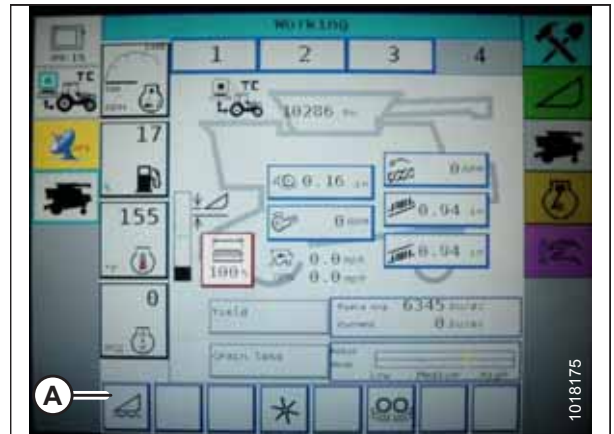


Figure 3.281: Challenger Combine Display

### Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – Challenger and Massey Ferguson



**WARNING**

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

## OPERATION

### NOTE:

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC) system, perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to *3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91*.

### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

### NOTE:

If the header float is set too light, it can prevent AHHC calibration. You may need to set the float heavier for the calibration procedure so the header doesn't separate from the float module.

1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
2. On the FIELD screen, press DIAGNOSTICS icon (A). The MISCELLANEOUS screen appears.



Figure 3.282: Challenger Combine Display

3. Press CALIBRATIONS button (A). The CALIBRATIONS screen appears.

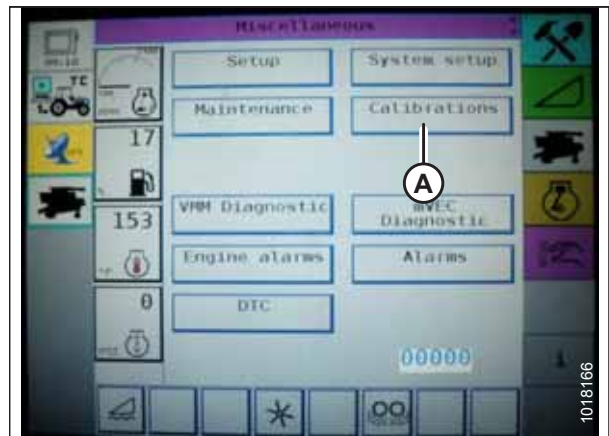


Figure 3.283: Challenger Combine Display

## OPERATION

4. Press HEADER button (A). The HEADER CALIBRATION screen displays a warning.

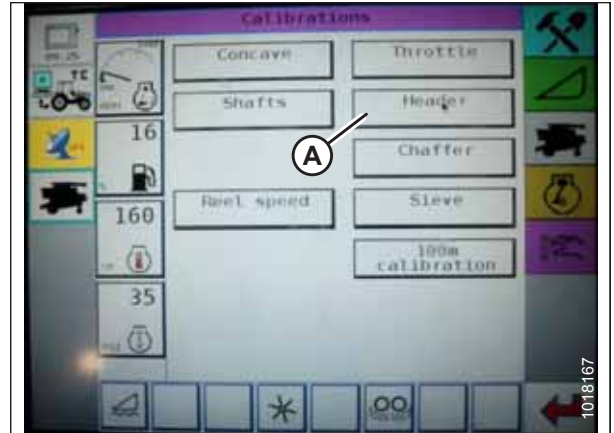


Figure 3.284: Challenger Combine Display

5. Read the warning message, and then press the green check mark button.



Figure 3.285: Challenger Combine Display

6. Follow the on-screen prompts to complete calibration.

### NOTE:

The calibration procedure can be canceled at any time by pressing the cancel button in the bottom right corner of the screen. While the header calibration is running, the calibration can also be canceled by using the UP, DOWN, TILT RIGHT, or TILT LEFT buttons on the control handle.

### NOTE:

If the combine does not have HEADER TILT installed or if it is inoperable, you may receive warnings during calibration. Press the green check mark if these warnings appear. This will not affect the AHHC calibration.

### NOTE:

If the float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to the recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

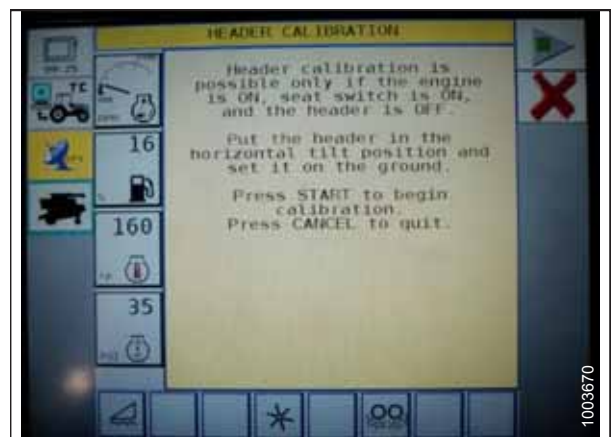


Figure 3.286: Challenger Combine Display

## OPERATION

### *Adjusting the Header Height – Challenger and Massey Ferguson*

Once the auto header height control (AHHC) is activated, press and release the HEADER LOWER button on the control handle. The AHHC will automatically lower the header to the selected height setting.

#### **WARNING**

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

#### **NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

You can adjust the selected AHHC height using HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT knob (A) on the control console. Turning the knob clockwise increases the selected height, and turning the knob counterclockwise decreases the selected height.



Figure 3.287: Height Adjustment Knob on the Combine Control Console

### *Adjusting the Header Raise/Lower Rate – Challenger and Massey Ferguson*

#### **NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. Press Header icon (A) on the FIELD screen. The HEADER screen displays.

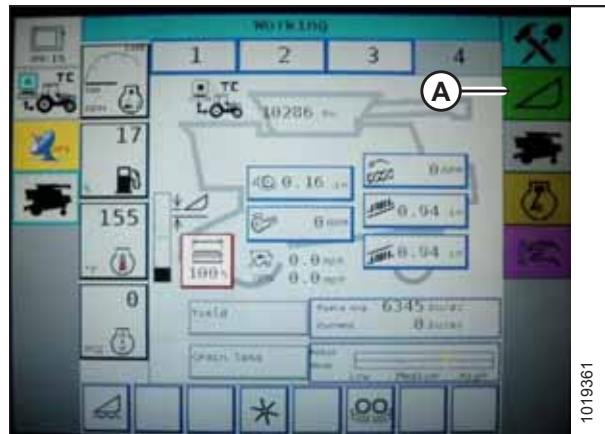


Figure 3.288: Challenger Combine Display

## OPERATION

2. Press HEADER CONTROL (A). The HEADER CONTROL screen displays.

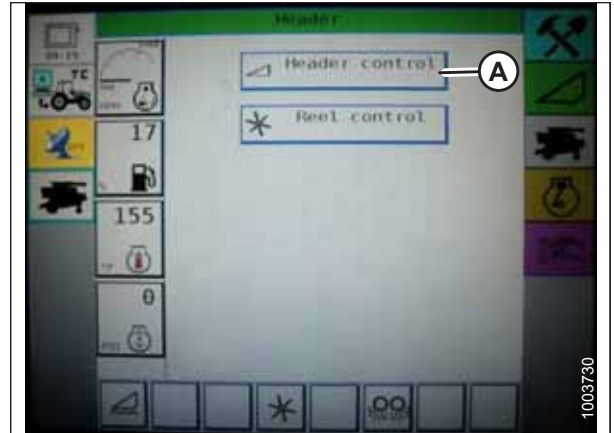


Figure 3.289: Challenger Combine Display

3. Go to the TABLE SETTINGS tab.
4. Press up arrow on MAX UP PWM to increase percentage number and increase raise speed. Press down arrow on MAX UP PWM to decrease percentage number and decrease raise speed.
5. Press up arrow on MAX DOWN PWM to increase percentage number and increase lower speed. Press down arrow on MAX DOWN PWM to decrease percentage number and decrease lower speed.

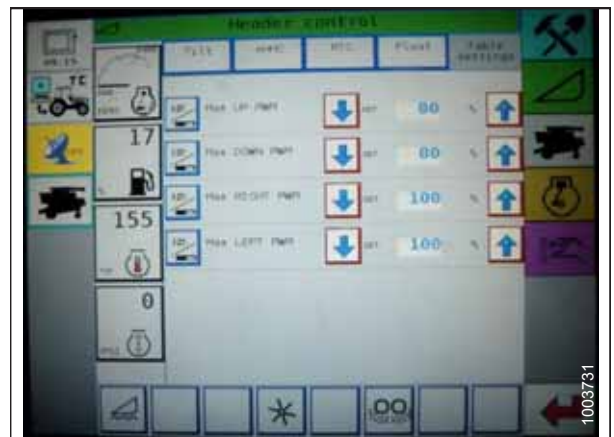


Figure 3.290: Challenger Combine Display

### *Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control – Challenger and Massey Ferguson*

The sensitivity adjustment controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house. When the sensitivity is set to maximum, only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. When the sensitivity is set to minimum, large changes in the ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower.

### **WARNING**

**Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.**

#### **NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. Press the HEADER icon on the FIELD screen. The HEADER screen appears.

## OPERATION

2. Press HEADER CONTROL button (A). The HEADER CONTROL screen appears. You can adjust sensitivity on this screen using the up and down arrows.



Figure 3.291: Challenger Combine Display

3. Adjust the sensitivity to the maximum setting.
4. Activate the AHHC, and press the HEADER LOWER button on the control handle.
5. Decrease the sensitivity until the feeder house remains steady and does not bounce up and down.

### NOTE:

This is the maximum sensitivity and is only an initial setting. The final setting must be made in the field, as the system reaction will vary with changing surfaces and operating conditions.

### NOTE:

If maximum sensitivity is not needed, a less sensitive setting will reduce the frequency of header height corrections and component wear. Partially opening the accumulator valve will cushion the action of the header lift cylinders and reduce header hunting.



Figure 3.292: Challenger Combine Display

## 3.8.10 CLAAS 500 Series Combines

### Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – CLAAS 500 Series

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91](#).

### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

### NOTE:

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.

1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.

## OPERATION

- Use < key (A) or > key (B) to select AUTO HEADER, and press OK key (C). The E5 screen displays whether the automatic header height is on or off.

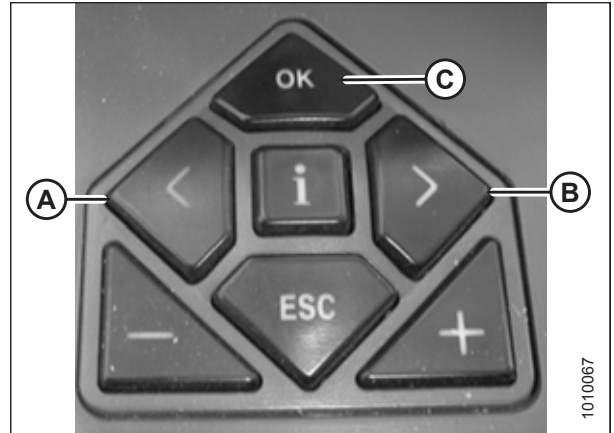


Figure 3.293: CLAAS Combine Controls

- Use - key (A) or + key (B) to turn the AHHC on, and press OK key (C).
- Engage the threshing mechanism and the header.

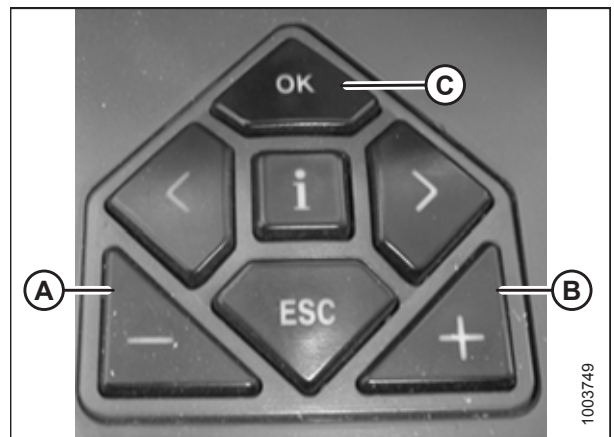


Figure 3.294: CLAAS Combine Controls

- Use the < or > key to select CUTT. HEIGHT LIMITS, and press the combine controls OK key.
- Follow the procedure displayed on the screen to program the upper and lower limits of the header into the CEBIS.

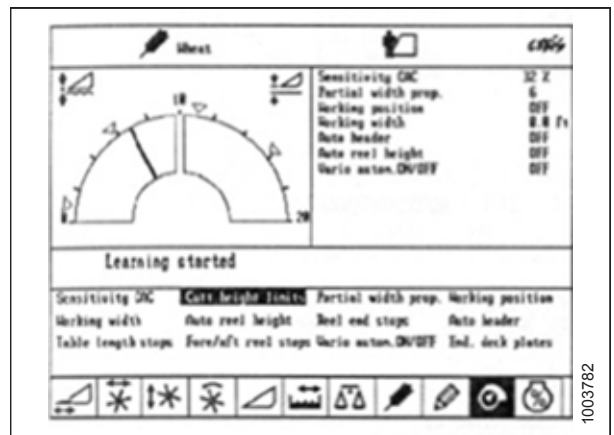


Figure 3.295: CLAAS Combine Display

## OPERATION

- Use the < or > key to select SENSITIVITY CAC, and press the combine controls OK key.

**NOTE:**

Setting the sensitivity of the AHHC system affects the reaction speed of the AHHC on the header.

- Use the – key or the + key to change the setting of the reaction speed, and press the combine controls OK key.

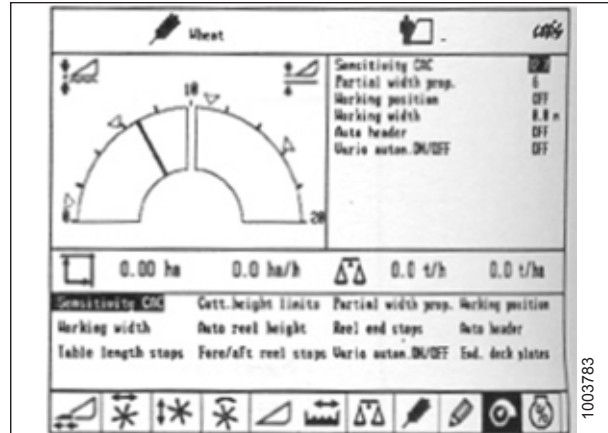


Figure 3.296: CLAAS Combine Display

- Use line (A) or value (B) to determine the sensitivity setting.

**NOTE:**

The setting can be adjusted from 0–100%. When sensitivity is adjusted to 0%, the signals from the sensing bands have no effect on the automatic cutting height adjustment. When sensitivity is adjusted to 100%, the signals from the sensing bands have maximum effect on the automatic cutting height adjustment. The recommended starting point is 50%.

**NOTE:**

If float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

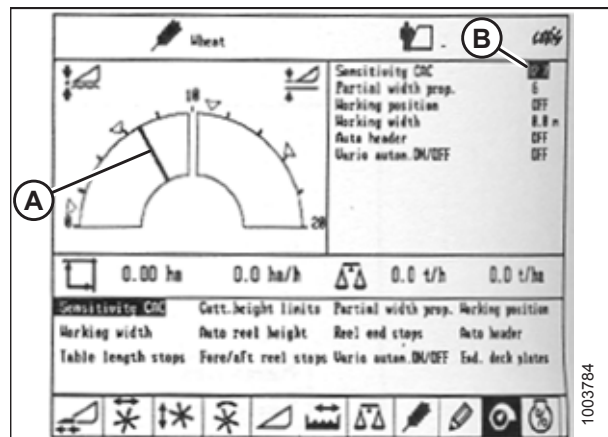


Figure 3.297: CLAAS Combine Display

### Setting Cutting Height – CLAAS 500 Series

Cutting heights can be programmed into the preset cutting height and auto contour systems. Use the preset cutting height system for cutting heights above 150 mm (6 in.), and use the auto contour system for cutting heights below 150 mm (6 in.).

#### Setting Preset Cutting Height – CLAAS 500 Series

### DANGER

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator’s manual for updates.

- Start the engine.
- Activate the machine enable switch.
- Engage the threshing mechanism.
- Engage the header.



## OPERATION

5. Briefly press button (A) in order to activate the auto contour system, or briefly press button (B) in order to activate the preset cutting height system.

**NOTE:**

Button (A) is used only with auto header height control (AHHC) function. Button (B) is used only with the return to cut function.



Figure 3.298: Control Handle Buttons

6. Use < key (C) or > key (D) to select the CUTTING HEIGHT screen, and press OK key (E).
7. Use – key (A) or + key (B) to set the desired cutting height. An arrow indicates the selected cutting height on the scale.

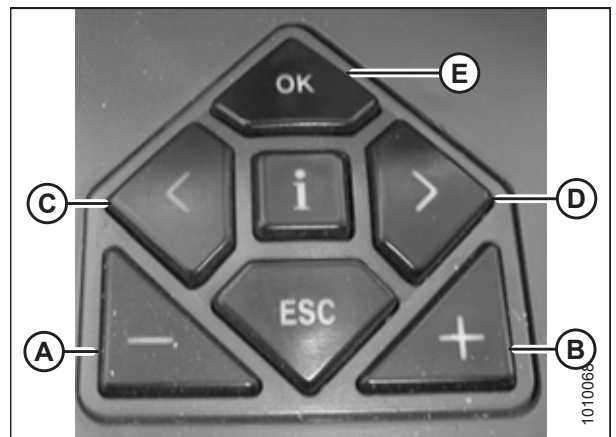


Figure 3.299: CLAAS Combine Controls

8. Briefly press button (A) or button (B) in order to select the set point.
9. Repeat Step 7, page 185 for the set point.



Figure 3.300: Control Handle Buttons

## OPERATION

### Setting Cutting Height Manually – CLAAS 500 Series

#### DANGER

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

#### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. Use button (A) to raise the header, or button (B) to lower the header to the desired cutting height.
2. Press and hold button (C) for 3 seconds to store the cutting height into the CEBIS (an alarm will sound when the new setting has been stored).
3. Program a second set point, if desired, by using button (A) to raise the header, or button (B) to lower the header to the desired cutting height, and briefly press button (C) to store the second set point into the CEBIS (an alarm will sound when the new setting has been stored).

#### NOTE:

For above-the-ground cutting, repeat Step 1, [page 186](#), and use button (D) instead of button (C) while repeating Step 2, [page 186](#).



Figure 3.301: Control Handle Buttons

### Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control – CLAAS 500 Series

The sensitivity adjustment controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house. When the sensitivity is set to maximum, only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. When the sensitivity is set to minimum, large changes in the ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower.

#### NOTE:

The upper and lower limits of the header must be programmed into the CEBIS before adjusting the sensitivity of the AHHC system. The setting can be adjusted from 0–100%. When sensitivity is adjusted to 0%, the signals from the sensing bands have no effect on the automatic cutting height adjustment. When sensitivity is adjusted to 100%, the signals from the sensing bands have maximum effect on the automatic cutting height adjustment. The recommended starting point is 50%.

#### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

## OPERATION

1. Use < key (C) or > key (D) to select SENSITIVITY CAC, and press OK key (E).
2. Use – key (A) or + (B) key to change the reaction speed setting, and press OK key (E).

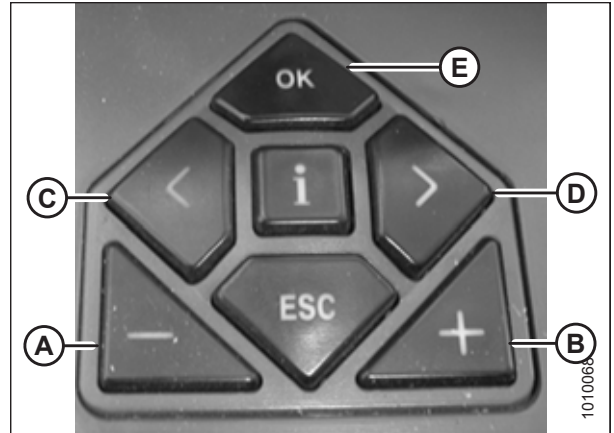


Figure 3.302: CLAAS Combine Controls

3. Use line (A) or value (B) to determine the sensitivity setting.

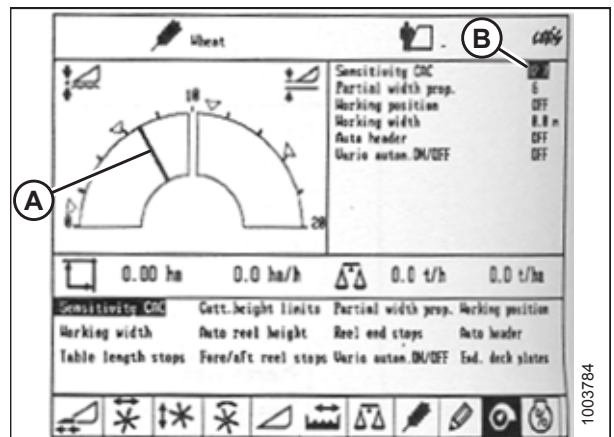
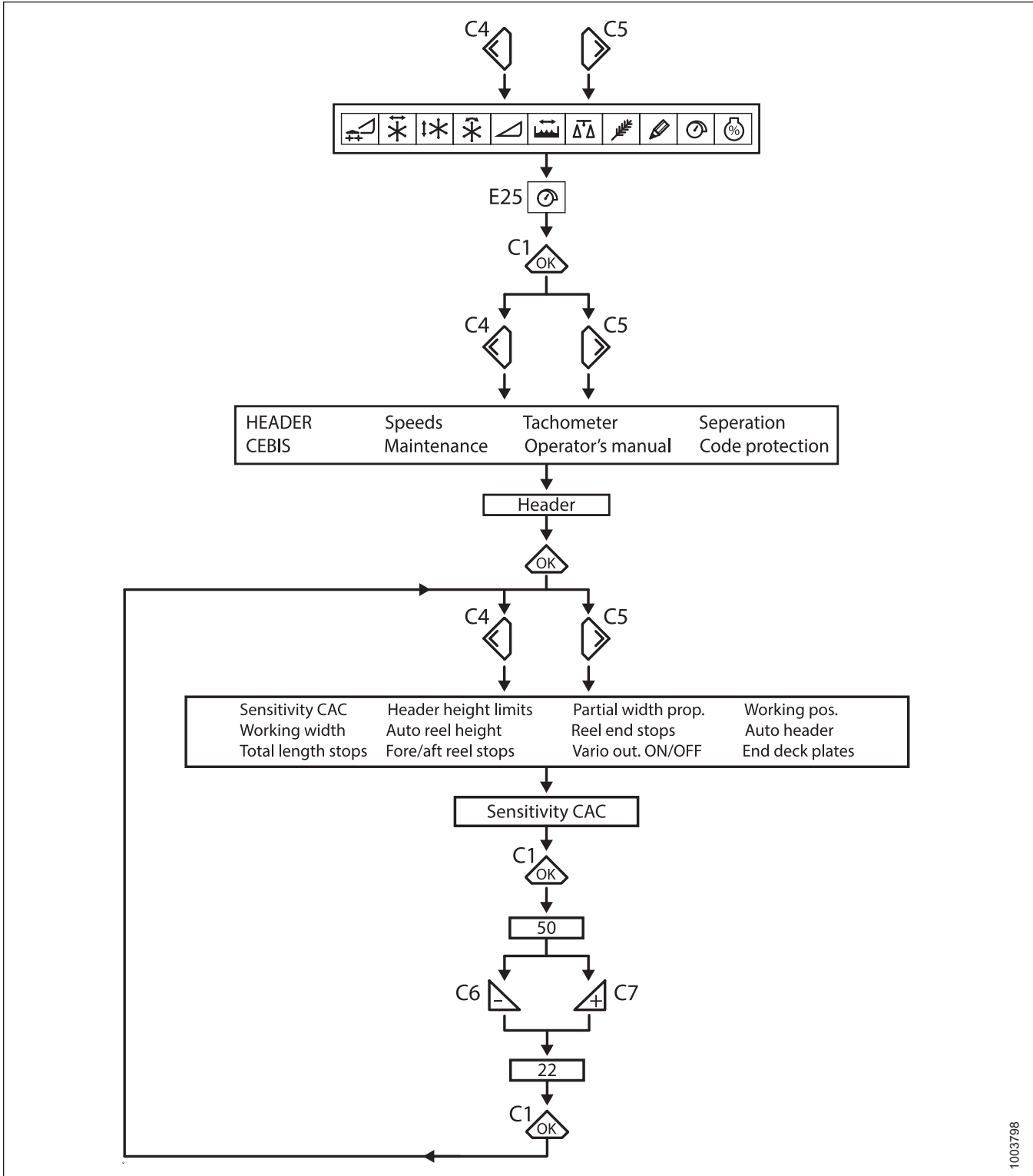


Figure 3.303: CLAAS Combine Display

OPERATION



1003798

## OPERATION

### Adjusting Auto Reel Speed – CLAAS 500 Series

The preset reel speed can be set when the automatic header functions are activated.

#### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. Use the < or > key to select REEL WINDOW. Window E15 will display the current advance or retard speed of the reel in relation to the ground speed.

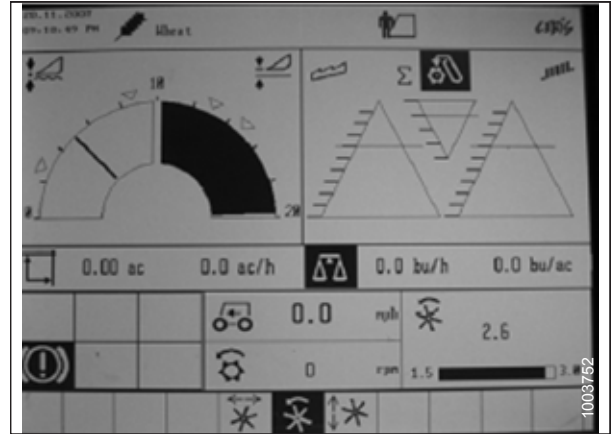


Figure 3.305: CLAAS Combine Display

2. Press OK key (C) to open the REEL SPEED window.
3. Use – key (A) or + key (B) to set the reel speed in relation to the current ground speed. Window E15 will display the selected reel speed.

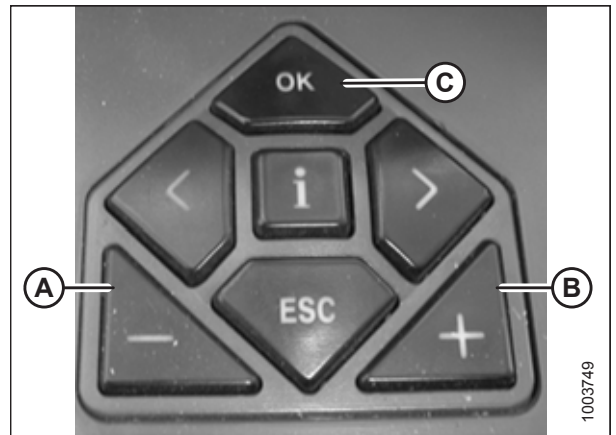


Figure 3.306: CLAAS Combine Controls

4. Manually adjust the reel speed by rotating the rotary switch to reel position (A), and then use the – or + key to set the reel speed.



Figure 3.307: CLAAS Combine Rotary Switch

## OPERATION

- Press and hold button (A) or button (B) for 3 seconds to store the setting into the CEBIS (an alarm will sound when the new setting has been stored).

**NOTE:**

Whenever button (A) or button (B) is pressed for 3 seconds, the current positions for reel speed and cutting height are stored.



Figure 3.308: CLAAS Control Handle Buttons

- Use the < or > key to select the REEL WINDOW. Window E15 will display the current advance or retard speed of the reel in relation to the ground speed.



Figure 3.309: CLAAS Combine Display

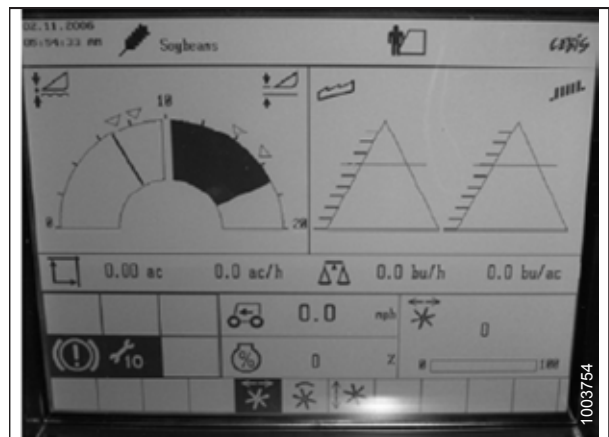


Figure 3.310: CLAAS Combine Display

## OPERATION

7. Press OK key (E), and use < key (C) or > key (D) to select the REEL FORE AND AFT window.
8. Use – key (A) or + key (B) to set the reel fore-aft position.

**NOTE:**

Control handle button (A) or button (B) (as shown in Figure 3.312, page 191) can also be used to set the reel fore-aft position.

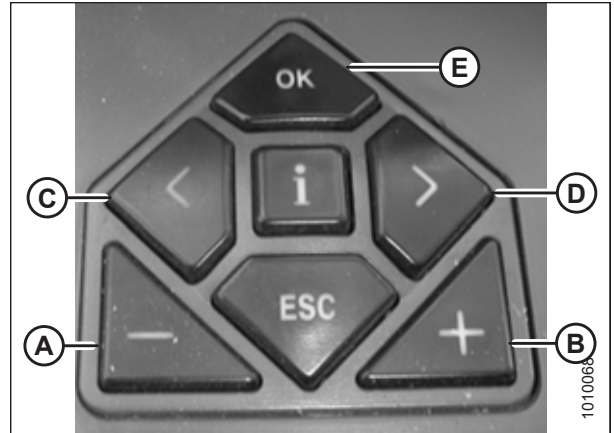


Figure 3.311: CLAAS Combine Controls

9. Press and hold button (A) or button (B) for 3 seconds to store the setting into the CEBIS (an alarm will sound when the new setting has been stored).

**NOTE:**

Whenever button (A) or button (B) is pressed for 3 seconds, the current positions for reel speed and cutting height are stored.



Figure 3.312: CLAAS Control Handle Buttons

### 3.8.11 CLAAS 600 and 700 Series Combines

#### *Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series*

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91](#).

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

**NOTE:**

If header float is set too light, it can prevent AHHC calibration. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.

1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
2. Ensure that the header float is unlocked.
3. Place wings in locked position.

## OPERATION

- Use control knob (A) to highlight AUTO CONTOUR icon (B) and press control knob (A) to select it.

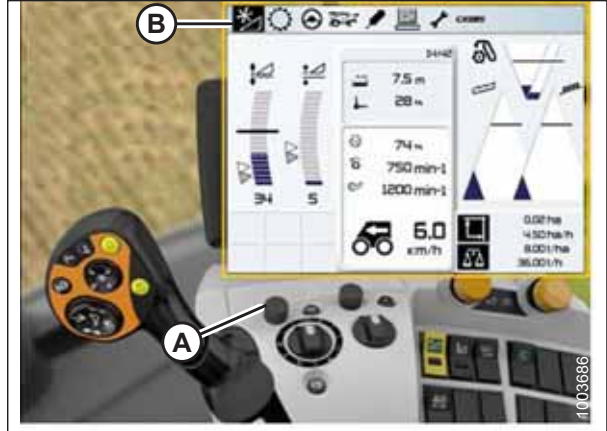


Figure 3.313: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

- Use control knob (A) to highlight the icon that resembles a header with up and down arrows (not shown), and press control knob (A) to select it. Highlighted header icon (B) will be displayed on the screen.



Figure 3.314: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

- Use control knob (A) to highlight the icon that resembles a header with up and down arrows (B), and press control knob (A) to select it.



Figure 3.315: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle



## OPERATION

7. Use control knob (A) to highlight the icon that resembles a screwdriver (B).
8. Engage the combine separator and feeder house.
9. Press control knob (A) and a progress bar will appear.



Figure 3.316: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

10. Fully raise the feeder house. Progress bar (A) will advance to 25%.
11. Fully lower the feeder house. Progress bar (A) will advance to 50%.
12. Fully raise the feeder house. Progress bar (A) will advance to 75%.
13. Fully lower the feeder house. Progress bar (A) will advance to 100%.



Figure 3.317: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

14. Ensure progress bar (A) displays 100%. The calibration procedure is now complete.

**NOTE:**

If the voltage is not within the range of 0.5–4.5 V at any time throughout the calibration process, the monitor will indicate learning procedure not concluded.

**NOTE:**

If float was set heavier to complete ground calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.



Figure 3.318: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

*Setting Cutting Height – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series*



Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator’s manual for updates.

1. Lower the header to desired cutting height or ground pressure setting. The float indicator box should be set to 1.5.
2. Hold the left side of header raise and lower switch (A) until you hear a ping.

**NOTE:**

You can set two different cutting heights.



Figure 3.319: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

*Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series*

The sensitivity adjustment controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house. When the sensitivity is set to maximum, only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. When the sensitivity is set to minimum, large changes in the ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower.

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator’s manual for updates.

1. Use control knob (A) to highlight HEADER/REEL icon (B), and press control knob (A) to select it. The HEADER/REEL dialog box opens.
2. Select HEADER icon.

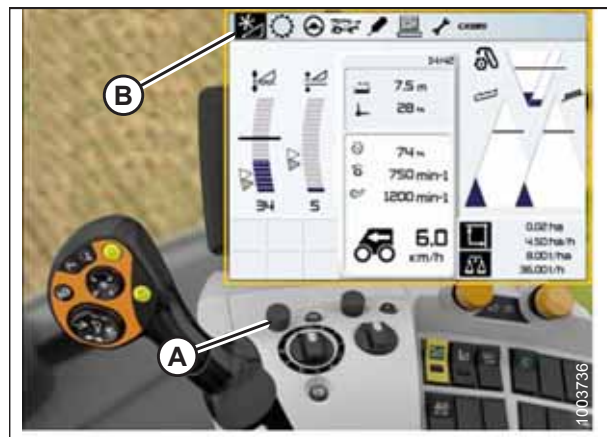


Figure 3.320: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

## OPERATION

3. Select FRONT ATTACHMENT PARAMETER SETTINGS icon (A). A list of settings appears.
4. Select SENSITIVITY CAC (B) from the list.



Figure 3.321: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

5. Select SENSITIVITY CAC icon (A).

**NOTE:**

To set the sensitivity, you will have to change CUTTING HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT (B) from the 0 default. The settings from 1–50 provide a faster response, whereas the settings from -1 to -50 provide a slower response. For best results, make adjustments in increments of 5.

6. If the reaction time between the header and the float module is too slow while cutting on the ground, increase the CUTTING HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT setting. If the reaction time between the header and the float module is too fast, decrease the CUTTING HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT setting.
7. If the header is lowered too slowly, increase the sensitivity. If the header hits the ground too hard or is lowered too quickly, decrease the sensitivity.



Figure 3.322: CLAAS Combine Display

### *Adjusting Auto Reel Speed – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series*

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

## OPERATION

1. Use control knob (A) to highlight HEADER/REEL icon (B), and press control knob (A) to select it. The HEADER/REEL dialog box opens.

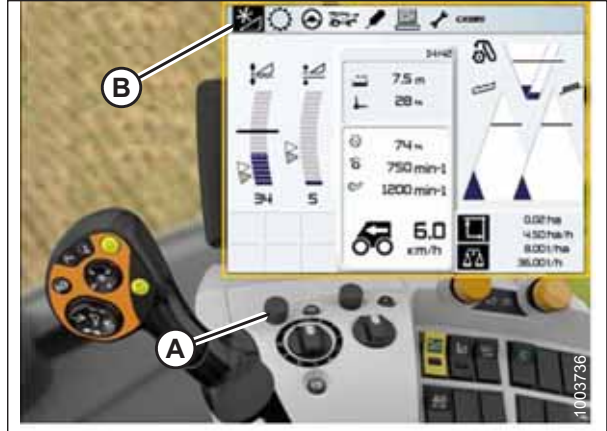


Figure 3.323: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

2. Use control knob (A) to select REEL SPEED (B), and adjust the reel speed (if you are **NOT** using Auto Reel Speed). A graph displays in the dialog box.



Figure 3.324: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

3. Select ACTUAL VALUE (A) from the AUTO REEL SPEED dialog box (if you are using Auto Reel Speed). The ACTUAL VALUE dialog box indicates the auto reel speed.



Figure 3.325: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

## OPERATION

4. Use control knob (A) to raise or lower the reel speed.

**NOTE:**

This option is only available at full throttle.



Figure 3.326: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

### Calibrating Reel Height Sensor – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

To calibrate reel height, follow these steps:

1. Position the header until it is 254–306 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground.

**IMPORTANT:**

Do **NOT** turn off the engine. The combine has to be at full idle for the sensors to calibrate properly.

2. Use control knob (A) to highlight FRONT ATTACHMENT icon (B) and press control knob (A) to select it.



Figure 3.327: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

## OPERATION

- Use control knob (A) to highlight REEL icon (B), and press control knob (A) to select it.

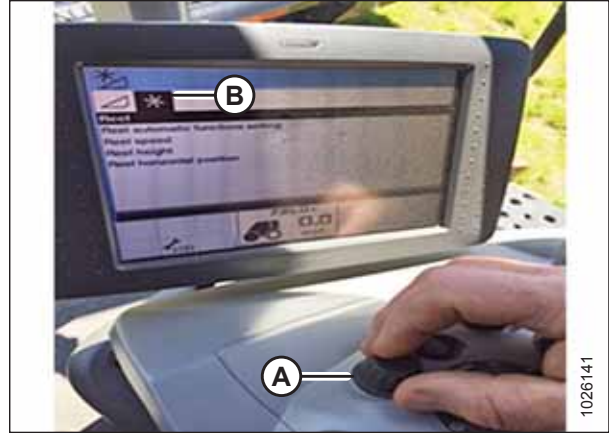


Figure 3.328: CLAAS Combine Display and Console

- Highlight REEL HEIGHT icon (A), and press control knob to select it.
- Select LEARNING END STOPS (B) from the list.



Figure 3.329: CLAAS Combine Display and Console

- Use control knob (A) to highlight screwdriver icon (B).



Figure 3.330: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

## OPERATION

7. Press control knob and a progress bar chart (A) will appear.
8. Follow the prompts on the screen to raise the reel.
9. Follow the prompts on the screen to lower the reel.



Figure 3.331: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

10. Ensure progress bar chart displays 100% (A). The calibration procedure is now complete.



Figure 3.332: CLAAS Combine Display, Console, and Control Handle

## OPERATION

### Adjusting Auto Reel Height – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series

#### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

To adjust the auto reel height, follow these steps:

1. Use HOTKEY rotary dial (A) to select REEL icon (B).

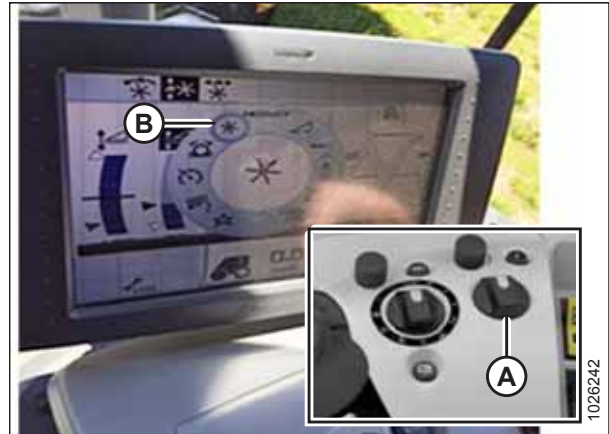


Figure 3.333: CLAAS Combine Display and Console

2. Use control knob (A) to select AUTO REEL HEIGHT icon (B) at the top of the page.

#### NOTE:

AUTO REEL HEIGHT icon (C) at the center of the page should be highlighted black. If it is not black, either the end stops have not been set or the AHHC is not active. For instructions, refer to [Calibrating Reel Height Sensor – CLAAS 600 and 700 Series, page 197](#).

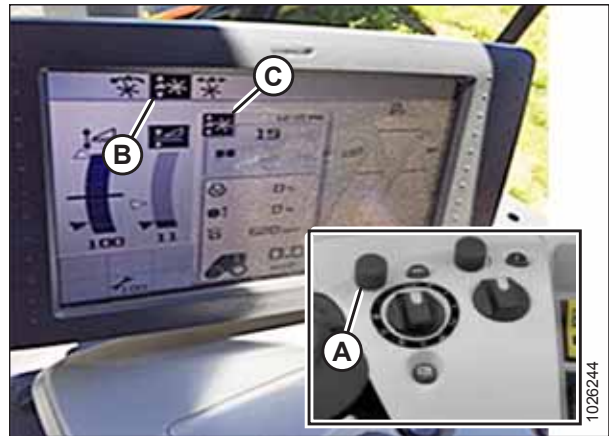


Figure 3.334: CLAAS Combine Display and Console

3. Adjust the auto reel height position for the current AHHC position using outer scroll knob (A). To lower the preset reel position, turn the scroll knob counterclockwise; to raise the preset reel position, turn the scroll knob clockwise. The display will update current setting (B).

#### NOTE:

If the AUTO REEL HEIGHT icon in the center of the page is not black, an AHHC position is not currently active.

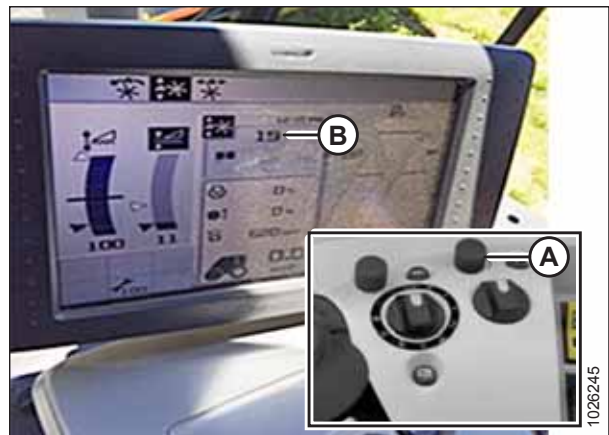


Figure 3.335: CLAAS Combine Display and Console



### 3.8.12 CLAAS 7000/8000 Series Combines

#### Setting up the Header – CLAAS 7000/8000 Series

Follow these steps to setup a MacDon header:

#### WARNING

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

#### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. From the main page, select FRONT ATTACHMENT (A).



Figure 3.336: CEBIS Main Page

2. From the drop down list, select FRONT ATTACHMENT PARAMETERS (A).



Figure 3.337: Front Attachment Page

## OPERATION

- From the Front Attachment Parameters page, select FRONT ATTACHMENT TYPE (A).
- From the drop down list, select FLEX CUTTERBAR PRODUCT BY OTHER MANUFACTURER (B).



Figure 3.338: Attachment Parameters Page

- From the Front Attachment Parameters page, select WORKING WIDTH (A).
- Set header width by sliding adjuster arrow (B) up or down.
- Select check mark (C) to save settings.

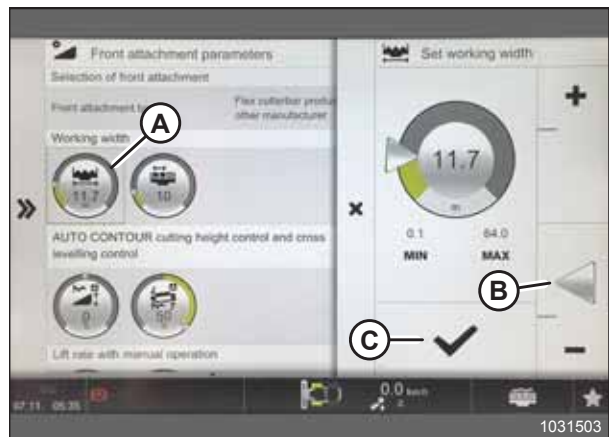


Figure 3.339: Attachment Parameters Page

### Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – CLAAS 7000/8000 Series

#### **WARNING**

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

#### **NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

## OPERATION

1. From the main page, select FRONT ATTACHMENT (A).



Figure 3.340: CEBIS Main Page

2. Select LEARNING PROCEDURES (A) from the menu.
3. SELECT FRONT ATTACHMENT HEIGHT (B).

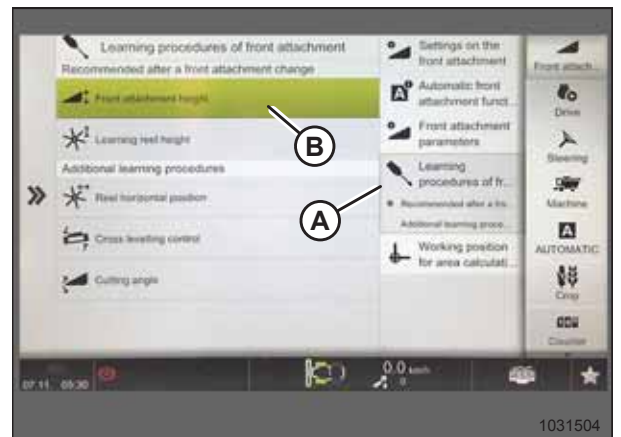


Figure 3.341: Learning Procedures Page

4. Follow the prompts that appear in Description and Notes fields (A).

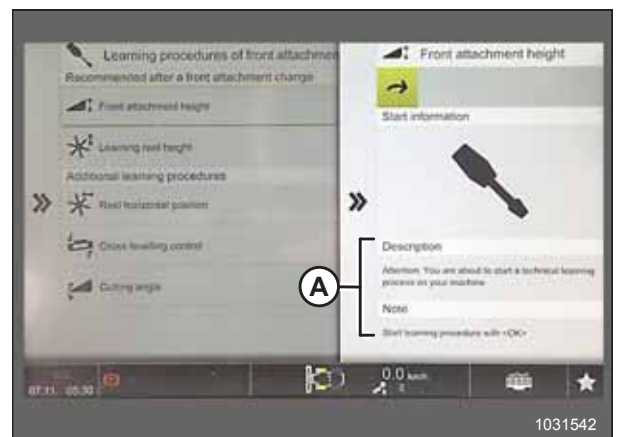


Figure 3.342: Front Attachment Height Page

## OPERATION

- When prompted, select OK button (A) to start the learning procedure.



Figure 3.343: Operator Controls

- When prompted, raise front attachment with button (A) on the multifunction lever.
- When prompted, lower front attachment with button (B) on multifunction lever.
- Repeat as prompted until calibration is complete.



Figure 3.344: Multifunction Lever

*Setting Cut and Reel Height Preset – CLAAS 7000/8000 Series*

**⚠ WARNING**

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. Set desired cutting height with feederhouse raise/lower buttons (A) on the multifunction lever.
2. Set desired reel position with buttons (B).
3. Press and hold AUTO HEIGHT PRESET button (C) to store settings.



Figure 3.345: Multifunction Lever

A triangle (A) appears on the header height gauge indicating the preset level.



Figure 3.346: CEBIS Main Page

*Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control – CLAAS 7000/8000 Series*

**⚠ WARNING**

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

## OPERATION

1. From the main page, select FRONT ATTACHMENT (A).



Figure 3.347: CEBIS Main Page

2. From the drop down list, select FRONT ATTACHMENT PARAMETERS (A).



Figure 3.348: Front Attachment Parameters Page

3. Scroll through the list and select DROP RATE WITH AUTO CONTOUR icon (A).
4. Adjust the drop rate by sliding adjuster arrow (B) up or down.
5. Select check mark (C) to confirm settings.



Figure 3.349: Drop Rate with Auto Contour Page

### Adjusting Auto Reel Speed – CLAAS 7000/8000 Series

#### **WARNING**

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

## OPERATION

### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. From the main page, select FRONT ATTACHMENT (A).



Figure 3.350: CEBIS Main Page

2. From the list, select SETTINGS ON FRONT ATTACHMENT (A).
3. Select REEL TARGET VALUES (B).
4. Select REEL SPEED ADJUST icon (C).



Figure 3.351: Settings on Front Attachment Page

5. Adjust the reel speed target value by sliding adjuster arrow (A) up or down.
6. Select check mark (B) to save setting.



Figure 3.352: Reel Speed Target Value Page

Calibrating Reel Height Sensor – CLAAS 7000/8000 Series

**WARNING**

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator’s manual for updates.

1. Position the header until it is 254–306 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground.

**NOTE:**

Do **NOT** turn off the engine. The combine has to be at full idle for the sensors to calibrate properly.

2. From the main page, select FRONT ATTACHMENT (A).



Figure 3.353: CEBIS Main Page

3. Select LEARNING PROCEDURES FOR FRONT ATTACHMENT (A).
4. Select LEARNING REEL HEIGHT (B).

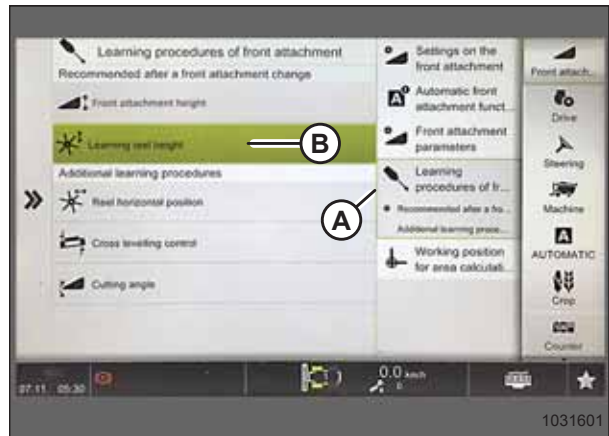


Figure 3.354: Front Attachment Page



## OPERATION

5. Follow the prompts that appear in Description and Notes fields (A).

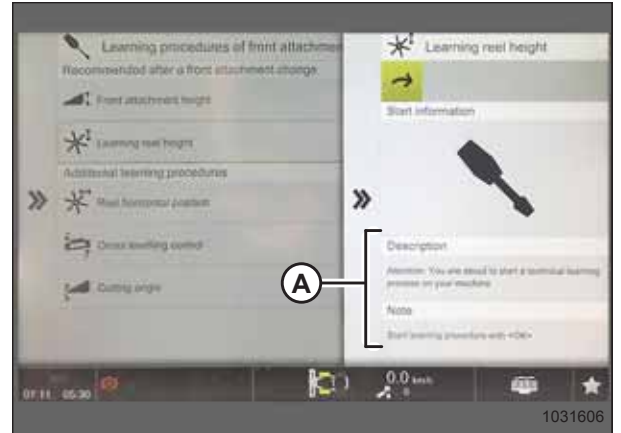


Figure 3.355: Learning Reel Height Page

6. When prompted, select OK button (A) to start the learning procedure.



Figure 3.356: Operator Controls

### 3.8.13 Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and S Series Combines

#### Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator’s manual for updates.

1. Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.
2. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

**NOTE:**

If the header is not on down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the auto header height control (AHHC) system. If the header is not on down stops, refer to [3.9 Leveling Header, page 294](#) for instructions.

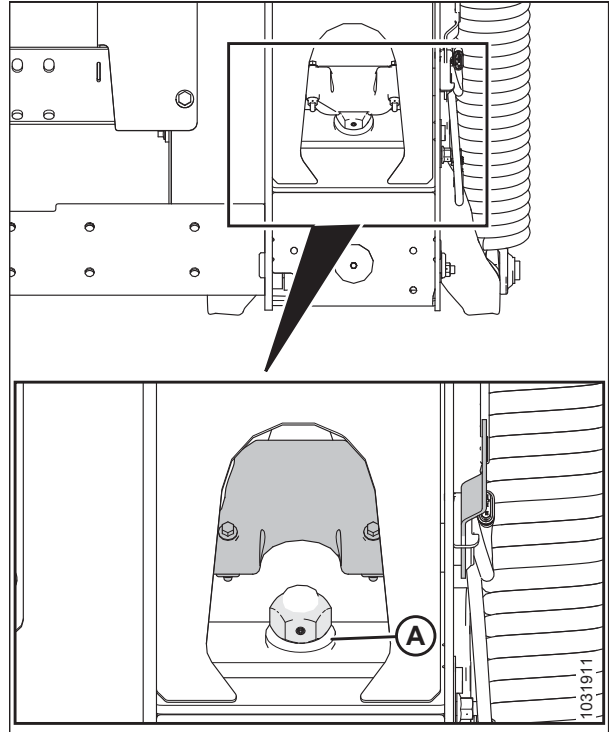


Figure 3.357: Float Lock

3. If pointer is not on zero, loosen bolt (A) and slide float indicator plate (B) until pointer (C) is on 0 (D).
4. Tighten bolt (A).

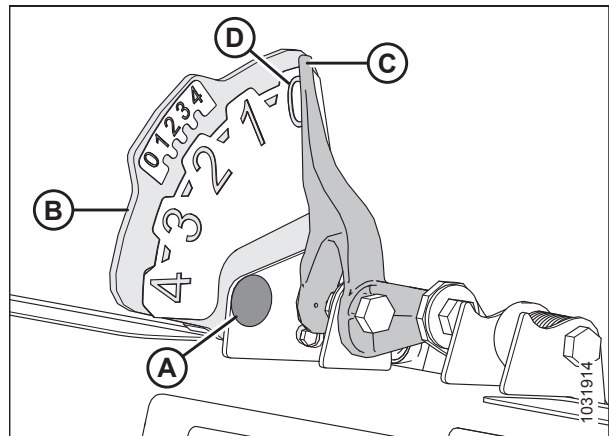
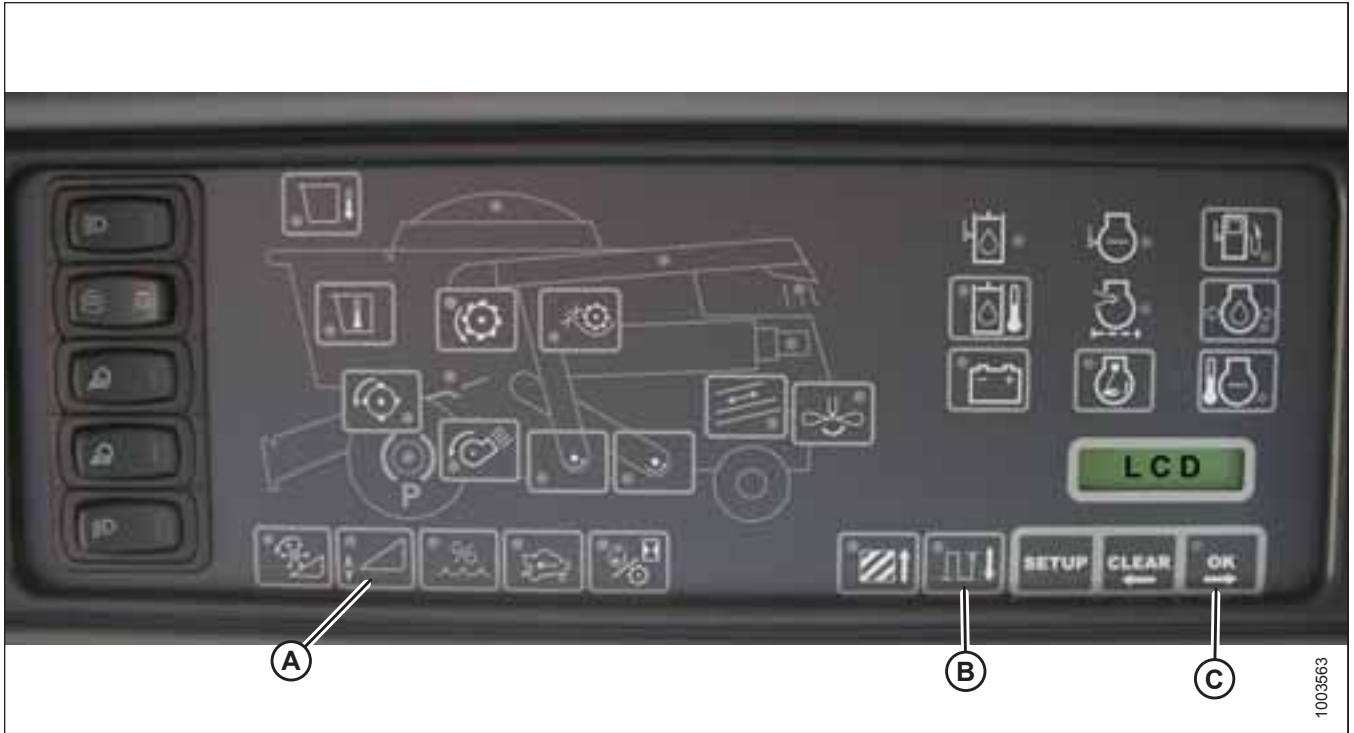


Figure 3.358: Float Indicator



**Figure 3.359: Combine Heads-Up Display**

5. Ensure header float is unlocked.
6. Press and hold button (A) on the heads-up display for 3 seconds to enter diagnostic mode.
7. Scroll down using button (B) until LEFT is displayed on the LCD screen.
8. Press OK button (C). The number indicated on the LCD screen is the voltage reading from the sensor of the auto header height control (AHHC). Raise and lower the header to see the full range of voltage readings.

*Engaging the Auto Header Height Control – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series*

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

The following system components are required in order for the auto header height control (AHHC) to work:

- Main module and header driver module mounted in card box in fuse panel (FP) module.
- Multifunction control handle operator inputs.
- Operator inputs mounted in the control console (CC) module panel.

**NOTE:**

In addition to the above components, the electrohydraulic header lift control valve is an integral part of the system.

## OPERATION



1003579

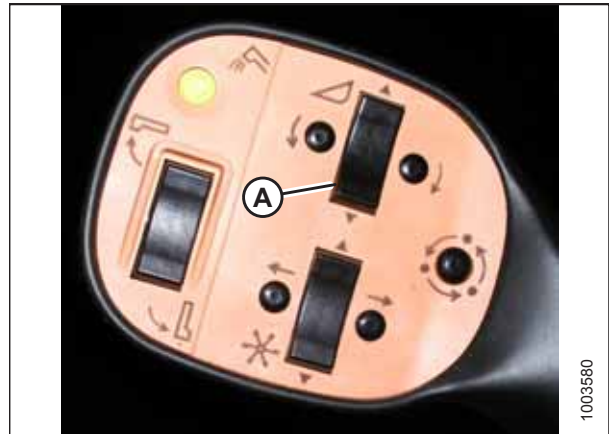
**Figure 3.360: Combine Auto Header Height Controls**

1. Press AUTO MODE button (A) until AHHC LED light (B) begins flashing. If the RTC light is flashing, press AUTO MODE button (A) again until it switches to AHHC.

### **WARNING**

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

2. Briefly press button (A) on the control handle. The AHHC light should change from flashing to solid. The header also should drop toward the ground. The AHHC is now engaged and can be adjusted for height and sensitivity.
3. Use controls to adjust height and sensitivity to changing ground conditions such as shallow gullies and field drainage trenches.



1003580

**Figure 3.361: Control Handle**

## OPERATION

### Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series

Calibration should be done on flat, level ground without the header clutches engaged. Header height and header tilt must not be in auto or standby modes. The engine rpm must be above 2000 rpm. The header tilt option on 2004 and earlier model combines does not work with MacDon headers. This system will have to be removed and disabled in order to calibrate the auto header height control (AHHC). For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.

#### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

#### NOTE:

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.



Figure 3.362: Combine Auto Header Height Controls

A - AUTO MODE Button  
D - Raise Header  
G - CAL2 Button

B - AHHC Light  
E - Lower Header

C - CAL1 Button  
F - AUTO Mode

#### NOTE:

For best performance of the AHHC, perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91](#).

1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
2. Press AUTO MODE button (A) until AHHC light (B) is illuminated.
3. Press and hold CAL1 button (C) until you see the following lights flash: raise header (D), lower header (E), tilt auto mode (F), and AHHC (B).
4. Fully lower the header, and continue to hold the HEADER LOWER button for 5–8 seconds to ensure float module has separated from header.

## OPERATION

5. Press CAL2 button (G) until lower header light (E) stops flashing, and release it when raise header light (D) begins flashing.
6. Raise header to its maximum height (ensure the header is resting on the down-stop pads).
7. Press CAL2 button (G) until raise header light (D) turns off.

### NOTE:

The following steps are applicable only to 2005 and newer combines with the Smartrac feeder house.

8. Wait for the HEADER TILT LEFT light (not shown) to start flashing, and then tilt header to the maximum left position.
9. Press CAL2 button (G) until the HEADER TILT LEFT light (not shown) stops flashing, and release button when the HEADER TILT RIGHT light (not shown) begins flashing.
10. Tilt the header to the maximum right position.
11. Press CAL2 button (G) until all of the following lights flash: raise header (D), lower header (E), height auto mode (A), right header and left header (not shown), and tilt auto mode (F).
12. Center the header.
13. Press CAL1 button (C) to exit calibration and save all values to the memory. All lights should stop flashing.

### NOTE:

If the float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

### *Turning off the Accumulator – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series*

The accumulator will affect the combine's reaction time and greatly inhibit the auto header height control's performance.

Refer to the combine operator's manual for proper procedure when turning accumulator off and on. For best performance, turn the feeder house accumulator off.

### NOTE:

The accumulator is located in front of the front left axle beam.



**Figure 3.363: Combine Accumulator ON/OFF Switch**

A - Accumulator Lever (Off Position)

## OPERATION

### *Adjusting the Header Raise/Lower Rate – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series*

#### **NOTE:**

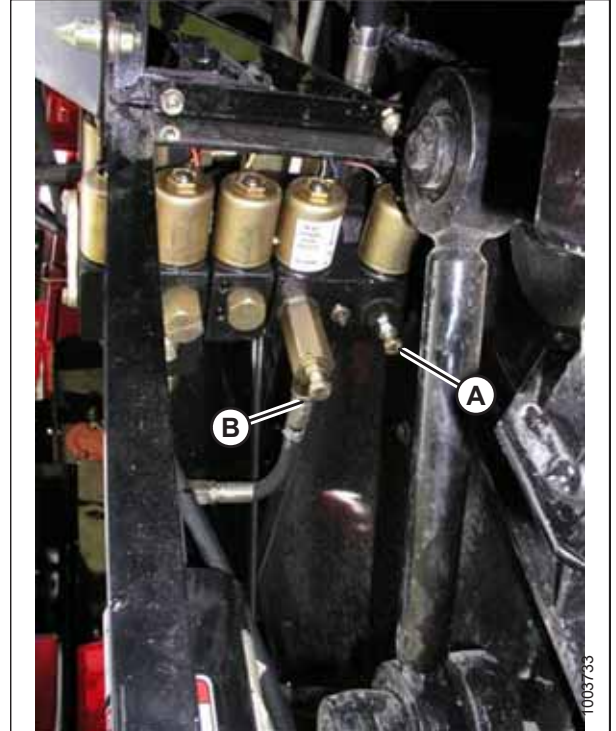
Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

The auto header height control (AHHC) system's stability is affected by hydraulic flow rates. Ensure that header raise (A) and header lower (B) adjustable restrictors in the hydraulic manifold are adjusted so that it takes approximately 6 seconds to raise the header from ground level to maximum height (hydraulic cylinders fully extended), and approximately 6 seconds to lower the header from maximum height to ground level.

If there is too much header movement (for example, hunting) when the header is on the ground, adjust the lower rate to a slower rate of drop: 7 or 8 seconds.

#### **NOTE:**

Make this adjustment with the hydraulic system at normal operating temperature (54.4°C [130°F]) and the engine running at full throttle.



**Figure 3.364: Header Raise and Lower Adjustable Restrictors**

### *Adjusting Ground Pressure – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series*

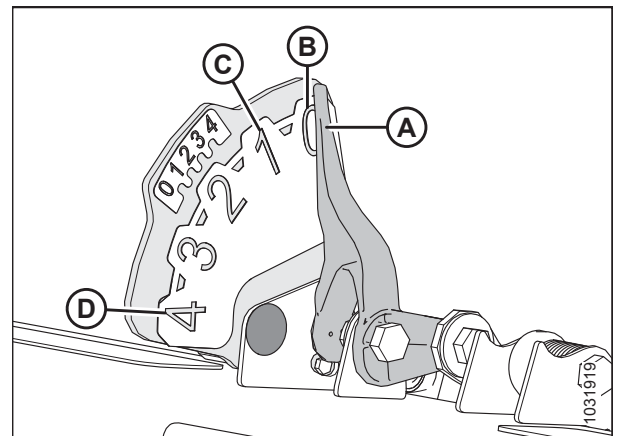
#### **NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. Ensure indicator (A) is at position 0 (B) with the header 254–306 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground. If not, the float sensor output voltage should be checked. For instructions, refer to [Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series, page 210](#).

#### **NOTE:**

When the header is on the ground, the indicator should be at position 1 (C) for low ground pressure, and at position 4 (D) for high ground pressure. Crop and soil conditions determine the amount of float to use. The ideal setting is as light as possible without header bouncing or missing crop. Operating with heavy settings prematurely wears the cutterbar wearplates.



**Figure 3.365: Float Indicator**

## OPERATION

2. Ensure the header is in auto header height control (AHHC) mode. This is indicated by AUTO MODE LED light (A) displaying a continuous, solid light.
3. The header will lower to the height (ground pressure) corresponding to the position selected with height control knob (B). Turn the knob counterclockwise for minimum ground pressure, and clockwise for maximum ground pressure.



Figure 3.366: AHHC Console

### *Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series*

#### **NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.



Figure 3.367: Auto Header Height Control Console

SENSITIVITY ADJUSTMENT dial (A) controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house.

When SENSITIVITY ADJUSTMENT dial (A) is set to maximum (turned completely clockwise), only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. In this position, the cutterbar moves up and down approximately 19 mm (3/4 in.) before the control module signals the hydraulic control valve to raise or lower the header frame.



## OPERATION

When SENSITIVITY ADJUSTMENT dial (A) is set to minimum (turned completely counterclockwise), large changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. In this position, the cutterbar moves up and down approximately 51 mm (2 in.) before the control module signals the hydraulic control valve to raise or lower the header frame.

The HEADER SENSE LINE input also changes the range of the sensitivity. When connected to a draper, the counterclockwise position (least sensitive) allows for approximately 102 mm (4 in.) of vertical travel before correction is made.

### *Troubleshooting Alarms and Diagnostic Faults – Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 and Pre-2016 S Series*

#### **NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

#### **Display type:**

Displayed on tachometer (A) as XX or XXX.



Figure 3.368: Tachometer

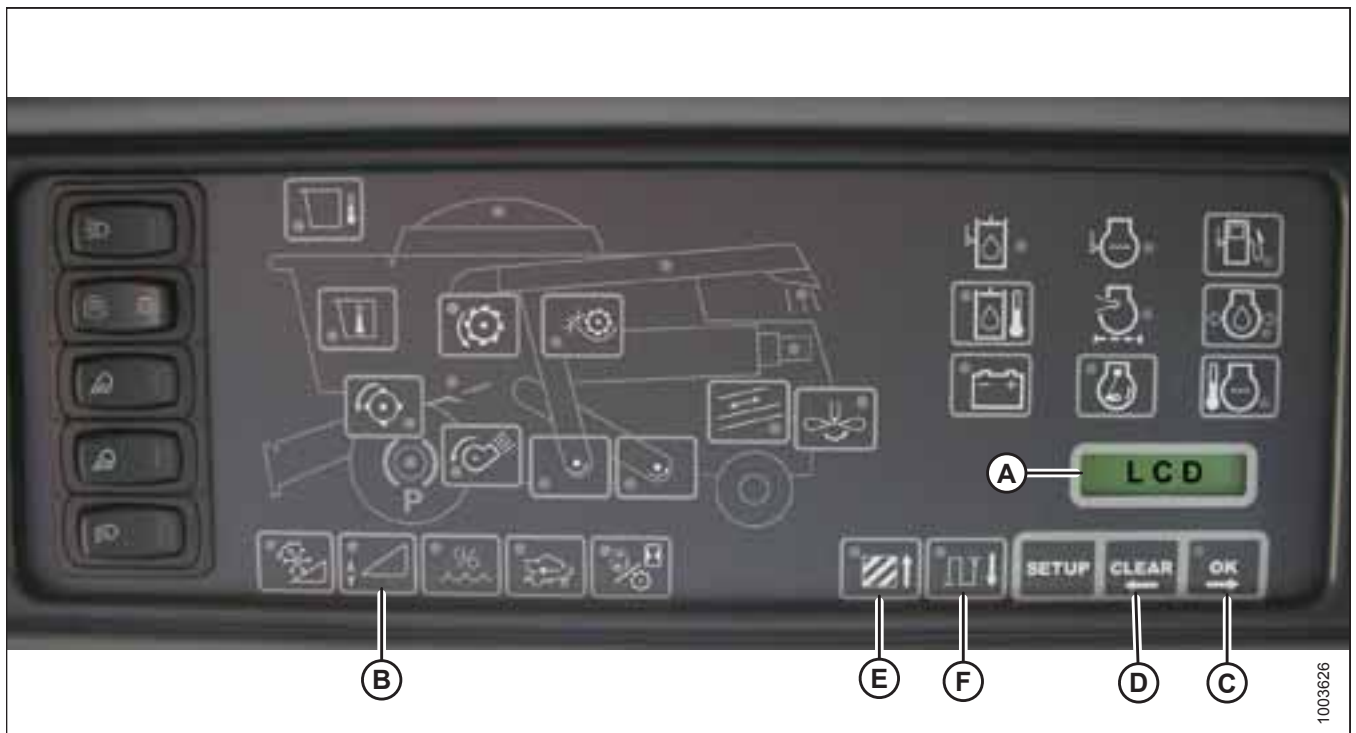


Figure 3.369: Combine Electronic Instrument Panel (EIP)

## OPERATION

### NOTE:

Displayed on LCD (A) as XX in. or XXX cm.

### **Alarm conditions:**

If an error message is received from the fuse panel, an audible alarm sounds. The alarm buzzer sounds five times every 10 seconds. The LCD (A) on the electronic instrument panel (EIP) indicates the header system in error as HDR CTRL followed by HGT ERR for height, and HDR CTRL followed by TILT ERR for tilt. The header height LED flashes yellow two times every second.

When an alarm condition occurs, a green LED flashes on and off (green, yellow, or red depending on the input). In addition, a message is displayed on the LCD to identify the nature of the alarm. For example, HYD TEMP, OPEN, SHRT will be flashed alternately.

### **Diagnostic fault failures:**

Refer to Figure [3.369, page 217](#).

Pressing header height switch (B) for a minimum of 5 seconds will put the EIP in header diagnostic mode. The LCD (shown on previous screen) will display the message HDR DIAG when the EIP has entered header diagnostic mode.

In this mode, after 3 seconds, header fault parameter labels are displayed on the EIP LCD. All the information displayed is read-only.

OK (C) and CLEAR (D) buttons allow you to scroll through the list of parameters. If there are no active fault codes, the EIP LCD will display NO CODE.

When a parameter is displayed, its label is displayed for 3 seconds, after which its value is automatically displayed.

Pressing OK button (C) while the value is displayed will advance to the next parameter and display its label.

When a parameter label is displayed and OK button (C) is pressed before 3 seconds, the parameter's value will be displayed.

Pressing AREA (E) will cycle through the options. When LEFT is displayed on the LCD, press OK button (C), and the auto header height control (AHHC) voltage will be shown on the display.

Press DIST button (F) to cycle back through the table.

Press CLEAR button (D) to exit header diagnostics and return to normal mode.

### **3.8.14 Gleaner S9 Series Combines**

#### *Setting up the Header – Gleaner S9 Series*

### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

## OPERATION

AGCO Tyton terminal (A) is used to set up and manage a MacDon draper header on a Gleaner S9 Series combine. Use the touch screen display to select the desired item on the screen.



Figure 3.370: Gleaner S9

A - Tyton Terminal      B - Control Handle  
C - Throttle              D - Header Control Cluster

1. On the top right quadrant of the home screen, touch COMBINE icon (A). The COMBINE MAIN MENU opens.



Figure 3.371: Combine Icon on Home Page

2. On the COMBINE MAIN MENU, touch HEADER SETTINGS (A). The HEADER SETTINGS page opens.



Figure 3.372: Header Settings in Combine Main Menu

## OPERATION

3. Touch HEADER CONFIGURATION field (A). A dialog box showing predefined headers opens.
  - If your MacDon header is already set up, it appears on the header list. Touch MacDon header title (B) to highlight the selection in blue, and then touch green check mark (E) to continue.
  - If only default header (D) is shown, touch ABC button (C), and use the on-screen keyboard to enter the MacDon header information. When complete, select one of the following options to return to the HEADER SETTINGS page:
    - Green check mark (E) saves the settings
    - Garbage can icon (F) deletes the highlighted header from the list
    - Red X (G) cancels the change(s)

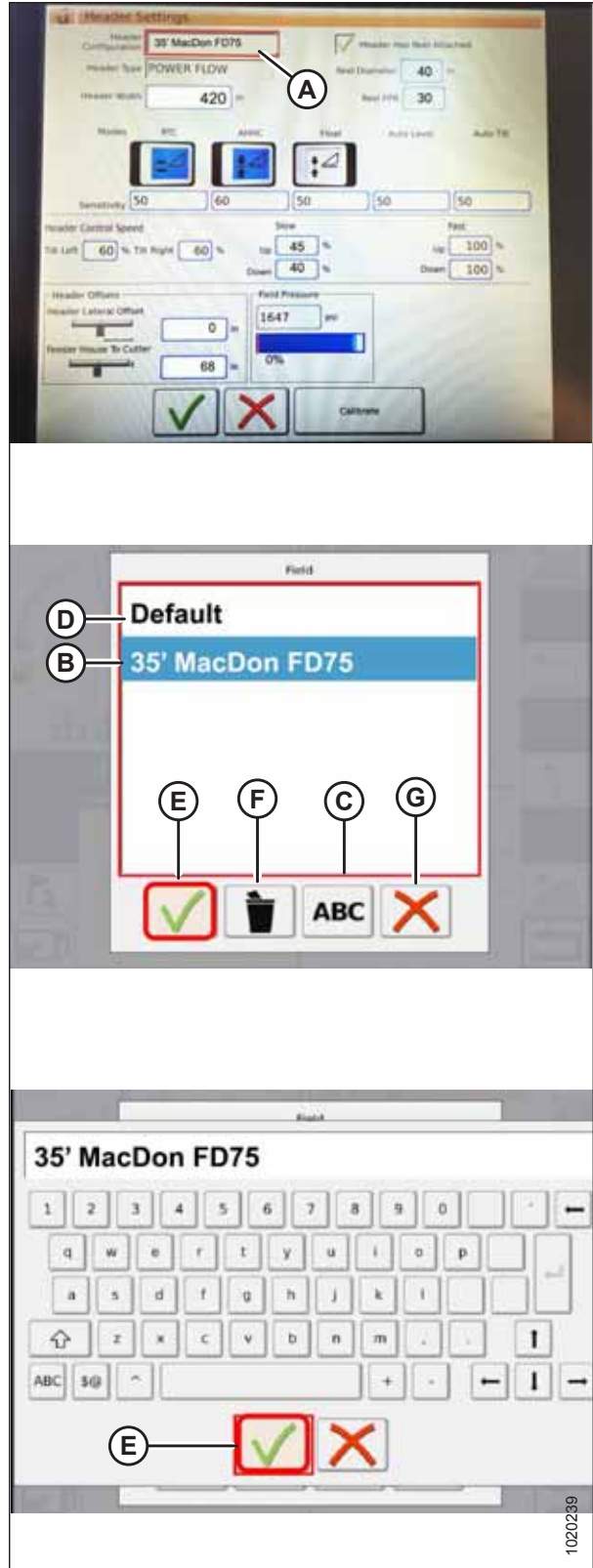


Figure 3.373: Header Configuration Menu on Header Settings Page

## OPERATION

- To specify the type of header installed on the machine, touch HEADER TYPE field (A).

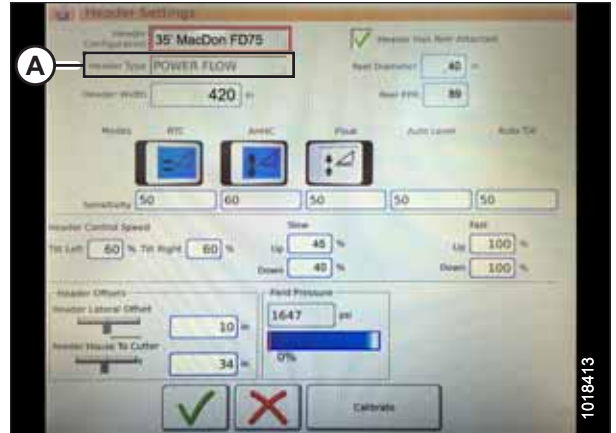


Figure 3.374: Header Settings

- A list of predefined header types appears.
  - For MacDon FD2 Series FlexDraper® headers, touch POWER FLOW (A)
  - Touch green check mark (B) to save the selection and continue

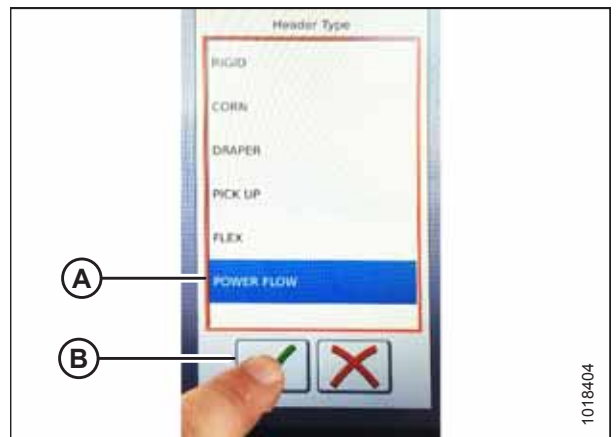


Figure 3.375: Header Type

- Make sure that HEADER HAS REEL ATTACHED check box (A) is checked.

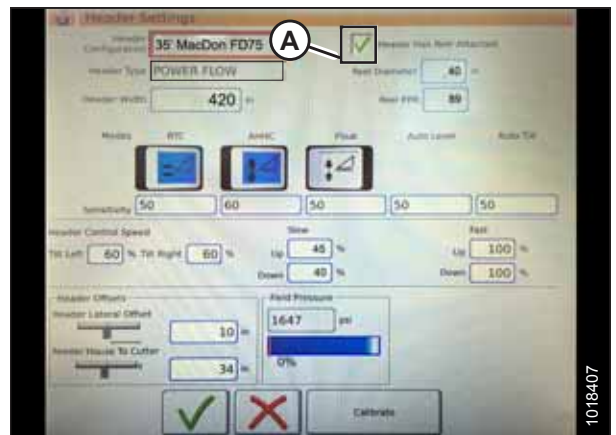


Figure 3.376: Header Settings

## OPERATION

7. Touch REEL DIAMETER field (A) and a numeric keypad displays. Enter **40** for a MacDon reel.
8. Touch REEL PPR (Pulses Per Revolution) field (B) and enter **30** as the value for your MacDon header.

### NOTE:

PPR is determined by the number of teeth on the reel speed sprocket.

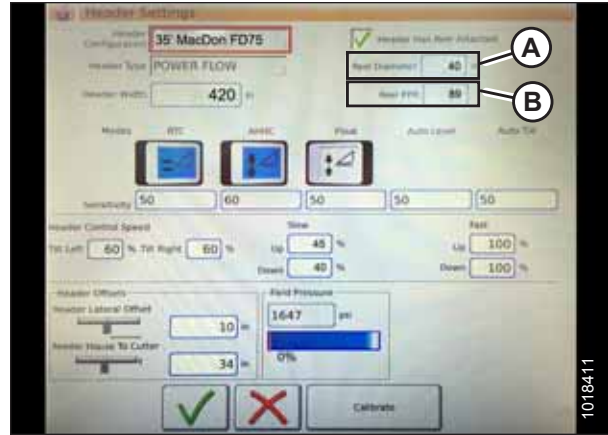


Figure 3.377: Header Settings

9. Touch green check mark (B) at the bottom of numeric keypad (A) when complete, or the red X to cancel.

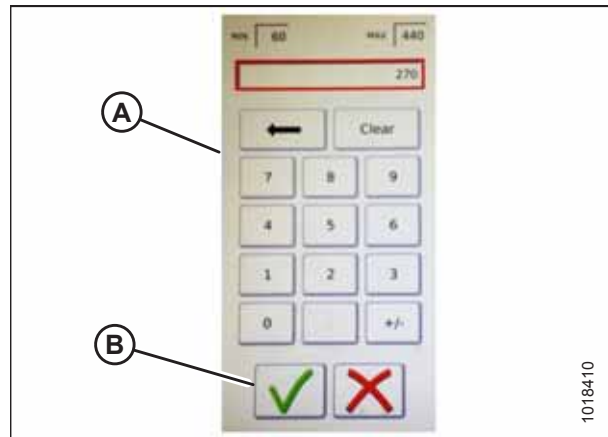


Figure 3.378: Numeric Keypad

10. When complete, touch green check mark (A) at the bottom of the HEADER SETTINGS page.

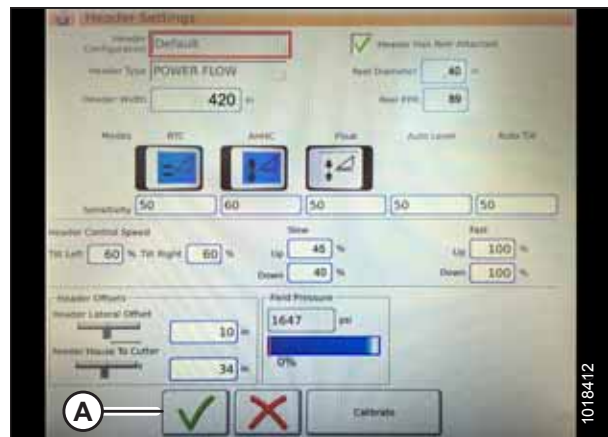


Figure 3.379: Header Settings Page

*Setting Minimum Reel Speed and Calibrating Reel – Gleaner S9 Series*

**WARNING**

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. From the COMBINE MAIN MENU, touch REEL SETTINGS (A) to open the REEL SETTINGS page.



Figure 3.380: Reel Settings on Combine Main Menu

2. To set minimum reel speed, touch SPEED MINIMUM FIELD (B). The on-screen keyboard displays. Enter the desired value. Touch the green check mark to accept the new value, or the red X to cancel. The reel speed is shown in mph and rpm.

**NOTE:**

At the bottom of the REEL SETTINGS page, the reel diameter and reel pulses per revolution (PPR) are displayed. These values have already been set in the HEADER SETTINGS page.

3. Reel speed is calibrated on the REEL SETTINGS page by touching CALIBRATE button (A) in the top right of the page.

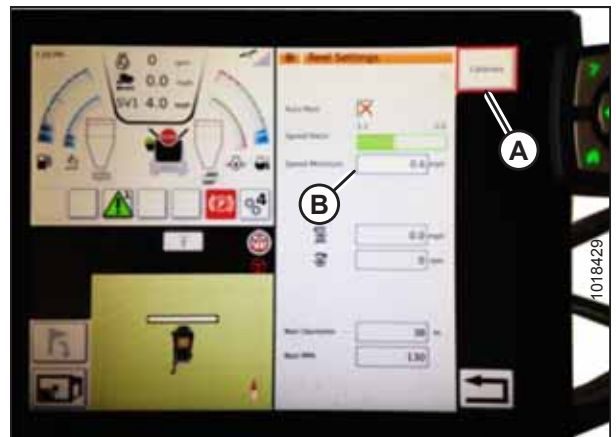


Figure 3.381: Reel Settings Calibration

## OPERATION

4. The CALIBRATION WIZARD opens and displays a hazard warning.
5. Make sure to meet all the conditions listed in the CALIBRATION WIZARD warning. Press green check mark (A) to accept and start reel calibration. Pressing red X (B) will cancel the calibration procedure.

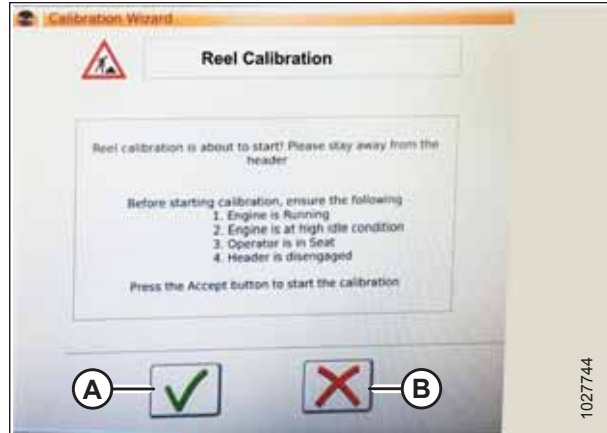


Figure 3.382: Calibration Wizard

6. A message appears in the CALIBRATION WIZARD stating that reel calibration has started. The reel will begin turning slowly and increase to high speed. A progress bar is provided. If necessary, touch the red X to cancel. Otherwise, wait for the message that reel calibration has completed successfully. Touch the green check mark to save the calibrated settings.

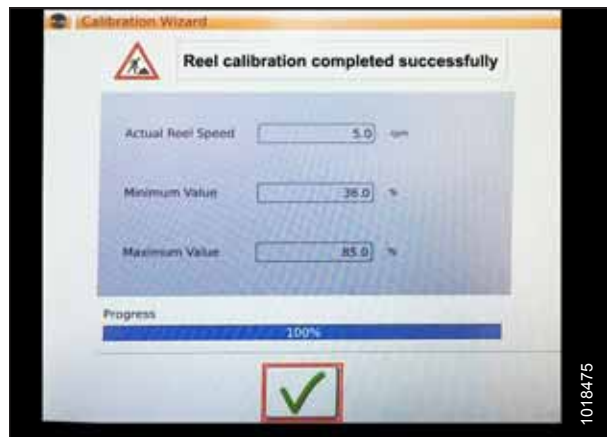


Figure 3.383: Calibration Progress

### *Setting up Automatic Header Controls – Gleaner S9 Series*

Automatic header functions are configured on the HEADER SETTINGS page.

#### **NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.



## OPERATION

1. **Automatic Control Functions:** There are toggle (OFF/ON) switches on the HEADER SETTINGS page for the automatic control functions. For MacDon headers, ensure the following two functions are enabled as shown:

- RTC (return to cut) (A)
- AHHC (automatic header height control) (B)

All other switches are disabled (not highlighted).

2. **Sensitivity** setting (C) controls how responsive a control (RTC or AHHC) is to a given change in sensor feedback. The setting fields are located directly below the toggle switches. To enter a new sensitivity setting, touch the setting field below the specific toggle switch, and enter the new value in the on-screen keyboard.

- Increase sensitivity if the combine does not change the feeder position quickly enough when in Auto Mode.
- Decrease sensitivity if the combine hunts for a position in Auto Mode.

### NOTE:

Recommended sensitivity starting points for MacDon headers are:

- 50 for RTC (A)
- 60 for AHHC (B)

3. **Header Speed:** HEADER CONTROL SPEED area (A) on the HEADER SETTINGS page is used to adjust the following speeds:

- Tilt left and right is the lateral tilt of the combine faceplate
- Header up and down (slow and fast speeds) is a two-stage button with slow speed on the first detent and fast on the second

### NOTE:

Recommended header control speed starting points

- Slow: 45 up / 40 down
- Fast: 100 up / 100 down

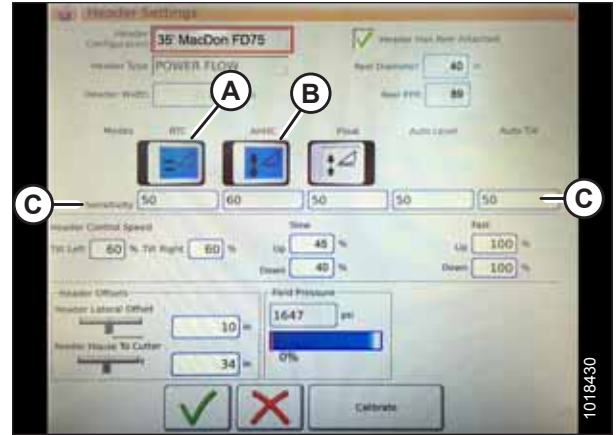


Figure 3.384: Automatic Controls and Sensitivity Settings

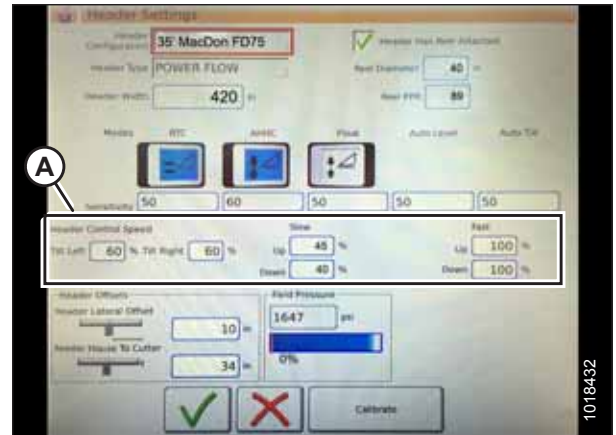


Figure 3.385: Header Speed Control Settings

## OPERATION

4. **Header Offsets (A):** Offset distances are important for yield mapping. There are two adjustable dimensions on the HEADER SETTINGS page:

- Header Lateral Offset: the distance between the centerline of the header and the centerline of the machine. Set to **0** for a MacDon header.
- Feeder House to Cutter: the distance from the machine interface to the cutterbar. Set to **68** for a MacDon header.

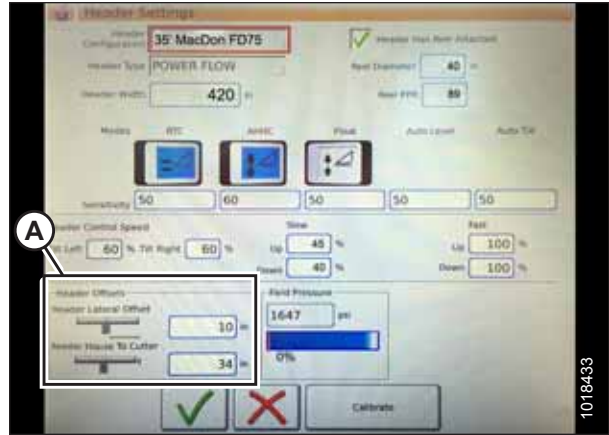


Figure 3.386: Header Offset Settings

## OPERATION

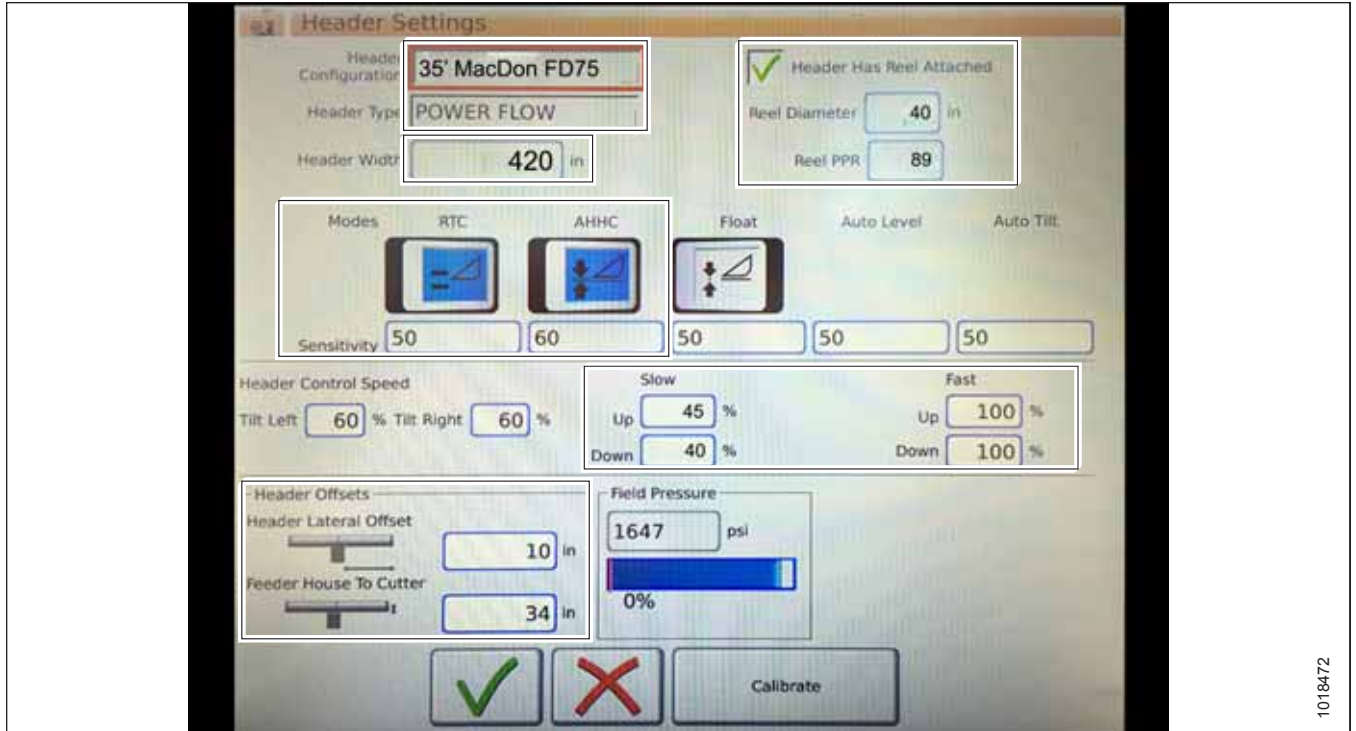


Figure 3.387: MacDon Header Settings Inputs

### Calibrating the Header – Gleaner S9 Series

The auto header control functions are configured on the HEADER SETTINGS page.

### WARNING

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

#### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. On the COMBINE MAIN MENU, touch HEADER SETTINGS (A).



Figure 3.388: Combine Main Menu

## OPERATION

2. Touch CALIBRATE (A) at the bottom right of the page. The HEADER CALIBRATION page displays.

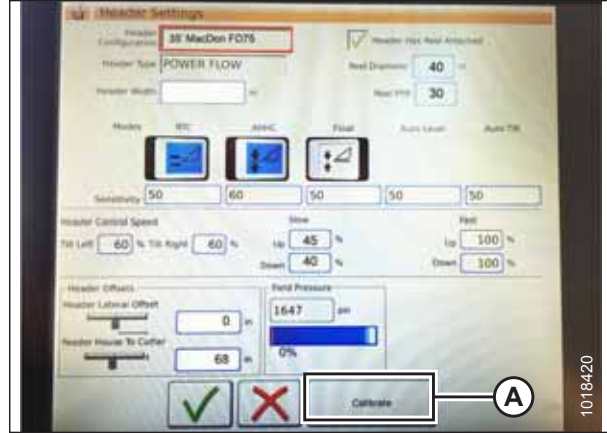


Figure 3.389: Header Settings Page

The right side of the page shows Header Calibration information (A). Results are shown for a variety of sensors (B):

- Left and right header sensor (voltage) (values will be the same with MacDon headers)
- Header height sensor (mA)
- Tilt position sensor (mA)

The following valid modes are shown with check marks (C) below sensor values (B):

- Return to cut
- Automatic header height control

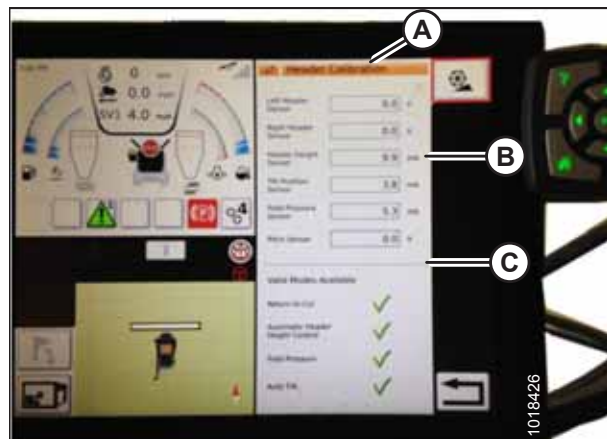


Figure 3.390: Header Calibration Page

### WARNING

Clear the area of other persons, pets etc. Keep children away from machinery. Walk around the machine to be sure no one is under, on, or close to it.

3. On the control handle, touch HEADER DOWN button (A). Sensor values start changing on the HEADER CALIBRATION page as the header lowers.



Figure 3.391: Header Down Switch

## OPERATION

- When the sensor values are stable, touch CALIBRATE icon (A).



Figure 3.392: Header Calibration

- The hazard warning for HEADER CALIBRATION appears. Make sure that all conditions are met.
- Touch the green check mark at the bottom of the page to start the CALIBRATION WIZARD.



Figure 3.393: Header Calibration Warning

A progress bar is provided and the calibration can be stopped at any time by touching the red X. The header moves automatically and erratically during this process.

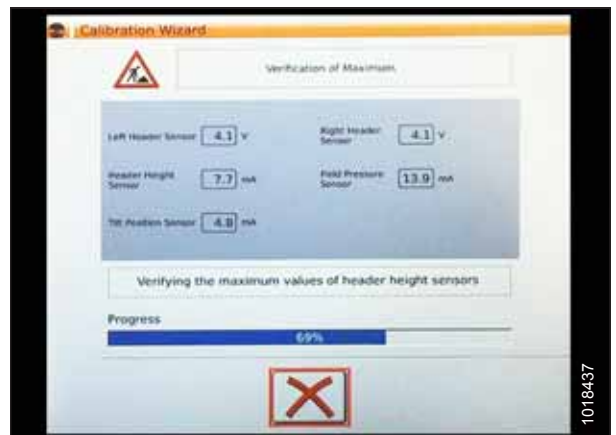


Figure 3.394: Calibration in Progress

## OPERATION

- When the calibration is complete, a message displays, and summary information (A) is shown. Green check marks confirm the functions have been calibrated (B). Touch bottom green check mark (C) to save.



Figure 3.395: Completed Calibration Page

### NOTE:

Touch CALIBRATION icon (A) on the COMBINE MAIN MENU page to display the CALIBRATION MENU where you can choose from a variety of calibrations including header and reel calibration.



Figure 3.396: Direct Calibration Menu

## OPERATION

### Operating the Auto Header Height Control – Gleaner S9 Series

#### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

The following controls are used to operate the auto header height control (AHHC) functions:

- Tyton terminal (A)
- Control handle (B)
- Throttle (C)
- Header control cluster (D)

Use the combine operator's manual to familiarize yourself with the controls.



Figure 3.397: Gleaner S9 Operator Controls

1. With the header running, set lateral tilt switch (A) to MANUAL.
2. Engage the AHHC by pressing switch (B) upward to the I position.



Figure 3.398: Header Control Cluster

3. Press AHHC control switch (A) on the control handle to engage the AHHC. The header moves to the current setpoint position.



Figure 3.399: AHHC on Control Handle

## OPERATION

4. Use HEADER HEIGHT SETPOINT control dial (A) as necessary to fine-tune the position.



Figure 3.400: Header Control Cluster

### Reviewing Header In-Field Settings – Gleaner S9 Series

#### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. To view header group settings, touch HEADER icon (A) on the right side of the home page.

The following information is displayed:

- CURRENT POSITION of header (B).
- SETPOINT cut-off position (C) (indicated by red line)
- HEADER symbol (D) – touch to adjust the setpoint cut-off position using the scroll wheel on the right side of the Tyton terminal.
- CUT HEIGHT for AHHC (E) – fine-tune with the header height setpoint control dial on the header control cluster.
- HEADER WORKING WIDTH (F)
- HEADER PITCH (G)

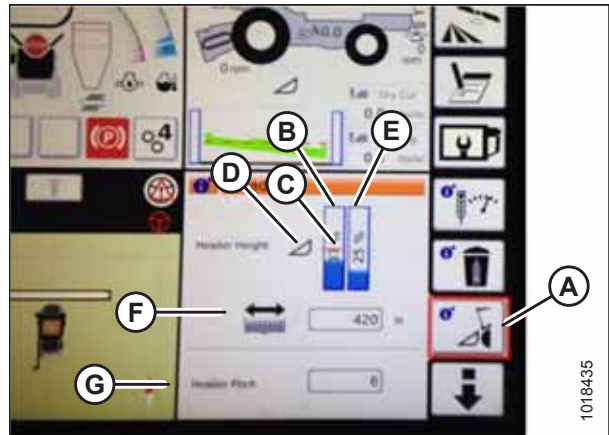


Figure 3.401: Header Groups

2. Touching a field opens the on-screen keyboard so that values can be adjusted. Enter the new value and touch the green check mark when complete.

#### NOTE:

Scroll wheel (A) is located on the right side of the Tyton terminal.



Figure 3.402: Adjustment Wheel on Right Side of Tyton Terminal



**NOTE:**

HEADER HEIGHT SETPOINT control dial (A) is on the header control cluster.



Figure 3.403: Header Control Cluster

### 3.8.15 John Deere 70 Series Combines

#### Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – John Deere 70 Series

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator’s manual for updates.

**⚠ DANGER**

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.
2. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

**NOTE:**

If the header is not on down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the AHHC system. If the header is not on down stops, refer to [3.9 Leveling Header, page 294](#) for instructions.

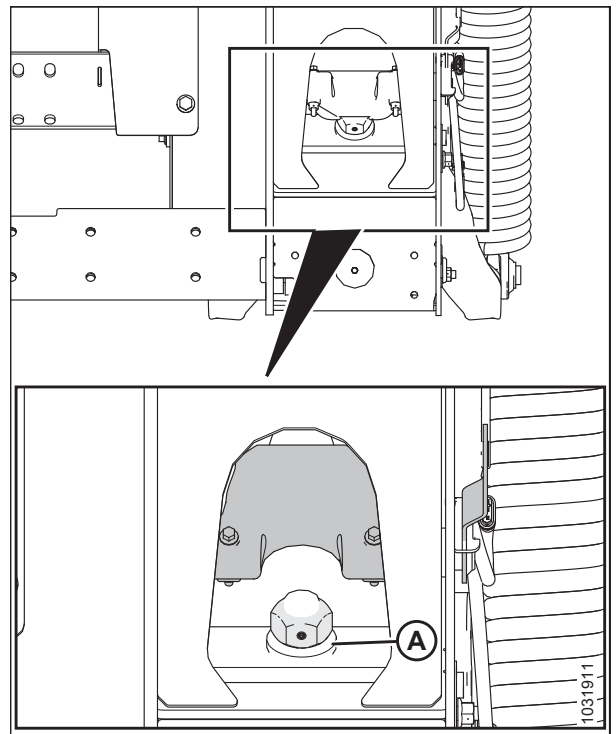


Figure 3.404: Float Lock

## OPERATION

3. If pointer is not on zero, loosen bolt (A) and slide float indicator plate (B) until pointer (C) is on **0** (D).
4. Tighten bolt (A).

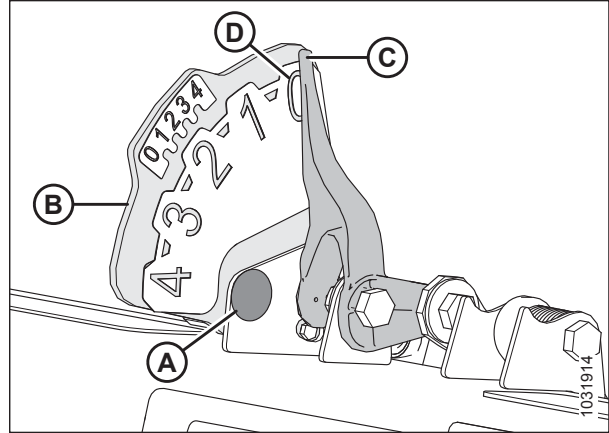


Figure 3.405: Float Indicator

5. Press HOME PAGE button (A) on the main screen of the monitor.



Figure 3.406: John Deere Combine Display

6. Ensure three icons (A) shown in the illustration at right appear on the monitor.



Figure 3.407: John Deere Combine Display

## OPERATION

7. Use scroll knob (A) to highlight the middle icon (the green i) and press check mark button (B) to select it. This will bring up the Message Center.

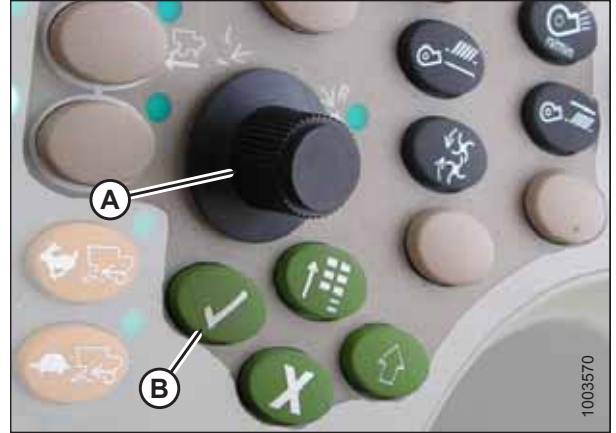


Figure 3.408: John Deere Combine Control Console

8. Use the scroll knob to highlight DIAGNOSTIC ADDRESSES (A) from the right column and select it by pressing the check mark button.
9. Use the scroll knob to highlight drop-down box (B) and press the check mark button to select it.

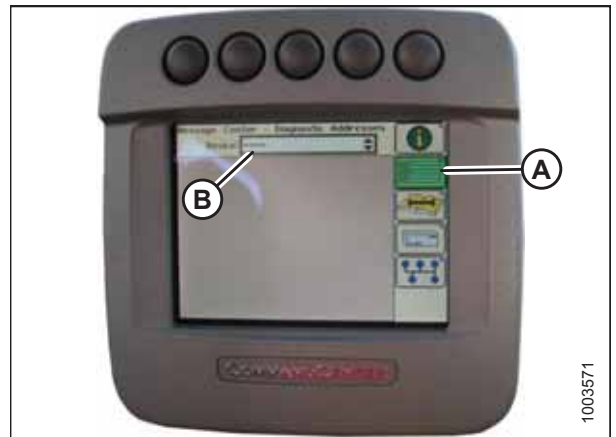


Figure 3.409: John Deere Combine Display

10. Use the scroll knob to highlight LC 1.001 VEHICLE (A) and press the check mark button to select it.



Figure 3.410: John Deere Combine Display

## OPERATION

11. Use the scroll knob to highlight down arrow (A) and press the check mark button to scroll through the list until 029 DATA (B) is displayed and voltage reading (C) appears on the monitor.

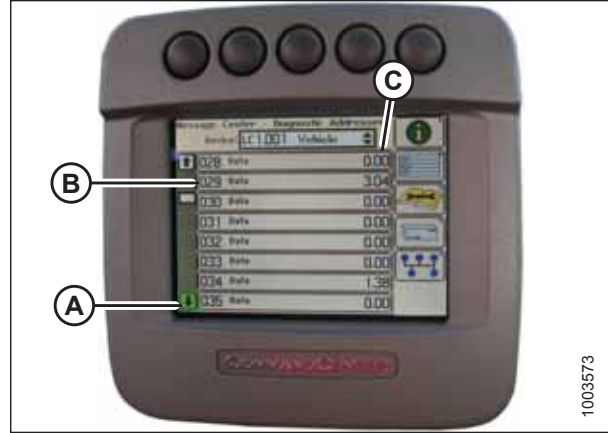


Figure 3.411: John Deere Combine Display

12. Ensure the header float is unlocked.
13. Start the combine and fully lower the feeder house to the ground.

### NOTE:

You may need to hold the HEADER DOWN switch for a few seconds to ensure the feeder house is fully lowered.

14. Check the sensor reading on the monitor.
15. Raise the header so it is just off the ground and recheck the sensor reading.

### *Calibrating Feeder House Speed – John Deere 70 Series*

The feeder house speed must be calibrated before you calibrate the auto header height control (AHHC) system.

For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.

### *Adjusting the Manual Header Raise/Lower Rate – John Deere 70 Series*

The weight of the header will dictate the rate at which the header can be raised or lowered during operation.

### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

## OPERATION

1. Lock the header wings. For instructions, refer to [Locking/Unlocking Header Wings, page 75](#).
2. Press button (A) and the current raise/lower rate setting will appear on the monitor (the lower the reading, the slower the rate).
3. Use scroll knob (B) to adjust the rate. The adjustment will be saved automatically.

**NOTE:**

If the screen remains idle for a short period of time, it will automatically return to the previous screen. Pressing check mark button (C) will also return the monitor to the previous screen.

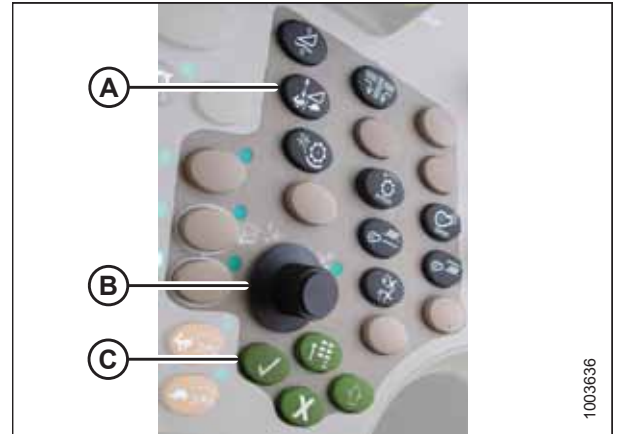


Figure 3.412: John Deere Combine Control Console

**NOTE:**

The numbers shown on the displays in these illustrations are for reference purposes only; they are not intended to represent the specific settings for your equipment.



Figure 3.413: John Deere Combine Display

## OPERATION

### Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – John Deere 70 Series

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91](#).

#### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

### DANGER

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

#### NOTE:

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.

1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
2. Rest header on down stops and unlock float.
3. Unlock the header wings. For instructions, refer to [Locking/Unlocking Header Wings, page 75](#).
4. Start the combine.
5. Press the button located fourth from the left along the top of monitor (A) to select the icon that resembles an open book with a wrench on it (B).
6. Press top button (A) a second time to enter diagnostics and calibration mode.



Figure 3.414: John Deere Combine Display

7. Select HEADER in box (A) by scrolling down to the box using the scroll knob, and then pressing the check mark button (knob and button are shown in [Figure 3.416, page 239](#)).
8. Scroll down to the lower right icon that resembles an arrow in a diamond (B) and press the check mark button to select it.

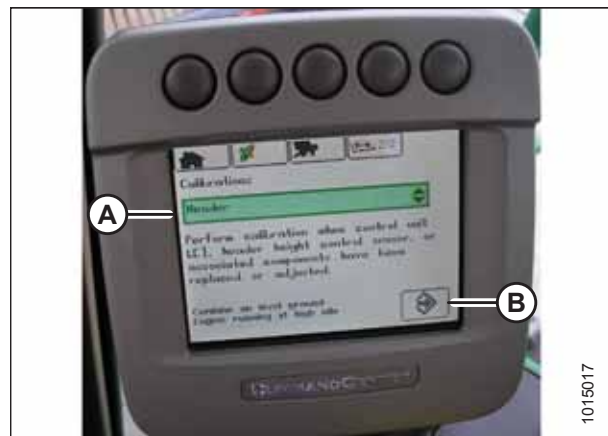
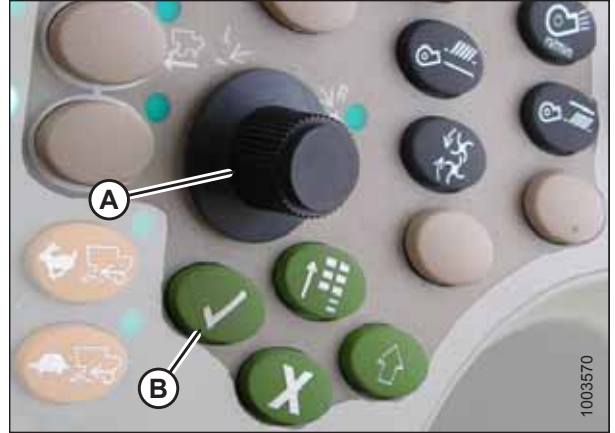


Figure 3.415: John Deere Combine Display

## OPERATION



**Figure 3.416: John Deere Combine Control Console**

A - Scroll Knob

B - Check Mark Button

9. Follow the steps listed on the monitor to perform the calibration.

**NOTE:**

If an error code appears on screen, the sensor is not in the correct working range. Check and adjust the range. For instructions, refer to [Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – John Deere S and T Series, page 240](#).

**NOTE:**

If float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

### *Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control – John Deere 70 Series*

The sensitivity adjustment controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house.

When the sensitivity is set to maximum, only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. When the sensitivity is set to minimum, large changes in the ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower.

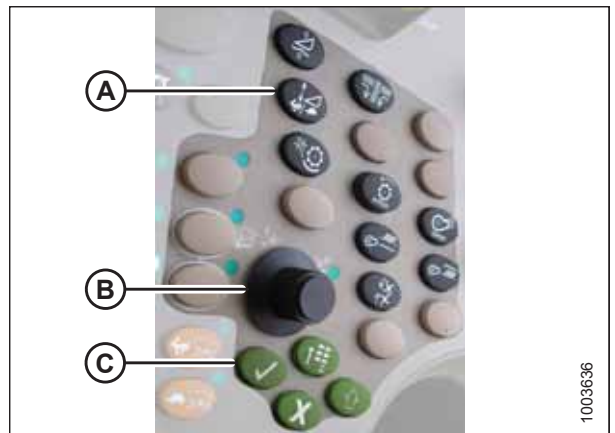
**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. Press button (A) twice. The current sensitivity setting will appear on the monitor (the lower the reading, the lower the sensitivity).
2. Use scroll knob (B) to adjust the sensitivity setting. The adjustment will be saved automatically.

**NOTE:**

If the screen remains idle for a short period of time, it will automatically return to the previous screen. Pressing check mark button (C) also will return the monitor to the previous screen.



**Figure 3.417: John Deere Combine Control Console**

## OPERATION

### NOTE:

The numbers shown on the displays in these illustrations are for reference purposes only; they are not intended to represent the specific settings for your equipment.



Figure 3.418: John Deere Combine Display

### 3.8.16 John Deere S and T Series Combines

#### Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – John Deere S and T Series

### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

## DANGER

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.
2. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

### NOTE:

If the header is not on down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the AHHC system. If the header is not on down stops, refer to [3.9 Leveling Header, page 294](#) for instructions.

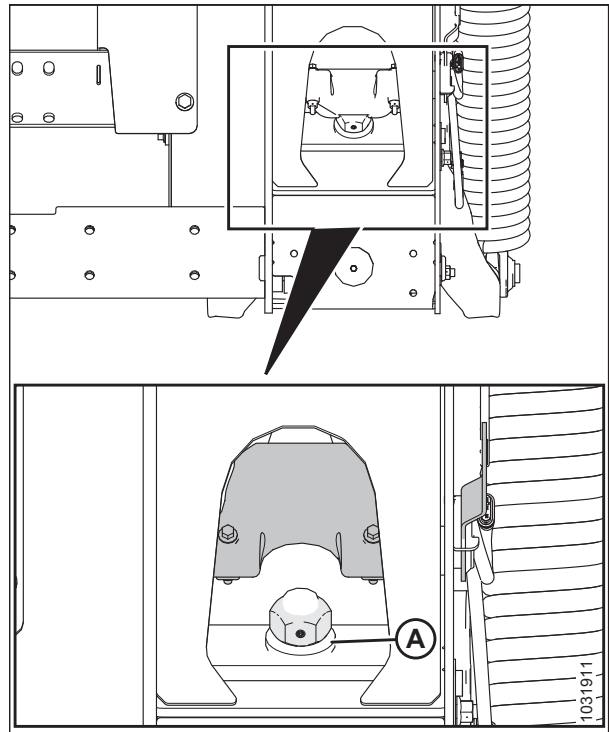


Figure 3.419: Float Lock



## OPERATION

3. If pointer is not on zero, loosen bolt (A) and slide float indicator plate (B) until pointer (C) is on 0 (D).
4. Tighten bolt (A).

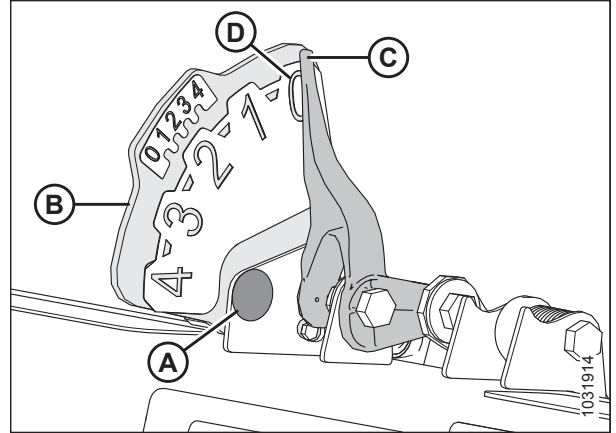


Figure 3.420: Float Indicator

5. Press CALIBRATION icon (A) on the main screen of the monitor. The CALIBRATION screen appears.



Figure 3.421: John Deere Combine Display

6. Press DIAGNOSTIC READINGS icon (A) on the CALIBRATION screen. The DIAGNOSTIC READINGS screen appears. This screen provides access to calibrations, header options, and diagnostic information.

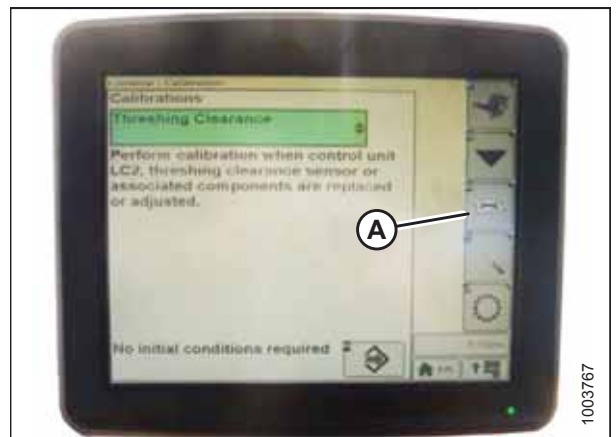


Figure 3.422: John Deere Combine Display

## OPERATION

7. Select AHHC RESUME (A) and a list of calibration options appears.



Figure 3.423: John Deere Combine Display

8. Select the AHHC SENSING option.
9. Press icon (A) displayed on screen. The AHHC SENSING menu appears and five screens of information are displayed.



Figure 3.424: John Deere Combine Display

10. Press icon (A) until it reads Page 5 near the top of the screen and the following sensor readings appear:
  - LEFT HEADER HEIGHT
  - CENTER HEADER HEIGHT
  - RIGHT HEADER HEIGHT

A reading is displayed for both left and right sensors. On the MacDon header, there may be one sensor located in the float indicator box (standard) or two sensors located at the back of the float module side frame (optional).



Figure 3.425: John Deere Combine Display

11. Ensure header float is unlocked.
12. Start the combine and fully lower feeder house to the ground.

### NOTE:

You may need to hold the HEADER DOWN switch for a few seconds to ensure the feeder house is fully lowered.

13. Check the sensor reading on the monitor.

## OPERATION

### Adjusting the Manual Header Raise/Lower Rate – John Deere S and T Series

#### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. Lock the header wings. For instructions, refer to [Locking/Unlocking Header Wings, page 75](#).

#### NOTE:

Indicator (A) should be at position 0 (B) with the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground. When the header is on the ground, the indicator should be at position 1 (C) for low ground pressure, and at position 4 (D) for high ground pressure. Crop and soil conditions determine the amount of float to use. The ideal setting is as light as possible without header bouncing or missing crop. Operating with heavy settings prematurely wears the cutterbar wearplates.

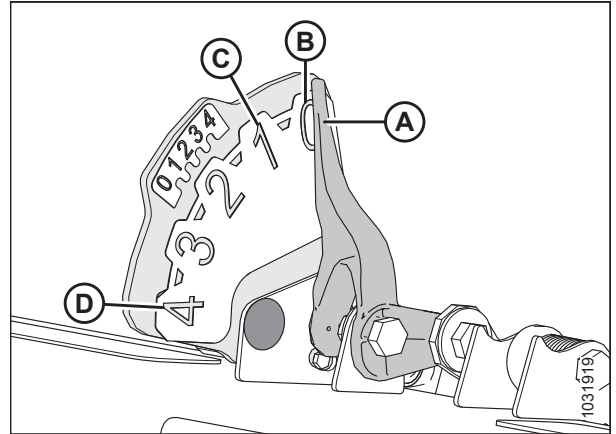


Figure 3.426: Float Indicator

2. Press button (A) and the current sensitivity setting will appear on the monitor.



Figure 3.427: John Deere Combine Command Center

3. Press – or + icons (A) to adjust rates.

#### NOTE:

The numbers shown on the combine display in this illustration are for reference purposes only; they are not intended to represent the specific settings for your equipment.

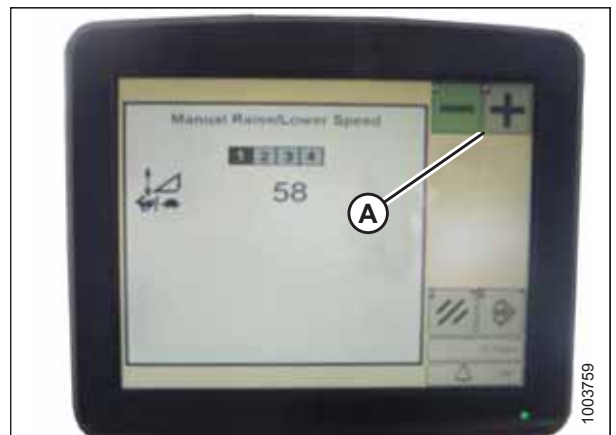


Figure 3.428: John Deere Combine Display

## OPERATION

### Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – John Deere S and T Series

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91](#).

#### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

#### NOTE:

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.

1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
2. Rest header on down stops and unlock float.
3. Unlock the header wings. For instructions, refer to [Locking/Unlocking Header Wings, page 75](#).
4. Press DIAGNOSTIC icon (A) on the main screen of the monitor. The CALIBRATION screen appears.



Figure 3.429: John Deere Combine Display

5. Select THRESHING CLEARANCE (A) and a list of calibration options appears.

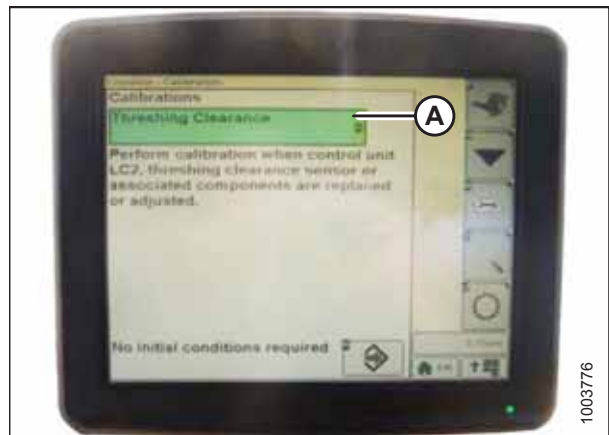


Figure 3.430: John Deere Combine Display

## OPERATION

6. Select FEEDER HOUSE SPEED (A) from the list of calibration options.

**NOTE:**

Feeder house speed calibration must be done before header calibration.



Figure 3.431: John Deere Combine Display

7. With FEEDER HOUSE SPEED selected, press icon (A). The icon will turn green.

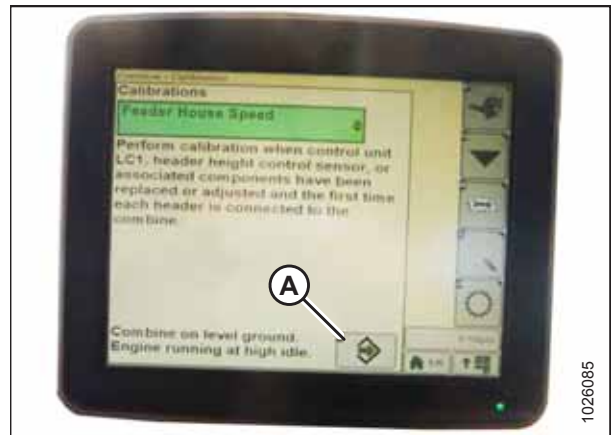


Figure 3.432: John Deere Combine Display

8. Press icon (A) and instructions will appear on screen to guide you through the remaining calibration steps.



Figure 3.433: John Deere Combine Display

## OPERATION

9. Select HEADER (A) from the list of calibration options.

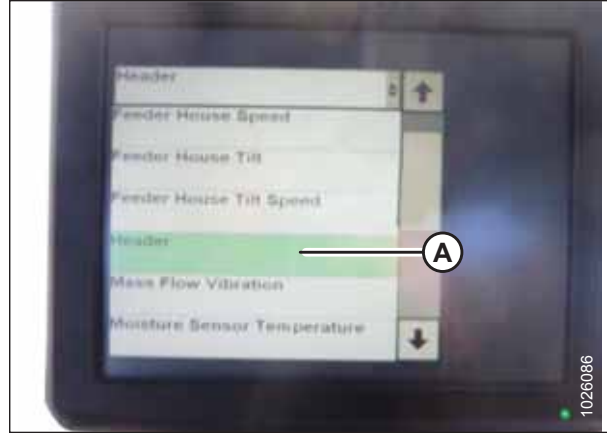


Figure 3.434: John Deere Combine Display

10. With HEADER selected, press icon (A). The icon will turn green.

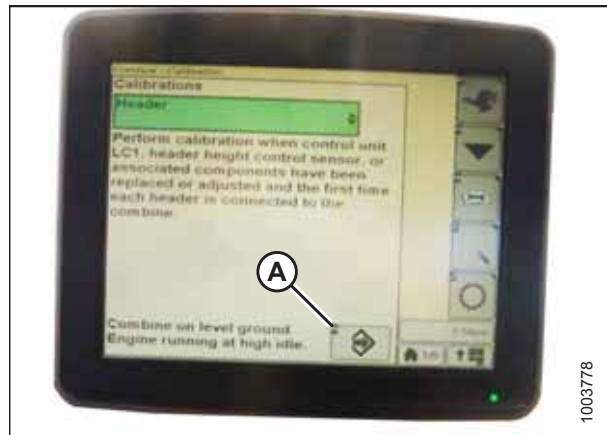


Figure 3.435: John Deere Combine Display

11. Press icon (A) and instructions will appear on screen to guide you through the remaining calibration steps.

### NOTE:

If an error code appears during calibration, the sensor is out of voltage range and will require adjustment. For instructions, refer to [Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – John Deere S and T Series, page 240](#).

### NOTE:

If float was set heavier to complete the AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.



Figure 3.436: John Deere Combine Display

## Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control – John Deere S and T Series

The sensitivity adjustment controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house.

When the sensitivity is set to maximum, only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. When the sensitivity is set to minimum, large changes in the ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower.

## OPERATION

### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. Press button (A) twice and the current sensitivity setting will appear on the monitor.



Figure 3.437: John Deere Combine Command Center

2. Press – or + icons (A) to adjust rates.

### NOTE:

The numbers shown on the combine display in this illustration are for reference purposes only; they are not intended to represent the specific settings for your equipment.



Figure 3.438: John Deere Combine Display

### *Setting Preset Cutting Height – John Deere S and T Series*

### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

## OPERATION

1. Ensure indicator (A) is at position 0 (B) with the header 254–306 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground.

### NOTE:

When the header is on the ground, the indicator should be at position 1 (C) for low ground pressure, and at position 4 (D) for high ground pressure. Crop and soil conditions determine the amount of float to use. The ideal setting is as light as possible without header bouncing or missing crop. Operating with heavy settings prematurely wears the cutterbar wearplates.

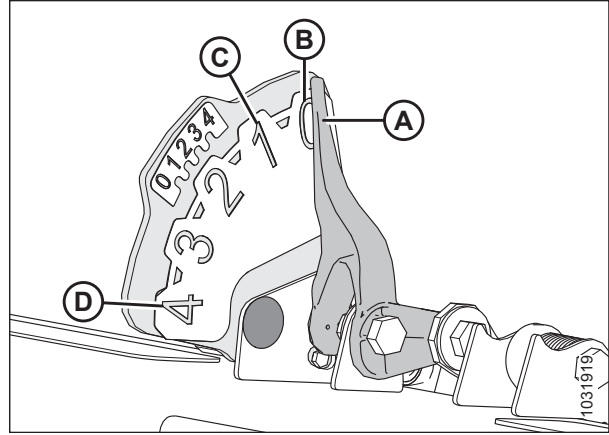


Figure 3.439: Float Indicator

2. Press COMBINE – HEADER SETUP icon (A) on the main screen. The COMBINE – HEADER SETUP screen appears. This screen is used to set various header settings such as reel speed, header width, and height of feeder house for acre counter engagement.



Figure 3.440: Combine Display

3. Select COMBINE – HEADER SETUP AHC icon (A). The COMBINE – HEADER SETUP AHC screen appears.



Figure 3.441: Combine Display



## OPERATION

4. Select AUTO HEIGHT SENSING (A), RETURN TO CUT (B), and REEL POSITION (C) icons.

**NOTE:**

If REEL POSITION icon (C) cannot be selected (no check mark), the reel height sensor requires calibration. For instructions, refer to *Calibrating Reel Height Sensor – John Deere S and T Series, page 256*.

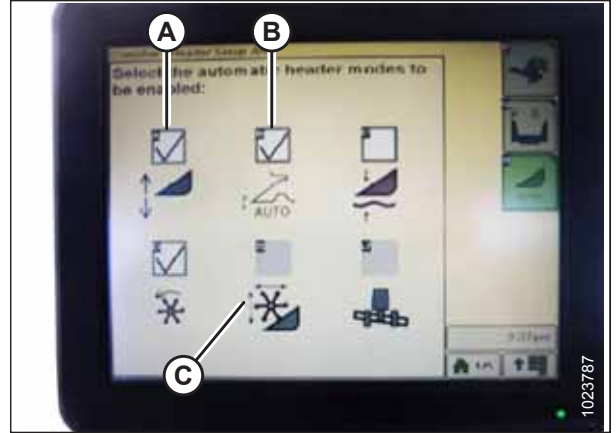


Figure 3.442: Combine Display

5. Engage the header.
6. Move the header to the desired position and use knob (A) to fine tune the position.
7. Move the reel to the desired position.



Figure 3.443: Combine Control Console

8. Press and hold preset switch 2 (B) until 1 reel height icon flashes on monitor.
9. Repeat previous three steps for preset switch 3 (C).
10. Select an appropriate ground pressure setting. Use preset button 2 (B) on the control handle for a low ground pressure setting in muddy or soft soil conditions, and preset 3 (C) for a high ground pressure setting in firm soil conditions and a higher ground speed.

**NOTE:**

Preset button 1 (A) is reserved for header lift on the headland and is not used for cutting on ground.



Figure 3.444: Control Handle Buttons

## OPERATION

### NOTE:

When the AHHC is engaged, AHHC icon (A) appears on the monitor and the number indicating which button was pressed (B) is displayed on the screen.

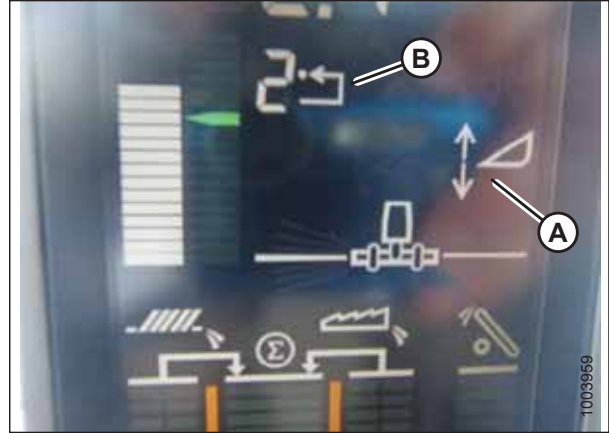


Figure 3.445: Combine Display

### *Calibrating Feeder House Fore-Aft Tilt Range – John Deere S and T Series*

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91](#).

This procedure applies only to model year 2015 and later John Deere S and T Series combines.

### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

The feeder house fore/aft tilt is controlled by buttons (C) and (D) at the back of the control handle.



Figure 3.446: John Deere Control Handle

## OPERATION

### NOTE:

The feeder house fore/aft tilt controls can be changed to work with buttons E and F by pressing control handle icon (A) and then selecting FEEDER HOUSE FORE/AFT TILT from drop-down menu (B).

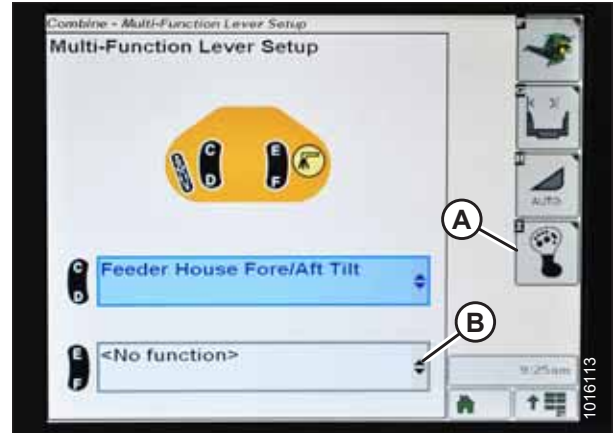


Figure 3.447: John Deere Combine Display

To calibrate the feeder house fore-aft tilt range, follow these steps:

1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
2. Rest header on down stops and unlock float.
3. Press DIAGNOSTIC icon (A) on the main screen of the monitor. The CALIBRATION screen displays.



Figure 3.448: John Deere Combine Display

4. Select CALIBRATIONS drop-down menu (A) to view the list of calibration options.

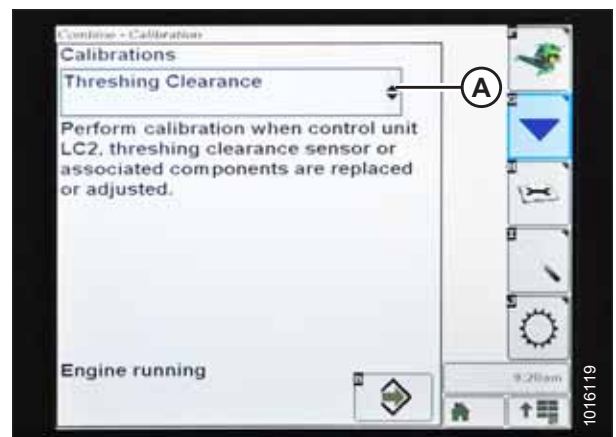


Figure 3.449: John Deere Combine Display

## OPERATION

5. Press arrow (A) to cycle up through the calibration options and select FEEDER HOUSE FORE/AFT TILT RANGE.

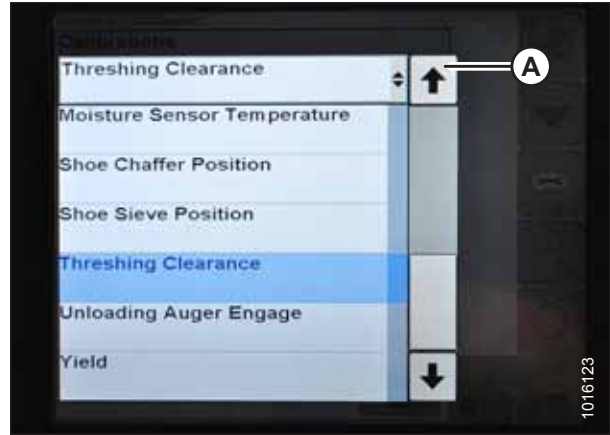


Figure 3.450: John Deere Combine Display

6. Press ENTER icon (A).

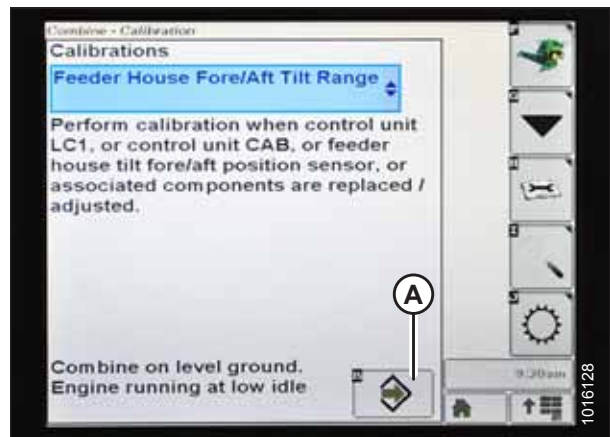


Figure 3.451: John Deere Combine Display

7. Follow the instructions that appear on the screen. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.

### NOTE:

If an error code appears during calibration, the sensor is out of voltage range and will require adjustment. For instructions, refer to [Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – John Deere S and T Series, page 240](#).

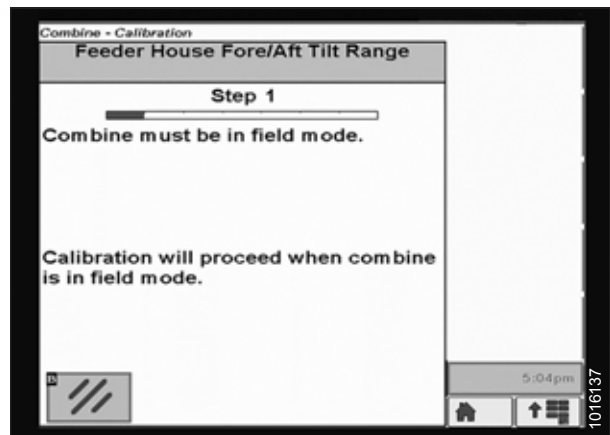


Figure 3.452: John Deere Combine Display

### Checking Reel Height Sensor Voltages – John Deere S and T Series

#### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

## OPERATION

1. Press CALIBRATION icon (A) on the main screen of the monitor. The CALIBRATION screen appears.



Figure 3.453: John Deere Combine Display

2. Press DIAGNOSTIC READINGS icon (A) on the CALIBRATION screen. The DIAGNOSTIC READINGS screen appears. This screen provides access to calibrations, header options, and diagnostic information.



Figure 3.454: John Deere Combine Display

3. Select drop-down menu (A) to view the list of calibration options.

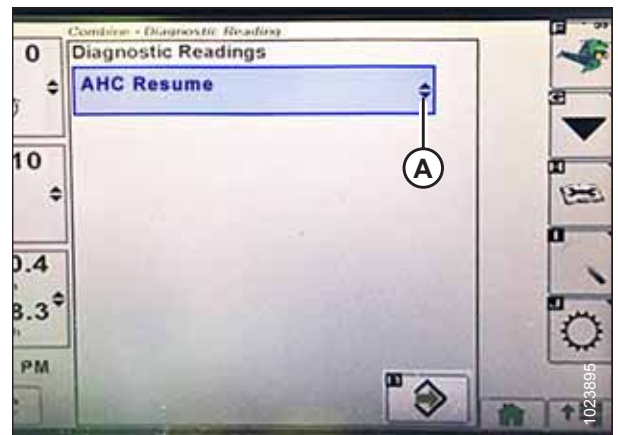


Figure 3.455: John Deere Combine Display

## OPERATION

4. Scroll down and select REEL RESUME (A).



Figure 3.456: John Deere Combine Display

5. Press ENTER icon (A). The REEL RESUME page displays.

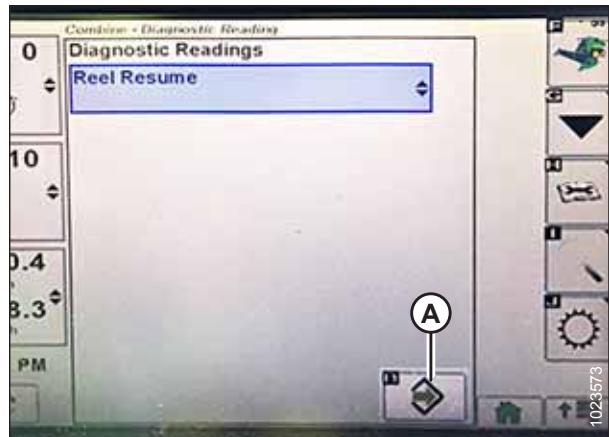


Figure 3.457: John Deere Combine Display

6. Press NEXT PAGE icon (A) to cycle to page 3.
7. Lower the reel to view low voltage (B). The voltage should be 0.5–0.9 V.

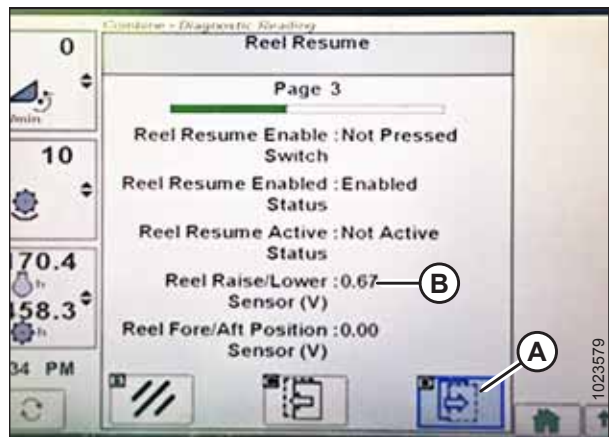


Figure 3.458: John Deere Combine Display

## OPERATION

8. Raise the reel to view high voltage (A). The voltage should be 4.1–4.5 V.
9. If either voltage is not within the correct range, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Reel Height Sensor, page 105](#).

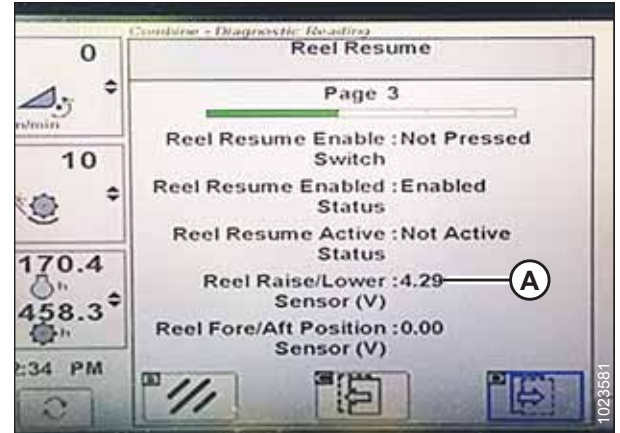


Figure 3.459: John Deere Combine Display

## OPERATION

### Calibrating Reel Height Sensor – John Deere S and T Series

This procedure applies only to model year 2015 and later John Deere S and T Series combines.

#### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

To calibrate reel height, follow these steps:

1. Position the header until it is 254–306 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground.

#### IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** turn off the engine. The combine has to be at full idle for the sensors to calibrate properly.

2. Press DIAGNOSTIC icon (A) on the main screen of the monitor. The CALIBRATION screen displays.



Figure 3.460: John Deere Combine Display

3. Select CALIBRATIONS drop-down menu (A) to view the list of calibration options.
4. Scroll through the list of options and select REEL POSITION.
5. Press ENTER icon (B).

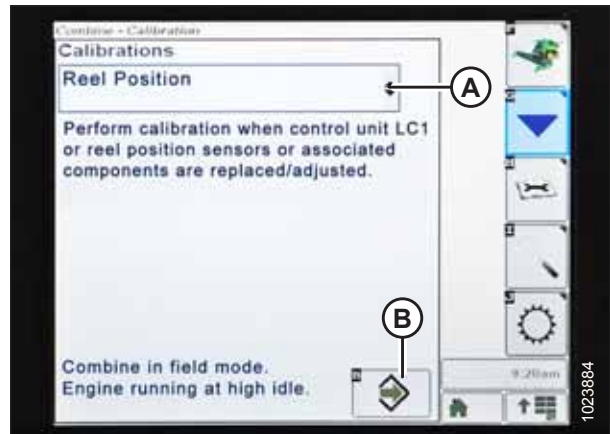


Figure 3.461: John Deere Combine Display



## OPERATION

6. Follow the instructions that appear on the screen. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step. This calibration requires you to use reel raise (A) and reel lower (B) switches on the control handle.



Figure 3.462: John Deere Control Handle

7. Press and hold REEL LOWER switch until reel is fully lowered. Continue holding REEL LOWER switch until prompted by the display.



Figure 3.463: John Deere Combine Display

8. Press and hold REEL RAISE switch until reel is fully raised. Continue holding REEL RAISE switch until prompted by the display.



Figure 3.464: John Deere Combine Display

## OPERATION

- When all steps have been completed, CALIBRATION COMPLETE message is displayed on the screen. Exit the CALIBRATION menu by pressing ENTER icon (A).

**NOTE:**

If an error code appears during calibration, the sensor is out of voltage range and will require adjustment. For instructions, refer to *Checking Reel Height Sensor Voltages – John Deere S and T Series, page 252.*



Figure 3.465: John Deere Combine Display

### 3.8.17 John Deere S7 Series Combines

#### Setting up Header – John Deere S7 Series

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to combine operator's manual for updates.

- Press header button (A) on the panel below the display. The HEADER page opens.



Figure 3.466: John Deere S7 Display

## OPERATION

2. Select HEADER TYPE field (A). The HEADER DETAILS window opens.



Figure 3.467: John Deere S7 Display – Header Page

3. Verify correct header width is displayed under WIDTH.
4. To change header width, select field (A). The WIDTH window opens.



Figure 3.468: John Deere S7 Display – Header Details Window

5. Use the on-screen keypad to enter the correct header width, and then press OK.



Figure 3.469: John Deere S7 Display – Setting Header Width

## OPERATION

- Press window close button (A) in top right corner of the window to return to the HEADER page.



Figure 3.470: John Deere S7 Display – Header Details Window

- Raise/lower speed (A), tilt speed (B), height sensitivity (C), and tilt sensitivity (D) can all be adjusted from this page. Select the option you would like to adjust. The following example shows the raise/lower speed adjustment.



Figure 3.471: John Deere S7 Display – Header Page

- Use + and – buttons (A) to adjust the setting.
- Press window close button in top right corner of the window to return to the HEADER page.

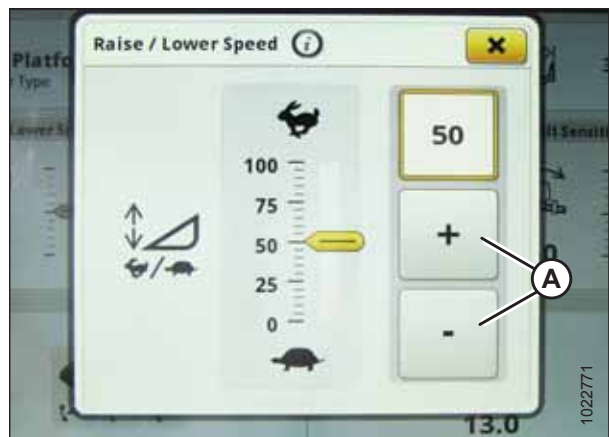


Figure 3.472: John Deere S7 Display – Raise/Lower Speed Adjustment

## OPERATION

10. Select AUTO CONTROL icons (A). The AUTO HEADER CONTROLS page opens.

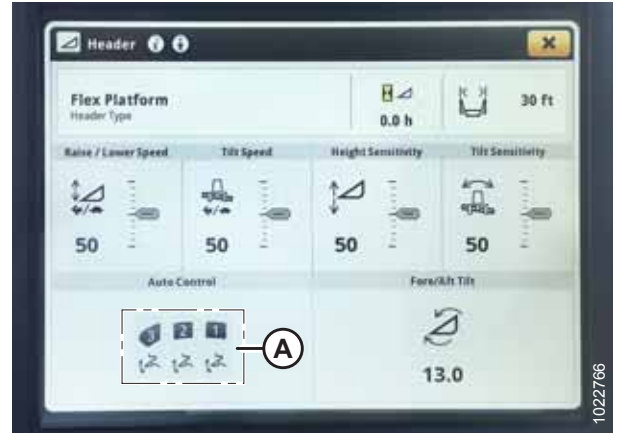


Figure 3.473: John Deere S7 Display – Header Page

11. If the header has not been calibrated yet, an error icon will appear on HEIGHT SENSING button (A). Select button (A) to view error message.

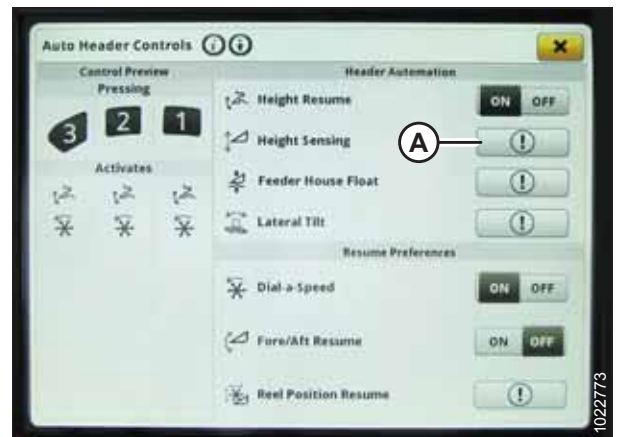


Figure 3.474: John Deere S7 Display – Auto Header Controls

12. Read error message and then press OK.
13. Proceed to *Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – John Deere S7 Series, page 262.*



Figure 3.475: John Deere S7 Display – Height Sensing Error Message

## OPERATION

### Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – John Deere S7 Series

The auto header height sensor output must be within a specific range, or the feature will not work properly.

**Table 3.20 Voltage Range**

Combine	Low Voltage Limit	High Voltage Limit	Minimum Range
John Deere S7 Series	0.5 V	4.5 V	3.0 V

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

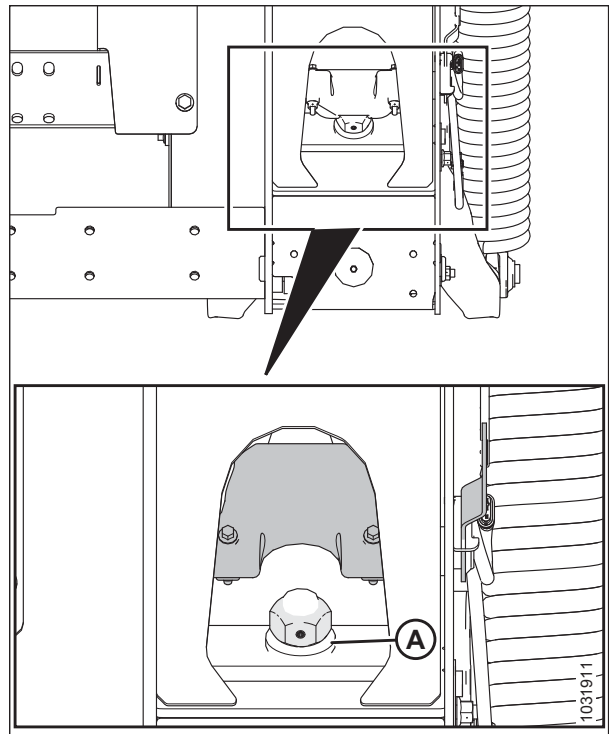
**⚠ WARNING**

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.
2. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

**NOTE:**

If header is not on down stops during next two steps, voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of auto header height control (AHHC) system.



**Figure 3.476: Float Lock**

## OPERATION

3. If pointer is not on zero, loosen bolt (A) and slide float indicator plate (B) until pointer (C) is on 0 (D).
4. Tighten bolt (A).

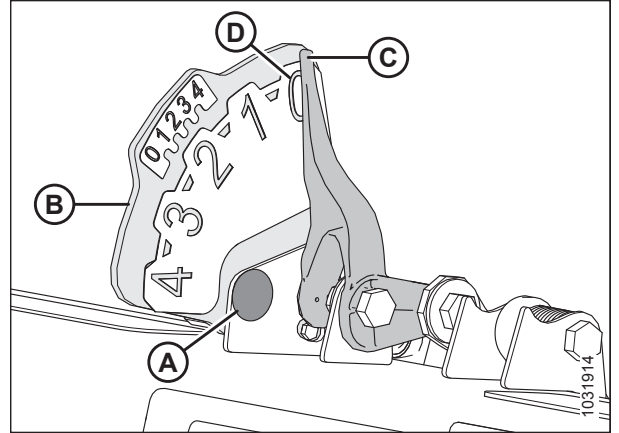


Figure 3.477: Float Indicator

5. On the HARVESTING page, select MENU icon (A) in the bottom right corner of the screen.



Figure 3.478: John Deere S7 Display – Harvesting Page

6. On the MENU page, select SYSTEM tab (A). The MENU opens.
7. Select DIAGNOSTICS CENTER icon (B). The DIAGNOSTICS CENTER page opens.

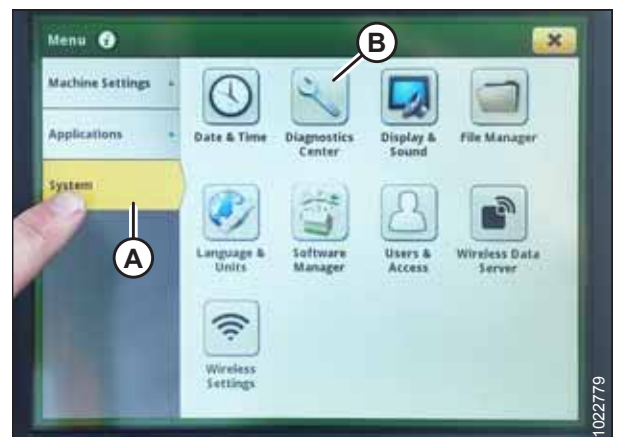


Figure 3.479: John Deere S7 Display – Menu

## OPERATION

8. Select AHC - SENSING (A). The AHC - SENSING\DIAGNOSTICS page displays.

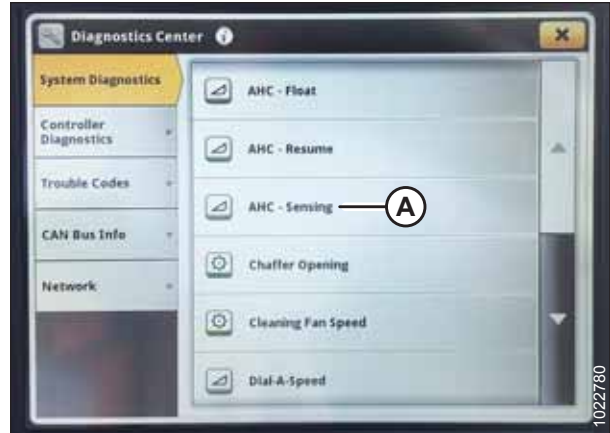


Figure 3.480: John Deere S7 Display – Diagnostics Center

9. Select SENSOR tab (A) to view sensor voltages. Center header height sensor voltage (B) must be between 0.5 and 4.5 V, with at least 3 V of variation between 0 and 4 on the float indicator box.

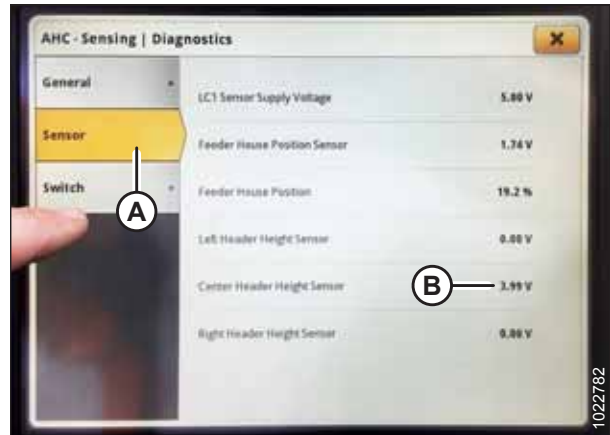


Figure 3.481: John Deere S7 Display – Checking Sensor Voltage

### Calibrating Feeder House – John Deere S7 Series

Feeder house calibration must be done before header calibration.

For best performance of auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Header Angle from Combine, page 93](#).

#### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
2. Rest header on down stops and unlock float.
3. Lock the header wings. For instructions, refer to [Locking/Unlocking Header Wings, page 75](#).



## OPERATION

- On the HARVESTING page, select MENU icon (A) in the bottom right corner of screen. The MENU opens.



Figure 3.482: John Deere S7 Display – Harvesting Page

- Select MACHINE SETTINGS tab (A).
- Select CALIBRATIONS & PROCEDURES icon (B). The CALIBRATIONS & PROCEDURES page displays.

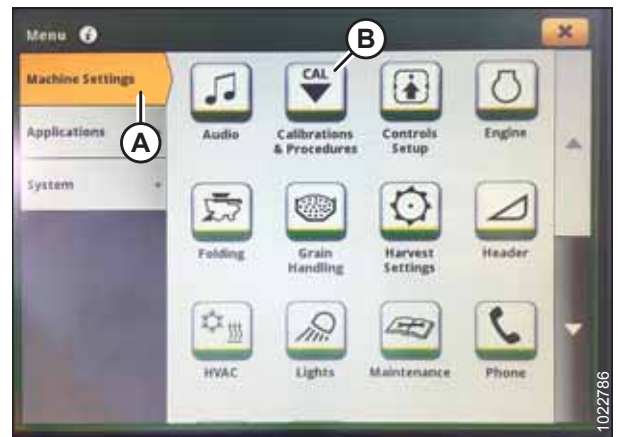


Figure 3.483: John Deere S7 Display – Machine Settings

- Select HEADER tab (A).
- Select FEEDER HOUSE RAISE SPEED CALIBRATION (B). The FH RAISE SPEED CALIBRATION page displays.

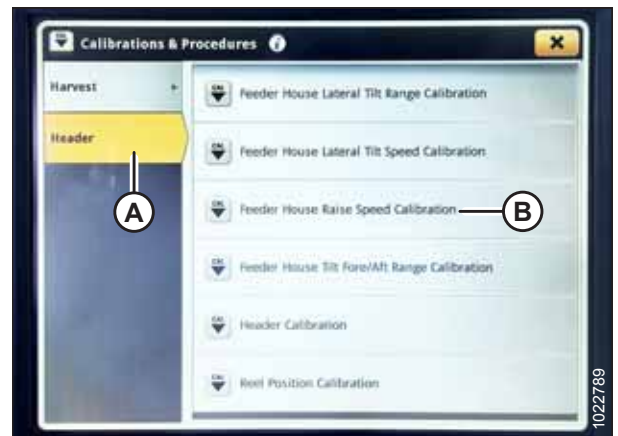


Figure 3.484: John Deere S7 Display – Calibrations and Procedures

## OPERATION

9. Select CALIBRATE (A) at the bottom of the page. A calibration overview displays.

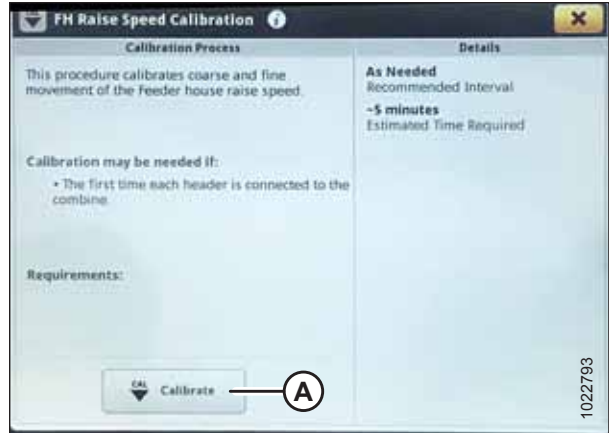


Figure 3.485: John Deere S7 Display – Feeder House Calibration

10. Read the calibration overview, and then press START.



Figure 3.486: John Deere S7 Display – Feeder House Calibration

11. Follow the instructions on the screen. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show next step.



Figure 3.487: John Deere S7 Display – Feeder House Calibration

## OPERATION

- When calibration is complete, select SAVE to confirm calibration.



Figure 3.488: John Deere S7 Display – Feeder House Calibration

### Calibrating Header – John Deere S7 Series



#### **DANGER**

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

Feeder house calibration must be done before header calibration. If feeder house has not yet been calibrated, refer to [Calibrating Feeder House – John Deere S7 Series, page 264](#).

For best performance of auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust center-link back to desired header angle.

#### **NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

- Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
- Rest header on down stops and unlock float.
- On the HARVESTING page, select MENU icon (A) in the bottom right corner of screen. The MENU opens.



Figure 3.489: John Deere S7 Display – Harvesting Page

## OPERATION

4. Select MACHINE SETTINGS tab (A).
5. Select CALIBRATIONS & PROCEDURES icon (B). The CALIBRATIONS & PROCEDURES page displays.



Figure 3.490: John Deere S7 Display – Machine Settings

6. Select HEADER tab (A).
7. Select HEADER CALIBRATION (B). The HEADER CALIBRATION page displays.

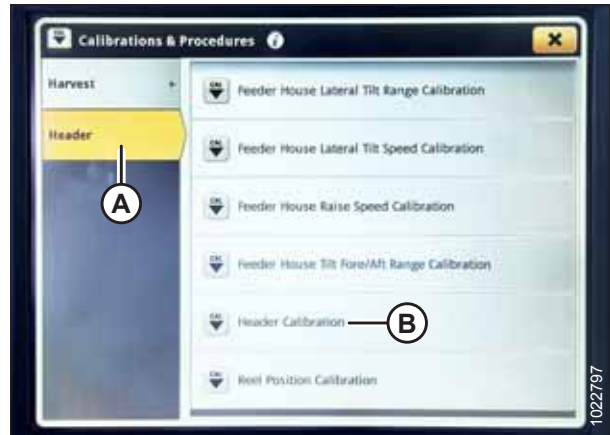


Figure 3.491: John Deere S7 Display – Calibrations and Procedures

8. Select CALIBRATE (A) at bottom of page. The calibration overview window opens.

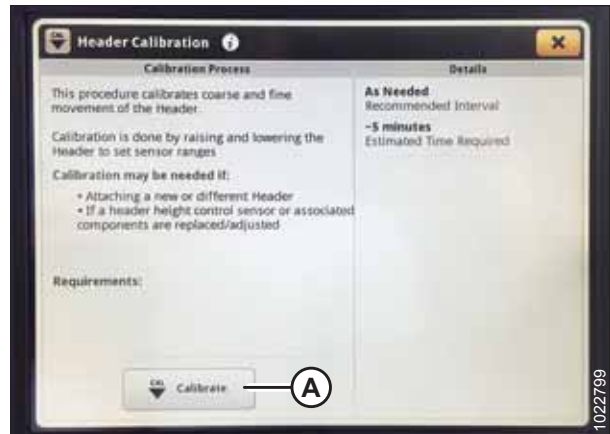


Figure 3.492: John Deere S7 Display – Header Calibration

## OPERATION

9. Press button (A) on console to set engine to high idle.



Figure 3.493: John Deere S7 Console

10. Select START on calibration overview page.
11. Follow instructions that appear on combine display. As you proceed through calibration process, display will automatically update to show next step.



Figure 3.494: John Deere S7 Display – Header Calibration

12. When calibration is complete, select SAVE to confirm calibration.



Figure 3.495: John Deere S7 Display – Header Calibration

### 3.8.18 New Holland Combines – CR/CX Series – 2014 and Prior

This section applies only to pre-2015 CR/CX models. For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to [3.8.19 New Holland Combines – CR Series – 2015 and Later, page 279](#).

#### Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – New Holland CR/CX Series

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator’s manual for updates.

**NOTE:**

For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to [3.8.19 New Holland Combines – CR Series – 2015 and Later, page 279](#).

**⚠ DANGER**

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.
2. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

**NOTE:**

If the header is not on down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the AHHC system. If the header is not on down stops, refer to [3.9 Leveling Header, page 294](#) for instructions.

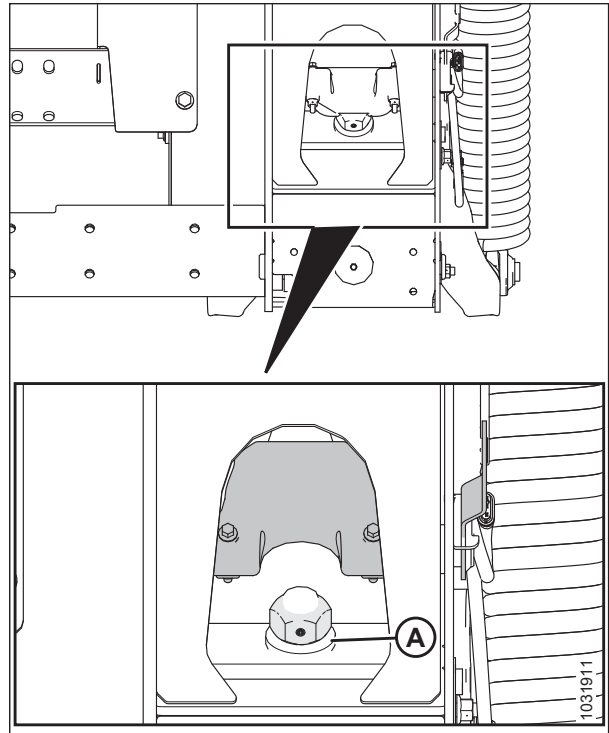


Figure 3.496: Float Lock

## OPERATION

3. If pointer is not on zero, loosen bolt (A) and slide float indicator plate (B) until pointer (C) is on 0 (D).
4. Tighten bolt (A).

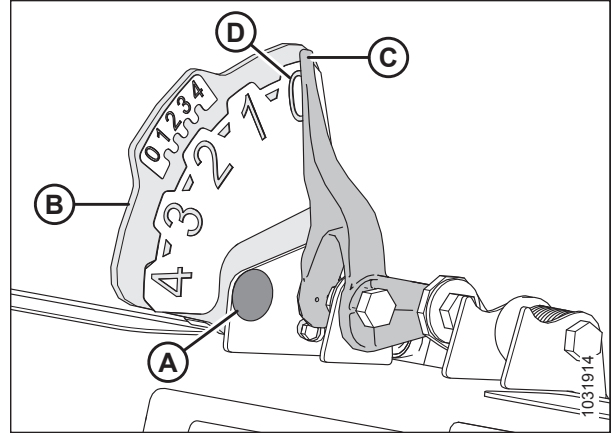


Figure 3.497: Float Indicator

5. Ensure header float is unlocked.
6. Select DIAGNOSTICS (A) on the main screen. The DIAGNOSTICS screen displays.
7. Select SETTINGS. The SETTINGS screen displays.

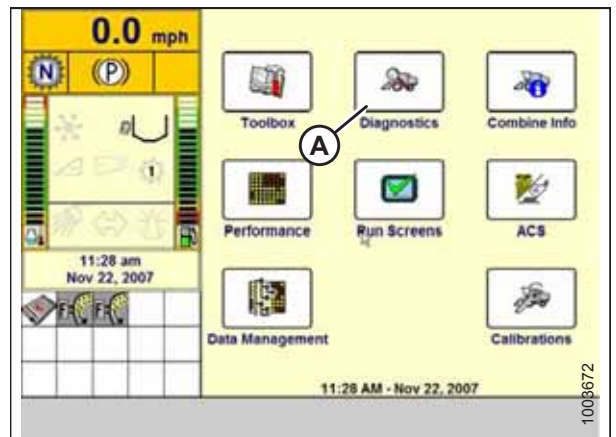


Figure 3.498: New Holland Combine Display

8. Select GROUP drop-down arrow (A). The GROUP dialog box displays.

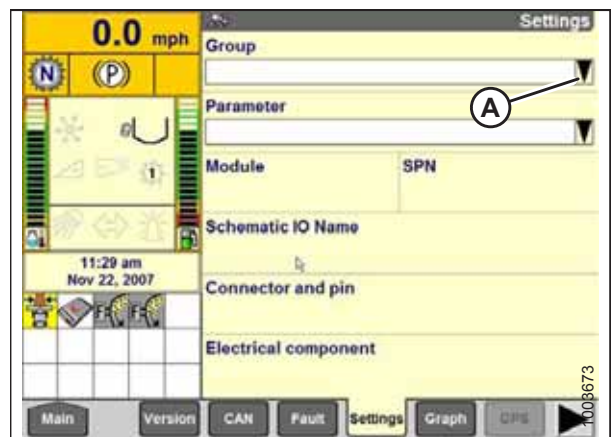


Figure 3.499: New Holland Combine Display

## OPERATION

9. Select HEADER HEIGHT/TILT (A). The PARAMETER screen displays.

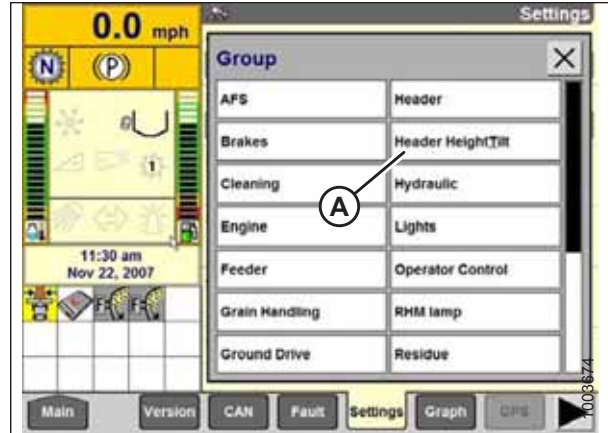


Figure 3.500: New Holland Combine Display

10. Select LEFT HEADER HEIGHT SEN (A), and then select GRAPH button (B). The exact voltage is displayed at the top of the screen.
11. Raise and lower the header to see the full range of voltage readings.

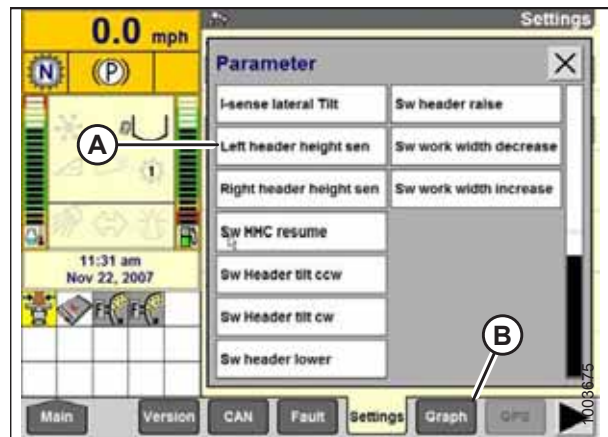


Figure 3.501: New Holland Combine Display

### Setting up Auto Header Height Control – New Holland CR/CX Series

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

**NOTE:**

For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to [3.8.19 New Holland Combines – CR Series – 2015 and Later, page 279](#).



## OPERATION

1. Select HEADER LATERAL FLOAT on the combine display, and press ENTER.
2. Use the up and down navigation keys to move between options, and select INSTALLED.



Figure 3.502: New Holland Combine Display

3. Select HEADER AUTOFLOAT, and press ENTER.
4. Use the up and down navigation keys to move between options, and select INSTALLED.



Figure 3.503: New Holland Combine Display

### Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – New Holland CR/CX Series

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to D. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91](#).

#### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

#### NOTE:

For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to [3.8.19 New Holland Combines – CR Series – 2015 and Later, page 279](#).



### DANGER

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

#### NOTE:

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.

## OPERATION

Check the following conditions before starting the header calibration procedure:

- The header is attached to the combine.
- The combine is on level ground, with the header level to the ground.
- The header is on down stops, and the center-link is set to **D**.
- The engine is running.
- The combine is not moving.
- No faults have been received from the Header Height Controller (HHC) module.
- Header/feeder is disengaged.
- Lateral float buttons are **NOT** pressed.
- ESC key is **NOT** pressed.

**To calibrate the AHHC, follow these steps:**

1. Select CALIBRATION on the combine display, and press the RIGHT ARROW navigation key to enter the information box.
2. Select HEADER (A), and press ENTER. The CALIBRATION dialog box opens.

**NOTE:**

You can use the up and down navigation keys to move between options.

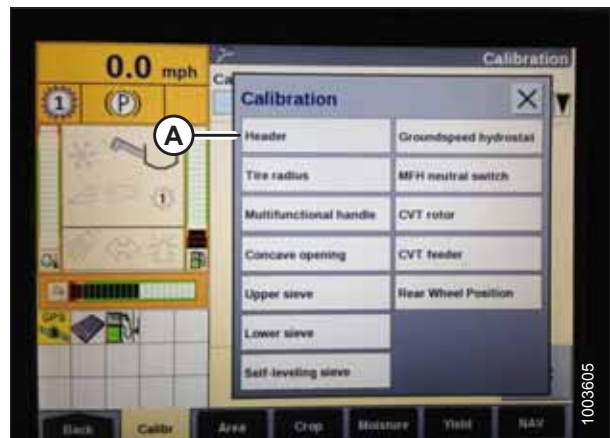


Figure 3.504: New Holland Combine Display

3. Follow the calibration steps in the order in which they appear in the dialog box. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.

**NOTE:**

Pressing the ESC key during any of the steps or letting the system sit idle for more than 3 minutes will cause the calibration procedure to stop.

**NOTE:**

Refer to your combine operator's manual for an explanation of any error codes.



Figure 3.505: New Holland Combine Display

4. When all steps have been completed, CALIBRATION SUCCESSFUL message is displayed on the screen. Exit the CALIBRATION menu by pressing the ENTER or ESC key.

## OPERATION

### NOTE:

If float was set heavier to complete AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.

5. If the unit does not function properly, conduct the maximum stubble height calibration.

### *Calibrating Maximum Stubble Height – New Holland CR/CX Series*

This procedure describes how to calibrate the area counter to stop or start counting at the correct height. Program the header to a height that will never be reached while cutting. The area counter will stop counting when the header is above the programmed height, and will begin counting when the header is below the programmed height.

Select the height of the header that corresponds to the description above.

### IMPORTANT:

- If the value is set too low, area may **NOT** be counted since the header is sometimes raised above this threshold although the combine is still cutting.
- If the value is set too high, the area counter will keep counting even when the header is raised (but below this threshold) and the combine is no longer cutting crop.

### **DANGER**

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Select the MAXIMUM STUBBLE HEIGHT calibration dialog box. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.

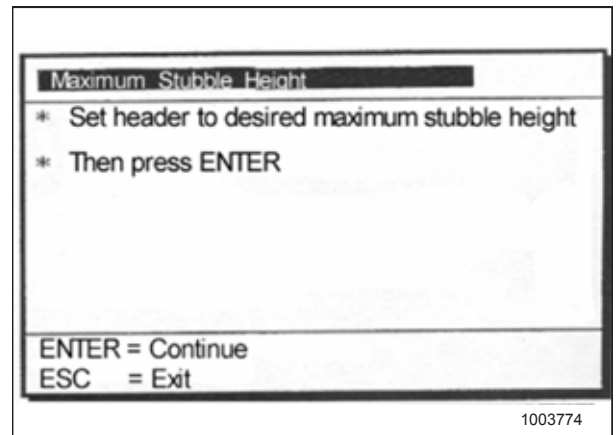


Figure 3.506: New Holland Calibration Dialog Box

2. Move header to the correct position using the header up or down control switch on the multifunction handle.
3. Press ENTER to continue. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.
4. Press ENTER or ESC to close the calibration screen. The calibration is now complete.

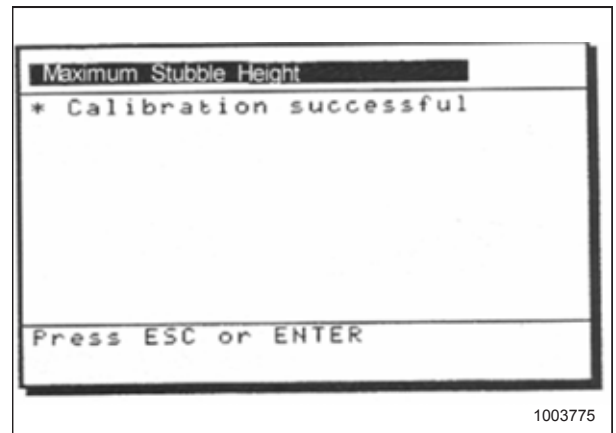


Figure 3.507: New Holland Calibration Dialog Box

## OPERATION

### *Adjusting Header Raise Rate – New Holland CR/CX Series*

If necessary, the header raise rate (the first speed on the HEADER HEIGHT rocker switch of the multifunctional handle) can be adjusted.

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

**NOTE:**

For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to [3.8.19 New Holland Combines – CR Series – 2015 and Later, page 279](#).

1. Select HEADER RAISE RATE on the combine display.
2. Use the + or – buttons to change the setting.
3. Press ENTER to save the new setting.

**NOTE:**

The raise rate can be changed from 32–236 in increments of 34. The factory setting is 100.

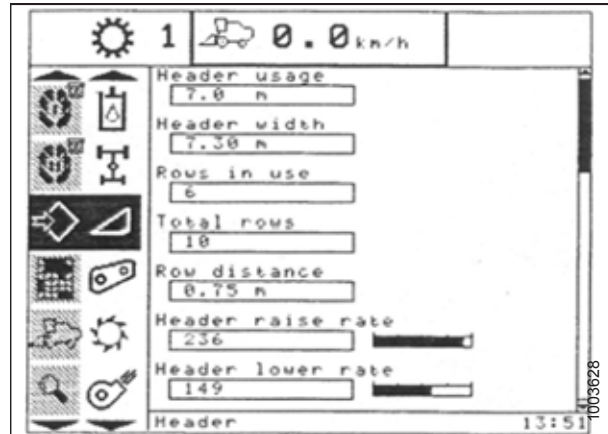


Figure 3.508: New Holland Combine Display

### *Setting the Header Lower Rate – New Holland CR/CX Series*

If necessary, the header lower rate (the automatic header height control button or second speed on the header height rocker switch of the multifunction handle) can be adjusted.

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

**NOTE:**

For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to [3.8.19 New Holland Combines – CR Series – 2015 and Later, page 279](#).

## OPERATION

1. Select HEADER LOWER RATE on the combine display.
2. Use the + or – buttons to change the setting to 50.
3. Press ENTER to save the new setting.

**NOTE:**

The header lower rate can be changed from 2–247 in increments of 7. It is factory-set to 100.

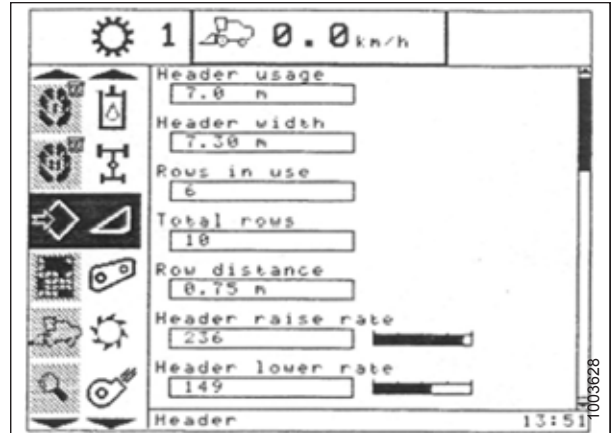


Figure 3.509: New Holland Combine Display

### *Setting the Sensitivity of the Auto Header Height Control – New Holland CR/CX Series*

The sensitivity adjustment controls the distance the cutterbar must travel up or down before the auto header height control (AHHC) reacts and raises or lowers the feeder house.

When the sensitivity is set to maximum, only small changes in ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower. When the sensitivity is set to minimum, large changes in the ground height are needed to cause the feeder house to raise or lower.

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

**NOTE:**

For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to [3.8.19 New Holland Combines – CR Series – 2015 and Later, page 279](#).



## DANGER

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. Engage threshing and feeder house.
2. Select HEIGHT SENSITIVITY on the combine display screen.
3. Use the + or – buttons to change the setting to 200.
4. Press ENTER to save the new setting.

**NOTE:**

The sensitivity can be changed from 10–250 in increments of 10. It is factory-set to 100.



Figure 3.510: New Holland Combine Display

## OPERATION

### Setting Preset Cutting Height – New Holland CR/CX Series

To set the preset cutting height, follow these steps:

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

**NOTE:**

For New Holland CR models 6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90, refer to [3.8.19 New Holland Combines – CR Series – 2015 and Later, page 279](#).

**NOTE:**

Indicator (A) should be at position 0 (B) with the header 254–306 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground. When the header is on the ground, the indicator should be at position 1 (C) for low ground pressure, and at position 4 (D) for high ground pressure. Crop and soil conditions determine the amount of float to use. The ideal setting is as light as possible without header bouncing or missing crop. Operating with heavy settings prematurely wears the cutterbar wearplates.

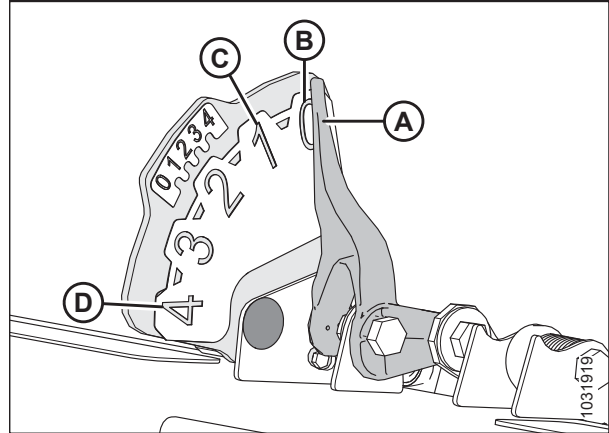


Figure 3.511: Float Indicator

1. Engage the threshing mechanism and the feeder with switches (A) and (B).
2. Set HEADER MEMORY rocker switch (D) in STUBBLE HEIGHT/AUTOFLOAT mode position (A) or (B).
3. Raise or lower the header to the desired cutting height using HEADER HEIGHT and HEADER LATERAL FLOAT momentary switch (C).
4. Lightly press AUTOMATIC HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL button (E) for a minimum of 2 seconds to store the height position. A beep will confirm the setting.

**NOTE:**

It is possible to store two different header height values by using HEADER MEMORY rocker switch (D) in STUBBLE HEIGHT/AUTOFLOAT mode position (A) or (B).

5. Raise or lower the reel to the desired working height using REEL HEIGHT momentary switch (E).
6. Lightly press AUTOMATIC HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL button (E) for a minimum of 2 seconds to store the height position. A beep will confirm the setting.

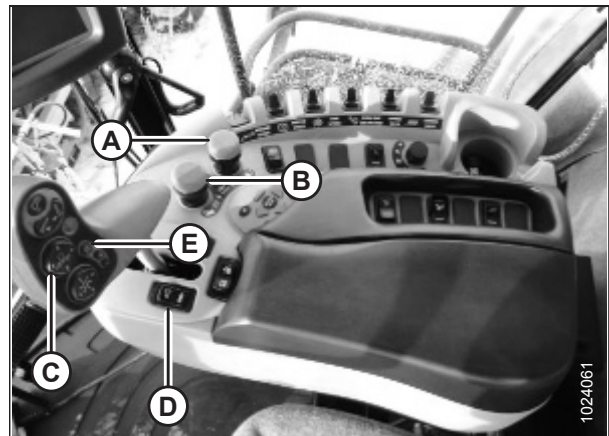


Figure 3.512: New Holland Combine Controls

## OPERATION

- To change one of the memorized header height set points while the combine is in use, use HEADER HEIGHT AND HEADER LATERAL FLOAT rocker switch (A) (slow up/down) to raise or lower header to the desired value. Lightly press AUTOMATIC HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL button (B) for a minimum of 2 seconds to store the new height position. A beep will confirm setting.

**NOTE:**

Fully pressing AUTOMATIC HEADER HEIGHT CONTROL button (B) will disengage float mode.

**NOTE:**

It is not necessary to press rocker switch (C) again after changing header height set point.

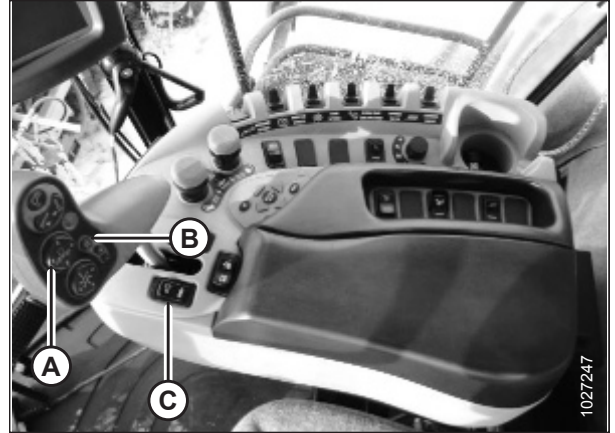


Figure 3.513: New Holland Combine Controls

### 3.8.19 New Holland Combines – CR Series – 2015 and Later

This section applies only to 2015 and later CR models (6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90). For other pre-2015 New Holland combine models, refer to [3.8.18 New Holland Combines – CR/CX Series – 2014 and Prior, page 270](#).

#### *Checking Voltage Range from the Combine Cab – New Holland CR Series*

**NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

**NOTE:**

This section applies only to 2015 and later CR models (6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90). For other pre-2015 New Holland combine models, refer to [3.8.18 New Holland Combines – CR/CX Series – 2014 and Prior, page 270](#).



### **DANGER**

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

- Position the header 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) above the ground, and unlock the float.

## OPERATION

2. Check that float lock linkage is on down stops (washer [A] cannot be moved) at both locations.

**NOTE:**

If the header is not on down stops during the next two steps, the voltage may go out of range during operation causing a malfunction of the auto header height control (AHHC) system. If the header is not on down stops, refer to [3.9 Leveling Header, page 294](#) for instructions.

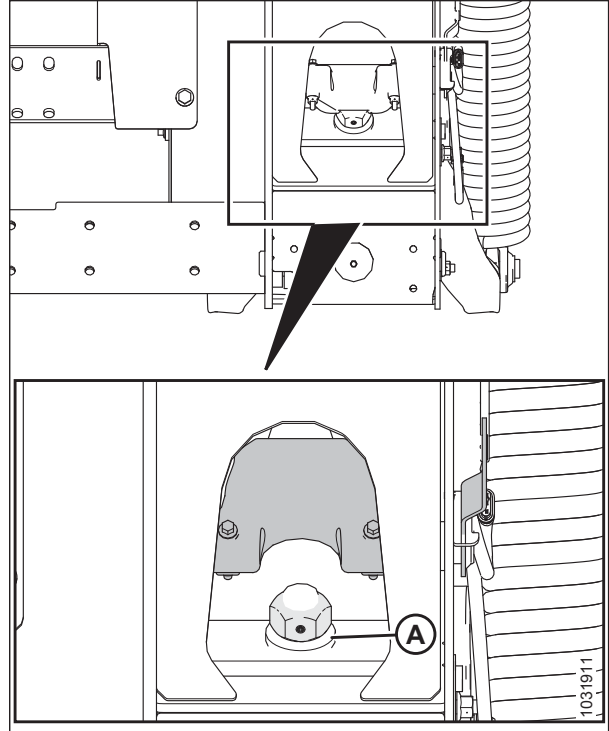


Figure 3.514: Float Lock

3. If pointer is not on zero, loosen bolt (A) and slide float indicator plate (B) until pointer (C) is on 0 (D).
4. Tighten bolt (A).
5. Ensure header float is unlocked.

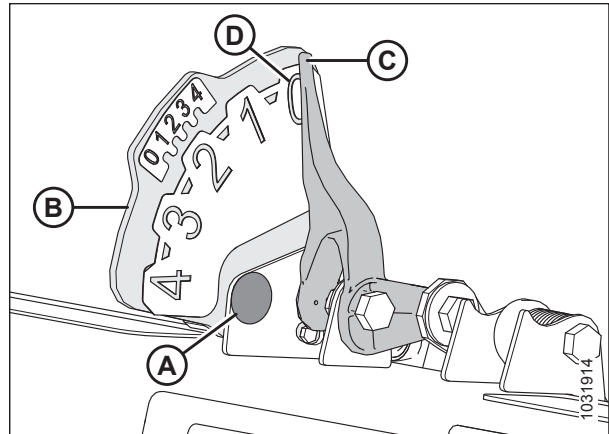


Figure 3.515: Float Indicator



## OPERATION

6. Select DIAGNOSTICS (A) on the main screen. The DIAGNOSTICS screen displays.



Figure 3.516: New Holland Combine Display

7. Select SETTINGS (A). The SETTINGS screen displays.



Figure 3.517: New Holland Combine Display

8. Select HEADER HEIGHT/TILT (A) from the GROUP drop-down menu.
9. Select HEADER HEIGHT SENS. L (B) from the PARAMETER drop-down menu.



Figure 3.518: New Holland Combine Display

## OPERATION

10. Select GRAPH (A). The exact voltage (B) is displayed at the top of the screen.
11. Raise and lower the header to see the full range of voltage readings.

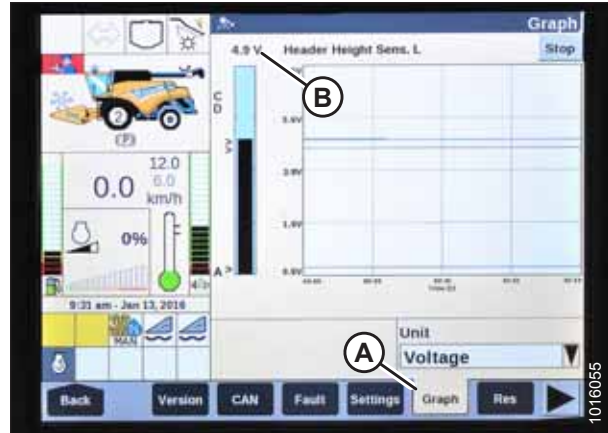


Figure 3.519: New Holland Combine Display

### Setting up Auto Header Height Control – New Holland CR Series

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to **D**. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle.

#### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

#### NOTE:

This section applies only to 2015 and later CR models (6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90). For other pre-2015 New Holland combine models, refer to [3.8.18 New Holland Combines – CR/CX Series – 2014 and Prior, page 270](#).

1. Ensure center-link is set to **D**.
2. Select TOOLBOX (A) on the main screen. The TOOLBOX screen displays.



Figure 3.520: New Holland Combine Display

## OPERATION

3. Simultaneously press UNLOAD (A) and RESUME (B) buttons on the control handle.

### NOTE:

Software in some New Holland combines may not allow you to change the header from FLEX to PLATFORM or the header type from DEFAULT to 80/90 at the main menu. This is now a dealer setting. If you need to change the dealer setting, contact your MacDon Dealer.



Figure 3.521: New Holland Combine Controls

4. Select HEAD 1 (A). The HEADER SETUP 1 screen displays.
5. Select CUTTING TYPE drop-down arrow (B) and change the CUTTING TYPE to PLATFORM (C).



Figure 3.522: New Holland Combine Display

6. Select HEADER SUB TYPE drop-down arrow (A). The HEADER SUB TYPE dialog box displays.



Figure 3.523: New Holland Combine Display

## OPERATION

- Set HEADER SUB TYPE to 80/90 (A) for a New Holland combine.



Figure 3.524: New Holland Combine Display

- Select HEAD 2 (A). The HEADER SETUP 2 screen displays.



Figure 3.525: New Holland Combine Display

- Select the AUTOFLOAT drop-down arrow and set AUTOFLOAT to INSTALLED (A).
- Select the AUTO HEADER LIFT drop-down arrow and set AUTO HEADER LIFT to INSTALLED (B).

### NOTE:

With AUTO HEADER LIFT installed and AHHC engaged, the header will lift up automatically when you pull back on the control handle.

- Set the values for MANUAL HHC RAISE RATE (C) and MANUAL HHC LOWER RATE (D) for best performance according to ground conditions.



Figure 3.526: New Holland Combine Display

## OPERATION

- Set the values for HHC HEIGHT SENSITIVITY (A) and HHC TILT SENSITIVITY (B) for best performance according to ground conditions.



Figure 3.527: New Holland Combine Display

- From REEL HEIGHT SENSOR menu (A), select YES.



Figure 3.528: New Holland Combine Display

### Calibrating the Auto Header Height Control – New Holland CR Series

For best performance of the auto header height control (AHHC), perform these procedures with the center-link set to D. When setup and calibration are complete, adjust the center-link back to desired header angle. For instructions, refer to [3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91](#).

#### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

#### NOTE:

This section applies only to 2015 and later CR models (6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90). For other pre-2015 New Holland combine models, refer to [3.8.18 New Holland Combines – CR/CX Series – 2014 and Prior, page 270](#).



### DANGER

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

#### NOTE:

If header float is set too light, it can prevent calibration of AHHC. You may need to set the float heavier for calibration procedure so header doesn't separate from the float module.

Check the following conditions before starting the header calibration procedure:

## OPERATION

- The header is attached to the combine.
- The combine is on level ground, with the header level to the ground.
- The header is on down stops, and the center-link is set to **D**.
- The engine is running.
- The combine is not moving.
- No faults have been received from the header height controller (HHC) module.
- Header/feeder is disengaged.
- Lateral float buttons are **NOT** pressed.
- ESC key is **NOT** pressed.

To calibrate the AHHC, follow these steps:

1. Select CALIBRATIONS (A) on the main screen. The CALIBRATION screen displays.



Figure 3.529: New Holland Combine Display

2. Select CALIBRATION drop-down arrow (A).



Figure 3.530: New Holland Combine Display

## OPERATION

3. Select HEADER (A) from the list of calibration options.



Figure 3.531: New Holland Combine Display

4. Follow the calibration steps in the order in which they appear on the screen. As you proceed through the calibration process, the display will automatically update to show the next step.

**NOTE:**

Pressing the ESC key during any of the steps or letting the system sit idle for more than 3 minutes will cause the calibration procedure to stop.

**NOTE:**

Refer to your combine operator's manual for an explanation of any error codes.



Figure 3.532: New Holland Combine Display

5. When all steps have been completed, CALIBRATION COMPLETED message is displayed on the screen.

**NOTE:**

If float was set heavier to complete AHHC calibration procedure, adjust to recommended operating float after the calibration is complete.



Figure 3.533: New Holland Combine Display

## OPERATION

### Checking Reel Height Sensor Voltages – New Holland CR Series

#### NOTE:

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

1. On the main page of the combine display, select DIAGNOSTICS (A). The DIAGNOSTICS page opens.



Figure 3.534: New Holland Combine Display

2. Select SETTINGS tab (A). The SETTINGS page opens.
3. From GROUP menu (B), select HEADER.
4. From PARAMETER menu (C), select REEL VERTICAL POSITION.

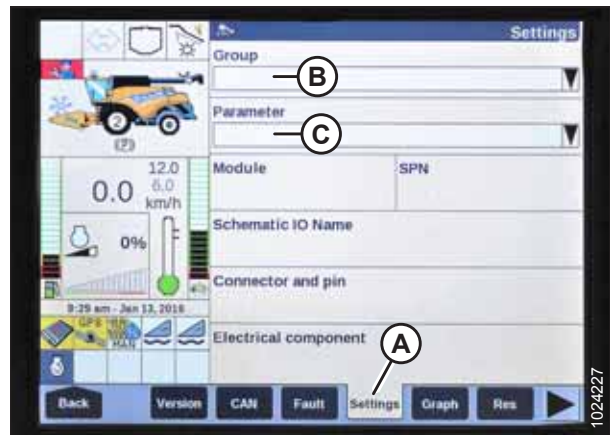


Figure 3.535: New Holland Combine Display

5. Select GRAPH tab (A). The REEL VERTICAL POSITION graph displays.
6. Lower the reel to view high voltage (B). The voltage should be 4.1–4.5 V.
7. Raise the reel to view low voltage (C). The voltage should be 0.5–0.9 V.

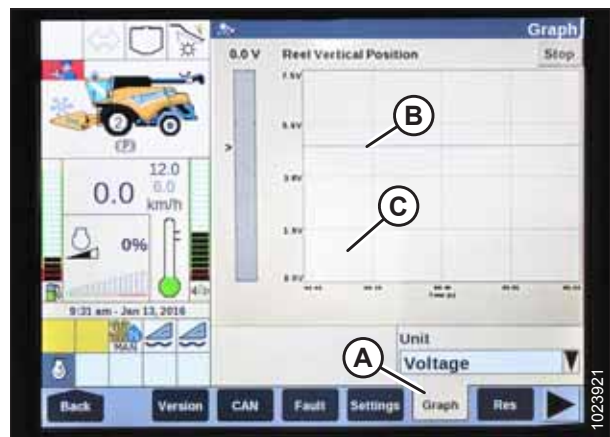


Figure 3.536: New Holland Combine Display



## OPERATION

### Setting Preset Cutting Height – New Holland CR Series

#### NOTE:

This section applies only to 2015 and later CR models (6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90). For other pre-2015 New Holland combine models, refer to [3.8.18 New Holland Combines – CR/CX Series – 2014 and Prior, page 270](#).

The console has two buttons used for auto height presets. The toggle switch that was present on previous models is now configured as shown at right. MacDon headers only require first two buttons (A) and (B). Third button (C) is not configured.

#### DANGER

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.



Figure 3.537: New Holland Combine Controls

#### To set preset cutting height, follow these steps:

1. Engage separator and header.
2. Select preset button 1 (A). A yellow light on the button will illuminate.
3. Raise or lower the header to the desired cutting height.



Figure 3.538: New Holland Combine Controls

4. Hold RESUME button (C) on the multifunction handle to set the preset.

#### NOTE:

When setting presets, always set header position before setting reel position. If header and reel are set at the same time, the reel setting will not save.

5. Raise or lower the reel to the desired working position.
6. Hold RESUME button (C) on multifunction handle to set the preset.
7. Repeat Step 2, [page 289](#) to Step 6, [page 289](#), using preset button 2.



Figure 3.539: New Holland Combine Multifunction Handle

## OPERATION

- Lower header to the ground.
- Select RUN SCREENS (A) on the main screen.



Figure 3.540: New Holland Combine Display

- Select the RUN tab that shows MANUAL HEIGHT.

**NOTE:**

The MANUAL HEIGHT field may appear on any of the RUN tabs. When an auto height preset button is pressed, the display will change to AUTO HEIGHT (A).

- Press one of the auto height preset buttons to select a preset cutting height.



Figure 3.541: New Holland Combine Display

### Setting Maximum Work Height – New Holland CR Series

**NOTE:**

This section applies only to 2015 and later CR models (6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, and 10.90). For other pre-2015 New Holland combine models, refer to [3.8.18 New Holland Combines – CR/CX Series – 2014 and Prior, page 270](#).

- Select TOOLBOX (A) on the main screen. The TOOLBOX screen displays.



Figure 3.542: New Holland Combine Display

## OPERATION

2. Select FEEDER (A). The FEEDER SETUP screen displays.
3. Select MAXIMUM WORK HEIGHT field (B).

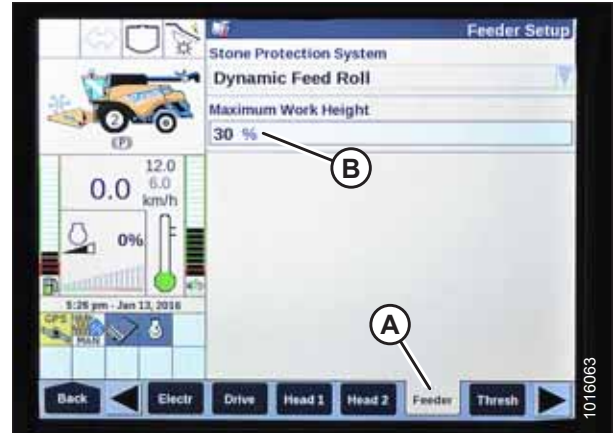


Figure 3.543: New Holland Combine Display

4. Set MAXIMUM WORK HEIGHT to desired value.
5. Press SET and then press ENTER.



Figure 3.544: New Holland Combine Display

### *Configuring Reel Fore-Aft, Header Tilt, and Header Type – New Holland CR Series*

This procedure applies only to 2016 New Holland CR models 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, and 9.90.

#### **NOTE:**

Changes may have been made to the combine controls or display since this document was published. Refer to the combine operator's manual for updates.

## OPERATION

1. Simultaneously press UNLOAD (A) and RESUME (B) buttons on the control handle.



Figure 3.545: New Holland Combine Controls

2. On the HEAD 1 screen, change the CUTTING TYPE from FLEX to PLATFORM as shown at location (A).



Figure 3.546: New Holland Combine Display

3. On the HEAD 2 screen, change HEADER SUB TYPE from DEFAULT to 80/90 as shown at location (A).



Figure 3.547: New Holland Combine Display

## OPERATION

There are now two different buttons for ON GROUND presets. The toggle switch that was present on previous models is now configured as shown at right. MacDon headers only require first two buttons (A) and (B). Third button down (C) is not configured.

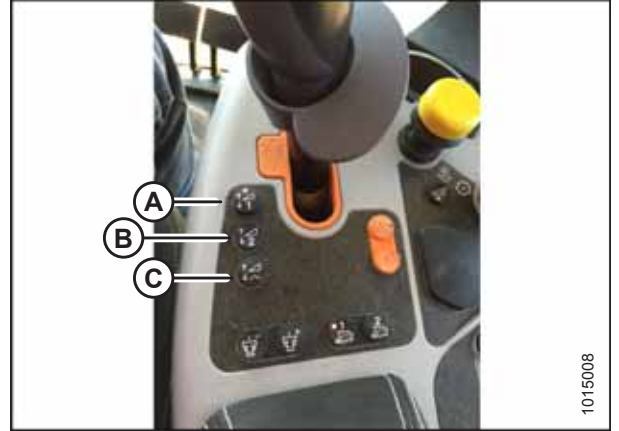


Figure 3.548: New Holland Combine Controls

### 3.9 Leveling Header

The float module is factory-set to provide the proper level for the header. It should not normally require adjustment.

If the header is **NOT** level, perform the following checks prior to adjusting the leveling linkages:

- Check the combine tire pressures.
- Check that the combine feeder house is level. Refer to your combine operator's manual for instructions.
- Check that the top of the float module is level and parallel with the feeder house.

**NOTE:**

The float springs are **NOT** used to level the header.

**!** **DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Park the combine on a level surface.
2. Position the header so that the cutterbar is 254–356 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Lock the header wings. For instructions, refer to [Locking/Unlocking Header Wings, page 75](#).
5. Check, and if necessary adjust the float. For instructions, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 70](#).
6. Disengage both header float locks by pulling float lock handle (A) away from the float module and pushing the float lock handle down and into position (B) (**UNLOCK**).

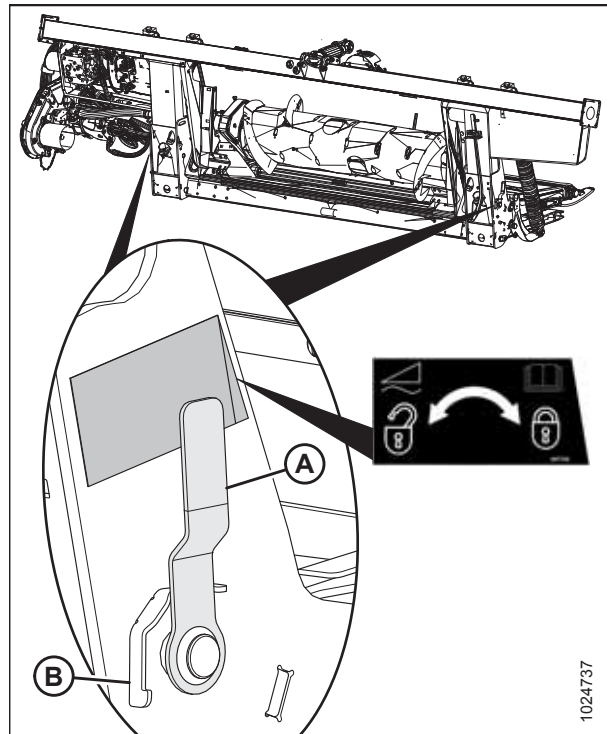


Figure 3.549: Header Float Lock in Locked Position

## OPERATION

7. On the high side of the header, make small ( $1/4$ – $1/2$  turn) **counterclockwise** adjustments to nut (A) to level the header.

**NOTE:**

Set screw (B) does not require loosening for adjustments up to one-half turn of nut (A).

**IMPORTANT:**

Adjustment of more than two turns in either direction may adversely affect header float.

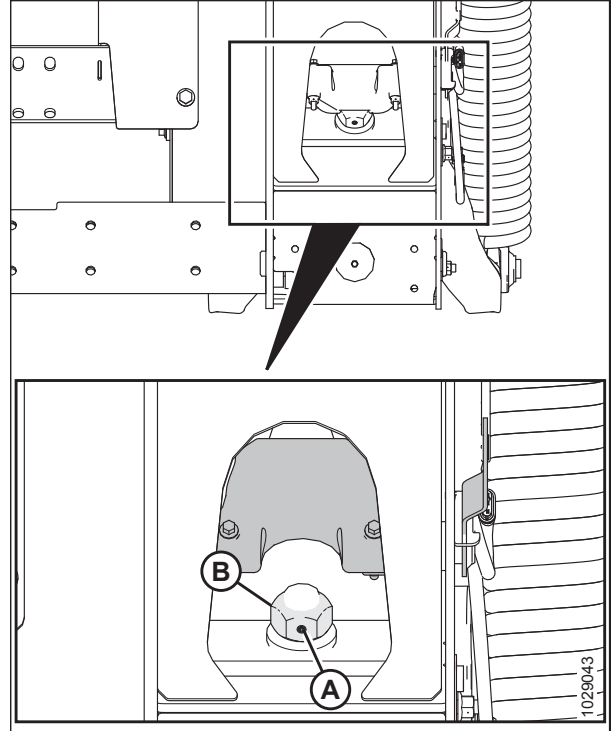


Figure 3.550: Float Lock – Right

8. After adjusting the high side of the header, the float indicator needle (A) will need to be reset to zero. Loosen nut that secures bolt (B), and center the indicator needle on zero.

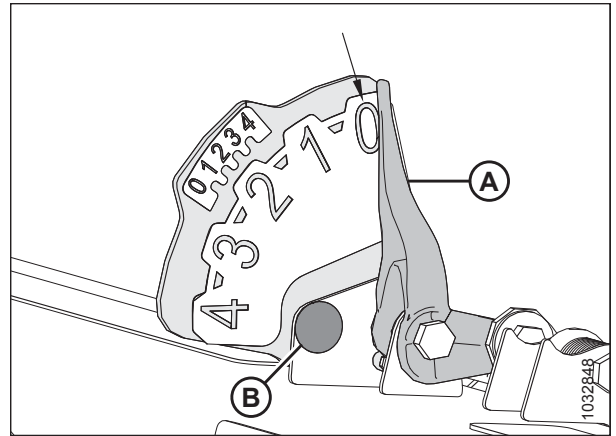


Figure 3.551: Left Float Indicator

## OPERATION

**NOTE:**

Ensure a minimum clearance of 2–3 mm (1/8 in.) (A) between the frame and the back of the bell crank lever.

**NOTE:**

Check the float after leveling header. For instructions, refer to [Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 70](#).

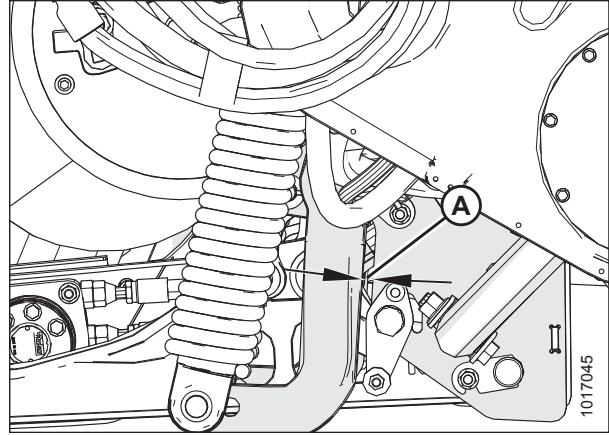


Figure 3.552: Bell Crank



### 3.10 Unplugging the Cutterbar

The cutterbar is located on the front of the header. It supports the knife and guards which is used to cut the crop

 **DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

 **CAUTION**

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

 **CAUTION**

Lowering rotating reel on a plugged cutterbar will damage the reel components.

To unplug cutterbar, reverse the combine feeder house. If the cutterbar is still plugged, do the following:

1. Stop the forward movement of the machine and disengage the header drives.
2. Raise the header to prevent it from filling with dirt, and engage the header drive clutch.
3. If the plug does **NOT** clear, disengage the header drive clutch and fully raise the header.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Engage the header safety props.
6. Clean off the cutterbar by hand.

### 3.11 Unplugging the Float Module Feed Draper

Crop sometimes gets wedged between the feed draper and the feed deck.

1. Stop the forward movement of the machine and disengage the header drives.
2. Raise the header slightly off the ground, and raise the reel.
3. Reverse the combine feed according to the manufacturer specifications (reverse feed varies among different combine models).
4. Turn side draper speed down to 0.
5. Engage the header drive.
6. Slowly increase the side draper speed down to the previous settings once the plug has been cleared.

## 3.12 Transporting the Header

### WARNING

Do NOT drive the combine with header attached on a road or highway at night, or in conditions which reduce visibility, such as fog or rain. The width of the header may not be apparent under these conditions.

### 3.12.1 Transporting Header on Combine

#### CAUTION

- Check local laws for width regulations and lighting or marking requirements before transporting on roads.
- Follow all recommended procedures in your combine operator's manual for transporting, towing, etc.
- Disengage header drive clutch when travelling to and from the field.
- Before driving combine on a roadway, be sure flashing amber lamps, red tail lamps, and head lamps are clean and working properly. Pivot amber lamps for best visibility by approaching traffic. Always use lamps when travelling on roads to provide adequate warning to other vehicles.
- Do NOT use field lamps on roads—they may confuse other drivers.
- Before driving on a roadway, clean slow moving vehicle signs and reflectors, adjust rear view mirrors, and clean windows.
- Lower the reel fully and raise the header unless transporting in hills.
- Maintain adequate visibility and be alert for roadside obstructions, oncoming traffic, and bridges.
- When travelling downhill, reduce speed and keep header at a minimum height to provide maximum stability if forward momentum is stopped for any reason. Raise header completely at bottom of grade to avoid contacting the ground.
- Travel at safe speeds to ensure complete machine control and stability at all times.

### 3.12.2 Towing

Headers with the Slow Speed Transport/Gauge Wheel option can be towed behind a properly configured MacDon windrower or an agricultural tractor to a max of 32 km/h (20 mph). For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.

#### *Attaching Header to Towing Vehicle*

#### CAUTION

Adhere to the following slow speed transport instructions to prevent loss of control leading to bodily injury and/or machine damage:

- Weight of towing vehicle must exceed header weight to ensure adequate control and braking performance.
- Do NOT tow with any highway-capable vehicle. Use only an agricultural tractor, agricultural combine, or a properly configured MacDon windrower.
- Ensure reel is fully lowered and back on support arms to increase header stability during transport. For headers with hydraulic reel fore-aft, never connect the fore-aft couplers to each other or the circuit will be complete and the reel could creep forward during transport.
- Check that all pins are properly secured in transport position at wheel supports, cutterbar support, and hitch.
- Check tire condition and pressure prior to transporting.
- Connect hitch to towing vehicle using a proper hitch pin with a spring locking pin or other suitable fastener.
- Attach hitch safety chain to towing vehicle. Adjust safety chain length to provide only enough slack to permit turning.
- Connect header seven-pole plug wiring harness to mating receptacle on towing vehicle. (The seven-pole receptacle is available from your MacDon Dealer parts department.)
- Ensure lights are functioning properly and clean the slow moving vehicle sign and other reflectors. Use flashing warning lights unless prohibited by law.

#### *Towing the Header*

#### CAUTION

Adhere to the following slow speed transport instructions to prevent loss of control leading to bodily injury and/or machine damage:

- Do NOT exceed 32 km/h (20 mph).
- Reduce transport speed to less than 8 km/h (5 mph) for slippery or rough conditions
- Turn corners at only very low speeds (8 km/h [5 mph] or less) as header stability is reduced while cornering. Do NOT accelerate when making or coming out of a turn.
- Obey all highway traffic regulations in your area when transporting on public roads. Use flashing amber lights unless prohibited by law.

### 3.12.3 Converting from Transport to Field Position (Option)

#### *Moving Left Outboard Wheel From Transport to Working Position – ContourMax™ Option*

The left outboard wheel need to be moved to the working position after being in the transport position.

#### **⚠ DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup or fall of raised header, stop engine, remove key, and engage safety props before going under header for any reason. If using a lifting vehicle, be sure header is secure before proceeding.

1. Start the engine.
2. Raise the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the header safety props or support the header on blocks on level ground. If using blocks to support the header, ensure the header is approximately 914 mm (36 in.) off the ground.
5. Remove lynch pin (A).
6. Remove locking pin (B).
7. Slide wheel assembly (C) out of storage bracket (D).

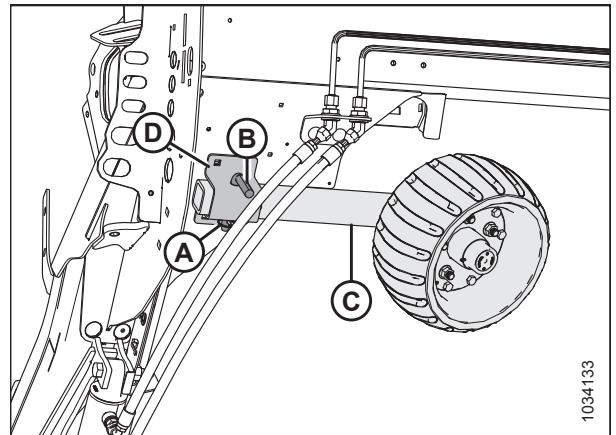


Figure 3.553: Left Wheel Assembly

8. With the wheel facing inboard, align wheel assembly (C) with the isolator assembly and slide it towards the front of the header until the pin holes line up.
9. Install locking pin (B).
10. Install lynch pin (A).

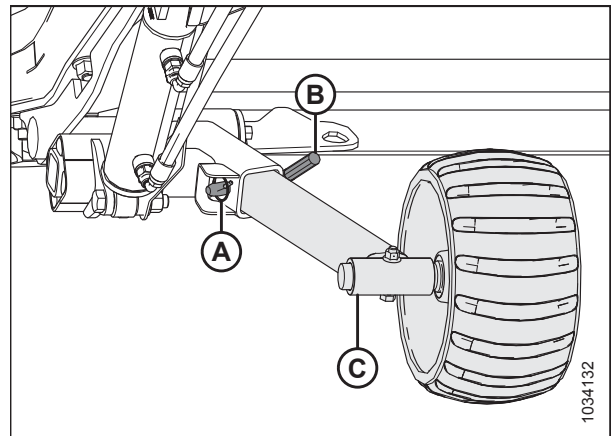


Figure 3.554: Left Wheel Assembly

## OPERATION

### Removing Tow-Bar

1. Block the header tires with wheel chocks (A) to prevent header from rolling.



Figure 3.555: Tire Blocking

2. Disconnect electrical connector (A) and safety chain (B) from towing vehicle and store as shown.
3. If removing a tow-bar with an extension, proceed to Step 4, [page 302](#). If removing a tow-bar without an extension, proceed to Step 16, [page 304](#).

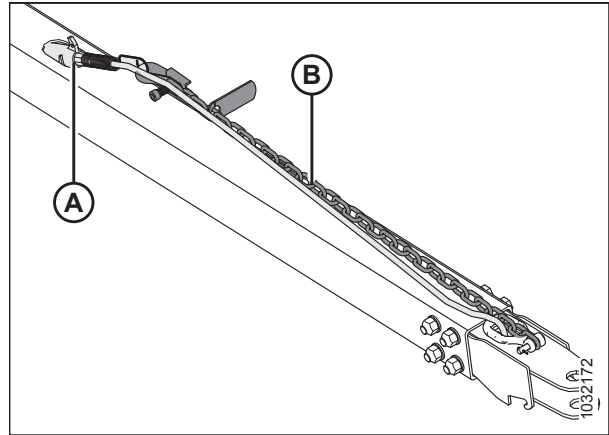


Figure 3.556: Tow-Bar Assembly

### Removing tow-bar installed with an extension:

4. Disconnect tow-bar harness (A) from extension harness (B).
5. Remove lynch pin (C) from latch.

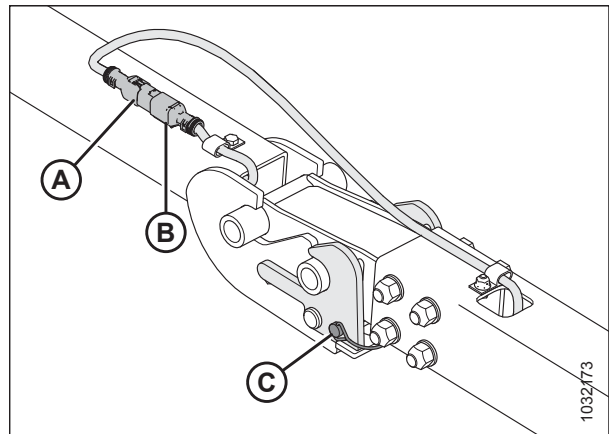


Figure 3.557: Tow-Bar / Extension Harness

## OPERATION

6. Secure tow-bar harness (A) in storage location.
7. Lift up on hitch near latch connection to take weight off of latch. While lifting, pull up on latch handle (B) to clear tow-bar lug, and then slowly lower assembly to the ground.
8. Lift end of tow-bar (C) and pull away from extension (D).

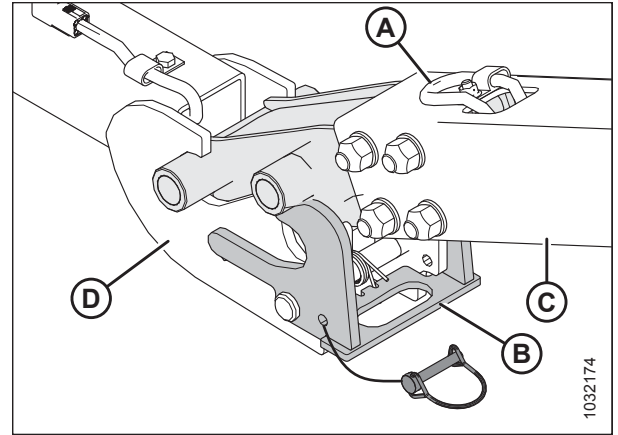


Figure 3.558: Tow-Bar / Extension Joint

9. Unplug tow-bar extension electrical harness (A) from left transport pivot harness (B).

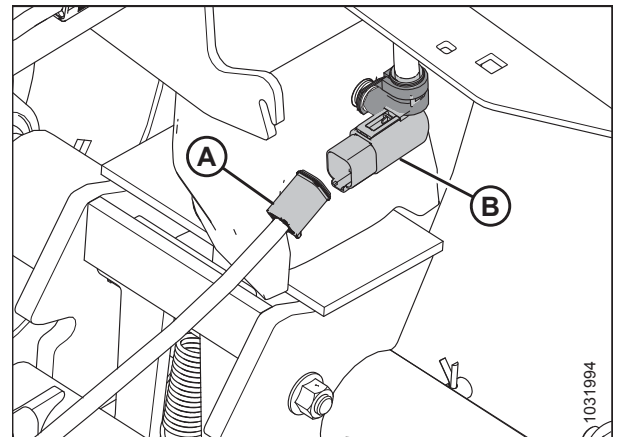


Figure 3.559: Tow-Bar Electrical Connection

10. Remove lynch pin (A) from transport pivot (B).
11. Push back on latch (C) to free extension (D).

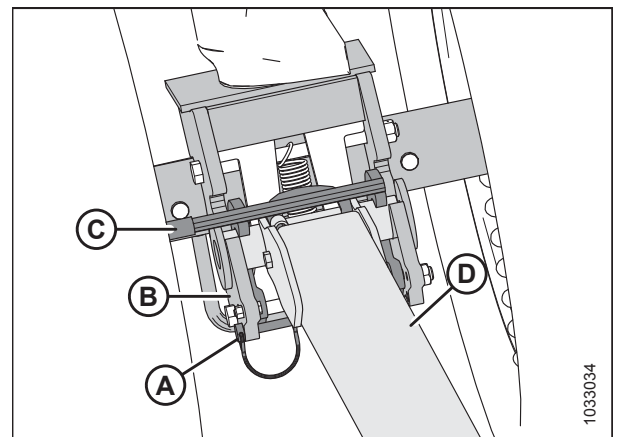


Figure 3.560: Tow-Bar Extension and Transport Pivot

## OPERATION

12. Lift extension (A) and pull away from transport pivot (B).
13. Secure extension harness (C) inside the tow-bar extension (A) tube.
14. Reinstall lynch pin in left transport pivot for safe keeping.
15. For tow-bar storage, refer to *Storing Tow-Bar, page 305*.

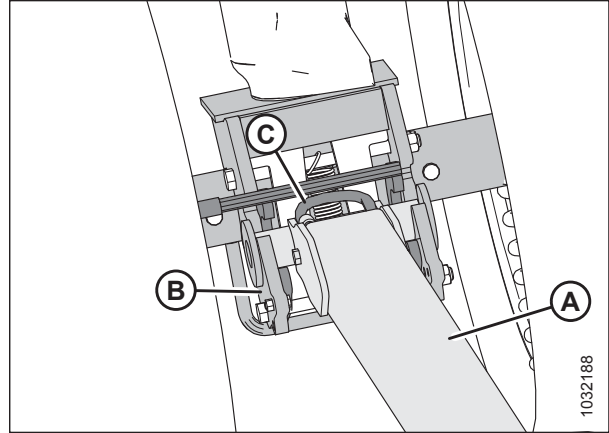


Figure 3.561: Latch Disengaged from Extension

### **Removing tow-bar installed without an extension:**

16. Unplug tow-bar extension electrical harness (A) from left transport pivot harness (B).

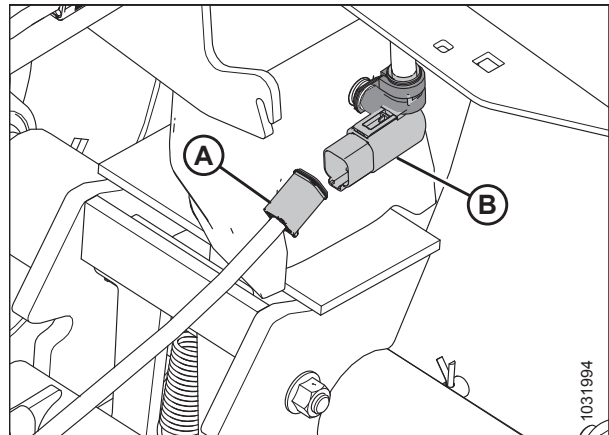


Figure 3.562: Tow-Bar Electrical Connection

17. Remove lynch pin (A), then push back on latch (B) to free the tow-bar.

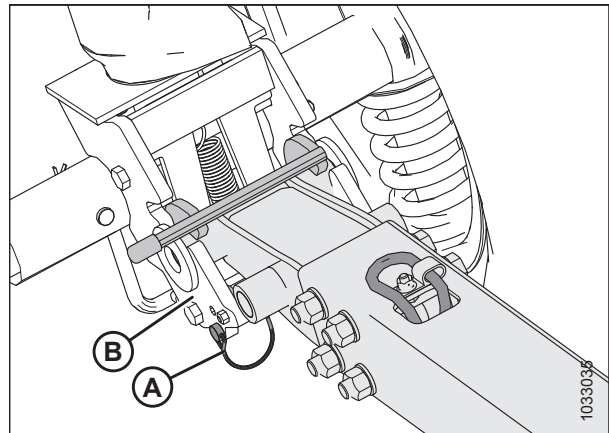


Figure 3.563: Tow-Bar and Left Transport Pivot



## OPERATION

18. Lift tow-bar (A) and pull away from transport pivot (B).
19. Reinstall lynch pin in left transport pivot for safe keeping.
20. For tow-bar storage, refer to *Storing Tow-Bar*, page 305.

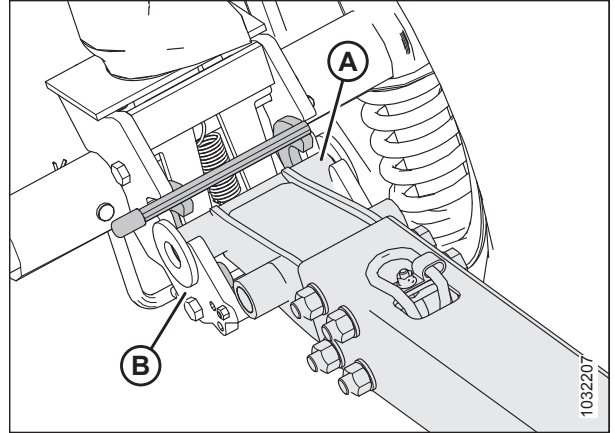


Figure 3.564: Tow-Bar and Left Transport Pivot

### Storing Tow-Bar

#### Tow-bar Extension

1. Insert tube end (B) of tow-bar extension (A) onto pin (C).
2. Rotate tow-bar extension to cradle (D).

**NOTE:**

To prevent tow-bar extension from shaking loose, ensure extension bar engages groove in bracket (E).

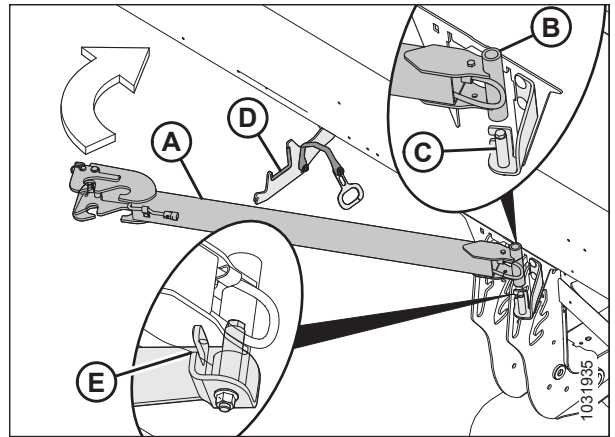


Figure 3.565: Tow-Bar Extension Storage

3. Secure tow-bar extension by hooking strap handle (A) onto notch in cradle (B).

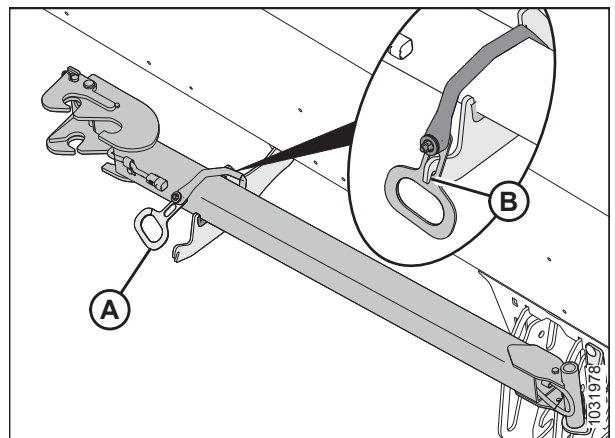


Figure 3.566: Tow-Bar Extension Storage

## OPERATION

### Tow-bar

4. Open left endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 33](#).
5. With tow chain and harness (A) facing up, insert hitch end (B) of tow bar into left backtube.

#### IMPORTANT:

Header endshield removed from illustration for clarity.

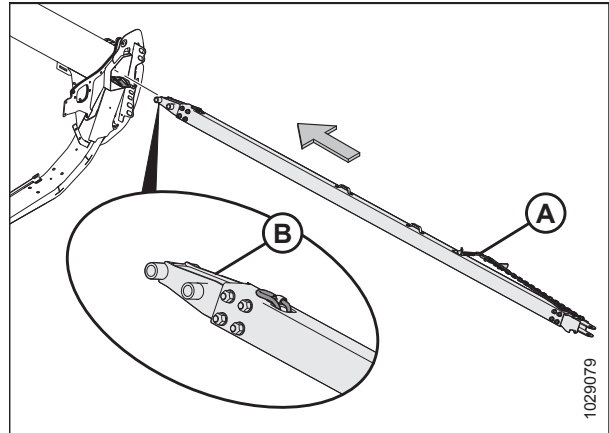


Figure 3.567: Hitch End

6. Slide tow-bar inside the backtube until hooks (A) engage the slots of support angle (B).
7. Close header endshield. For instructions, refer to [Closing Header Endshields, page 34](#).

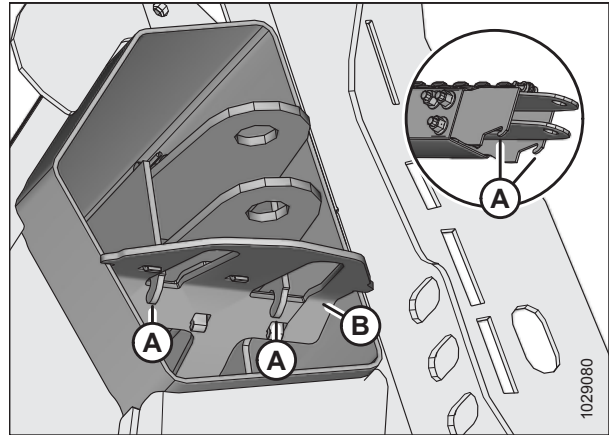


Figure 3.568: Clevis End Retainer Hooks

### Moving Front (Left) Wheels into Field Position

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under header for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

## OPERATION

2. Raise the header until left wheels are 51–102 mm (2–4 in.) off the ground.
3. Turn front wheel assembly (A) counterclockwise, 90°.

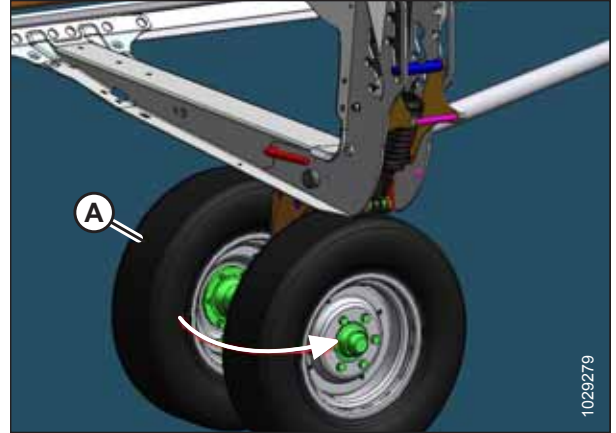


Figure 3.569: Front Wheels

4. Ensure latch (A) is in place, wheel rotation is limited in the position.
5. Secure latch with clevis pin (B).

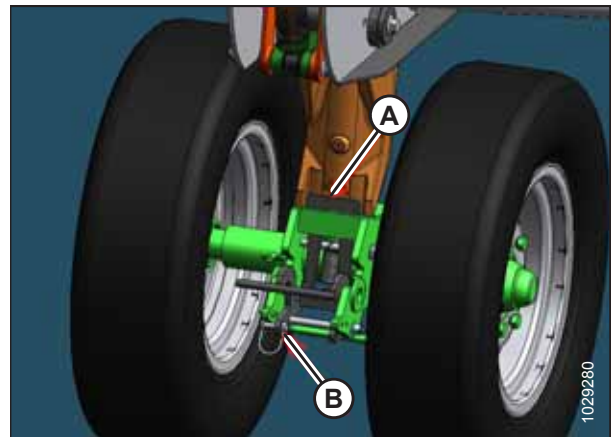


Figure 3.570: Front Wheels

6. Push left transport pivot (A) forward and rotate handle (B) clockwise until left transport pivot releases.

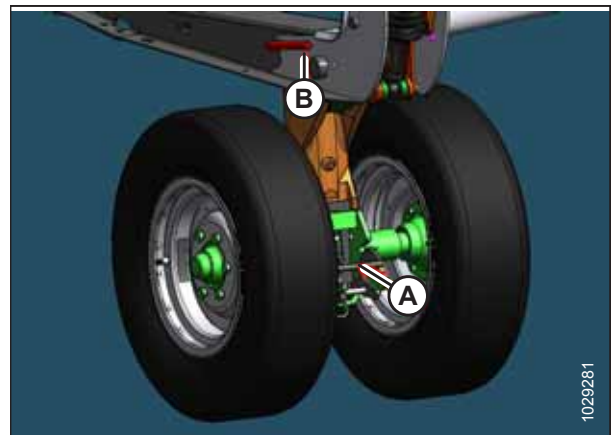


Figure 3.571: Front Wheels

## OPERATION

7. Lift up on handle (A) until desired gauge wheel position is reached. Strut pin will automatically engage into position.
8. Pull back on suspension handle (B) to bypass a gauge wheel position.
9. Verify that strut pin (C) is fully engaged into the desired height adjustment slot.

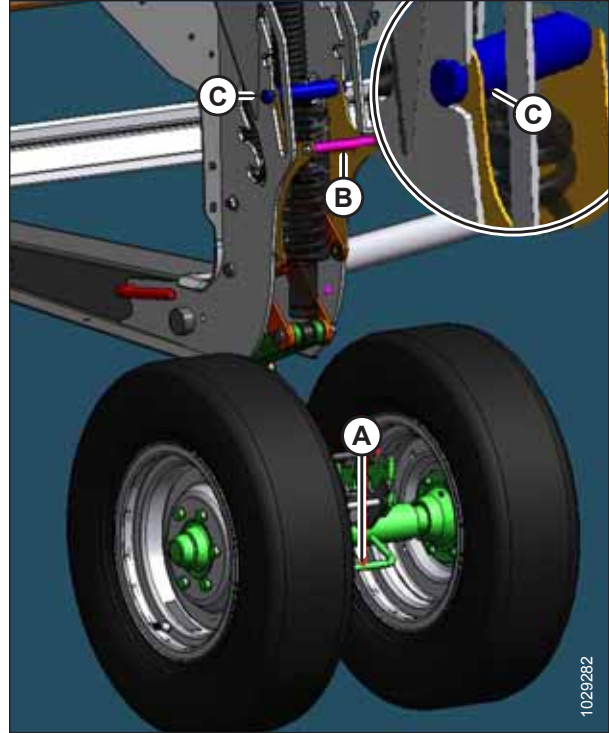


Figure 3.572: Front Wheels

### *Moving Rear (Right) Wheels into Field Position*

#### **DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under header for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Raise the header until the right wheels are 51–102 mm (2–4 in.) off the ground.
3. Remove clevis pin (A) from right transport axle latch.
4. Support right transport axle using wheel handle (B) then push handle (C) to release right transport axle from header frame.
5. Lower right transport axle to ground using wheel handle (B).
6. Reinstall clevis pin (A) into latch for safe keeping.

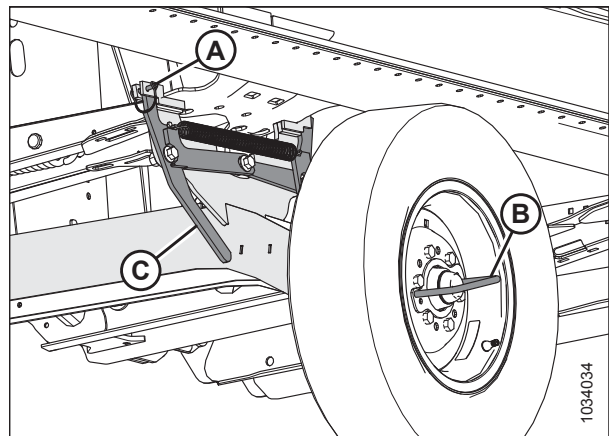


Figure 3.573: Rear Wheel – Right Side

## OPERATION

7. Lift and rotate right transport axle (A) from underneath header using wheel handle.

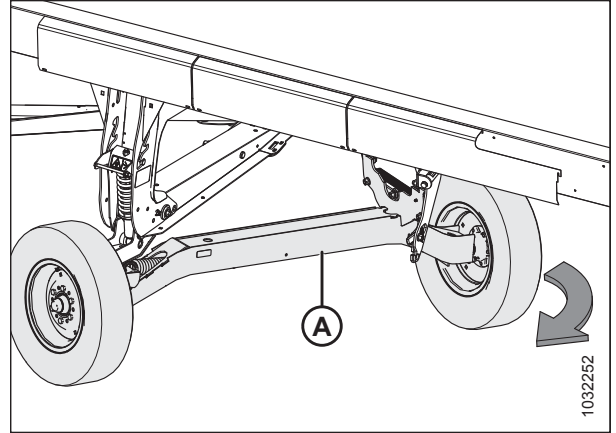


Figure 3.574: Rear Wheel – Right Side

8. Using wheel handle (A), lift and position right transport axle (B) to field support (C) to engage latch.

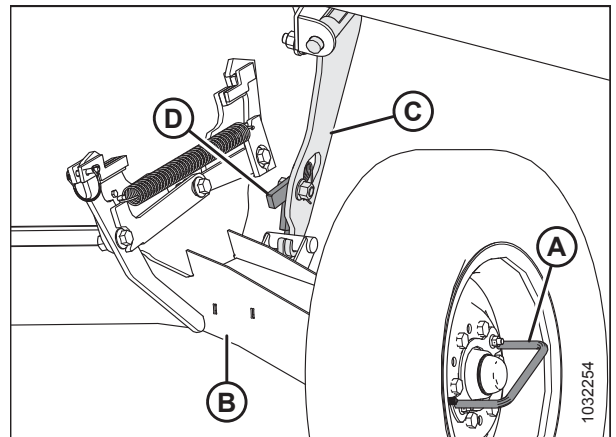


Figure 3.575: Rear Wheel – Right Side

9. Adjust gauge wheel height by pulling suspension handle (A) and lifting axle pivot handle (B).
10. Verify that strut pin is fully engaged into the desired height adjustment slot.

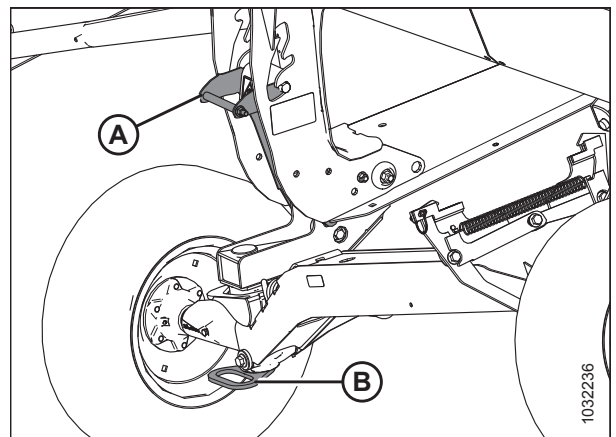


Figure 3.576: Rear Wheel – Right Side

### 3.12.4 Converting from Field to Transport Position (Option)

#### *Moving Left Outboard Wheel From Working to Transport Position*

The left outboard wheel need to be moved to the transport position before the header can be towed.

#### **⚠ DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup or fall of raised header, stop engine, remove key, and engage safety props before going under header for any reason. If using a lifting vehicle, be sure header is secure before proceeding.

1. Start the engine.
2. Raise the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the header safety props or support the header on blocks on level ground. If using blocks to support the header, ensure the header is approximately 914 mm (36 in.) off the ground.
5. Remove lynch pin (A).
6. Remove locking pins (B).
7. Slide left wheel assembly (C) towards the back of the header.

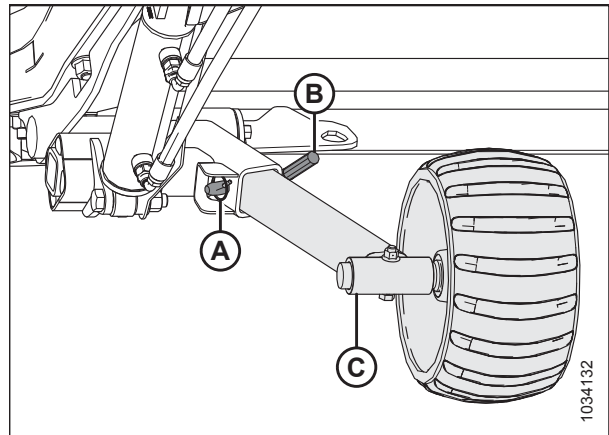


Figure 3.577: Left Wheel Assembly

8. With the wheel facing out, slide left wheel assembly (C) into storage bracket (D).
9. Install locking pin (B).
10. Install lynch pin (A).

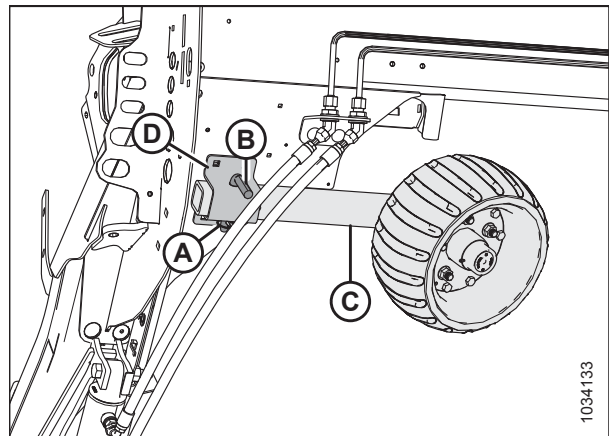


Figure 3.578: Left Wheel Assembly

## OPERATION

### *Moving Front (Left) Wheels into Transport Position*

#### **DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under header for any reason.

#### **CAUTION**

Stand clear of wheels and release linkage carefully as wheels will drop once the mechanism is released.

1. Adjust gauge wheel height to transport position (lowest slot).
2. Pull suspension handle (A) outward and push down on axle pivot handle (B) until transport position is reached.

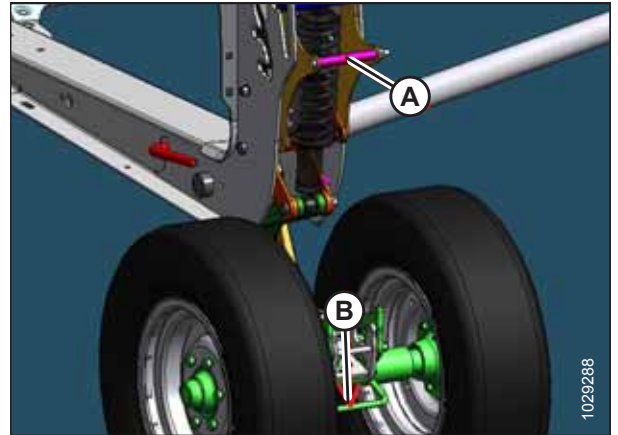


Figure 3.579: Gauge Wheel

3. Secure left transport pivot by pushing pivot handle (A) forward until latch is engaged.
4. Pull back on pivot handle to verify that latch is fully engaged.



Figure 3.580: Gauge Wheel

## OPERATION

5. Remove clevis pin (A) securing latch.
6. Push pivot handle (B) up to unlock wheel assembly.

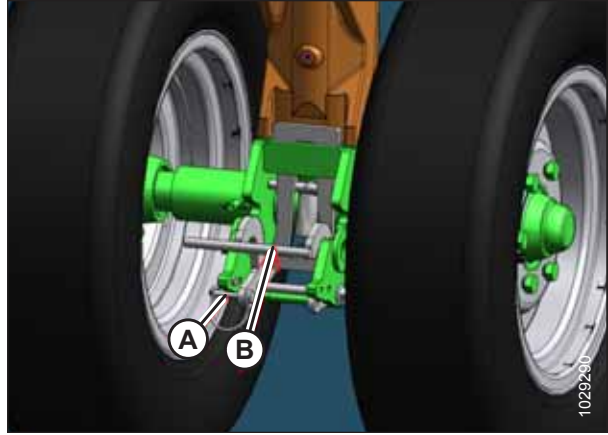


Figure 3.581: Gauge Wheel

7. Turn front wheel assembly clockwise, 90°.

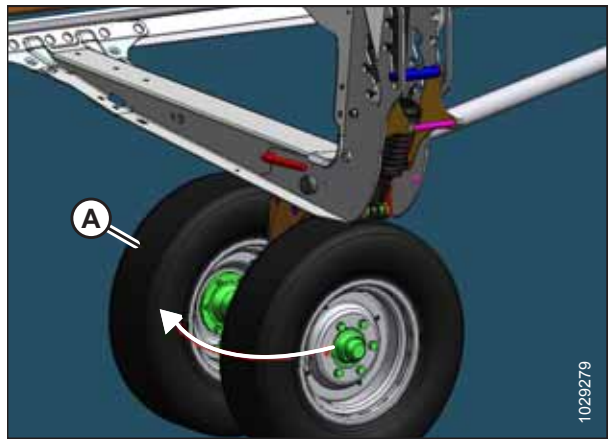


Figure 3.582: Gauge Wheel

### *Moving Rear (Right) Wheels into Transport Position*

When towing the header it must be converted into the transport position.

#### **⚠ DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under header for any reason.

#### **⚠ CAUTION**

Stand clear of wheels and release linkage carefully as wheels will drop once the mechanism is released.



## OPERATION

1. Adjust gauge wheel height to transport position (lowest slot) as follows:
  - If in top slot, push on handle (A) to release.
  - If in mid slot, pull on handle (A) to release.
2. Pull suspension handle (A) outward and push down on axle pivot handle (B).

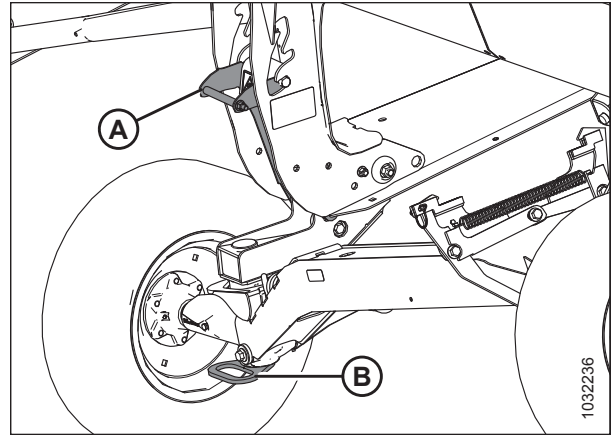


Figure 3.583: Gauge Wheels

3. Push down on latch (A) at right field support (B) to unlock.

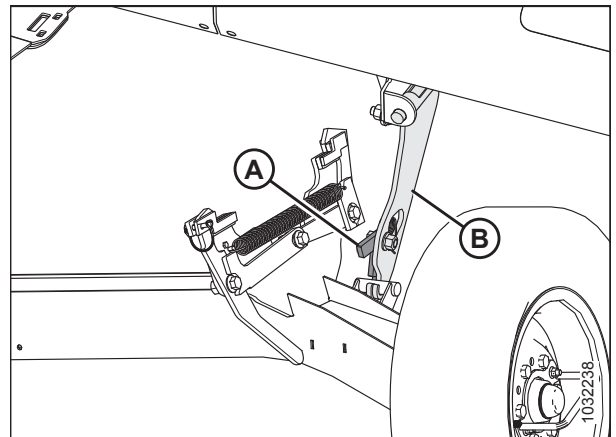


Figure 3.584: Right Field Support

4. Lift wheel handle (A) to remove right transport axle (B) from right field support (C), then lower right transport axle to the ground.

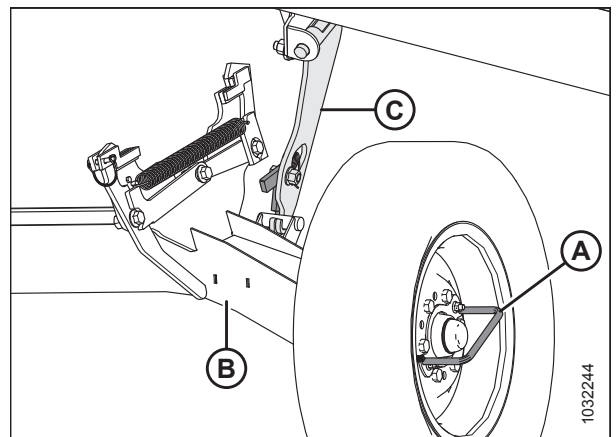


Figure 3.585: Right Field Support

## OPERATION

5. Use wheel handle and rotate right transport axle (A) under the header frame.

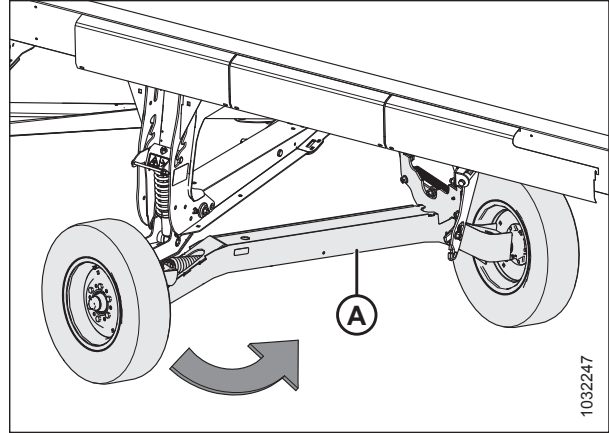


Figure 3.586: Right Transport Axle

6. Remove clevis pin (A) from right transport axle latch.
7. Lift right transport axle with wheel handle (B) until latch engages.
8. Push down on wheel handle (B) to verify latch is engaged.
9. Secure latch by reinstalling clevis pin (A).

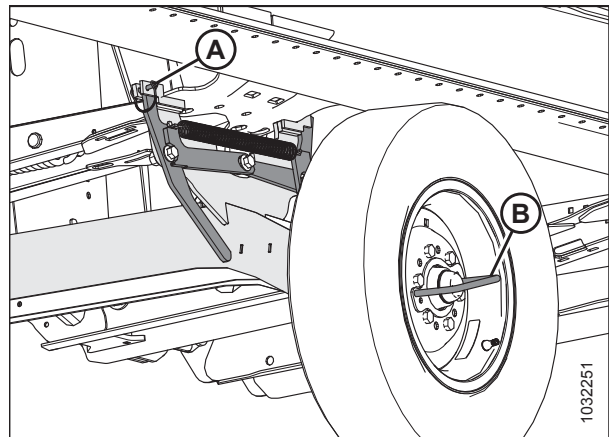


Figure 3.587: Right Transport Axle

### Removing Tow-Bar from Storage

#### Tow-Bar Extension

1. Remove strap (A) from cradle (B) to free tow-bar extension (C).
2. Rotate tow-bar extension to unlock from pin (D).
3. Lift tow-bar extension away (C) from pin (D).

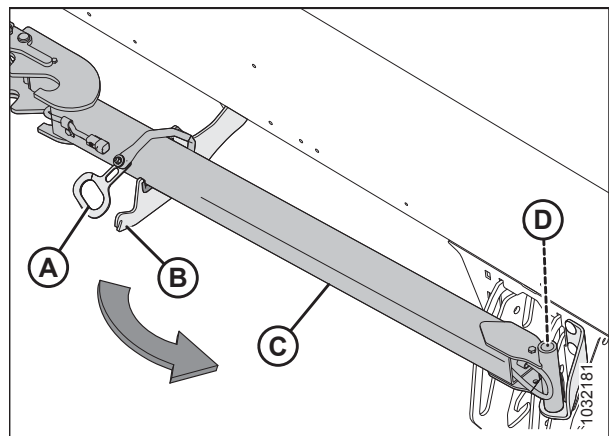


Figure 3.588: Tow-Bar Extension in Storage

## OPERATION

### Tow-Bar

4. Open left endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 33](#).
5. Pull tow-bar until it hit a stop. Lift the tow bar to free clevis stop (C) and hook (A) from support angle (B), then pull it out of tube.

**NOTE:**

Backtube is shown transparent in illustration at right.

6. Slide tow bar out from header backtube.

**NOTE:**

Use caution to avoid contact with any nearby hydraulic or electrical hoses and lines.

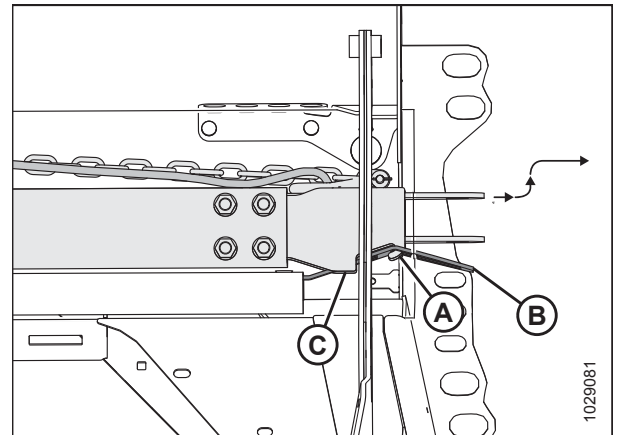


Figure 3.589: Tow-Bar in Storage

### Attaching Tow-Bar

The tow-bar consists of two sections which make storage and handling easier.

1. Block the header tires with wheel chocks (A) to prevent header from rolling.
2. Remove tow-bar from storage. For instructions, refer to [Removing Tow-Bar from Storage, page 314](#).
3. If installing a tow-bar and extension, proceed to Step 4, [page 316](#). If installing tow-bar only, proceed to Step 18, [page 317](#).

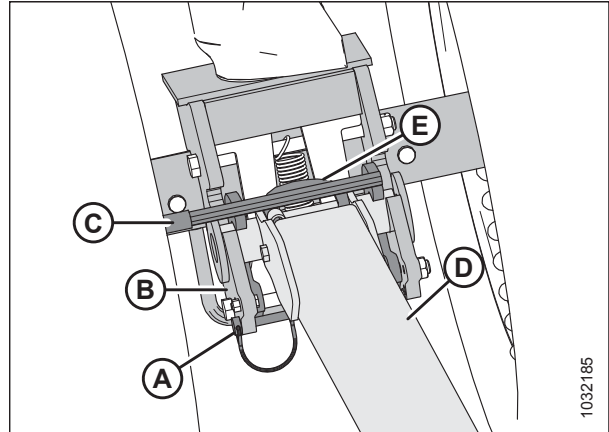


Figure 3.590: Tire Blocking

## OPERATION

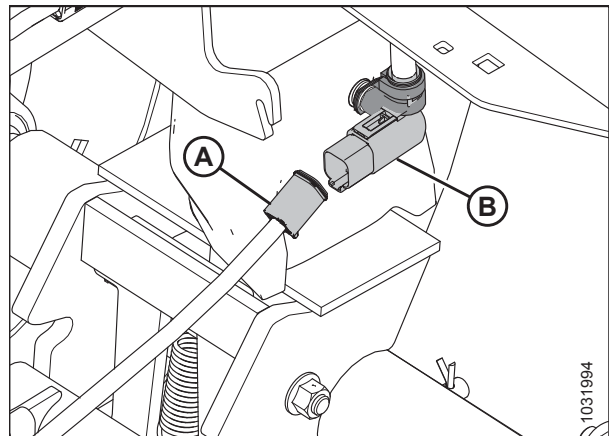
### **Installing tow-bar and extension:**

4. Remove lynch pin (A) from left transport pivot (B).
5. Push extension (D) into lugs of left transport pivot until latch (C) engages.
6. Reinstall lynch pin (A) to transport pivot to secure extension.
7. Retrieve the end of extension harness (E) from inside the extension tube.



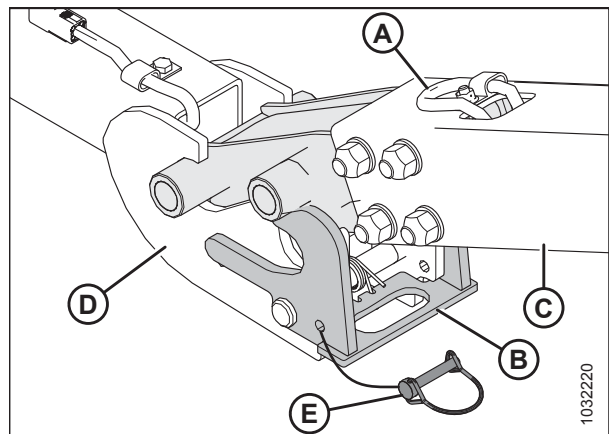
**Figure 3.591: Tow-Bar Extension to Left Transport Pivot**

8. Connect extension wiring harness (A) to left transport pivot harness (B).



**Figure 3.592: Tow-Bar Electrical Connection**

9. Remove lynch pin (E) from latch (B).
10. Position end of tow-bar (C) on extension lugs then lower tow-bar to the ground.
11. Lift extension (D) for latch (B) to engage to tow-bar (C).
12. Retrieve the end of tow-bar harness (A) from storage location.



**Figure 3.593: Tow-Bar to Extension**

## OPERATION

13. Connect tow-bar harness (A) to extension harness (B).
14. Reinstall lynch pin (C) to latch to secure tow-bar.

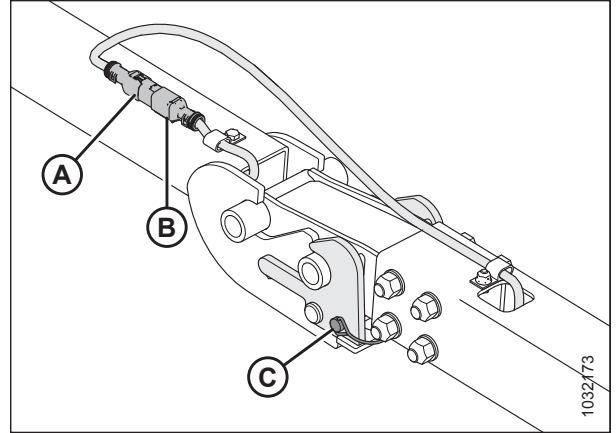


Figure 3.594: Tow-Bar / Extension Harness

15. Retrieve tow-bar wiring harness (A) and safety chain (B) from storage location.
16. Connect tow-bar wiring harness to vehicle, and secure safety chain from tow-bar to tow vehicle.
17. Turn on tow vehicle's 4 way flashers and check that all lights on header are working.

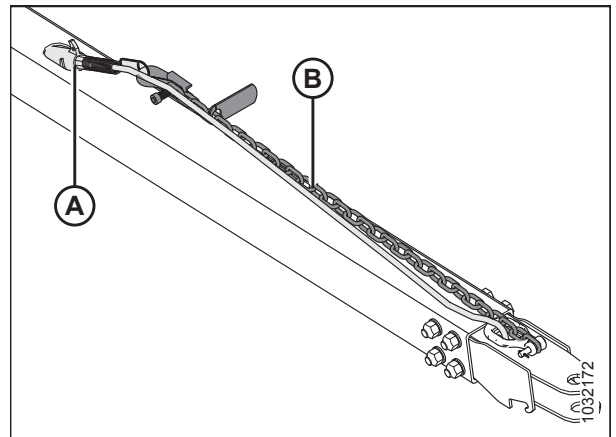


Figure 3.595: Tow-Bar Wiring Harness

### ***Installing tow-bar only:***

18. Remove lynch pin (A) from left transport pivot (B).
19. Push tow-bar (C) into lugs of left transport pivot until latch (D) engages.
20. Reinstall lynch pin (A) to transport pivot to secure tow-bar.
21. Retrieve the end of tow-bar harness (E).

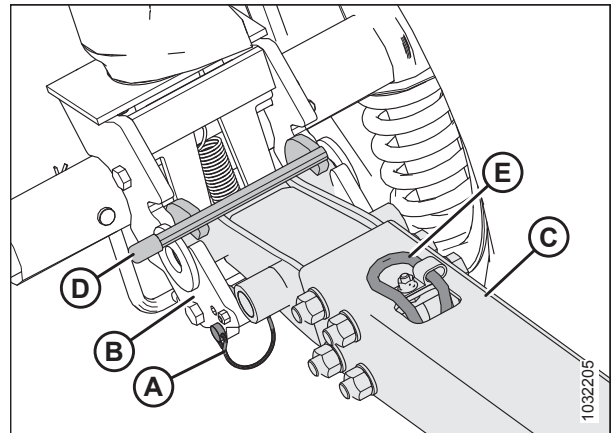


Figure 3.596: Tow-Bar and Left Transport Pivot

## OPERATION

22. Connect extension wiring harness (A) to left transport pivot harness (B).

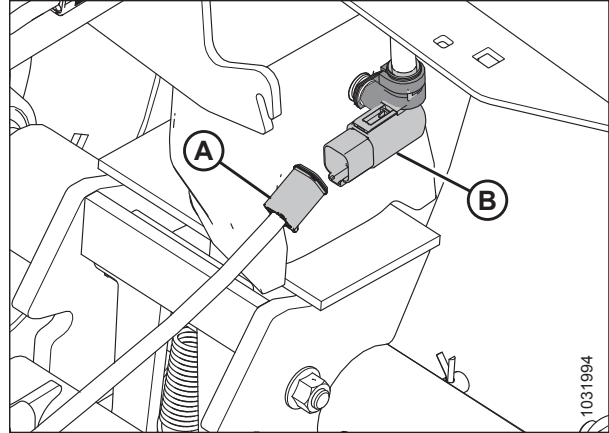


Figure 3.597: Tow-Bar Electrical Connection

23. Retrieve tow-bar wiring harness (A) and safety chain (B) from storage location.
24. Connect tow-bar wiring harness to vehicle, and secure safety chain from tow-bar to tow vehicle.
25. Turn on tow vehicle's 4 way flashers and check that all lights on header are working.

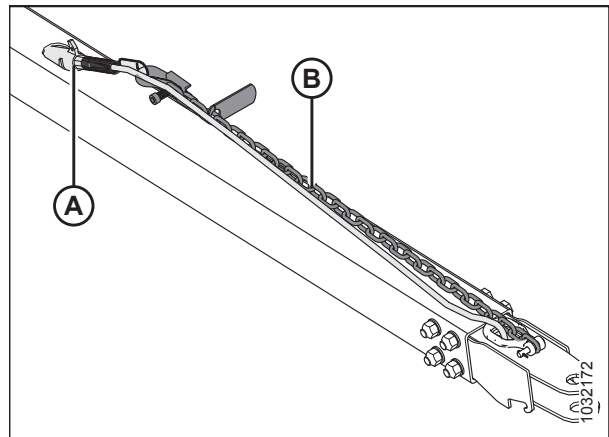


Figure 3.598: Tow-Bar Wiring Harness

### 3.13 Storing the Header

Perform the following procedures at the end of each operating season:

 **CAUTION**

Never use gasoline, naphtha, or any volatile material for cleaning purposes. These materials may be toxic and/or flammable.

 **CAUTION**

**Cover cutterbar and knife guards to prevent injury from accidental contact.**

1. Clean the header thoroughly.
2. Store the machine in a dry, protected place if possible. If storing outside, always cover with a waterproof canvas or other protective material.

**NOTE:**

If storing the machine outside, remove the drapers and store them in a dark, dry place. If not removing the drapers, store the header with the cutterbar lowered so water and snow will not accumulate on the drapers. The weight of water and snow accumulation puts excessive stress on the drapers and header.

3. Lower the header onto blocks to keep the cutterbar off the ground.
4. Lower the reel completely. If stored outside, tie the reel to the frame to prevent rotation caused by the wind.
5. Repaint all worn or chipped painted surfaces to prevent rust.
6. Loosen the drive belts.
7. Lubricate the header thoroughly leaving excess grease on the fittings to keep moisture out of the bearings.
8. Apply grease to exposed threads, cylinder rods, and sliding surfaces of components.
9. Check for worn components and repair as necessary.
10. Check for broken components and order replacements from your Dealer. Immediate repair of these items will save time and effort at the beginning of next season.
11. Replace or tighten any missing or loose hardware. Refer to [8.1 Torque Specifications, page 661](#).





# Chapter 4: Header Attachment/Detachment

This chapter includes instructions for setting up, attaching, and detaching the header.

Combine	Refer to
AGCO (Challenger, Gleaner, and Massey Ferguson) Combines	<a href="#">4.3 AGCO (Challenger, Gleaner, and Massey Ferguson) Combines, page 351</a>
AGCO IDEAL™ Series	<a href="#">4.4 AGCO IDEAL™ Series Combines, page 359</a>
Case IH 7010/8010, 120, 130, 230, 240, 250 Series	<a href="#">4.5 Case IH Combines, page 365</a>
CLAAS 500 (including R Series), 600, and 700 Series, 7000/8000 Series, and Tucano	<a href="#">4.6 CLAAS Combines, page 373</a>
John Deere 60, 70, S, and T Series	<a href="#">4.7 John Deere Combines, page 388</a>
New Holland CR, CX	<a href="#">4.8 New Holland Combines, page 395</a>

**NOTE:**

Ensure the applicable functions (e.g., Automatic Header Height Control [AHHC], draper header option, hydraulic center-link option, hydraulic reel drive) are enabled on the combine and the combine computer. Failure to do so may result in improper header operation.

## 4.1 FM200 Feed Auger Configurations

The FM200 feed auger can be configured to suit various crop conditions; there are five configurations available.

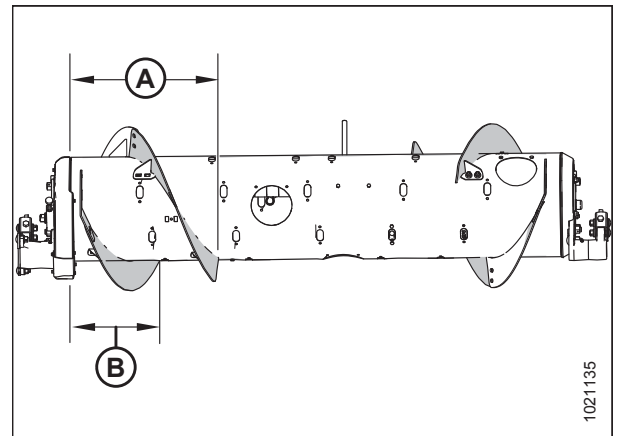
**NOTE:**

Dimensions (A) and (B) are the same for both ends of the auger. They should be within 15 mm (9/16 in.) of the numbers given.

**Narrow configuration** is a standard configuration for the following combines:

- AGCO IDEAL™ Series
- Gleaner® R6/75, R6/76, S6/77, S6/7/88, S96/7/8
- New Holland CR 920/940/960, 9020/40/60/65, 6090/7090, 8060/8070/8080

Narrow configuration uses 4 long bolt-on flightings (2 on the left and 2 on the right) and 18 feed auger fingers are recommended.



**Figure 4.1: Narrow Configuration – Rear View**  
 A - 514 mm (20 1/4 in.)      B - 356 mm (14 in.)

For more information on converting to Narrow configuration, refer to [4.1.1 Narrow Configuration – Auger Flighting, page 324](#).

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

### NOTE:

Dimensions (A) and (B) are the same for both ends of the auger. They should be within 15 mm (9/16 in.) of the numbers given.

**Medium configuration** is a standard configuration for the following combines:

- Case IH 2300/2500 Series
- Case IH 5/6/7088, 7/8010, 7/8/9120, 5/6/7130, 7/8/9230, 5/6/7140, 7/8/9240, 5/6/7150, 7/8/9250
- Challenger® 66/67/680B, 54/560C, 54/560E
- CLAAS 56/57/58/590R, 57/58/595R, 62/63/64/65/66/670, 73/74/75/76/77/780, 7000/8000, Tucano
- John Deere 95/96/97/9860, 95/96/97/9870, S65/66/67/68/690, T670, S76/77/78/790
- Massey Ferguson® 96/97/9895, 9520/40/60, 9545/65, 9380
- New Holland CR 970/980, 9070/9080, 8090/9090, X.90, X.80, 10.80/10.90
- New Holland CX 8X0, 80X0, 8.X0, 8080/8090
- Rostselmash Torum 760/780
- Versatile RT490

**Medium configuration** is an optional configuration for AGCO IDEAL™ Series.

Medium configuration uses 4 short bolt-on flightings (2 on the left and 2 on the right) and 22 feed auger fingers are recommended.

For more information on converting to Medium configuration, refer to [4.1.2 Medium Configuration – Auger Flighting, page 327](#).

### NOTE:

Dimensions (A) and (B) are the same for both ends of the auger. They should be within 15 mm (9/16 in.) of the numbers given.

**Wide configuration** is an optional configuration for the following combines:

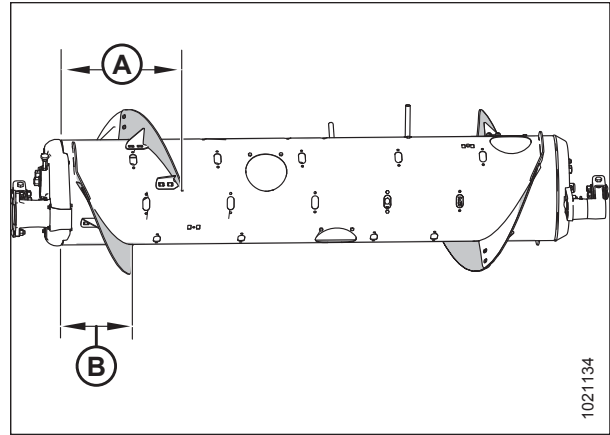
- Challenger® 670B/680B, 540C/560C, 540E/560E
- CLAAS 590R/595R, 660/670, 760/770/780, 8000
- John Deere T670
- Massey Ferguson® 9895, 9540, 9560, 9545, 9565, 9380
- New Holland CX 8X0, 80X0, 8.X0

Wide configuration uses 2 short bolt-on flightings (1 on the left and 1 on the right) and 30 feed auger fingers are recommended.

### NOTE:

This configuration may increase combine capacity on wide feeder house combines in certain crop conditions.

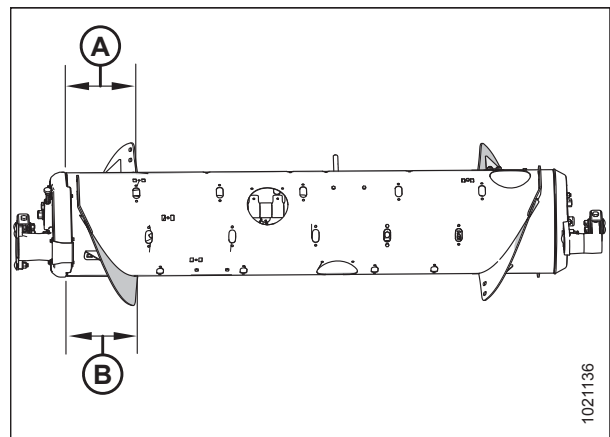
For more information on converting to Wide configuration, refer to [4.1.3 Wide Configuration – Auger Flighting, page 330](#).



**Figure 4.2: Medium Configuration – Rear View**

A - 410 mm (16 1/8 in.)

B - 260 mm (10 1/4 in.)



**Figure 4.3: Wide Configuration – Rear View**

A - 257 mm (10 1/8 in.)

B - 257 mm (10 1/8 in.)

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

### NOTE:

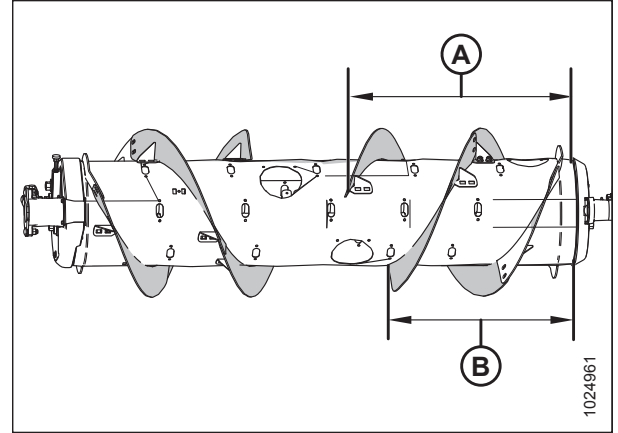
Dimensions (A) and (B) are the same for both ends of the auger. They should be within 15 mm (9/16 in.) of the numbers given.

**Ultra Narrow configuration** is an optional configuration that may improve feeding performance on combines with narrow feeder houses. It may also be helpful when harvesting rice.

Ultra Narrow configuration uses 8 long bolt-on flightings (4 on the left and 4 on the right) and 18 auger fingers are recommended.

### NOTE:

You will need to drill holes in the flighting and in the drum to install the extra flighting.



**Figure 4.4: Ultra Narrow Configuration – Rear View**

A - 760 mm (29 15/16 in.)

B - 602 mm (23 11/16 in.)

For more information on converting to Ultra Narrow configuration, refer to [4.1.4 Ultra Narrow Configuration – Auger Flighting, page 332](#).

**Ultra Wide configuration** is an optional configuration for the following combines:

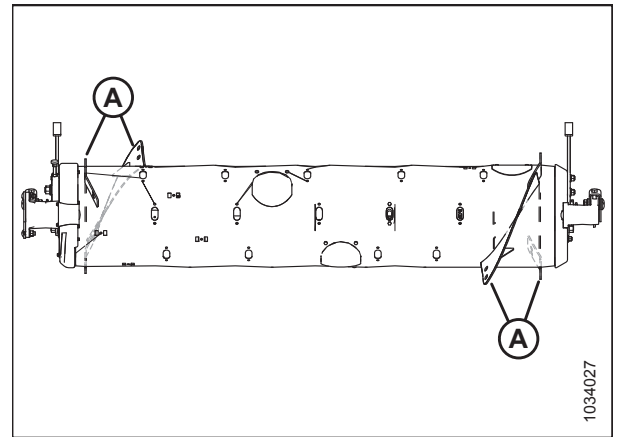
- CLAAS 590R/595R, 660/670, 760/770/780/7000/8000

The Ultra Wide configuration uses no bolt on flighting; only factory-welded flighting (A) is responsible for conveying the crop.

### NOTE:

This configuration may improve feeding for wide feeder house combines.

A total of 30 auger fingers are recommended for this configuration.



**Figure 4.5: Ultra Wide Configuration – Rear View**

For more information on converting to Ultra Wide configuration, refer to [4.1.5 Ultra Wide Configuration – Auger Flighting, page 336](#).

### 4.1.1 Narrow Configuration – Auger Flighting

Narrow configuration uses four long bolt-on flightings (two on the left and two on the right), and 18 auger fingers are recommended.

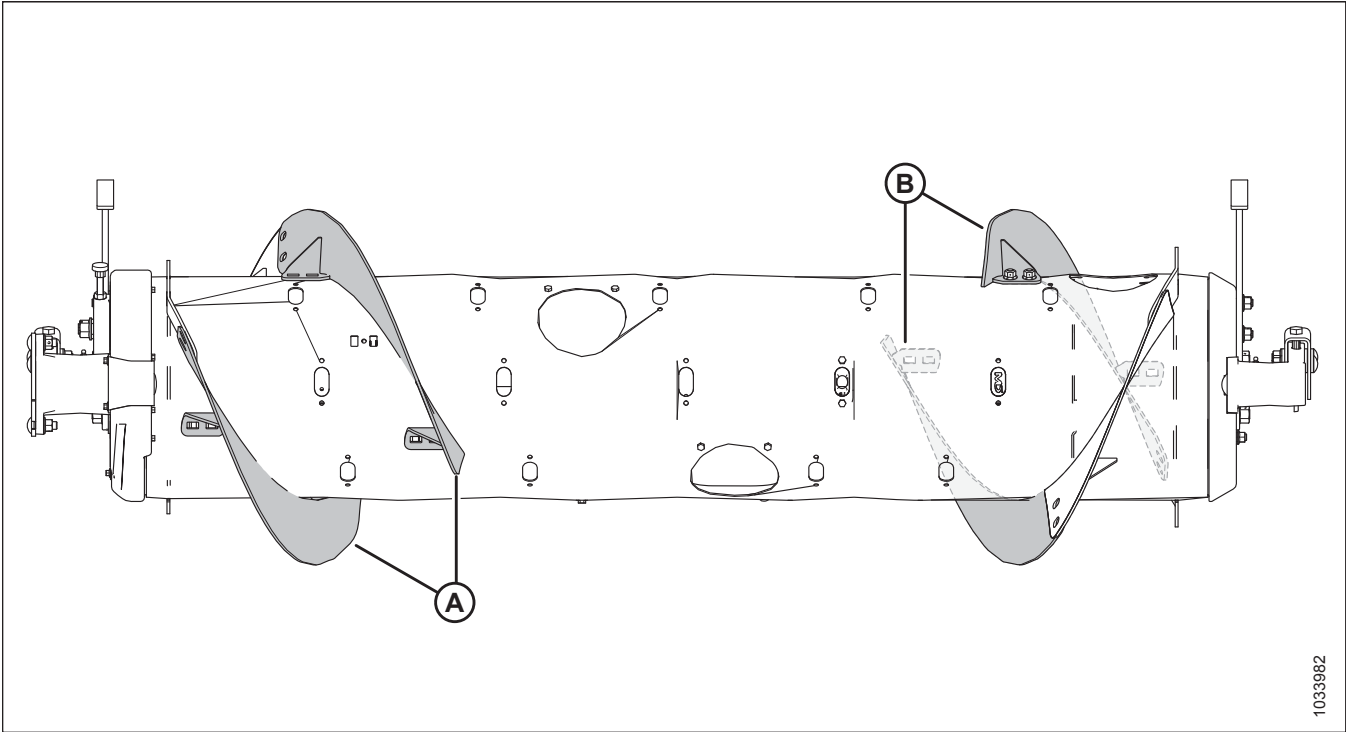


Figure 4.6: Narrow Configuration

A - Left Long Flighting (MD #287889)

B - Right Long Flighting (MD #287890)

#### To convert to Narrow configuration from Ultra Narrow Configuration:

Remove four flightings (A) from the auger and install additional auger fingers. A total of 18 auger fingers is recommended for this configuration.

- For flighting removal instructions, refer to [4.1.6 Removing Bolt-On Flighting, page 337](#).
- For finger installation instructions, refer to [4.1.10 Installing Feed Auger Fingers, page 348](#).

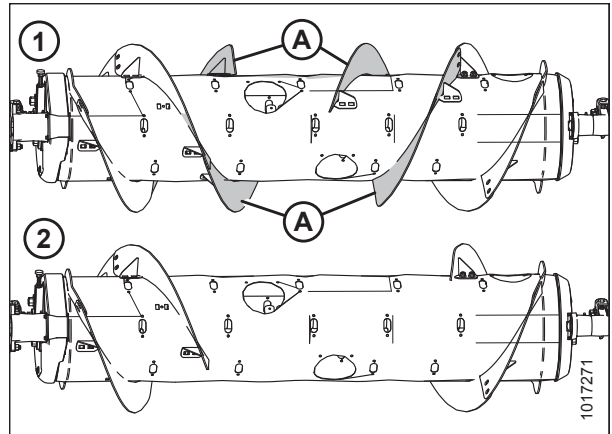


Figure 4.7: Auger Configurations – Rear View

1 - Ultra Narrow Configuration

2 - Narrow Configuration

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

### To convert to Narrow configuration from Medium, Wide, or Ultra Wide configuration:

Two flighting kits (MD #287032 or B6400<sup>45</sup>) are required. You will need to replace any of the existing short flightings (A)<sup>46</sup> with long flightings (B) and remove the extra auger fingers. A total of 18 auger fingers is recommended for this configuration.

#### IMPORTANT:

Extra hardware is included in these kits. Be sure to use the correct hardware in the correct location to prevent damage and to maximize performance.

- For flighting replacement instructions, refer to [4.1.6 Removing Bolt-On Flighting, page 337](#) and [4.1.7 Installing Bolt-On Flighting, page 340](#).
- For finger removal instructions, refer to [4.1.9 Removing Feed Auger Fingers, page 346](#).

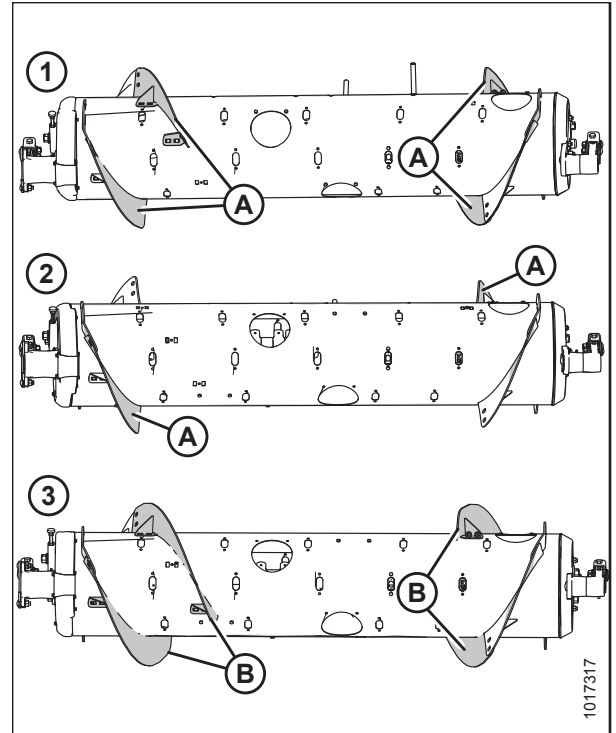


Figure 4.8: Auger Configurations – Rear View

1 - Medium Configuration

2 - Wide Configuration

3 - Narrow Configuration

#### NOTE:

If converting from Ultra Wide configuration, there is no existing bolt-on flighting to remove because that configuration uses only the factory-welded flighting (A).

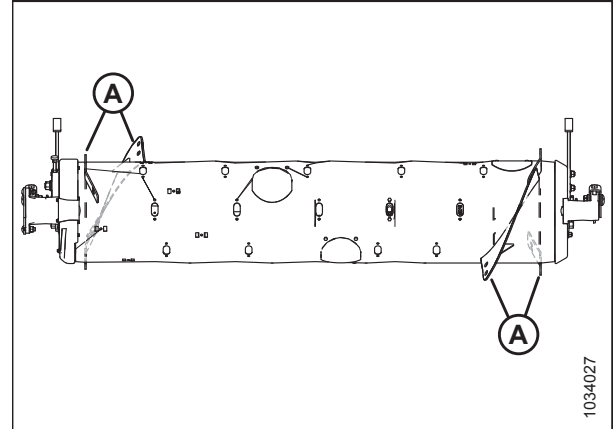
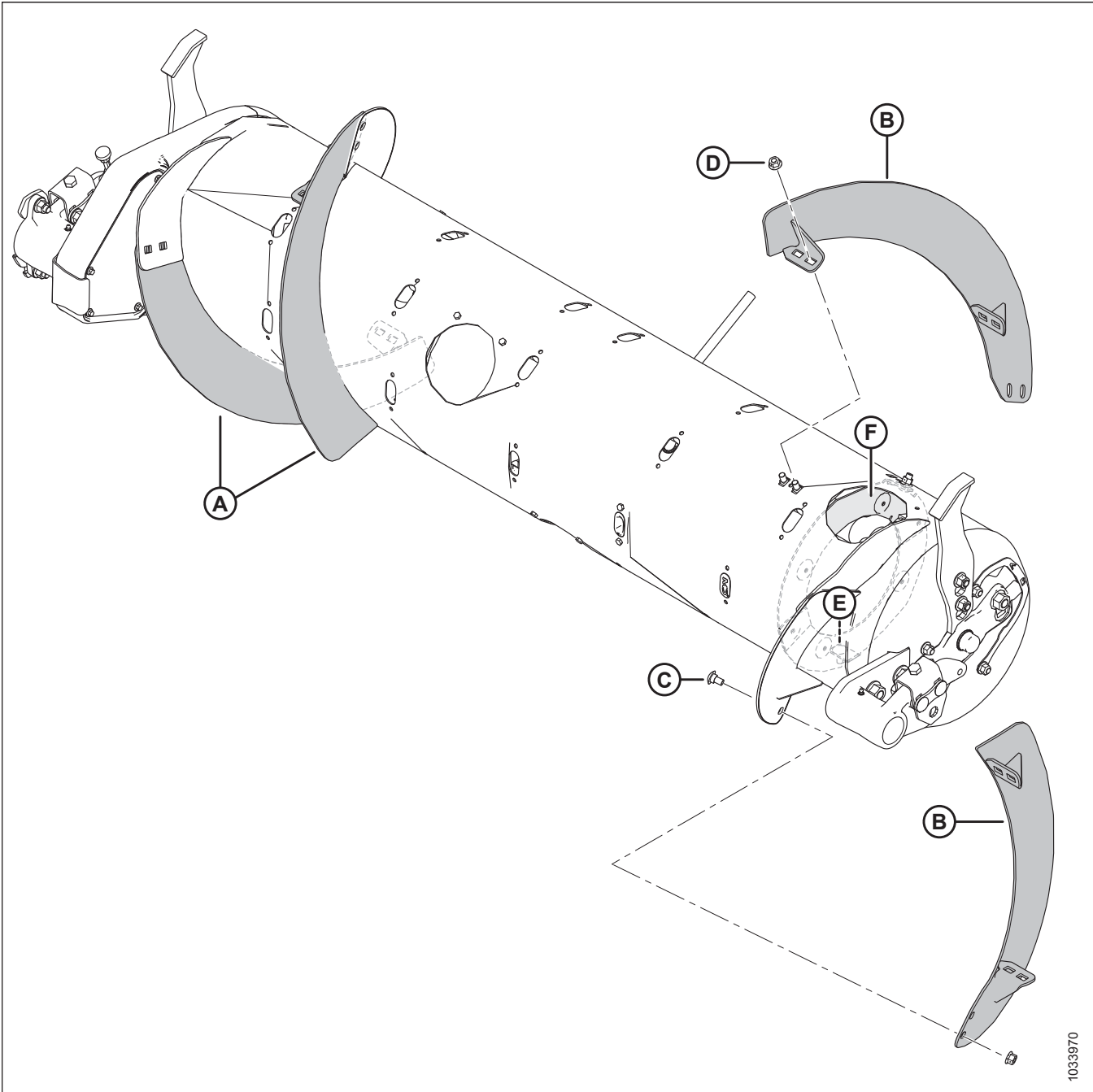


Figure 4.9: Ultra Wide Configuration

45. MD #287032 is available only through MacDon Parts. B6400 is available only through Whole Goods. Both kits contain wear-resistant flightings.

46. The quantity of existing short flightings is either 0, 2, or 4, depending on the current configuration.

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT



**Figure 4.10: Narrow Configuration**

A - Left Long Fighting (MD #287889)

C - M10 x 20 mm Carriage Bolt (MD #136178)

E - Existing M10 x 25 mm Carriage Bolt

B - Right Long Fighting (MD #287890)

D - M10 Center Lock Flange Nut (MD #135799)

F - Magnetic Reverser Shield

### NOTE:

In the Narrow Configuration, one of the two existing 25 mm bolts (E) is used to secure both the fighting and reverser shield (F) together. The second 25 mm bolt is used only on the reverser shield.

### 4.1.2 Medium Configuration – Auger Flighting

Medium configuration uses four short bolt-on flightings (two on the left and two on the right), and 22 auger fingers are recommended.

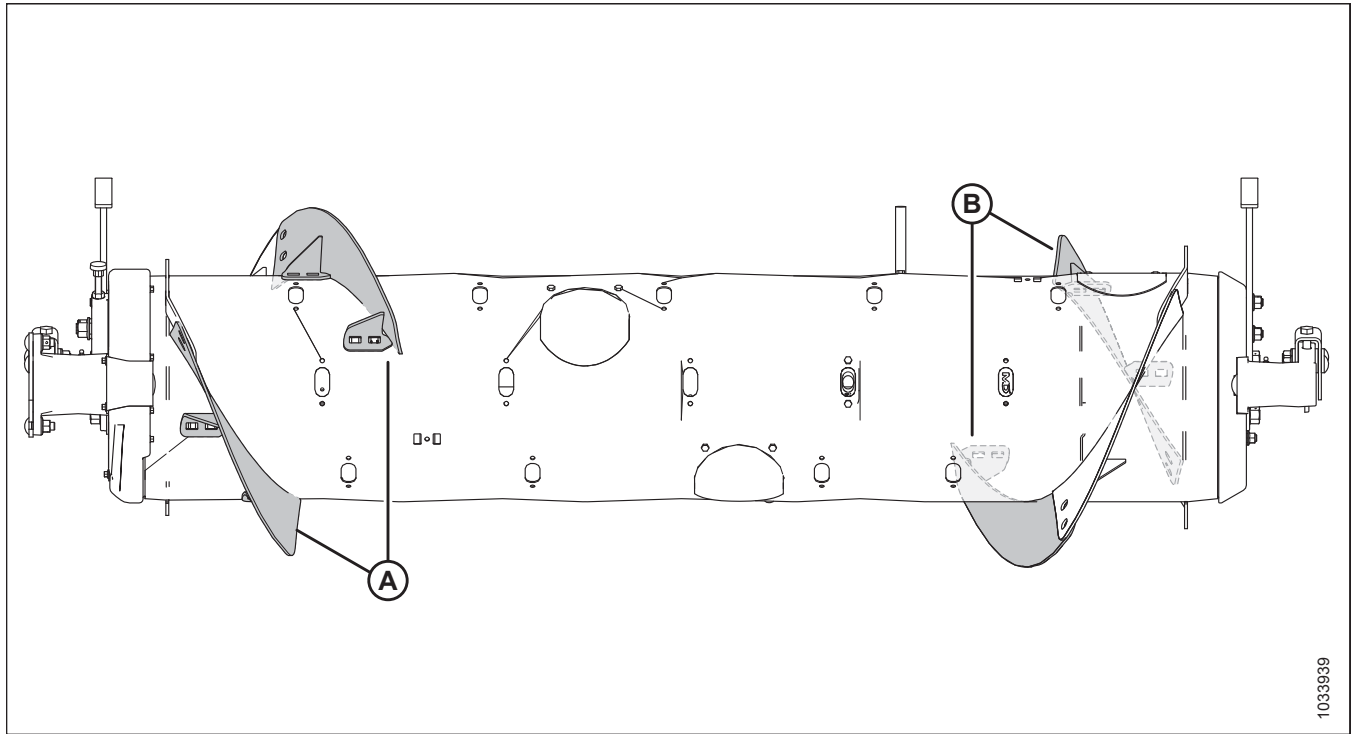


Figure 4.11: Medium Configuration

A - Left Short Flighting (MD #287888)

B - Right Short Flighting (MD #287887)

#### To convert to Medium configuration from Wide configuration:

One flighting kit (MD #287031) is required. You will need to install new flightings (A) and remove the extra auger fingers. A total of 22 auger fingers is recommended for this configuration.

- For flighting installation instructions, refer to [4.1.7 Installing Bolt-On Flighting, page 340](#).
- For finger removal instructions, refer to [4.1.9 Removing Feed Auger Fingers, page 346](#).

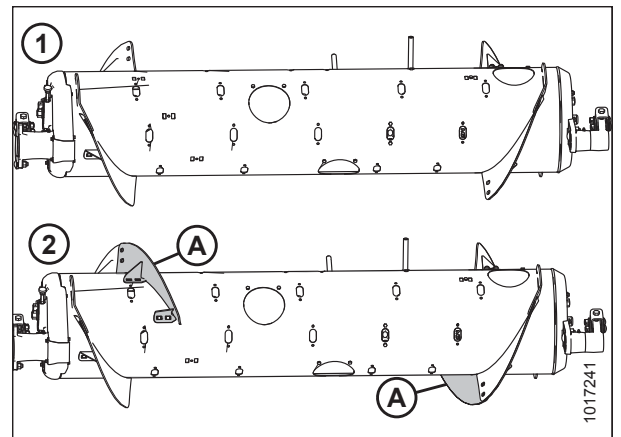


Figure 4.12: Auger Configurations – Rear View

1 - Wide Configuration

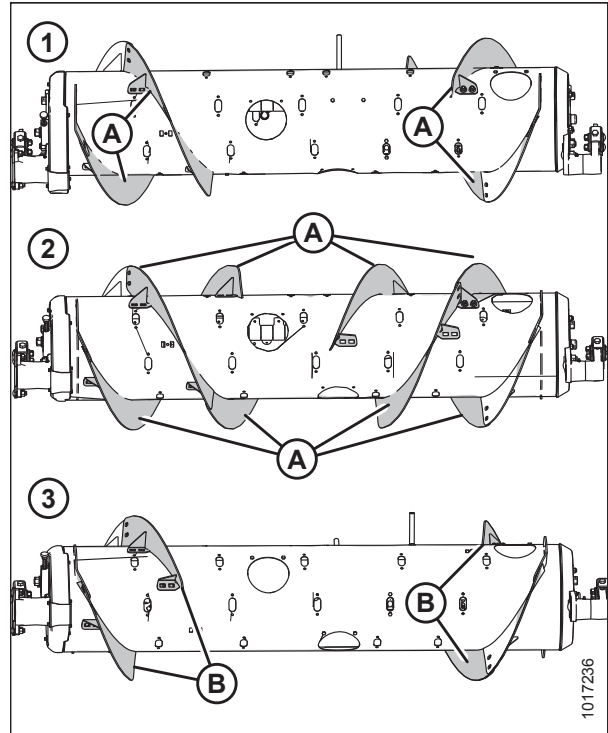
2 - Medium Configuration

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

### To convert to Medium configuration from Narrow or Ultra Narrow configuration:

Two flighting kits (MD #287031) are required. You will need to replace long flightings (A)<sup>47</sup> with short flightings (B) and install additional auger fingers. A total of 22 auger fingers is recommended for this configuration.

- For flighting replacement instructions, refer to [4.1.6 Removing Bolt-On Flighting, page 337](#) and [4.1.7 Installing Bolt-On Flighting, page 340](#).
- For finger installation instructions, refer to [4.1.10 Installing Feed Auger Fingers, page 348](#).



**Figure 4.13: Auger Configurations – Rear View**

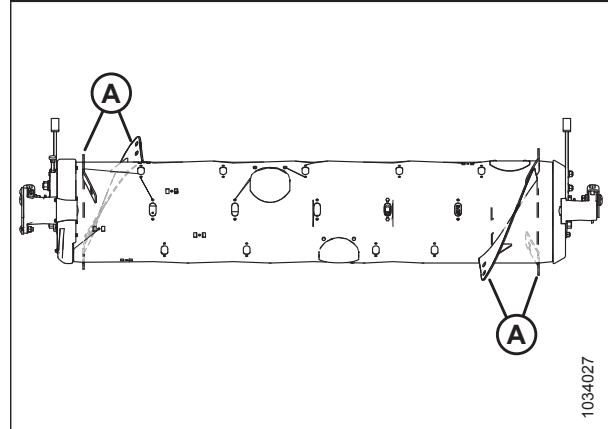
1 - Narrow Configuration  
3 - Medium Configuration

2 - Ultra Narrow Configuration

### To convert to Medium configuration from Ultra Wide configuration:

Two flighting kits (MD #287031) are required. You will need to install four short flightings onto the existing welded flightings (A) and remove the extra auger fingers. A total of 22 auger fingers is recommended for this configuration.

- For flighting installation instructions, refer to [4.1.7 Installing Bolt-On Flighting, page 340](#).
- For finger removal instructions, refer to [4.1.9 Removing Feed Auger Fingers, page 346](#).

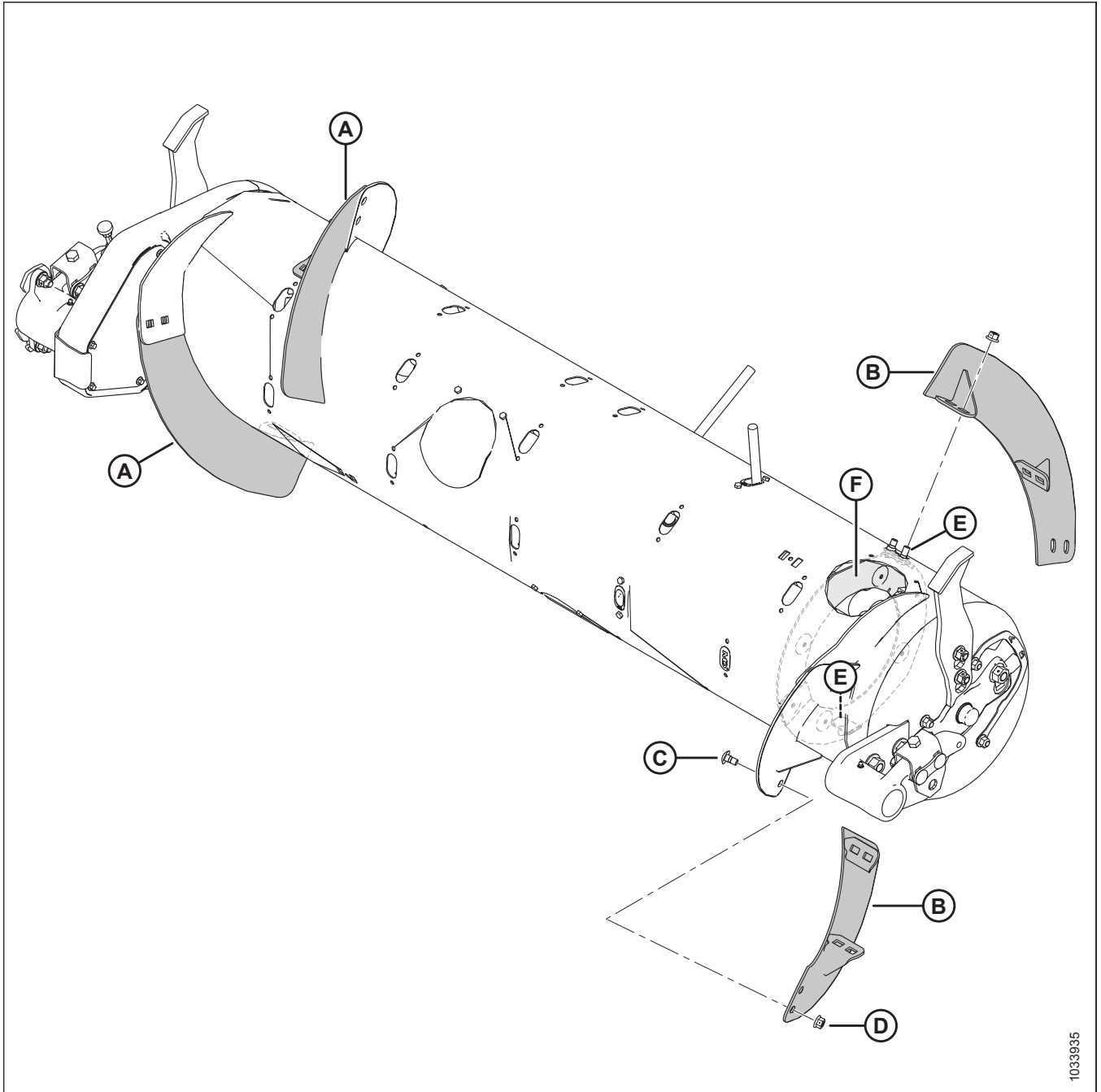


**Figure 4.14: Ultra Wide Configuration**

47. The quantity of existing long flightings is either 4 or 8, depending on the current configuration.



## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT



**Figure 4.15: Medium Configuration**

A - Left Short Flighting (MD #287888)

C - M10 x 20 mm Carriage Bolt (MD #136178)

E - Existing M10 x 25 mm Carriage Bolts

B - Right Short Flighting (MD #287887)

D - M10 Center Lock Flange Nut (MD #135799)

F - Magnetic Reverser Shield

### NOTE:

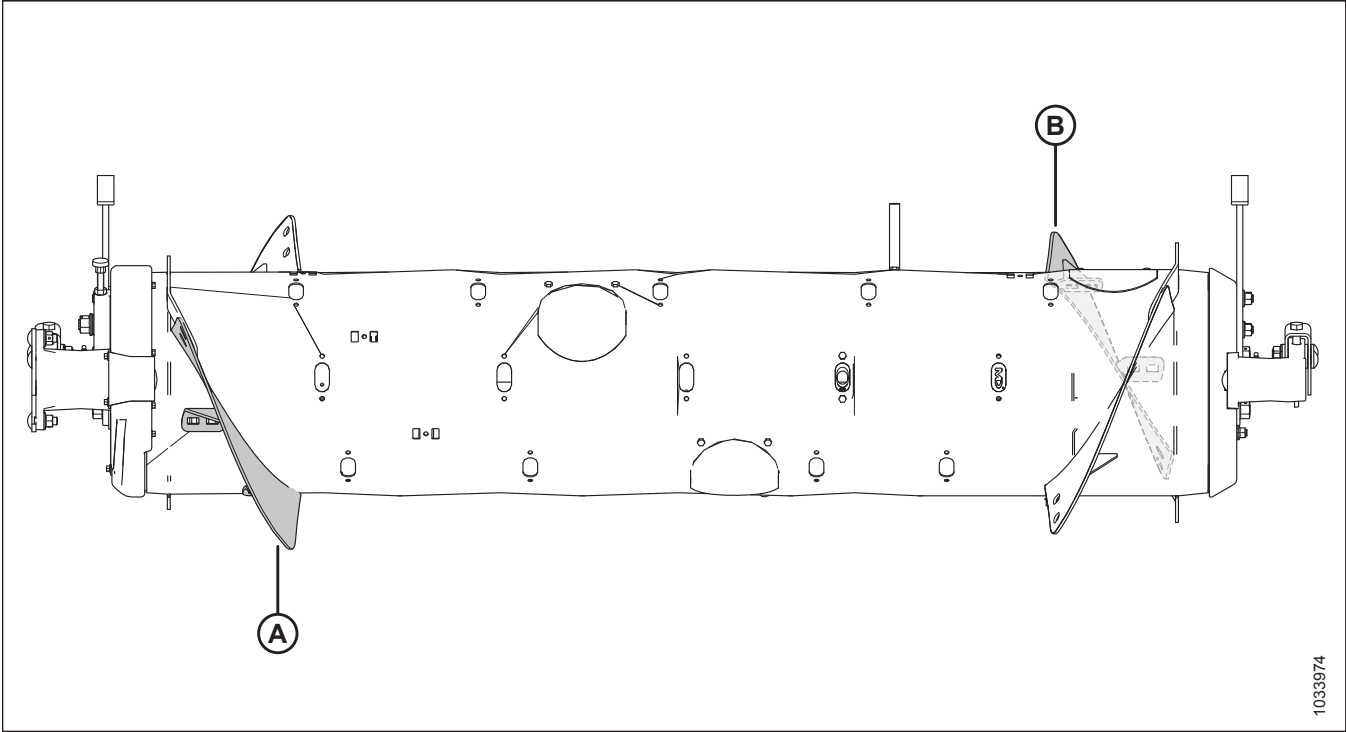
In the Medium Configuration, use the existing 25 mm bolts to secure the flightings to the reverser shield (F) at locations (E).

### 4.1.3 Wide Configuration – Auger Flighting

Wide configuration uses two short bolt-on flightings (one on the left and one on the right), and 30 auger fingers are recommended.

**NOTE:**

This configuration may increase combine capacity on wide feeder house combines in certain crop conditions.



**Figure 4.16: Wide Configuration**

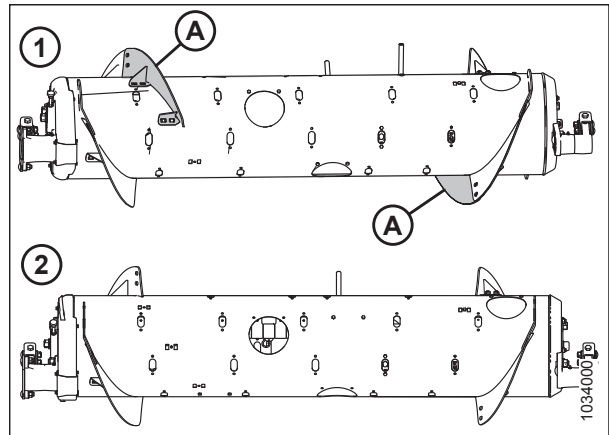
A - Left Short Flighting (MD #287888)

B - Right Short Flighting (MD #287887)

**To convert to Wide configuration from Medium Configuration:**

Remove existing flightings (A) from the auger and install additional auger fingers. A total of 30 auger fingers is recommended for this configuration.

- For flighting removal instructions, refer to [4.1.6 Removing Bolt-On Flighting, page 337](#).
- For finger installation instructions, refer to [4.1.10 Installing Feed Auger Fingers, page 348](#).



**Figure 4.17: Auger Configurations – Rear View**

1 - Medium Configuration

2 - Wide Configuration

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

### To convert to Wide configuration from Ultra Wide configuration:

One flighting kit (MD #287031) is required. You will need to install two short flightings onto the existing welded flightings (A). A total of 30 auger fingers is recommended for this configuration.

- For flighting installation instructions, refer to [4.1.7 Installing Bolt-On Flighting, page 340](#).
- If required to remove auger fingers, refer to [4.1.9 Removing Feed Auger Fingers, page 346](#).

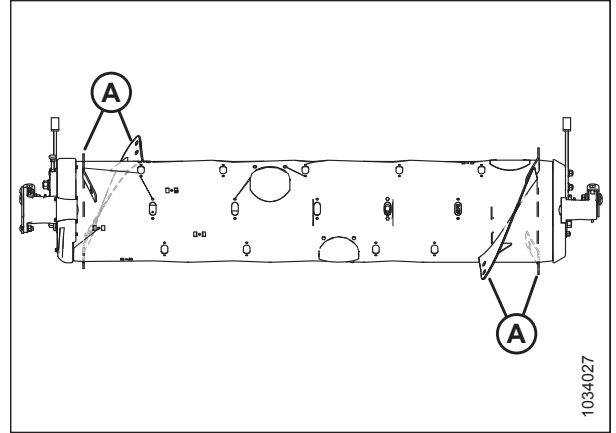


Figure 4.18: Ultra Wide Configuration

### To convert to Wide configuration from Narrow or Ultra Narrow configuration:

One flighting kit (MD #287031) is required. You will need to replace existing long flightings (A)<sup>48</sup> with short flightings (B) and install additional auger fingers. A total of 30 auger fingers is recommended for this configuration.

- For flighting replacement instructions, refer to [4.1.6 Removing Bolt-On Flighting, page 337](#) and [4.1.7 Installing Bolt-On Flighting, page 340](#).
- For finger installation instructions, refer to [4.1.10 Installing Feed Auger Fingers, page 348](#).

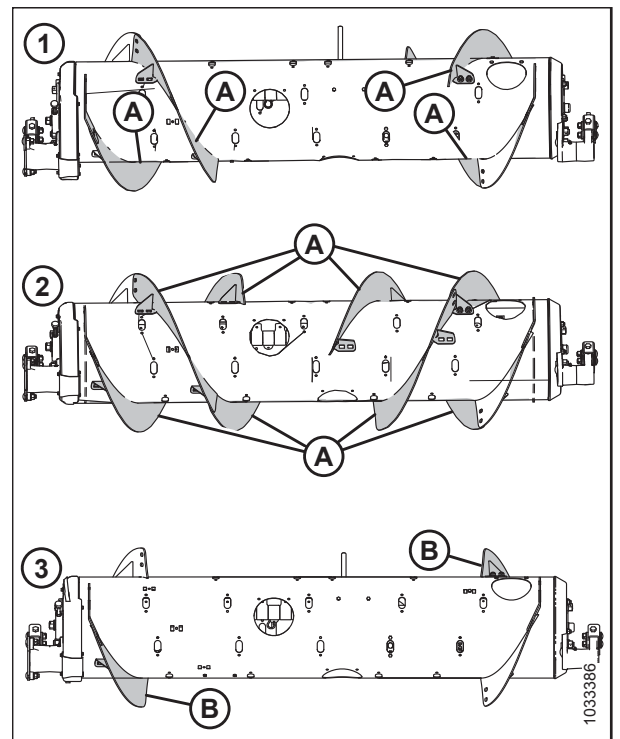


Figure 4.19: Auger Configurations – Rear View

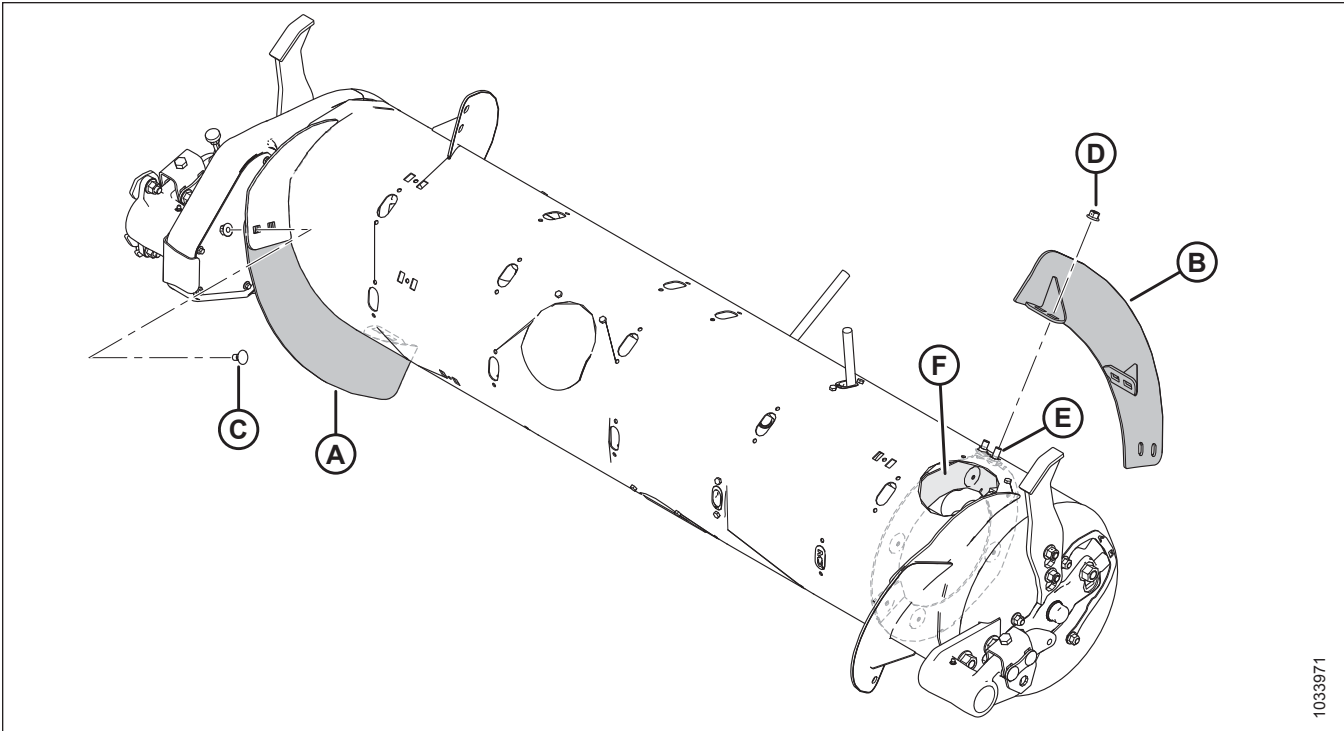
1 - Narrow Configuration

2 - Ultra Narrow Configuration

3 - Wide Configuration

48. The quantity of existing long flightings is either 4 or 8, depending on the current configuration.

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT



**Figure 4.20: Wide Configuration**

A - Left Short Flighting (MD #287888)

C - M10 x 20 mm Carriage Bolt (MD #136178)

E - Existing M10 x 25 mm Carriage Bolt

B - Right Short Flighting (MD #287887)

D - M10 Center Lock Flange Nut (MD #135799)

F - Magnetic Reverser Shield

**NOTE:**

In the Wide Configuration, one of the two existing 25 mm bolts (E) is used to secure both the flighting and reverser shield (F) together. The second 25 mm bolt is used only on the reverser shield.

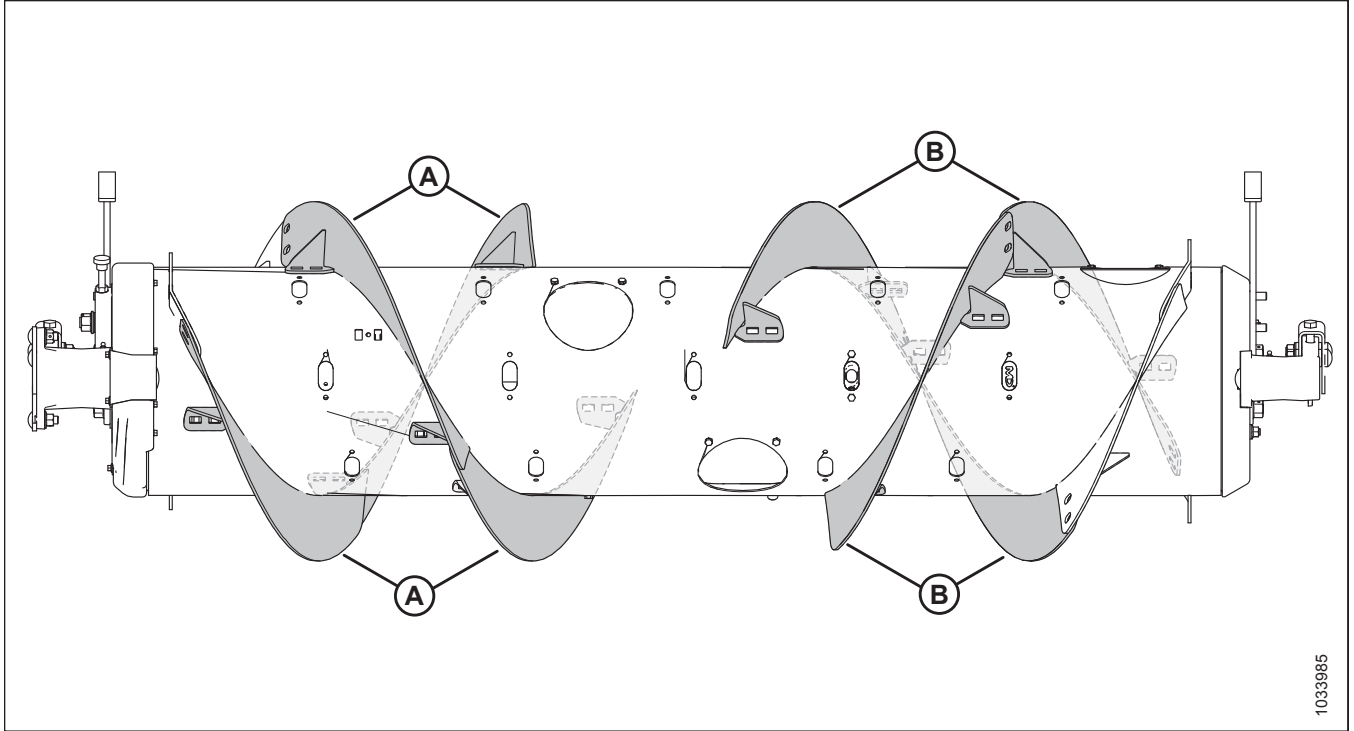
### 4.1.4 Ultra Narrow Configuration – Auger Flighting

Ultra Narrow configuration uses eight long bolt-on flightings (four on the left and four on the right), and 18 auger fingers are recommended.

**NOTE:**

You will need to drill holes in the flighting and in the drum to install the four additional flightings.

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT



**Figure 4.21: Ultra Narrow Configuration**

A - Left Long Flighting (MD #287889)

B - Right Long Flighting (MD #287890)

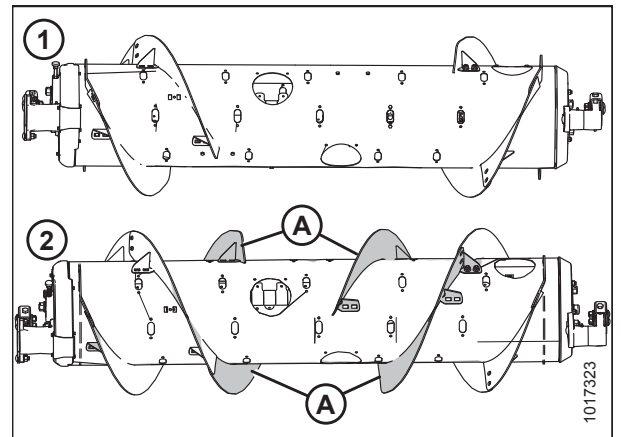
### To convert to Ultra Narrow configuration from Narrow Configuration:

Two flighting kits (MD #287032 or B6400<sup>49</sup>) and some hole-drilling are required to install flightings (A). Add or remove auger fingers as necessary to optimize feeding for your combine and crop conditions.

### IMPORTANT:

Extra hardware is included in these kits. Be sure to use the correct hardware at the correct location to prevent damage and to maximize performance.

- For flighting installation instructions, refer to [4.1.7 Installing Bolt-On Flighting](#), page 340.
- To install the additional flightings that require hole drilling, refer to [4.1.8 Installing Additional Bolt-On Flighting – Ultra Narrow Configuration Only](#), page 343.
- For finger installation/removal instructions, refer to [4.1.10 Installing Feed Auger Fingers](#), page 348 and [4.1.9 Removing Feed Auger Fingers](#), page 346.



**Figure 4.22: Auger Configurations – Rear View**

1 - Narrow Configuration

2 - Ultra Narrow Configuration

49. MD #287032 is available only through MacDon Parts. B6400 is available only through Whole Goods.

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

### To convert to Ultra Narrow configuration from Medium, Wide, or Ultra Wide configuration:

Four flighting kits (MD #287032 or B6400<sup>50</sup>) and some hole-drilling are required to convert to this configuration.

You will need to replace existing short flightings (A)<sup>51</sup> with long flightings (B). Add or remove auger fingers as necessary to optimize feeding for your combine and crop conditions.

#### IMPORTANT:

Extra hardware is included in these kits. Be sure to use the correct hardware in the correct location to prevent damage and to maximize performance.

- For flighting replacement instructions, refer to [4.1.6 Removing Bolt-On Flighting, page 337](#) and [4.1.7 Installing Bolt-On Flighting, page 340](#).
- To install the additional flightings that require hole drilling, refer to [4.1.8 Installing Additional Bolt-On Flighting – Ultra Narrow Configuration Only, page 343](#).
- For finger installation/removal instructions, refer to [4.1.10 Installing Feed Auger Fingers, page 348](#) and [4.1.9 Removing Feed Auger Fingers, page 346](#).

#### NOTE:

If converting from Ultra Wide configuration, there is no existing bolt-on flighting to remove because that configuration uses only the factory-welded flighting (A).

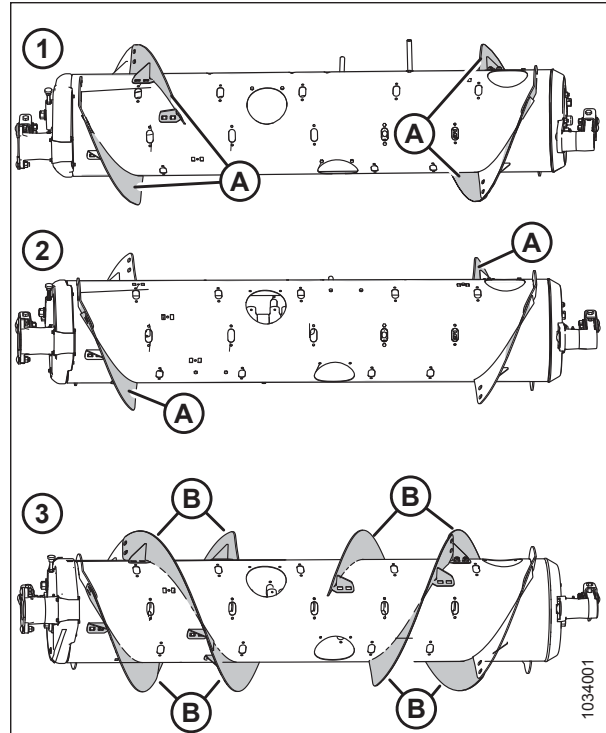


Figure 4.23: Auger Configurations – Rear View

1 - Medium Configuration  
2 - Wide Configuration  
3 - Ultra Narrow Configuration

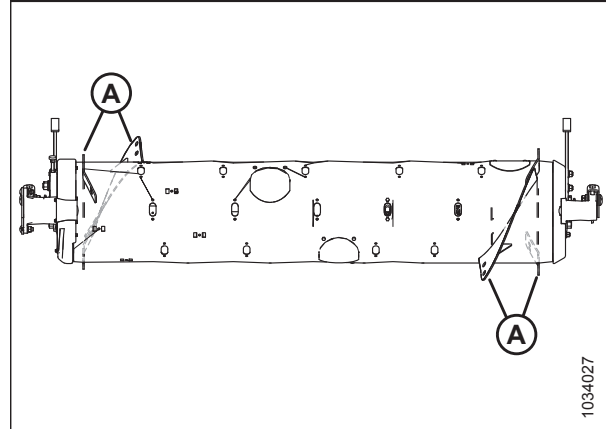
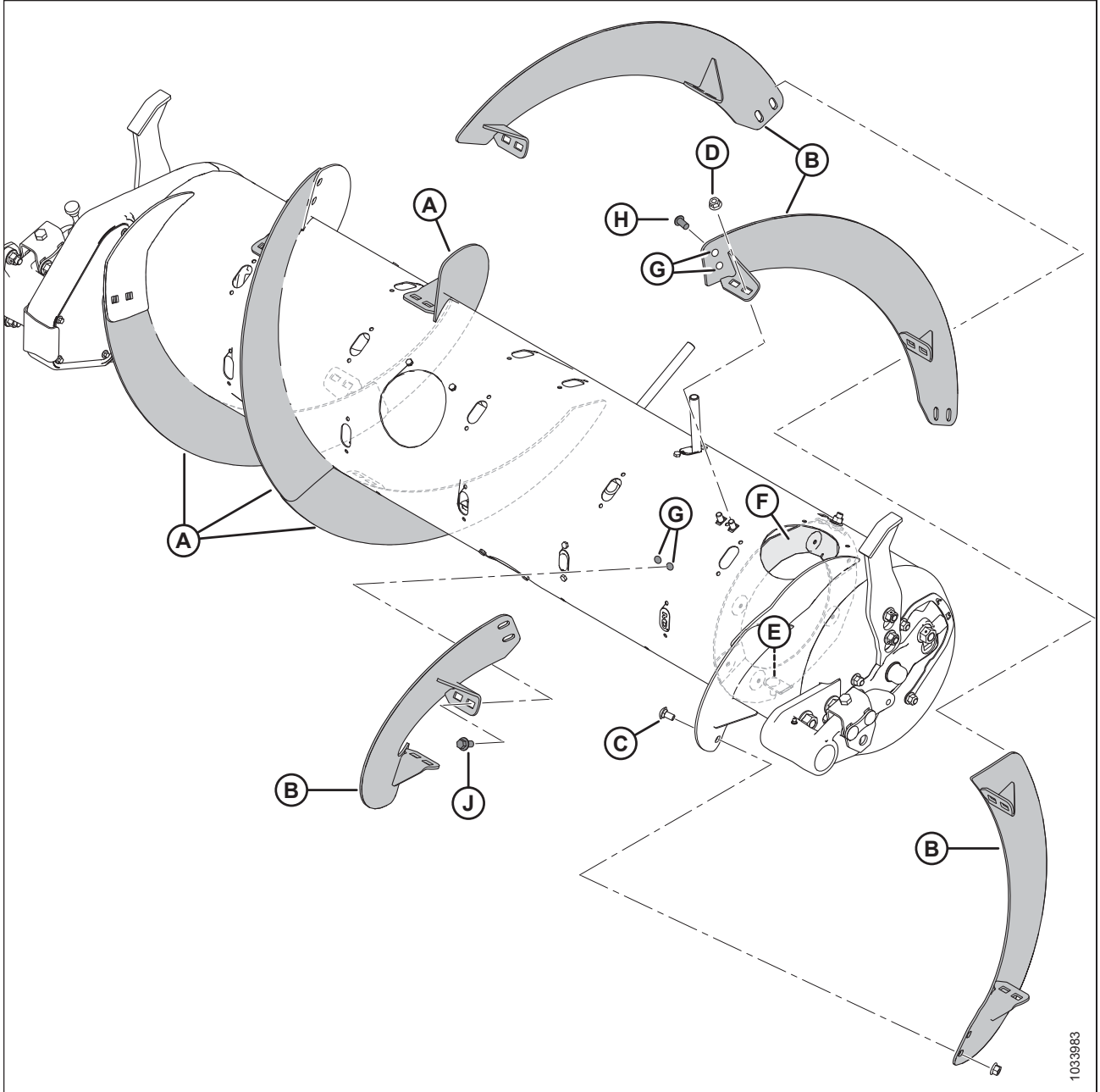


Figure 4.24: Ultra Wide Configuration

50. MD #287032 is available only through MacDon Parts. B6400 is available only through Whole Goods.

51. The quantity of existing short flightings is either 0, 2, or 4, depending on the current configuration.

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT



**Figure 4.25: Ultra Narrow Configuration**

- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| A - Left Long Flighting (MD #287889)               | B - Right Long Flighting (MD #287890)                       | C - M10 x 20 mm Carriage Bolt (MD #136178)                  |
| D - M10 Center Lock Flange Nut (MD #135799)        | E - Existing M10 x 25 mm Carriage Bolt                      | F - Magnetic Reverser Shield                                |
| G - Drilled Holes – 11 mm (7/16 in.) <sup>52</sup> | H - M10 x 20 mm Button Head Bolt (MD #135723) <sup>53</sup> | J - M10 x 20 mm Flange Head Bolt (MD #152655) <sup>54</sup> |

**NOTE:**

In the Ultra Narrow Configuration, one of the two existing 25 mm bolts (E) is used to secure both the flighting and reverser shield (F) together. The second 25 mm bolt is used only on the reverser shield.

52. Each of the four additional flightings require six drilled holes to install (four in the auger and two in the adjacent flighting).

53. Used on the holes drilled in the existing flighting.

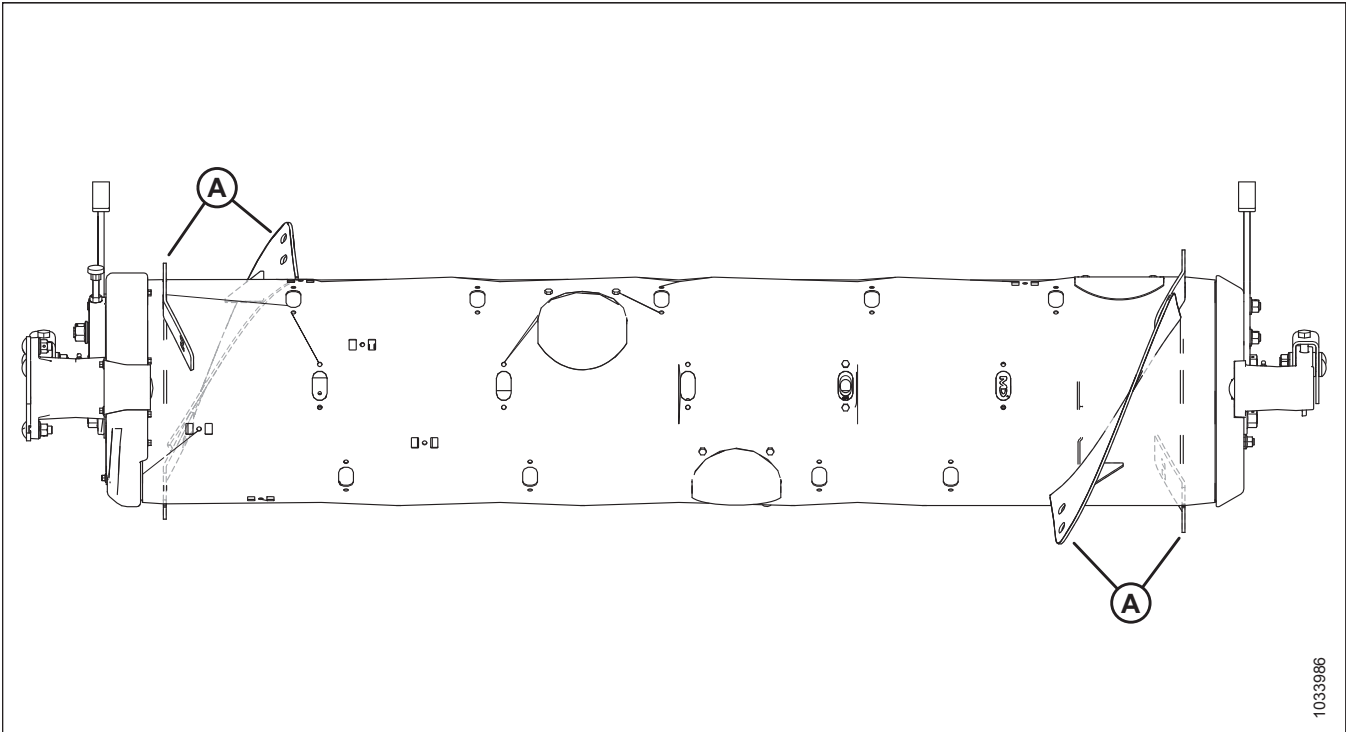
54. Used on the holes drilled in the auger.

### 4.1.5 Ultra Wide Configuration – Auger Flighting

Ultra Wide configuration uses no bolt-on flighting; only factory-welded flighting is responsible for conveying the crop. A total of 30 auger fingers is recommended for this configuration.

**NOTE:**

This configuration may increase combine capacity on wide feeder house combines in certain crop conditions.



**Figure 4.26: Ultra Wide Configuration**

A - Factory-Welded Flighting

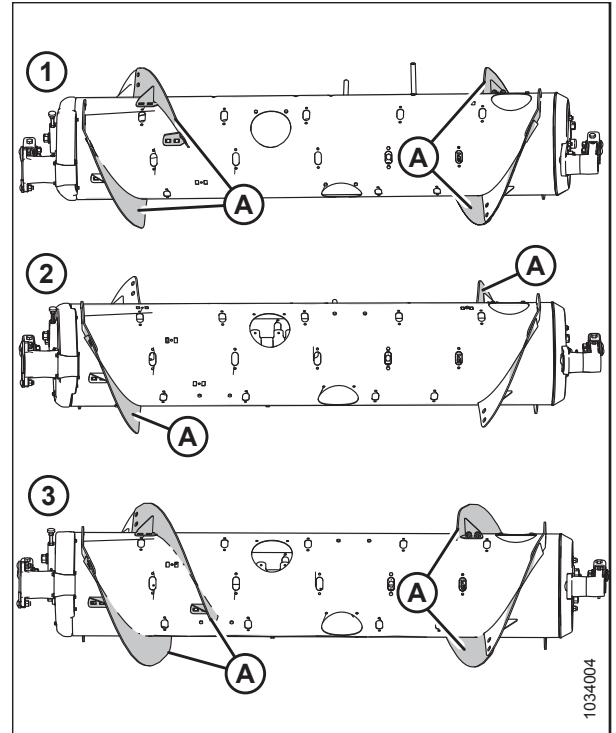


## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

### To convert to Ultra Wide configuration:

Remove all existing bolt-on flightings (A) from the auger and install additional auger fingers if required. A total of 30 auger fingers is recommended for this configuration.

- For flighting removal instructions, refer to [4.1.6 Removing Bolt-On Flighting, page 337](#).
- For finger installation instructions, refer to [4.1.10 Installing Feed Auger Fingers, page 348](#).



**Figure 4.27: Auger Configurations – Rear View**

1 - Medium Configuration  
3 - Narrow Configuration

2 - Wide Configuration

### 4.1.6 Removing Bolt-On Flighting

Before removing the bolt-on flighting, determine the quantity and type of flighting required. For information on the different flighting configurations, refer to [4.1 FM200 Feed Auger Configurations, page 321](#).

To remove bolt-on flighting, follow these steps:

#### **DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. To improve access, remove the float module from the combine.

#### **NOTE:**

All illustrations show the feed auger separated from the float module for clarity. The procedure can be performed with the feed auger installed in the float module.

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

### NOTE:

There is a magnetic reverser shield (A) installed inside the auger at the right side. Any reference to the reverser shield does not apply to the left side of the auger.

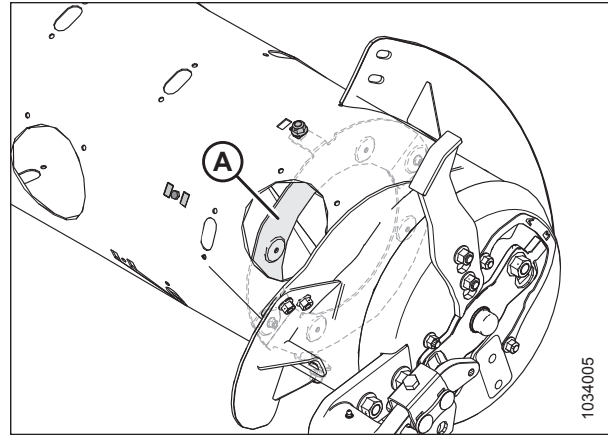


Figure 4.28: Reverser Shield

2. Rotate the auger as required.
3. Remove bolts (A) and access cover (B). Retain for reassembly. If necessary, remove multiple access covers.

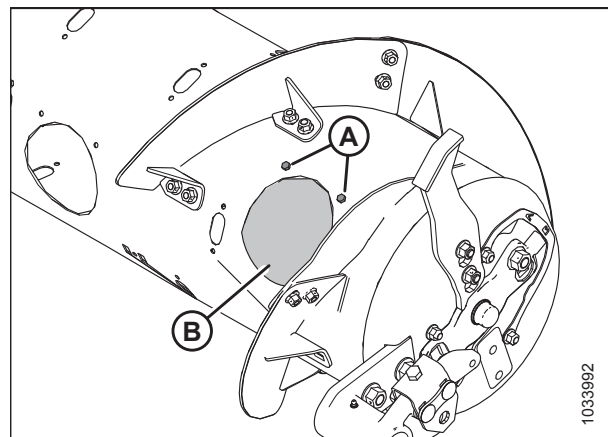


Figure 4.29: Auger Access Cover – Right Side

4. Remove bolts and nuts (B) and remove flighting (A). If the flighting attaches to the magnetic reverser shield (D), retain the bolt and nut at location (C) to reattach the reverser shield (D) to the auger after the flighting is removed. Bolt (C) is longer than bolts (B).

### NOTE:

Whenever modifying or servicing the auger, keep at least one side of the reverser shield attached to the drum if possible. A completely detached reverser shield is more difficult to install because the shield is magnetically attracted to the auger.

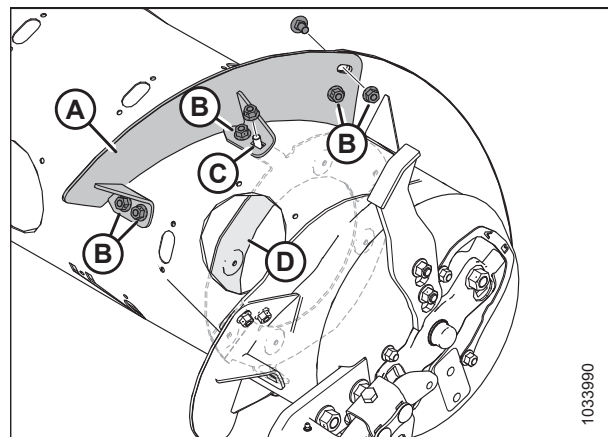


Figure 4.30: Short Flighting – Right Side

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

### NOTE:

The long flighting shown (A) in this illustration does not attach to the reverser shield. The opposite long flighting does attach to the reverser shield at location (B).

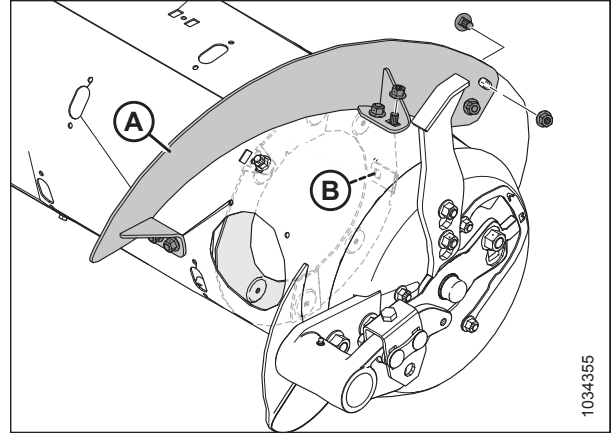


Figure 4.31: Long Flighting – Right Side

5. Install slot plug (A) with M6 bolt (B) and tee nut (C) at each location the flighting was removed from the auger. Torque to 9 Nm (80 lbf-in).

### NOTE:

If plug bolts are **NOT** new, coat bolts with medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) prior to installation.

### NOTE:

Slot plugs are not required at locations where the reverser shield attaches to the auger.

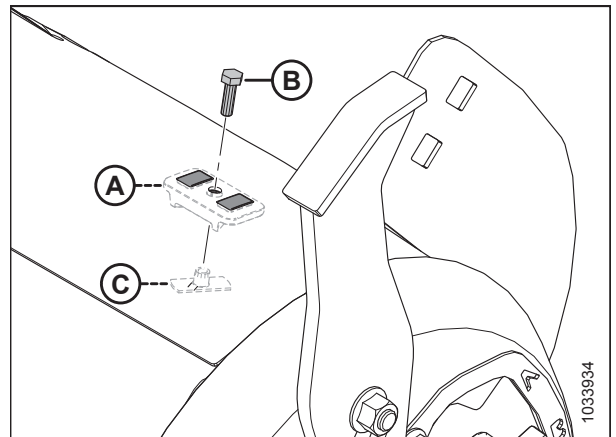


Figure 4.32: Installing Slot Plugs

6. Repeat the procedure to remove flighting (A) from the left side of the auger. References to the magnetic reverser shield do not apply to the left side.

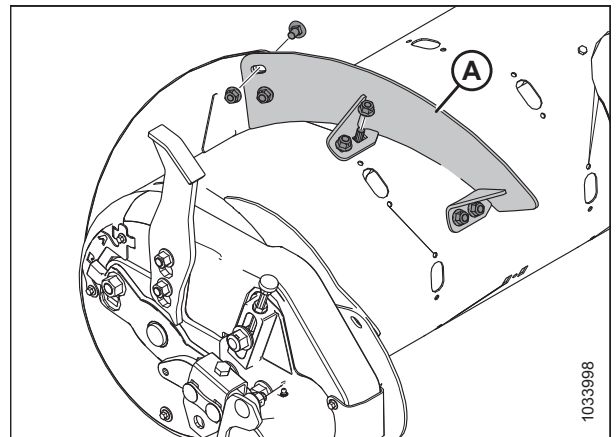


Figure 4.33: Short Flighting – Left Side

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

7. Reinstall access cover(s) (A) using retained bolts (B) and the welded nuts inside the auger. Coat bolts with medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) and torque to 9 Nm (80 lbf-in).

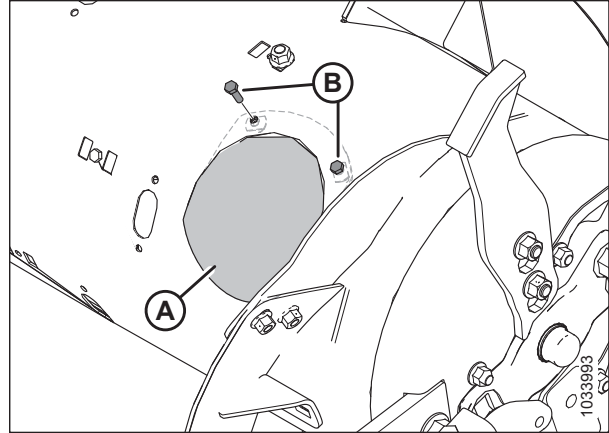


Figure 4.34: Access Cover – Right Side

### 4.1.7 Installing Bolt-On Flighting

Before installing the bolt-on flighting, determine the quantity and type of flighting required. For information on the different flighting configurations, refer to [4.1 FM200 Feed Auger Configurations, page 321](#).

To install bolt-on flighting, follow these steps:

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. To improve access and ease installation, remove the float module from the combine.

#### NOTE:

All illustrations show the feed auger separated from the float module for clarity. The procedure can be performed with the feed auger installed in the float module.

#### NOTE:

There is a magnetic reverser shield (A) installed inside the auger at the right side. Any reference to the reverser shield does not apply to the left side of the auger.

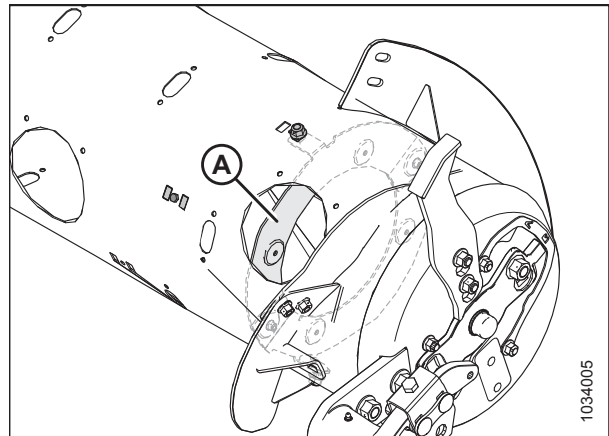


Figure 4.35: Reverser Shield

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

2. Rotate the auger as required.
3. Remove bolts (A) and access cover (B). Retain for reassembly. If necessary, remove multiple access covers.

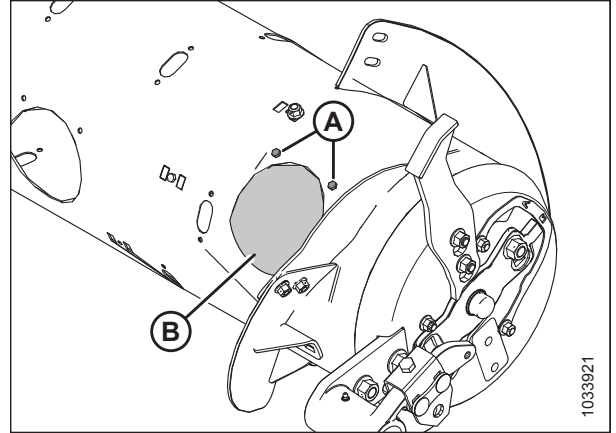


Figure 4.36: Auger Access Cover – Right Side

4. Line up the new bolt-on fighting (A) in position to determine which slot plugs need to be removed from the auger. The new fighting overlaps on the outboard side of the adjacent fighting.

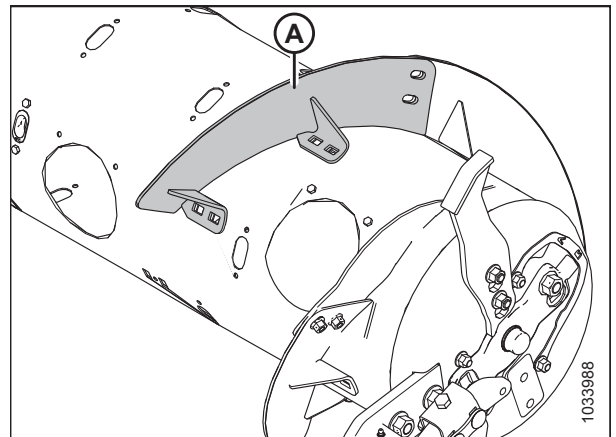


Figure 4.37: Right Side of Auger

5. Remove applicable slot plugs(s) (A). If the new fighting will be installed at the same location the reverser shield (B) attaches to the auger, remove and retain hardware (C). The bolts that attach the reverser shield to the auger are slightly longer than the other fighting bolts.

**NOTE:**

Whenever modifying or servicing the auger, keep at least one side of the reverser shield attached to the drum if possible. A completely detached reverser shield is more difficult to install because the shield is magnetically attracted to the auger.

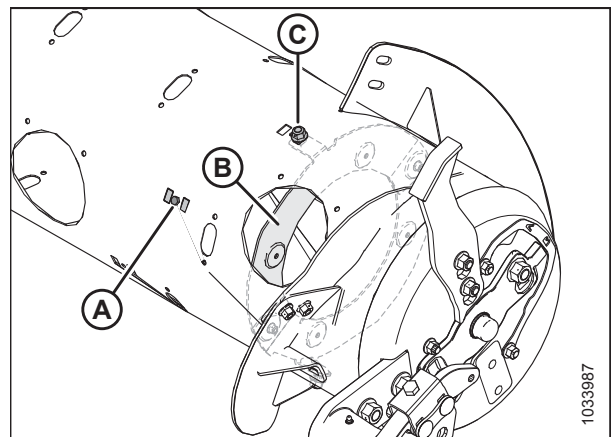


Figure 4.38: Right Side of Auger

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

- Install flighting (A) using M10 x 20 mm square neck carriage bolts and center lock nuts at locations (B). If the flighting attaches to the reverser shield (D), install the longer M10 x 25 mm bolt and center lock nut at location (C) to secure magnetic reverser shield to the auger and flighting.

**IMPORTANT:**

Bolt heads must be installed on the inside of the auger to avoid damaging internal components.

**IMPORTANT:**

The bolts that attach the flightings to each other must have the bolt heads on the inboard (crop side) of the flighting.

- Torque the six nuts and bolts to 47 Nm (35 lbf-ft) to eliminate deflection on the flighting, then retorque them to 61 Nm (45 lbf-ft).

**NOTE:**

The long flighting (A) shown in this illustration does not attach to the reverser shield. The opposite long flighting does attach to the reverser shield at location (B).

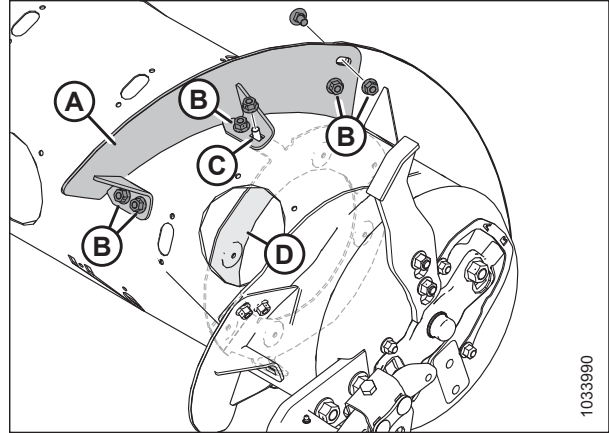


Figure 4.39: Short Flighting – Right Side

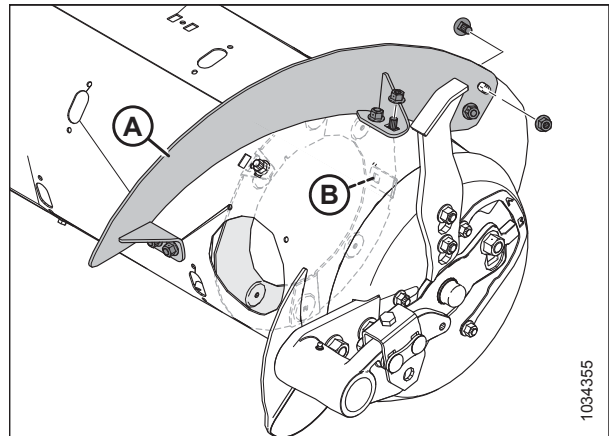


Figure 4.40: Long Flighting – Right Side

- Repeat the procedure to install flighting (A) on the left side of the auger. References to the magnetic reverser shield do not apply to the left side.

**NOTE:**

Flighting performs best when no gaps are present. If desired, use silicone sealant to fill the gaps.

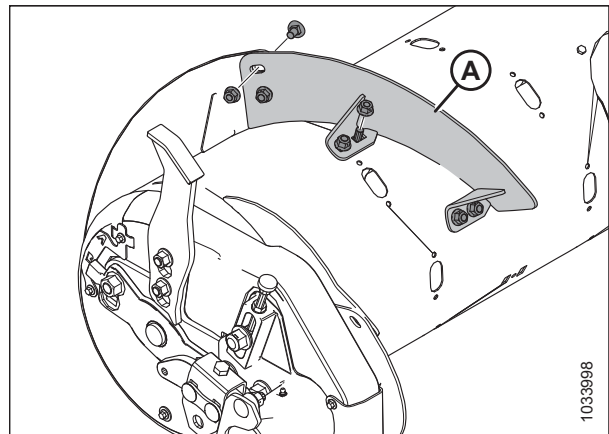


Figure 4.41: Short Flighting – Left Side

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

- Reinstall access cover(s) (A) using retained bolts (B) and the welded nuts inside the auger. Coat bolts with medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) and torque to 9 Nm (80 lbf-in).

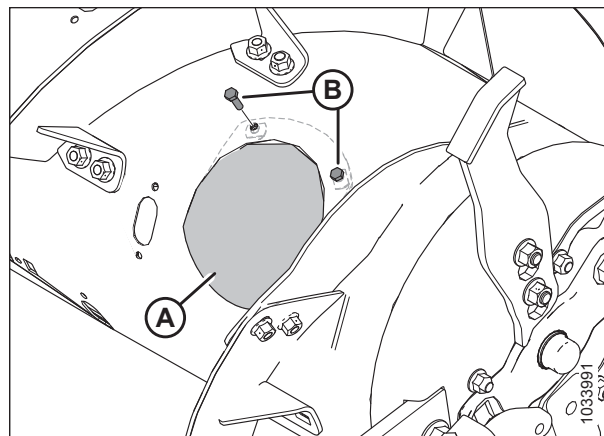


Figure 4.42: Access Cover – Right Side

- If converting to Ultra Narrow configuration and drilling is required to install the remaining flighting, proceed to [4.1.8 Installing Additional Bolt-On Flighting – Ultra Narrow Configuration Only](#), page 343.

### 4.1.8 Installing Additional Bolt-On Flighting – Ultra Narrow Configuration Only

When converting to Ultra Narrow configuration, some hole drilling is required to install the additional flighting.

#### NOTE:

This procedure assumes the feed auger is currently in Narrow configuration (4 long flightings [A] installed).

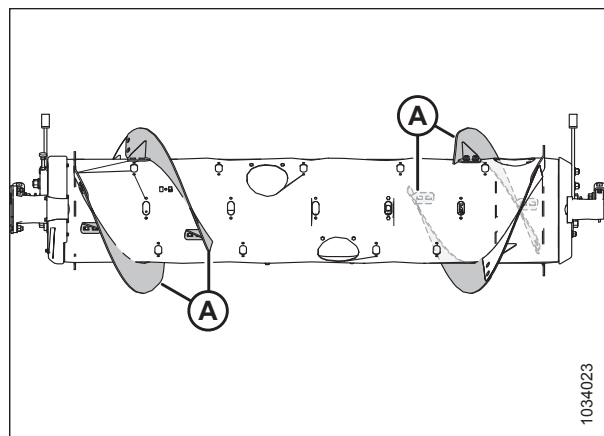


Figure 4.43: Narrow Configuration

To install the four additional long flightings for Ultra Narrow configuration, follow these steps:

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

- To improve access and ease installation, remove the float module from the combine.

#### NOTE:

All illustrations show the feed auger separated from the float module for clarity. The procedure can be performed with the feed auger installed in the float module.

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

2. Rotate the auger as required.
3. Place new flighting (A) outboard of existing flighting (B) on the left side of the auger, as shown.
4. Mark hole locations (C) onto existing flighting (B).
5. Remove nearest access cover to existing flighting (B). Retain hardware for reassembly.
6. Remove existing bolt-on flighting (B) from the auger. Retain hardware for reassembly.

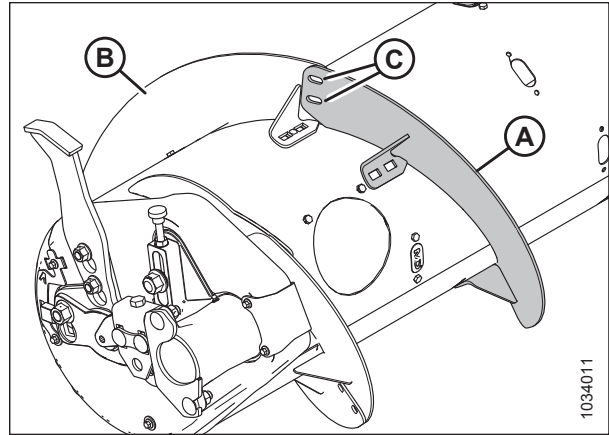


Figure 4.44: Left Side of Auger

7. Drill two 11 mm (7/16 in.) holes at the marked locations (A) on the existing flighting.
8. Reinstall the existing bolt-on flighting.

**IMPORTANT:**

Ensure carriage bolt heads are on the inside of the auger to prevent damage to internal components.

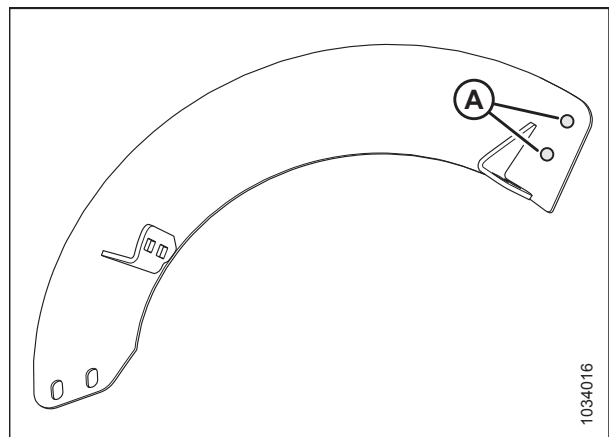


Figure 4.45: Drilling Locations

9. Place new flighting (A) into position on the auger, outboard of existing flighting (B).
10. Secure with two M10 x 20 mm button head bolts and center lock nuts (C).

**IMPORTANT:**

Ensure bolt heads are on the inboard (crop side) and nuts are on the outboard side of the flighting.

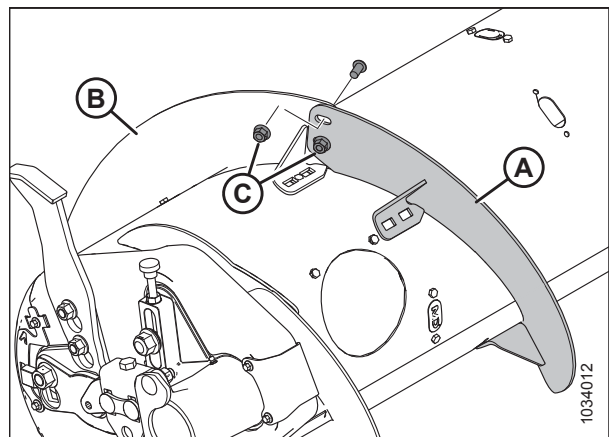


Figure 4.46: Left Side of Auger



## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

11. Stretch flighting (A) to fit auger tube as shown. Use slotted holes on flighting to get the best fit around the auger tube.

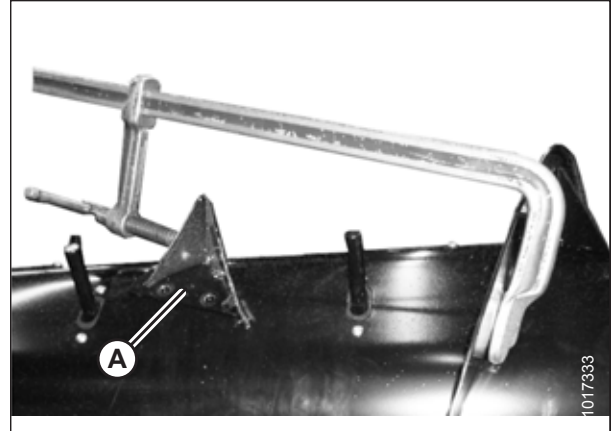


Figure 4.47: Flighting Stretched Axially

12. With flighting in desired position, mark four hole locations (A) and drill 11 mm (7/16 in.) holes in the auger tube.

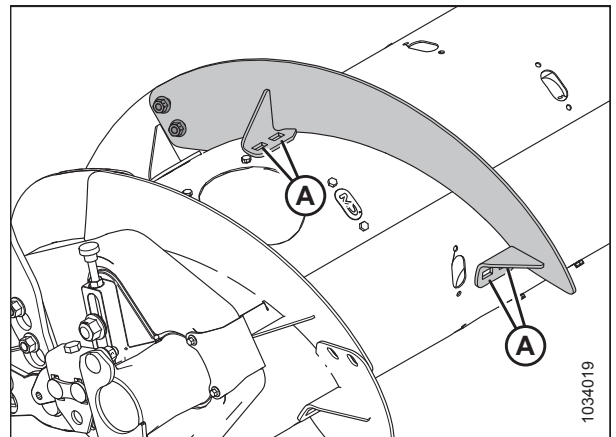


Figure 4.48: Flighting on Left Side of Auger

13. Remove nearest access cover(s) (B). Retain for reinstallation.
14. Secure flighting to the auger at drilled holes (A) using four M10 x 20 mm flange head bolts and center lock nuts.
15. Repeat Step 2, [page 344](#) to Step 14, [page 345](#) for the other flighting on the left side of the auger.

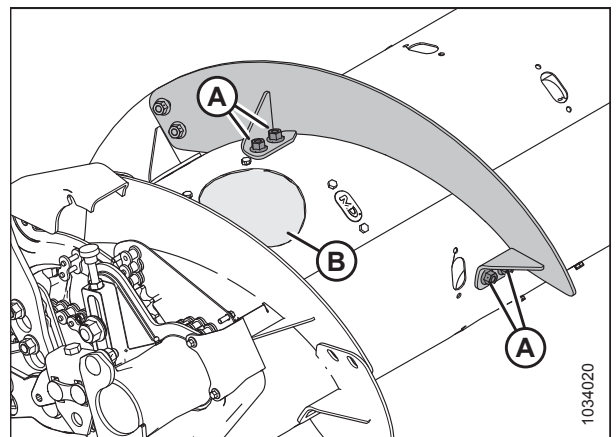


Figure 4.49: Left Side of Auger

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

- Repeat Step 2, page 344 to Step 14, page 345 for both flightings on the right side of the auger.

**NOTE:**

One of the existing flightings (A) on the right side attaches to the magnetic reverser shield (C) with bolt (B). Bolt (B) is longer than the other flighting bolts and must be reused at the same location when reattaching the flighting and reverser shield to the auger.

**NOTE:**

Whenever modifying or servicing the auger, keep at least one side of the reverser shield attached to the drum if possible. A completely detached reverser shield is more difficult to install because the shield is magnetically attracted to the auger.

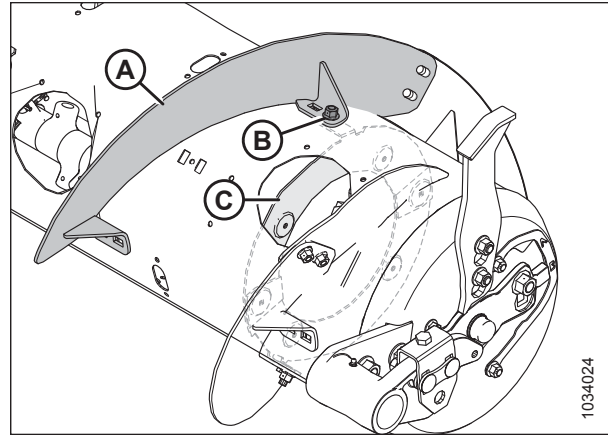


Figure 4.50: Flighting on Right Side of Auger

- Torque all flighting nuts and bolts to 47 Nm (35 lbf-ft) to eliminate deflection on flighting, then torque nuts and bolts again to 61 Nm (45 lbf-ft).

**NOTE:**

Flighting performs best when no gaps are present. If desired, use silicone sealant to fill the gaps.

- Add or remove auger fingers as necessary to optimize feeding for your combine and crop conditions. For instructions, refer to *Installing Feed Auger Fingers, page 472* or *Removing Feed Auger Fingers, page 470*.
- If not adding or removing auger fingers, reinstall all access covers and secure with bolts. Coat bolts with medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) and torque to 9 Nm (80 lbf-in).

### 4.1.9 Removing Feed Auger Fingers

 **DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

**IMPORTANT:**

When removing auger fingers, work from outside inward. Make sure there is an equal number of fingers on both sides of the auger when complete.

- Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
- Raise the reel fully.
- Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
- Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to *Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 31*.

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

5. Remove bolts (A) and access cover (B) closest to the finger you are removing. Retain parts for reinstallation.

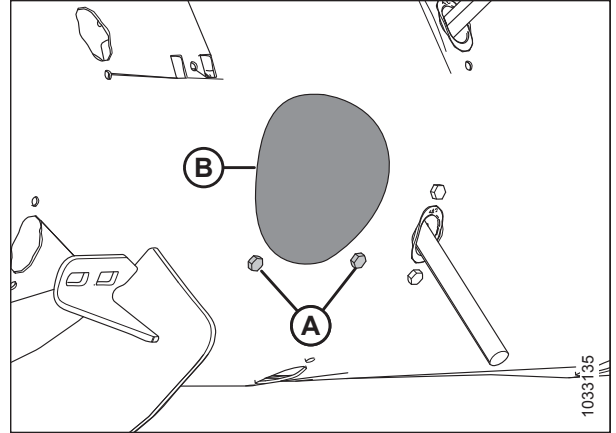


Figure 4.51: Auger Access Hole Cover

6. Remove finger as follows
  1. Remove hairpin (A). Pull finger (B) out of finger holder (C).
  2. Push finger (B) through guide (D) and into the drum. Pull the finger out of the drum access hole.

**NOTE:**

If the finger is broken, remove any remnants from holder (C) and from inside the drum.

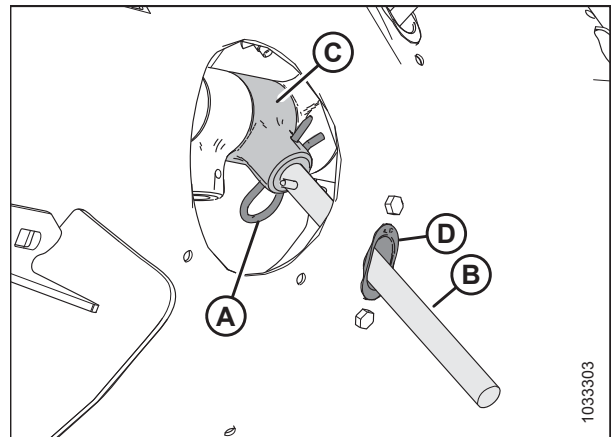


Figure 4.52: Auger Finger

7. Remove and retain two bolts (A) and tee nuts (not shown) securing finger guide (B) to the auger. Remove guide (B).

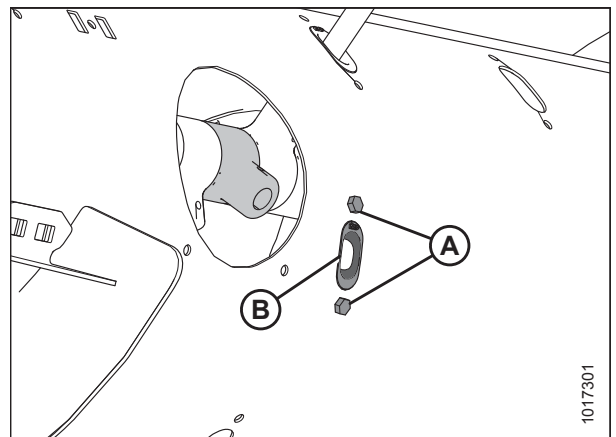


Figure 4.53: Auger Finger Hole

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

- Position plug (A) into the hole from inside the auger. Secure with two M6 hex head bolts (B) and tee nuts. Torque to 9 Nm (80 lbf·in).

### NOTE:

Bolts (B) come with a threadlocker patch that will wear off if the bolts are removed. If reinstalling bolts (B), apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) before installation.

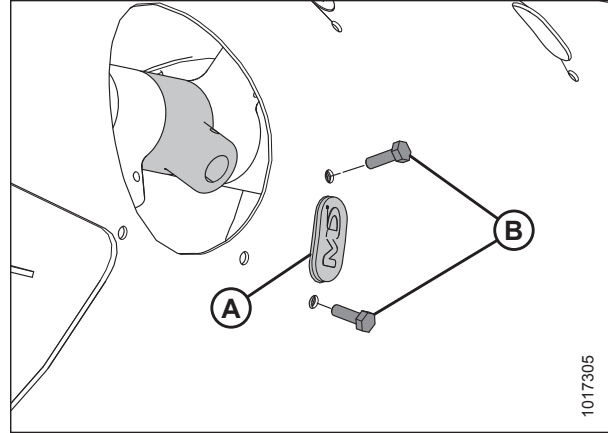


Figure 4.54: Plug

- Secure access cover (B) in place with bolts (A). Torque bolts to 9 Nm (80 lbf·in).

### NOTE:

Bolts (A) come with a threadlocker patch that will wear off if the bolts are removed. If reinstalling bolts (A), apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) before installation.

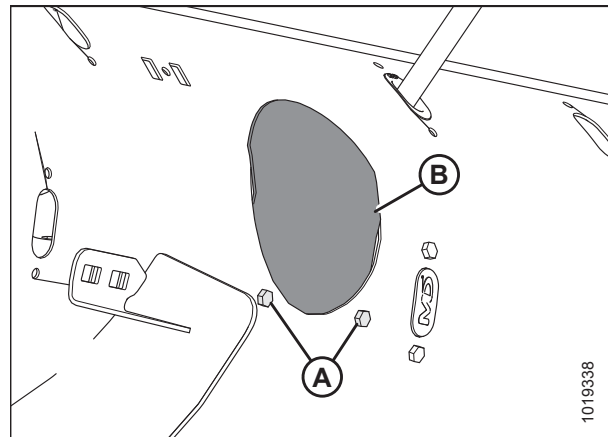


Figure 4.55: Auger Access Hole Cover

### 4.1.10 Installing Feed Auger Fingers

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

#### IMPORTANT:

When installing additional fingers, ensure you install an equal number on each side of the auger.

- Raise the reel fully.
- Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
- Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 31](#).

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

4. Insert guide (B) from inside the auger and secure it with bolts (A) and tee nuts (not shown).

**IMPORTANT:**

Always install a new guide when replacing a solid finger.

**NOTE:**

Bolts (A) come with a threadlocker patch that will wear off if the bolts are removed. If reinstalling bolts (A), apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) before installation.

5. Torque bolts (A) to 9 Nm (80 lbf·in).

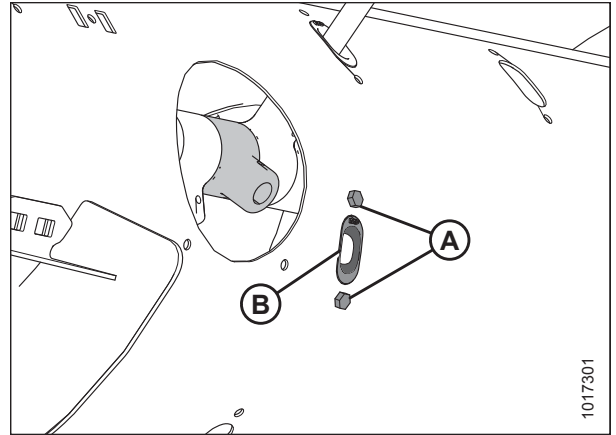


Figure 4.56: Auger Finger Hole

6. Place auger finger (A) inside the drum. Insert auger finger (A) up through the bottom of guide (B) and insert other end into holder (C).

7. Secure the finger by inserting hairpin (D) into the holder. Make sure the round end (S-shaped side) of the hairpin faces the chain drive side of the auger. Make sure the closed end of the hairpin points in the direction of auger-forward rotation.

**IMPORTANT:**

Position the hairpin correctly as described in this step to prevent the hairpin from falling out during operation. If fingers are lost, the header might not be able to feed crop into the combine properly. Fingers that fall into the drum might damage internal components.

8. Secure access cover (B) in place with bolts (A). Torque bolts to 9 Nm (80 lbf·in).

**NOTE:**

Bolts (A) come with a threadlocker patch that will wear off if the bolts are removed. If reinstalling bolts (A), apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) before installation.

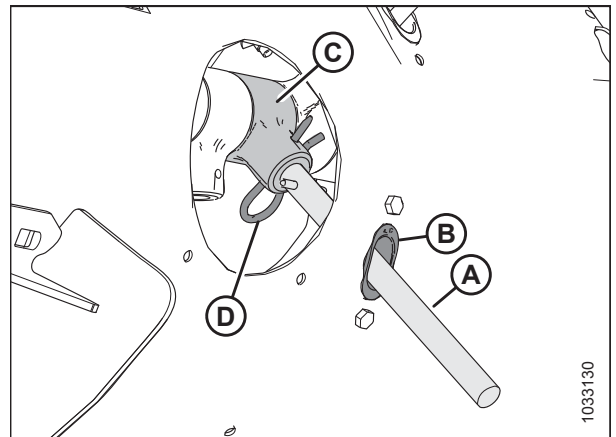


Figure 4.57: Auger Finger

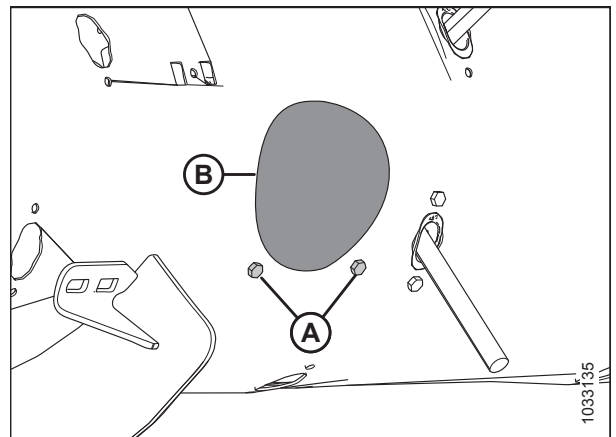


Figure 4.58: Auger Access Hole Cover

## 4.2 FM200 Setup

The following sections outline the recommended float module setup guidelines for your specific combine model and crop type; however, the recommendations cannot cover all conditions.

If feeding problems develop with the float module, refer to [7 Troubleshooting, page 643](#).

### 4.2.1 Using Auger Flighting

The auger flighting on the FM200 can be configured for specific combines and crop conditions. For instructions, refer to [4.1 FM200 Feed Auger Configurations, page 321](#) for combine/crop specific configurations.

### 4.2.2 Using Stripper Bars

Stripper bar kits may have been supplied with your header to improve feeding in certain crops such as rice.

For servicing information, refer to [5.14 FM200 Stripper Bars and Feed Deflectors, page 553](#).

## 4.3 AGCO (Challenger, Gleaner, and Massey Ferguson) Combines

### 4.3.1 Attaching Header to an AGCO (Challenger, Gleaner, or Massey Ferguson) Combine

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Use lock handle (B) to retract lugs (A) at the base of the feeder house.

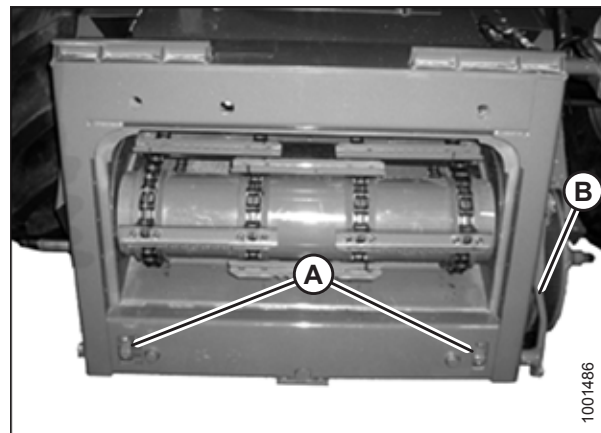


Figure 4.59: AGCO Group Feeder House

**⚠ DANGER**

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

3. Start the engine and slowly approach the header until the feeder house is directly under float module top cross member (A) and alignment pins (C) (refer to Figure 4.61, page 352) on the feeder house are aligned with holes (B) in the float module frame.

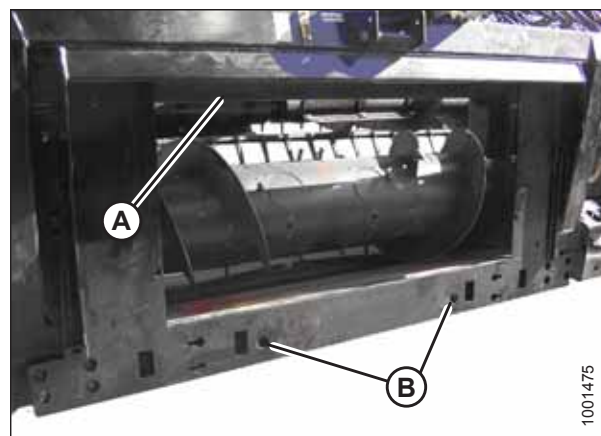


Figure 4.60: Float Module

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

### NOTE:

Your combine feeder house may not be exactly as shown.

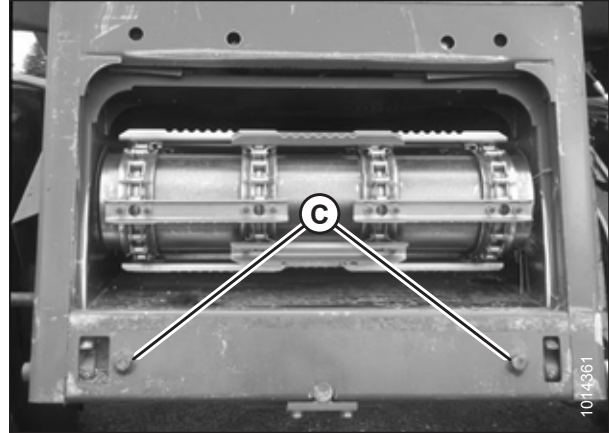


Figure 4.61: AGCO Group Alignment Pins

4. Raise the feeder house slightly to lift the header, ensuring feeder house saddle (A) is properly engaged in the float module frame.
5. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.



Figure 4.62: Feeder House and Float Module

6. Use lock handle (B) to engage lugs (A) with the float module.

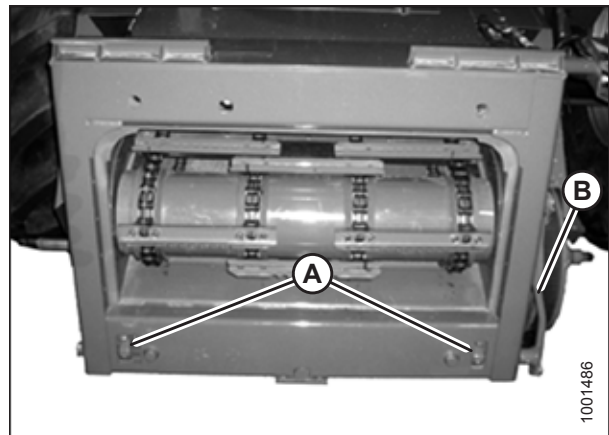


Figure 4.63: AGCO Group Feeder House

### DANGER

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

7. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
8. Lower the header fully.



## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

**NOTE:**

The float module is equipped with a multicoupler that connects to the combine. If your combine is equipped with individual connectors, a multicoupler kit (single-point connector) must be installed. Refer to Table 4.1, page 353 for a list of kits and installation instructions that are available through your combine Dealer.

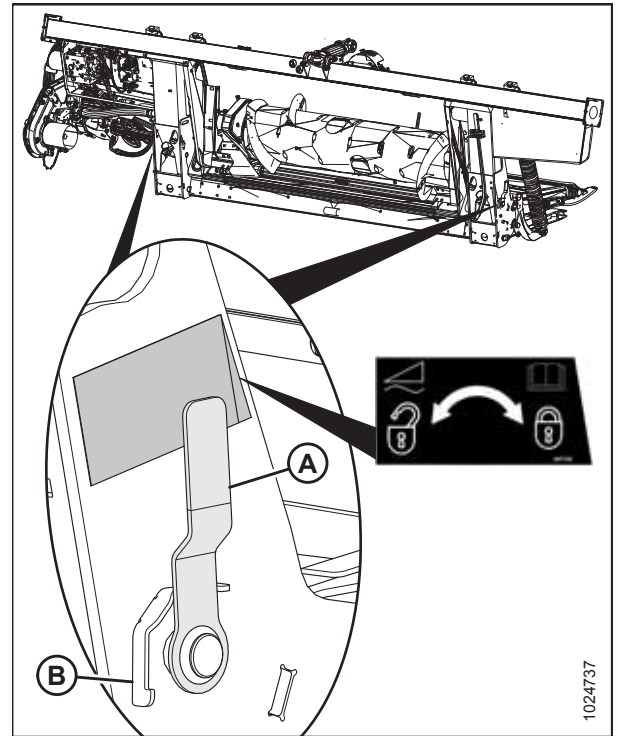
**Table 4.1 Multicoupler Kits**

Combine	AGCO Kit Number
Challenger	71530662
Gleaner R/S Series	71414706
Massey Ferguson	71411594

9. Disengage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in unlocked position (B).

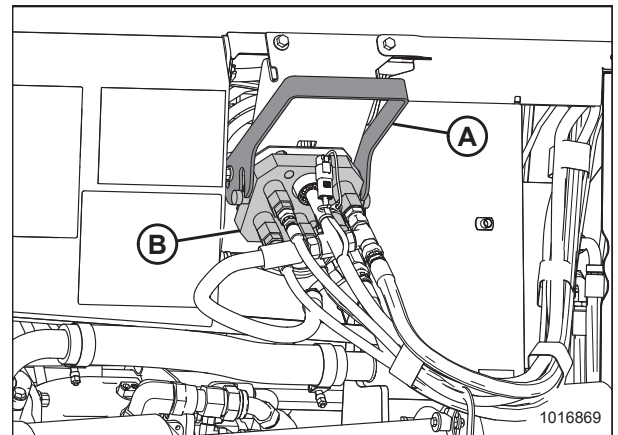
**NOTE:**

Illustration at right shows the right side of the header. Float lock on left side of header opposite.



**Figure 4.64: Float Lock Handle**

10. Raise handle (A) to release multicoupler (B) from float module.



**Figure 4.65: Float Module Multicoupler**

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

11. Push handle (A) on the combine to the fully-open position.
12. Clean the mating surfaces of multicoupler (B) and receptacle if necessary.

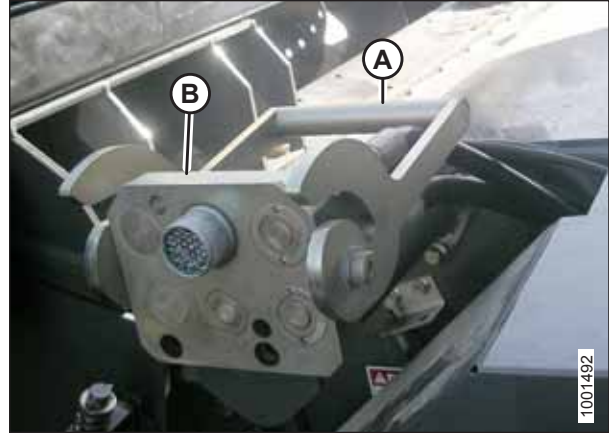


Figure 4.66: Combine Receptacle

13. Position multicoupler (A) onto the combine receptacle, and pull handle (B) to fully engage the multicoupler into the receptacle.
14. Connect reel fore-aft/header tilt selector harness (C) to combine harness (D).

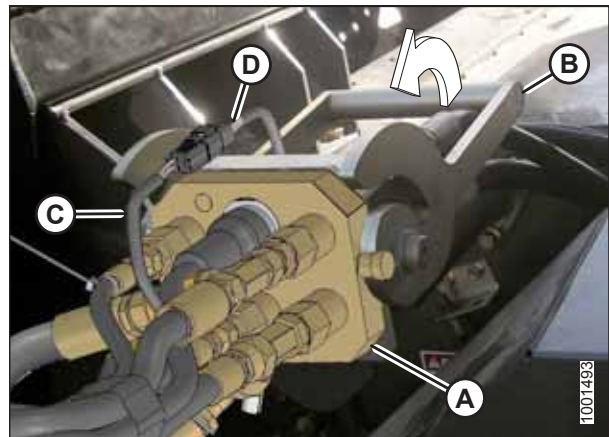


Figure 4.67: Multicoupler

15. Detach safety chain (C) from support bracket (B).
16. Pull collar (D) back to release driveline (A) from support bracket. Remove the driveline from support bracket.

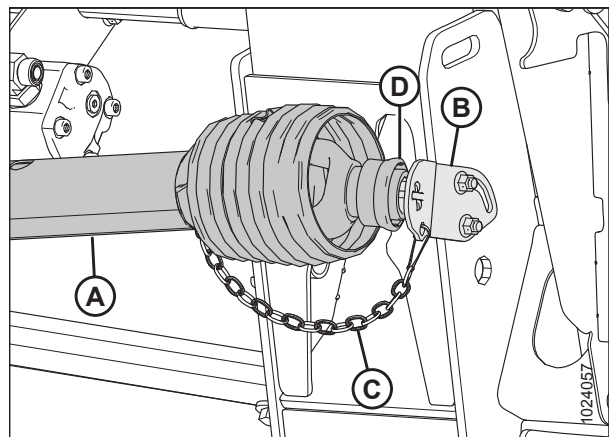


Figure 4.68: Driveline

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

17. Pull back collar (A) on the end of the driveline, and push the driveline onto combine output shaft (B) until the collar locks.

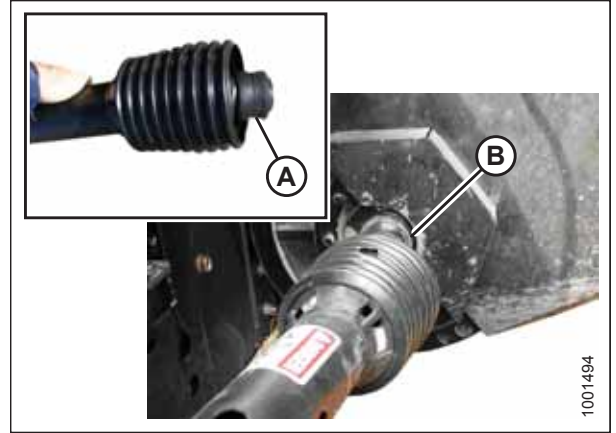


Figure 4.69: Driveline

### 4.3.2 Detaching Header from a Challenger, Gleaner, or Massey Ferguson Combine

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under header for any reason.

1. Choose a level area and position the header slightly above the ground.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

#### IMPORTANT:

If transport wheels are installed, the header may be detached in either transport or field mode. If detaching with the wheels in field mode, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to *Adjusting Stabilizer / EasyMove™ Transport Wheels*, page 62.

#### IMPORTANT:

If stabilizer wheels are installed, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to *Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels*, page 62.

3. Engage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in locked position (B).

#### NOTE:

Illustration at right shows the right side of the header. Float lock on left side of header opposite.

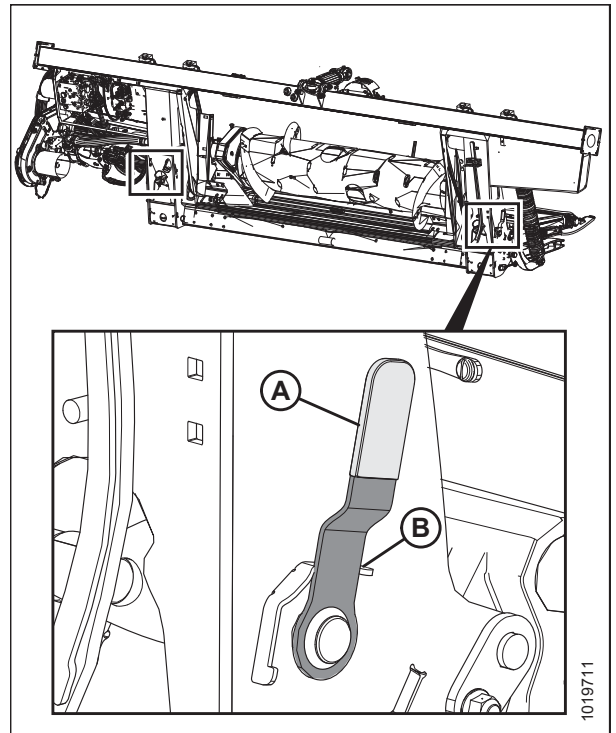


Figure 4.70: Float Lock Handle – Right Shown in Detail, Left Opposite

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

4. Disconnect driveline (A) from combine output shaft (B).

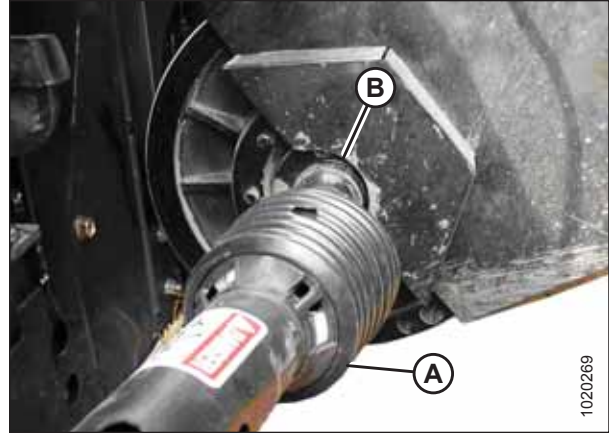


Figure 4.71: Driveline

5. Store driveline (A) on driveline support bracket (B) by pulling back collar (C) on the driveline and fitting it over support bracket body (D). Release the collar so it locks into place over the support bracket body.

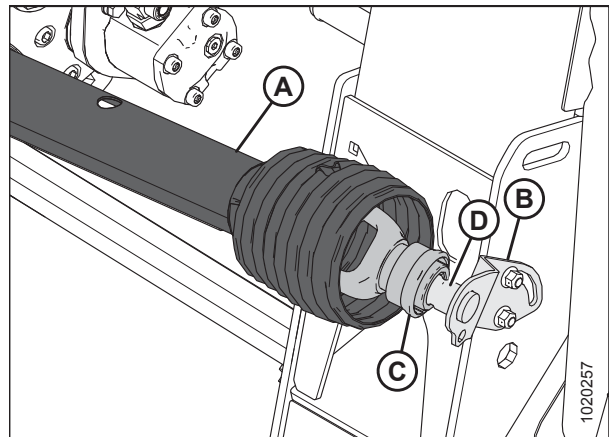


Figure 4.72: Driveline

6. Disconnect the harness at connector (A).
7. Move handle (B) on the combine multicoupler to the full open position to release multicoupler (C) from the combine.

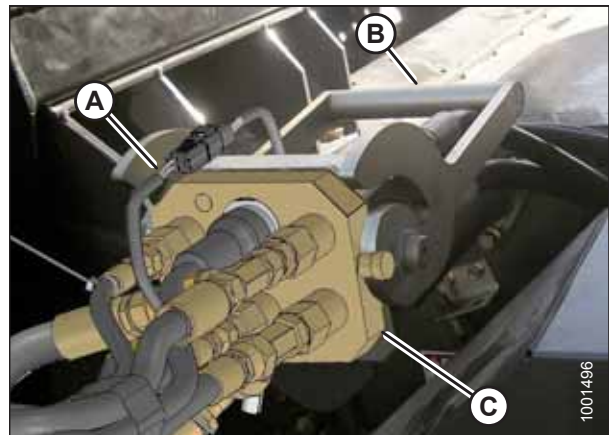


Figure 4.73: Multicoupler

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

8. Raise handle (A) on the float module, and place multicoupler (B) on the float module receptacle.
9. Lower handle (A) to lock multicoupler (B).

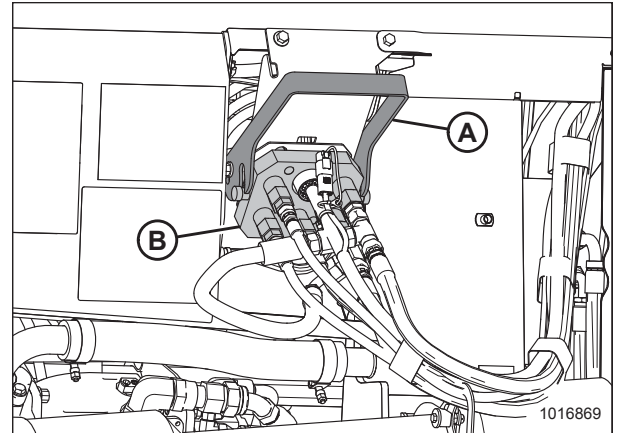


Figure 4.74: Float Module Multicoupler

10. Use lock handle (B) to retract lugs (A) at the base of the feeder house.

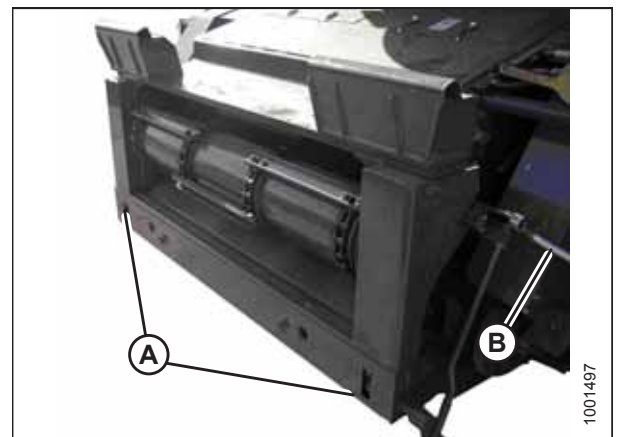


Figure 4.75: Challenger and Massey Ferguson

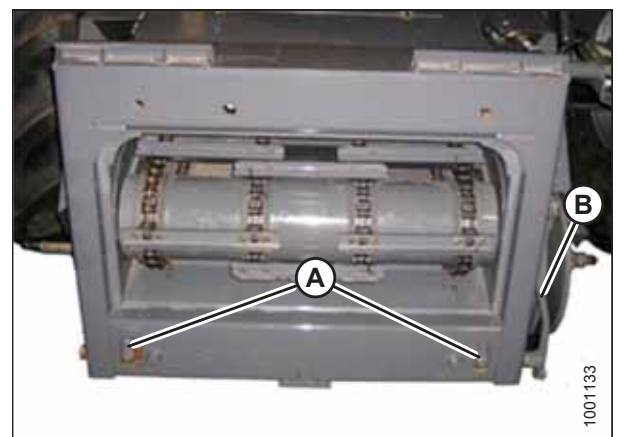


Figure 4.76: Gleaner R and S Series

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

11. Lower the feeder house until saddle (A) disengages and clears float module support (B).
12. Back the combine away slowly from the float module.

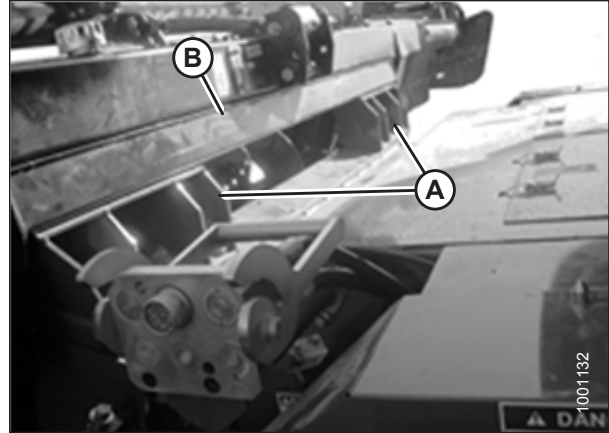


Figure 4.77: Float Module on Combine

## 4.4 AGCO IDEAL™ Series Combines

### 4.4.1 Attaching Header to an AGCO IDEAL™ Series Combine

#### WARNING

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Pull lever (A) up to retract pins (B) at the bottom left and right sides of the feeder house.
3. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.

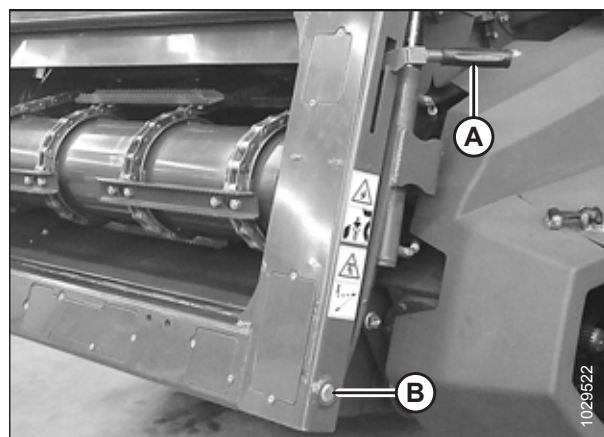


Figure 4.78: Feeder House

4. Drive the combine slowly up to the header until the feeder house is directly under top beam (A), and pins (B) are under hooks (C) on the transition frame.

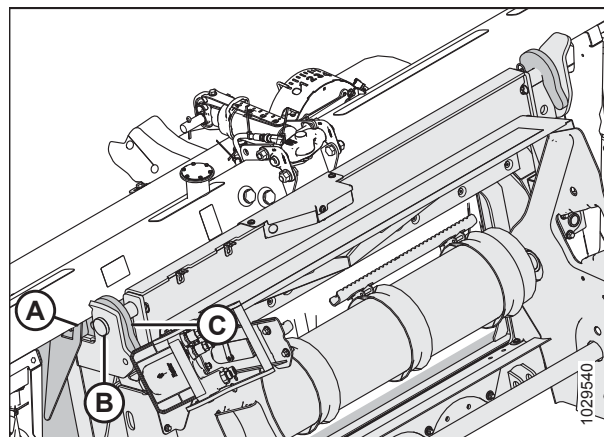


Figure 4.79: Feeder House

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

5. Raise feeder house until transition frame top beam (A) is fully resting on the feeder house. Raise the header slightly off the ground.

**IMPORTANT:**

The full weight of the header must be on the feeder house, **NOT** on pins (B).

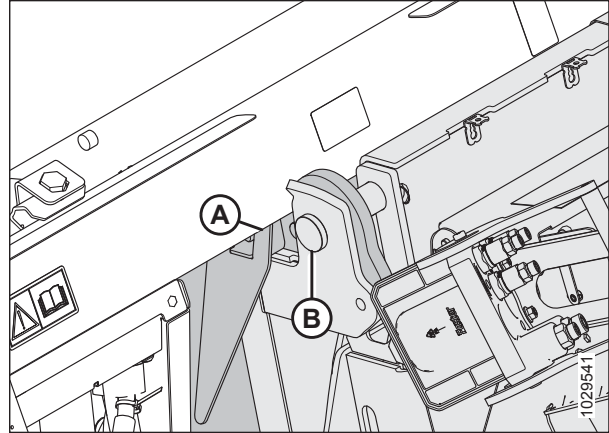


Figure 4.80: Top Beam Resting on Feeder House

6. Position bottom of feeder house so that locking pins (B) align with the holes in mount (C).
7. Push lever (A) down to extend locking pins (B) so they engage in mount (C).

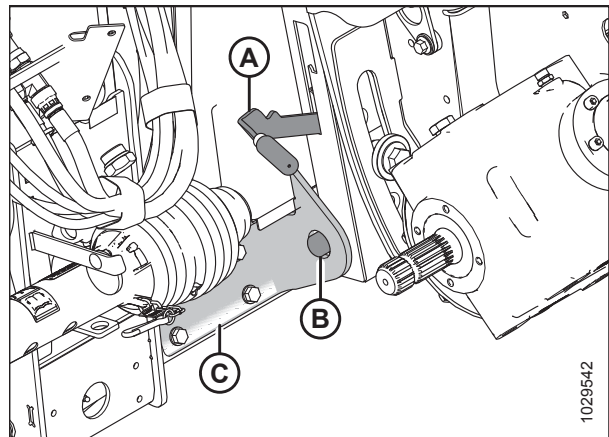


Figure 4.81: Feeder House Locking Pins

8. Rotate lock disc (A) upward and remove driveline (B) from the support.

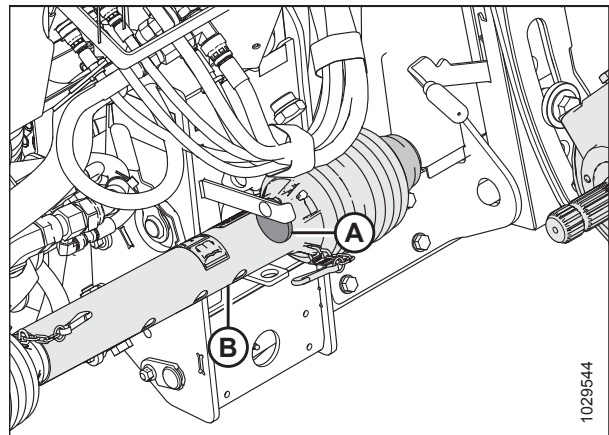


Figure 4.82: Driveline in Storage Position



## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

9. Pull back collar (A) on end of driveline and push onto combine output shaft (B) until collar locks.

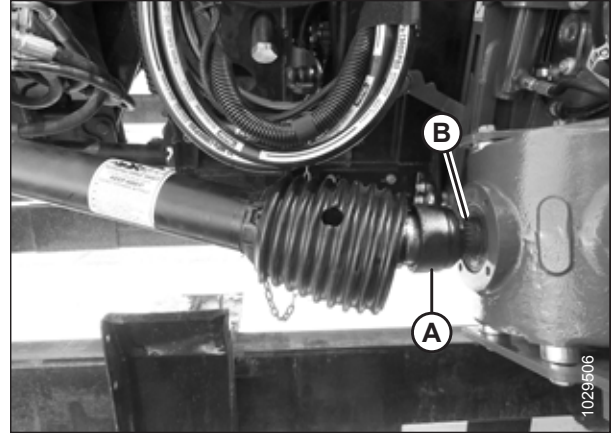


Figure 4.83: Connecting Driveline to Combine

10. Lower handle (A) to release multicoupler (B) from header.
11. Open cover (C) on the combine receptacle.
12. Push handle (D) to fully open position.
13. Clean mating surfaces of coupler and receptacle if necessary.

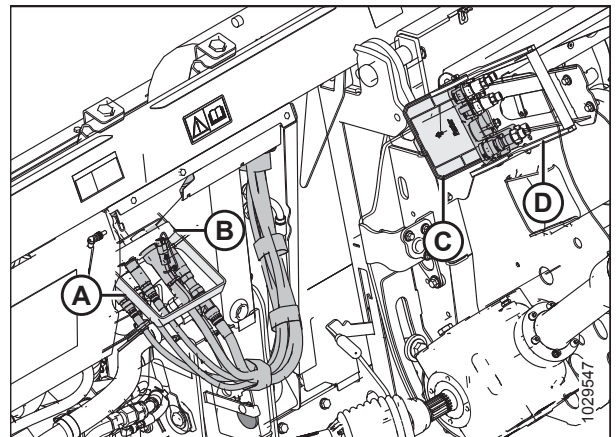


Figure 4.84: Multicoupler Receptacles

14. Position coupler (A) onto combine receptacle, and pull handle (B) to fully engage multicoupler into receptacle.

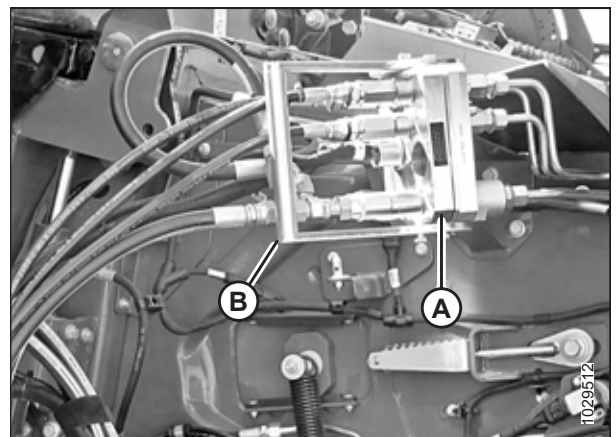


Figure 4.85: Multicoupler

#### 4.4.2 Detaching Header from an AGCO IDEAL™ Series Combine

##### WARNING

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Park the combine on a level surface.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Push combine receptacle handle (B) to fully-open position to release multicoupler (A).

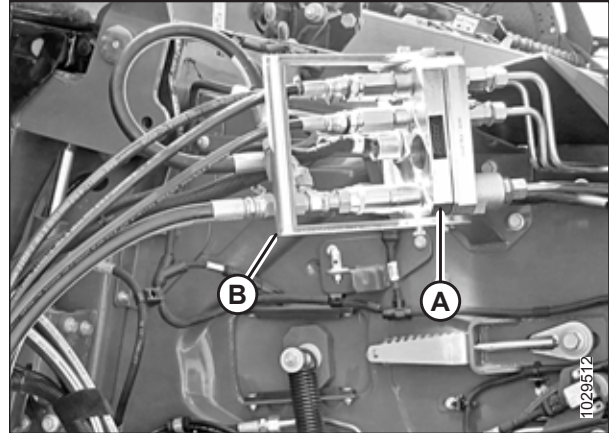


Figure 4.86: Combine Receptacle

6. Position multicoupler (B) onto header receptacle, and move handle (A) to a vertical position to lock the multicoupler.

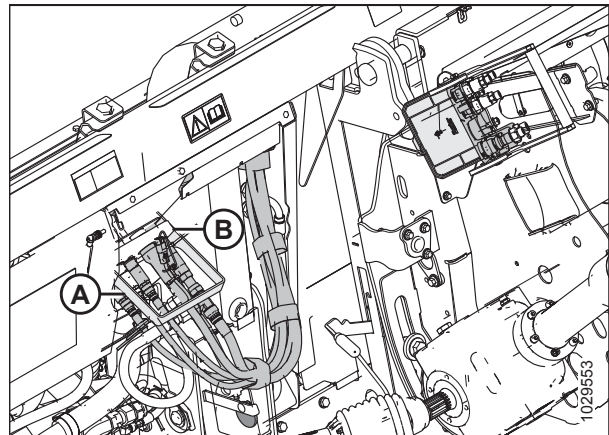


Figure 4.87: Locking Multicoupler

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

7. Pull back driveline collar (A) and remove the driveline from combine output shaft (B).

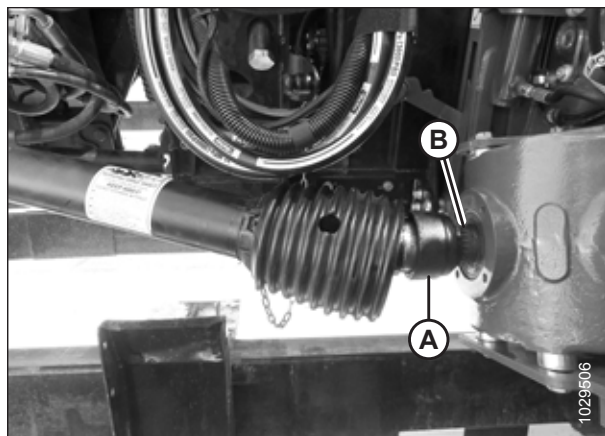


Figure 4.88: Detaching Driveline

8. Rotate lock disc (A) and slide driveline (B) onto the support.
9. Lower lock disc (A) to secure driveline (B) onto the support.

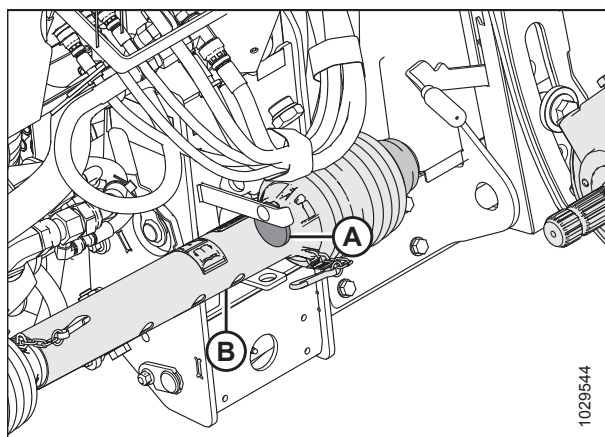


Figure 4.89: Driveline in Storage Position

10. Pull lever (A) up to retract pins (B) at the base of the feeder house.

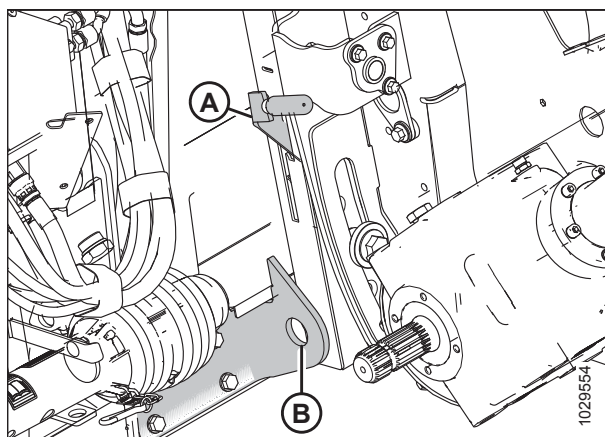


Figure 4.90: Feeder House Locking Pins

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

11. Start the combine and lower the header to the ground until feeder house pins (A) are clear of hooks (B).
12. Slowly back combine away from header.

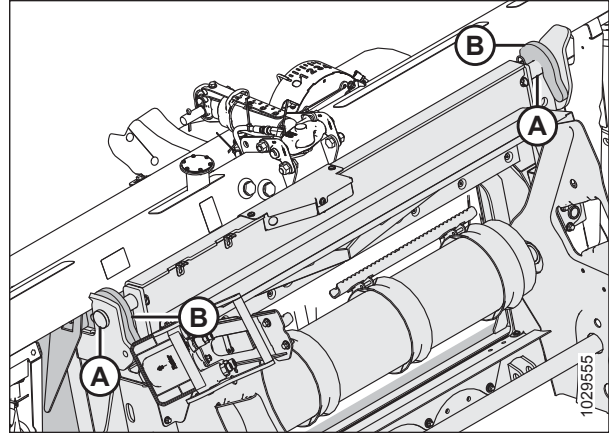


Figure 4.91: Lowering Feeder House

## 4.5 Case IH Combines

### 4.5.1 Attaching Header to Case IH Combine

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. On the combine, ensure lock handle (A) is positioned so hooks (B) can engage the float module.

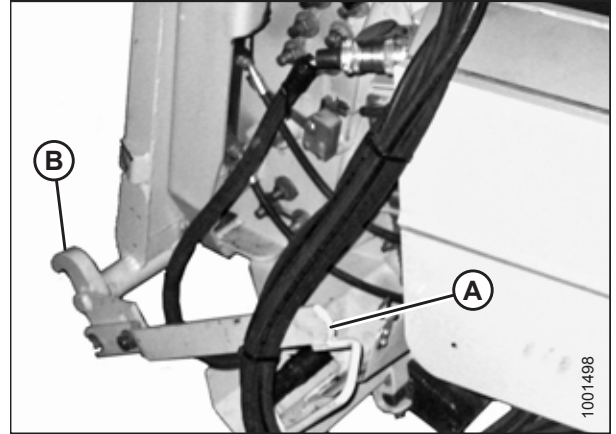


Figure 4.92: Feeder House Locks

#### DANGER

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

2. Start the engine and slowly drive the combine up to the header until feeder house saddle (A) is directly under float module top cross member (B).
3. Raise the feeder house slightly to lift the header, ensuring the feeder saddle is properly engaged in the float module frame.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

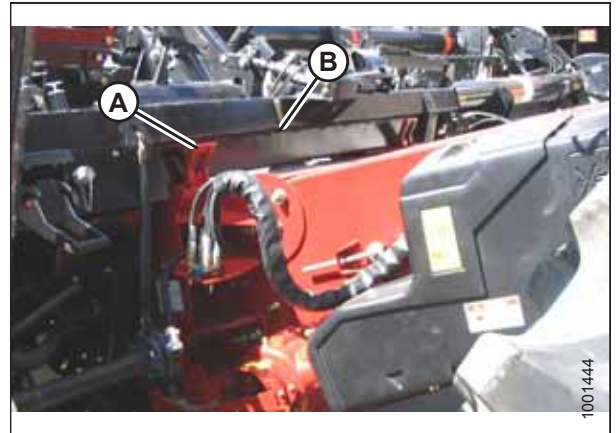


Figure 4.93: Combine and Float Module

5. On the left side of the feeder house, lift lever (A) on the float module and push handle (B) on the combine to engage locks (C) on both sides of the feeder house.
6. Push down on lever (A) so the slot in the lever engages the handle and locks the handle in place.
7. If lock (C) does not fully engage the pin on the float module, loosen bolts (D) and adjust lock. Retighten bolts.

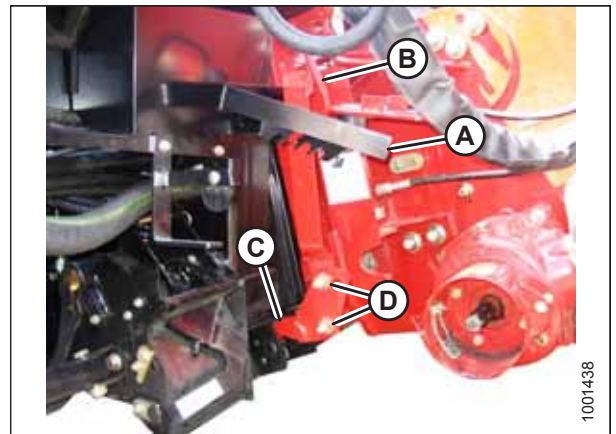


Figure 4.94: Combine and Float Module

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

8. Open the cover on receptacle (A) located on the left side of the float module.
9. Press lock button (B) and pull handle (C) to the fully-open position.
10. Clean the receptacle mating surfaces.

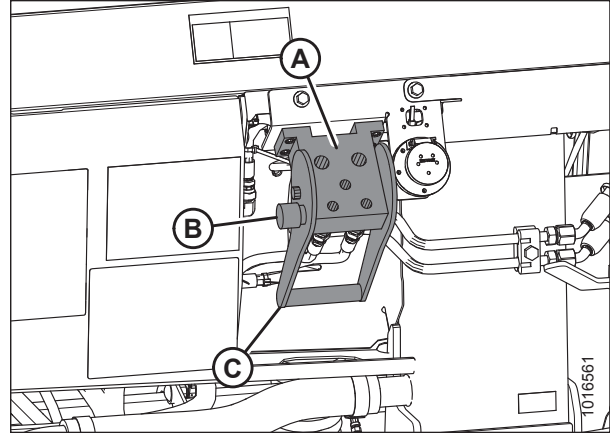


Figure 4.95: Float Module Receptacle

11. Remove hydraulic quick coupler (A) from the combine, and clean the mating surfaces.



Figure 4.96: Combine Connectors

12. Position the coupler onto coupler receptacle (A) and push handle (B) (not shown) to engage the multicoupler pins into the receptacle.
13. Push handle (B) to the closed position until lock button (C) snaps out.

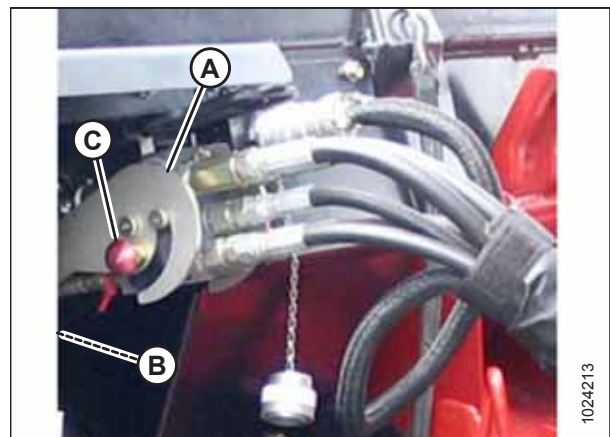


Figure 4.97: Hydraulic Connection

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

14. Remove the cover from electrical receptacle (A). Ensure the receptacle is clean and has no signs of damage.

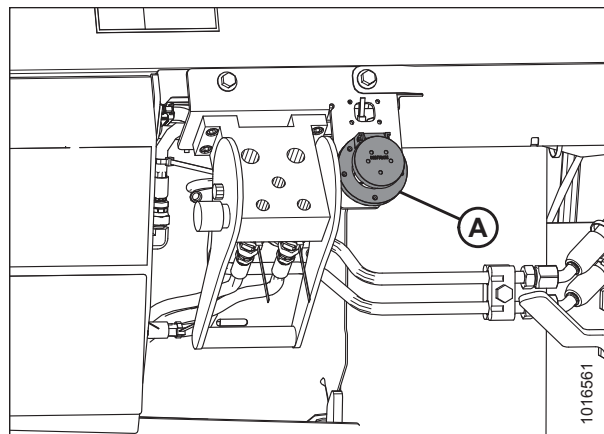


Figure 4.98: Electrical Receptacle

15. Remove electrical connector (A) from the storage cup on the combine and route it to the float module receptacle.



Figure 4.99: Combine Connectors

16. Align the lugs on connector (A) with the slots in receptacle (B), push the connector onto the receptacle, and turn the collar on the connector to lock it in place.

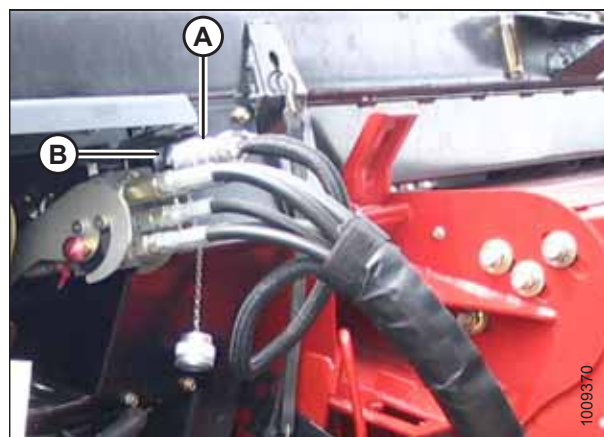


Figure 4.100: Electrical Connection

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

17. Detach safety chain (C) from support bracket (B).
18. Pull collar (D) back to release driveline (A) from support bracket. Remove the driveline from support bracket.

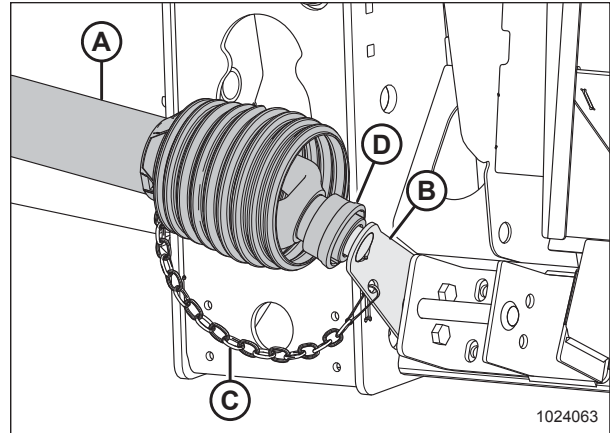


Figure 4.101: Driveline in Storage Position

19. Pull back collar (A) on the end of the driveline, and push the driveline onto combine output shaft (B) until the collar locks.

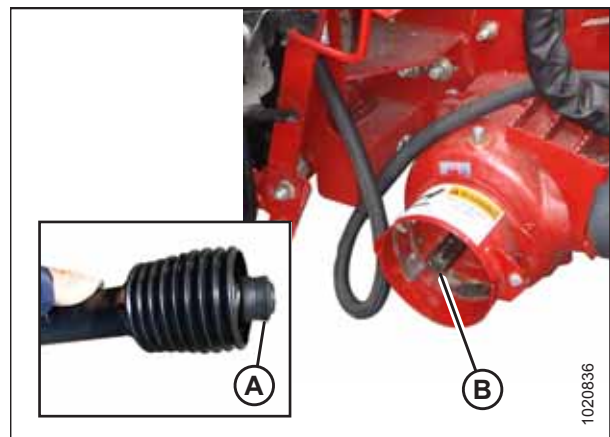


Figure 4.102: Combine Output Shaft



## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

20. Disengage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in unlocked position (B).

**NOTE:**

Illustration at right shows the right side of the header. Float lock on left side of header opposite.

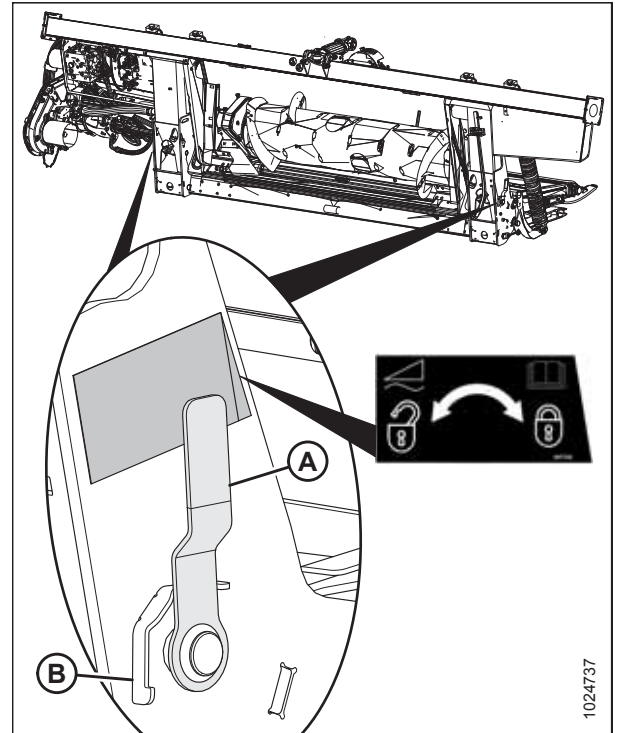


Figure 4.103: Float Lock Handle

## 4.5.2 Detaching Header from Case IH Combine

### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under header for any reason.

1. Park the combine on a level surface.
2. Position the header slightly above the ground.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

**IMPORTANT:**

If transport wheels are installed, the header may be detached in either transport or field mode. If detaching with the wheels in field mode, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to *Adjusting Stabilizer / EasyMove™ Transport Wheels*, page 62.

**IMPORTANT:**

If stabilizer wheels are installed, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to *Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels*, page 62.

4. Engage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in locked position (B).

**NOTE:**

Illustration at right shows the right side of the header. Float lock on left side of header opposite.

5. Push back collar (A) on the end of the driveline and pull the driveline out of combine output shaft (B) until the collar disengages.

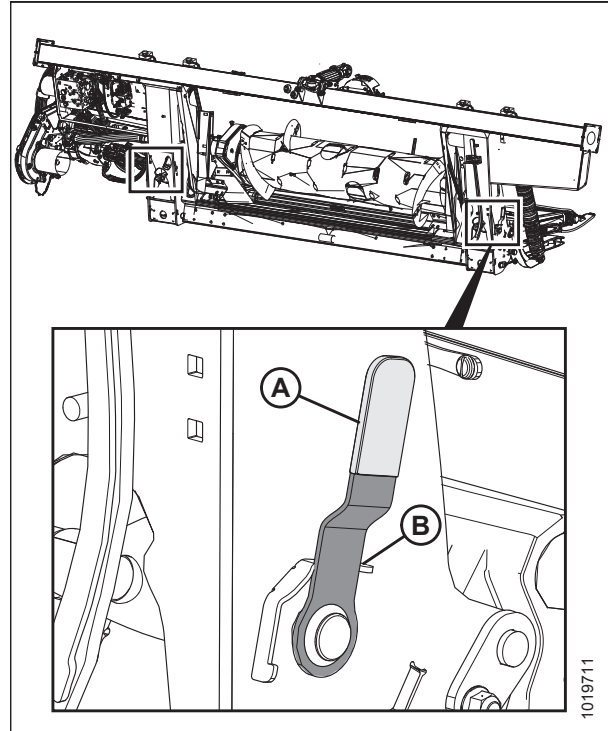


Figure 4.104: Float Lock Handle

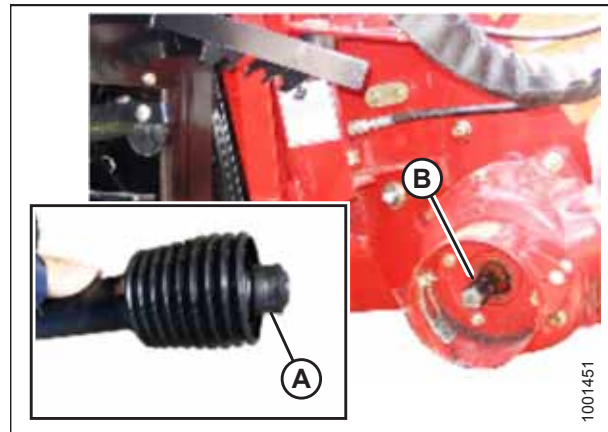


Figure 4.105: Driveline

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

6. Store driveline (A) on driveline support bracket (B) by pulling back collar (C) on the driveline and fitting it over support bracket body (D). Release the collar so it locks into place over the support bracket body.
7. Attach safety chain (E) to support bracket (B).

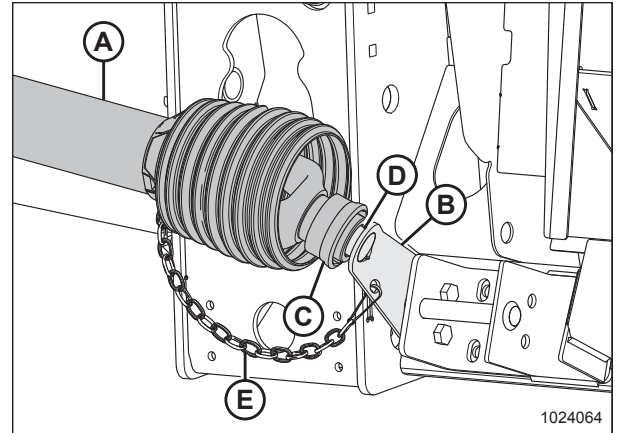


Figure 4.106: Driveline

8. Remove electrical connector (A) and replace cover (B).
9. Push in lock button (C) and pull handle (D) to release multicoupler (E).

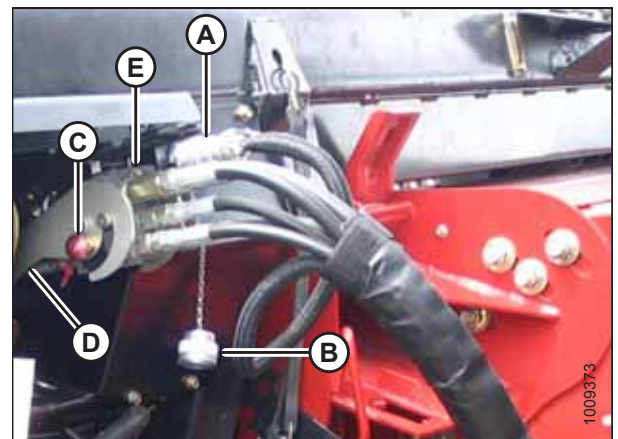


Figure 4.107: Multicoupler

10. Position multicoupler (A) onto storage plate (B) on the combine.
11. Place the electrical connector (C) in the storage cup (D).

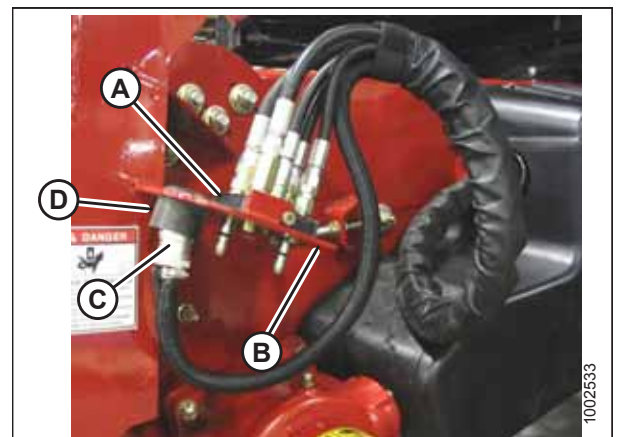


Figure 4.108: Multicoupler Storage

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

12. Push handle (A) on the float module receptacle to the closed position until lock button (B) snaps out. Close the cover.

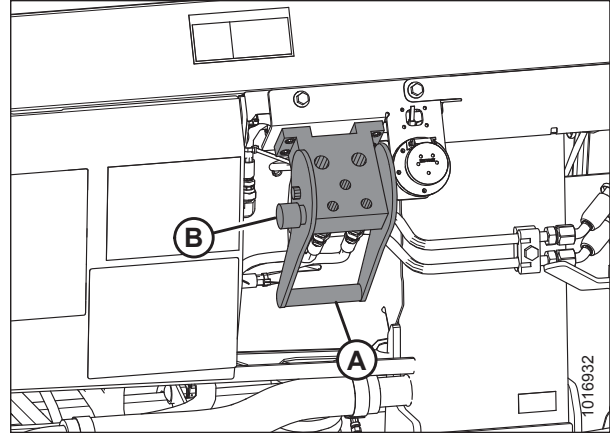


Figure 4.109: Float Module Receptacle

13. Lift lever (A) and pull and lower handle (B) to disengage feeder house/float module lock (C).
14. Lower the feeder house until it disengages the float module support.
15. Back the combine away slowly from the float module.

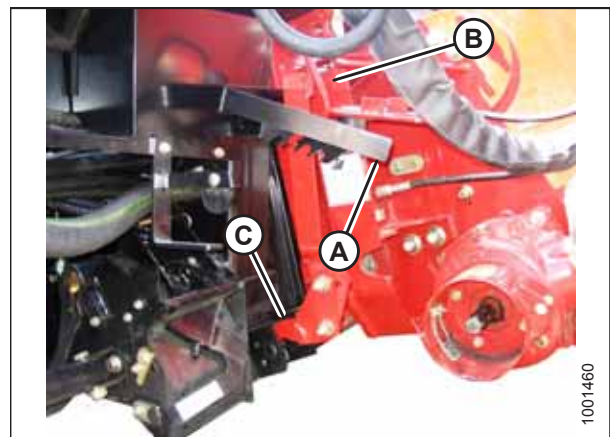


Figure 4.110: Feeder House Locks

## 4.6 CLAAS Combines

The FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header is compatible with CLAAS Lexion 500, 600, and 700 series, Tucano, and 7000, 8000 series combines.

### 4.6.1 Attaching Header to CLAAS Combine

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Move handle (A) on the float module into the raised position, and ensure pins (B) at the bottom corners of the float module are retracted.

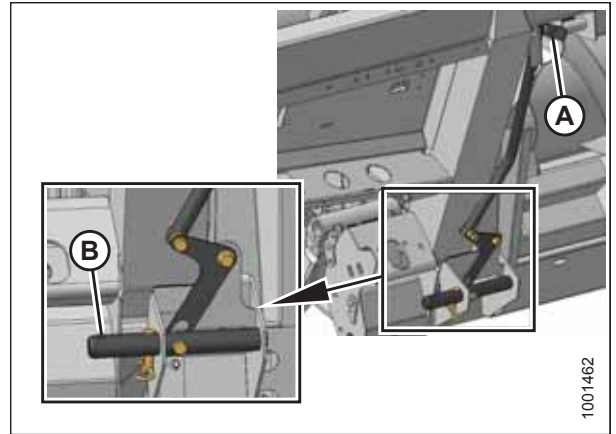


Figure 4.111: Pins Retracted

#### DANGER

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

3. Start the engine and slowly drive the combine up to the header until feeder house saddle (A) is directly under float module top cross member (B).
4. Raise the feeder house slightly to lift the header, ensuring the feeder saddle is properly engaged in the float module frame.
5. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

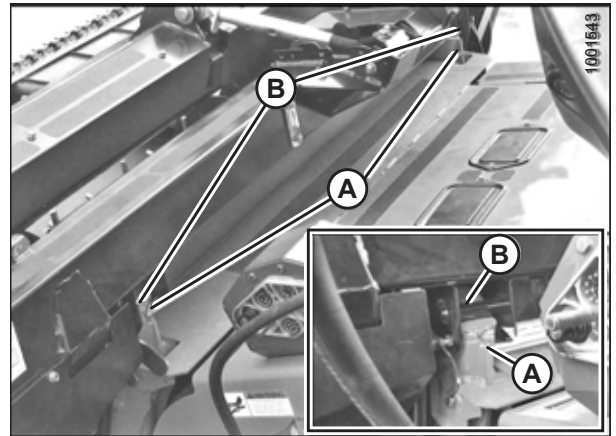


Figure 4.112: Header on Combine

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

- Remove locking pin (B) from float module pin (A).

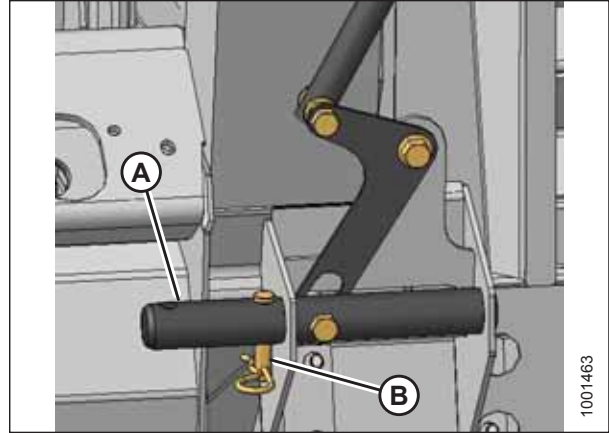


Figure 4.113: Locking Pins

- Lower handle (A) to engage float module pins (B) into the feeder house. Reinsert locking pin (C) and secure with the hairpin.

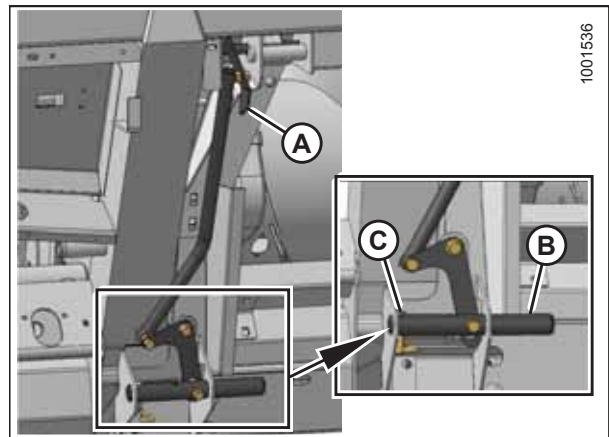


Figure 4.114: Engaging Pins

- Unscrew knob (A) on combine coupler (B) to release the coupler from the receptacle.
- Clean coupler (B) and receptacle.

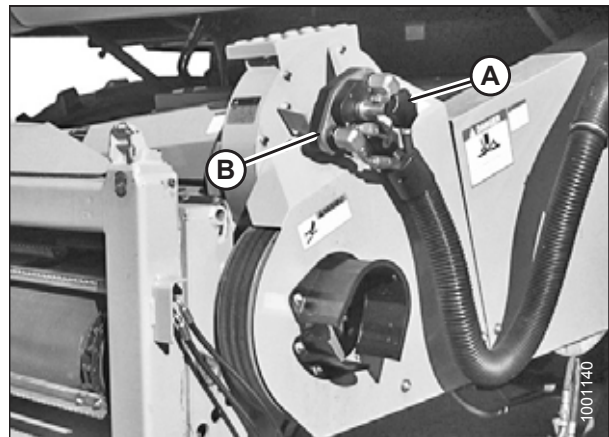


Figure 4.115: Combine Coupler

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

10. Place float module receptacle cover (A) onto the combine receptacle.

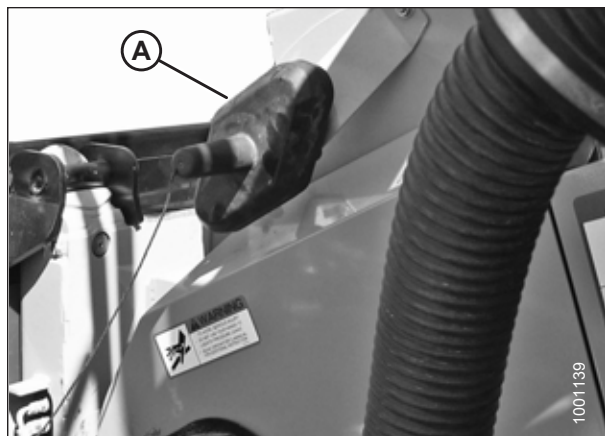


Figure 4.116: Receptacle Cover

11. Clean mating surface of coupler (A) and position onto float module receptacle (C).
12. Turn knob (B) to secure the coupler to the receptacle.

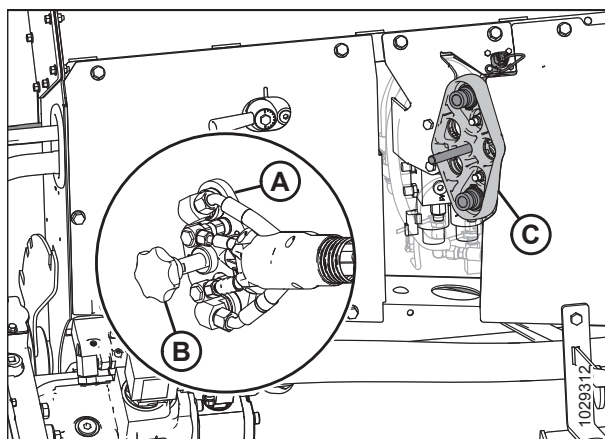


Figure 4.117: Coupler

13. Detach safety chain (C) from support bracket (B).
14. Pull collar (D) back to release driveline (A) from support bracket. Remove the driveline from the support bracket.

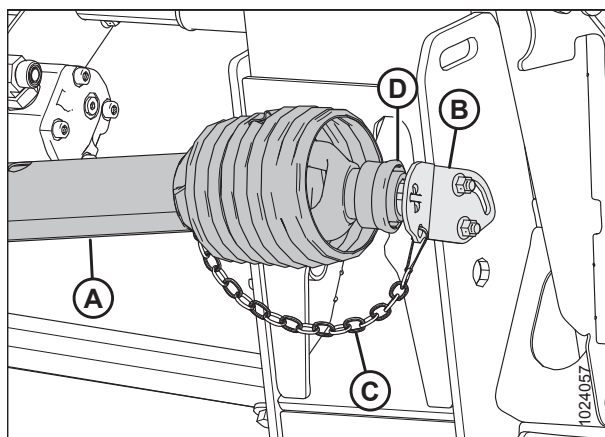


Figure 4.118: Driveline

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

15. Attach driveline (A) to the combine output shaft.

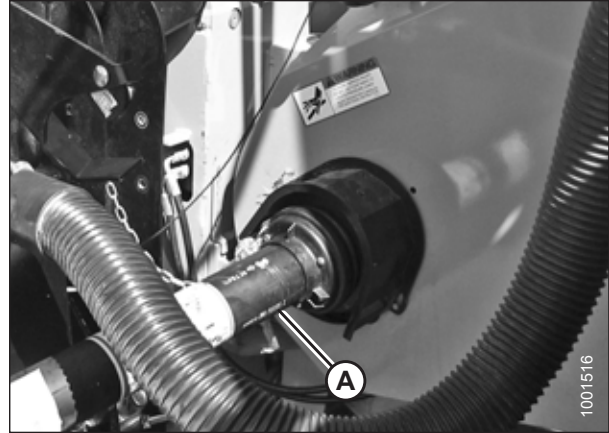


Figure 4.119: Driveline and Output Shaft

16. Disengage both header float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in unlocked position (B).

**NOTE:**

Illustration at right shows the right side of the header. Float lock on left side of header opposite.

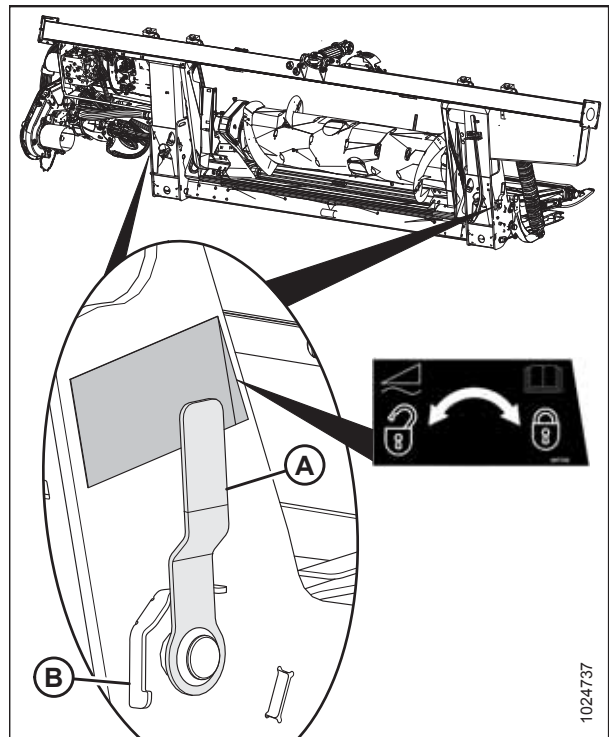


Figure 4.120: Float Lock Handle

### 4.6.2 Detaching Header from CLAAS Combine

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.



## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

1. Choose a level area and position the header slightly above the ground.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

### IMPORTANT:

If transport wheels are installed, the header may be detached in either transport or field mode. If detaching with the wheels in field mode, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Stabilizer / EasyMove™ Transport Wheels, page 62](#).

### IMPORTANT:

If stabilizer wheels are installed, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels, page 62](#).

3. Engage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in locked position (B).

### NOTE:

Illustration at right shows the right side of the header. Float lock on left side of header opposite.

4. Disconnect driveline (A) from the combine.

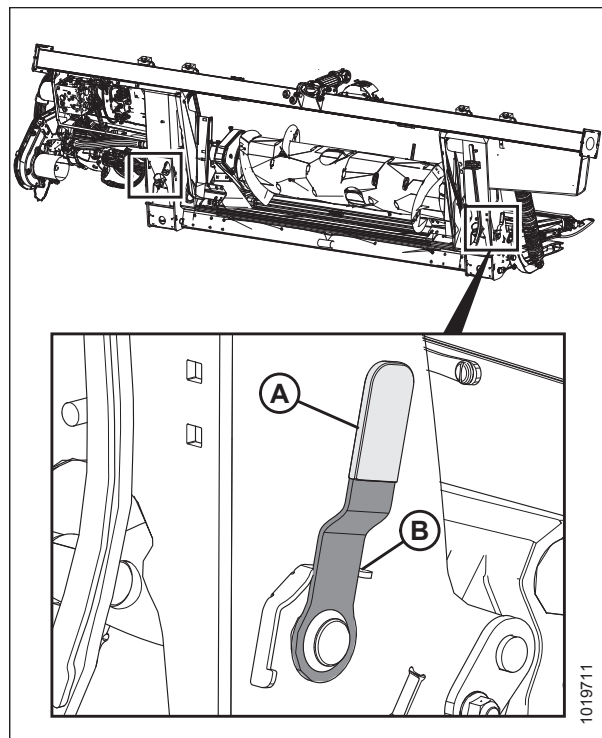


Figure 4.121: Float Lock Handle

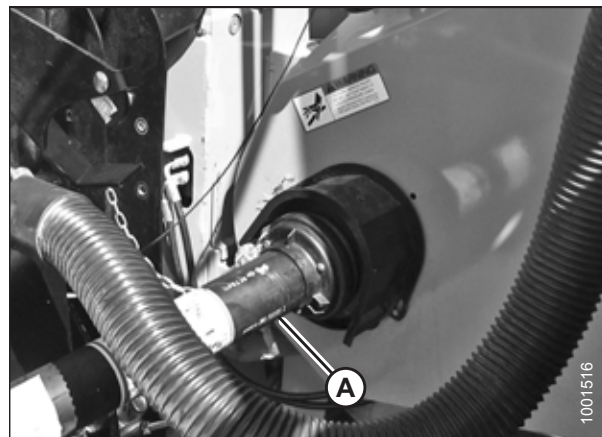


Figure 4.122: Driveline

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

5. Store driveline (A) on driveline support bracket (B) by pulling back collar (C) on the driveline and fitting it over support bracket body (D). Release the collar so it locks into place over the support bracket body.

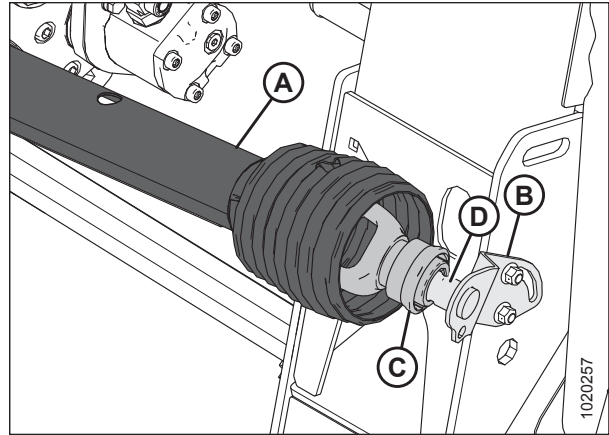


Figure 4.123: Driveline

6. Remove cover (A) from the combine receptacle.

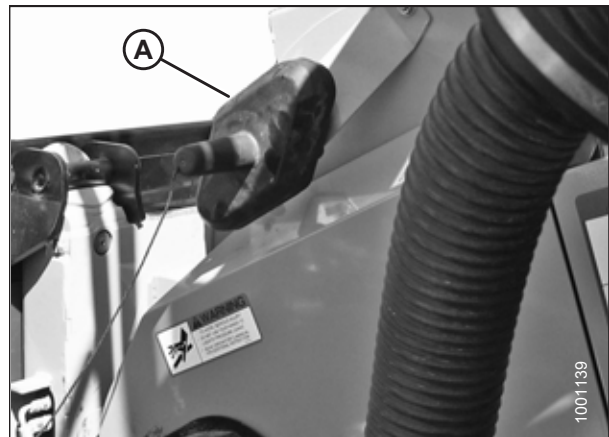


Figure 4.124: Cover

7. Position coupler (A) onto the combine receptacle, and turn knob (B) to secure the coupler to the receptacle.

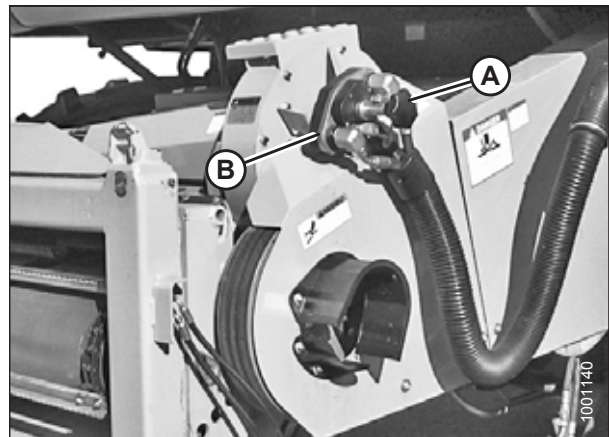


Figure 4.125: Combine Coupler

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

- Place cover (A) on the float module receptacle.

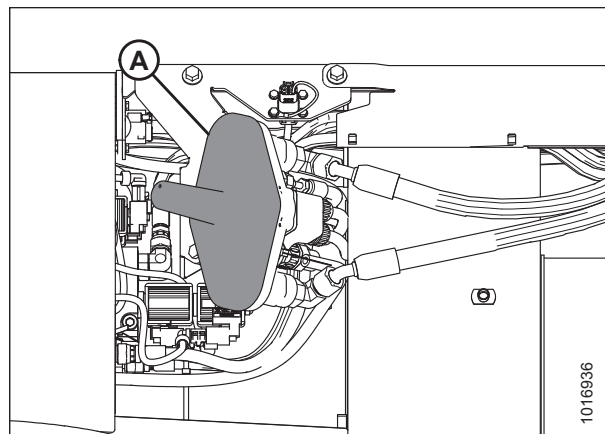


Figure 4.126: Float Module

- Remove locking pin (A) from float module pin (B).
- Raise handle (C) to disengage float module pins (B) from the feeder house.
- Replace locking pin (A) in the float module pin, and secure with the hairpin.

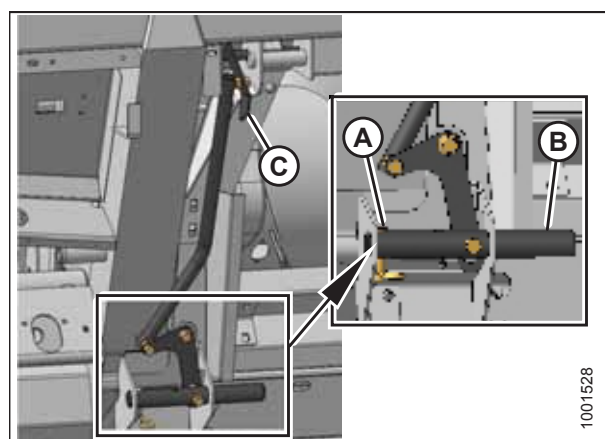


Figure 4.127: Feeder House Locks

- Lower the feeder house until feeder house posts (A) disengage float module (B).
- Back the combine away slowly from the float module.

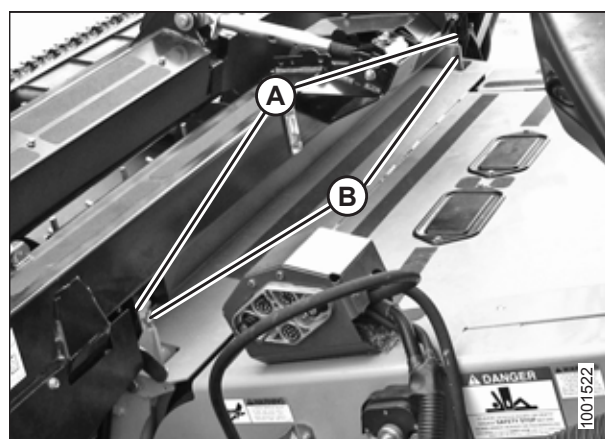


Figure 4.128: Header on Combine

### 4.6.3 Attaching Header to CLAAS 7000/8000 Series Combine

#### **⚠ DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Move handle (A) on the float module into the raised position, and ensure pins (B) at the bottom corners of the float module are retracted.

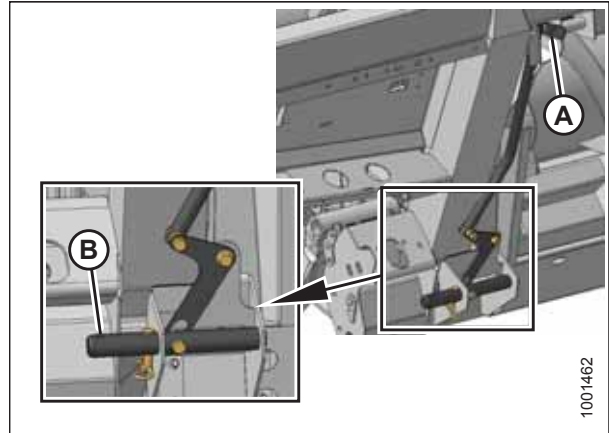


Figure 4.129: Pins Retracted

#### **⚠ DANGER**

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

3. Start the engine and slowly drive the combine up to the header until feeder house saddle (A) is directly under float module top cross member (B).
4. Raise the feeder house slightly to lift the header, ensuring the feeder saddle is properly engaged in the float module frame.
5. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
6. Remove locking pin (B) from float module pin (A).

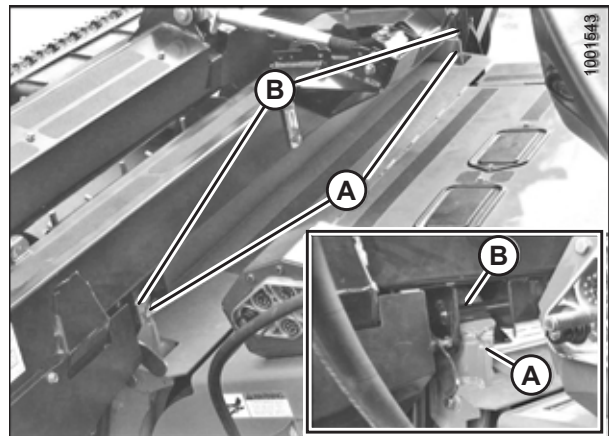


Figure 4.130: Header on Combine

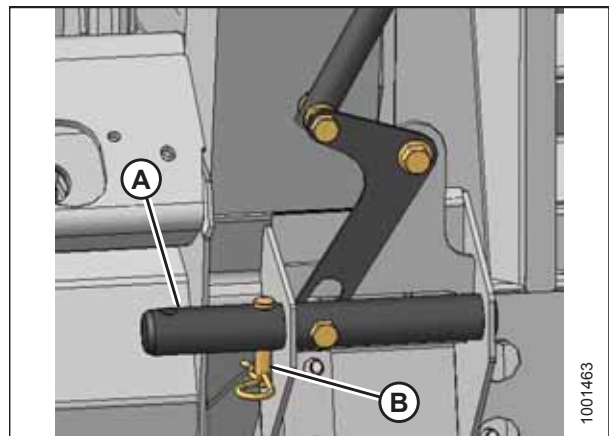


Figure 4.131: Locking Pins

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

7. Lower handle (A) to engage float module pins (B) into the feeder house. Reinsert locking pin (C) and secure with the hairpin.
8. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

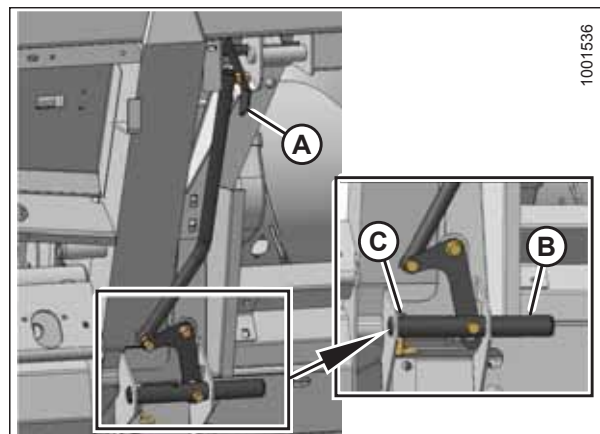


Figure 4.132: Engaging Pins

9. Unscrew knob (A) on combine coupler (B) to release the coupler from the receptacle.
10. Clean coupler (B) and receptacle.

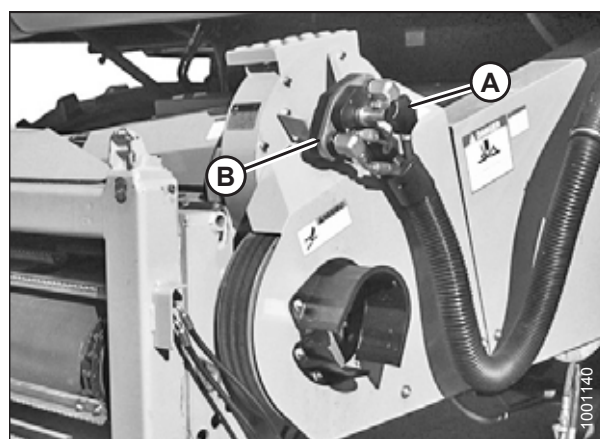


Figure 4.133: Combine Coupler

11. Place float module receptacle cover (A) onto the combine receptacle.

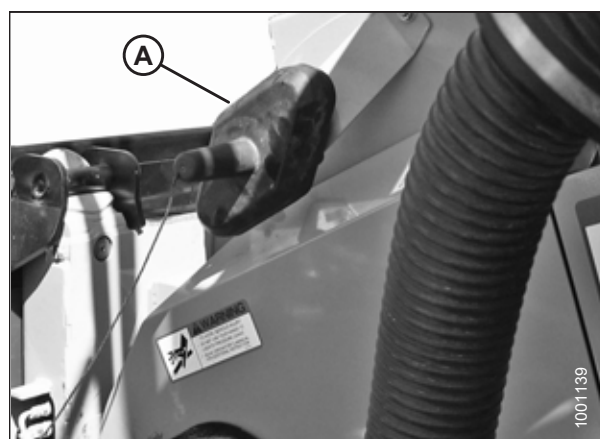


Figure 4.134: Receptacle Cover

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

12. Clean mating surface of coupler (A) and position onto float module receptacle (C).
13. Turn knob (B) to secure the coupler to the receptacle.

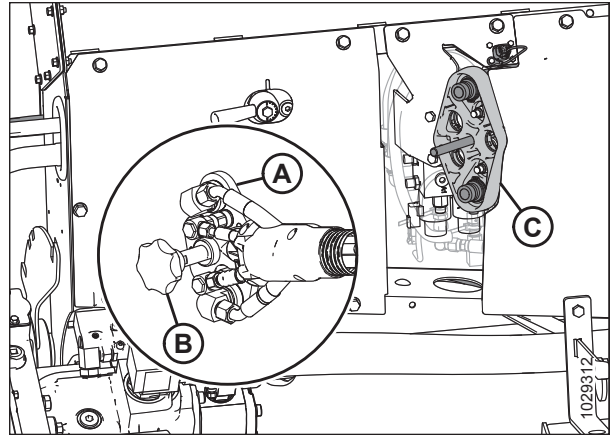


Figure 4.135: Coupler

14. Detach safety chain (C) from support bracket (B).
15. Pull collar (D) back to release driveline (A) from support bracket.

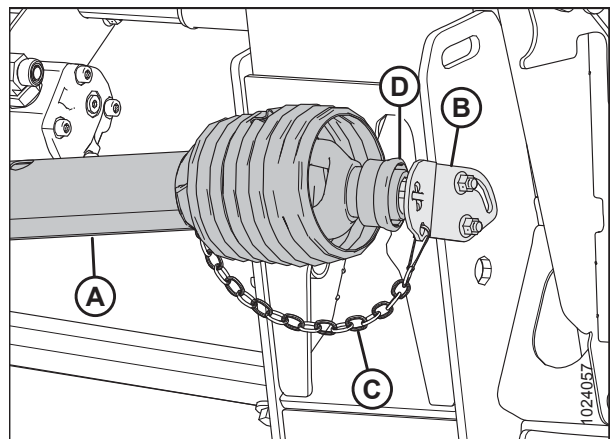


Figure 4.136: Driveline

16. Attach driveline (A) to the combine output shaft.

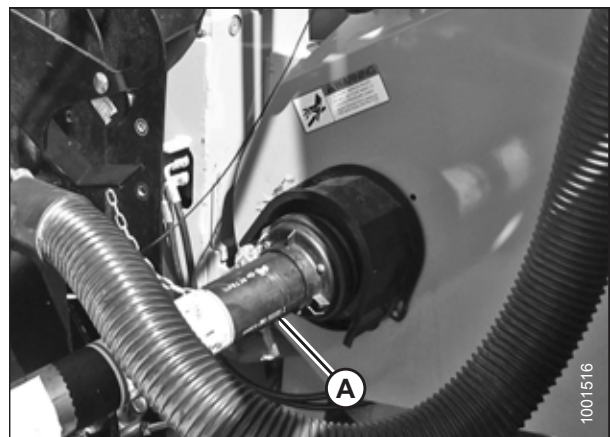


Figure 4.137: Driveline and Output Shaft

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

17. Disengage both header float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in unlocked position (B).

**NOTE:**

Illustration at right shows the right side of the header. Float lock on left side of header opposite.

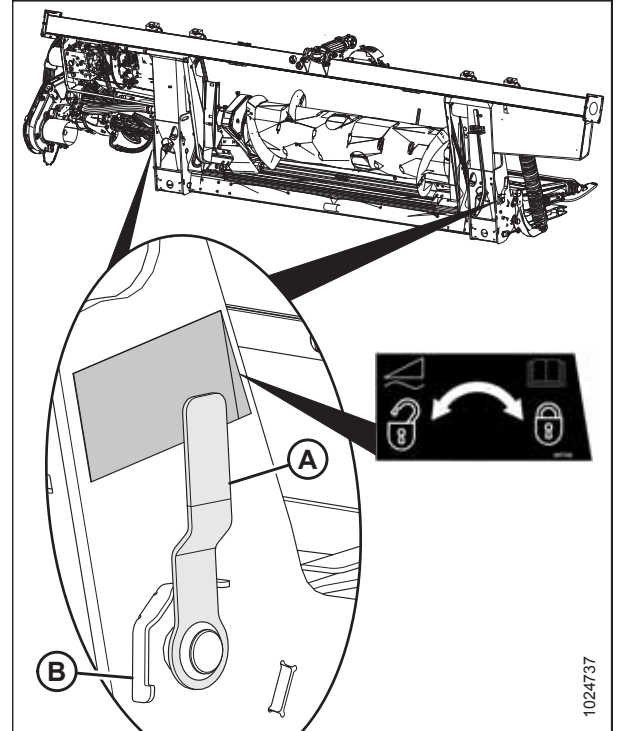


Figure 4.138: Float Lock Handle

### 4.6.4 Attaching Header to CLAAS Tucano Combine

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Move handle (A) on the float module into the raised position, and ensure pins (B) at the bottom corners of the float module are retracted.

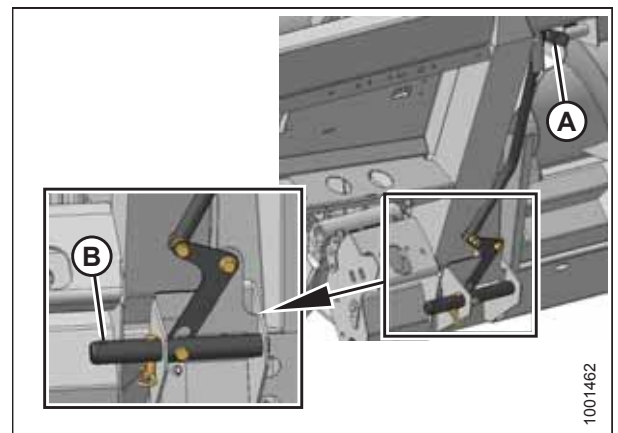


Figure 4.139: Pins Retracted

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

### DANGER

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

3. Start the engine and slowly drive the combine up to the header until feeder house saddle (A) is directly under float module top cross member (B).
4. Raise the feeder house slightly to lift the header, ensuring the feeder saddle is properly engaged in the float module frame.
5. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

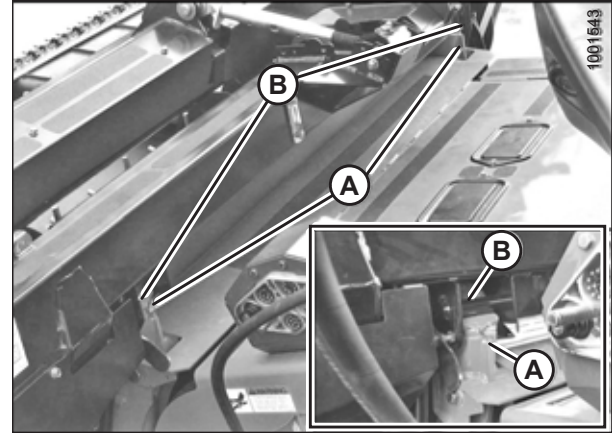


Figure 4.140: Header on Combine

6. Remove locking pin (B) from float module pin (A).

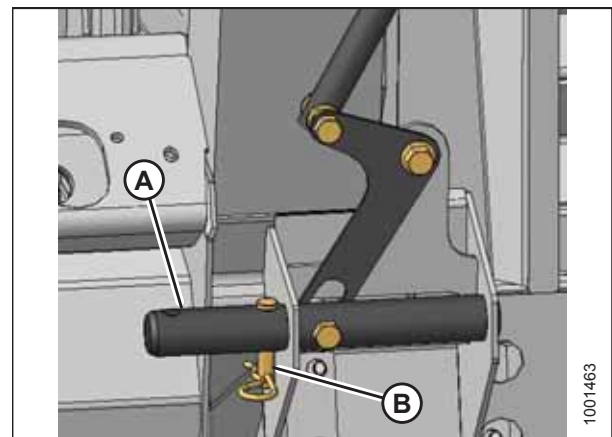


Figure 4.141: Locking Pins

7. Lower handle (A) to engage float module pins (B) into the feeder house. Reinsert locking pin (C) and secure with the hairpin.
8. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

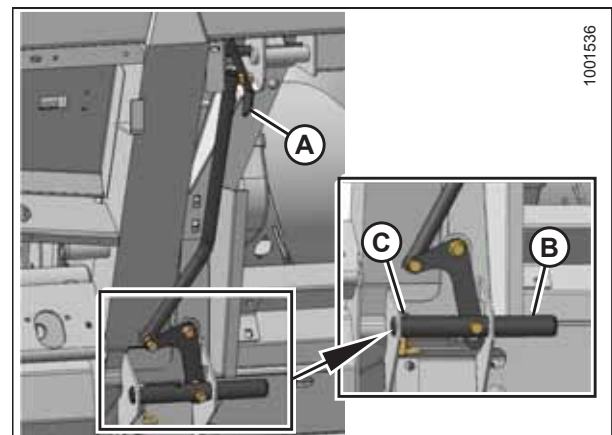


Figure 4.142: Engaging Pins



## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

9. Unscrew knob (A) on combine coupler (B) to release the coupler from the receptacle.
10. Clean coupler (B) and receptacle.

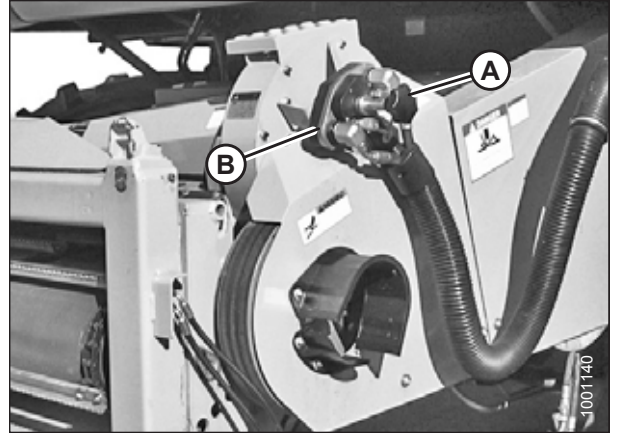


Figure 4.143: Combine Coupler

11. Place float module receptacle cover (A) onto the combine receptacle.

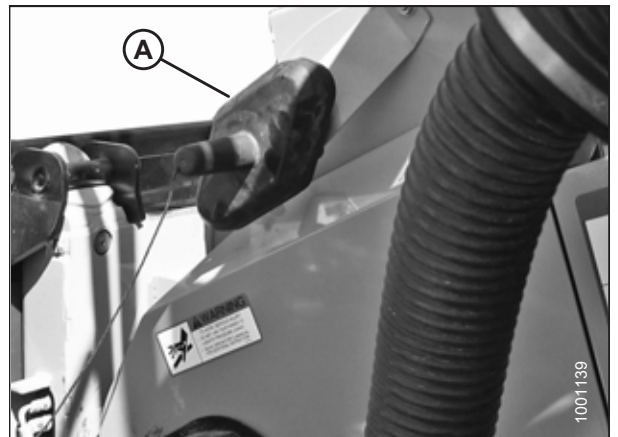


Figure 4.144: Receptacle Cover

12. Clean mating surface of coupler (A) and position onto float module receptacle (C).
13. Turn knob (B) to secure the coupler to the receptacle.

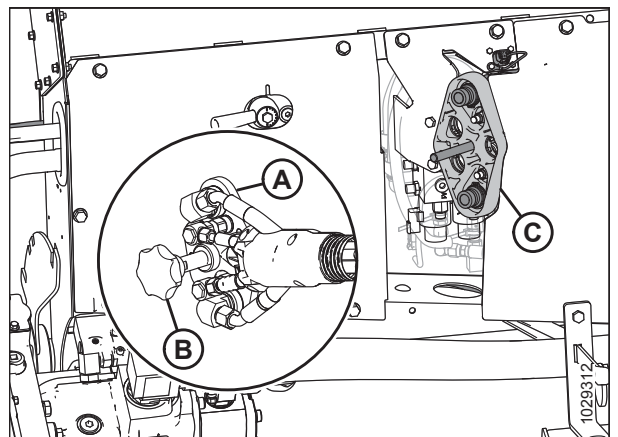


Figure 4.145: Coupler

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

14. Detach safety chain (C) from support bracket (B).
15. Pull collar (D) back to release driveline (A) from support bracket. Remove the driveline from the support bracket.

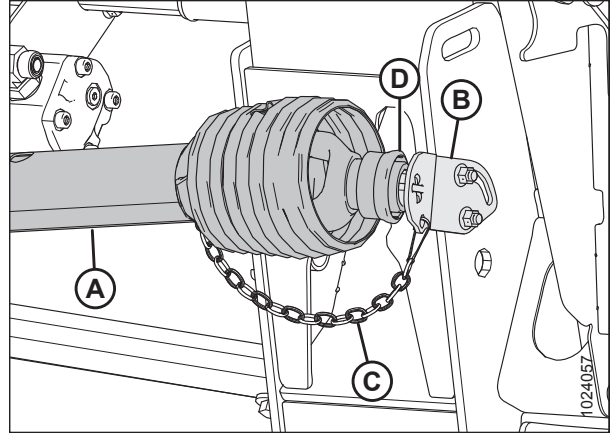


Figure 4.146: Driveline

16. Attach driveline (A) to the combine output shaft.

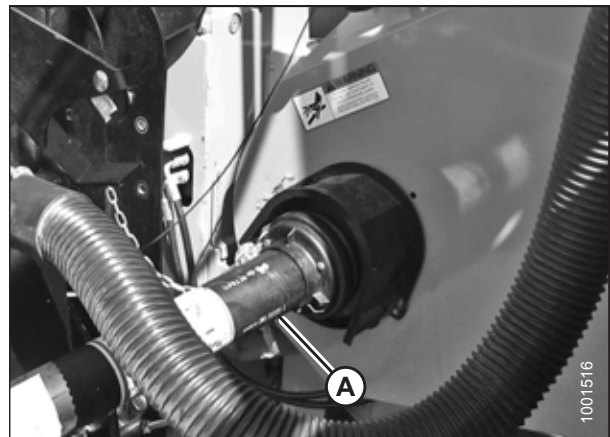


Figure 4.147: Driveline and Output Shaft

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

17. Disengage both header float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in unlocked position (B).

**NOTE:**

Illustration at right shows the right side of the header. Float lock on left side of header opposite.

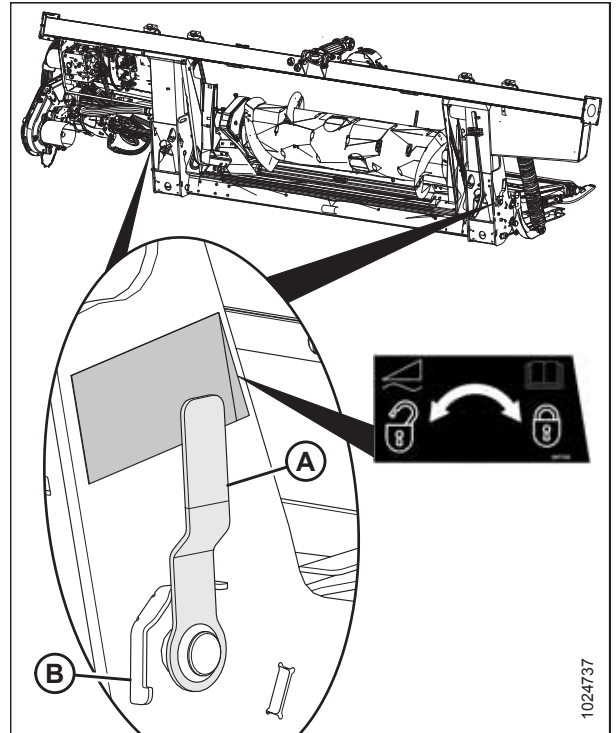


Figure 4.148: Float Lock Handle

## 4.7 John Deere Combines

The FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header is compatible with John Deere 60, 70, S, and T Series combines.

### 4.7.1 Attaching Header to John Deere Combine

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Push handle (A) on the combine multicoupler receptacle towards the feeder house to retract pins (B) at the bottom corners of the feeder house. Clean the receptacle.

#### DANGER

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

3. Start the engine and slowly drive the combine up to the header until feeder house saddle (C) is directly under float module top cross member (D).
4. Raise the feeder house slightly to lift the header ensuring the feeder house saddle is properly engaged in the float module frame.
5. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
6. Pull handle (A) on the float module to release multicoupler (B) from the storage position. Remove the multicoupler, and push the handle back into the float module to store.

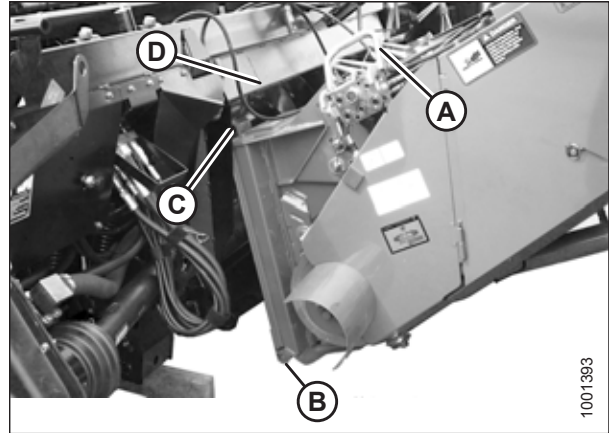


Figure 4.149: Combine and Float Module

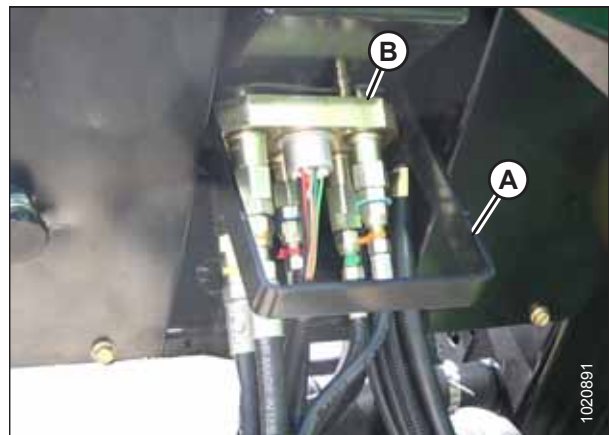


Figure 4.150: Multicoupler Storage

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

7. Position multicoupler (A) onto the receptacle, and pull handle (B) to engage the lugs on the multicoupler into the handle.
8. Pull handle (B) to a horizontal position and ensure multicoupler (A) is fully engaged into the receptacle.

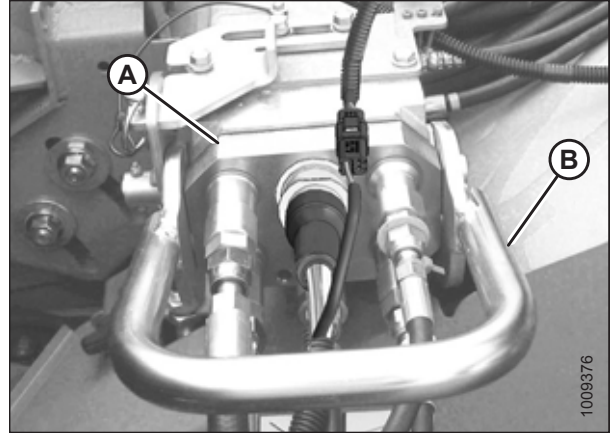


Figure 4.151: Multicoupler

9. Ensure that both feeder house pins (A) are fully engaged into the float module brackets.

**NOTE:**

If pins (A) do not fully engage the float module brackets, loosen bolts (B) and adjust the bracket as required.

10. Tighten bolts (B).

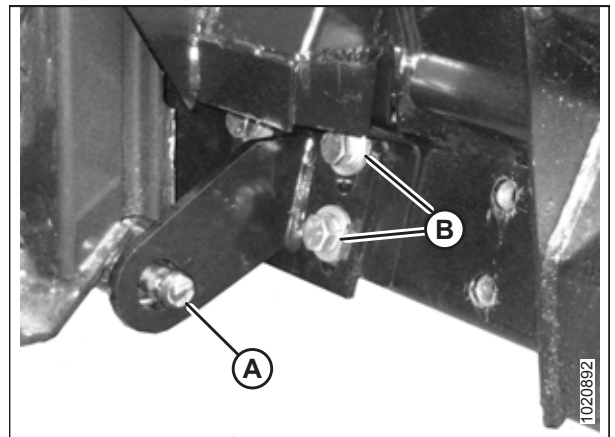


Figure 4.152: Feeder House Pin

11. Slide latch (A) to lock handle (B) in position and secure with lynch pin (C).
12. If the float module is equipped with the reel fore-aft/header tilt selector, connect harness (D) to combine connector (E).

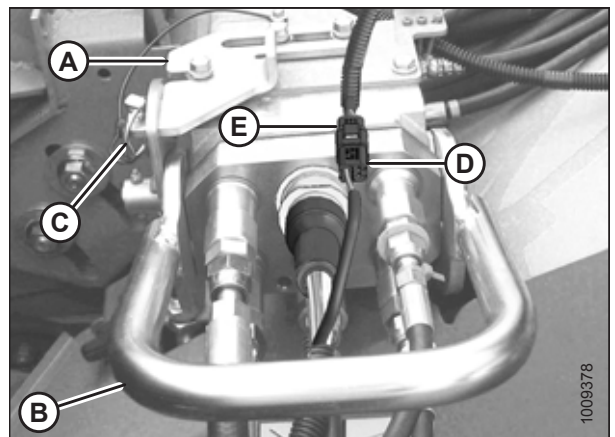


Figure 4.153: Multicoupler

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

13. Detach safety chain (C) from support bracket (B).
14. Pull collar (D) back to release driveline (A) from support bracket. Remove the driveline from the support bracket.

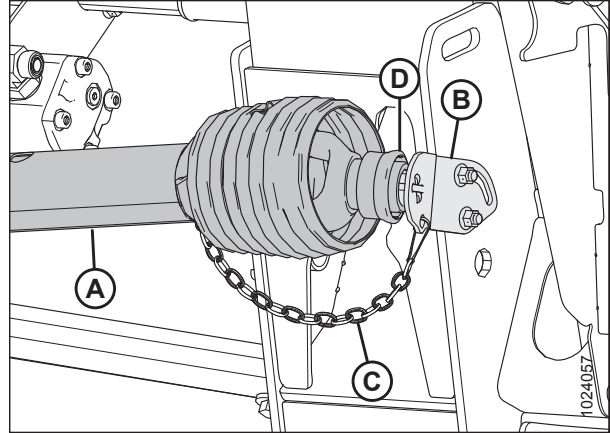


Figure 4.154: Driveline

15. Pull back collar (A) on the end of the driveline, and push the driveline onto combine output shaft (B) until the collar locks.

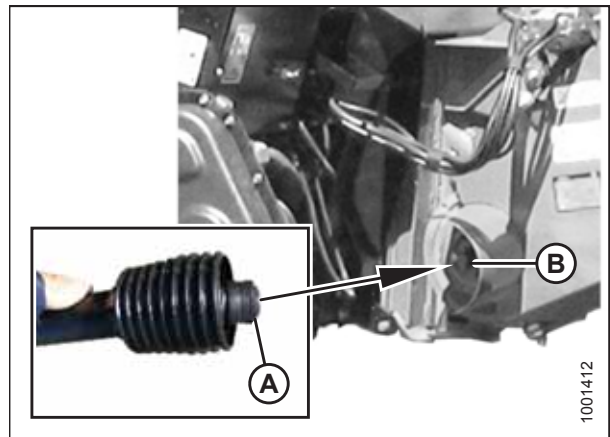


Figure 4.155: Driveline

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

16. Disengage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module, and setting it in unlocked position (B).

**NOTE:**

Illustration at right shows the right side of the header. Float lock on left side of header opposite.

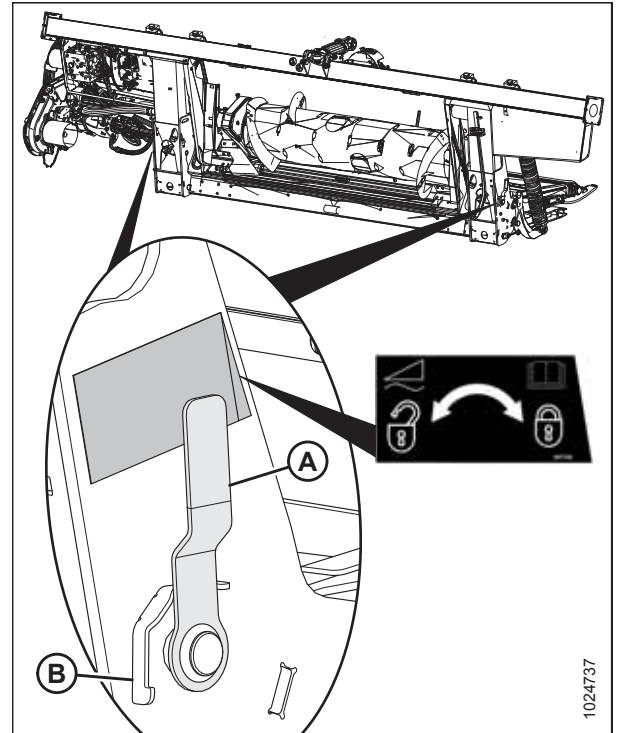


Figure 4.156: Float Lock Handle

## 4.7.2 Detaching Header from John Deere Combine

### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under header for any reason.

1. Choose a level area and position the header slightly above the ground.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

#### IMPORTANT:

If transport wheels are installed, the header may be detached in either transport or field mode. If detaching with the wheels in field mode, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to *Adjusting Stabilizer / EasyMove™ Transport Wheels*, page 62.

#### IMPORTANT:

If stabilizer wheels are installed, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to *Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels*, page 62.

3. Engage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in locked position (B).

#### NOTE:

Illustration at right shows the right side of the header. Float lock on left side of header opposite.

4. Open shield (A) on the combine, pull back the collar on driveline (B), and pull the driveline off the combine output shaft.

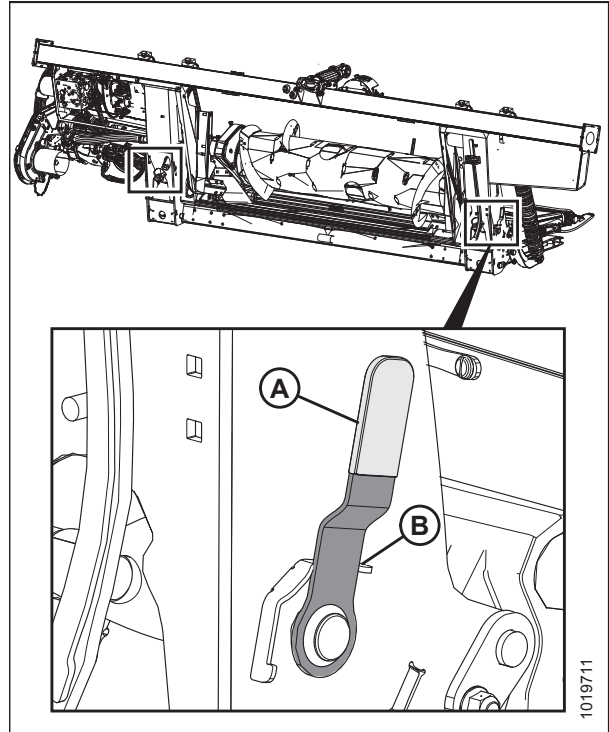


Figure 4.157: Float Lock Handle

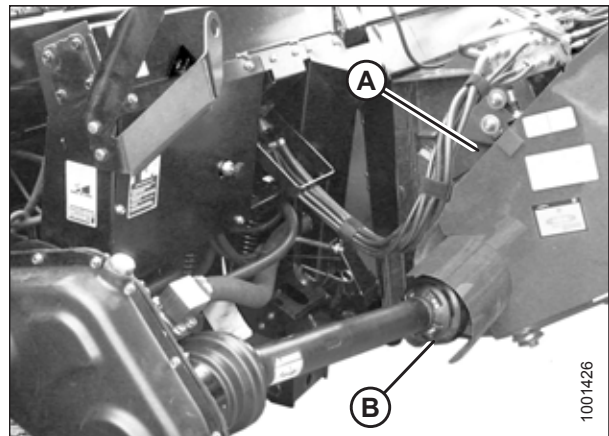


Figure 4.158: Driveline



## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

5. Store driveline (A) on driveline support bracket (B) by pulling back collar (C) on the driveline and fitting it over support bracket body (D). Release the collar so it locks into place over the support bracket body.

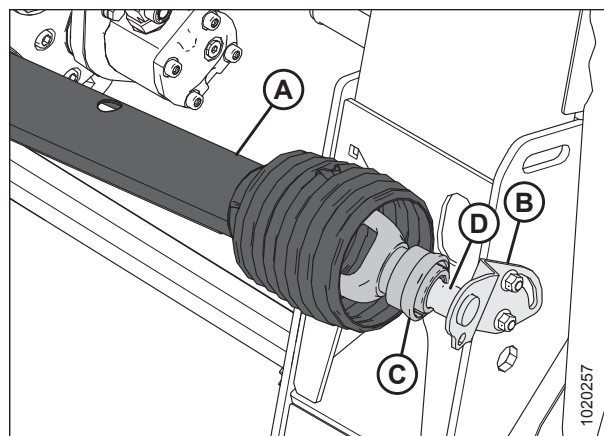


Figure 4.159: Driveline

6. Lift handle (A) on the float module.

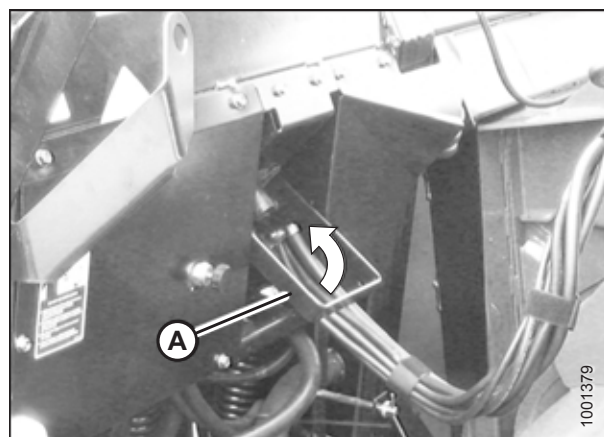


Figure 4.160: Multicoupler Storage

7. Disconnect harness (A) from the combine connector.
8. Remove lynch pin (B) and slide lock (C) to release handle (D).
9. Lift handle (D) to full vertical position to release multicoupler (E) from the combine.

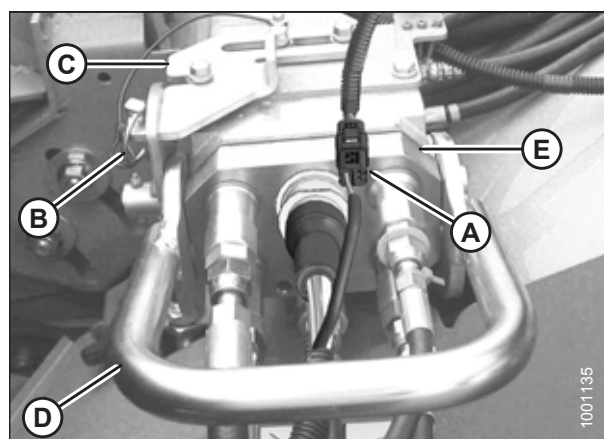


Figure 4.161: Multicoupler

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

10. Position multicoupler (A) on the float module receptacle and lower handle (B) to lock the multicoupler.

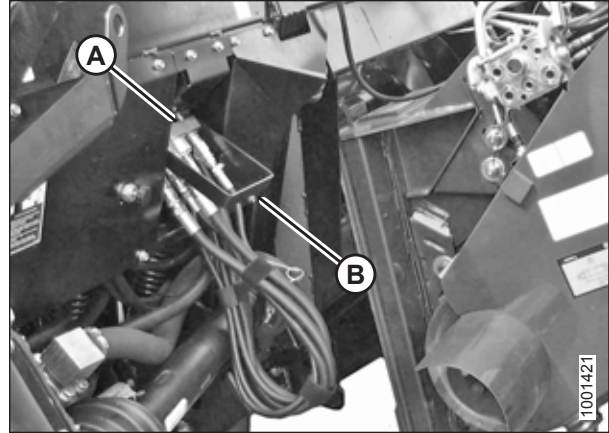


Figure 4.162: Multicoupler Storage

11. Push handle (A) on the combine towards the feeder house to disengage feeder house pin (B) from the float module.

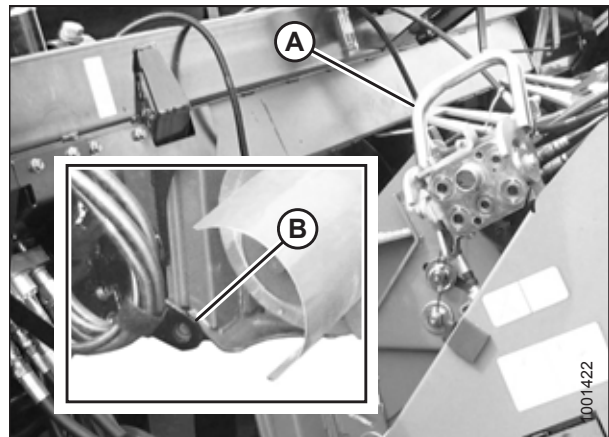


Figure 4.163: Feeder House Locks

12. Lower the feeder house until saddle (A) disengages and clears float module support (B).
13. Back the combine away slowly from the float module.

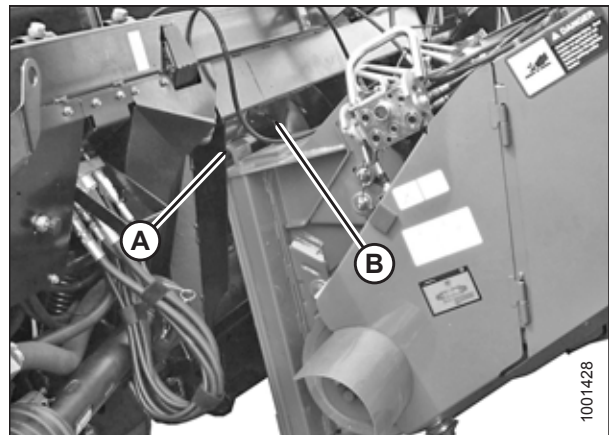


Figure 4.164: Float Module and Feeder House

## 4.8 New Holland Combines

The FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header is compatible with the following New Holland combines:

**Table 4.2 Header and Combine Compatibility**

Series	Combine Model
CR	920, 940, 960, 970, 980
	9020, 9040, 9060, 9065, 9070, 9080
	6090, 7090, 8080, 8090, 9090
	6.80, 6.90, 7.90, 8.90, 9.90, 10.90
CX	840, 860, 870, 880
	8070, 8080, 8090
	8080 Elevation, 8090 Elevation

### 4.8.1 Attaching Header to New Holland CR/CX Combine

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Ensure handle (A) is positioned so locks (B) can engage the float module.

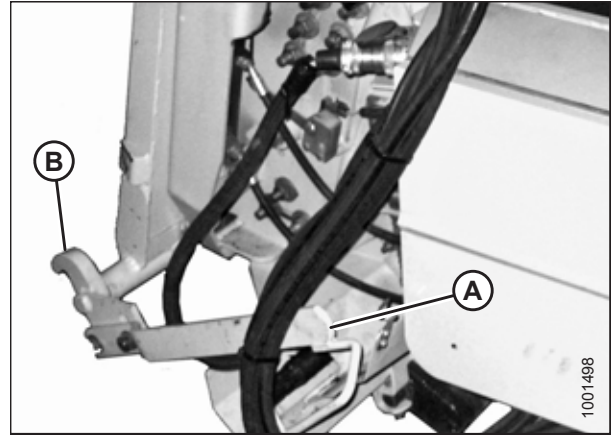


Figure 4.165: Feeder House Locks

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

### DANGER

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

2. Start the engine and slowly drive the combine up to the float module until feeder house saddle (A) is directly under float module top cross member (B).
3. Raise the feeder house slightly to lift the header, ensuring the feeder saddle is properly engaged in the float module frame.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

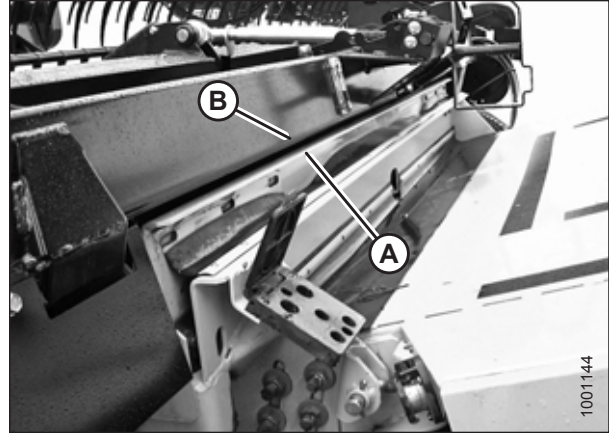


Figure 4.166: Header on Combine

5. Lift lever (A) on the float module on the left side of the feeder house, and push handle (B) on the combine to engage locks (C) on both sides of the feeder house.
6. Push down on lever (A) so the slot in the lever engages the handle and locks the handle in place.
7. If the lock does not fully engage pin (D) on the float module when lever (A) and handle (B) are engaged, loosen bolts (E) and adjust lock (C). Retighten bolts.

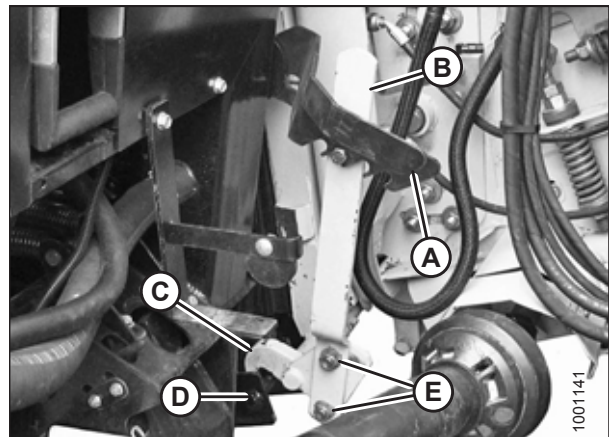


Figure 4.167: Feeder House Locks

8. Open the cover on receptacle (A) located on the left side of the float module.
9. Push in lock button (B) and pull handle (C) to the fully open position.
10. Clean the receptacle mating surfaces.

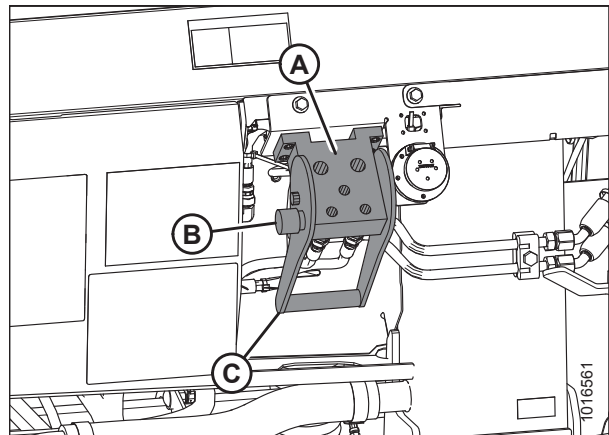


Figure 4.168: Float Module Receptacle

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

11. Remove hydraulic quick coupler (A) from the storage plate on the combine, and clean the mating surface of the coupler.

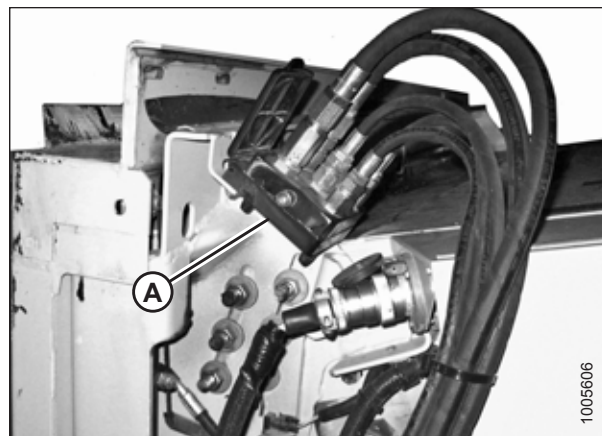


Figure 4.169: Combine Coupler

12. Position coupler (A) onto the float module receptacle, and push handle (B) to engage the pins into the receptacle.
13. Push handle (B) to closed position until lock button (C) snaps out.
14. Remove the cover on the float module electrical receptacle.
15. Remove connector (D) from the combine.
16. Align lugs on connector (D) with the slots in the float module receptacle, and push the connector onto the receptacle. Turn the collar on the connector to lock it in place.

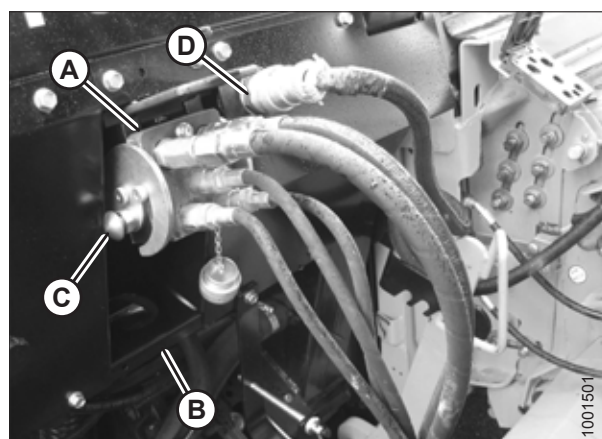


Figure 4.170: Connections

17. Detach safety chain (C) from support bracket (B).
18. Pull collar (D) back to release driveline (A) from support bracket. Remove the driveline from support bracket.

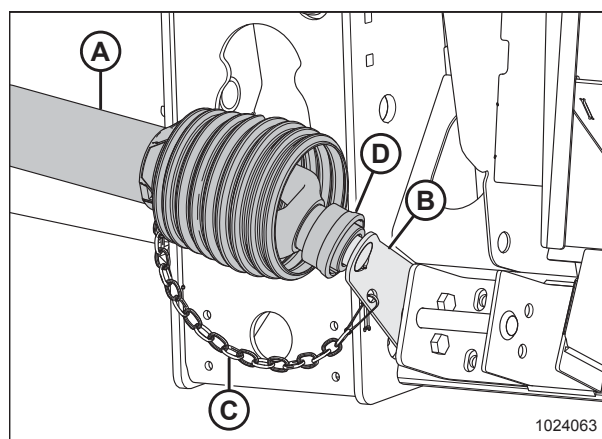


Figure 4.171: Driveline in Storage Position

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

19. Pull back the collar on the end of the driveline, and push the driveline onto combine output shaft (A) until the collar locks.

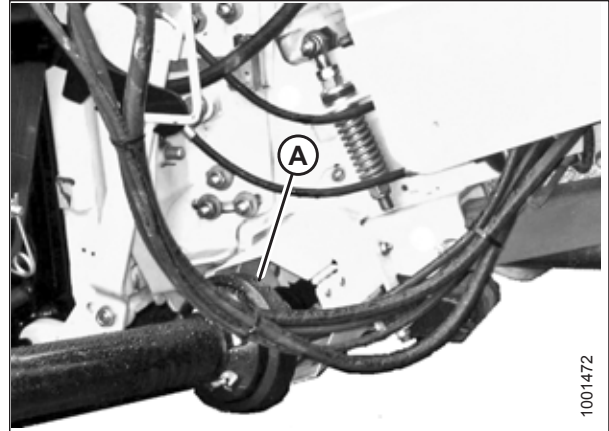


Figure 4.172: Driveline and Output Shaft

20. Disengage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in unlocked position (B).

**NOTE:**

Illustration at right shows the right side of the header. Float lock on left side of header opposite.

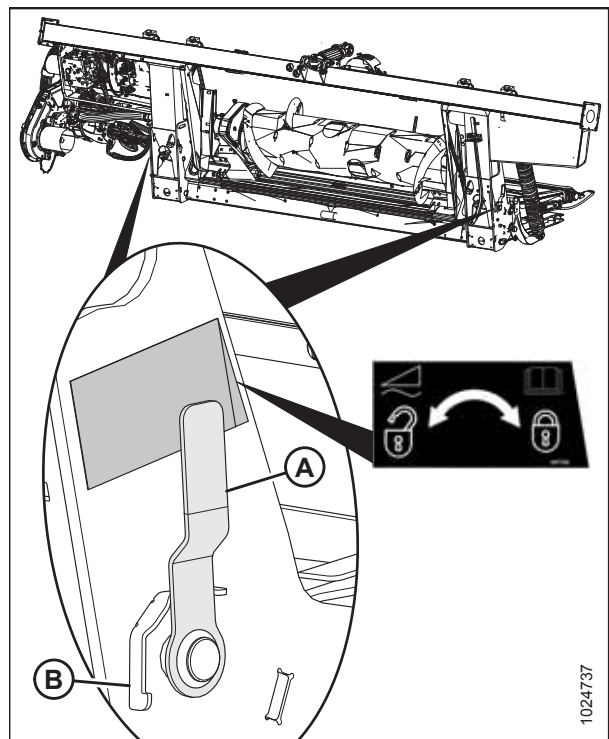


Figure 4.173: Float Lock Handle

## 4.8.2 Detaching Header from New Holland CR/CX Combine

### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Choose a level area and position the header slightly above the ground.
2. Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition.

#### IMPORTANT:

If transport wheels are installed, the header may be detached in either transport or field mode. If detaching with the wheels in field mode, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to *Adjusting Stabilizer / EasyMove™ Transport Wheels*, page 62.

#### IMPORTANT:

If stabilizer wheels are installed, set the wheels to the storage or uppermost working position, otherwise the header may tilt forward, making reattachment difficult. For instructions, refer to *Adjusting Stabilizer Wheels*, page 62.

3. Engage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in the locked position (B).

#### NOTE:

Illustration at right shows the right side of the header. Float lock on left side of header opposite.

4. Disconnect driveline (A) from the combine.

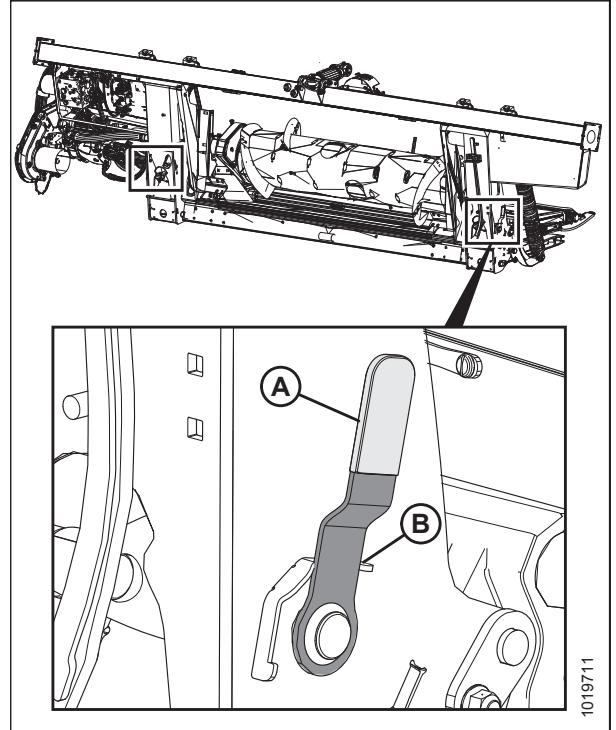


Figure 4.174: Float Lock Handle

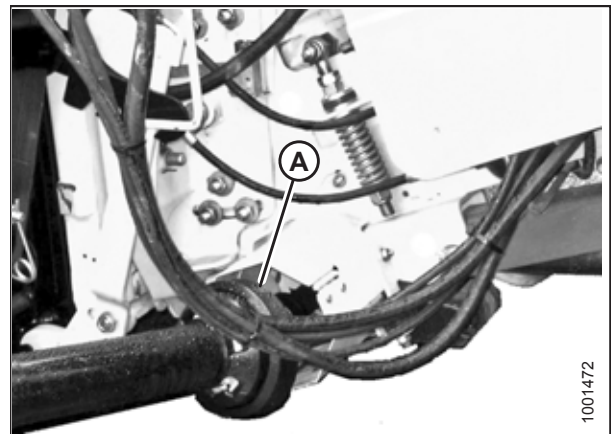


Figure 4.175: Driveline

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

5. Store driveline (A) on driveline support bracket (B) by pulling back collar (C) on the driveline and fitting it over support bracket weldment (D). Release the collar so it locks into place over the weldment.
6. Attach safety chain (E) to support bracket (B).

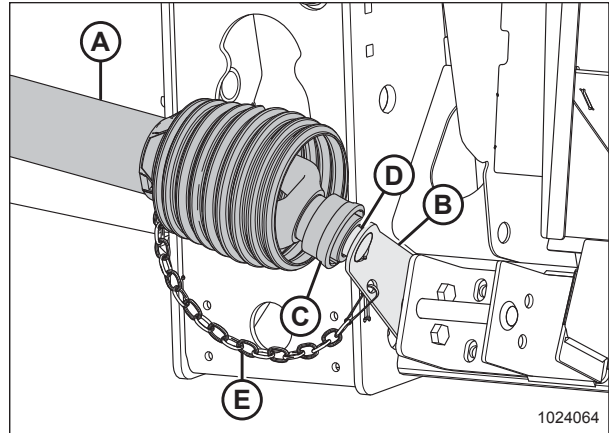


Figure 4.176: Driveline

7. Push in lock button (B), and pull handle (C) to release multicoupler (A).

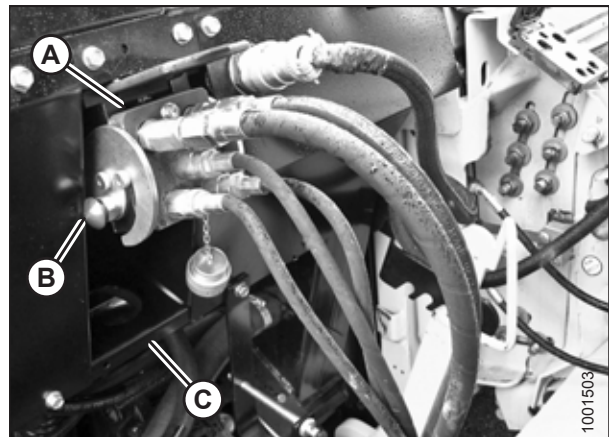


Figure 4.177: Float Module Connections

8. Push handle (A) to the closed position until lock button (B) snaps out. Close the cover.

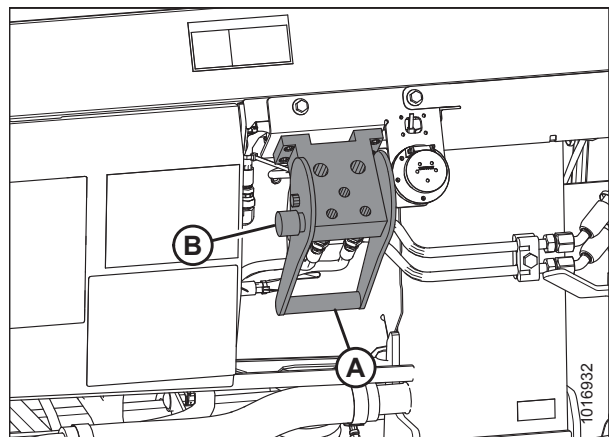


Figure 4.178: Float Module Receptacles



## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

9. Position hydraulic quick coupler (A) onto storage plate (B) on the combine.

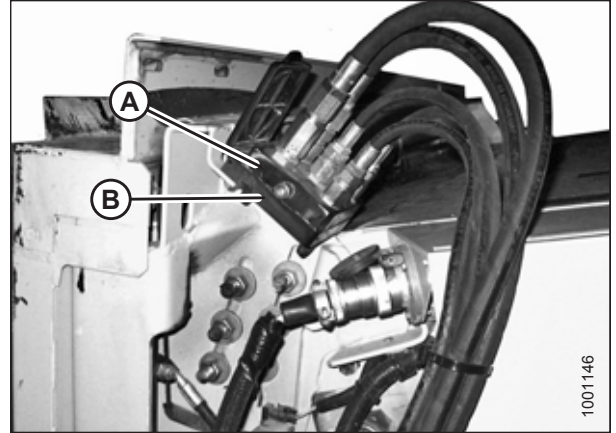


Figure 4.179: Combine Coupler

10. Remove electrical connector (A) from the float module.

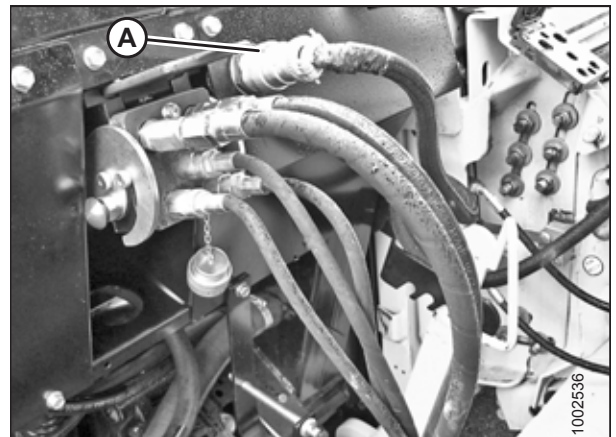


Figure 4.180: Float Module Connections

11. Connect the electrical connector to the combine at location (A).

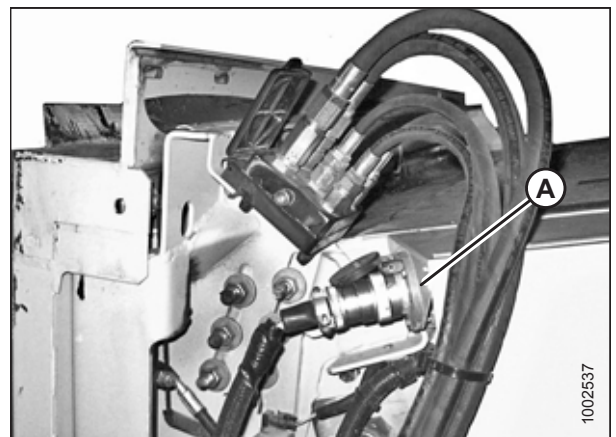


Figure 4.181: Combine Couplers

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

12. Replace cover (A) on the float module receptacle.

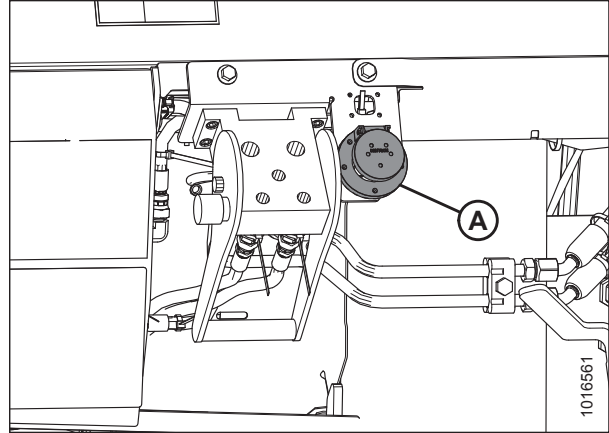


Figure 4.182: Float Module Receptacles

13. Lift lever (A) and pull and lower handle (B) to disengage feeder house/float module lock (C).

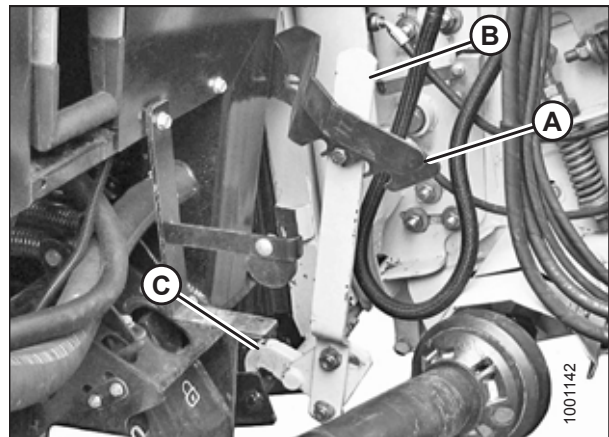


Figure 4.183: Feeder House Locks

14. Lower feeder house (A) until the feeder house disengages float module support (B).
15. Back the combine slowly away from the header.

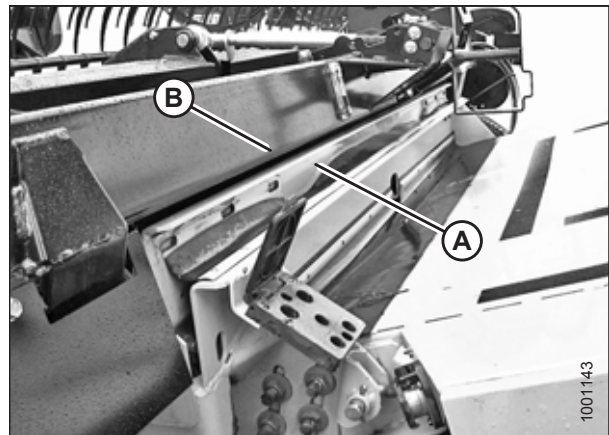


Figure 4.184: Header on Combine

### 4.8.3 CR Feeder Deflectors

This section is for New Holland CR combines only. If operating a New Holland CX combine, remove feed deflectors.

**For New Holland CR combines only:** Wide feeder deflectors have been factory-installed on the float module to improve feeding into the feeder house. Remove the feeder deflectors if necessary. For instructions, refer to [5.14.3 Replacing Feed Deflectors on New Holland CR Combines, page 554](#).

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

Long feeder kits are provided for narrow feeder house combines and can be installed to replace the short feeder deflectors.

**Table 4.3 FM200 Feeder Kits for CR Model Combines**

<b>Feeder House Size</b>	<b>Feeder Kit Size</b>	<b>MacDon Part Number</b>
1250–1350 mm (49–65 in.)	Narrow: 200 mm (7 7/8 in.)	MD #328082, 328083
1100 mm (43-1/2 in.) and below	Wide: 325 mm (12 13/16 in.)	MD #314690, 314691

## 4.9 Attaching and Detaching Header to and from FM200 Float Module

Attaching/detaching procedures are the same for all makes and models of combines. Headers can be attached to the float module from either field or transport configurations.

The procedures in this manual require that the float module remains attached to the combine. Attach/detach the float module only if performing the following tasks:

- Detaching the header for use on a windrower
- Changing headers
- Performing certain maintenance tasks

### 4.9.1 Detaching Header from FM200 Float Module

The FM200 float module attaches to the header, giving it the ability to closely follow ground contours. If necessary, the FM200 can be disconnected from the header.

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under header for any reason.

#### WARNING

Keep hands clear of the area between guards and knife at all times.

#### CAUTION

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

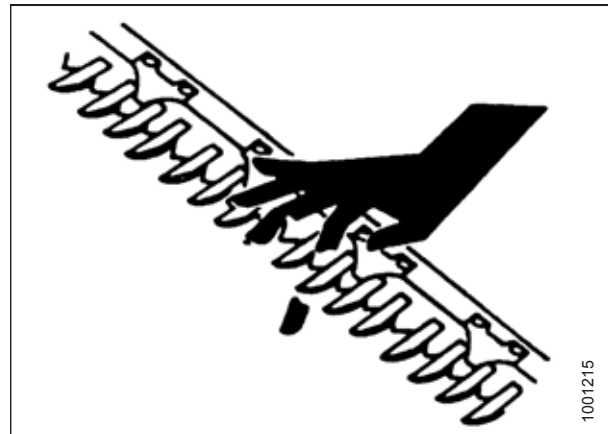


Figure 4.185: Cutterbar Hazard

1. Start the engine, and then lower header.
2. Increase clearance under the float module feed draper by tilting the header and fully extending cylinder (A) until indicator (B) is at position E.
3. Raise the reel to its full height.
4. Stop the engine, and then remove key from the ignition.
5. Engage the reel safety props.

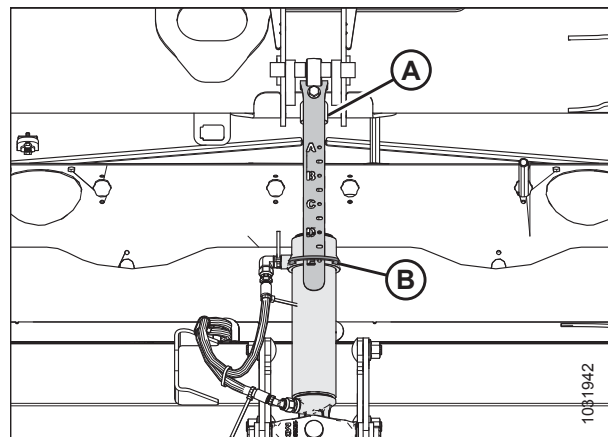


Figure 4.186: Center-Link

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

6. Move lever (A) to lock position to engage wing locks.

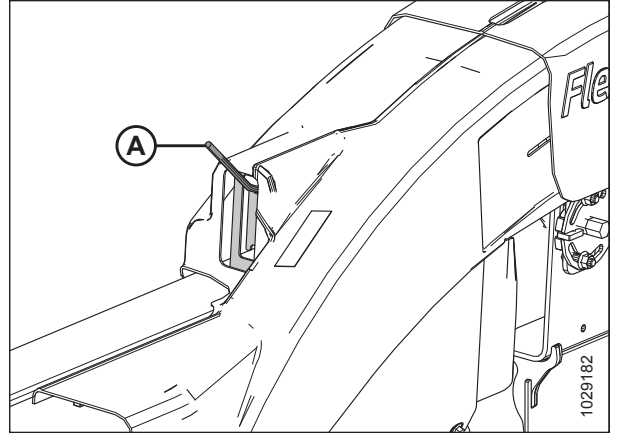


Figure 4.187: Wing Lock – Left Side Shown

7. Engage the float locks by pulling each float lock handle (A) away from the float module and setting it in locked position (B).

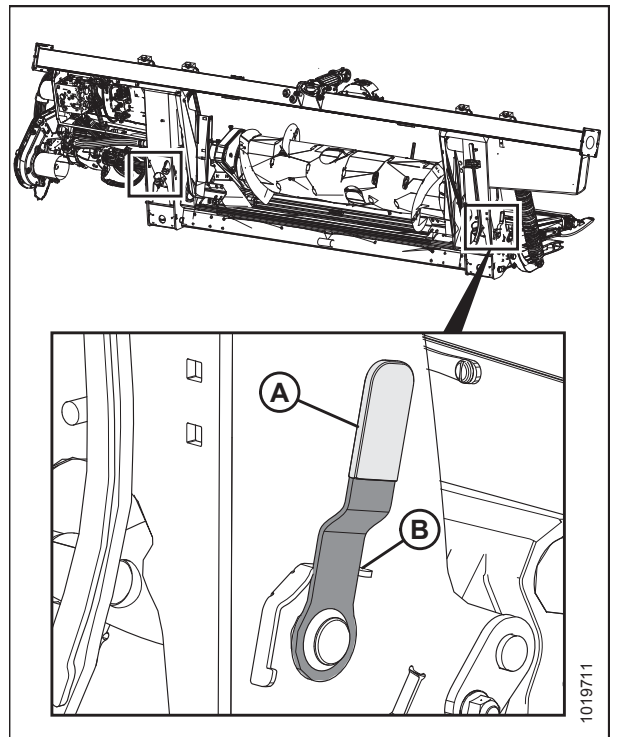


Figure 4.188: Float Lock

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

8. On the back of the float module frame, remove bolts (A) to release the tension on trim springs (B).
9. Unhook trim springs (B) from spring tensioners (C). Allow the springs to hang on balance channel (D).
10. Reinstall the springs tensioner's onto the float module. Secure with bolts (A).
11. Repeat on the opposite side.

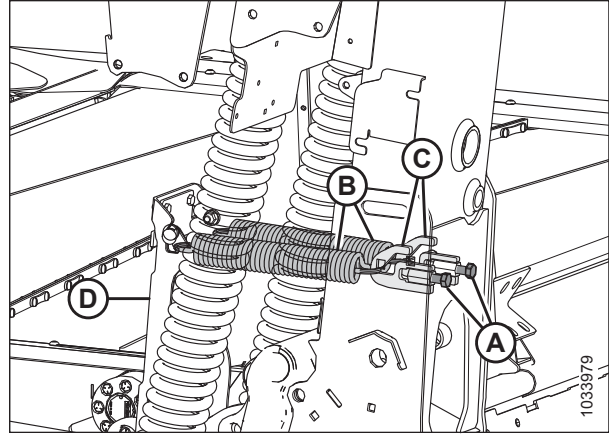


Figure 4.189: Trim Springs – Left side

12. Remove two bolts (A) and fillers (B) from transition pan support angle (C). Repeat on opposite side.

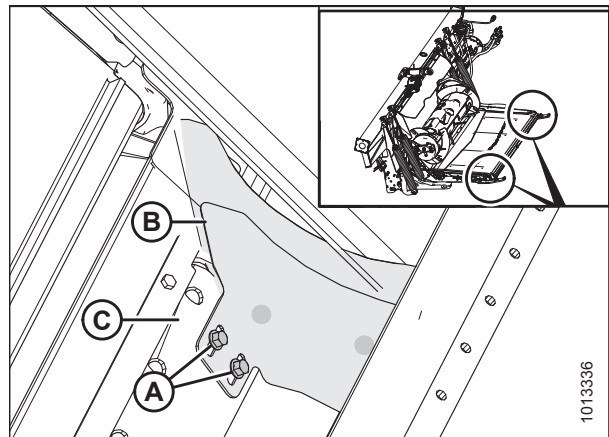


Figure 4.190: Fillers

13. Remove and retain screw (A).
14. Remove the 9/16 in. nut from bolt (B).
15. Use a 24 mm (15/16 in.) wrench on hex bolt (C) to rotate latch downwards and slightly raise the feed deck to remove bolt (B).
16. Rotate latch up and back to lower the float module deck and disengage the transition pan tube.
17. Install screw (A).
18. Repeat for the opposite side of the feed draper deck.

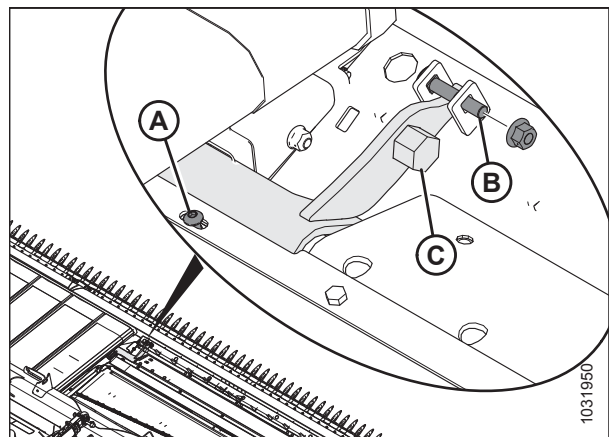


Figure 4.191: Float Module Latch

### DANGER

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

19. Disengage the reel safety props, start the engine, lower the reel, and fully raise the header.
20. Stop the engine, remove the key from the ignition, and engage the combine safety props.

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

21. Loosen nut and bolt (A), and disengage hook (B) from leg on both sides of float module.

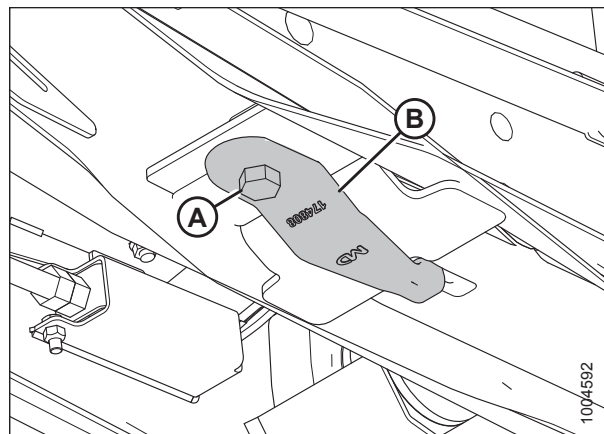


Figure 4.192: Float Module Underside

22. Rotate hook (B) 90° for storage, and retighten bolt (A) and nut.

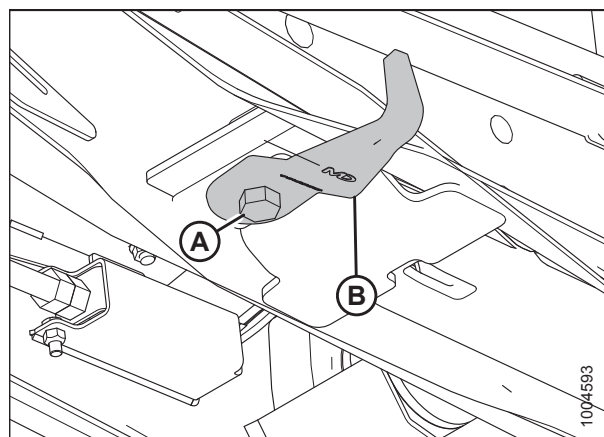


Figure 4.193: Float Module Underside

23. Place a 150 mm (6 in.) block (A) under the header leg. This will assist with disconnecting the center-link.
24. Disengage the combine lift cylinder locks, start the engine, and lower the header until the header leg rests on the block or stabilizer wheels are on the ground.

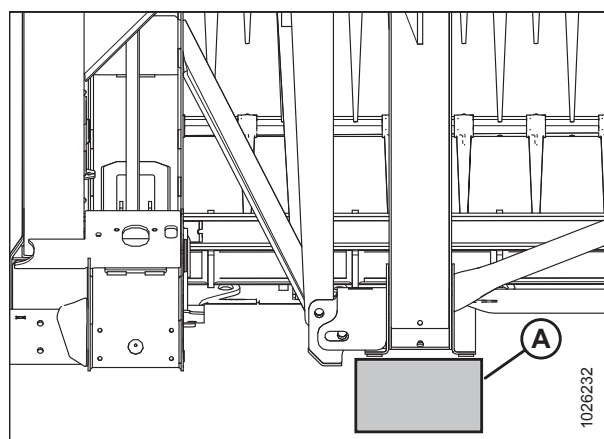


Figure 4.194: Header Leg on Block

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

25. Disconnect the hydraulic center-link as follows:
  - a. Remove lynch pin (A) and pin (B), and lift center-link (C) clear of the bracket.
  - b. Reinstall pin (B) on the bracket, and secure with lynch pin (A).

**NOTE:**

It may be necessary to raise or lower the feeder house to adjust the length of the center-link and relieve excess load on the center-link.

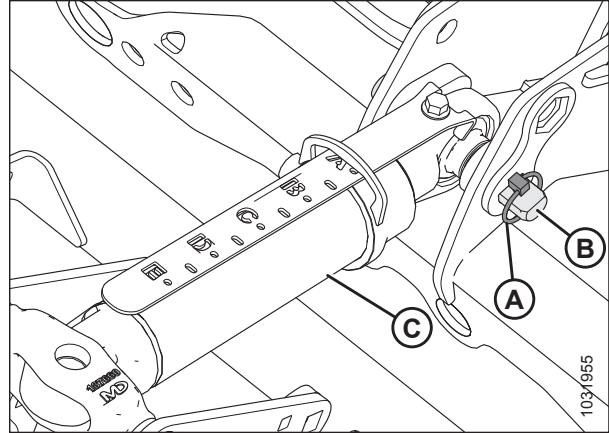


Figure 4.195: Hydraulic Center-Link

**NOTE:**

- If on the ground: Push reel fully forward to reduce oil loss.
- If on transport: Pull reel fully back.

26. Disconnect electrical connector (A).

**NOTE:**

If colored plastic ties are missing from any of the hoses, replace them before disconnecting the hoses.

27. Disconnect all of the hoses between the module and manifold (B). Immediately cap the hose ends to prevent oil loss.

**NOTE:**

Mark hose locations to assist with reattachment.

28. Store and secure hoses on float module frame.

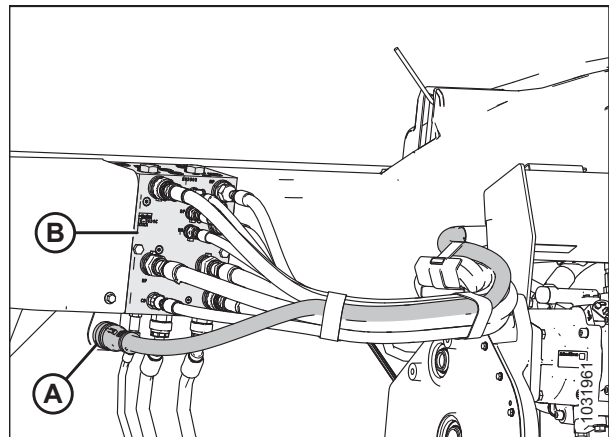


Figure 4.196: Header Connections

### DANGER

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

29. Start the engine.
30. Lower the float module to disengage it from the header.
31. Slowly back away in a straight line from header.
32. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

## 4.9.2 Attaching Header to FM200 Float Module

The FD2 Series headers can be attached to the float module from either field or transport configuration.

### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.



## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

### NOTE:

The stabilizer/EasyMove™ transport wheels can be used to support the header. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Stabilizer / EasyMove™ Transport Wheels](#), page 62.

1. Prop up hydraulic center-link (A) with a pin (or equivalent tool) at location (B) as shown.

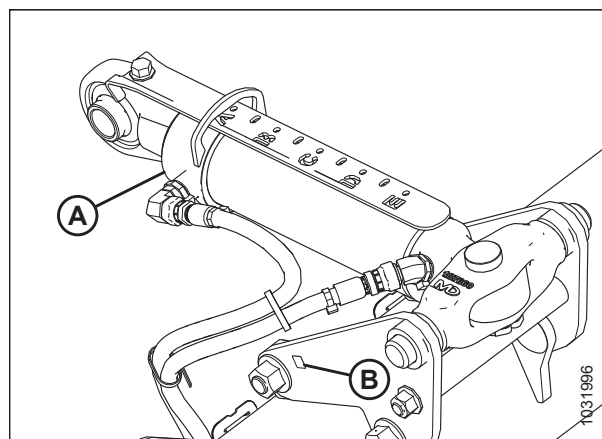


Figure 4.197: Center-Link

2. Ensure latches (A) at the front corners of the float module are rotated towards the rear of the float module.

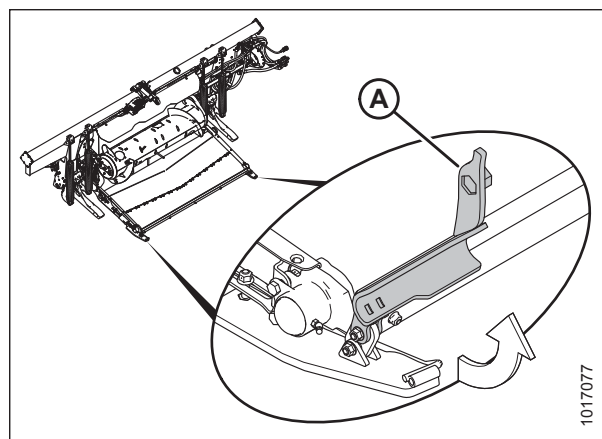


Figure 4.198: Latch

### WARNING

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

3. Start engine, and lower the combine feeder house so that float module arms (A) are aligned with header balance channels (B).
4. Drive slowly forward, maintaining alignment between float module arms (A) and header balance channels (B).
5. Keep float module arms (A) just under balance channels (B) to ensure float module legs seat properly in the header linkage supports at location (C).

### IMPORTANT:

Keep hydraulic hoses clear to prevent damage when driving into header.

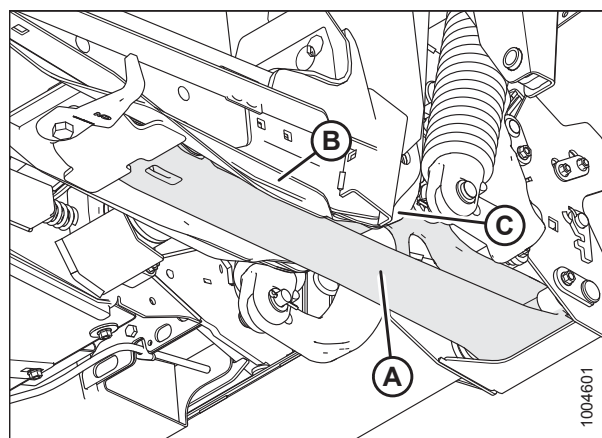


Figure 4.199: Float Module Underside

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

6. Continue forward until float module arms (A) contact stops in balance channels (B).
7. Adjust length of center-link (A) using the header angle hydraulics to approximately align center-link eye (B) with the hole in the header bracket.
8. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
9. Remove lynch pin (C) and pull pin (D) partially out of the bracket. Remove the item used to prop up center-link (A).

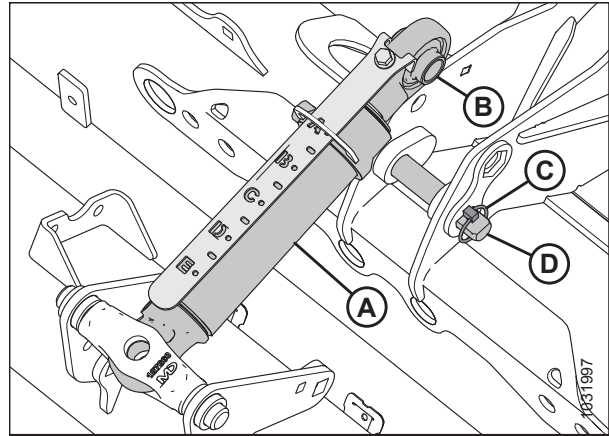


Figure 4.200: Center-Link

10. Align center-link eye (A) with the hole in the bracket, install pin (B), and secure with lynch pin (C).

### CAUTION

Always connect center-link before fully raising header.

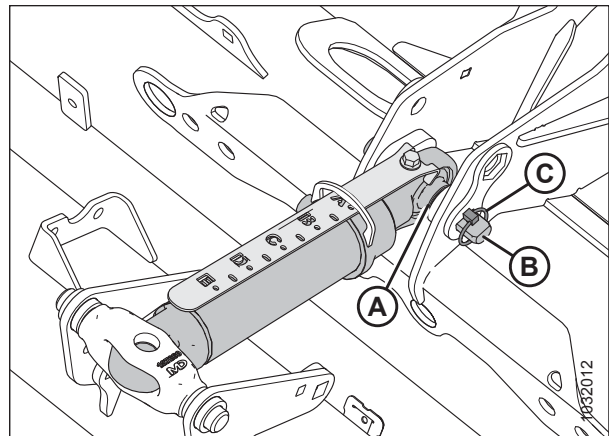


Figure 4.201: Center-Link

### WARNING

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

11. Start the engine.
12. Raise the float module while making sure the float module legs engage the header legs.
13. Raise the header fully.
14. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
15. Engage the header safety props.

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

16. Loosen nut and bolt (A), and reposition hook (B) as shown to engage float module arm. Tighten bolt and nut (A).

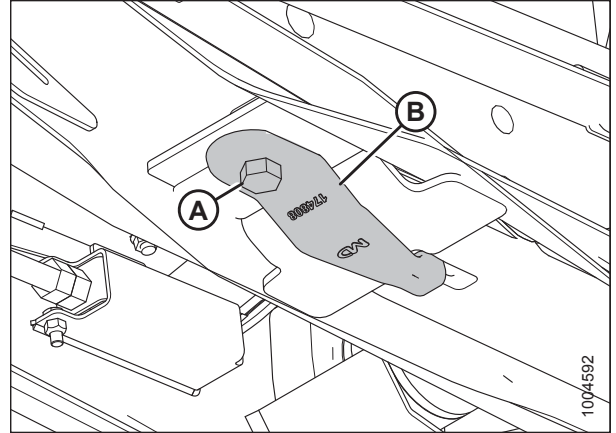


Figure 4.202: Float Module Underside

17. On the back of the float module frame, remove bolts (A), and spring tensioners (C).
18. Hook trim springs (B) that are hang on balance channel (D) to spring tensioners (C).
19. Reinstall the springs tensioners onto the float module. Tighten bolts (A) all the way.
20. Repeat on the opposite side.

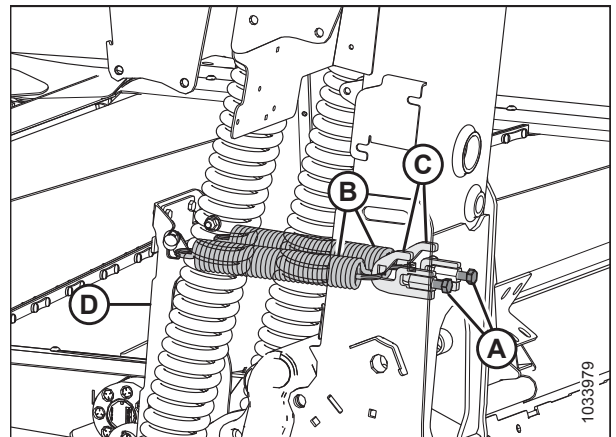


Figure 4.203: Trim Springs – Left side

### CAUTION

**Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.**

21. Remove screw (A) and remove nut and bolt (B) from both sides of the opening to allow the attachment of the float module deck.
22. Rotate latch (C) forward and down to engage the transition pan tube.

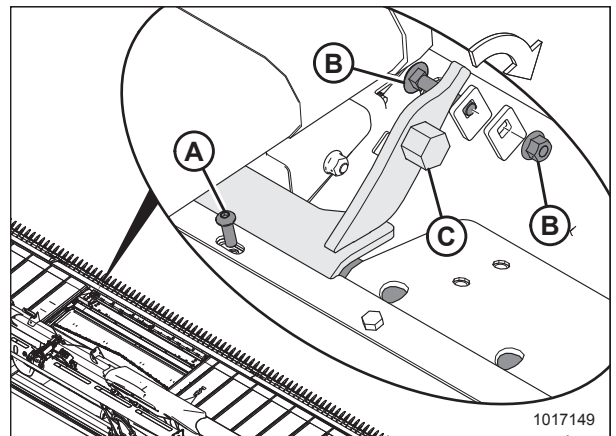


Figure 4.204: Float Module Latch

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

23. Use a 24 mm (15/16 in.) wrench on hex bolt (C) to rotate latch downwards and slightly raise the feed deck. Install nut and bolt (B) to lock the latch position.
24. Install screw (A).
25. Repeat for the opposite side of the feed draper deck.

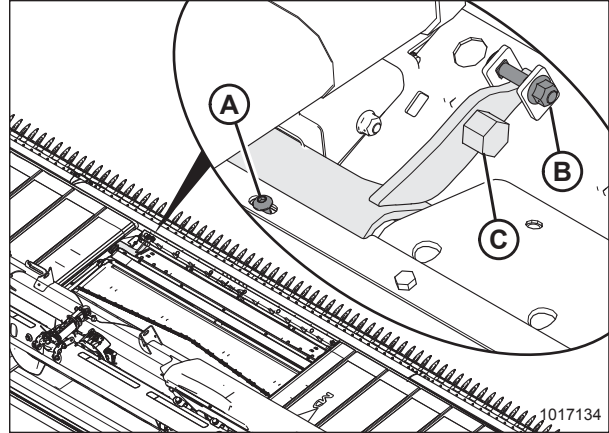


Figure 4.205: Float Module Latch

26. Install fillers (B) on transition pan support angle (C) using two bolts (A).

**NOTE:**

Ensure that there is no contact with the side draper slats.

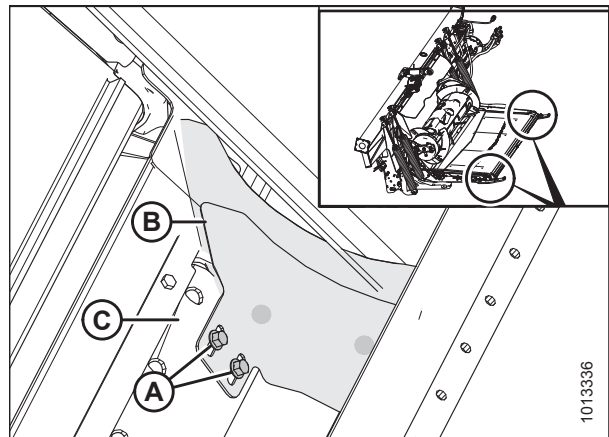


Figure 4.206: Fillers

27. Use a clean cloth to remove debris from couplers and receptacles.
28. Attach the following hydraulic hoses to manifold (B):
  - Knife pressure to port KP on manifold (orange cable tie)
  - Knife return to port KR on manifold (blue cable tie)
  - Draper pressure to port DP on manifold (green cable tie)
  - Draper return to port DR on manifold (red cable tie)
  - Case drain to port CD on manifold
29. Attach electrical connector C20C (A).

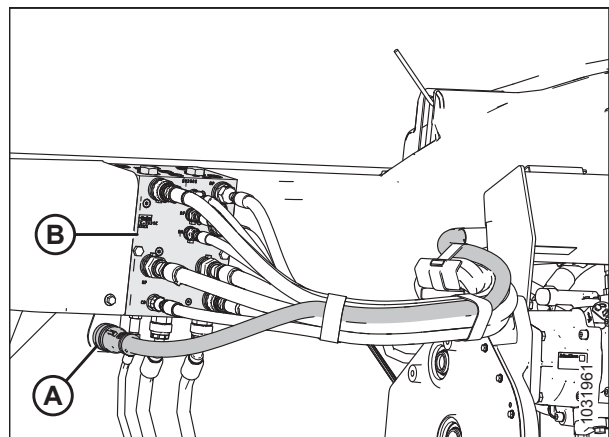


Figure 4.207: Header Connections

30. Check the float and confirm the header is level. For instructions, refer to the following:
  - [3.7.3 Header Float, page 69](#)
  - [3.9 Leveling Header, page 294](#)



### CAUTION

Be sure all bystanders are clear of machine before starting engine or engaging any header drives.

## HEADER ATTACHMENT/DETACHMENT

31. Start the combine and perform the following inspections:
  - Raise and lower the reel to ensure the hoses are properly connected.
  - Run the header to ensure the hoses are properly connected.
32. Check for leaks.

## 4.10 Attaching Side-Hill Driveline to a Combine

When using the float module with a combine leveling system you will require a driveline that can extend far enough.

### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Disconnect chain (D) from support bracket (B).
3. Pull back quick disconnect collar (A), on driveline (C), to release the driveline yoke.
4. Slide the yoke off of support bracket (B).

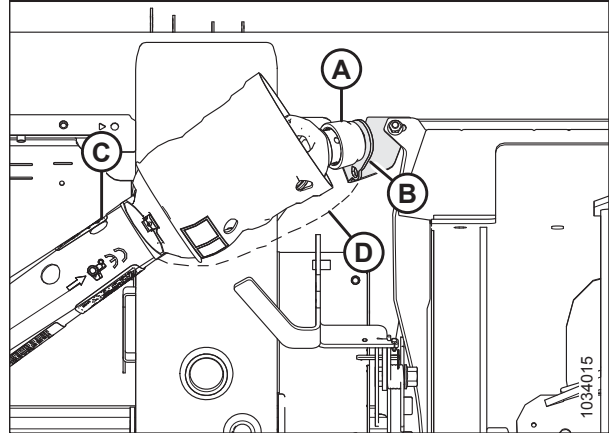


Figure 4.208: Side-Hill Driveline

#### NOTE:

Some parts hidden for clarity.

5. Align driveline (A) with power take off shaft (B) on the combine.
6. Pull back quick disconnect collar (C), on driveline (A), to release the driveline yoke.

#### NOTE:

Ensure that arrow (E) is pointing towards collar (A) that connects to the power take off (PTO) on the combine.

7. Slide the collar and yoke onto power take off shaft (B) until it locks onto the shaft.
8. Connect chain (D) to the combine shielding.
9. Reinstall any shielding around the driveline that may have been removed.

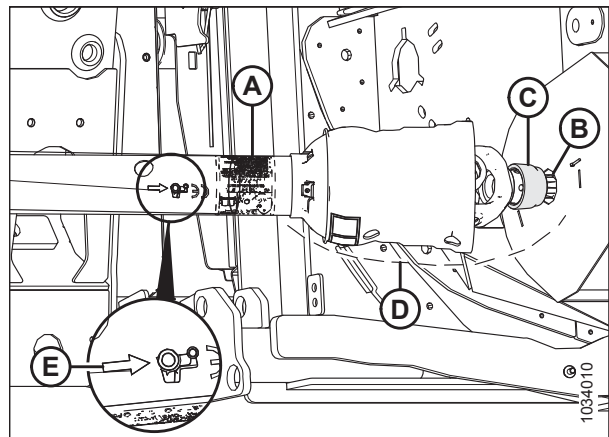


Figure 4.209: Side-Hill Driveline

## 4.11 Detaching Side-Hill Driveline From a Combine

When using the float module with a combine leveling system, a different driveline is required, that can extend and retract enough when following steep terrain.

### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

**NOTE:**

Some parts hidden for clarity.

2. Disconnect chain (D) from the combine shielding.
3. Pull back quick disconnect collar (C), on driveline (A), to release the driveline yoke.
4. Slide the yoke and collar off of power take off shaft (B).

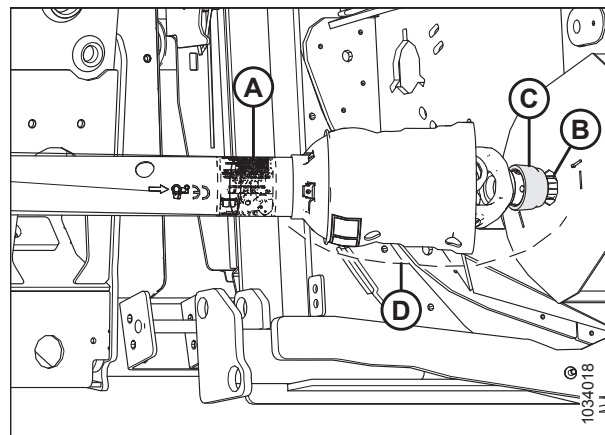


Figure 4.210: Side-Hill Driveline

5. Align driveline (C) with support bracket (B).
6. Pull back quick disconnect collar (A), on driveline (C), to release the driveline yoke.
7. Slide the yoke onto support bracket (B) until it locks onto the shaft.
8. Connect safety chain (D) to the support bracket.
9. Reinstall any shielding around the combine that may have been moved.

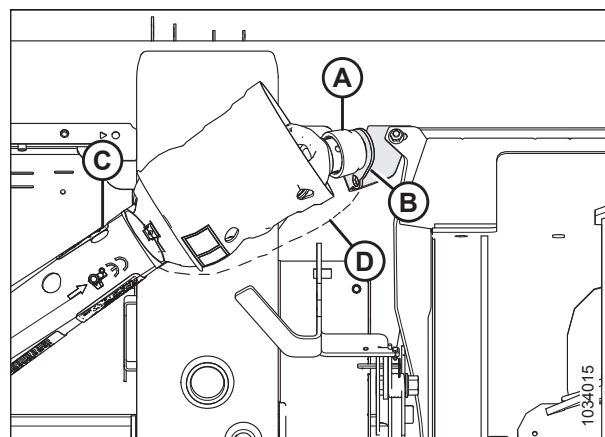


Figure 4.211: Side-Hill Driveline





## Chapter 5: Maintenance and Servicing

The following instructions provide information about routine header service. Detailed maintenance and service information is available in the technical service manual that is available from your Dealer. A parts catalog is provided in the plastic manual case at the rear by the right header leg.

Log hours of operation and use the maintenance record provided (refer to [5.2.1 Maintenance Schedule/Record, page 418](#)) to keep track of your scheduled maintenance.

### 5.1 Preparing Machine for Servicing



#### **DANGER**

**To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.**



#### **CAUTION**

**To avoid personal injury, follow all the safety precautions listed before servicing header or opening drive covers.**

1. Lower the header fully. If it is necessary to service the header in the raised position, always engage the safety props.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the park brake.
4. Wait for all moving parts to stop.

## 5.2 Maintenance Requirements

Regular maintenance is the best insurance against early wear and untimely breakdowns. Following the maintenance schedule will increase your machine’s life. Log hours of operation, use the maintenance record, and keep copies of your maintenance records (refer to [5.2.1 Maintenance Schedule/Record, page 418](#)).

Periodic maintenance requirements are organized according to service intervals. If a service interval specifies more than one timeframe, e.g., 100 hours or annually, service the machine at whichever interval is reached first.

**IMPORTANT:**

Recommended intervals are for average conditions. Service the machine more often if operating under adverse conditions (severe dust, extra heavy loads, etc.).




When servicing the machine, refer to the appropriate section in this Maintenance and Servicing chapter and use only specified fluids and lubricants. Refer to inside back cover for recommended fluids and lubricants.

 **CAUTION**

Carefully follow safety messages. For instructions, refer to [5.1 Preparing Machine for Servicing, page 417](#) and [1 Safety, page 1](#).

### 5.2.1 Maintenance Schedule/Record

Recording maintenance allows the user to keep track of when maintenance is performed.

Action:		✓ – Check				☼ – Lubricate				▲ – Change			
	Hour meter reading												
	Service date												
	Serviced by												
<b>First Use</b>		Refer to <a href="#">5.2.2 Break-In Inspection, page 421</a> .											
<b>End of Season</b>		Refer to <a href="#">5.2.4 End-of-Season Service, page 422</a> .											
<b>10 Hours or Daily (Whichever Occurs First)</b>													
✓	Hydraulic hoses and lines; refer to <a href="#">5.2.5 Checking Hydraulic Hoses and Lines, page 423</a> <sup>55</sup>												
✓	Knife sections, guards, and hold-downs; refer to <a href="#">5.8 Knife, page 478</a> <sup>56</sup>												
✓	Tire pressure; refer to <a href="#">5.18.3 Checking Tire Pressure, page 624</a> <sup>56</sup>												
☼	Feed draper rollers, refer to <a href="#">Every 10 Hours, page 424</a>												
✓	Link holder hooks; refer to <a href="#">5.13 Checking Link Holder Hooks, page 551</a> <sup>56</sup>												
<b>25 Hours</b>													
✓	Hydraulic oil level at reservoir; refer to <a href="#">5.4.1 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir, page 442</a> <sup>56</sup>												
☼	Knifeheads; refer to <a href="#">Every 25 Hours, page 425</a> <sup>56</sup>												

55. MacDon recommends keeping a record of daily maintenance as evidence of a properly maintained machine.

56. MacDon recommends keeping a record of daily maintenance as evidence of a properly maintained machine.

**MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING**

50 Hours or Annually															
◆	Driveline and driveline universals; refer to <i>Every 50 Hours, page 426</i>														
◆	Upper cross auger right bearing; refer to <i>Every 50 Hours, page 426</i>														
◆	Upper cross auger sliding hubs; refer to <i>Every 50 Hours, page 426</i>														
◆	Upper cross auger center support and U-joint; refer to <i>Every 50 Hours, page 426</i>														
◆	Feed draper roller bearings, 3 locations; refer to <i>Every 50 Hours, page 426</i>														
▲	Knife drive box lubricant (first 50 hours only); refer to <i>Changing Oil in Knife Drive Box, page 524</i>														
▲	Header drive main gearbox lubricant (first 50 hours only); refer to <i>Changing Oil in Header Drive Main Gearbox, page 439</i>														
▲	Header drive completion gearbox lubricant (first 50 hours only); refer to <i>Changing Oil in Header Drive Completion Gearbox, page 441</i>														
100 Hours or Annually (Whichever Occurs First)															
✓	Auger to pan and feed draper clearance; refer to <i>5.7.1 Adjusting Feed Auger to Pan Clearance, page 457</i>														
✓	Main gearbox lubricant level; refer to <i>Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Main Gearbox, page 438</i>														
✓	Completion gearbox lubricant level; refer to <i>Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Completion Gearbox, page 440</i>														
✓	Reel drive chain tension; refer to <i>5.17.1 Reel Drive Chain Tension, page 606</i>														
✓	Reel finger/cutterbar clearance; refer to <i>5.16.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 572</i>														
✓	Wheel bolt torque; refer to <i>5.18.1 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque, page 622</i>														
✓	Knife drive box lubricant level; refer to <i>Checking Oil Level in Knife Drive Box, page 514</i>														
✓	Knife drive box mounting bolts; refer to <i>Checking Mounting Bolts, page 515</i>														
◆	Auger drive chain; refer to <i>Every 100 Hours, page 430</i>														
◆	Float pivots; refer to <i>Every 100 Hours, page 430</i>														

**MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING**

•	Float module auger pivots; refer to <i>Every 100 Hours, page 430</i>																		
•	Float spring tensioners; refer to <i>Every 100 Hours, page 430</i>																		
•	Reel drive chain; refer to <i>Every 100 Hours, page 430</i>																		
<b>200 Hours or Annually (Whichever Occurs First)</b>																			
✓	Draper roller bearings; refer to <i>5.15.5 Draper Roller Maintenance, page 561</i>																		
<b>250 Hours or Annually (Whichever Occurs First)</b>																			
•	Reel drive U-joint; refer to <i>Every 250 Hours, page 432</i>																		
•	Bell crank linkage; refer to <i>Every 250 Hours, page 432</i>																		
▲	Hydraulic oil filter; refer to <i>5.4.4 Changing Oil Filter, page 444</i>																		
<b>500 Hours or Annually (Whichever Occurs First)</b>																			
•	Reel shaft bearings; refer to <i>Every 500 Hours, page 434</i>																		
•	Gauge wheel / slow speed transport wheel bearings; refer to <i>Every 500 Hours, page 434</i>																		
✓	Header drive main gearbox chain tension; refer to <i>5.6.5 Adjusting Chain Tension – Main Gearbox, page 453</i>																		
✓	Header drive completion gearbox chain tension; refer to <i>5.6.6 Adjusting Chain Tension – Completion Gearbox, page 455</i>																		
<b>1000 Hours or 3 Years (Whichever Occurs First)</b>																			
▲	Knife drive box lubricant; refer to <i>Changing Oil in Knife Drive Box, page 524</i>																		
▲	Header drive main gearbox lubricant; refer to <i>Changing Oil in Header Drive Main Gearbox, page 439</i>																		
▲	Header drive completion gearbox lubricant; refer to <i>Changing Oil in Header Drive Completion Gearbox, page 441</i>																		
▲	Hydraulic oil; refer to <i>5.4.3 Changing Oil in the Hydraulic Reservoir, page 443</i>																		

### 5.2.2 Break-In Inspection

Break-in inspection involves checking belts, fluids, and performing general machine inspections for loose hardware or other areas of concern. Break-in inspections ensure that all components can operate for an extended period without requiring service or replacement. The break-in period is the first 50 hours of operation after the machine’s initial start up.

Inspection Interval	Item	Refer to
5 Minutes	Check hydraulic oil level in reservoir (check after first run-up and after the hydraulic hoses have filled with oil).	<a href="#">5.4.1 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir, page 442</a>
5 Hours	Check for loose hardware and tighten to required torque.	<a href="#">8.1 Torque Specifications, page 661</a>
10 Hours	Check auger drive chain tension.	<a href="#">5.7.2 Checking Feed Auger Drive Chain Tension, page 459</a>
10 Hours	Check knife drive box mounting bolts.	<a href="#">Checking Mounting Bolts, page 515</a>
10 Hours	Grease the feed draper bearings.	<a href="#">Every 10 Hours, page 424</a>
50 Hours	Change float module gearbox oil.	<a href="#">Changing Oil in Header Drive Main Gearbox, page 439</a>
50 Hours	Change float module hydraulic oil filter.	<a href="#">5.4.4 Changing Oil Filter, page 444</a>
50 Hours	Change knife drive box lubricant.	<a href="#">Changing Oil in Knife Drive Box, page 524</a>
50 Hours	Check gearbox chain tension.	<a href="#">5.6.5 Adjusting Chain Tension – Main Gearbox, page 453</a> and <a href="#">5.6.6 Adjusting Chain Tension – Completion Gearbox, page 455</a>

### 5.2.3 Preseason Servicing

Perform the following procedures at the beginning of each operating season:



#### CAUTION

- Review this manual to refresh your memory on the safety and operating recommendations.
  - Review all the safety decals and other decals on the header and note the hazard areas.
  - Be sure all the shields and guards are properly installed and secured. Never alter or remove safety equipment.
  - Be sure you understand and have practiced safe use of all controls. Know the capacity and operating characteristics of the machine.
  - Ensure you have a first aid kit and fire extinguisher. Know where they are and how to use them.
1. Lubricate the machine completely. For instructions, refer to [5.3 Lubrication and Servicing, page 424](#).
  2. Perform all annual maintenance tasks. For instructions, refer to [5.2.1 Maintenance Schedule/Record, page 418](#).

## 5.2.4 End-of-Season Service

Perform the following procedures at the end of each operating season:

### CAUTION

Never use gasoline, naphtha, or any volatile material for cleaning purposes. These materials may be toxic and/or flammable.

### CAUTION

Cover cutterbar and knife guards to prevent injury from accidental contact.

1. Clean the header thoroughly.
2. Bring the machine for storage in a dry and protected place if possible. If storing outside, always cover the machine with a waterproof canvas or other protective material.

#### NOTE:

If storing the machine outside, remove the drapers and store them in a dark, dry place. If not removing the drapers, store the header with the cutterbar lowered so water and snow will not accumulate on the drapers. The weight of water and snow accumulation puts excessive stress on the drapers and header.

3. Lower the header onto blocks to keep the cutterbar off the ground.
4. Lower the reel completely. If stored outside, tie the reel to the frame to prevent rotation caused by the wind.
5. Repaint all worn or chipped painted surfaces to prevent rust.
6. Loosen the drive belts.
7. Lubricate the header thoroughly leaving excess grease on the fittings to keep moisture out of the bearings.
8. Apply grease to exposed threads, cylinder rods, and sliding surfaces of components.
9. Lubricate the knife. Refer to the inside back cover for recommended lubricants.
10. Check for worn components and repair as necessary.
11. Check for broken components and order replacements from your Dealer. Immediate repair of these items will save time and effort at the beginning of next season.
12. Replace or tighten any missing or loose hardware. For instructions, refer to [8.1 Torque Specifications, page 661](#).

### 5.2.5 Checking Hydraulic Hoses and Lines

Check hydraulic hoses and lines daily for signs of leaks.

#### WARNING

- Avoid high-pressure fluids. Escaping fluid can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. Relieve pressure before disconnecting hydraulic lines. Tighten all connections before applying pressure. Keep hands and body away from pin holes and nozzles which eject fluids under high pressure.
- If any fluid is injected into the skin, it must be surgically removed within a few hours by a doctor familiar with this type of injury or gangrene may result.



Figure 5.1: Hydraulic Pressure Hazard

- Use a piece of cardboard or paper to search for leaks.

#### IMPORTANT:

Keep hydraulic coupler tips and connectors clean. Allowing dust, dirt, water, or foreign material to enter the system is the major cause of hydraulic system damage. Do **NOT** attempt to service hydraulic systems in the field. Precision fits require a perfectly clean connection during overhaul.



Figure 5.2: Testing for Hydraulic Leaks

## 5.3 Lubrication and Servicing

### CAUTION

To avoid personal injury, before servicing header or opening drive covers, follow procedures in [5.1 Preparing Machine for Servicing, page 417](#).

Refer to inside back cover for recommended lubricants.

Log hours of operation and use the Maintenance Record provided to keep a record of scheduled maintenance. For more maintenance information, refer to [5.2.1 Maintenance Schedule/Record, page 418](#).

### 5.3.1 Service Intervals

#### Every 10 Hours

Daily maintenance is required to keep your machine operating at peak performance. It also allows you to do a visual inspection of the machine that may help identify issues early.

Use high temperature extreme pressure (EP2) performance grease with 1% max molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base unless otherwise specified.

#### Feed Draper Drive Roller:

##### IMPORTANT:

When greasing, clear any debris and excess grease from around the bearing and bearing housing. Inspect the condition of the bearing and bearing housing. Grease the feed draper drive roller bearing until grease comes out of the seal. Wipe any excess grease from area after greasing.

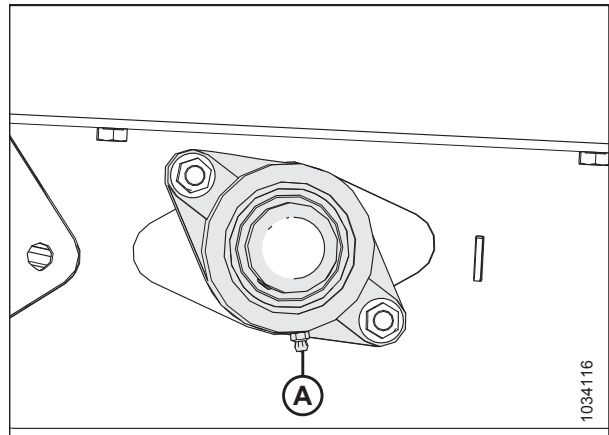


Figure 5.3: Feed Draper Drive Roller

#### Feed Draper Idler Roller:

##### IMPORTANT:

When greasing, clear any debris, and excess grease from around the bearing housing. Inspect the condition of the roller and bearing housing. Grease the feed draper idler roller bearing until grease comes out of the seal. Initial greasing on a new header may require additional grease (may require 5-10 pumps). Wipe any excess grease from area after greasing.

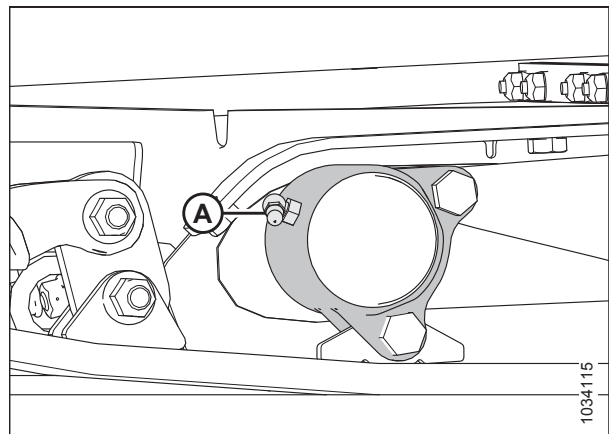


Figure 5.4: Feed Draper Idler Roller



## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

### *Every 25 Hours*

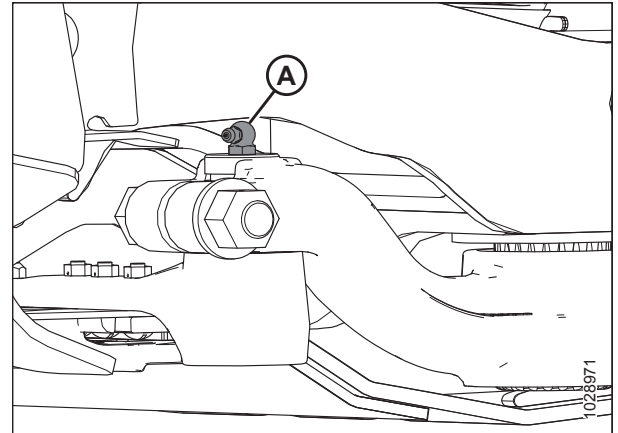
Regular maintenance is required to keep your machine operating at peak performance. It also allows you to do a visual inspection of the machine that may help identify issues early.

Use high temperature extreme pressure (EP2) performance grease with 1% max molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base unless otherwise specified.

**Knifehead:** Lubricate the knifehead (A) every 25 hours. Check for signs of excessive heating on the first few guards after greasing. If required, relieve the pressure by pressing the check-ball in the grease fitting.

#### **IMPORTANT:**

Overgreasing the knifehead puts pressure on the knife, causing it to rub against the guards, resulting in excessive wear from binding. Do **NOT** overgrease the knifehead. Apply only one to two pumps using a mechanical grease gun (do **NOT** use an electric grease gun). If more than six to eight pumps of the grease gun are required to fill the cavity, replace the seal in the knifehead. For instructions, refer to [5.8.3 Removing Knifehead Bearing, page 480](#).



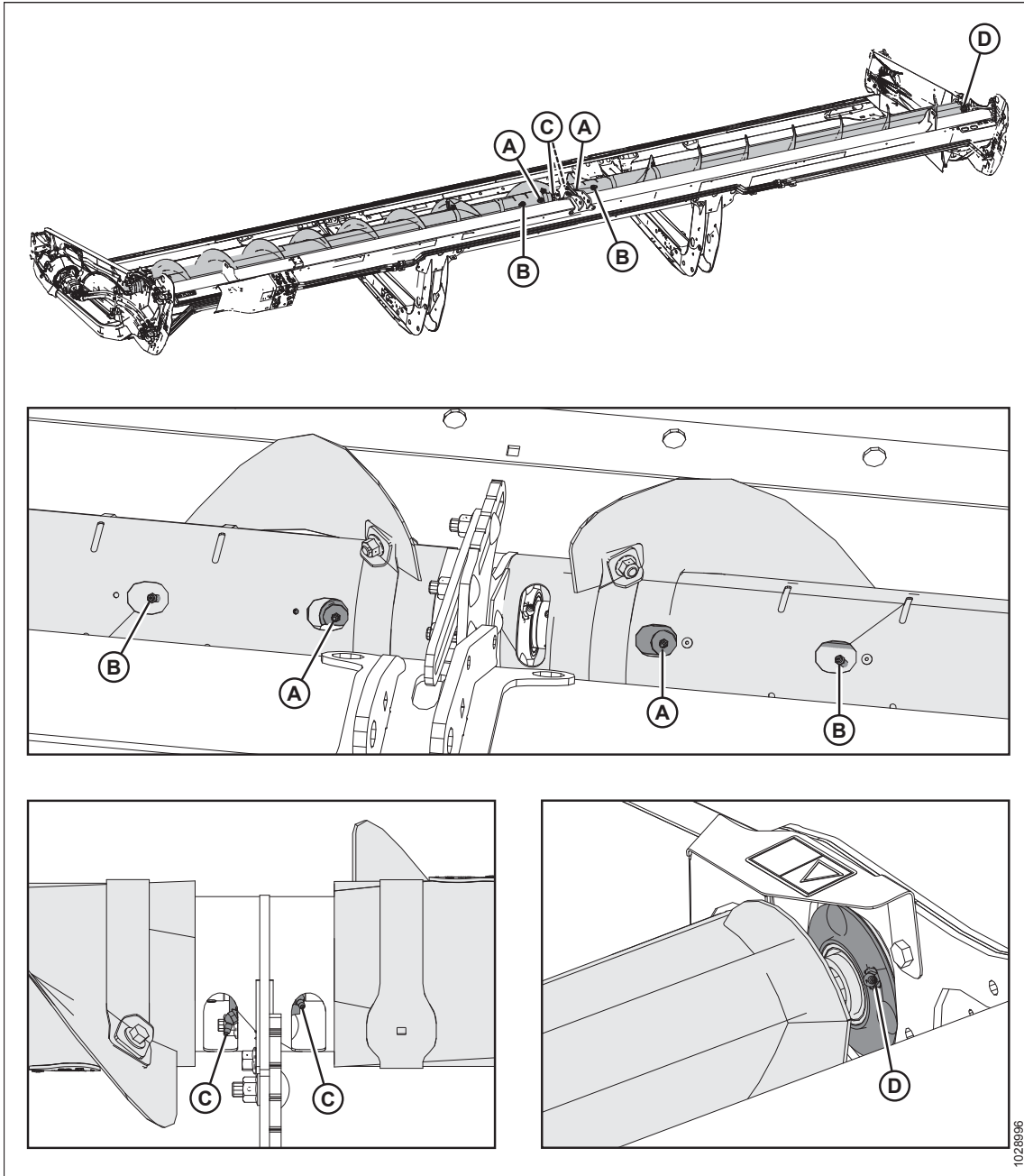
**Figure 5.5: Knifehead**

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

### Every 50 Hours

Maintenance is required to keep your machine operating at peak performance. It also allows you to do a visual inspection of the machine that may help identify issues early.

Use high temperature extreme pressure (EP2) performance grease with 1% max molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base unless otherwise specified.



**Figure 5.6: Two-Piece Upper Cross Auger**

A - Upper Cross Auger U-joints (Two Places)

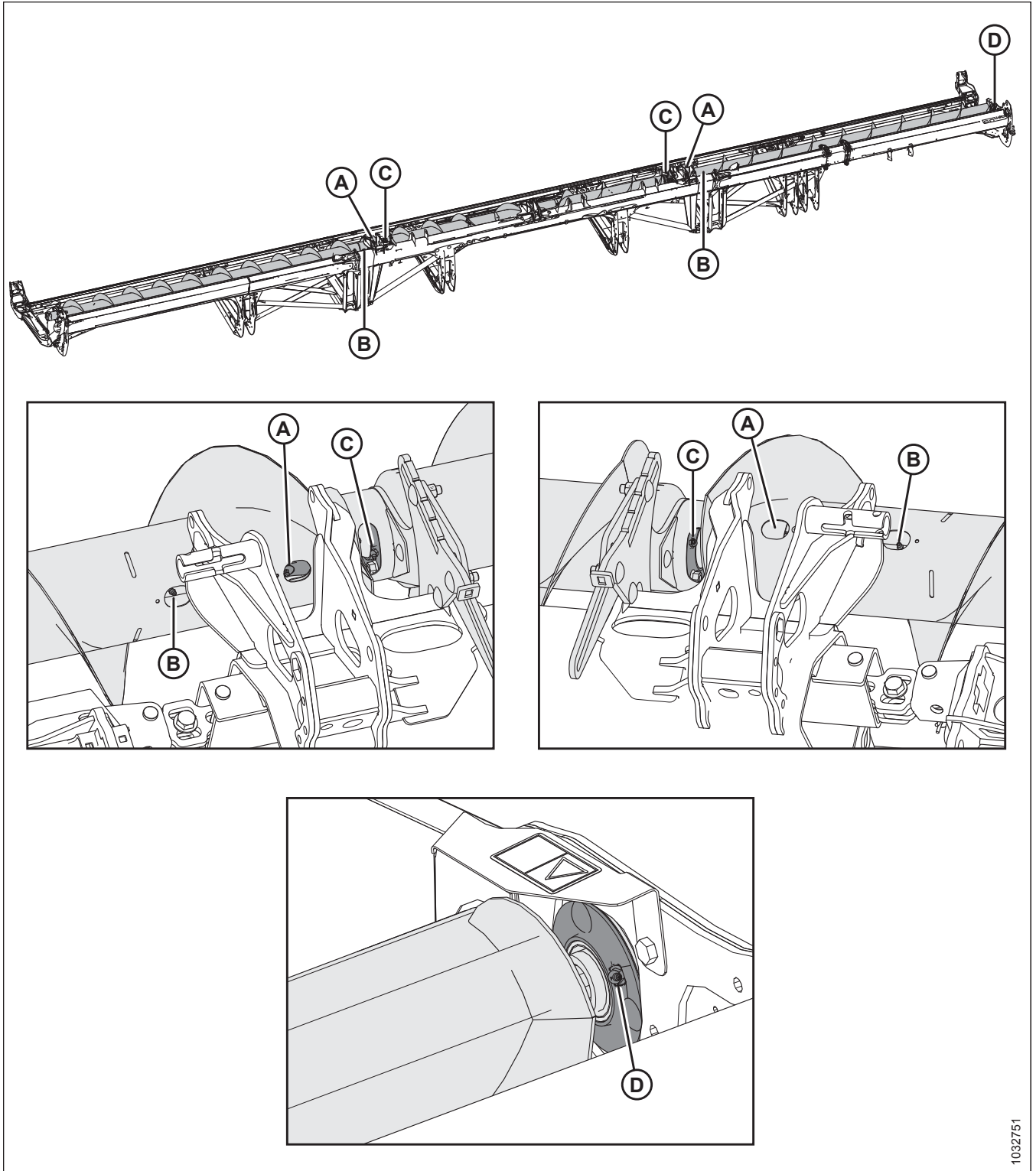
C - Upper Cross Auger Center Bearings (Two Places)

B - Upper Cross Auger Sliding Hubs (Two Places)

D - Right End Bearing

### IMPORTANT:

The Upper Cross Auger must be greased regularly even when turned off as components of the UCA move when the header flexes, regardless of whether the auger is turning or not.



**Figure 5.7: Three-Piece Upper Cross Auger**

- A - Upper Cross Auger U-joints (Two Places)
- C - Upper Cross Auger Center Bearings (Two Places)

- B - Upper Cross Auger Sliding Hubs (Two Places)
- D - Right End Bearing

**IMPORTANT:**

The Upper Cross Auger must be greased regularly even when turned off as components of the UCA move when the header flexes, regardless of whether the auger is turning or not.

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

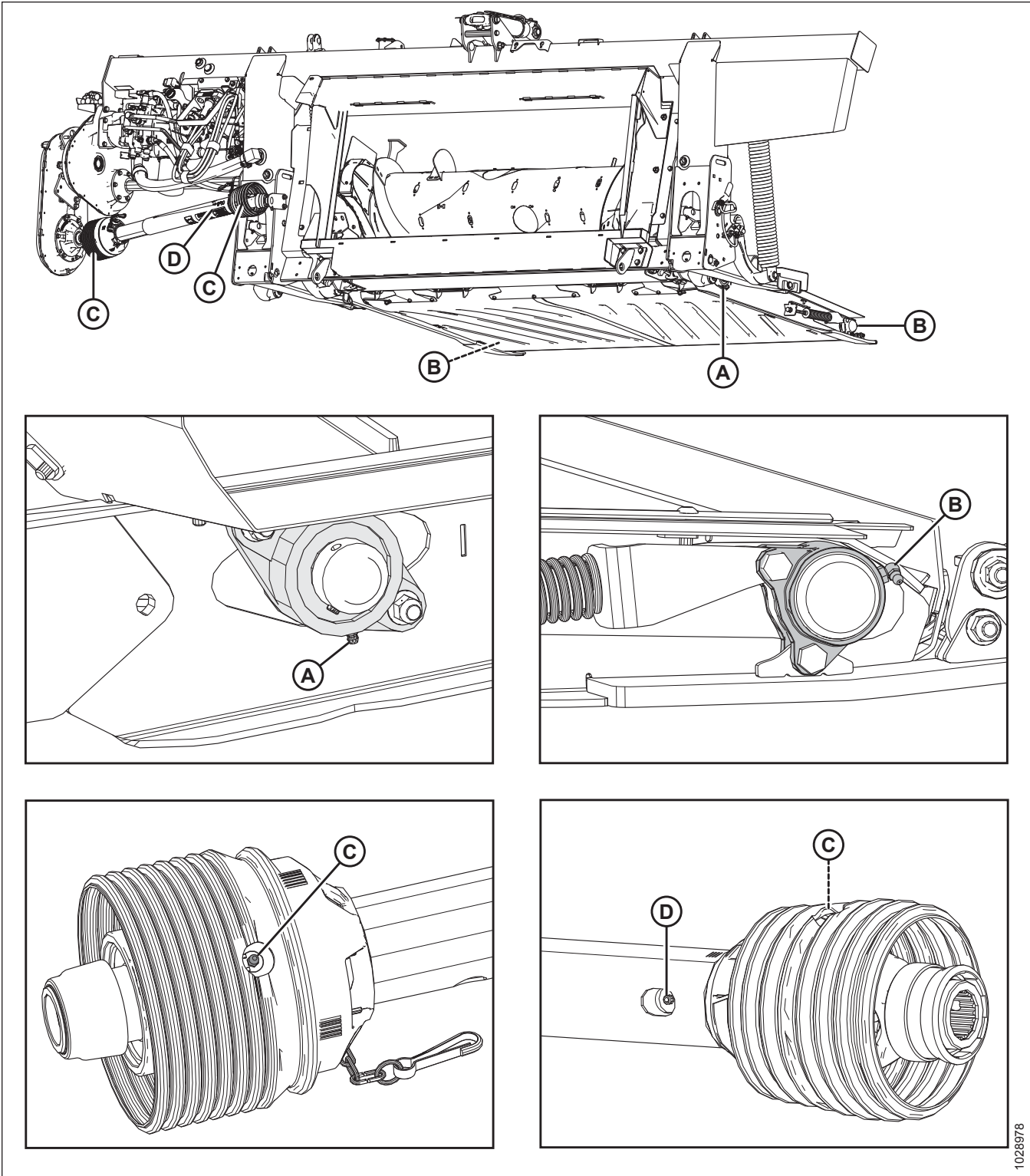


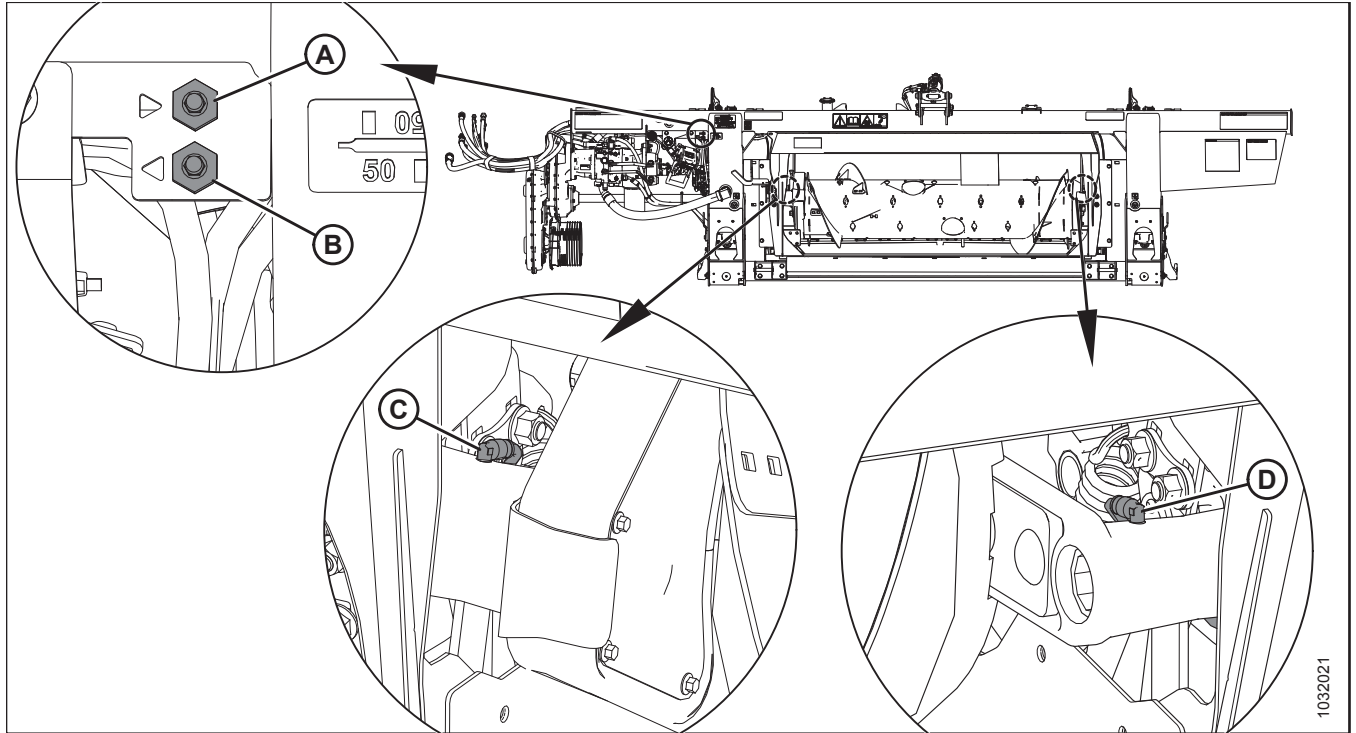
Figure 5.8: FM200

A - Drive Roller Bearing  
C - Driveline Universal (Two Places)

B - Idler Roller Bearing (Two Places)  
D - Driveline Slip Joint<sup>57</sup>

57. Use high temperature extreme pressure (EP2) performance grease with 10% max molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base.

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING



**Figure 5.9: FM200**

A - Remote Grease Line for Auger Pivot (Right Side)  
C - Auger Pivot (Left Side)

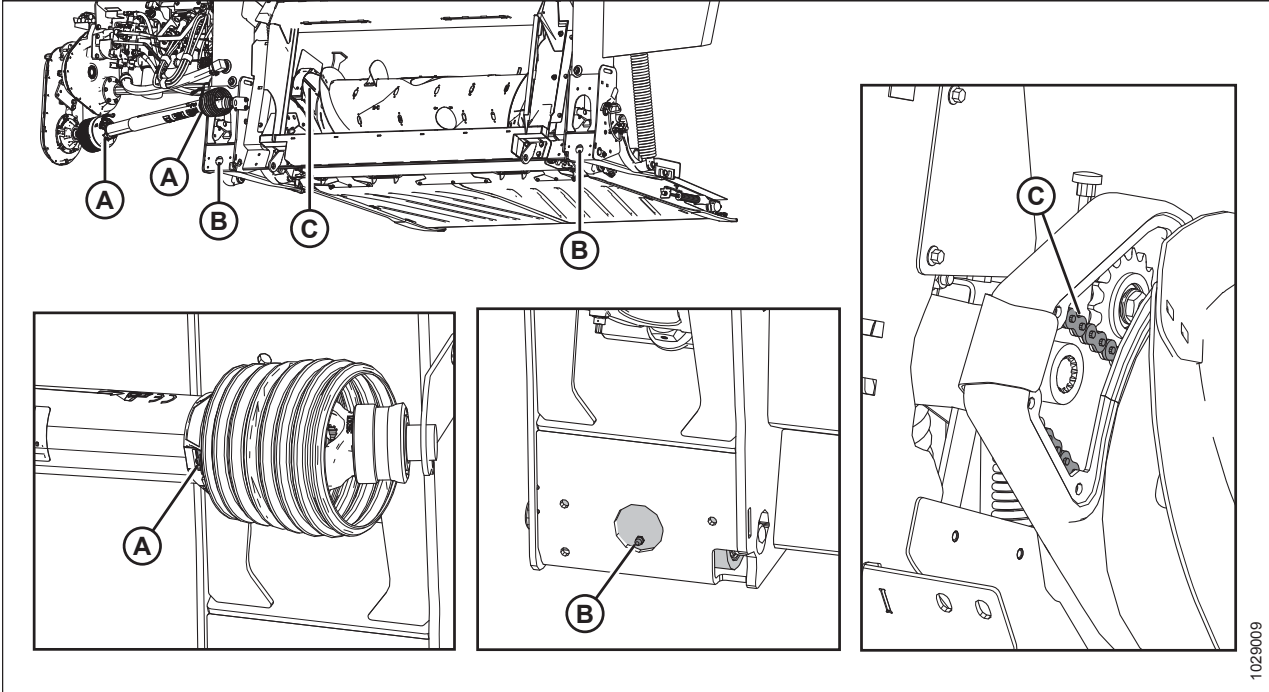
B - Remote Grease Line for Auger Pivot (Left Side)  
D - Auger Pivot (Right Side)

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

### Every 100 Hours

Maintenance is required to keep your machine operating at peak performance. It also allows you to do a visual inspection of the machine that may help identify issues early.

Use high temperature extreme pressure (EP2) performance grease with 1% max molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base unless otherwise specified.

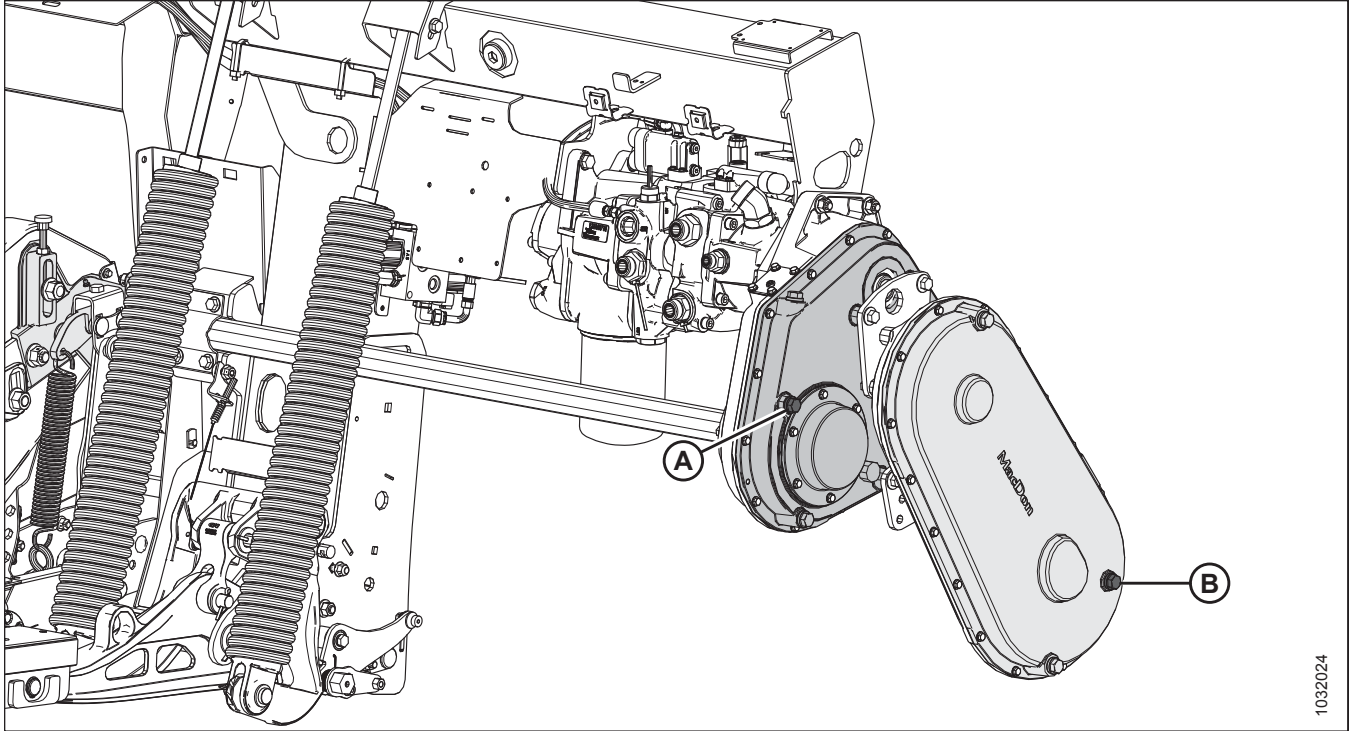


**Figure 5.10: FM200**

A- Driveline Guards (Both Ends)

B- Float Pivots (Right and Left)

C - Auger Drive Chain. To lubricate, refer to [5.3.4 Lubricating Auger Drive Chain, page 436](#)

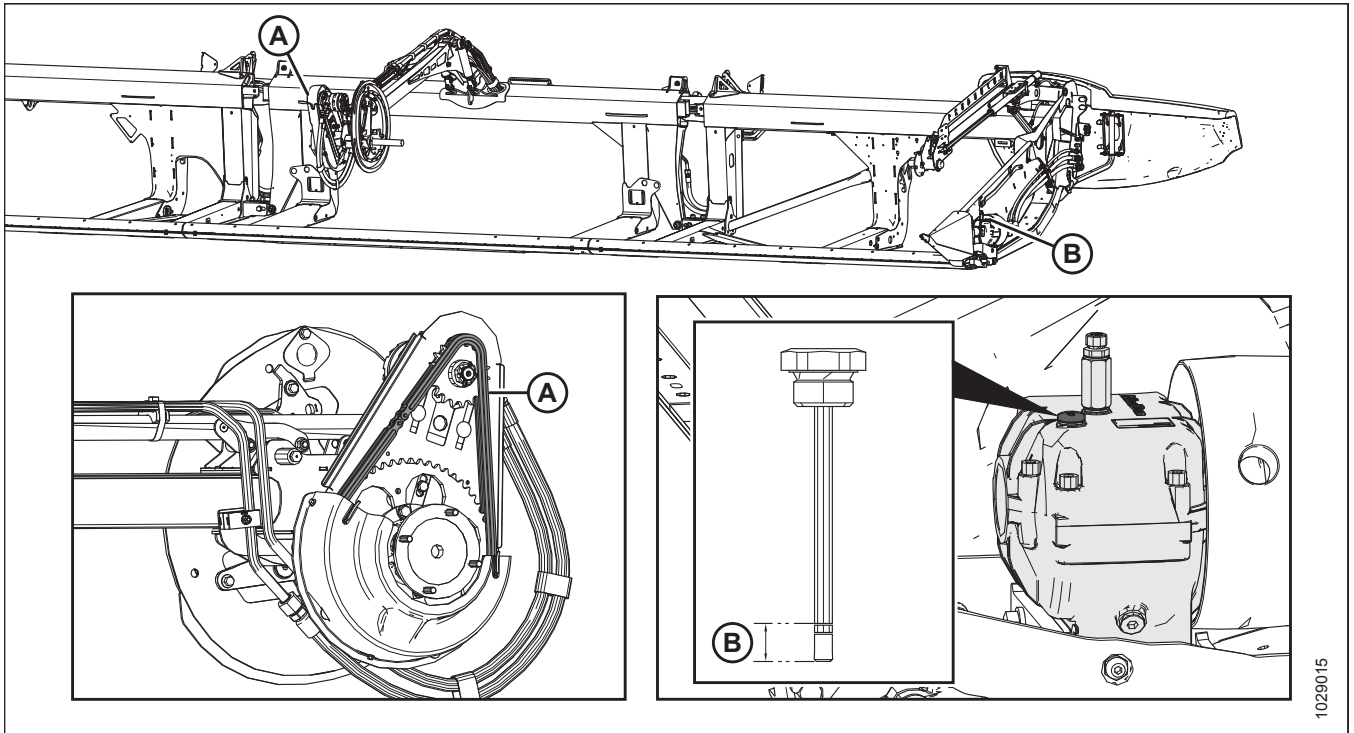


1032024

**Figure 5.11: FM200**

A - Main Gearbox Oil Level. To lubricate, refer to [5.3.5 Lubricating Header Drive Main Gearbox, page 438](#)

B - Completion Gearbox Oil Level. To lubricate, refer to [5.3.6 Lubricating Header Drive Completion Gearbox, page 440](#)



1029015

**Figure 5.12: Reel and Cutterbar**

A - Reel Drive Chain. To lubricate, refer to [5.3.3 Lubricating Reel Drive Chain, page 435](#)

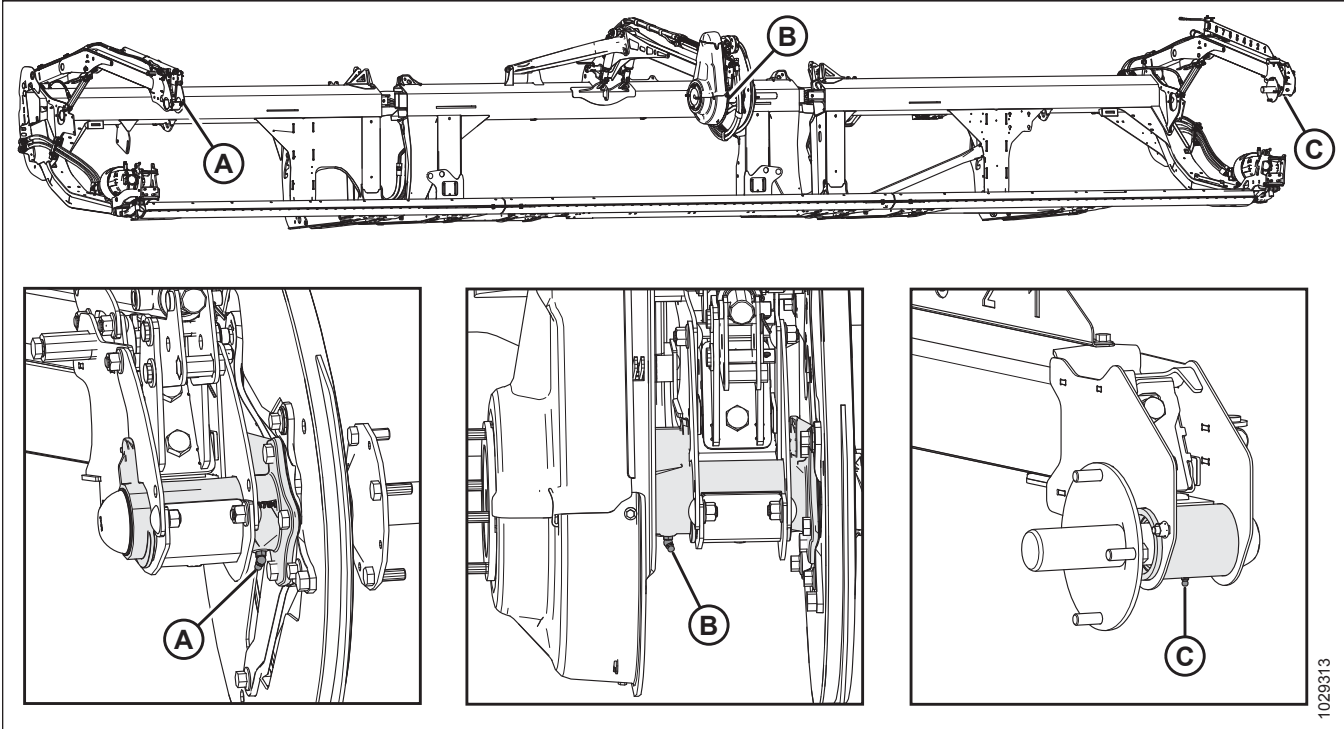
B - Knife Drive Box Oil Level. To lubricate, refer to [Checking Oil Level in Knife Drive Box, page 514](#)

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

### Every 250 Hours

Maintenance is required to keep your machine operating at peak performance. It also allows you to do a visual inspection of the machine that may help identify issues early.

Use high temperature extreme pressure (EP2) performance grease with 1% max molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base unless otherwise specified.



**Figure 5.13: Reel**

A - Reel Right Bearing (One Place)

B - Reel Center Bearing (One Place)

C - Reel Left Bearing (One Place)



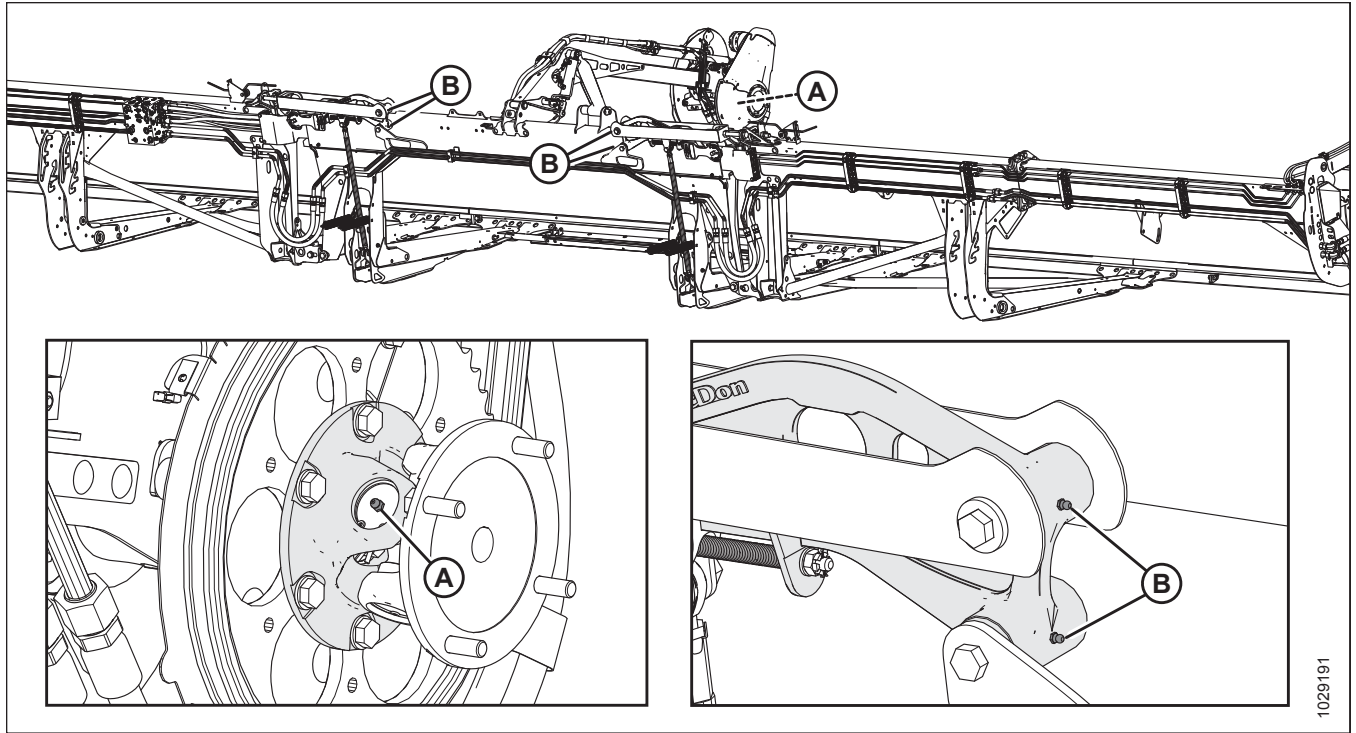


Figure 5.14: Reel

A - Reel U-joint (One Place)<sup>58</sup>

B - Flex Linkage (Two Places) – Both Sides

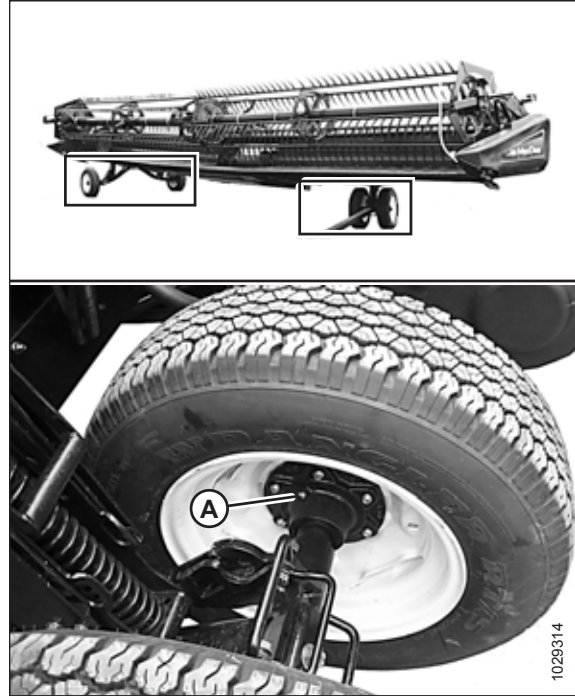
58. U-joint has an extended lubrication cross and bearing kit. Stop greasing when greasing becomes difficult or if U-joint stops taking grease. Overgreasing will damage U-joint. Six to eight pumps are sufficient at first grease (factory). Increase grease interval as U-joint wears and requires more than six pumps.

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

### *Every 500 Hours*

Maintenance is required to keep your machine operating at peak performance. It also allows you to do a visual inspection of the machine that may help identify issues early.

Use high temperature extreme pressure (EP2) performance grease with 1% max molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base unless otherwise specified.



**Figure 5.15: Every 500 Hours**

A - Wheel Bearings (Four Places)

### 5.3.2 Greasing Procedure

Greasing points are identified on the machine by decals showing a grease gun and grease interval in hours of operation. Grease point layout decals are located on the header and on the right side of the float module.

#### **DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

Refer to inside back cover for recommended lubricants.

Log hours of operation and use the Maintenance Record provided to keep a record of scheduled maintenance. Refer to [5.2.1 Maintenance Schedule/Record, page 418](#).

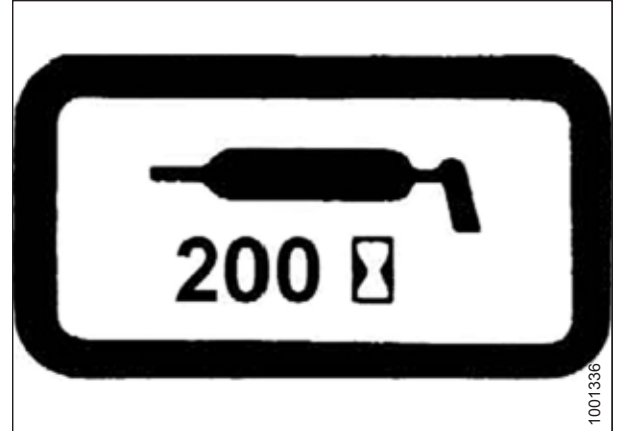


Figure 5.16: Greasing Interval Decal

1. Wipe grease fitting with a clean cloth before greasing to avoid injecting dirt and grit.

### IMPORTANT:

Use clean, high-temperature, extreme-pressure grease only.

2. Inject grease through fitting with grease gun until grease overflows fitting (except where noted).
3. Leave excess grease on fitting to keep out dirt.
4. Replace any loose or broken fittings immediately.
5. Remove and thoroughly clean any fitting that will not take grease. Also clean lubricant passageway. Replace fitting if necessary.

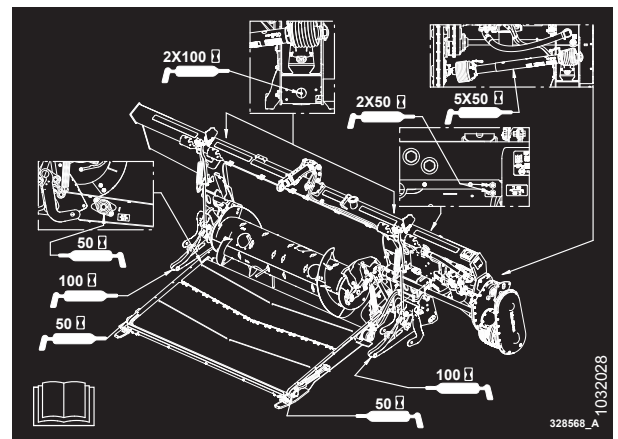


Figure 5.17: FM200 Grease Point Layout Decal

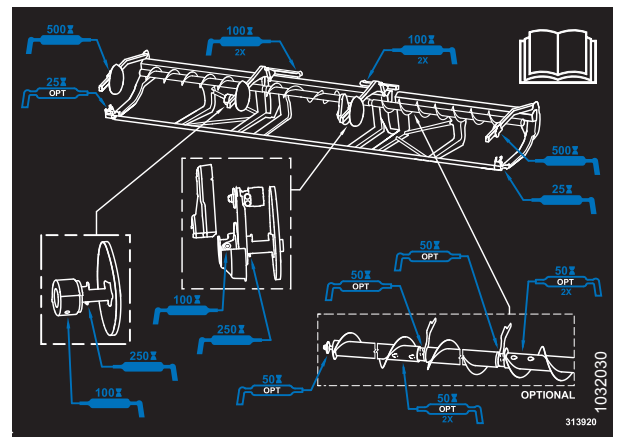


Figure 5.18: FD2 Series Grease Point Layout Decal

### 5.3.3 Lubricating Reel Drive Chain



#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

1. Remove the upper cover from the reel drive. For instructions, refer to *Removing Reel Drive Cover, page 38*.
2. Apply a liberal amount of grease to the chain (A).
3. Reinstall the upper cover. For instructions, refer to *Installing Reel Drive Cover, page 39*.

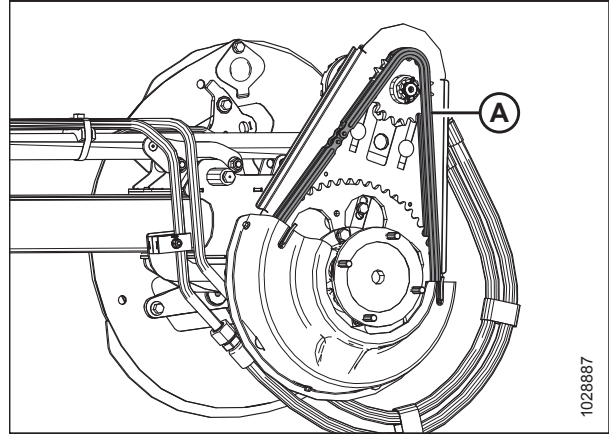


Figure 5.19: Drive Chain

### 5.3.4 Lubricating Auger Drive Chain

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

Lubricate the auger drive chain every 100 hours. The auger drive chain can be lubricated with the float module attached to the combine, but it is easier with the float module detached.

The auger drive cover consists of an upper and lower cover, and a metal inspection panel. Only the metal inspection panel needs to be removed to grease the chain.

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

1. Remove four bolts (A) and metal inspection panel (B).

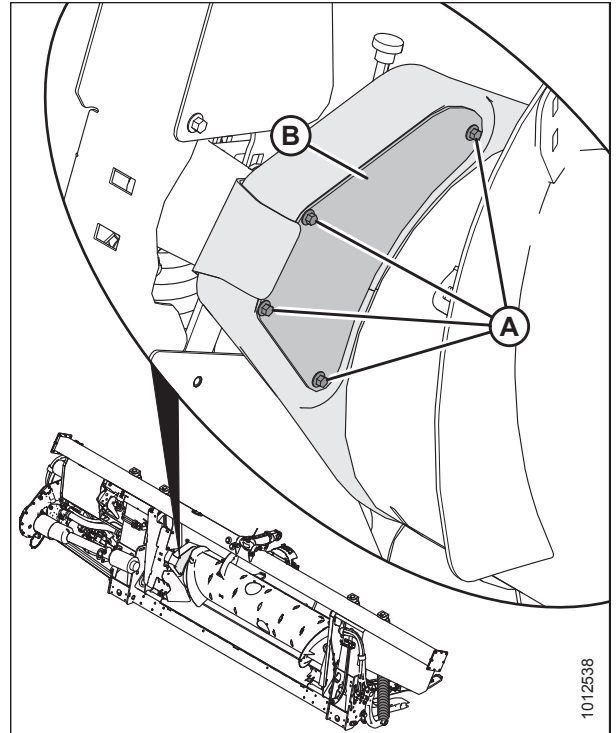


Figure 5.20: Auger Drive Inspection Panel

2. Apply a liberal amount of grease to chain (A), drive sprocket (B), and idler sprocket (C).
3. Rotate the auger and apply grease to more areas of the chain, if necessary.

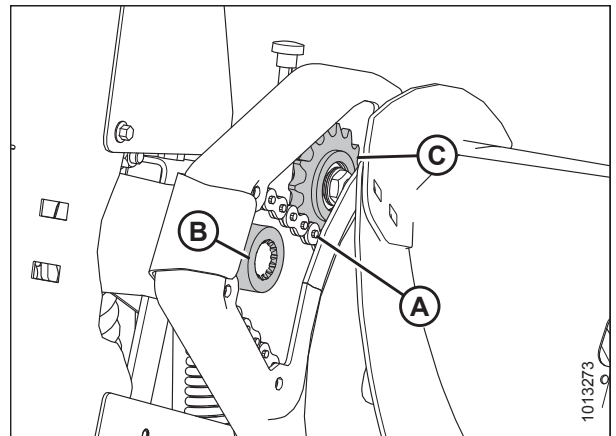


Figure 5.21: Auger Drive Chain

4. Reinstall metal inspection panel (B) and secure with four bolts (A).

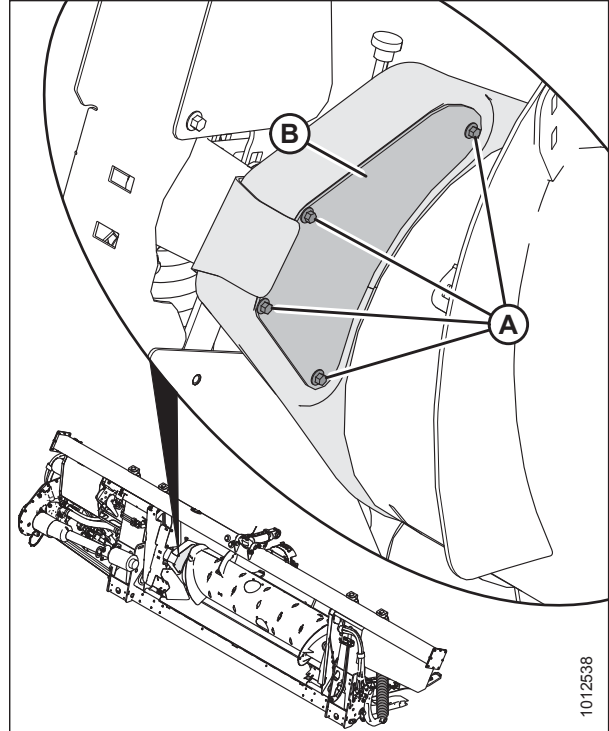


Figure 5.22: Auger Drive Inspection Panel

### 5.3.5 Lubricating Header Drive Main Gearbox

#### Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Main Gearbox

Check the header drive gearbox oil level every 100 hours.

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Lower the cutterbar to the ground and ensure main gearbox (B) is in working position.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Remove oil level plug (A) from the main gearbox and check that the oil level is up to the bottom of the hole.
4. Add oil if required. For instructions, refer to [Adding Oil to Header Drive Main Gearbox, page 439](#).
5. Reinstall oil level plug (A).

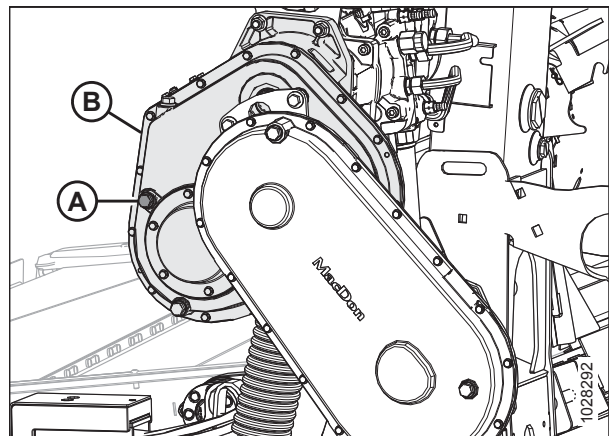


Figure 5.23: Header Drive Main Gearbox

*Adding Oil to Header Drive Main Gearbox*

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Lower the cutterbar to the ground, and ensure the main gearbox is in working position.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Remove filler plug (B) and oil level plug (A) from the main gearbox.
4. Add oil into filler hole (B) until it runs out of oil level plug hole (A). Refer to the inside back cover for recommended fluids and lubricants.
5. Replace oil level plug (A) and filler plug (B).

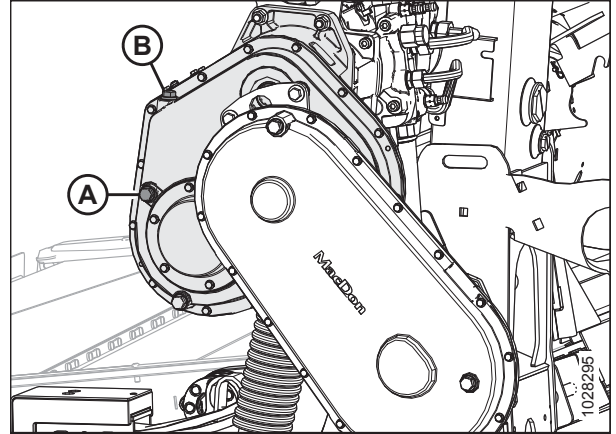


Figure 5.24: Header Drive Main Gearbox

*Changing Oil in Header Drive Main Gearbox*

Change the header drive gearbox oil after the first 50 hours of operation and every 1000 hours (or 3 years) thereafter.

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Start engine.
2. Engage the header to warm up the oil.
3. Raise or lower the header to position oil drain plug (A) at its lowest point.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Place a suitably sized container (approximately 4 liters [1 US gal]) underneath the gearbox drain to collect the oil.
6. Remove oil drain plug (A) and filler plug (C), and allow the oil to drain.
7. Replace oil drain plug (A) and remove oil level plug (B).
8. Add oil through filler plug (C) until it runs out of oil level hole (B). Refer to this manual's inside back cover for recommended lubricants.

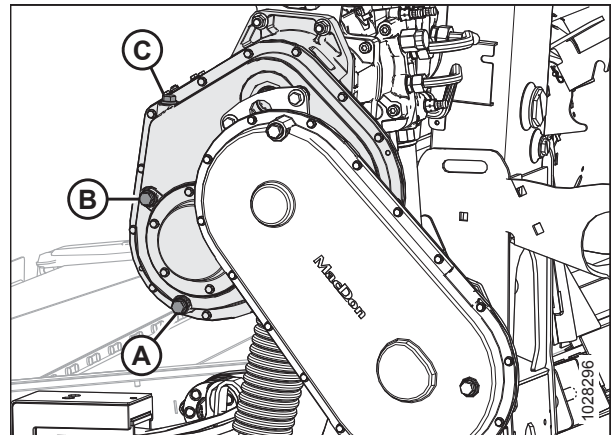


Figure 5.25: Header Drive Main Gearbox

**NOTE:**

The main gearbox holds approximately 2.5 liters (2.6 quarts) of oil.

9. Replace oil level plug (B) and filler plug (C).

### 5.3.6 Lubricating Header Drive Completion Gearbox

#### Checking Oil Level in Header Drive Completion Gearbox

Check the header drive gearbox oil level every 100 hours.

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Lower the header to the ground and ensure the completion gearbox (B) is in working position.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Remove oil level plug (A) from the completion gearbox and check that the oil level is up to the bottom of the hole.
4. Add oil if required. For instructions, refer to [Adding Oil to Header Drive Completion Gearbox, page 440](#).
5. Reinstall oil level plug (A).

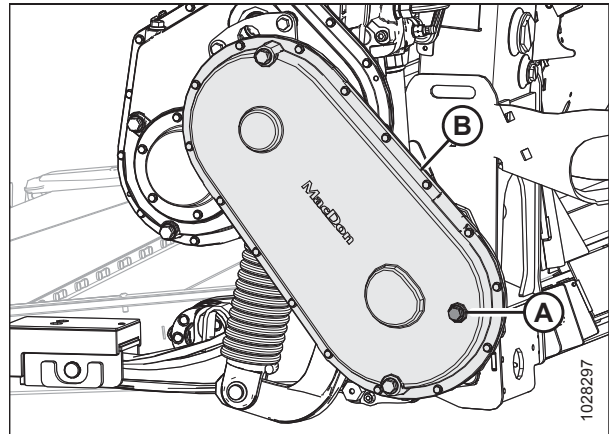


Figure 5.26: Header Drive Completion Gearbox

#### Adding Oil to Header Drive Completion Gearbox

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Lower the cutterbar to the ground, and ensure the completion gearbox is in working position.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Remove filler plug (B) and oil level plug (A).
4. Add oil into filler hole (B) until it runs out of oil level plug hole (A). Refer to the inside back cover for recommended fluids and lubricants.
5. Replace oil level plug (A) and filler plug (B).

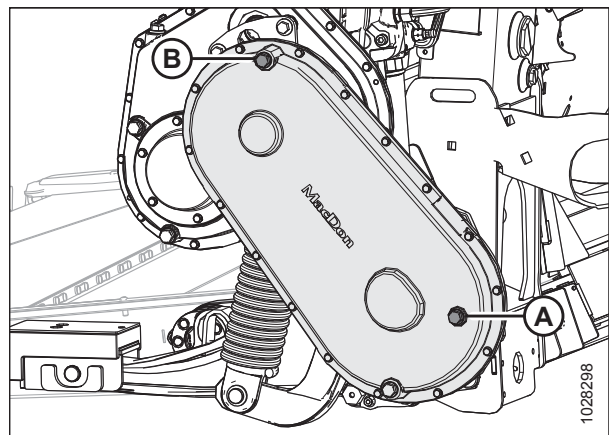


Figure 5.27: Header Drive Completion Gearbox



### Changing Oil in Header Drive Completion Gearbox

Change the header drive gearbox oil after the first 50 hours of operation and every 1000 hours (or 3 years) thereafter.

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Engage the header to warm up the oil.
3. Raise or lower the header to position oil drain plug (A) at its lowest point.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Place a suitably sized container (approximately 4 liters [1 US gal]) underneath the gearbox drain to collect the oil.
6. Remove oil drain plug (A) and filler plug (C), and allow the oil to drain.
7. Replace oil drain plug (A).
8. Remove oil level plug (B).
9. Add oil through filler plug (C) until it runs out of oil level hole (B). Refer to this manual's inside back cover for recommended lubricants.

**NOTE:**

The header drive gearbox holds approximately 2.5 liters (2.6 quarts) of oil.

10. Replace oil level plug (B) and filler plug (C).

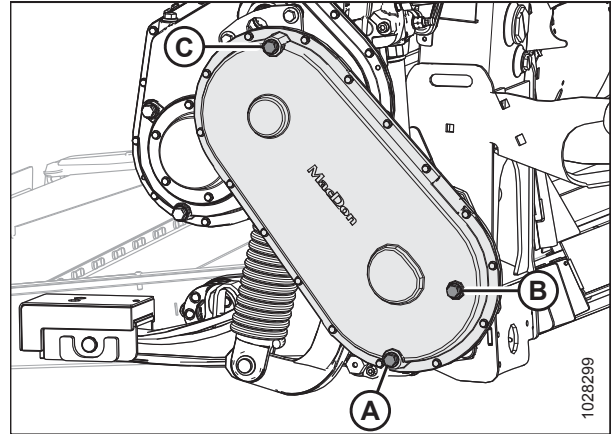


Figure 5.28: Header Drive Completion Gearbox

## 5.4 Hydraulics

The float module frame acts as an oil reservoir. Refer to inside back cover for oil requirements.

### 5.4.1 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir

Check the hydraulic oil level in the reservoir every 25 hours.

**NOTE:**

Check the level when the oil is cold.

1. Check the oil level using lower sight (A) and upper sight (B) with the cutterbar just touching the ground and with the center-link retracted.
2. Ensure the oil is at the appropriate level for the terrain as follows:
  - **Normal terrain (C):** Maintain level so lower sight (A) is full, and upper sight (B) is empty.
  - **Hilly terrain (D):** Maintain level so lower sight (A) is full, and upper sight (B) is up to one-half filled.

**NOTE:**

It may be necessary to slightly reduce the oil level when ambient temperatures are above 35°C (95°F) to prevent overflow at the breather when normal operating temperatures are reached.

**NOTE:**

It is **OK** to use the hilly terrain oil level all the time as long as the fill neck extension is installed (MD #B6057).

### 5.4.2 Adding Oil to Hydraulic Reservoir

Follow this procedure to top up the oil in the hydraulic reservoir. To change the hydraulic oil, refer to [5.4.3 Changing Oil in the Hydraulic Reservoir, page 443](#).

**!** **DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Clean any dirt or debris from filler cap (A).

**!** **CAUTION**

Oil reservoir can have up to 10 psi of pressure, remove the cap slowly.

3. Loosen and remove filler cap (A) by turning it counterclockwise.
4. Add warm oil (approximately 21°C [70°F]) and fill to the required level. Refer to this manual's inside back cover for oil type and specification.

**IMPORTANT:**

Warm oil will flow through the screen better than cold oil. Do **NOT** remove the screen.

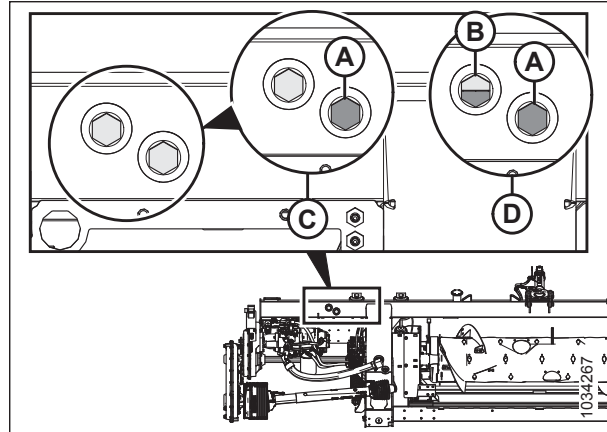


Figure 5.29: Oil Level Sight Glasses

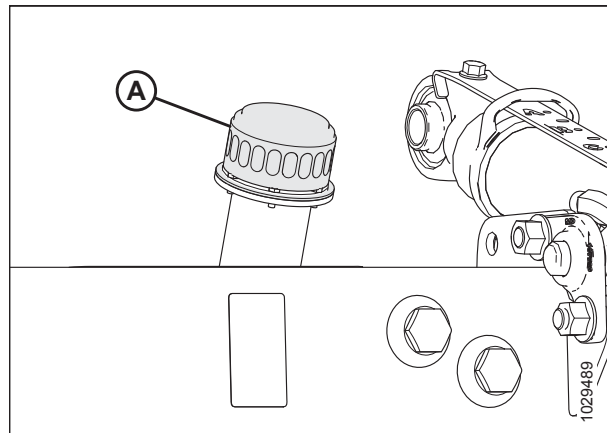


Figure 5.30: Oil Reservoir Filler Cap

5. Reinstall filler cap (A).
6. Recheck oil level. For instructions, refer to [5.4.1 Checking Oil Level in Hydraulic Reservoir, page 442](#).

### 5.4.3 Changing Oil in the Hydraulic Reservoir

Change the hydraulic oil in the reservoir every 1000 hours or 3 years (whichever comes first).

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Start engine.
2. Engage the header to warm up the oil.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Place a suitably sized container (at least 40 liters [10 gallons]) under each of the two oil drain plugs (A) located at the back on each side of the frame.
5. Remove oil drain plugs (A) with a 7/8 in. hex socket and allow the oil to drain.
6. Replace oil drain plugs (A) when reservoir is empty.
7. Change the oil filter if required. For instructions, refer to [5.4.4 Changing Oil Filter, page 444](#).
8. Add approximately 75 liters (20 gallons) of oil to the reservoir. For instructions, refer to [5.4.2 Adding Oil to Hydraulic Reservoir, page 442](#).

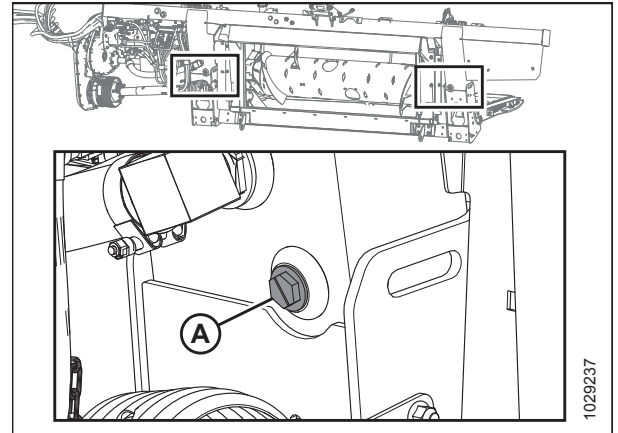


Figure 5.31: Reservoir Drain

### 5.4.4 Changing Oil Filter

Change the oil filter after the first 50 hours of operation and every 250 hours thereafter.

Obtain filter (MD #202986) from your MacDon Dealer.

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Clean around the mating surfaces of filter (A) and integrated pump (B).
3. Place a suitably sized container (approximately 1 liter [0.26 gallons]) under the filter to collect oil runoff.
4. Twist-off filter (A) and clean the exposed filter port in the integrated pump.
5. Apply a thin film of clean oil to the O-ring provided with the new filter.
6. Turn the new filter onto integrated pump (B) until the O-ring contacts the mating surface. Tighten the filter an additional 1/2 to 3/4 turn by hand.

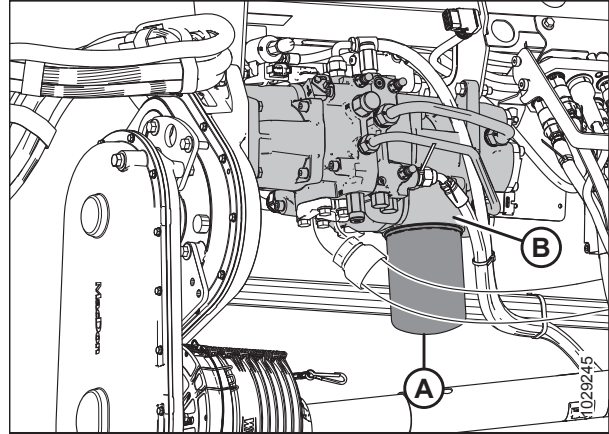


Figure 5.32: FM200 Integrated Pump

#### IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** use a filter wrench to install the new filter. Overtightening can damage the O-ring and filter.

## 5.5 Electrical System

The electrical system for the header is powered by the combine. The header has various lights and sensors that require power.

### 5.5.1 Replacing Light Bulbs

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before making adjustments to the machine.

Use bulb trade #1156 for amber transport lights and #1157 for the red tail light (Slow Speed Transport option).

#### *Clearance Lights*

1. Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the three screws (A) from the fixture, and remove the plastic lens. Retain screws (A).
2. Replace the bulb, and reinstall the plastic lens and screws.

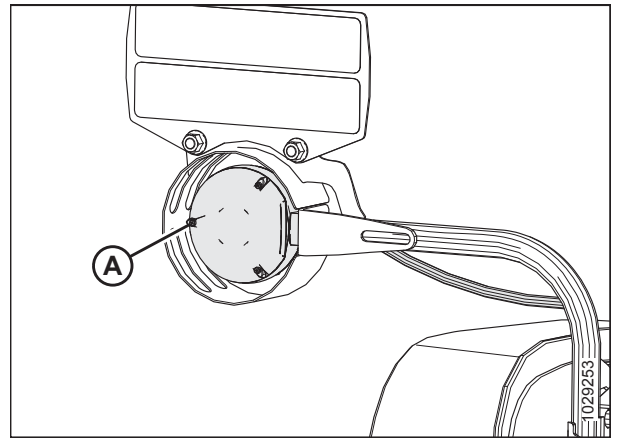


Figure 5.33: Left Clearance Light

#### *Slow Speed Transport Lights*

3. Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove screws (A) from the fixture, and remove the plastic lens. Retain screws (A).
4. Replace the bulb, and reinstall the plastic lens and screws.

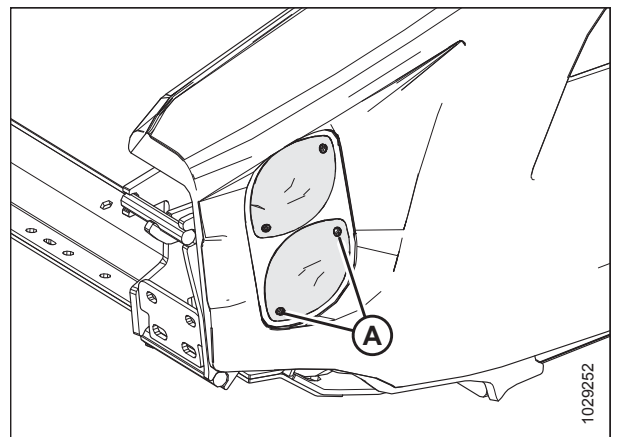


Figure 5.34: Optional Slow Speed Transport – Red and Amber Lights

## 5.6 Header Drive

The header drive consists of a driveline from the combine to the FM200 Float Module gearbox that drives the feed auger and hydraulic pumps. The pumps provide hydraulic power to the drapers, knives, and optional equipment.

### 5.6.1 Removing Driveline Connecting Float Module to Combine

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Lower the reel fully.
3. Lower the header fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Pry clips (A) up to release shield (B).

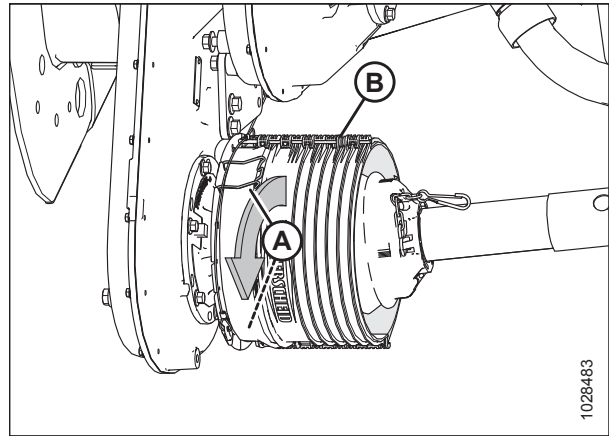


Figure 5.35: Driveline Shield

6. Slide shield (A) along driveline to access quick disconnect collar (B).

**NOTE:**

If the cover does not slide, use a prying tool.

7. Pull back quick disconnect collar (B) to release the driveline yoke. Slide the driveline off of the gearbox shaft.
8. Slide the driveline through the shield, then lower it to the ground.

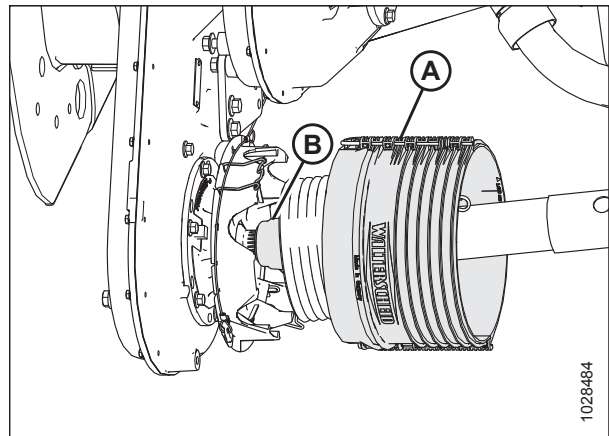


Figure 5.36: Driveline Shield

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

9. Disconnect chain (D) from support bracket (B).
10. On the opposite end of driveline (C), pull back quick disconnect collar (A) to release the driveline yoke.
11. Slide the yoke off of support bracket (B).
12. Remove driveline (C).

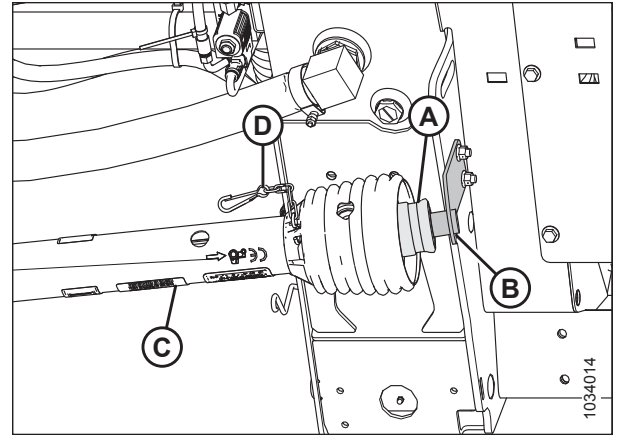


Figure 5.37: Driveline Shield

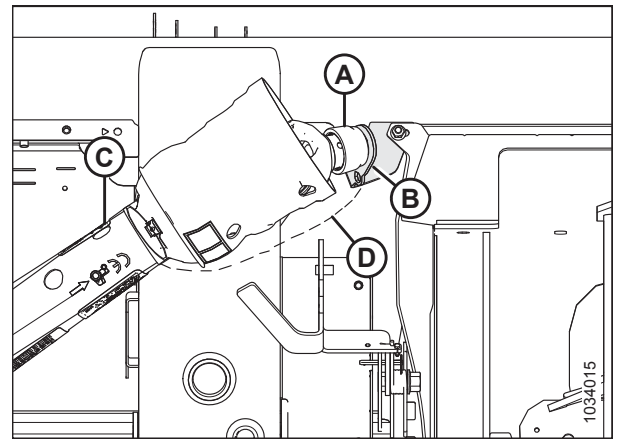


Figure 5.38: Optional Side-Hill Driveline Shield

### 5.6.2 Installing Driveline Connecting Float Module to Combine

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Lower the reel fully.
3. Lower the header fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

- Slide the driveline through shield (A). Pull back the quick disconnect collar (B), to release the driveline yoke.
- Slide the driveline onto the gearbox shaft until it locks onto the shaft.

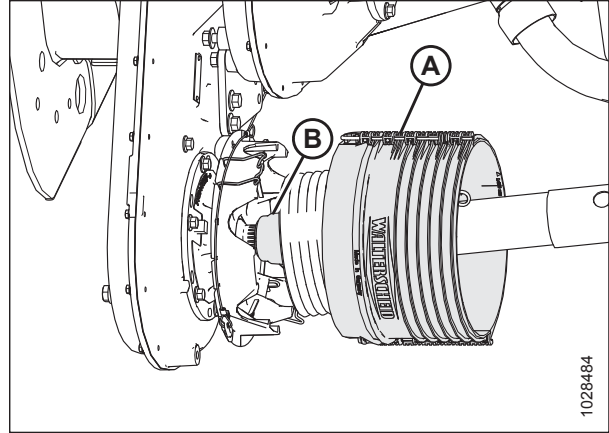


Figure 5.39: Driveline Shield

- On the opposite end of driveline (D), pull back quick disconnect collar (A).

**NOTE:**

Ensure that arrow (C) is pointing towards collar (A) that connects to support bracket (B).

- Slide the yoke onto support bracket (B).
- Connect safety chain (E) to the support bracket.

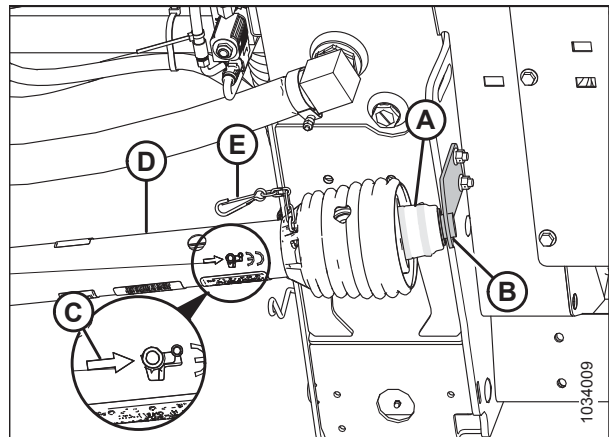


Figure 5.40: Driveline Shield

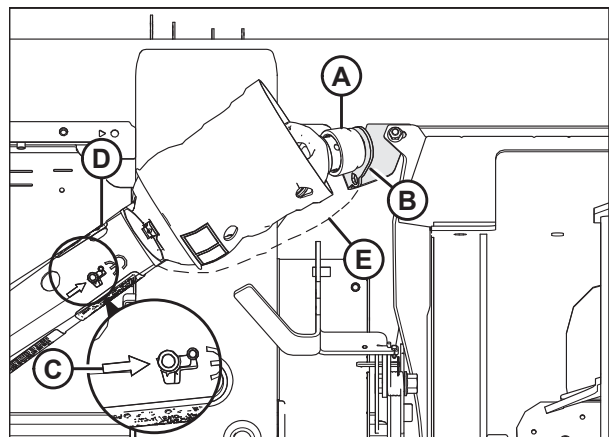


Figure 5.41: Optional Side-Hill Driveline Shield



- Slide the shield towards the gearbox until clips (A) secure shield (B).

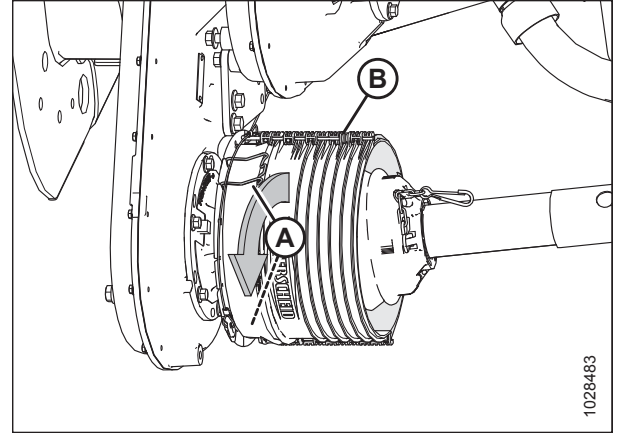


Figure 5.42: Driveline Shield

### 5.6.3 Removing Driveline Guard

The main driveline guard must remain attached to the driveline during operation, but it can be removed for maintenance purposes.

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

#### NOTE:

The driveline does **NOT** need to be removed from the float module in order to remove the driveline guard.

- Shut down the combine, and remove the key from the ignition.
- Pull driveline collar (A) away from power take-off (PTO) support (B). Slide yoke (C) off support (B), and release collar (A).

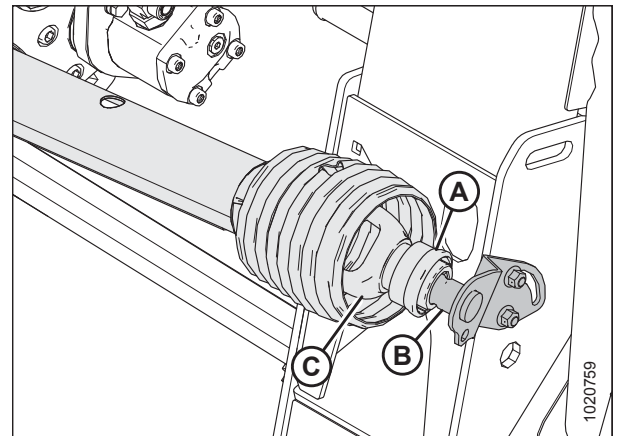


Figure 5.43: Combine End of Driveline

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

3. Lift the combine end of driveline (A) from the hook, and extend the driveline until it separates. Hold the float module end of driveline (B) to prevent it from dropping and hitting the ground.



Figure 5.44: Separated Driveline

4. Use a slotted screwdriver to release grease fitting/lock (A).



Figure 5.45: Driveline Guard

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

5. Rotate driveline guard locking ring (A) counterclockwise using a screwdriver until lugs (B) line up with the slots in the guard.
6. Pull the guard off the driveline.



Figure 5.46: Driveline Guard

### 5.6.4 Installing Driveline Guard

1. Slide the guard onto the driveline, and line up the slotted lug on locking ring (A) with arrow (B) on the guard.



Figure 5.47: Driveline Guard

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

2. Push the guard onto the ring until the locking ring is visible in slots (A).



Figure 5.48: Driveline Guard

3. Use a slotted screwdriver to rotate ring (A) clockwise and lock ring in guard.



Figure 5.49: Driveline Guard

4. Push grease fitting (A) back into the guard.



Figure 5.50: Driveline Guard

- Assemble the driveline.

**IMPORTANT:**

The splines are keyed to align the universals. Align weld (A) with missing spline (B) when assembling. Failure to align the halves of the shaft can cause excessive vibration and feed auger/gearbox failures.

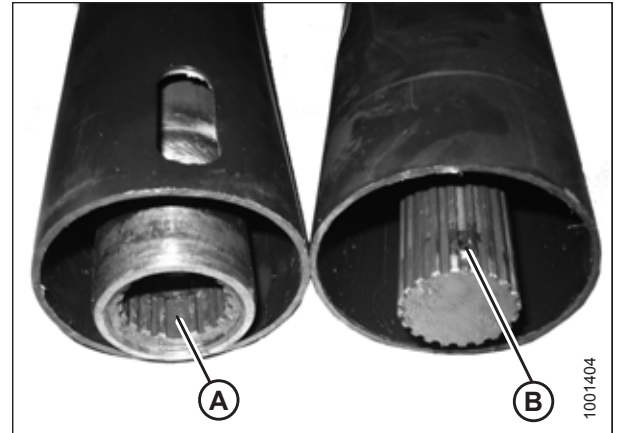


Figure 5.51: Driveline

- Position the combine end of driveline (A) on power take-off (PTO) storage support (B). Pull back collar (C) on the driveline and slide driveline onto the support until driveline yoke (D) locks onto support. Release collar (C).

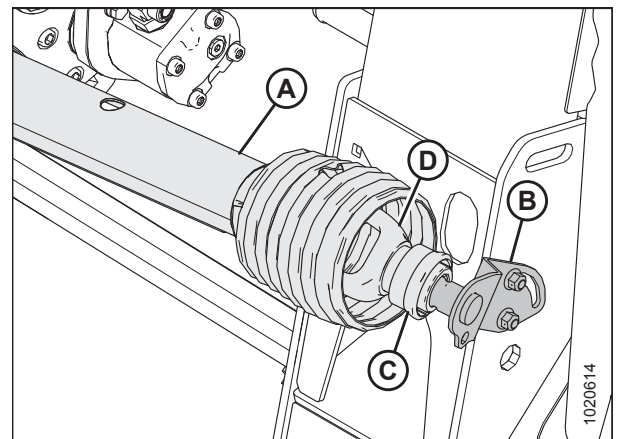


Figure 5.52: Combine End of Driveline

### 5.6.5 Adjusting Chain Tension – Main Gearbox

The gearbox drive chain tension is factory-set, but tension adjustments are required after the first 50 hours, then every 500 hours or annually (whichever comes first). With the exception of oil changes, the gearbox drive chain requires no other regular maintenance.

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

- Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
- Extend the hydraulic center-link fully.
- Lower the header fully.
- Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

5. Remove four bolts (A), cover (B), and gasket (C) from the main gearbox.

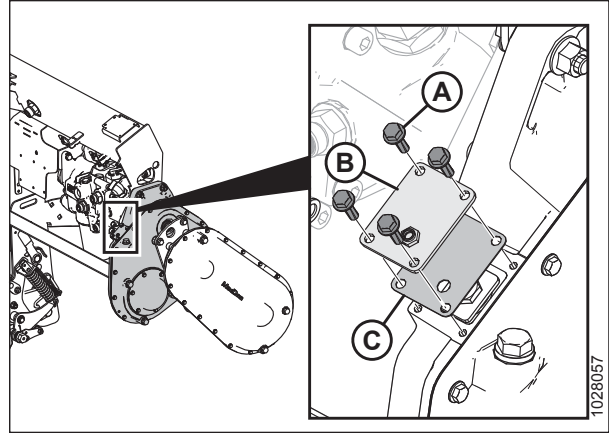


Figure 5.53: Main Gearbox Chain Tensioner Cover

6. Remove retainer plate (A).
7. Tighten bolt (B) to 136 Ncm (12 lbf-in).
8. Back off (loosen) bolt (B) 4–5 flats (4/6–5/6 turn).

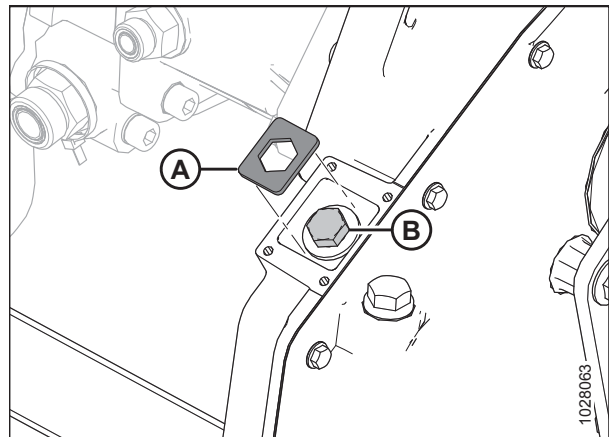


Figure 5.54: Main Gearbox Chain Tensioner

9. If required, turn bolt (B) slightly until retainer plate (A) can be installed.

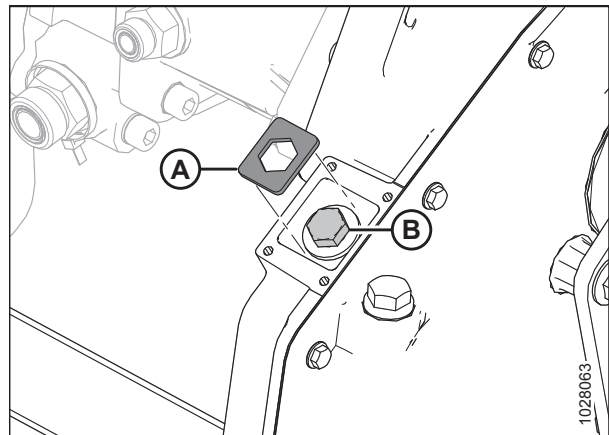


Figure 5.55: Main Gearbox Chain Tensioner

10. Reinstall chain adjusting cover (B) and gasket (C).
11. Install four bolts (A). Torque hardware to 9.5 Nm (84 lbf·in).

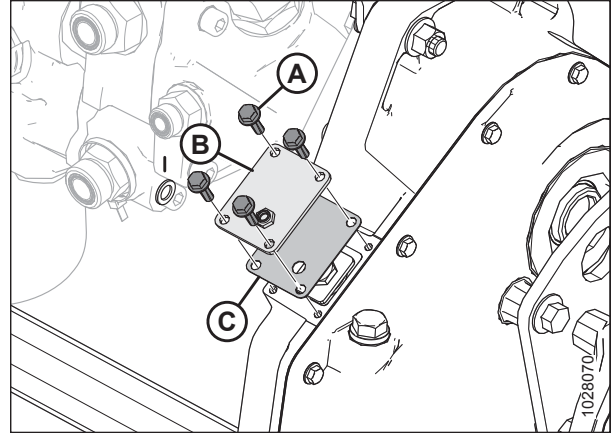


Figure 5.56: Main Gearbox Chain Tensioner Cover

### 5.6.6 Adjusting Chain Tension – Completion Gearbox

The gearbox drive chain tension is factory-set, but tension adjustments are required after the first 50 hours, then every 500 hours or annually (whichever comes first). With the exception of oil changes, the gearbox drive chain requires no other regular maintenance.

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Pry clips (A) up to release shield (B).

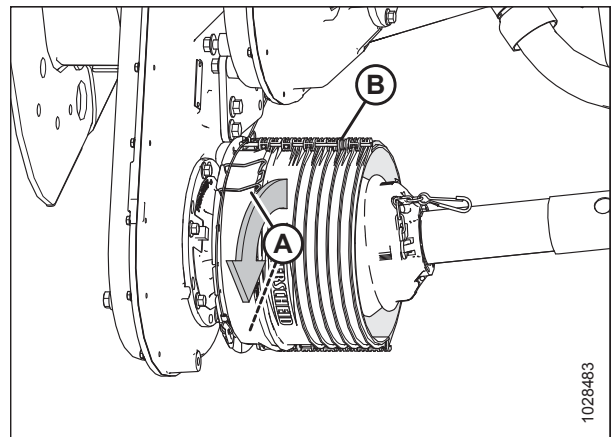


Figure 5.57: Driveline Shield

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

- Slide shield (A) along driveline to access quick disconnect collar (B).

**NOTE:**

If the cover does not slide, use a prying tool.

- Slide the driveline through the shield, then lower it to the ground.

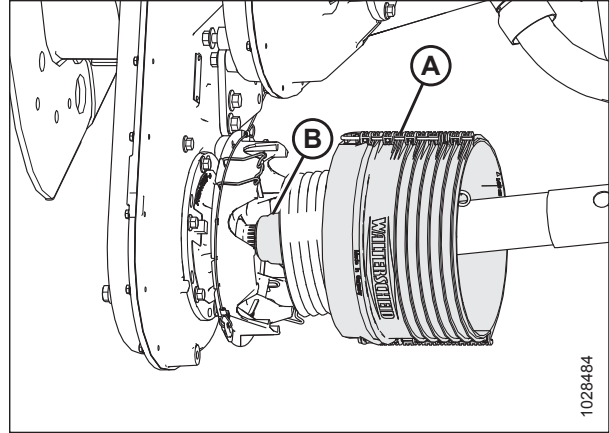


Figure 5.58: Driveline Shield

- Remove three bolts (A) that secure input driveline guard base (B).

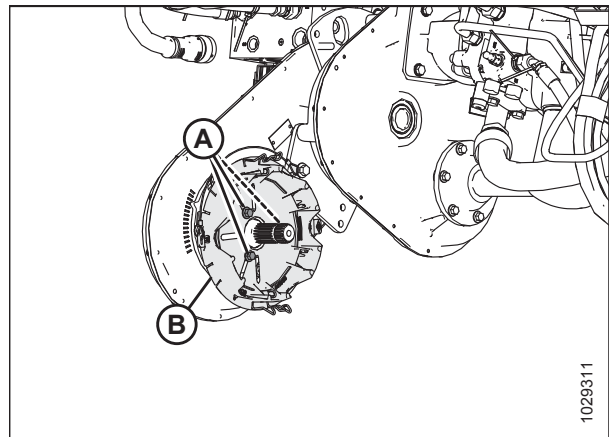


Figure 5.59: Completion Gearbox Chain Tensioner Cover

- Loosen six bolts (B), that secure chain tension hub (A) to the gearbox.
- Locate machined feature (C). Using a wrench, turn hub (A) clockwise to tighten the chain.
- With light pressure on the wrench, determine which mark (D) on the gearbox housing aligns with the indicator pointer on the hub.
- Set proper chain tension by slightly turning hub (A) back one mark.
- Tighten six bolts (B), that secure cover (A). Torque bolts to 23–26 Nm (17–19 lbf-ft).

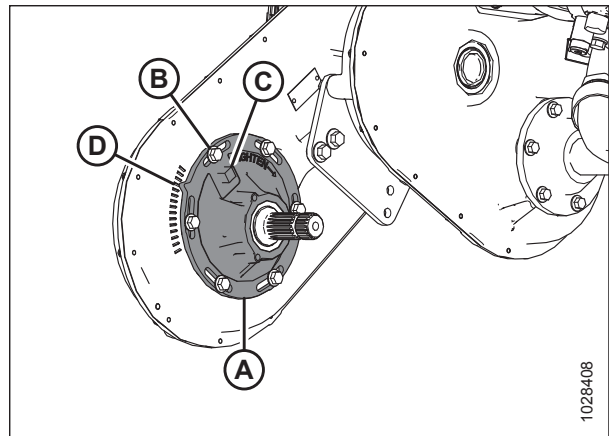


Figure 5.60: Completion Gearbox Chain Tensioner Cover



## 5.7 Auger

The FM200 Float Module auger feeds the cut crop from the draper decks into the combine feeder house.

### 5.7.1 Adjusting Feed Auger to Pan Clearance

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

#### IMPORTANT:

Maintain an appropriate distance between the feed auger and the feed auger pan. Too little clearance may result in the fingers or flighting contacting and damaging the feed draper or pan when operating the header at certain angles. Look for evidence of contact when greasing the float module.

1. Extend the center-link to the steepest header angle (setting E), and position the header 254–306 mm (10–14 in.) off the ground.
2. Lock the header wings. For instructions, refer to [Locking/Unlocking Header Wings, page 75](#).
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Check that the float lock linkage is on the down stops (washer [A] cannot be rotated) at both locations.

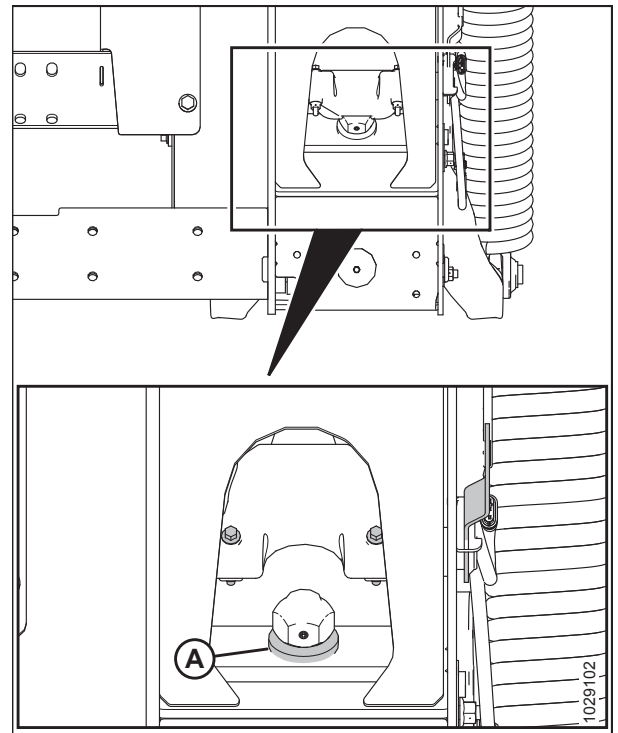


Figure 5.61: Down Stop Washer

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

5. Before adjusting the auger to pan clearance, check the auger float position to determine how much clearance is required:
  - If bolt head (A) is closest to floating symbol (B), the auger is in the floating position.

### IMPORTANT:

Make sure bolts (A) are set at the same location on both ends of the header to prevent damaging the machine during operation.

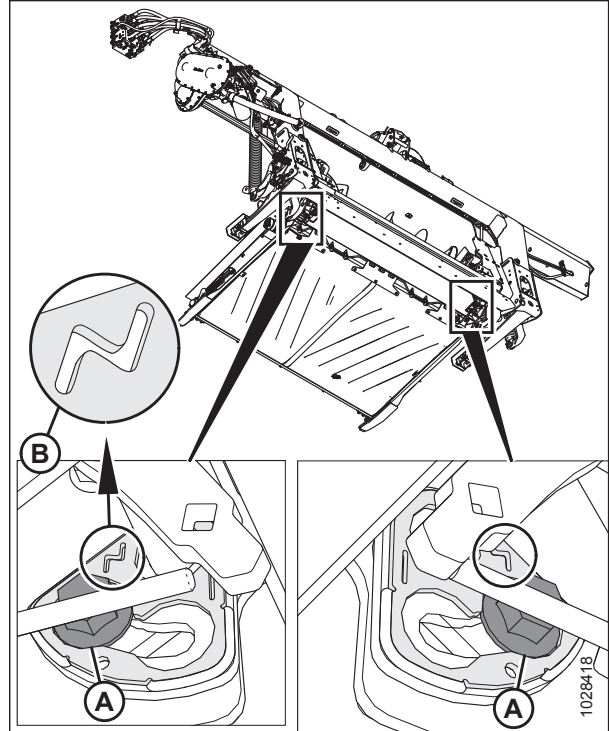


Figure 5.62: Floating Position

- If bolt head (A) is closest to fixed symbol (B), the auger is in the fixed position.

### IMPORTANT:

Make sure bolts (A) are set at the same location on both ends of the header to prevent damaging the machine during operation.

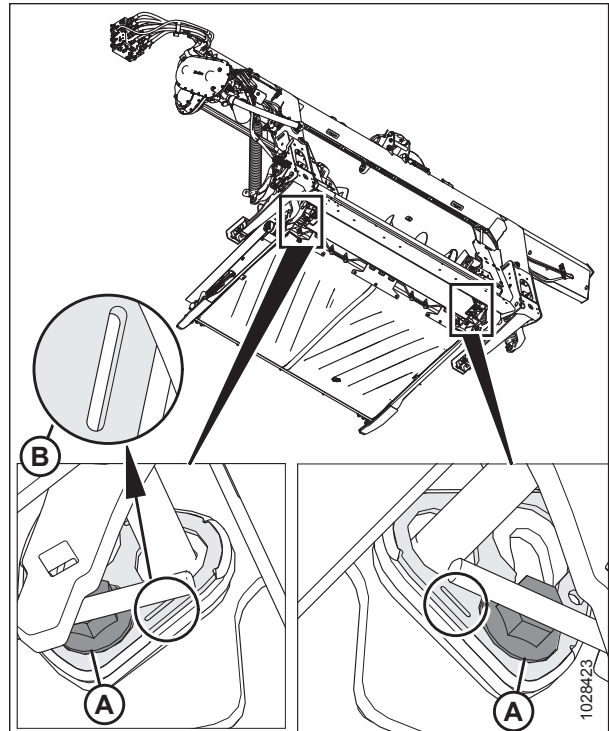


Figure 5.63: Fixed Position

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

6. Loosen two nuts (B) and rotate the auger to position the flighting over the feed pan.
7. Turn bolt (A) clockwise to increase clearance (C); turn bolt (A) counterclockwise to decrease clearance (C).
  - If the feed auger is in the fixed position, set clearance to 24–28 mm (15/16–1 1/8 in.).
  - If the feed auger is in the floating position, set clearance to 11.5–15.5 mm (7/16–5/8 in.).

**NOTE:**

The clearance increases between 25–40 mm (1–1 1/2 in.) when the center-link is fully retracted.

8. Repeat Steps 6, [page 459](#) and 7, [page 459](#) for the opposite end of the auger.

**IMPORTANT:**

Adjusting one side of the auger can affect the other side. Always double-check both sides of the auger after making final adjustments.

9. Tighten nuts (B) on both ends of the feed auger. Torque the nuts to 93–99 Nm (68–73 lbf·ft).
10. Rotate the drum and double-check clearances.

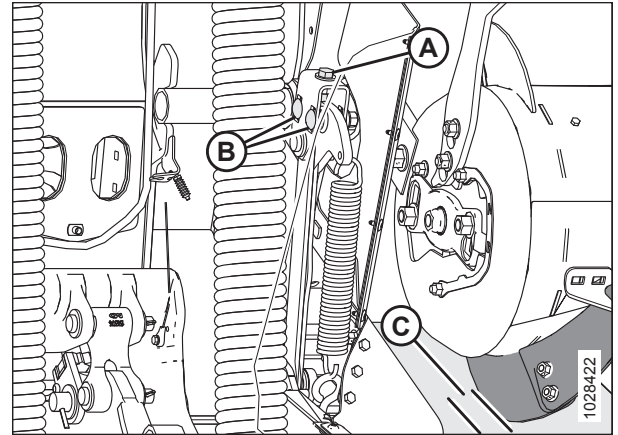


Figure 5.64: Auger Clearance

### 5.7.2 Checking Feed Auger Drive Chain Tension

The auger is chain-driven by the float module drive system sprocket attached to the side of the auger.

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Raise the reel fully.
4. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 31](#).
5. Detach the header from the combine. For instructions, refer to [4 Header Attachment/Detachment, page 321](#).
6. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

7. On the left side of the feed auger, remove four bolts (A) and inspection panel (B).
8. Remove bolts (C) and remove indicator/clamp (D) that holds the two covers together.
9. Remove bolt (E).
10. Remove bolt and washer (H) that secure that bottom cover.
11. Rotate bottom cover (F) forward to remove.

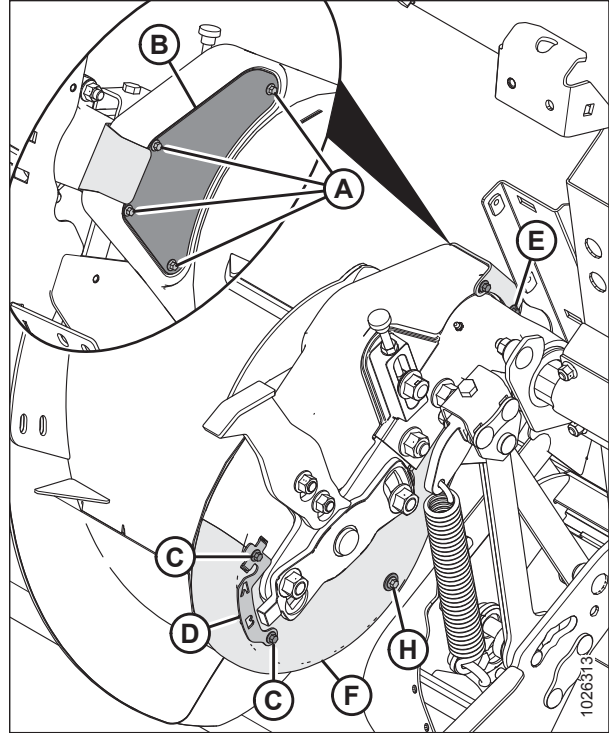


Figure 5.65: Feed Auger Drive – Rear View

12. Check chain at midspan (A). There should be 4 mm (0.16 in.) of deflection. If adjustment is required, refer to [5.7.3 Adjusting Feed Auger Drive Chain Tension, page 461](#).

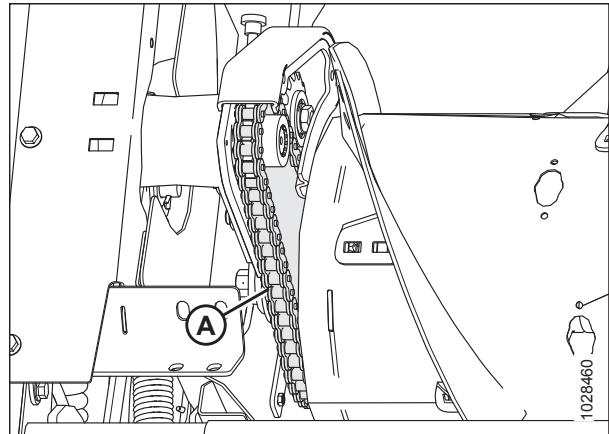


Figure 5.66: Feed Auger Chain – Rear View

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

13. Position bottom cover (F) and secure with bolt and washer (H).
14. Install bolt (E).
15. Secure bottom cover to the top cover with clamp/indicator (D) and bolts (C).
16. Install inspection panel (B) and secure with four bolts (A). Tighten bolts (A) and torque to 2.7–4.1 Nm (24–36 lbf-in).

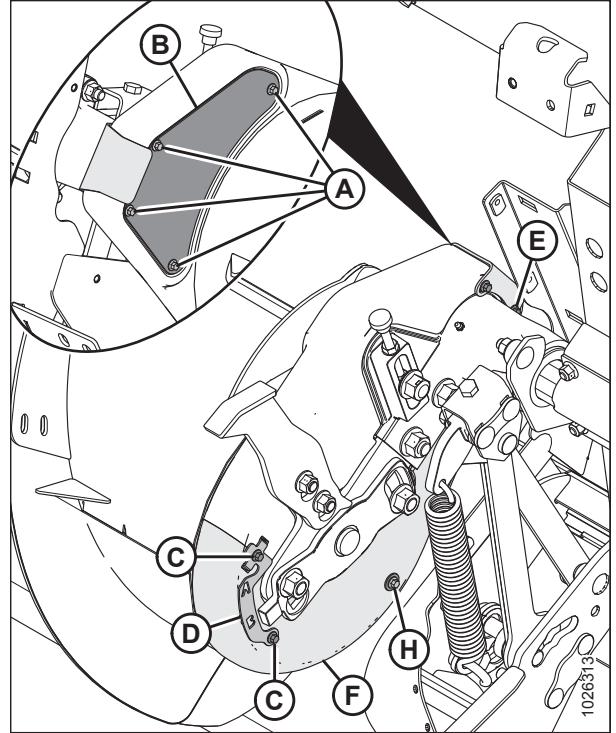


Figure 5.67: Feed Auger Drive – Rear View

### 5.7.3 Adjusting Feed Auger Drive Chain Tension

The auger is chain-driven by the float module drive system sprocket attached to the side of the auger. Insufficient chain tension can prematurely wear sprockets or damage the chain. To adjust chain tension, follow these steps:

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Raise the reel fully.
4. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to *Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 31*.
5. Detach the header from the combine. For instructions, refer to *4 Header Attachment/Detachment, page 321*.
6. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

7. Remove four bolts (A) and inspection panel (B) to view chain.

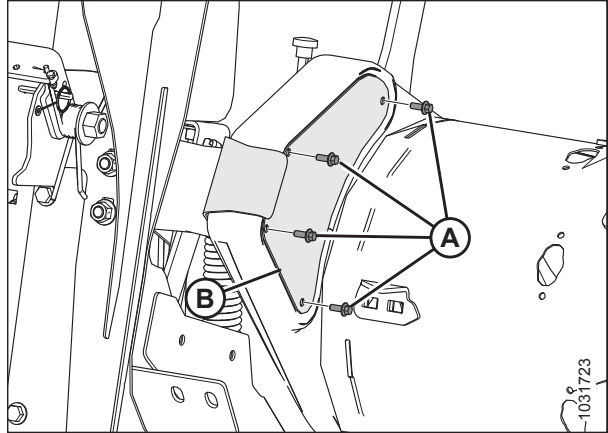


Figure 5.68: Left Side of Auger Drive – Rear View

8. Loosen jam nut (B).
9. Loosen idler nut (A) slightly to allow idler to move by turning adjuster (C).
10. Rotate auger in reverse to take up slack in upper strand of chain.

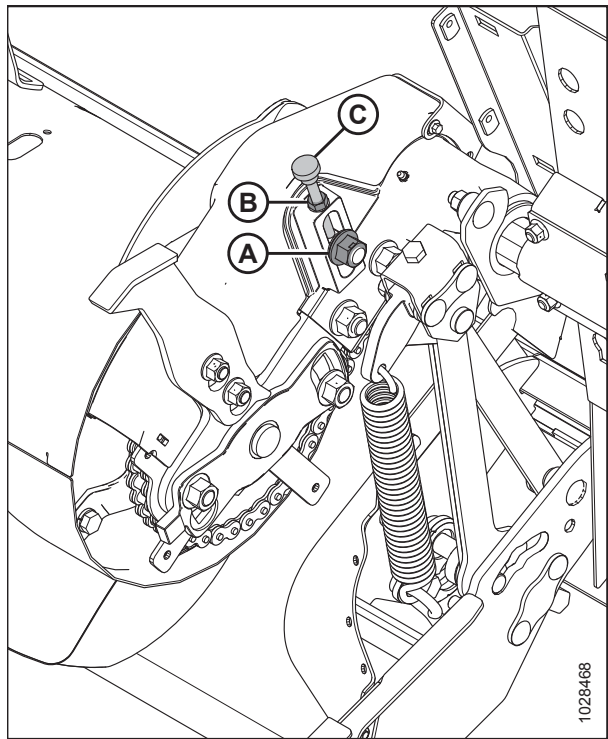


Figure 5.69: Left Side of Auger Drive – Front View

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

11. Turn adjuster thumbscrew (A) clockwise to increase tension until chain deflection (B) is 4 mm (0.16 in.) at midspan.

**IMPORTANT:**

Do **NOT** overtighten.

**NOTE:**

Covers removed from illustration.

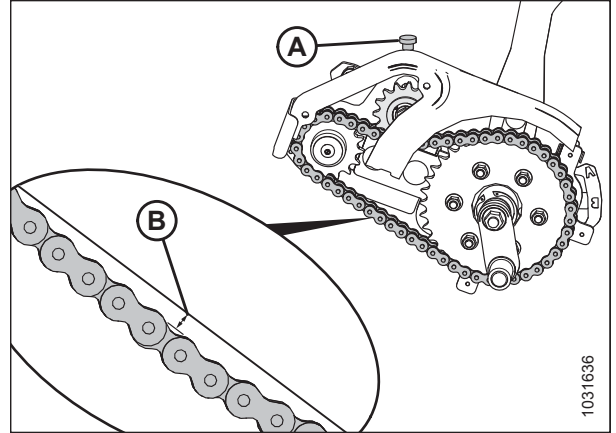


Figure 5.70: Feed Auger Chain Deflection

12. When adjustment is complete, tighten jam nut (A).
13. Tighten the idler nut (B) and torque to 258–271 Nm (190–200 lbf·ft).
14. Recheck midspan chain deflection after tightening idler and jam nut.

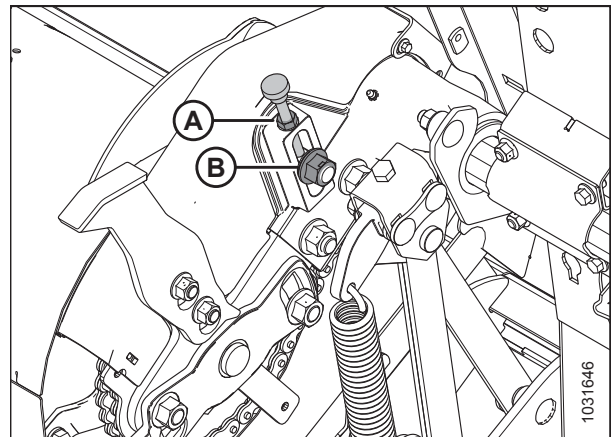


Figure 5.71: Feed Auger Chain – Front View

15. Install inspection panel (B) and secure with four bolts (A).
16. Torque bolts (A) to 2.7–4.1 Nm (24–36 lbf·in).

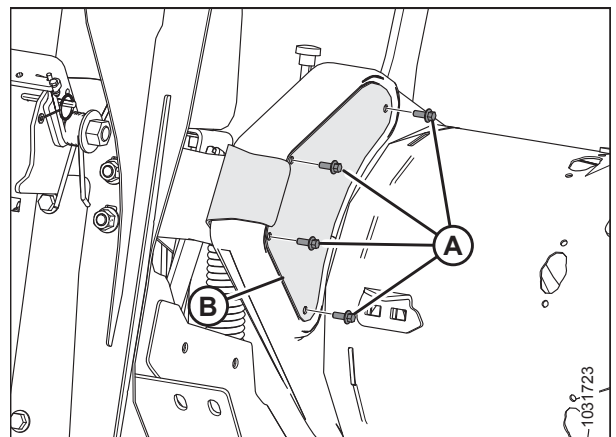


Figure 5.72: Left Side of Auger Drive – Rear View

## 5.7.4 Removing Auger Drive Chain

The chain tensioner can take up slack for only a single pitch. Replace the chain when the chain has worn or stretched beyond the limits of the tensioner.

### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

#### NOTE:

Replace chain with endless chain (MD #220317).

#### NOTE:

Illustrations show the left side of the auger.

1. Tilt the header fully back to maximize space between auger and feed pan.
2. Detach the header from the combine. For instructions, refer to [4 Header Attachment/Detachment, page 321](#).
3. Place wooden blocks (A) under the auger to prevent the auger from dropping onto the feed draper and damaging it.

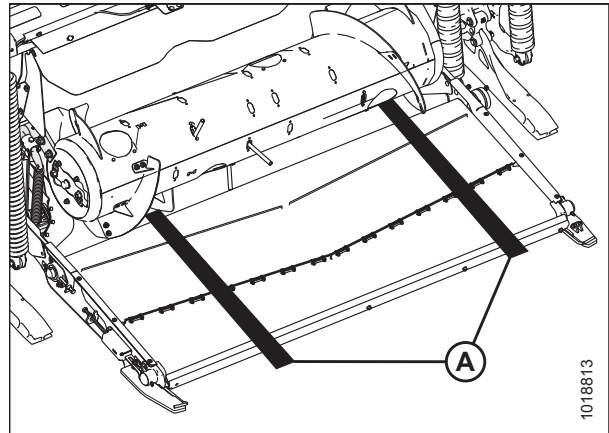


Figure 5.73: Blocks under the Auger

4. Loosen two bolts (A) and remove bumper (B). Repeat on opposite side.

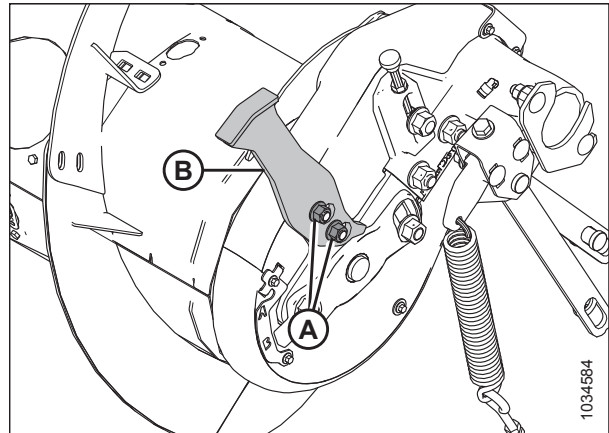


Figure 5.74: Auger Bumper – Left



## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

5. On the left side of the auger, remove bolts (E) and remove cover retainer (F).
6. Remove four bolts (A) and inspection panel (B).
7. Remove bolts (C) and remove indicator/clamp (D) that holds top cover (G) and bottom cover (H) together.
8. Remove bolt and washer (J) that secure bottom cover (H).
9. Rotate top cover (G) and bottom cover (H) forward to remove from auger.

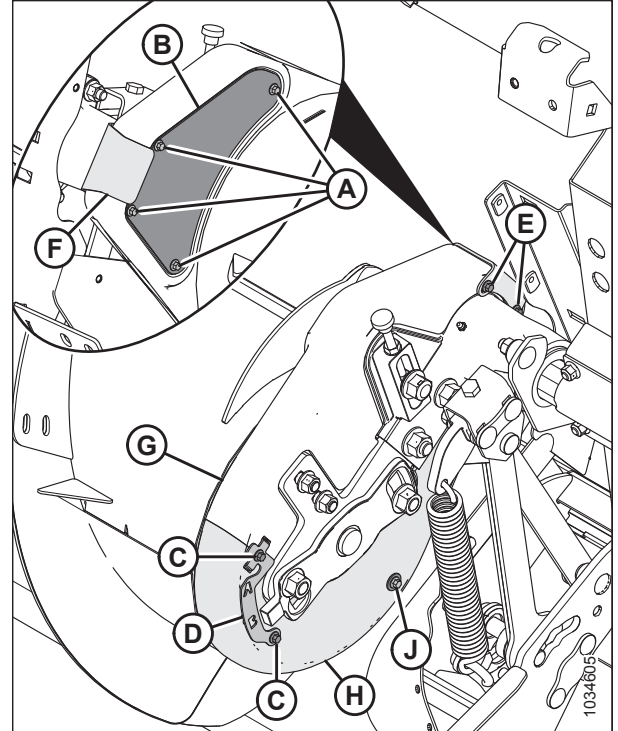


Figure 5.75: Auger Drive

10. Loosen jam nut (C) and turn thumbscrew (D) counterclockwise to release the bolt holding sprocket (B) and preventing it from being raised up to release chain tension.

**IMPORTANT:**

Do **NOT** loosen thin nut (E) on the inboard side of the idler sprocket spindle.

11. Loosen idler sprocket nut (A), and raise sprocket (B) to the uppermost position to release the tension on the chain. Tighten nut (A) to hold sprocket in place.
12. Remove screw (F) and washer (G).

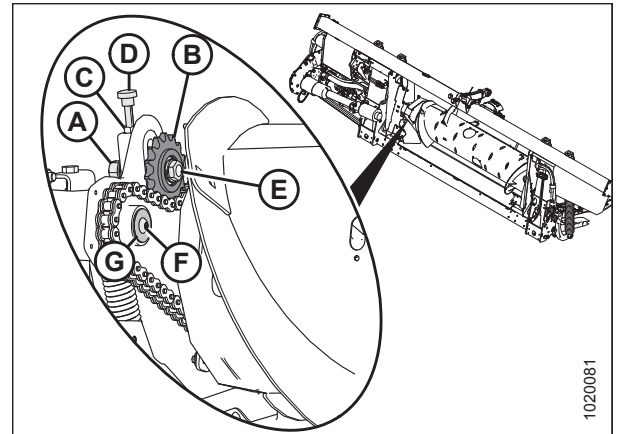


Figure 5.76: Auger Drive

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

13. Remove two bolts and nuts (A).

**NOTE:**

A second person may be needed to lift or support the auger to completely remove the bolts.

**NOTE:**

The bolts on the left of the auger are longer than the bolts on the right end of the auger.

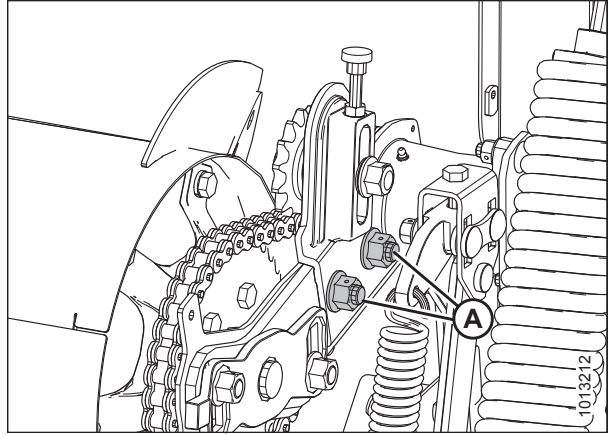


Figure 5.77: Auger Support Arm

14. Use a pry bar (A) to slide the auger to the right.

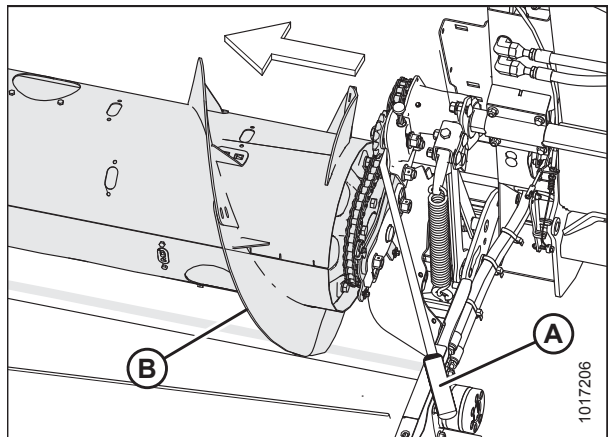


Figure 5.78: Auger

15. Remove drive sprocket (A) and chain (B) from spline shaft.

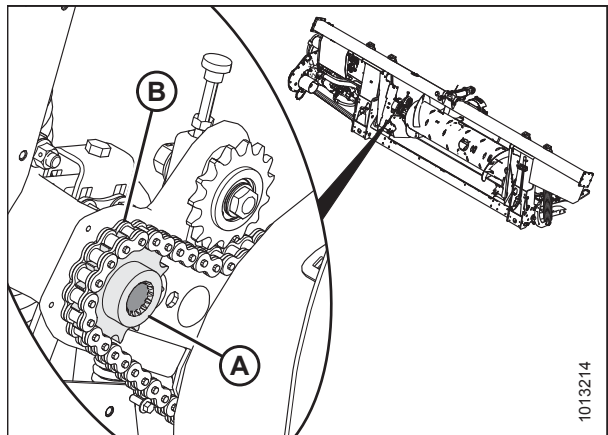


Figure 5.79: Auger Drive

16. Maneuver auger (A) sideways and forward so that endless chain (B) can be removed from the auger.

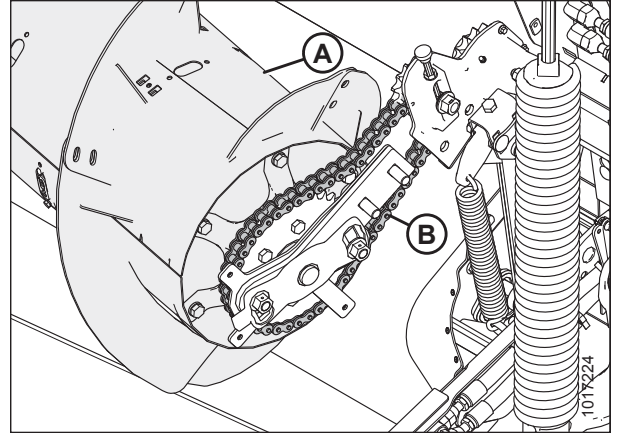


Figure 5.80: Auger Drive

### 5.7.5 Installing Auger Drive Chain

**NOTE:**

Illustrations show the left side of the auger.

1. Place drive chain (B) over the sprocket on the drive side of auger (A).

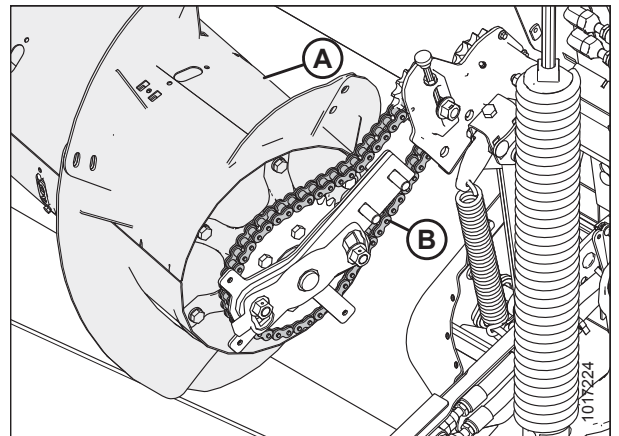


Figure 5.81: Auger Drive

2. Place drive sprocket (A) into chain (B) and align the sprocket onto the shaft.

**NOTE:**

Shoulder of drive sprocket (A) should face the auger.

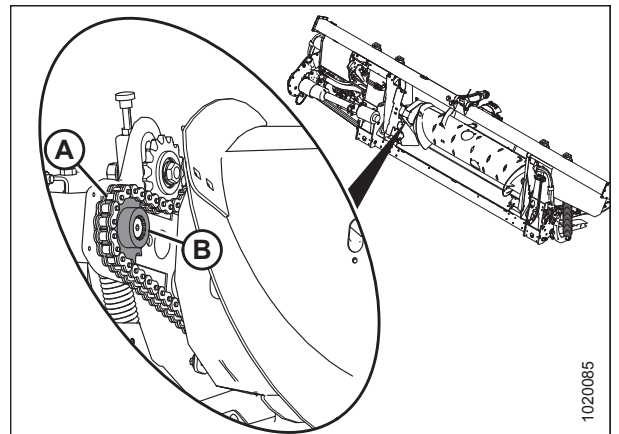


Figure 5.82: Auger Drive

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

3. Apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) to threads of screw (A).
4. Install washer (B) and secure it with screw (A).

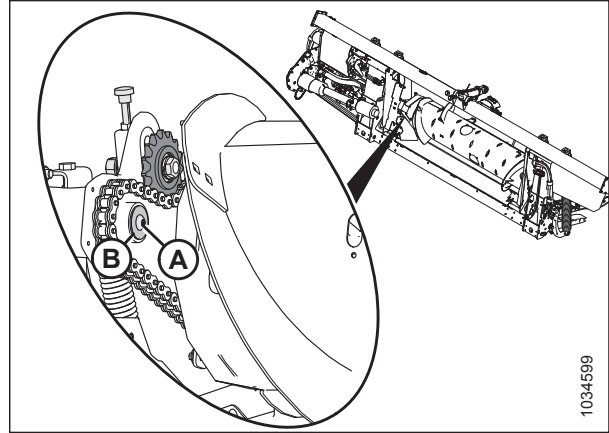


Figure 5.83: Auger Drive

5. Slide the auger drum assembly toward the casting, and then reinstall two bolts and nuts (A).
6. Remove the blocks from under the auger.

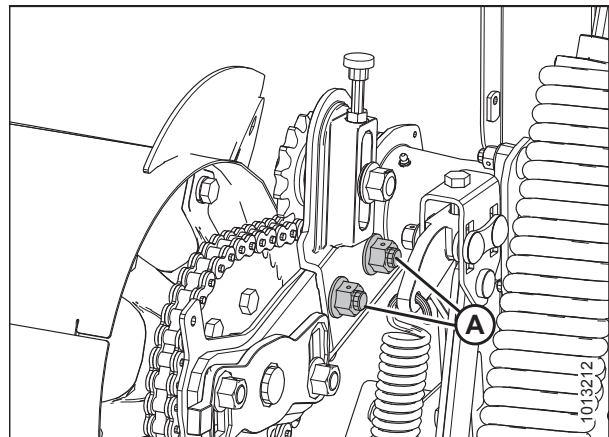


Figure 5.84: Auger Drive

7. Rotate the auger in reverse to take up the slack in the lower strand of the chain.

### IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** loosen thin nut (C) on the inboard side of the idler sprocket spindle.

8. Turn adjuster thumbscrew (D) clockwise to move idler sprocket (B) until it is **FINGER TIGHT ONLY**.

### IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** overtighten.

9. Tighten idler nut (A) and torque to 258–271 Nm (190–200 lbf-ft).

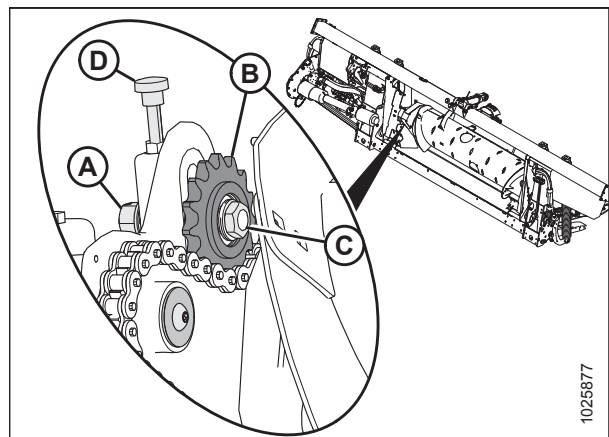


Figure 5.85: Auger Drive

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

10. Tighten jam nut (A).

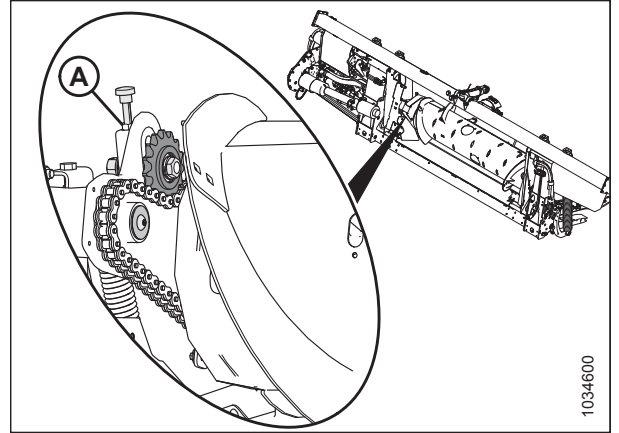


Figure 5.86: Auger Drive

11. Position bottom cover (H) and secure with bolt and washer (J).
12. Position top cover (G). Secure top and bottom covers with clamp/indicator (D) and bolts (C).
13. Install inspection panel (B) and secure with four bolts (A). Tighten bolts (A) and torque to 2.7–4.1 Nm (24–36 lbf-in).
14. Install cover retainer (F) and secure with two bolts (E).

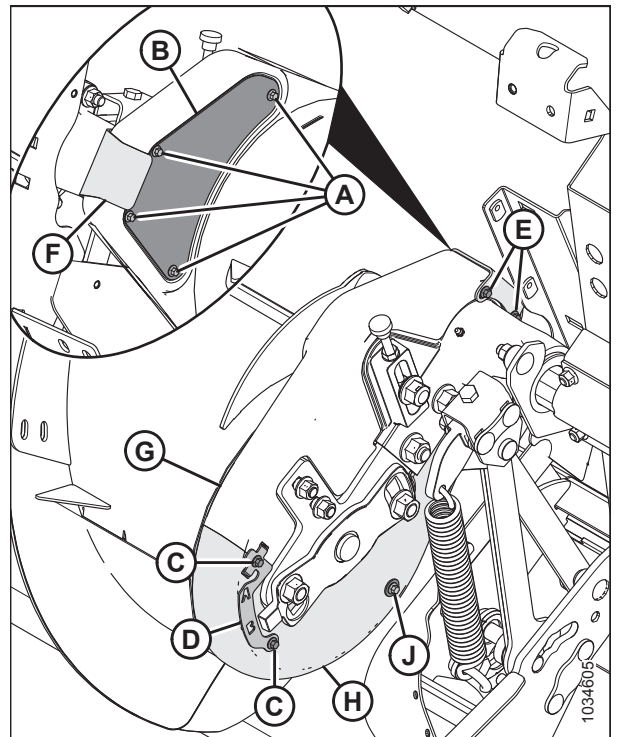


Figure 5.87: Auger

15. Remove wooden blocks (A) from the feed draper.

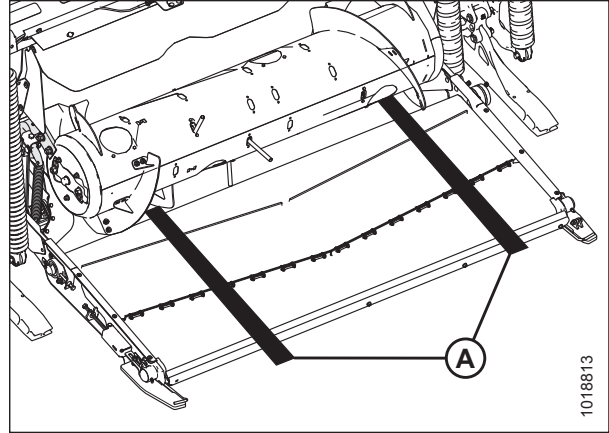


Figure 5.88: Blocks under the Auger

### 5.7.6 Using Auger Flighting

The auger flighting on the FM200 can be configured for specific combines and crop conditions. For instructions, refer to [4.1 FM200 Feed Auger Configurations, page 321](#) for combine/crop specific configurations.

### 5.7.7 Auger Fingers

The FM200 auger uses retracting tines to feed the crop into the combine feeder house. Some conditions may require the removal or installation of fingers for optimal crop feeding. Replace any worn or damaged fingers.

#### *Removing Feed Auger Fingers*

#### **DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

#### **IMPORTANT:**

When removing auger fingers, work from outside inward. Make sure there is an equal number of fingers on both sides of the auger when complete.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Raise the reel fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 31](#).

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

5. Remove bolts (A) and access cover (B) closest to the finger you are removing. Retain parts for reinstallation.

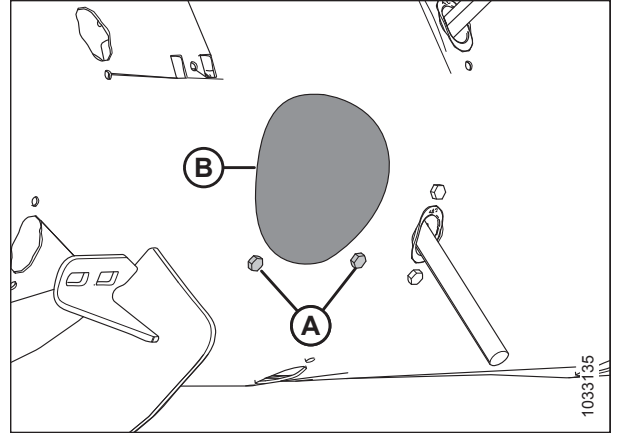


Figure 5.89: Auger Access Hole Cover

6. Remove hair pin (A). Pull finger (B) out of finger holder (C). Push finger (B) through guide (D) and into the drum. Pull the finger out of the drum access hole.  
If the finger broke, remove any remnants from holder (C) and from inside the drum.

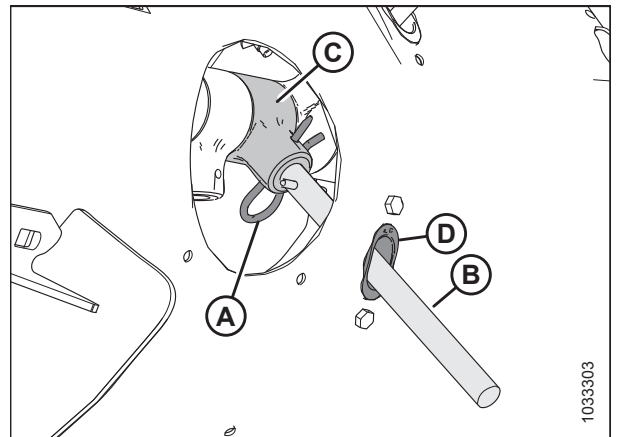


Figure 5.90: Auger Finger

7. Remove and retain two bolts (A) and tee nuts (not shown) securing finger guide (B) to the auger. Remove guide (B).

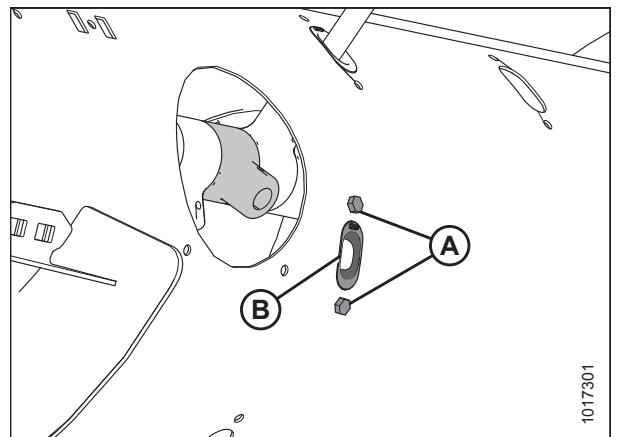


Figure 5.91: Auger Finger Hole

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

- Position plug (A) into the hole from inside the auger. Secure with two M6 hex head bolts (B) and tee nuts. Torque to 9 Nm (80 lbf·in).

**NOTE:**

Bolts (B) come with a threadlocker patch that will wear off if the bolts are removed. If reinstalling bolts (B), apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) before installation.

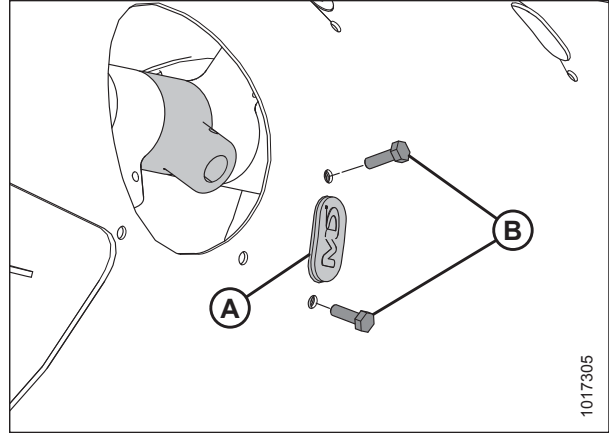


Figure 5.92: Plug

- Secure access cover (B) in place with bolts (A). Torque bolts to 9 Nm (80 lbf·in).

**NOTE:**

Bolts (A) come with a threadlocker patch that will wear off if the bolts are removed. If reinstalling bolts (A), apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) before installation.

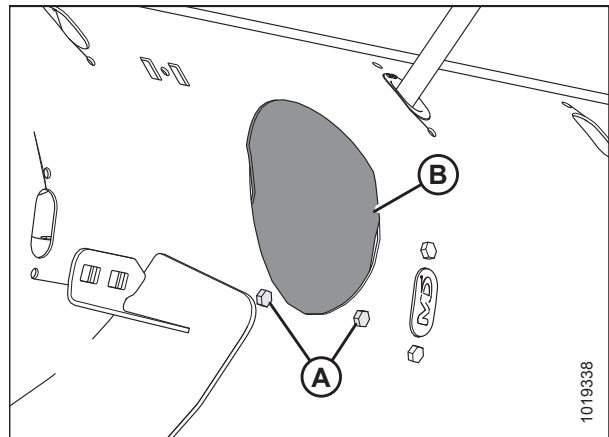


Figure 5.93: Auger Access Hole Cover

### Installing Feed Auger Fingers

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

**IMPORTANT:**

When installing additional fingers, ensure you install an equal number on each side of the auger.

- Raise the reel fully.
- Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
- Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to *Engaging Reel Safety Props*, page 31.



## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

4. Remove bolts (A) and access cover (B) closest to the finger you are removing. Retain parts for reinstallation.

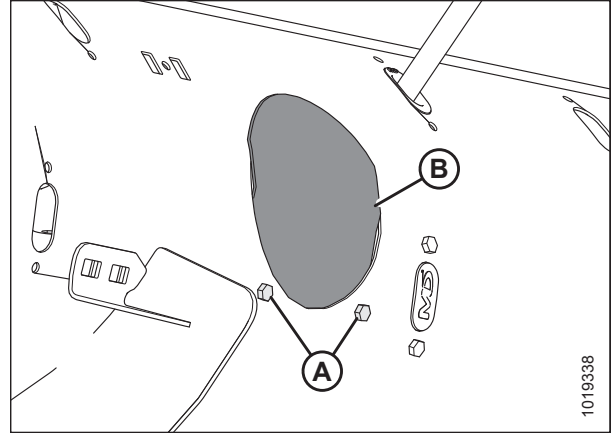


Figure 5.94: Auger Access Hole Cover

5. If you are replacing an existing auger finger, refer to Step 6, [page 473](#), otherwise proceed to Step 7, [page 473](#) for installation instructions for new auger fingers.
6. Remove hairpin (A). Pull finger (B) out of finger holder (C). Push finger (B) through guide (D) and into the drum. Pull the finger out of the drum access hole.

If the finger broke, remove any remnants from holder (C) and from inside the drum.

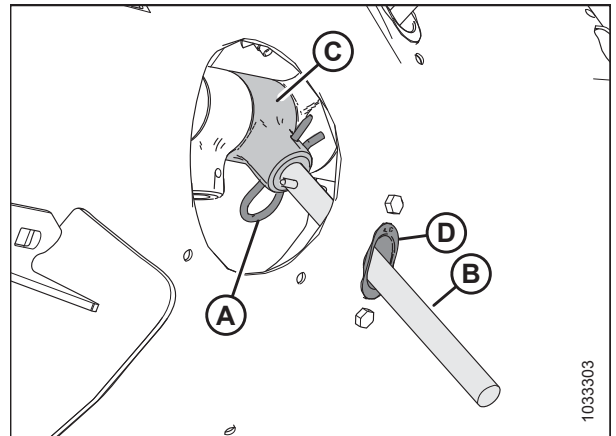


Figure 5.95: Auger Finger

7. Remove and retain two bolts (A) and tee-nuts (not shown) from guide (B). Remove guide (B).
8. Install guide (B) as follows:

**NOTE:**

Bolts (A) come with a threadlocker patch that will wear off if the bolts are removed. If reinstalling bolts (A), apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) before installation.

Insert guide (B) from inside the auger and secure it with bolts (A) and tee nuts (not shown).

**IMPORTANT:**

Always install a new guide when replacing a solid finger.

9. Torque bolts (A) to 9 Nm (80 lbf-in).
10. Proceed to Step 14, [page 474](#).

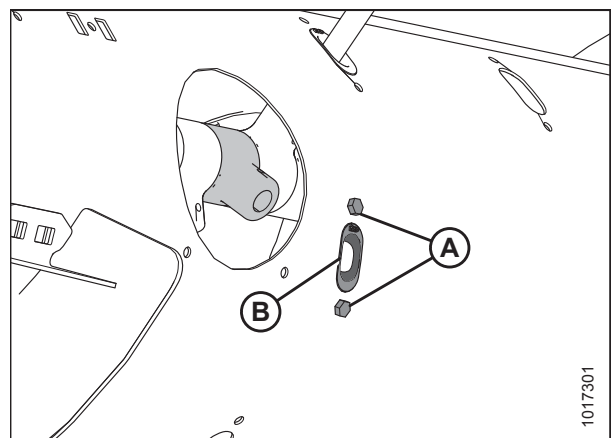


Figure 5.96: Auger Finger Hole

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

11. Remove two bolts (B), tee nuts (not shown), and plug (A).

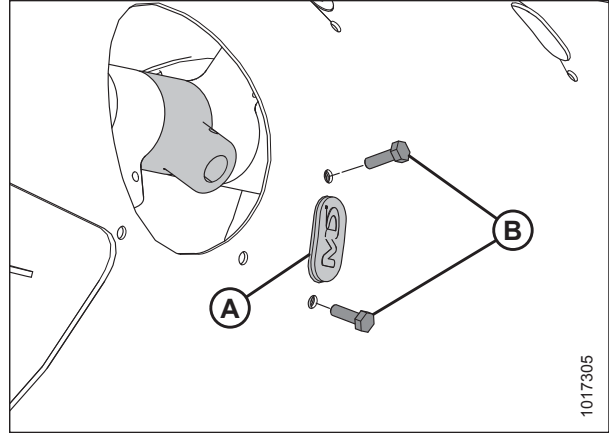


Figure 5.97: Auger Finger Hole

12. Install guide (B) as follows:

**NOTE:**

Bolts (A) come with a threadlocker patch that will wear off if the bolts are removed. If reinstalling bolts (A), apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) before installation.

Insert guide (B) from inside the auger and secure it with bolts (A) and tee nuts (not shown).

**IMPORTANT:**

Always install a new guide when replacing a solid finger.

13. Torque bolts (A) to 9 Nm (80 lbf-in).

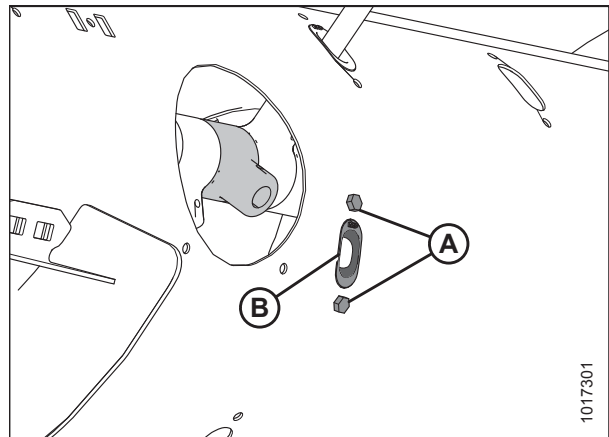


Figure 5.98: Auger Finger Hole

14. Place auger finger (A) inside the drum. Insert auger finger (A) up through the bottom of guide (B) and insert other end into holder (C).
15. Secure the finger by inserting hairpin (D) into the holder. Make sure the round end (S-shaped side) of the hairpin faces the chain drive side of the auger. Make sure the closed end of the hairpin points in the direction of auger-forward rotation.

**IMPORTANT:**

Position the hairpin correctly as described in this step to prevent the hairpin from falling out during operation. If fingers are lost, the header might not be able to feed crop into the combine properly. Fingers that fall into the drum might damage internal components.

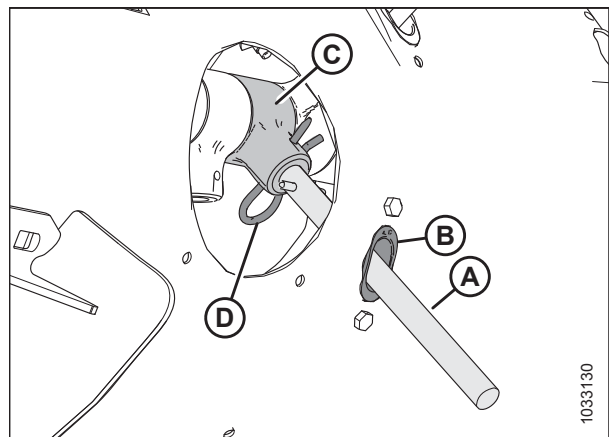


Figure 5.99: Auger Finger

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

- Secure access cover (B) in place with bolts (A). Torque bolts to 9 Nm (80 lbf-in).

**NOTE:**

Bolts (A) come with a threadlocker patch that will wear off if the bolts are removed. If reinstalling bolts (A), apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) before installation.

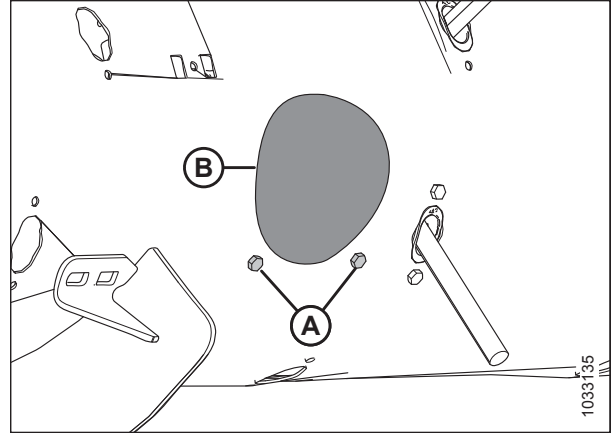


Figure 5.100: Auger Access Hole Cover

### Checking Auger Finger Timing

This procedure is for checking the setting that determines where the fingers are fully extended from the auger.

**NOTE:**

Left side of auger shown.



### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

- Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
- Raise the reel fully.
- Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 31](#).
- Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
- Check that indicator (C) is set to the same position at each end of the auger.

**NOTE:**

There are two different auger tine extension positions: **A** and **B**. Position **A** is used for canola and position **B** is used for grains. The factory setting for the indicator is position **B**.

**IMPORTANT:**

To avoid damaging the auger beyond repair, it is extremely important that both sides are at the same setting.

- To adjust the indicator position, refer to [Adjusting Auger Finger Timing, page 476](#).
- Disengage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Disengaging Reel Safety Props, page 32](#).

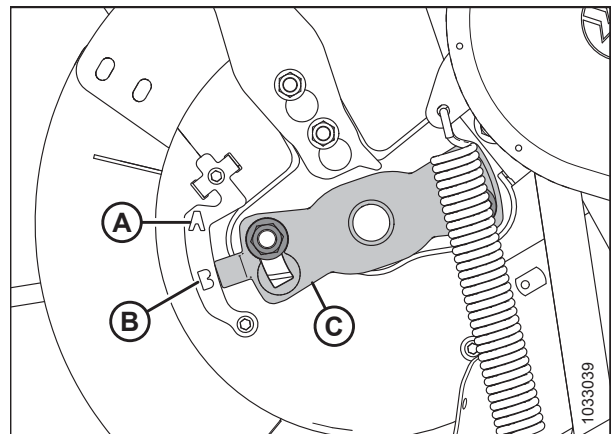


Figure 5.101: Auger Tine Timing – Left Side of Auger Shown

### Adjusting Auger Finger Timing

To adjust auger finger timing, follow these steps:

**NOTE:**

Left side of auger shown.

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Raise the reel fully.
3. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to *Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 31*.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Locate finger timing indicator (C) at the end of the auger. There are two auger tine extension positions: Position A and position B.
6. Loosen nuts (D) and adjust finger timing indicator (C) to the desired position.

**IMPORTANT:**

The timing indicator on both ends of the auger must be set at the same position; if not, the auger will be damaged beyond repair.

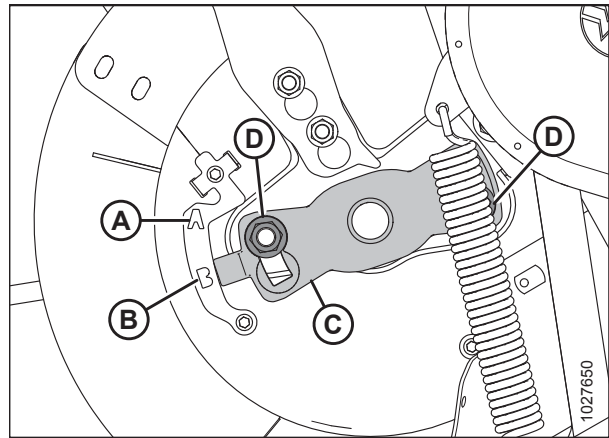


Figure 5.102: Auger Tine Timing Indicator

**NOTE:**

If the finger timing indicator is pointing at position A, it indicates that at that point the auger fingers will be fully extended. This allows the crop to be engaged and released earlier before entering the feeder house. This setting is best used for canola or bushy crops.

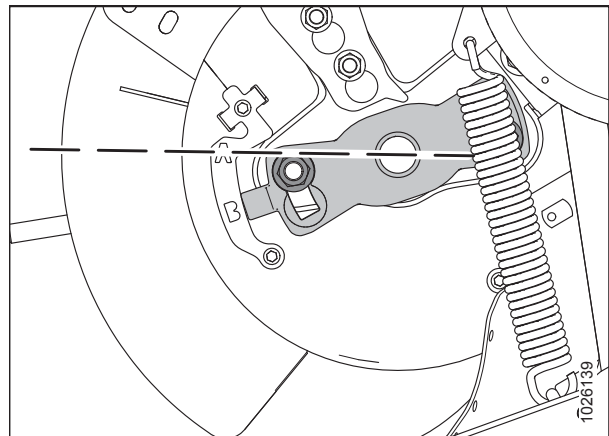


Figure 5.103: Auger Position A

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

### NOTE:

If the indicator is pointing at position **B**, it indicates that at that point the auger fingers will be fully extended. This allows the crop to be engaged and released later before entering the feeder house. This setting is best used for grains or beans.

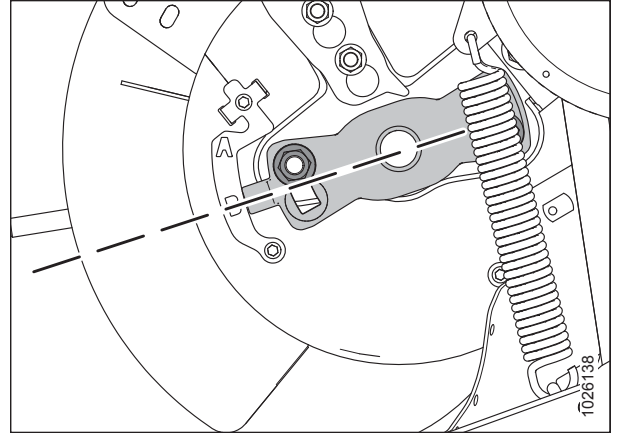


Figure 5.104: Auger Position B

9. Tighten nuts (A) once adjustment is complete. Torque nuts to 92–138 Nm (68–102 lbf·ft).
10. Disengage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Disengaging Reel Safety Props, page 32](#).

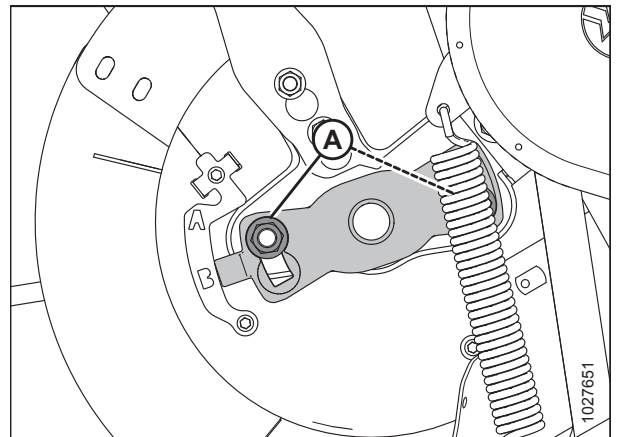


Figure 5.105: Auger Tine Timing Indicator

## 5.8 Knife

### WARNING

Keep hands clear of the area between guards and knife at all times.

### CAUTION

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

### CAUTION

To avoid personal injury, before servicing machine or opening drive covers, refer to [5.1 Preparing Machine for Servicing, page 417](#).

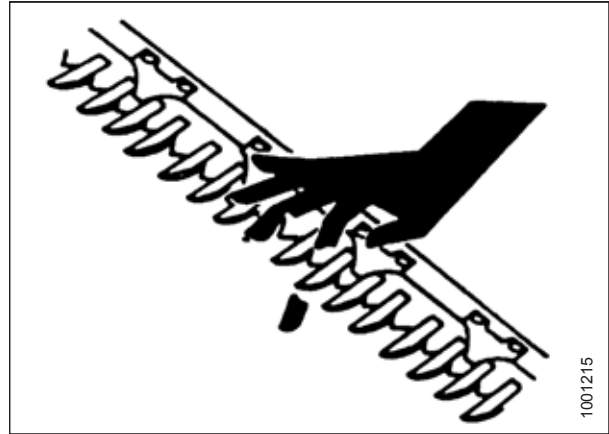


Figure 5.106: Cutterbar Hazard

### 5.8.1 Replacing Knife Section

Inspect the knife sections daily and ensure they are firmly bolted to the knife back and are not worn or damaged (worn and damaged sections leave behind uncut plants). Worn or damaged sections can be replaced without removing the knife from the cutterbar.

### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before making adjustments to the machine.

### WARNING

Exercise caution when working around the cutterbar. Knife sections are sharp and can cause serious injury. Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knife sections or the knife.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

#### IMPORTANT:

Cut quality may be affected, if fine and coarsely serrated knife sections are used on the same knife.

2. If a hold-down is present, remove nuts (A) and hold-down (B) to access the knife section.

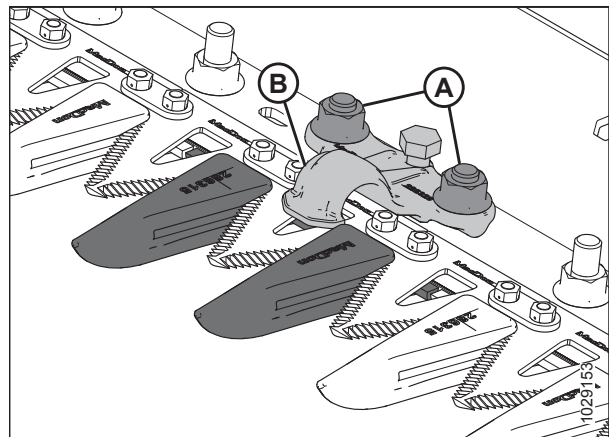


Figure 5.107: Cutterbar

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

3. Remove bolts and nuts (B). Retain hardware.

**NOTE:**

Stroke the knife as required to access the hardware.

4. For sections near the drive end, remove bars (C) and lift knife section (A) off the knife back bar.
5. Clean dirt off the knife back bar, and position the new knife section onto the knife back bar.
6. For sections near the drive end, reposition bars (C).
7. Install bolts and nuts (B).

**NOTE:**

Ensure bolt heads fully engage into oblong holes on the knife back bar.

8. Torque nuts to 12 Nm (9 lbf-ft).

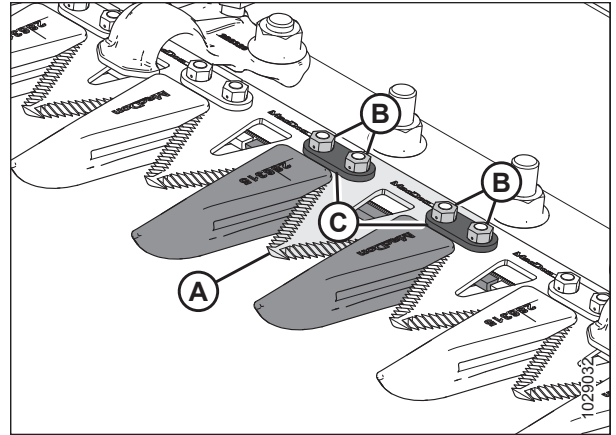


Figure 5.108: Cutterbar

### 5.8.2 Removing Knife

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before making adjustments to the machine.

**⚠ WARNING**

Stand to the rear of the knife during removal to reduce the risk of injury from cutting edges. Wear heavy gloves when handling the knife.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Manually move the knife to the middle of its stroke range.
3. Clean the area around the knifehead.
4. Remove grease fitting (A) from the pin.

**NOTE:**

Removing the grease fitting will make it easier to reinstall the knifehead pin later.

5. Remove bolt and nut (B).
6. Use a screwdriver or chisel in slot (C) to release the load on the knifehead pin.
7. Use a screwdriver or chisel to pry the pin upwards in the pin groove until the pin is clear of the knifehead.

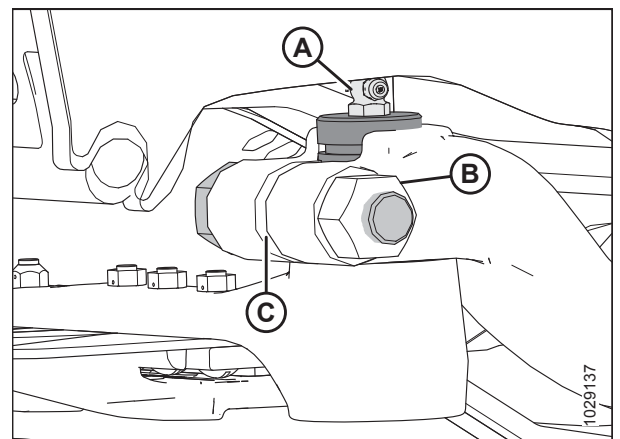


Figure 5.109: Knifehead

- Push knife assembly (A) inboard until it is clear of drive arm (B).

**NOTE:**

Sections of the frame hidden in illustration to reveal the knifehead components.

- Unless it is being replaced, seal knifehead bearing (C) with plastic or tape to keep out dirt and debris.
- Pull knife drive arm (B) to the outside position to give clearance for the knife.

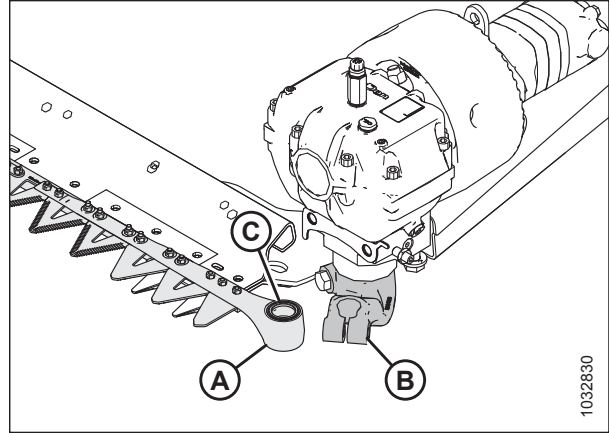


Figure 5.110: Left Knifehead

### 5.8.3 Removing Knifehead Bearing

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

**⚠ WARNING**

Stand to the rear of the knife during removal to reduce the risk of injury from cutting edges. Wear heavy gloves when handling the knife.

- Raise the reel fully.
- Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
- Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to *Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 31*.
- Remove the knife. For instructions, refer to *5.8.2 Removing Knife, page 479*.

**NOTE:**

Because the bearing is being replaced, it is not necessary to wrap the knifehead to protect the bearing.

- Use a flat-ended tool with the same diameter as pin (A). Tap seal (B), bearing (C), plug (D), and O-ring (E) from the underside of the knifehead.

**NOTE:**

Seal (B) can be replaced without removing the bearing. When changing the seal, check the pin and needle bearing for wear and replace if necessary.

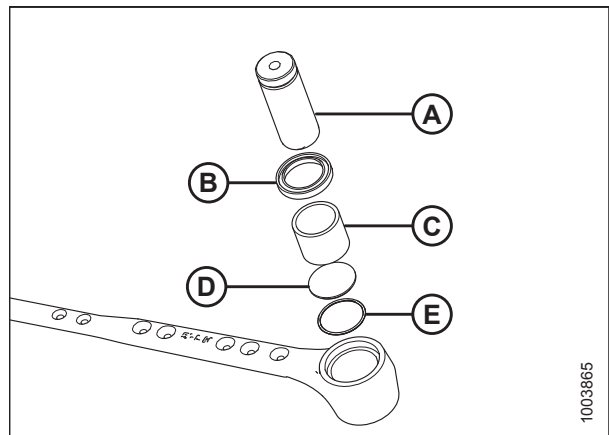


Figure 5.111: Knifehead Bearing Assembly



### 5.8.4 Installing Knifehead Bearing

1. Place O-ring (E) and plug (D) into the knifehead.

**IMPORTANT:**

Install the bearing with the stamped end (the end with the identification markings) facing up.

2. Use a flat-ended tool (A) with the same approximate diameter as bearing (C), and push the bearing into the knifehead until the top of the bearing is flush with the step in the knifehead.
3. Install seal (B) into the knifehead with the lip facing outwards.

**IMPORTANT:**

To prevent premature knifehead or knife drive box failure, ensure there is a tight fit between the knifehead pin and the needle bearing, and between the knifehead pin and the output arm.

4. Install the knife. For instructions, refer to [5.8.5 Installing Knife, page 481](#).

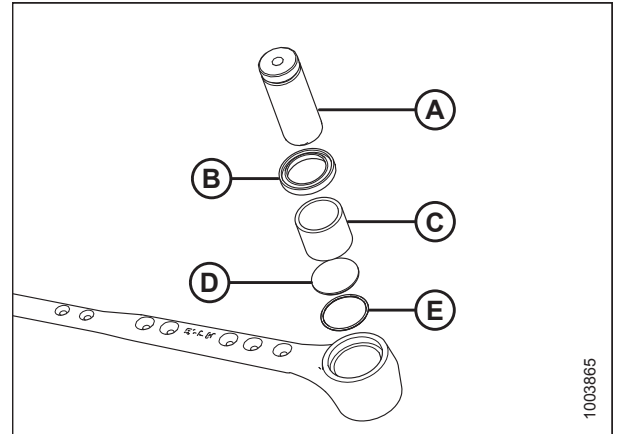


Figure 5.112: Knifehead Bearing Assembly

### 5.8.5 Installing Knife

**! DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before making adjustments to the machine.

**! WARNING**

Stand to the rear of the knife during removal to reduce the risk of injury from cutting edges. Wear heavy gloves when handling the knife.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Slide the knife into place and align the knifehead with drive arm (A).
3. Ensure bearing cavity (B) is filled with grease prior to installing the knifehead pin to prevent air from getting trapped in the cavity.

**NOTE:**

For easier installation of knifehead pin (C), remove the grease fitting from the pin first.

4. Install knifehead pin (C) through the drive arm and into the knifehead.
5. Position the pin so that groove (D) is 2 mm (5/64 in.) above the drive arm.

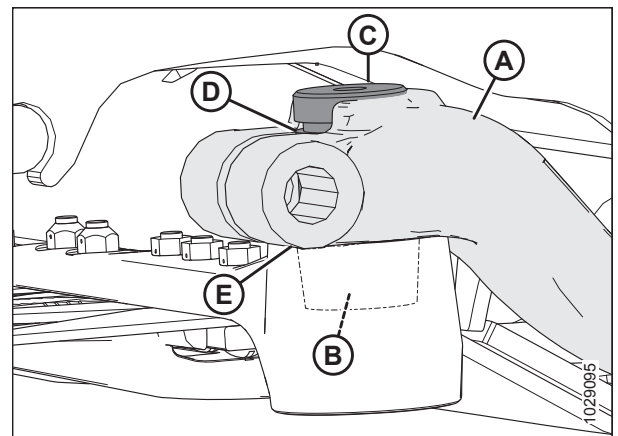


Figure 5.113: Knifehead

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

- Secure pin with M16 x 85 mm hex bolt (A) and hex nut (B). Install the bolt from the inboard side of the arm, and the washer between the nut and the arm. Torque bolt to 220 Nm (162 lbf·ft).

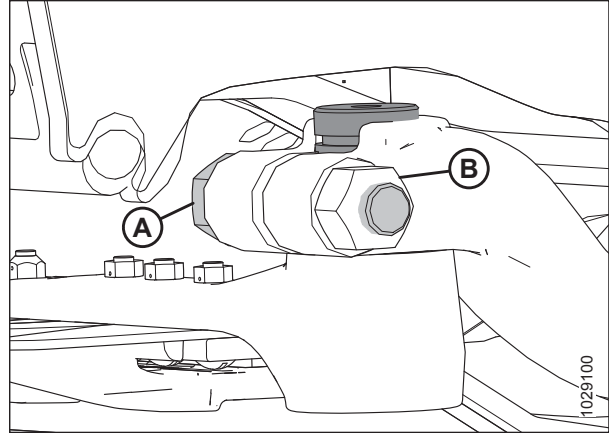


Figure 5.114: Knifehead

- Manually stroke the knife to the inside limit of travel, and ensure there is 0.2–1.2 mm (1/64–3/64 in.) clearance (C) between drive arm (A) and knifehead (B).
- If no adjustment is required, proceed to Step 13, page 483.
- If adjustment is required, position drive arm (A) to the farthest outboard position.

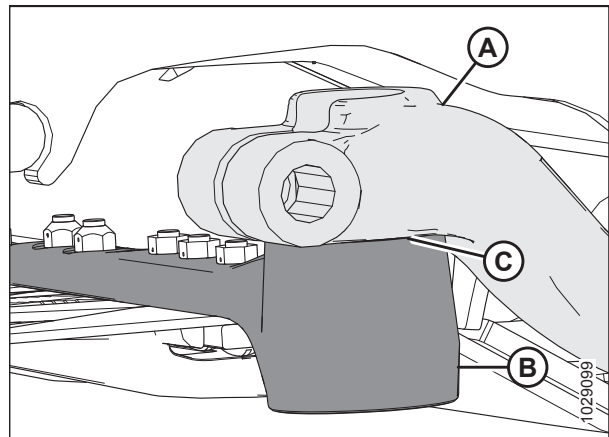


Figure 5.115: Knifehead

- Loosen nut (A).
- Move drive arm (B) on the splined shaft to achieve 0.2–1.2 mm (1/64–3/64 in.) of separation.
- Torque nut (A) to 220 Nm (162 lbf·ft).

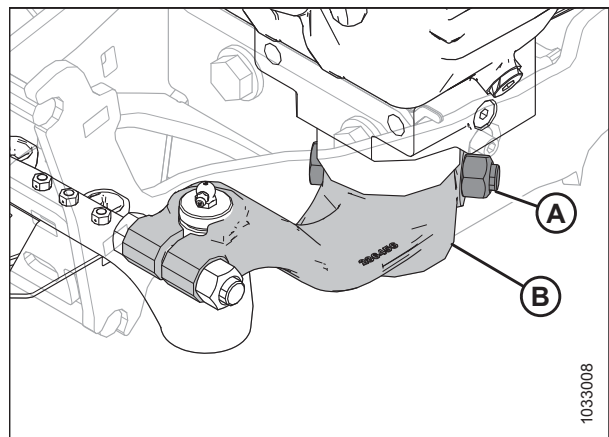


Figure 5.116: Knifehead

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

13. Reinstall grease fitting (A) (if previously removed), and slowly apply grease to the knifehead until **SLIGHT** downward movement of the knifehead is observed.

### NOTE:

If air is trapped in the bearing cavity, the knifehead will begin to move down before it has filled with grease.

### IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** overgrease the knifehead. Overgreasing leads to knife misalignment causing excessive heating of guards and overloading of drive systems. If overgreasing occurs, remove the grease fitting to release pressure.

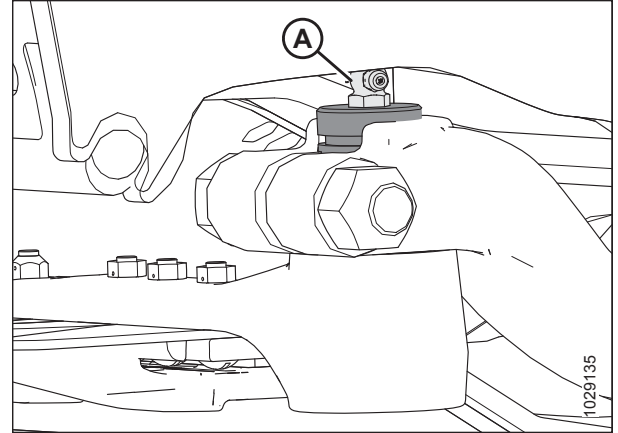


Figure 5.117: Knifehead

### 5.8.6 Spare Knives

Two spare knives (A) can be stored in the header backtube at the right end. Ensure the spare knives are secured in place with latch (B) and hairpin (C).

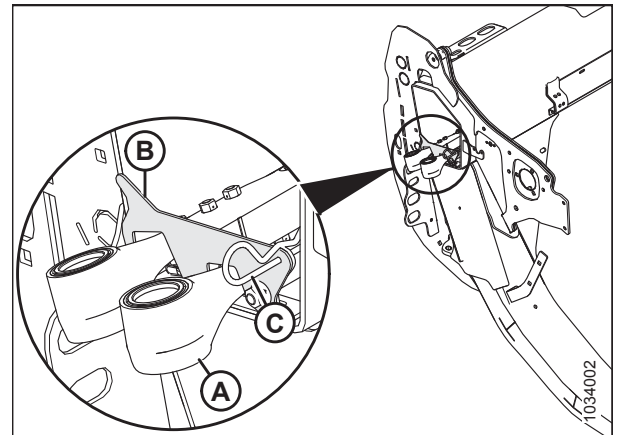


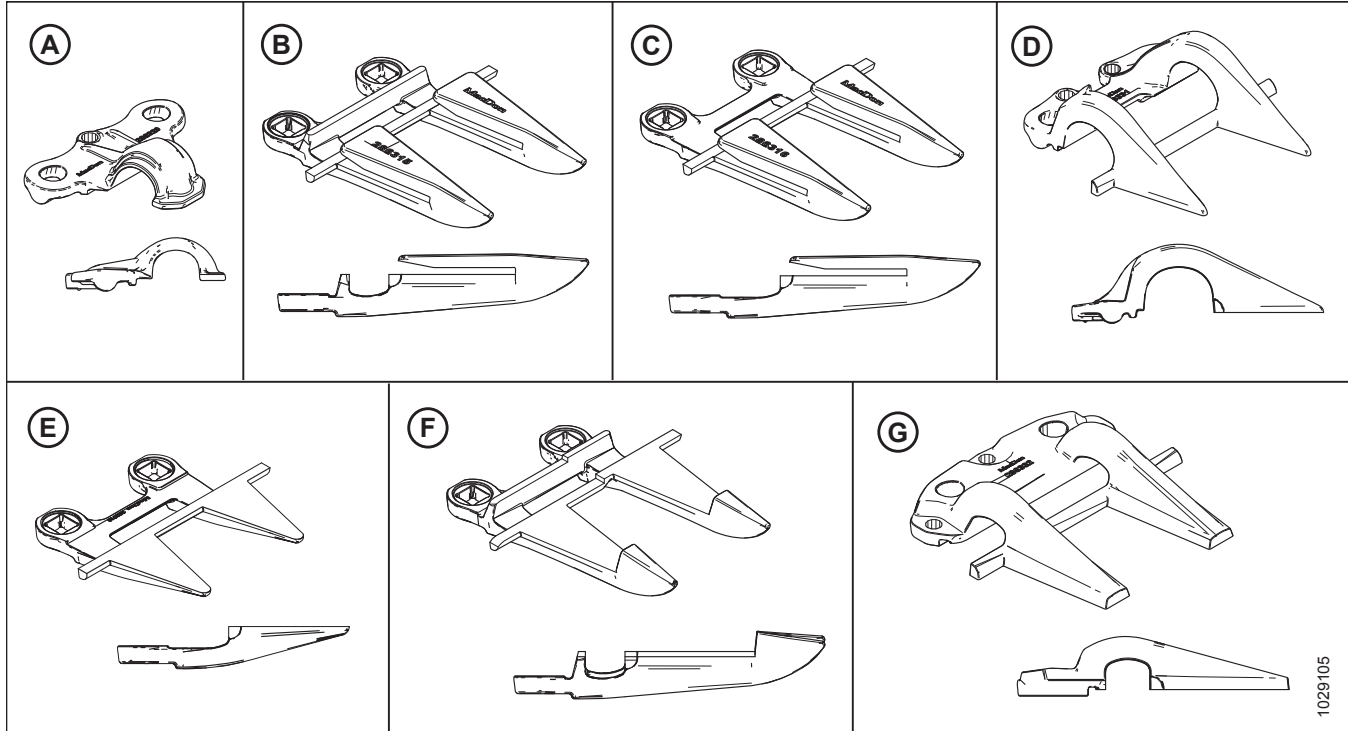
Figure 5.118: Spare Knives

### 5.8.7 Pointed Knife Guards and Hold-Downs

The following knife guards and hold-downs are used in pointed guard configurations:

**NOTE:**

Pointed knife guard configurations require two short knife guards; one at each end of the cutterbar.



**Figure 5.119: Guard and Hold-Down Types used in Pointed Knife Guard Configurations**

A - Pointed Hold-Down (MD #286329)

B - Pointed Knife Guard (MD #286315)

C - Pointed End Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286316)<sup>59</sup>

D - Short Knife Hold-Down (MD #286331)

E - Short Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286319)<sup>60</sup>

F - Pointed Center Knife Guard (MD #286317)<sup>61</sup>

G - Pointed Center Hold-Down (MD #286332)<sup>61</sup>

Guards are configured differently on different headers. When replacing pointed guards and hold-downs, ensure you use the correct sequence for your header. The following will guide you to the different configurations:

- *Pointed Knife Guards on Single-Knife Headers, page 485*
- *Pointed Knife Guards on FD240 Double-Knife Header, page 487*
- *Pointed Knife Guards on FD241 Double-Knife Header, page 488*
- *Pointed Knife Guards on FD250 Double-Knife Header, page 490*

59. Installed in positions 2, 3, and 4 on drive side(s). Refer to *Replacing Pointed Knife Guards, page 493* for reference.

60. Installed in position 1 on drive side(s). Single-knife headers use standard guard (MD #286318) on the right end.

61. Double-knife headers only.

Pointed Knife Guards on Single-Knife Headers

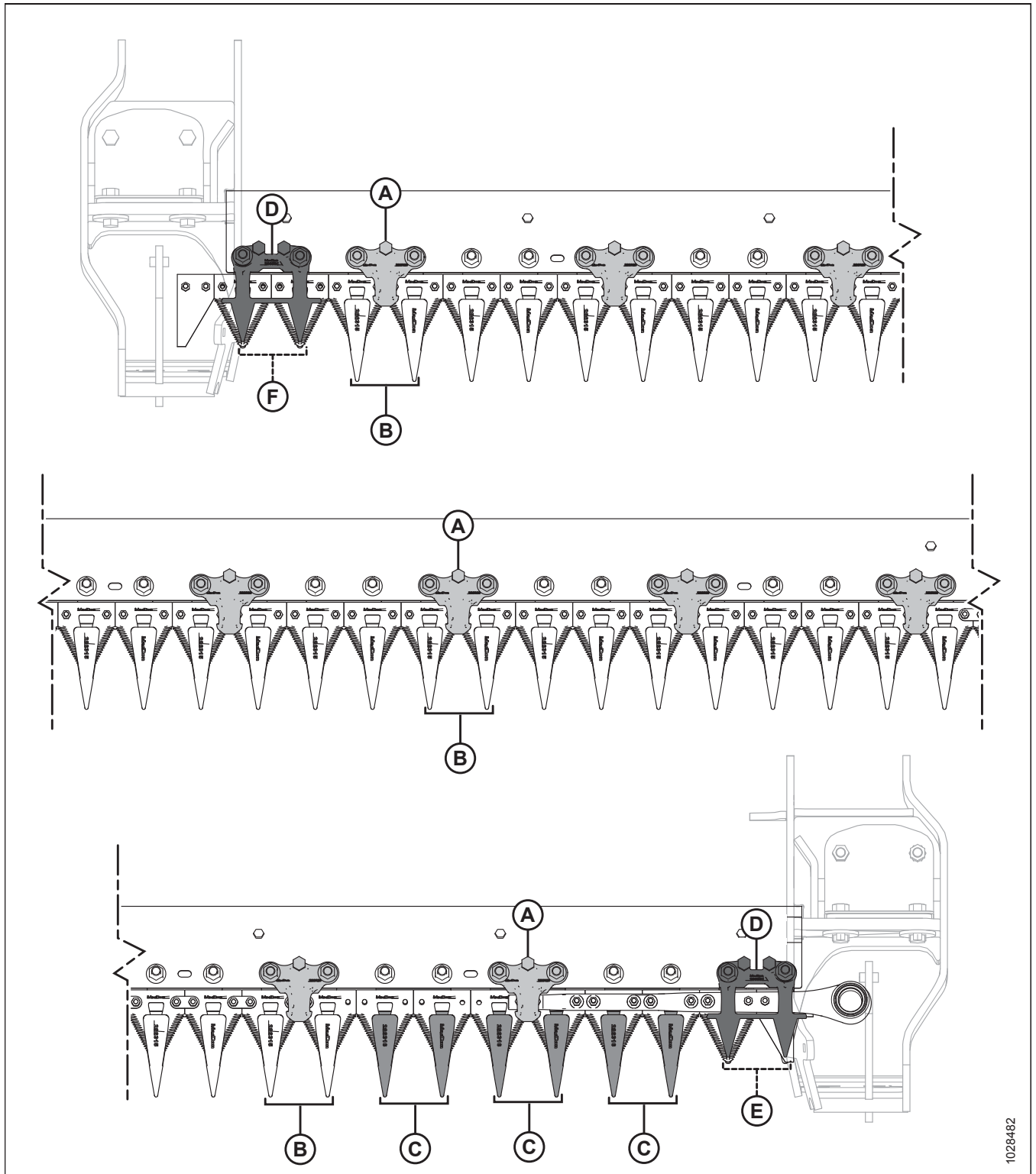
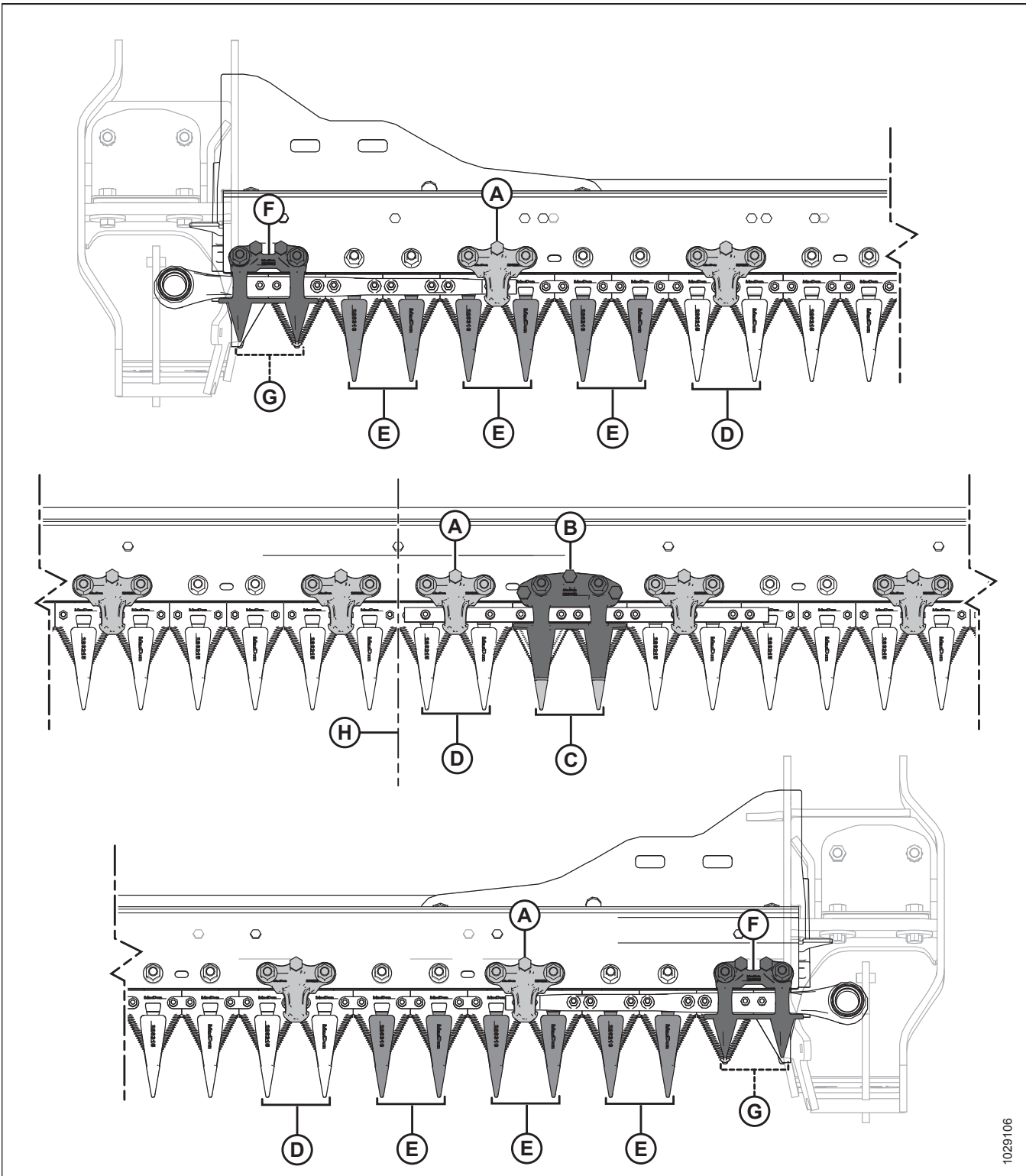


Figure 5.120: Pointed Knife Guard and Hold-Down Locations – Single-Knife Headers

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| A - Pointed Hold-Down (MD #286329)                          | B - Pointed Knife Guard (MD #286315)   |
| C - Pointed End Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286316) | D - Short Knife Hold-Down (MD #286331) |
| E - Short Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286319)       | F - Short Knife Guard (MD #286318)     |

1028482

Pointed Knife Guards on FD235 Double-Knife Header

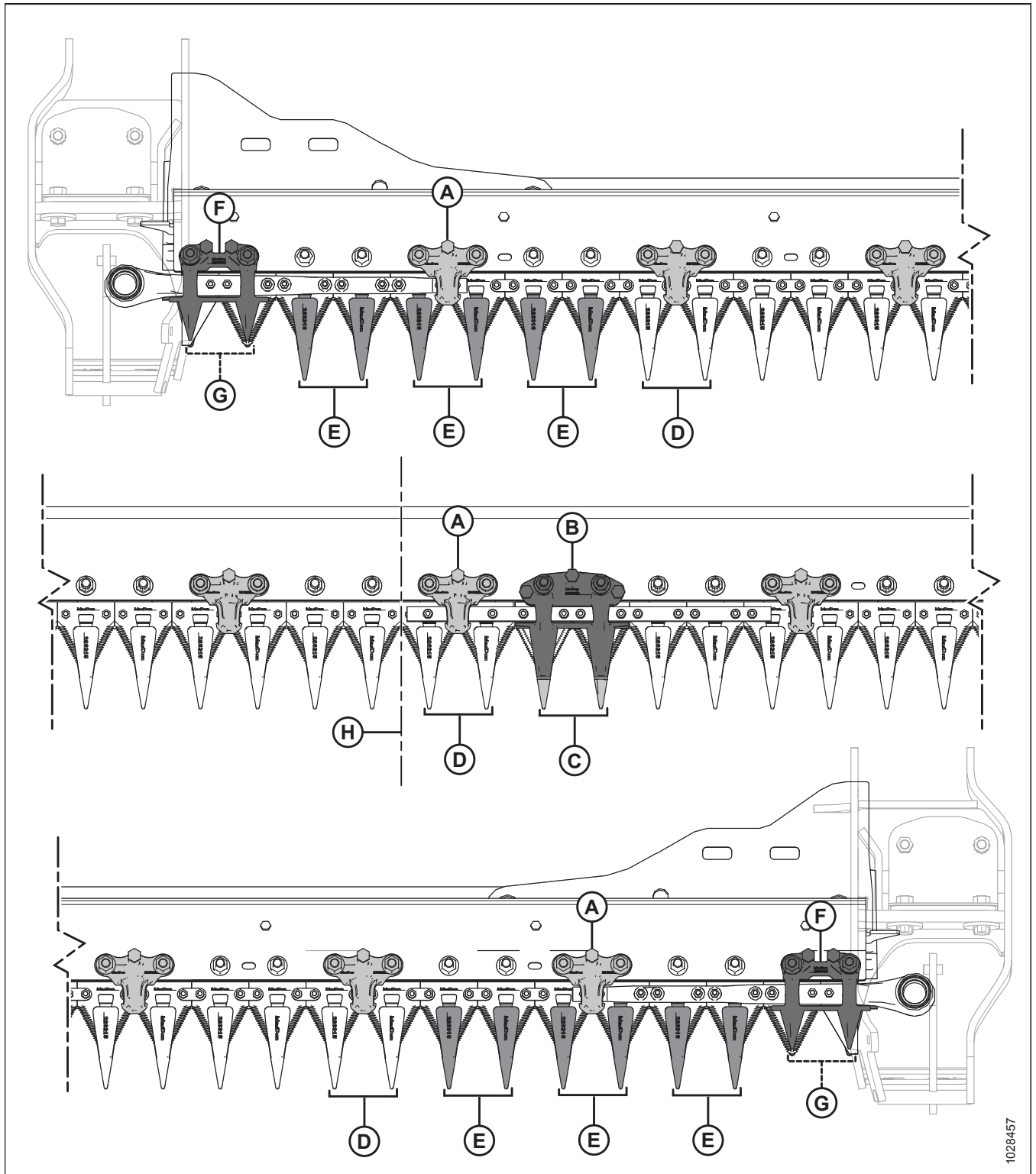


1029106

Figure 5.121: Pointed Guard and Hold-Down Locations – FD235 Double-knife header

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| A - Pointed Hold-Down (MD #286329)                          | B - Pointed Center Hold-Down (MD #286332) |
| C - Pointed Center Knife Guard (MD #286317)                 | D - Pointed Knife Guard (MD #286315)      |
| E - Pointed End Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286316) | F - Short Knife Hold-Down (MD #286331)    |
| G - Short Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286319)       | H - Center of Header                      |

Pointed Knife Guards on FD240 Double-Knife Header

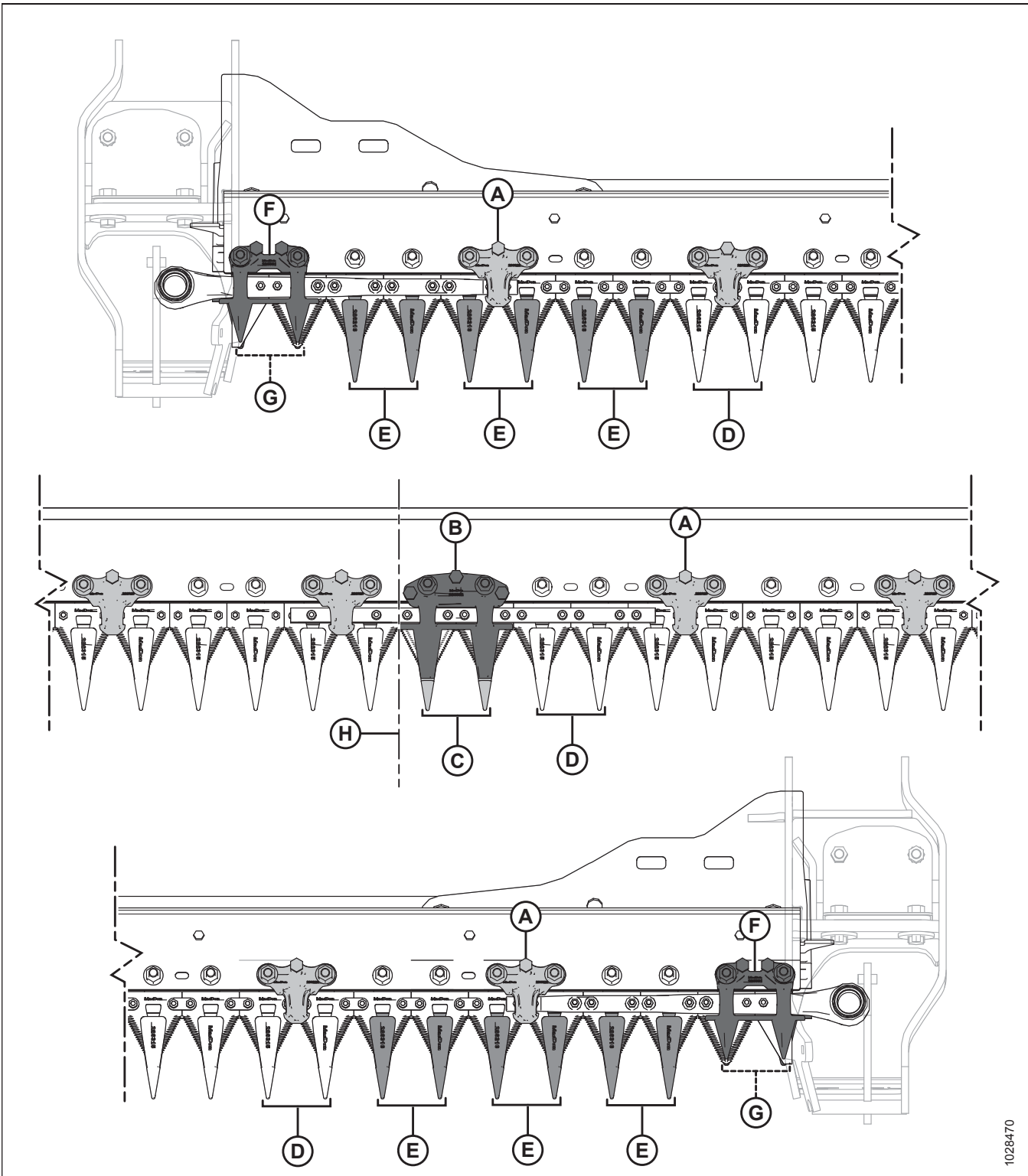


1028457

Figure 5.122: Pointed Knife Guard and Hold-Down Locations – FD240 Double-Knife Header

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| A - Pointed Hold-Down (MD #286329)                          | B - Pointed Center Hold-Down (MD #286332) |
| C - Pointed Center Knife Guard (MD #286317)                 | D - Pointed Knife Guard (MD #286315)      |
| E - Pointed End Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286316) | F - Short Knife Hold-Down (MD #286331)    |
| G - Short Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286319)       | H - Center of Header                      |

Pointed Knife Guards on FD241 Double-Knife Header



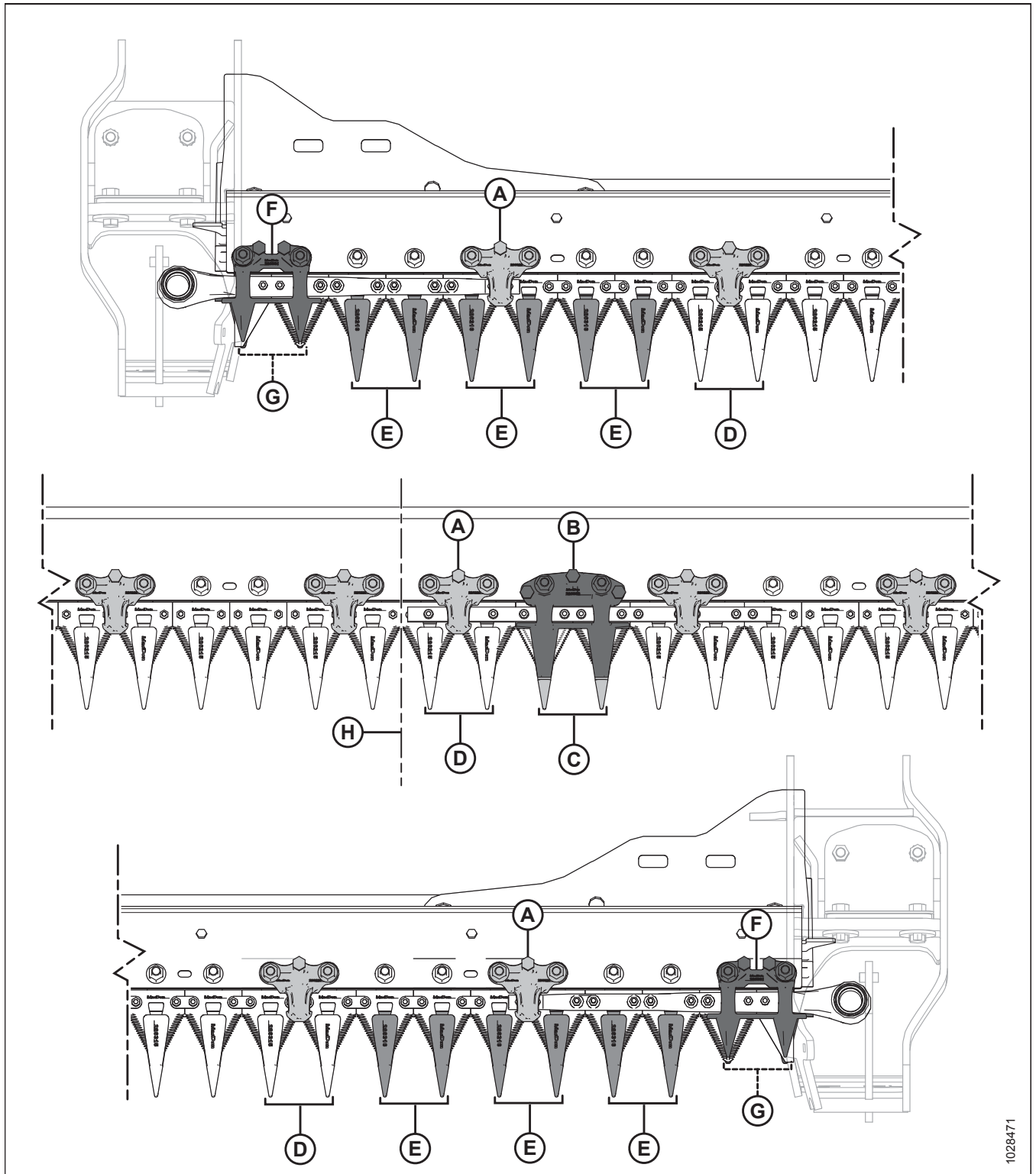
1028470

Figure 5.123: Pointed Knife Guard and Hold-Down Locations – FD241 Double-Knife Header

- A - Pointed Hold-Down (MD #286329)
- B - Pointed Center Hold-Down (MD #286332)
- C - Pointed Center Knife Guard (MD #286317)
- D - Pointed Knife Guard (MD #286315)
- E - Pointed End Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286316)
- F - Short Knife Hold-Down (MD 286331)
- G - Short Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286319)
- H - Center of Header



Pointed Knife Guards on FD245 Double-Knife Header

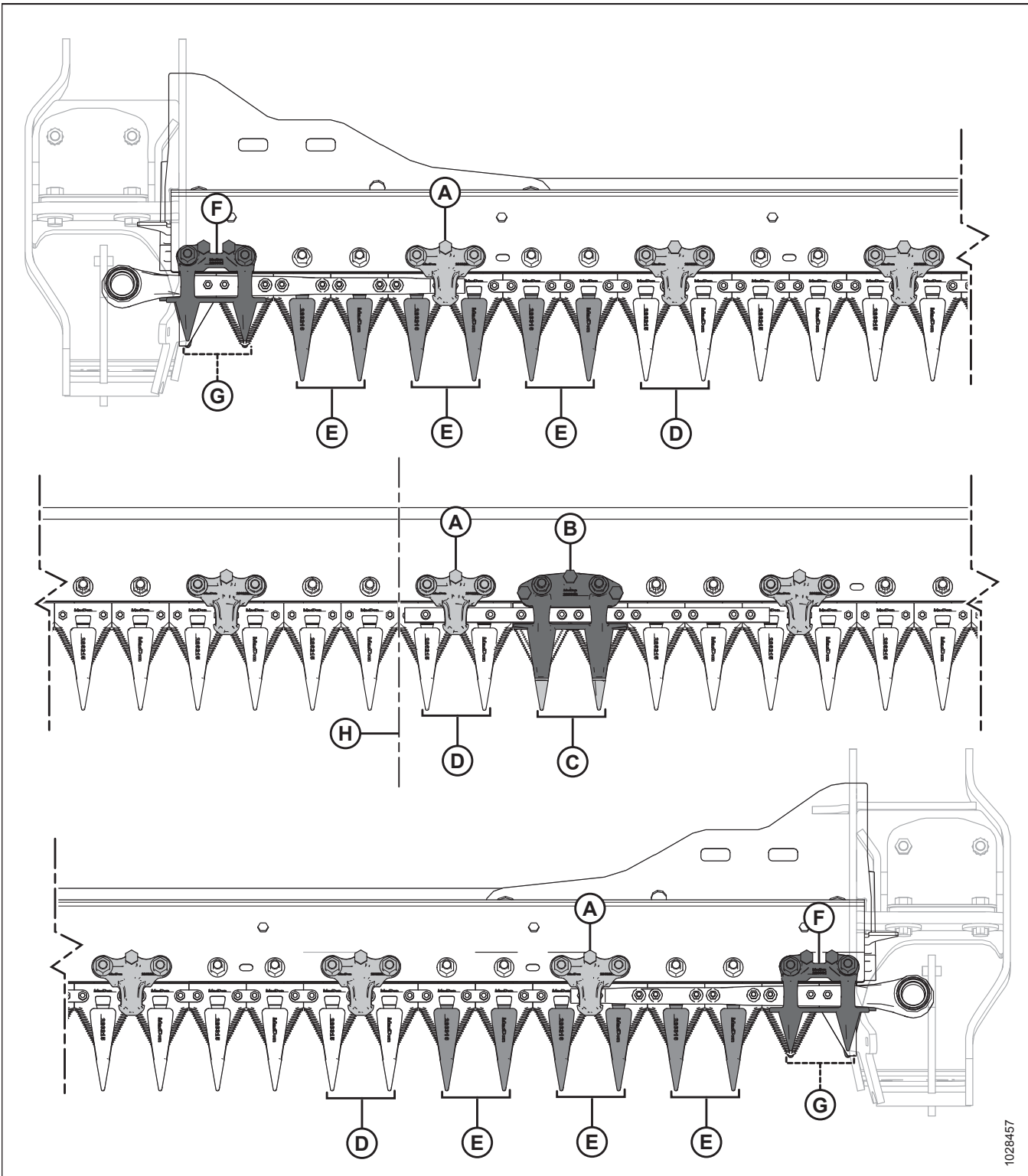


1028471

Figure 5.124: Pointed Guard and Hold-Down Locations – FD245 Double-Knife Header

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| A - Pointed Hold-Down (MD #286329)                          | B - Pointed Center Hold-Down (MD #286332) |
| C - Pointed Center Knife Guard (MD #286317)                 | D - Pointed Knife Guard (MD #286315)      |
| E - Pointed End Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286316) | F - Short Knife Hold-Down (MD 286331)     |
| G - Short Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286319)       | H - Center of Header                      |

Pointed Knife Guards on FD250 Double-Knife Header



1028457

Figure 5.125: Pointed Knife Guard and Hold-Down Locations – FD250 Double-Knife Header

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| A - Pointed Hold-Down (MD #286329)                    | B - Pointed Center Hold-Down (MD #286332) |
| C - Pointed Center Knife Guard (MD #286317)           | D - Pointed Knife Guard (MD #286315)      |
| E - Pointed End Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286316) | F - Short Knife Hold-Down (MD #286331)    |
| G - Short Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286319) | H - Center of Header                      |

### *Adjusting Knife Guards and Guard Bar*

If a knife guard or the guard bar is misaligned due to contact with a rock or similar obstruction, use the guard straightening tool (MD #286705) available from your MacDon Dealer to correct the issue.

 **DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before making adjustments to the machine.

 **CAUTION**

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. To adjust the guard tips upwards, position tool (A) as shown, and pull up.

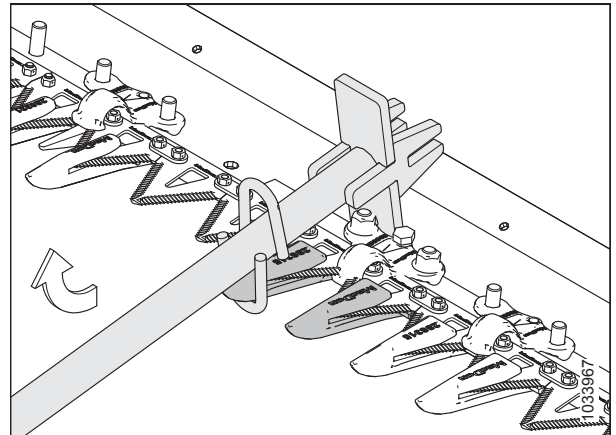


Figure 5.126: Upward Adjustment – Pointed Guard

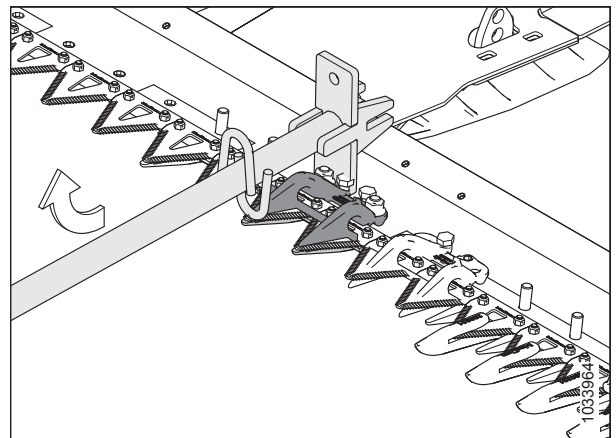


Figure 5.127: Upward Adjustment – Short Knife Guards

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

2. To adjust the guard tips downwards, position tool (A) as shown, and push down.

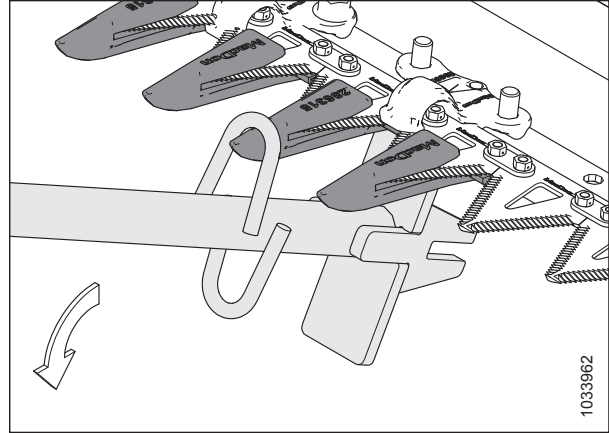


Figure 5.128: Downward Adjustment – Pointed Guard

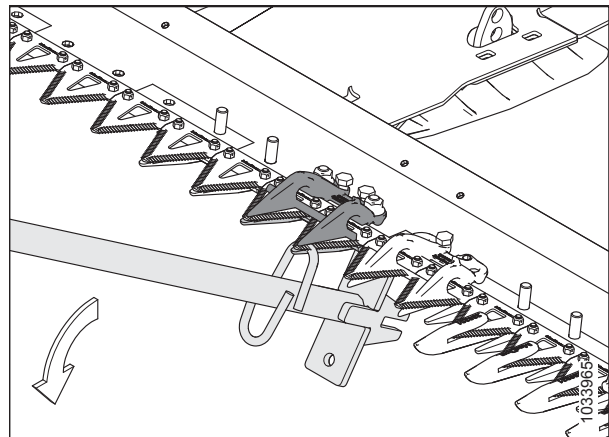


Figure 5.129: Downward Adjustment – Short Knife Guards

3. To adjust the guard bar up or down, position tool (A) as shown, and push on the tool accordingly.

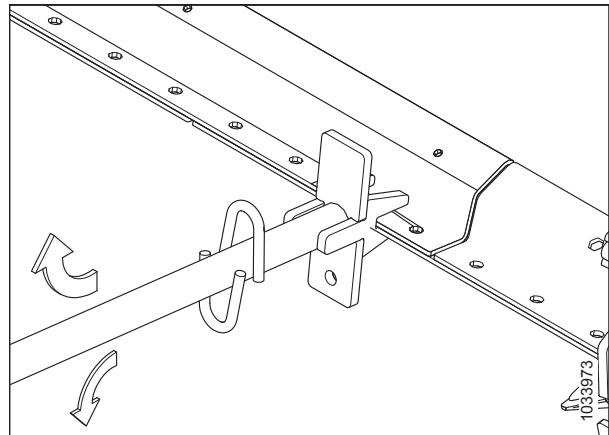


Figure 5.130: Guard Bar Adjustment – No Guards

### Replacing Pointed Knife Guards

This procedure is for replacing standard and drive side guards.

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before making adjustments to the machine.

#### CAUTION

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

#### IMPORTANT:

When replacing pointed knife guards, ensure the hold-down sequence is correct for your header type and width. For more information, refer to [5.8.7 Pointed Knife Guards and Hold-Downs](#), page 484.

#### IMPORTANT:

**Single, or Double knife headers:** On both ends of the header, position 1 (outboard guard) is a short knife guard. On the drive side(s) of the header, positions 2, 3, and 4 are pointed end knife guards (without wear bar). Starting at position 5, the remaining guards are pointed knife guards. Ensure proper replacement guards are installed at these locations.

#### IMPORTANT:

**Double-knife headers:** have a pointed center knife guard installed where the two knives overlap. The pointed center knife guard has a slightly different replacement procedure. For instructions, refer to [Replacing Pointed Center Knife Guard – Double-Knife](#), page 496.

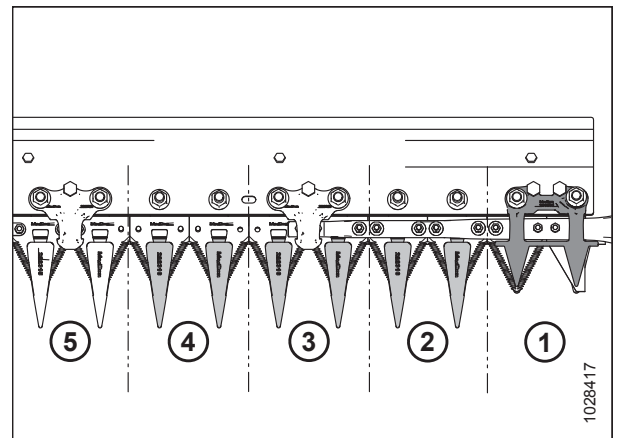


Figure 5.131: Drive Side Pointed Knife Guards

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props](#), page 31.
4. Stroke the knife manually until the knife sections are spaced midway between the guards.
5. Remove two nuts (B) and bolts attaching pointed knife guard (A) and hold-down (C) (if applicable) to the cutterbar.
6. Remove pointed knife guard (A), hold-down (C), and the plastic wearplate. Discard pointed knife guard.

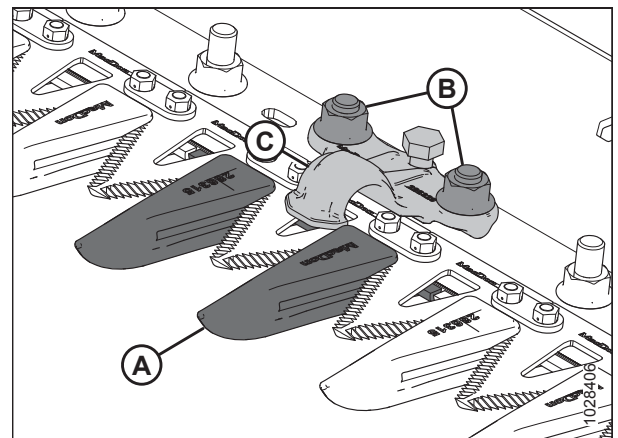


Figure 5.132: Pointed Knife Guards

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

7. Position plastic wearplate (A) and replacement pointed knife guard (B) under the cutterbar.

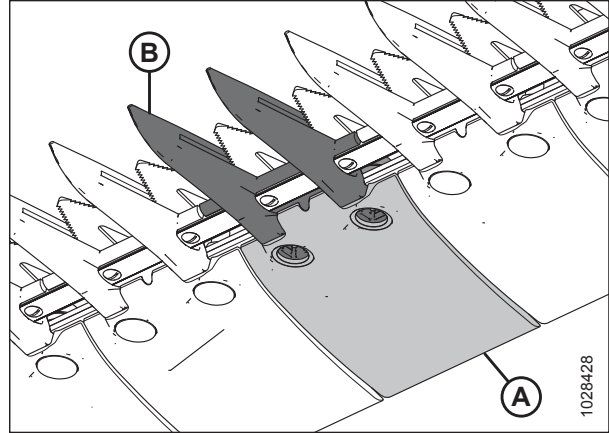


Figure 5.133: Pointed Knife Guard and Wearplate

8. Position hold-down (A) (if applicable), and loosen adjustment bolt (C) so that it is not protruding from the bottom of the hold down.
9. Secure pointed knife guard, wearplate, and hold-down with two bolts and nuts (B). Tighten nuts to 100 Nm (74 lbf-ft).
10. If there is a hold-down at this location, proceed with adjustment. Refer to [Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards](#), page 495.

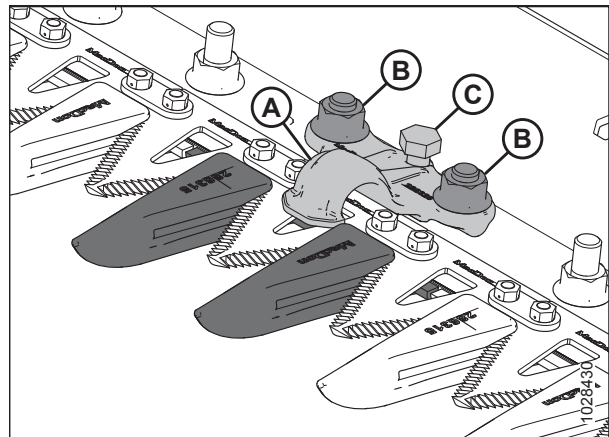


Figure 5.134: Pointed Knife Guards

### Checking Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards

Perform **DAILY** inspections to ensure the knife hold-downs are preventing the knife sections from lifting off the guards while permitting the knife to slide without binding.

This procedure is for standard hold-down. To check the center hold-down on double-knife headers, refer to [Checking Center Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards](#), page 498.

#### NOTE:

Align guards prior to adjusting the hold-down. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Knife Guards and Guard Bar](#), page 491.

#### **WARNING**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before adjusting machine.

#### **CAUTION**

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

2. Manually stroke the knife to position knife section (A) under hold-down (B).
3. Push down on knife section (A) with approximately 44 N (10 lbf), and use a feeler gauge to measure the clearance between hold-down (B) and the knife section. Ensure the clearance is 0.1–0.5 mm (0.004–0.020 in.).
4. If adjustment is required, refer to [Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards](#), page 495.

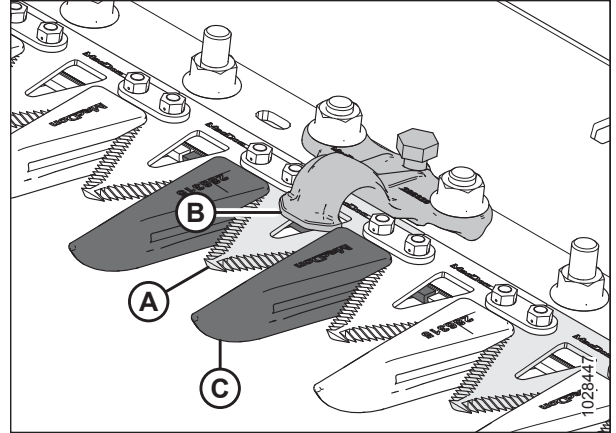


Figure 5.135: Pointed Hold-Down

### *Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards*

This procedure is for standard hold-down. To adjust the center hold-down on double-knife headers, refer to [Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards](#), page 500.

#### NOTE:

Align guards prior to adjusting the hold-down. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Knife Guards and Guard Bar](#), page 491.

#### **WARNING**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before adjusting machine.

#### **CAUTION**

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Adjust the hold-down clearance as follows:
  - a. To lower the front of hold-down (A) and decrease clearance, turn adjuster bolt (B) clockwise.
  - b. To raise the front of hold-down (A) and increase clearance, turn adjuster bolt (B) counterclockwise.

#### NOTE:

For larger adjustments, it may be necessary to loosen nuts (C) before turning adjuster bolt (B). After adjustment, retighten nuts to 100 Nm (74 lbf-ft).

3. After making the hold-down adjustments, run the header at low engine speed, and listen for noise caused by insufficient clearance.

#### IMPORTANT:

Insufficient hold-down clearance will result in overheating of the knife and guards—readjust as necessary.

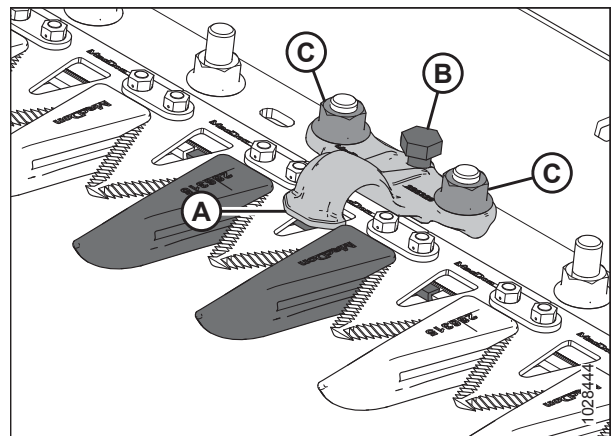


Figure 5.136: Pointed Hold-Down

### Replacing Pointed Center Knife Guard – Double-Knife

The guard at the center of a double-knife header (where the two knives overlap) requires a slightly different replacement procedure than a pointed knife guard.

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before making adjustments to the machine.

#### CAUTION

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Remove two nuts and bolts (C) attaching guard (A) and hold-down (B) to the cutterbar.
3. Remove guard (A), plastic wearplate, and hold-down (B).

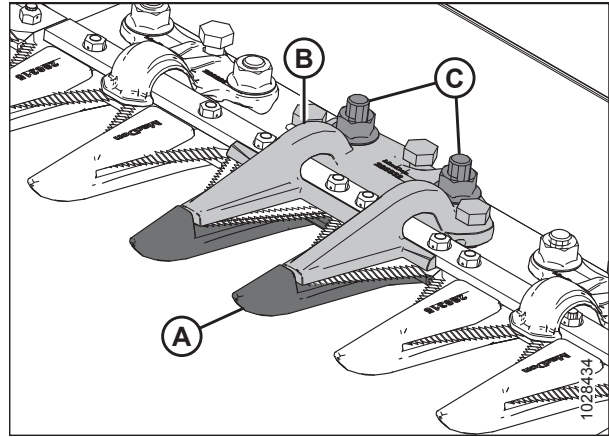


Figure 5.137: Pointed Center Knife Guard

#### IMPORTANT:

Ensure the replacement guard is the correct guard with offset cutting surfaces (A).

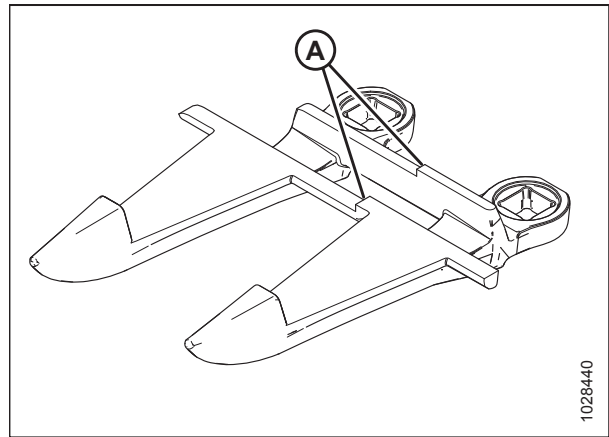


Figure 5.138: Pointed Center Knife Guard



## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

### IMPORTANT:

Before installing the new pointed center knife guard, ensure overlap shim (A) is present under the cutterbar, and the thick end of the shim is positioned under the center guard.

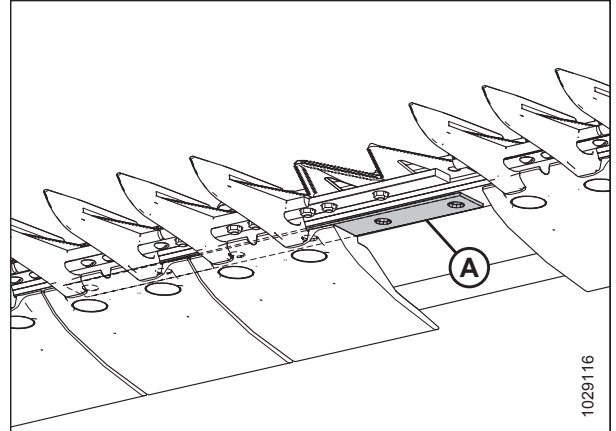


Figure 5.139: Cutterbar

4. Position plastic wearplate (A) and new guard (B) under the cutterbar.

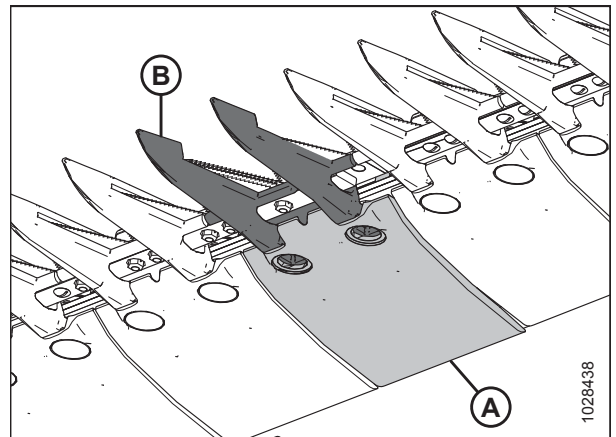


Figure 5.140: Pointed Center Knife Guard and Wearplate

5. Thread three adjustment bolts (A) so they are protruding 4 mm (5/32 in.) from the bottom of pointed center hold-down (B).
6. Position center hold-down (B) onto the cutterbar.

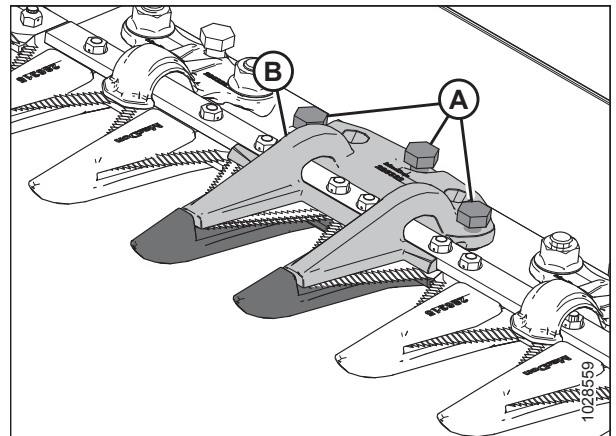


Figure 5.141: Pointed Center Knife Guard

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

- Attach pointed center hold-down (A) with two bolts and nuts (B), but do **NOT** tighten at this time.

### IMPORTANT:

Hold-down (A) must accommodate the two overlapping knives at the center guard location. Ensure the proper replacement guard is installed at this location.

- Adjust the hold-down until the clearance is acceptable.
  - For adjustment instructions, refer to *Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards*, page 500.
  - For clearance specifications, refer to *Checking Center Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards*, page 498.
- Tighten nuts (B) to 100 Nm (74 lbf-ft).
- Recheck the clearance.
  - If the clearance is acceptable, the installation of the hold-down is complete.
  - If the clearance is unacceptable, repeat Step 8, page 498 to Step 10, page 498 until the clearance is satisfactory.

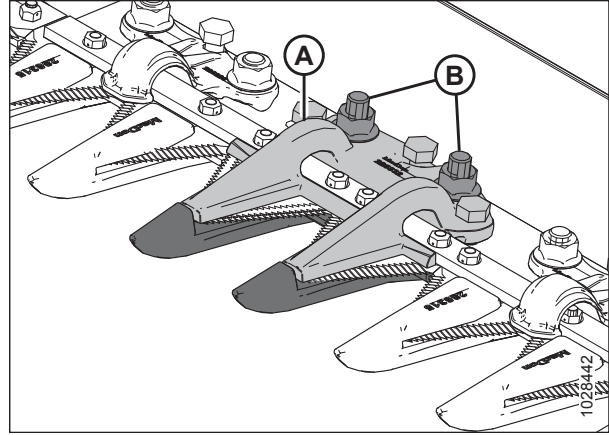


Figure 5.142: Pointed Center Knife Guard

### Checking Center Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards

Perform **DAILY** inspections to ensure the knife hold-down is preventing the knife sections from lifting off the guards while permitting the knife to slide without binding.

### WARNING

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before adjusting machine.

### CAUTION

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

- Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
- Manually stroke both knives to their inboard end so that knife sections are under hold-down (A).
- Push down on knife section with approximately 44 N (10 lbf), and use a feeler gauge to measure the clearance between hold-down (A) and the knife section. Ensure the clearance is as follows:
  - At tip (B) of hold-down: 0.1–0.5 mm (0.004–0.020 in.)
  - At rear (C) of hold-down: 0.1–1.0 mm (0.004–0.040 in.)
- If adjustment is required, refer to *Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards*, page 500.
- If no adjustment is required, tighten nuts (D) to 100 Nm (74 lbf-ft).

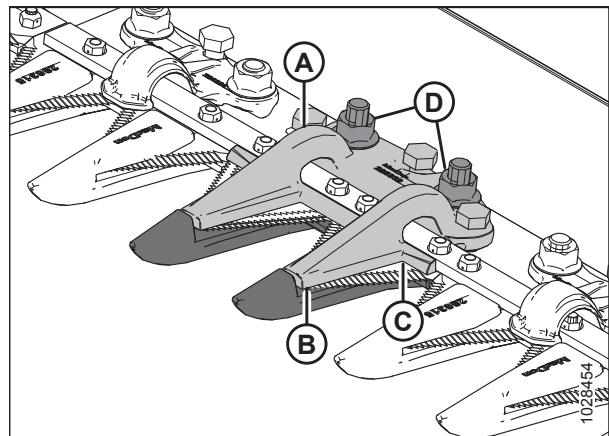


Figure 5.143: Pointed Center Hold-Down

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

6. Recheck clearance after tightening nuts, and adjust if necessary.

*Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards*

**⚠ WARNING**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before adjusting machine.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. If increasing the clearance, loosen mounting hardware (B) before adjusting bolts (A).
3. Adjust the hold-down clearance as follows:
  - a. To decrease clearance, turn adjuster bolts (A) clockwise (tighten).
  - b. To increase clearance, turn adjuster bolts (A) counterclockwise (loosen).

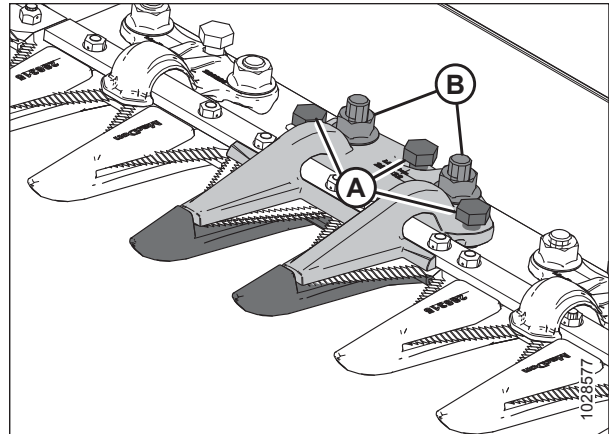
**NOTE:**

To adjust clearance at tip only, adjust using only center (rear) adjustment bolt.

4. Tighten nuts (B) to 100 Nm (74 lbf·ft).
5. Recheck clearances, and make further adjustments if necessary.
6. After making the hold-down adjustments, run the header at low engine speed, and listen for noise caused by insufficient clearance.

**IMPORTANT:**

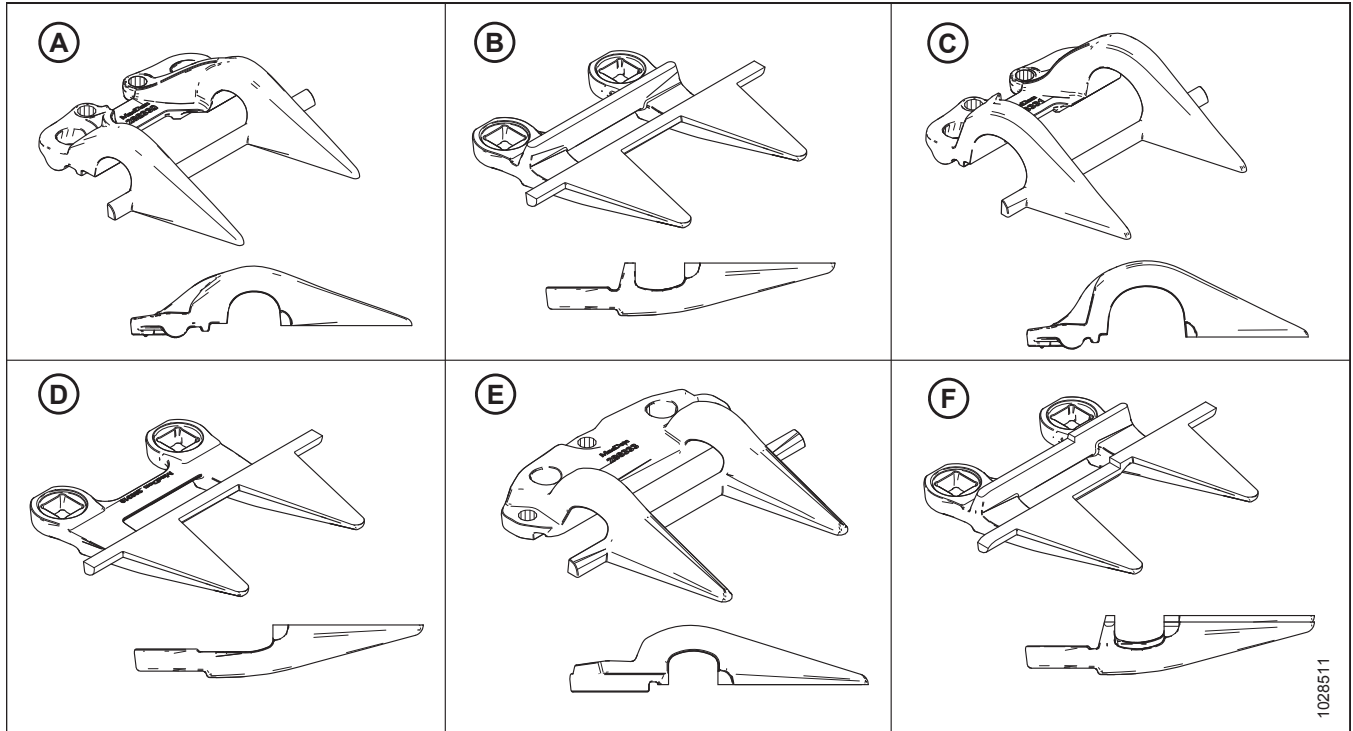
Insufficient hold-down clearance will result in overheating of the knife and guards—readjust as necessary.



**Figure 5.144: Pointed Center Hold-Down**

### 5.8.8 Plug-Free™ Knife Guards and Hold-Downs

The following knife guards and hold-downs are used in short knife guard configurations:



**Figure 5.145: Guard and Hold-Down Types used in Short Knife Guard Configurations**

A - Short Knife Hold-Down (MD #286330)

C - Short Knife End Hold-Down (MD #286331)<sup>62</sup>

E - Short Knife Center Hold-Down (MD #286333)<sup>64</sup>

B - Short Knife Guard (MD #286318)

D - Short Knife End Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (MD #286319)<sup>63</sup>

F - Short Knife Center Knife Guard (MD #286320)<sup>64</sup>

Guards are configured differently on different headers. When replacing short knife guards and hold-downs, ensure you use the correct sequence for your header. The following will guide you to the different configurations:

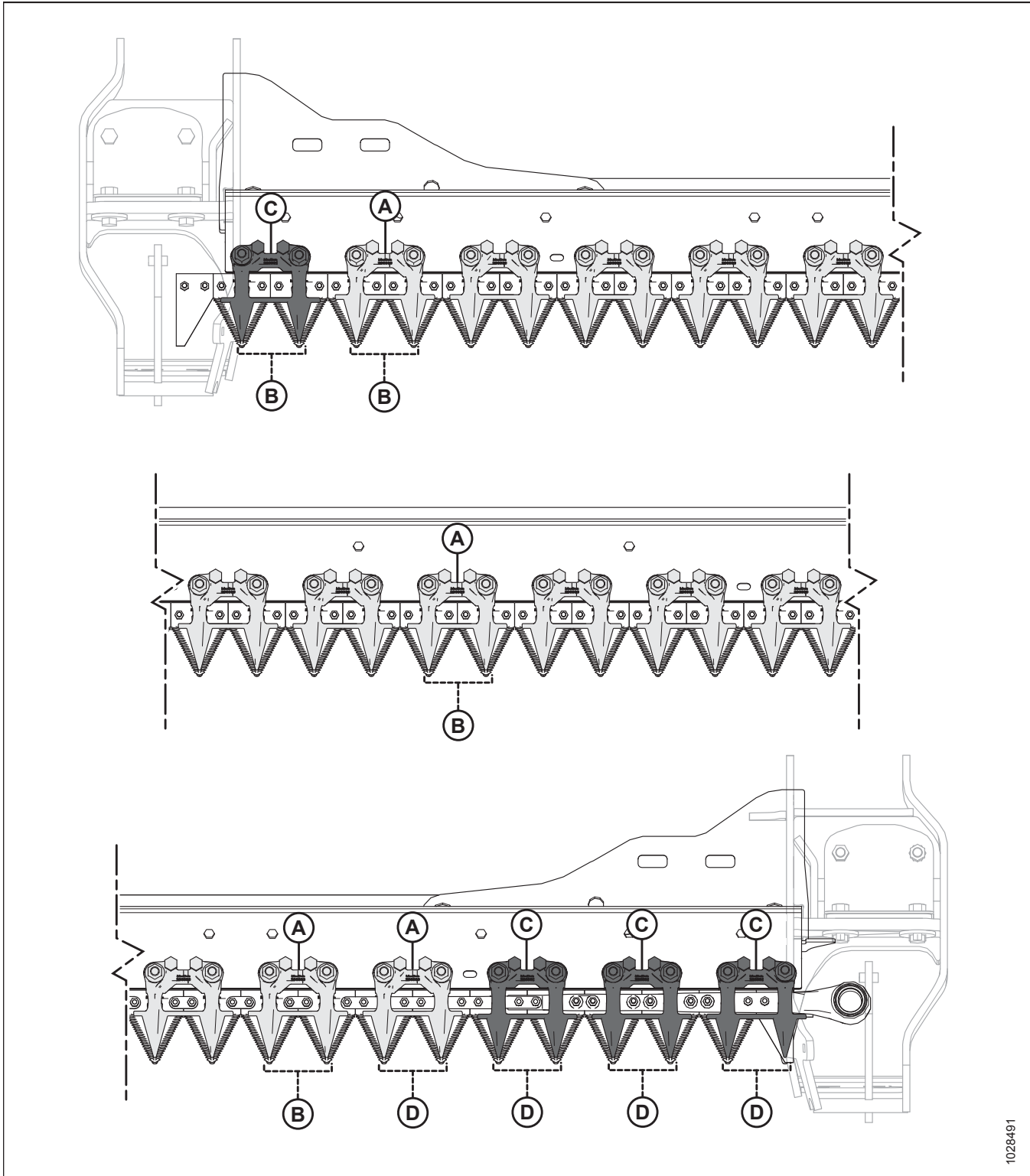
- [Plug-Free™ Knife Guards on Single-Knife Headers, page 502](#)
- [Plug-Free™ Knife Guards on Double-Knife Headers – All Models Except FD241, page 503](#)
- [Plug-Free™ Knife Guards on FD241 Double-Knife Header, page 504](#)

62. Installed in positions 1–3 on drive side(s); installed in position 1 at right end of single-knife headers. Refer to the chapters in the above list for reference.

63. Installed in positions 1–4 on drive side(s). Single-knife headers use standard guard (MD #286318) on the right end. Refer to the chapters in the above list for reference.

64. Double-knife headers only.

Plug-Free™ Knife Guards on Single-Knife Headers



1028491

Figure 5.146: Short Knife Guard and Hold-Down Locations – Single-Knife Headers

A - Short Knife Hold-Down (MD #286330)

B - Short Knife Guard (MD #286318)

C - Short Knife End Hold-Down (x4) (MD #286331)

D - Short Knife End Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (x5) (MD #286319)

Plug-Free™ Knife Guards on Double-Knife Headers – All Models Except FD241

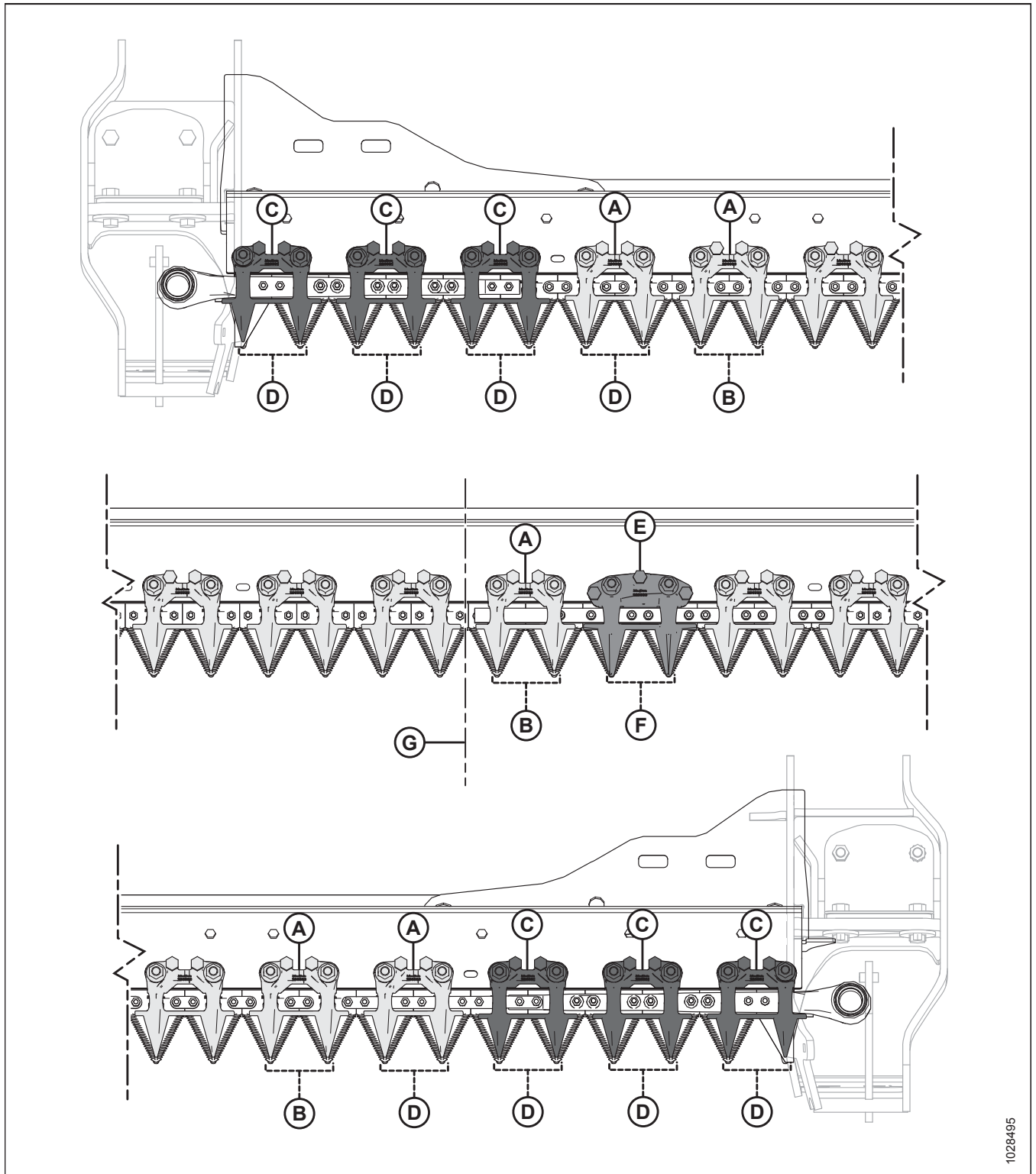


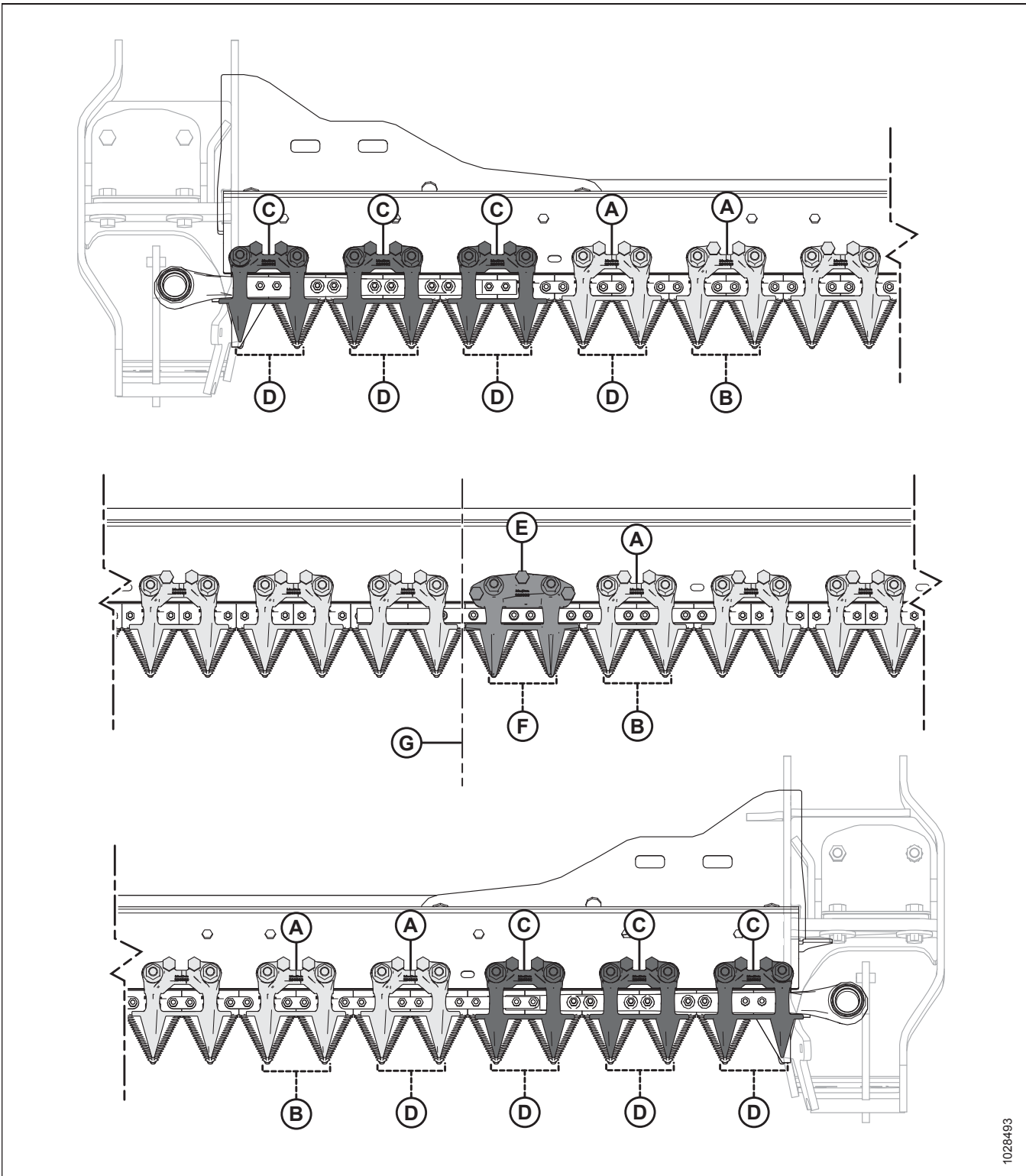
Figure 5.147: Short Knife Guard and Hold-Down Locations – Double-Knife Headers

- A - Short Knife Hold-Down (MD #286330)
- C - Short Knife End Hold-Down (x6) (MD #286331)
- E - Short Knife Center Hold-Down (MD #286333)
- G - Center of Header

- B - Short Knife Guard (MD #286318)
- D - Short Knife End Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (x8) (MD #286319)
- F - Short Knife Center Knife Guard (MD #286320)

1028495

Plug-Free™ Knife Guards on FD241 Double-Knife Header



1028493

Figure 5.148: Stub Guard and Hold-Down Locations – FD241 Double-Knife Header

- A - Short Knife Hold-Down (MD #286330)
- B - Short Knife Guard (MD #286318)
- C - Short Knife End Hold-Down (x6) (MD #286331)
- D - Short Knife End Knife Guard (without Wear Bar) (x8) (MD #286319)
- E - Short Knife Center Hold-Down (MD #286333)
- F - Short Knife Center Knife Guard (MD #286320)
- G - Center of Header



*Replacing Plug-Free™ Knife Guards or End Knife Guards*

Short knife guards or end knife guards are less likely to plug the knife in tough crops such as grasses and canola, and are factory-installed. This procedure is for replacing short knife guards or end knife guards.

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before making adjustments to the machine.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

**IMPORTANT:**

Double-knife headers have an offset center knife guard installed where the two knives overlap. The center knife guard has a slightly different replacement procedure. For instructions, refer to [Replacing Center Knife Guard – Double-Knife, page 508](#).

To replace a short knife guard or end knife guard, follow these steps:

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Remove two nuts (A) and bolts attaching short knife guard (B) and hold-down (C) to the cutterbar.
3. Remove short knife guard (B), hold-down (C) and the plastic wearplate.

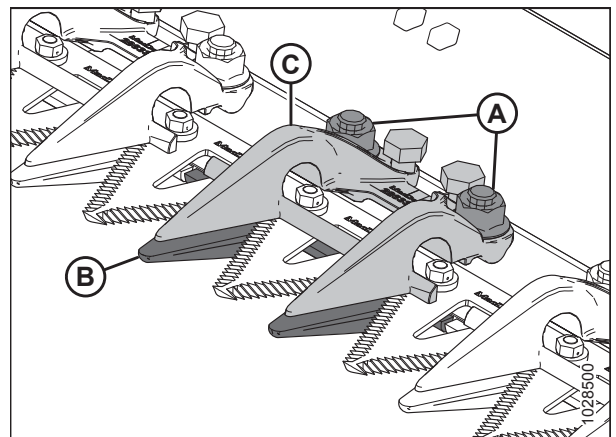


Figure 5.149: Short Knife Guards

**IMPORTANT:**

The first four knife guards (A) on the drive sides of the header are called end knife guards and do **NOT** have wear bars. Ensure the proper replacement knife guards are installed at these locations.

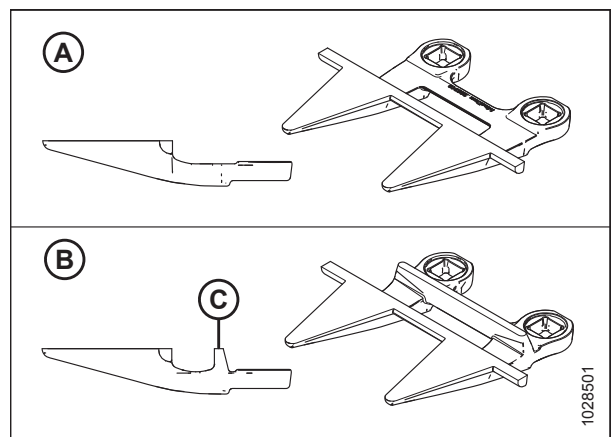


Figure 5.150: End Knife Guard and Short Knife Guards

A - End Knife Guard (MD #286319)

B - Short Knife Guard (with wear bar [C]) (MD #286318)

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

4. Position plastic wearplate (A) and replacement short knife guard (B) under the cutterbar.

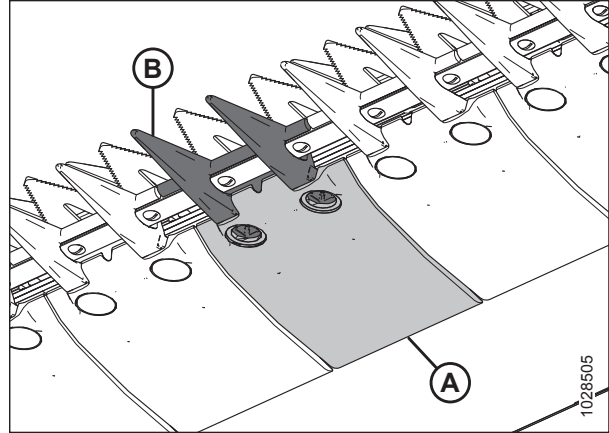


Figure 5.151: Short Knife Guard and Wearplate

5. Position hold-down (A), and loosen two adjustment bolts (B) so that they are not protruding from the bottom of the hold-down.
6. Attach short knife guard, wearplate, and hold-down with two bolts and nuts (C), but do **NOT** tighten at this time.
7. Adjust the hold-down until the clearance is acceptable.
  - For adjustment instructions, refer to [Adjusting Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards](#), page 507.
  - For clearance specifications, refer to [Checking Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards](#), page 506.
8. Tighten nuts (C) to 100 Nm (74 lbf-ft).
9. Recheck the clearance.
  - If the clearance is acceptable, the installation of the hold-down is complete.
  - If the clearance is unacceptable, repeat Step 7, page 506 to Step 9, page 506 until the clearance is satisfactory.

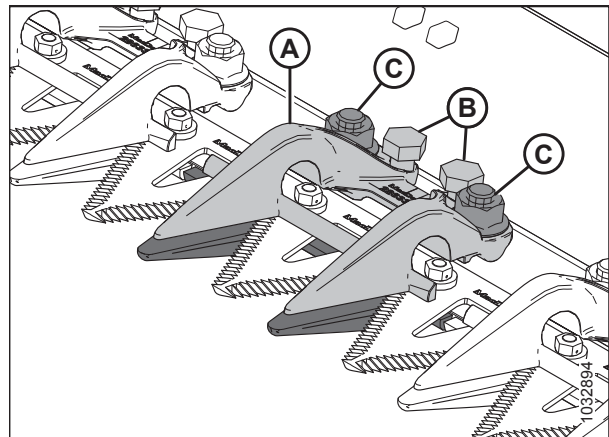


Figure 5.152: Short Knife Guard

### Checking Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards

Perform **DAILY** inspections to ensure the knife hold-downs are preventing the knife sections from lifting off the guards while permitting the knife to slide without binding.

To check the center hold-down on double-knife headers, refer to [Checking Center Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards](#), page 510.

### **WARNING**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before adjusting machine.

### **CAUTION**

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

2. Manually stroke knife to position section under hold-down (A).
3. Push down on knife section with approximately 44 N (10 lbf), and use a feeler gauge to measure the clearance between the tip of hold-down (B) and the knife section. Ensure the clearance is 0.1–0.5 mm (0.004–0.020 in.).
4. If adjustment is required, refer to *Adjusting Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards*, page 507.

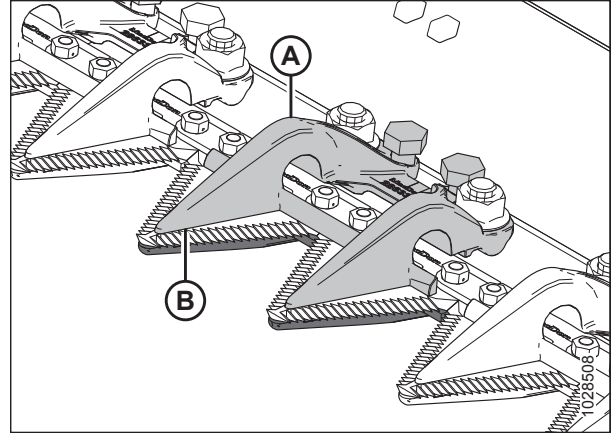


Figure 5.153: Short Knife Guards

### *Adjusting Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards*

To adjust the center hold-down on double-knife headers, refer to *Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards*, page 512.

#### **WARNING**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before adjusting machine.

#### **CAUTION**

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Adjust the hold-down clearance as follows:
  - a. To decrease clearance, turn adjuster bolts (A) clockwise.
  - b. To increase clearance, turn adjuster bolts (A) counterclockwise.

#### **NOTE:**

For larger adjustments, it may be necessary to loosen nuts (B) before turning adjuster bolts (A). After adjustment, retighten nuts to 100 Nm (74 lbf-ft).

- c. Recheck the first point after adjusting the second point, as adjustments to each side can influence the other.
  - d. Make further adjustments as necessary.
3. Recheck clearances, and make further adjustments if necessary.
  4. After making the hold-down adjustments, run the header at low engine speed, and listen for noise caused by insufficient clearance.

#### **IMPORTANT:**

Insufficient hold-down clearance will result in overheating of the knife and guards—readjust as necessary.

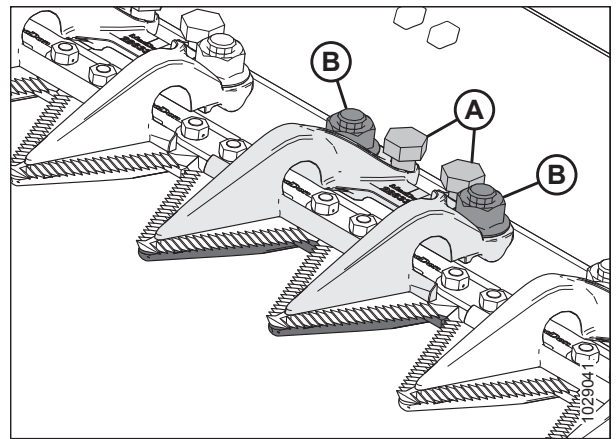


Figure 5.154: Short Knife Guard Hold-Down

### Replacing Center Knife Guard – Double-Knife

The offset guard at the center of a double-knife header (where the two knives overlap) requires a slightly different replacement procedure than a standard guard.

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before making adjustments to the machine.

#### CAUTION

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Remove two nuts and bolts (C) attaching center knife guard (A) and hold-down (B) to the cutterbar.
3. Remove center knife guard (A), plastic wearplate, and hold-down (B).

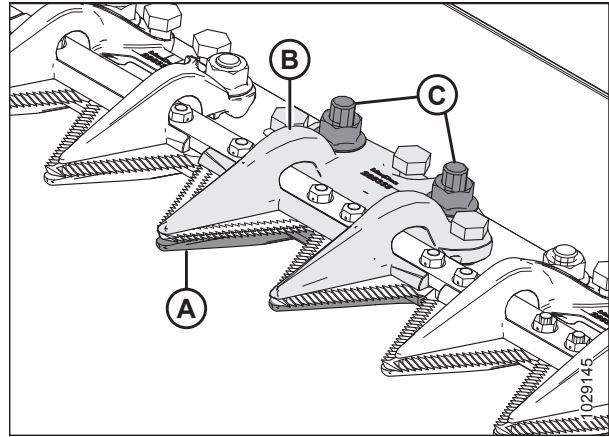


Figure 5.155: Center Knife Guard

#### IMPORTANT:

Ensure the replacement center knife guard is the correct guard with offset cutting surfaces (A).

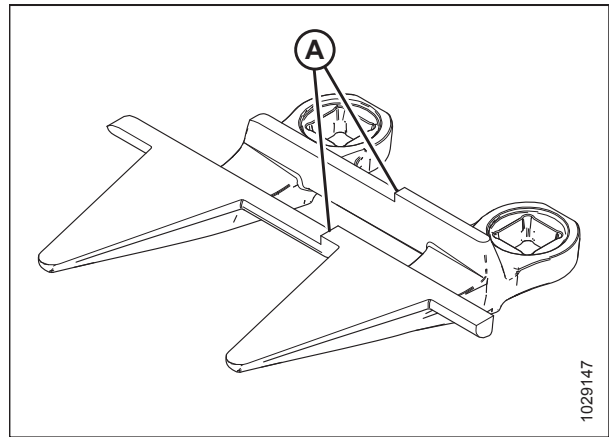


Figure 5.156: Center Knife Guard

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

### IMPORTANT:

Before installing the new center knife guard, ensure overlap shim (A) is present under the cutterbar, and the thick end of the shim is positioned under the center knife guard.

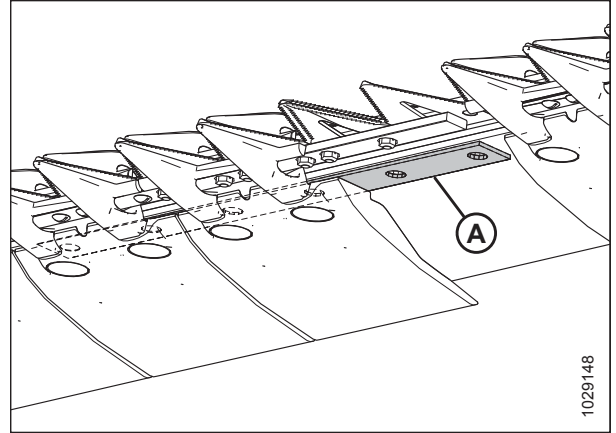


Figure 5.157: Cutterbar

4. Position plastic wearplate (A) and new center knife guard (B) under the cutterbar.

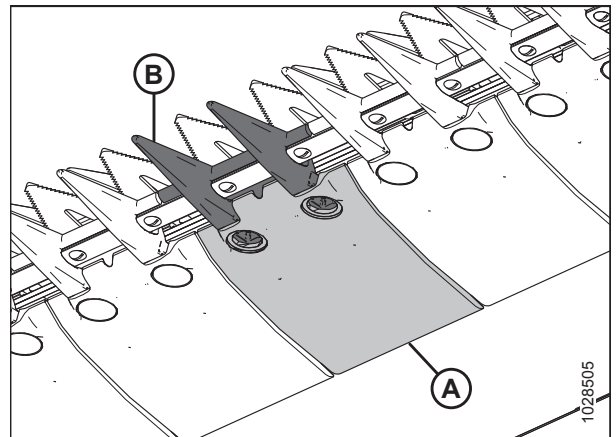


Figure 5.158: Center Knife Guard and Wearplate

5. Thread three adjustment bolts (A) so they are protruding 4 mm (5/32 in.) from the bottom of center hold-down (B).
6. Position center hold-down (B) onto the cutterbar.

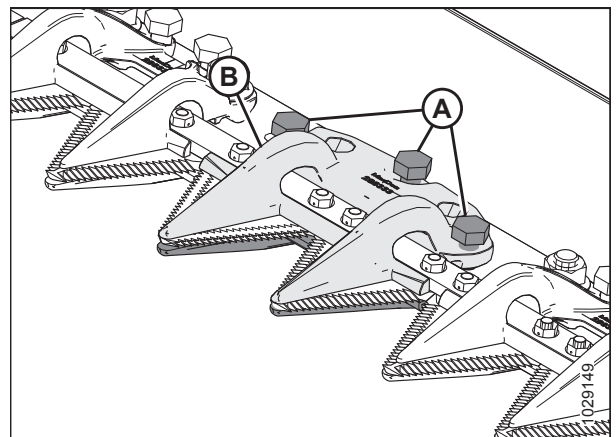


Figure 5.159: Center Knife Guard

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

- Attach center hold-down (A) with two bolts and nuts (B), but do **NOT** tighten at this time.

### IMPORTANT:

Hold-down (A) must accommodate the two overlapping knives at the center knife guard location. Ensure the proper replacement center knife guard is installed at this location.

- Adjust the hold-down until the clearance is acceptable.
  - For adjustment instructions, refer to *Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards*, page 512.
  - For clearance specifications, refer to *Checking Center Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards*, page 510.
- Tighten nuts (B) to 100 Nm (74 lbf-ft).
- Recheck the clearance.
  - If the clearance is acceptable, the installation of the hold-down is complete.
  - If the clearance is unacceptable, repeat Step 8, page 510 to Step 10, page 510 until the clearance is satisfactory.

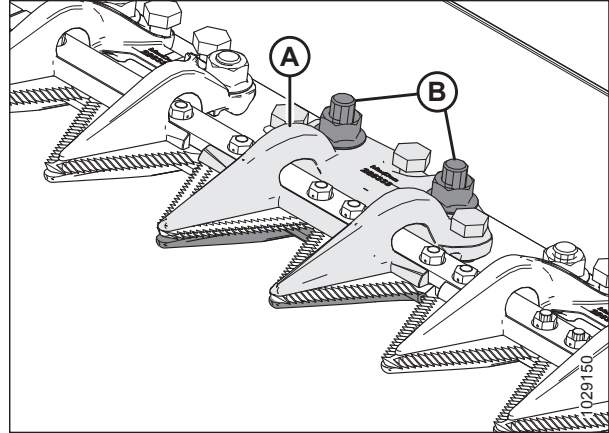


Figure 5.160: Center Knife Guard

### Checking Center Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards

Perform **DAILY** inspections to ensure the knife hold-downs are preventing the knife sections from lifting off the guards while permitting the knife to slide without binding.

### WARNING

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before adjusting machine.

### CAUTION

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

- Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
- Manually stroke both knives to their inboard end so that knife sections are under hold-down (A).
- Push down on knife section with approximately 44 N (10 lbf), and use a feeler gauge to measure the clearance between hold-down (A) and the knife section. Ensure the clearance is as follows:
  - At tip (B) of hold-down:** 0.1–0.5 mm (0.004–0.020 in.)
  - At rear (C) of hold-down:** 0.1–1.0 mm (0.004–0.040 in.)
- If adjustment is required, refer to *Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards*, page 512.
- If no adjustment is required, tighten nuts (D) to 100 Nm (74 lbf-ft).

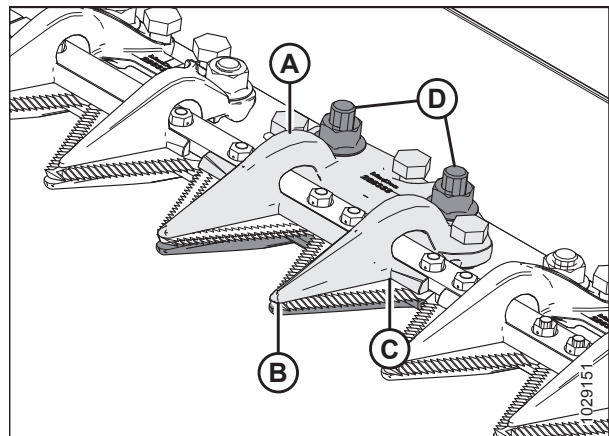


Figure 5.161: Center Knife Guard Hold-Down

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

6. Recheck clearance after tightening nuts and adjust if necessary.

*Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards*

**WARNING**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before adjusting machine.

**CAUTION**

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. If increasing the clearance, loosen the mounting hardware (B) before adjusting bolts (A).
3. Adjust the hold-down clearance as follows:
  - a. To decrease clearance, turn adjuster bolts (A) clockwise (tighten).
  - b. To increase clearance, turn adjuster bolts (A) counterclockwise (loosen).

**NOTE:**

To adjust clearance at tip only, adjust using only center (rear) adjustment bolt.

4. Tighten nuts (B) to 100 Nm (74 lbf-ft).
5. Recheck clearances, and make further adjustments if necessary.
6. After making the hold-down adjustments, run the header at low engine speed, and listen for noise caused by insufficient clearance.

**IMPORTANT:**

Insufficient hold-down clearance will result in overheating of the knife and guards—readjust as necessary.

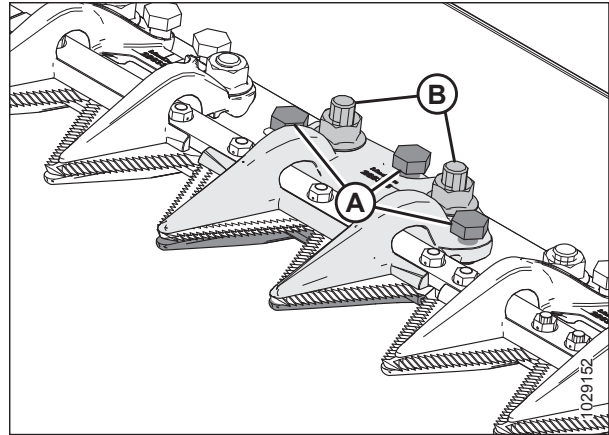


Figure 5.162: Center Hold-Down

**5.8.9 Knifehead Shield**

The knifehead shield attaches to the endsheet and reduces the knifehead opening to prevent cut crop from accumulating in the knifehead cutout.

The shields and mounting hardware are available from your MacDon Dealer.

**IMPORTANT:**

Remove the shields when using the cutterbar on the ground in muddy conditions. Mud may pack into the cavity behind the shield which could result in knife drive box failure.



*Installing Knifehead Shield*

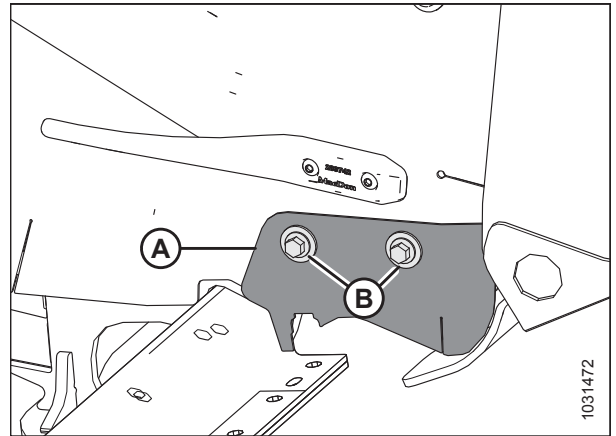
**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under header for any reason.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. Raise the reel fully.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 31](#).
5. Place knifehead shield (A) against the endsheet as shown. Align the shield so the cutout matches the profile of the knifehead and/or hold-downs.
6. Align the mounting holes and secure with two M10 x 30 hex head bolts, washers (B), and nuts.
7. Tighten bolts (B) just enough to hold knifehead shield (A) in place while allowing it to be adjusted as close to the knifehead as possible.
8. Manually rotate the knife drive box pulley to move the knife and check for areas of contact between the knifehead and knifehead shield (A). Adjust the shield to eliminate interference with the knife if necessary.
9. Tighten bolts (B).



**Figure 5.163: Knifehead Shield**

## 5.9 Knife Drive System

The knife drive system transforms pumped hydraulic pressure into a mechanical motion that stokes a series of serrated knife blades at the front of the header back and forth to cut a variety of crops.

### 5.9.1 Knife Drive Box

Knife drive box (A) is driven by a hydraulic motor (B), and converts rotational motion into the reciprocating motion of the knife. Double-knife headers have a knife drive box and motor at each end.

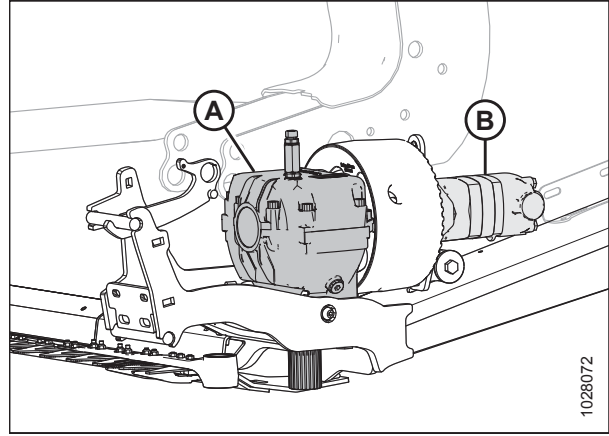


Figure 5.164: Left Side Knife Drive Box Shown – Right Side Similar

#### Checking Oil Level in Knife Drive Box

Single-knife headers have one knife-drive box and double-knife headers have two knife-drive boxes. To access the knife drive box(es), the endshield(s) must be fully opened.

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before making adjustments to the machine.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Open the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 33](#).
3. Remove oil level dipstick (A) and check the oil level. The oil level must be within range (B).

#### NOTE:

Check the oil level with the top of the knife drive box horizontal and with oil level dipstick (A) screwed in.

4. Reinstall oil level dipstick (A), and tighten to 23 Nm (17 lbf-ft).

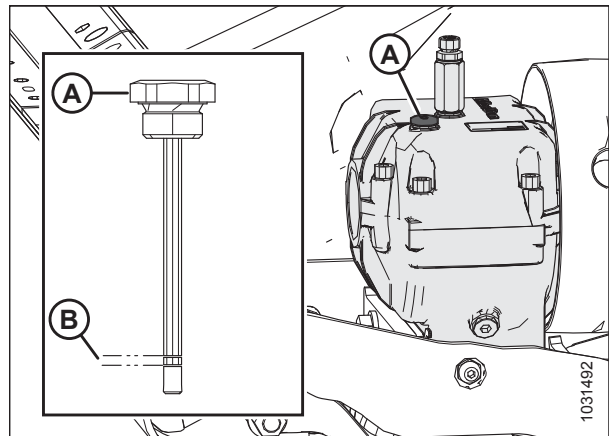


Figure 5.165: Knife Drive Box

### Checking Mounting Bolts

Check the torque on the four knife drive box mounting bolts (A) and (B) after the first 10 hours of operation and every 100 hours thereafter.

1. Torque side bolts (A) first, then torque bottom bolts (B).  
Torque all bolts to 343 Nm (253 lbf-ft).

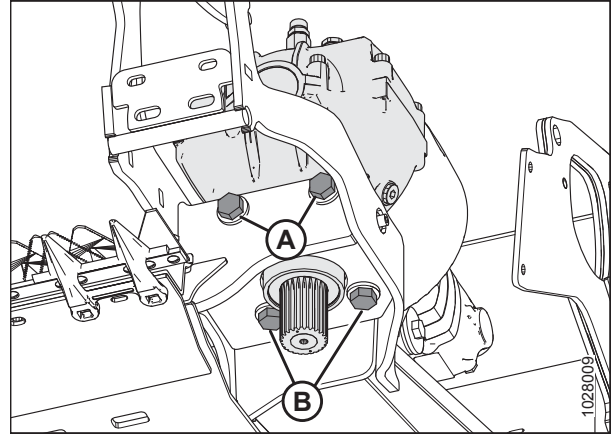


Figure 5.166: Knife Drive Box

### Removing Knife Drive Box

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before making adjustments to the machine.

**NOTE:**

The procedure is the same for both ends of a double-knife header. Illustrations shown are for the left end—the right end is opposite.

**NOTE:**

Unless otherwise noted, retain all hardware for reassembly.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Open the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 33](#).
3. Clean the area around the knifehead.
4. Remove grease fitting (A) from the pin.

**NOTE:**

Removing the grease fitting will make it easier to reinstall the knifehead pin later.

5. Remove bolt and nut (B).
6. Use a screwdriver or chisel in slot (C) to release the load on the knifehead pin.
7. Use a screwdriver or chisel to pry the pin upwards in the pin groove until the pin is clear of the knifehead.
8. Manually stroke the knife to its outer limit.
9. Push the knife assembly inboard until it is clear of the drive arm.

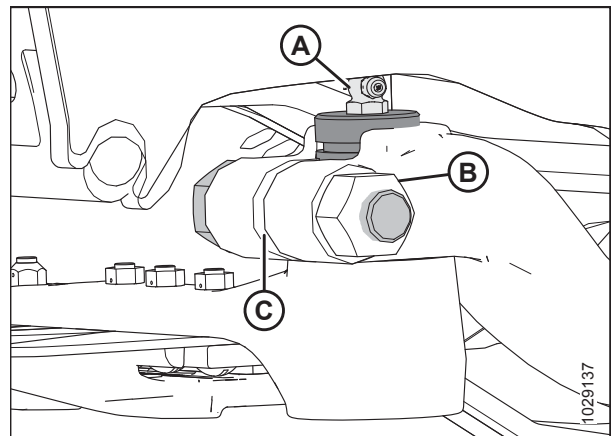


Figure 5.167: Knifehead

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

10. Seal the knifehead bearing with plastic or tape to keep out dirt and debris unless it is being replaced.
11. Remove bolt and nut (A) that clamps knife drive arm (B) to knife drive box output shaft (C).
12. Use a chisel in the slot to help remove knife drive arm (B) from knife drive box output shaft (C).
13. Loosen outer jam nut and set screw (D).

**NOTE:**

There is a second set screw on the opposite side of the knife drive box. Loosening only the outer set screw will allow you to maintain correct knife alignment after reinstallation.

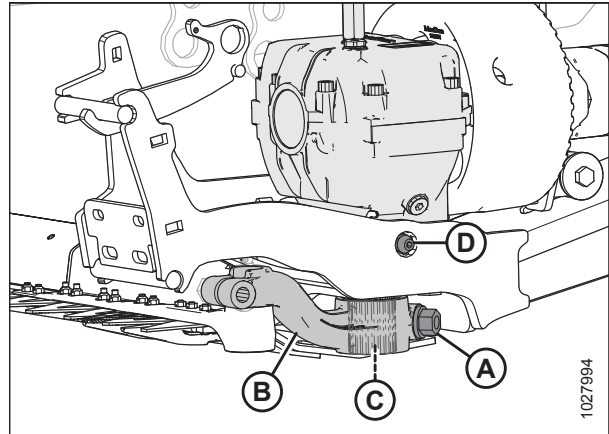


Figure 5.168: Knife Drive Box

14. Remove three bolts (A) that secure flywheel (B) to the motor hub.

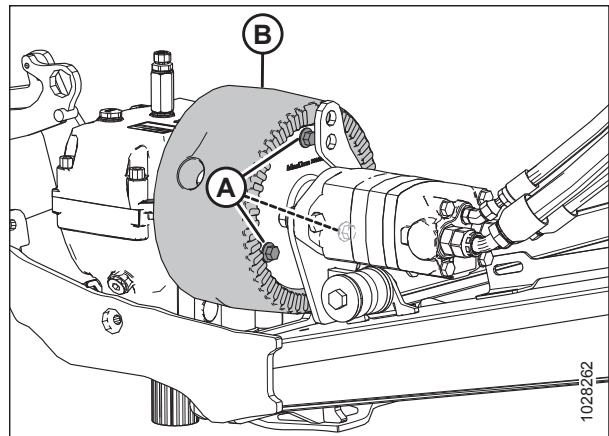


Figure 5.169: Knife Drive Assembly

15. Remove bolt (A) at rubber isolator (B). Note the orientation of the washers and retain all hardware.

**NOTE:**

It is not necessary to disconnect the hydraulic hoses from the motor.

16. Separate motor assembly (C) from the flywheel and set motor assembly out of the way.

**NOTE:**

The motor needs to be moved aside to allow enough clearance to lift up the knife drive box and flywheel.

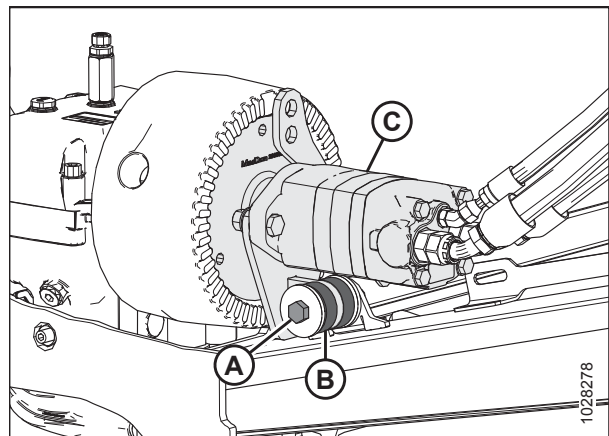


Figure 5.170: Knife Drive Assembly

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

17. Remove four knife drive box mounting bolts (A) and (B).

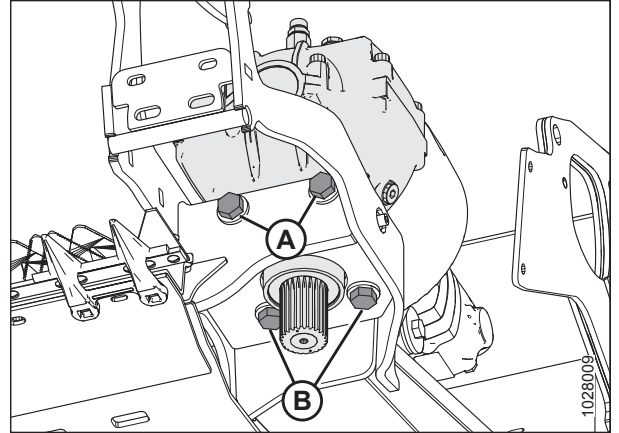


Figure 5.171: Knife Drive Box – View from Below

18. Note how many shims (A) are installed between knife drive box (B) and mounting plate (C). Retain the shims for reassembly.

**NOTE:**

Shims (A) are used to achieve correct clearance between knife guards and knife back bar.

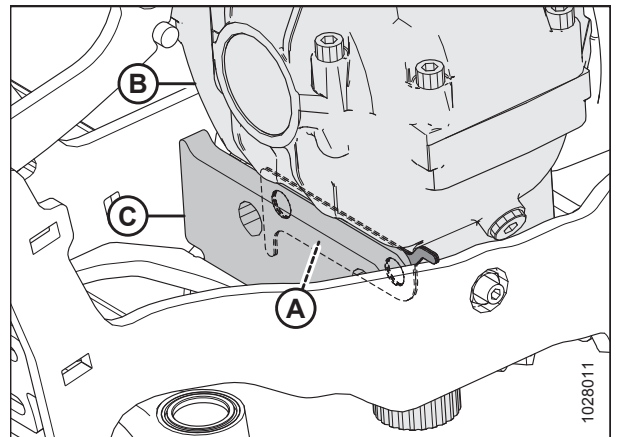


Figure 5.172: Knife Drive Box Shims

19. Hook a strap through hole (A) in flywheel (B), and use a lifting device to remove the knife drive box and flywheel from the header.

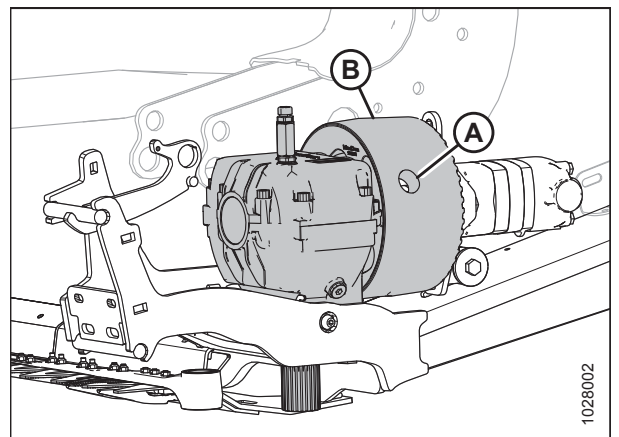


Figure 5.173: Knife Drive

*Removing Knife Drive Box Flywheel*

Before separating the flywheel from the knife drive box, remove the knife drive box from the header. For instructions, refer to *Removing Knife Drive Box*, page 515.

1. Loosen nut (A) and bolt (B) that clamp flywheel (C) to the knife drive box. Access nut (A) through hole (D) in flywheel.
2. Remove bolt, nut, and washer. Retain hardware for reassembly.
3. Using a three-jaw puller, remove the flywheel from the knife drive box.

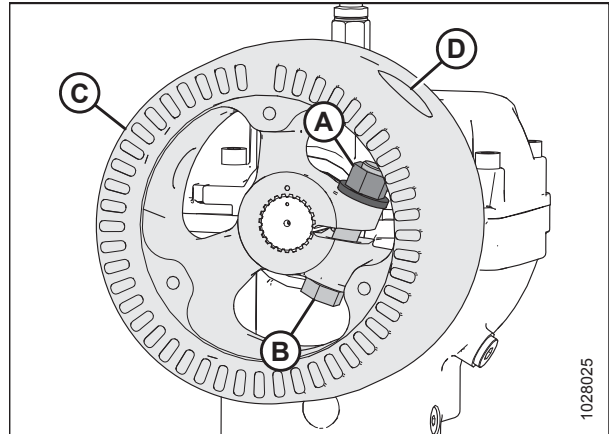


Figure 5.174: Knife Drive Box and Flywheel

**NOTE:**

If a three-jaw puller is not available, another method is to put a chisel or screwdriver in clamp slot (A) to open it slightly, and then tap the back of the flywheel to remove.

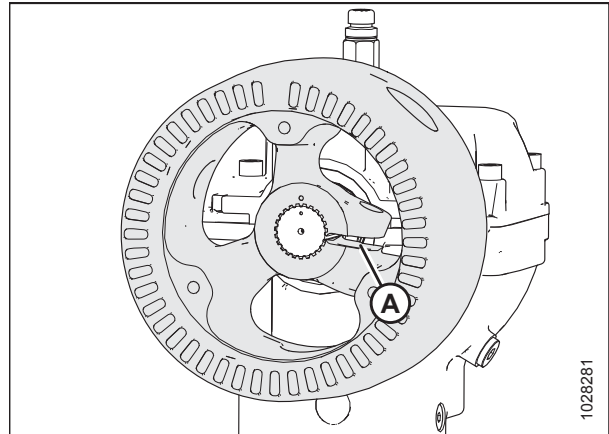


Figure 5.175: Knife Drive Box and Flywheel

*Installing Knife Drive Box Flywheel*

1. Ensure the splines and bores on input shaft and flywheel are free of paint, oil, and solvents.
2. Apply two bands (A) of retaining compound (Loctite® 603 or equivalent) to the knife drive box input shaft as shown (one band at the end of the shaft and the second band in the middle).

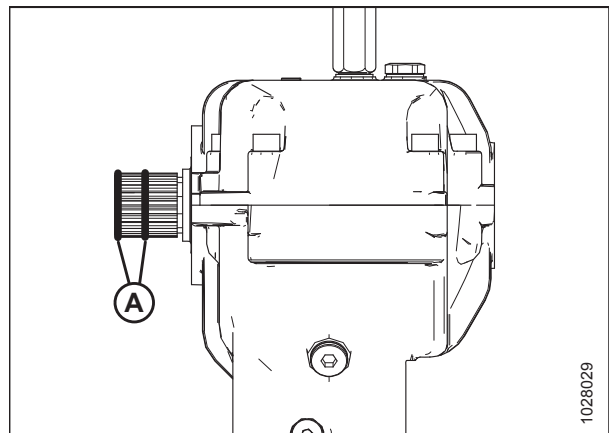


Figure 5.176: Knife Drive Box

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

3. Line up index mark (A) on the flywheel with index mark (B) on the knife drive box.
4. Press flywheel onto input shaft (C) until flywheel is flush with the end of the shaft.

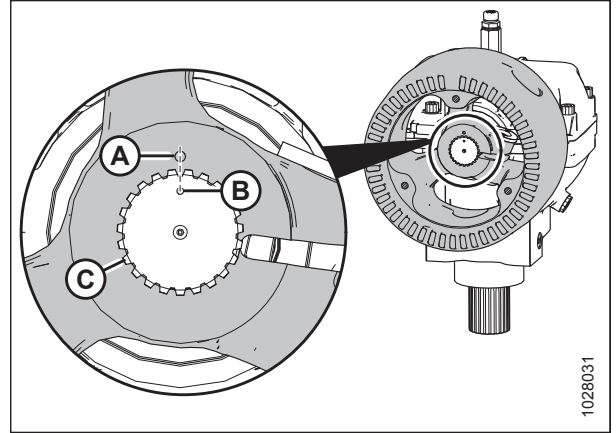


Figure 5.177: Flywheel Alignment

5. Secure flywheel (C) to the knife drive box with a M16 x 90 mm hex bolt (B), and M16 top lock hex nut (A). Torque bolt to 220 Nm (162 lbf-ft). Use access hole (D) in flywheel to tighten the hardware.

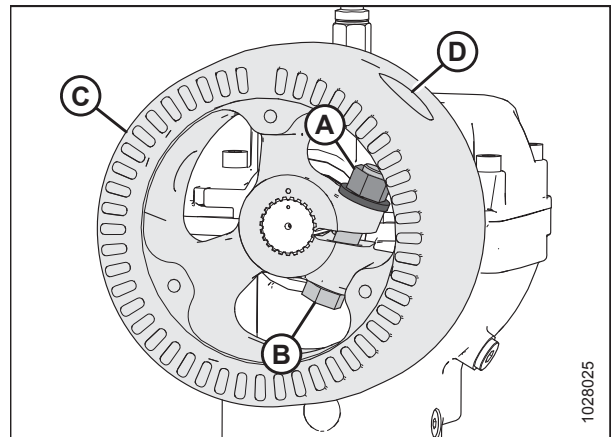


Figure 5.178: Knife Drive Box and Flywheel

### Installing Knife Drive Box

1. Install knife drive box (A) onto flywheel (B). For instructions, refer to [Installing Knife Drive Box Flywheel, page 518](#).

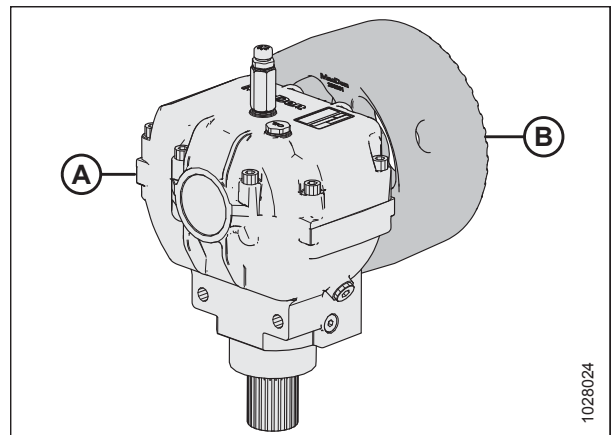


Figure 5.179: Knife Drive Box and Flywheel

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

- Hook a strap through hole (A) in flywheel (B), and use a lifting device to position the knife drive box and flywheel onto the header mount.

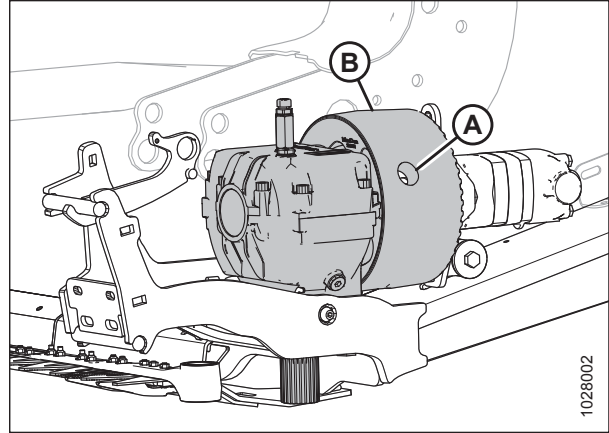


Figure 5.180: Knife Drive Box and Flywheel

- Position retained shims (A) between knife drive box (B) and mounting plate (C). Install the same number of shims used before disassembly.

**NOTE:**

Shims (A) are used to achieve correct clearance between knife guards and knife back bar.

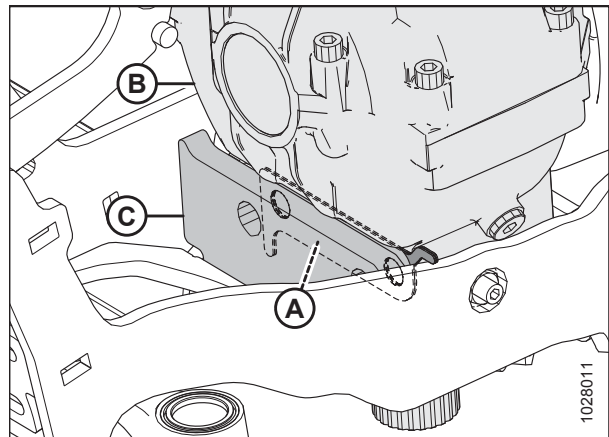


Figure 5.181: Knife Drive Box Shims

- Attach the knife drive box to the frame using four M16 x 55 mm hex bolts and washers (two bolts [B] on the front, and two bolts [A] on the bottom). Snug bottom bolts first to ensure proper contact with bottom mounting surface, then snug the front bolts.
- Before torquing the bolts, snug set screw (C) to ensure the knife drive box is in the correct position.
- Torque hardware in the following order:
  - Bottom bolts (A) to 343 Nm (253 lbf-ft)
  - Front bolts (B) to 343 Nm (253 lbf-ft)
  - Set screw (C) to 60 Nm (44 lbf-ft)
  - Jam nut (D) to 50 Nm (37 lbf-ft)

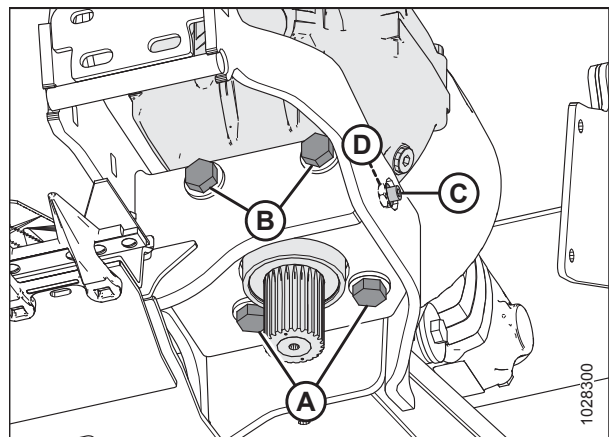


Figure 5.182: Knife Drive Box – Bottom View



## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

- Attach the motor hub to flywheel (B) using three M10 x 30 mm hex flange bolts (A). Apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) to the bolt threads.
- Torque bolts (A) to 75 Nm (55 lbf-ft).

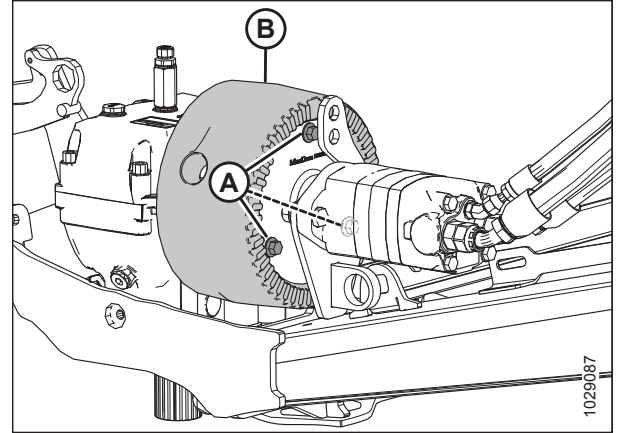


Figure 5.183: Knife Drive Motor

- Attach motor assembly (A) to the header using retained bolt (B), rubber isolator (C), two washers (D), washer (E) and nut (F). Ensure the hardware is installed in the correct sequence as shown in the illustration. Install the large half of the rubber isolator on the inboard side.
- Torque bolt (B) to 95 Nm (70 lbf-ft).

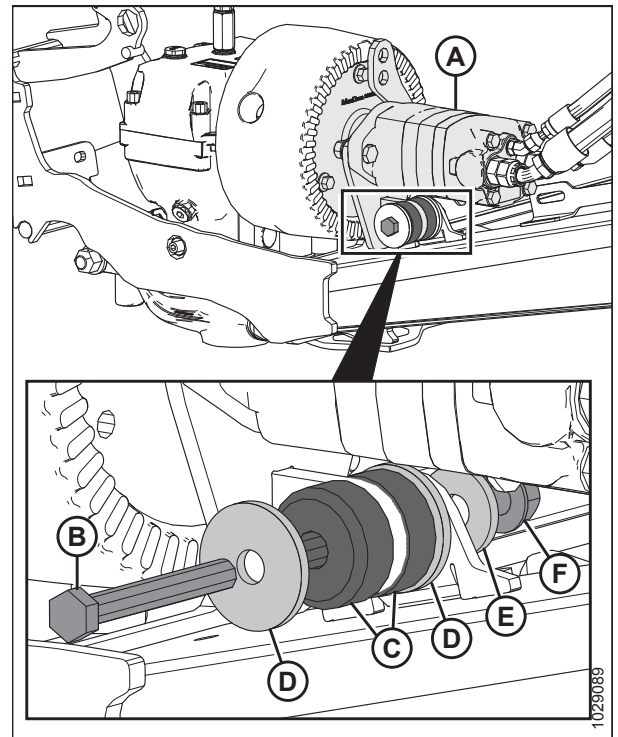


Figure 5.184: Knife Drive Motor

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

11. Apply two bands (A) of retaining compound (Loctite® 603 or equivalent) to the output shaft as shown (one band at the end of the output shaft and the second band in the middle).
12. Line up the index marks on drive arm (B) and the output shaft, and slide the arm onto the output shaft. Rotate the flywheel to ensure the splines are properly aligned and the drive arm clears the frame on the inboard stroke.

**NOTE:**

Knife drive arm (B) is shown transparent in illustration.

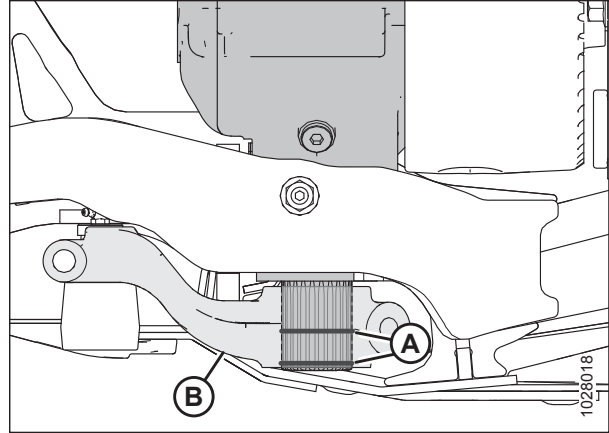


Figure 5.185: Knife Drive Box

13. Position drive arm (A) to the farthest outboard position.
14. Move drive arm (A) up or down on the splined shaft until it is almost contacting knifehead (B) (exact clearance [C] is set during the knifehead pin installation).

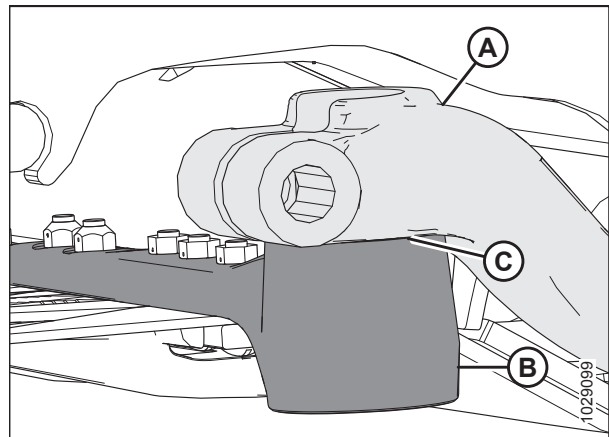


Figure 5.186: Knifehead

15. Slide the knife into place and align the knifehead with drive arm (A).
16. Ensure bearing cavity (B) is filled with grease prior to installing the knifehead pin to prevent any air from getting trapped in the cavity.

**NOTE:**

For easier installation of the knifehead pin, remove the grease fitting from the pin first.

17. Install knifehead pin (C) through the drive arm and into the knifehead.
18. Position the pin so that groove (D) is 2 mm (5/64 in.) above the drive arm.
19. Stroke knife inboard and position drive arm (A) so that there is 0.2–1.2 mm (1/64–3/64 in.) clearance (E) between drive arm and the knifehead.

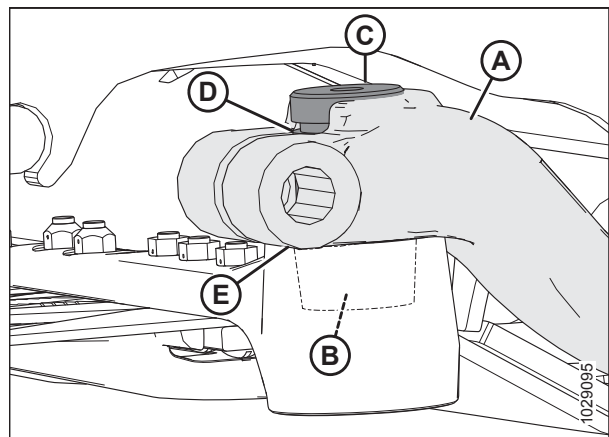


Figure 5.187: Knifehead

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

- Secure pin with M16 x 85 mm hex bolt (A) and hex nut (B). Install the bolt from the inboard side of the arm. Torque bolt to 220 Nm (162 lbf-ft).

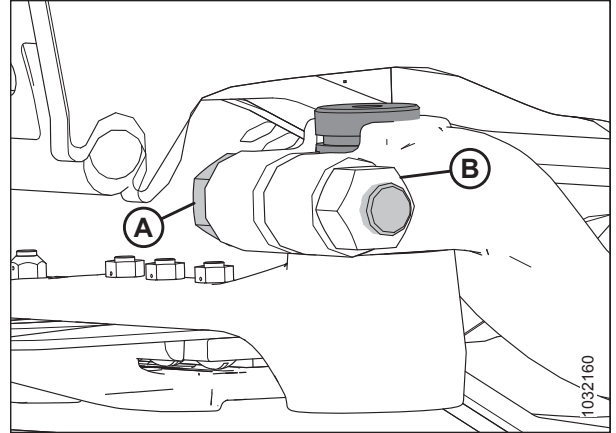


Figure 5.188: Knife Drive Arm

- Install M16 x 100 mm hex bolt (A) and hex nut (B). Install the bolt from the inboard side of the arm. Torque bolt to 220 Nm (162 lbf-ft).

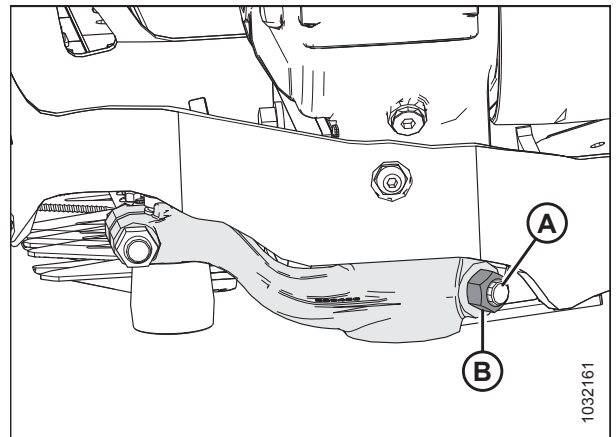


Figure 5.189: Knife Drive Arm

- Reinstall grease fitting (A) (if previously removed), and slowly apply grease to the knifehead until slight downward movement of the knifehead is observed.

### NOTE:

If air is trapped in the bearing cavity, the knifehead will begin to move down before it's filled with grease.

### IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** overgrease the knifehead. Overgreasing leads to knife misalignment, causing excessive heating of guards and overloading of drive systems. If overgreasing occurs, remove the grease fitting to release pressure.

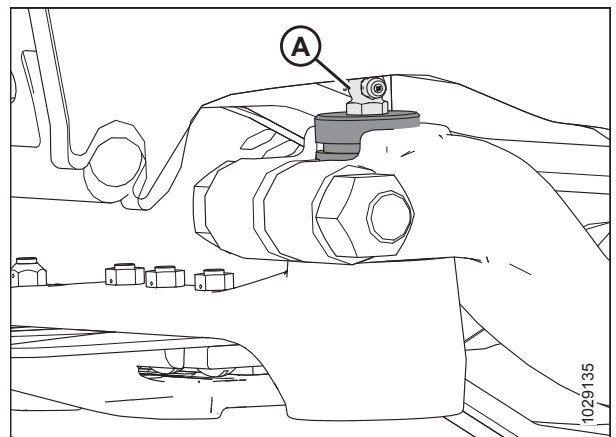


Figure 5.190: Knifehead

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

23. Move the knife drive arm to the mid-stroke position, and ensure the knife back bar doesn't contact the front of first guard (A).
24. If the knife back bar contacts the front of the first guard, remove bolts (B), reposition the guard forward, and reinstall the bolts. Torque bolts to 100 Nm (74 lbf-ft). If clearance is not achieved, then additional shims are required between the knife drive box and the mounting plate. Contact your MacDon Dealer.

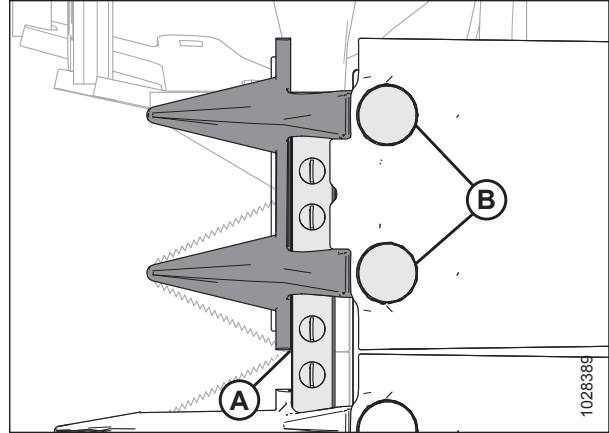


Figure 5.191: First Knife Guard – View from below Knife

### Changing Oil in Knife Drive Box

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before making adjustments to the machine.

Change the knife drive box lubricant after the first 50 hours of operation and every 1000 hours (or 3 years) thereafter.

1. Shut down the combine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Raise the header and place a container large enough to hold approximately 1.5 L (0.4 US gal) under the knife drive box to collect the oil.
3. Open the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 33](#).
4. Remove dipstick (A) and drain plug (C).
5. Allow the oil to drain from the knife drive box and into the container placed below it.
6. Reinstall drain plug (C).
7. Add 1.5 L (0.4 US gal) of oil to the knife drive box. Refer to the inside back cover for recommended fluids and lubricants.

#### NOTE:

Check oil level with top of knife drive box horizontal and with the oil level dipstick (A) screwed in.

8. Check that oil level is within range (B).
9. Close the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Closing Header Endshields, page 34](#).

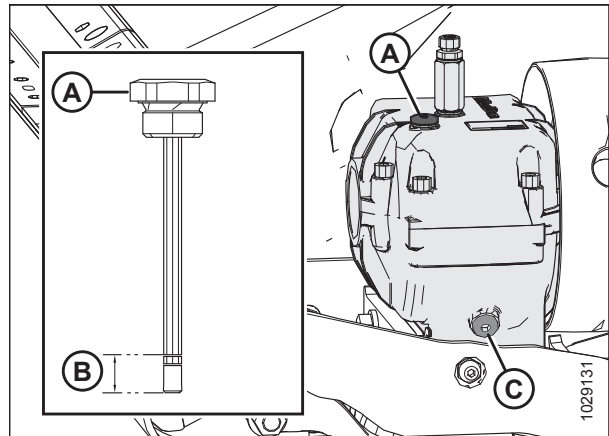


Figure 5.192: Knife Drive Box

## 5.9.2 Knife Drive Motor

### Removing Knife Drive Motor

 **WARNING**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before adjusting machine.

1. Lower the header to the ground.
2. Shut down the engine and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Open the endshield. For instructions, refer to *Opening Header Endshields*, page 33.
4. Disconnect the hydraulic hoses and remove fittings from the back of knife drive motor (A). Mark hose locations for reassembly and plug the hoses.

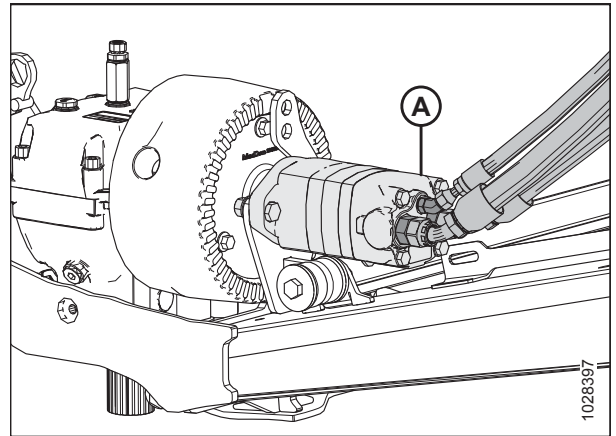


Figure 5.193: Knife Drive Motor

5. Remove three bolts (A) that secure the motor hub to flywheel (B).

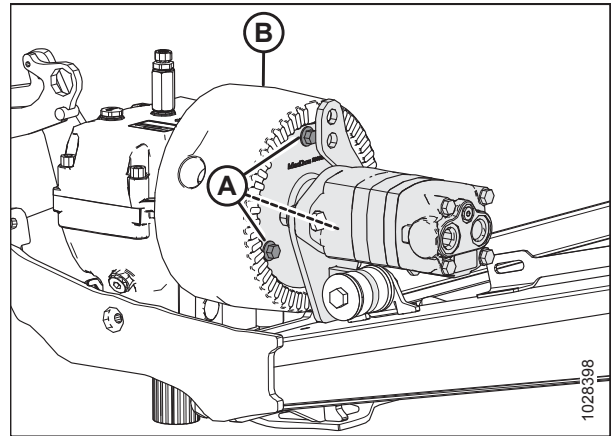


Figure 5.194: Knife Drive Motor

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

6. Remove bolt (A) at rubber isolator (B). Note the orientation of the washers and retain all hardware.
7. Remove motor assembly (C) from the flywheel.

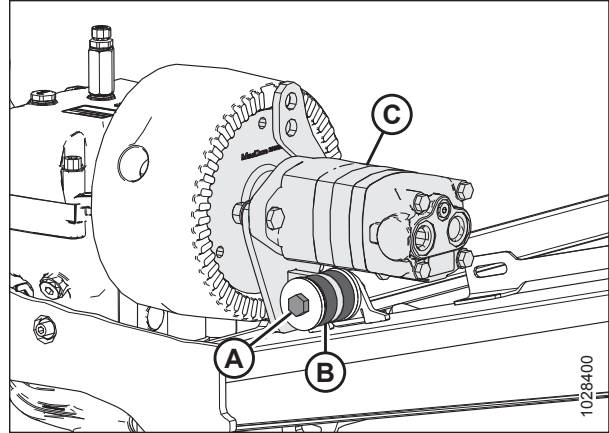


Figure 5.195: Knife Drive Motor

8. Remove two bolts (A) that secure the motor to bracket (B).

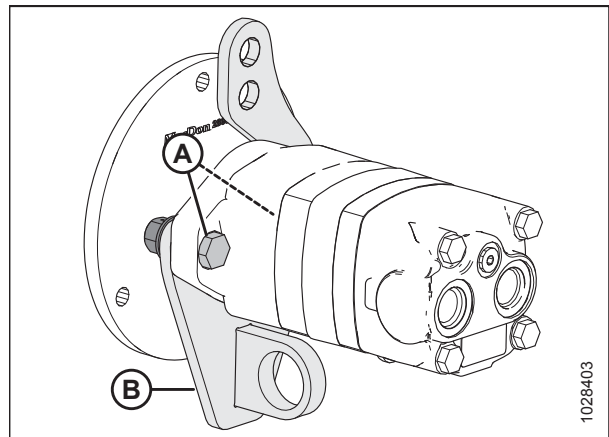


Figure 5.196: Knife Drive Motor

9. Remove cotter pin (A).
10. Remove castle nut (B) that secures the motor to hub (C).
11. Use a gear puller to remove hub (C) from the motor.

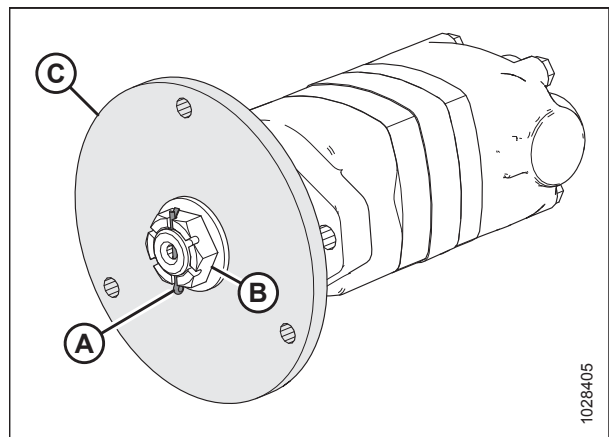


Figure 5.197: Knife Drive Motor

*Installing Knife Drive Motor*

1. Install washer (A) and castle nut (B) to secure the knife drive motor to hub (C). Torque castle nut to 200 Nm (148 lbf-ft).
2. Install cotter pin (A) to secure castle nut.

**NOTE:**

The castle nut can be tightened to the next hole if unable to install cotter pin (A).

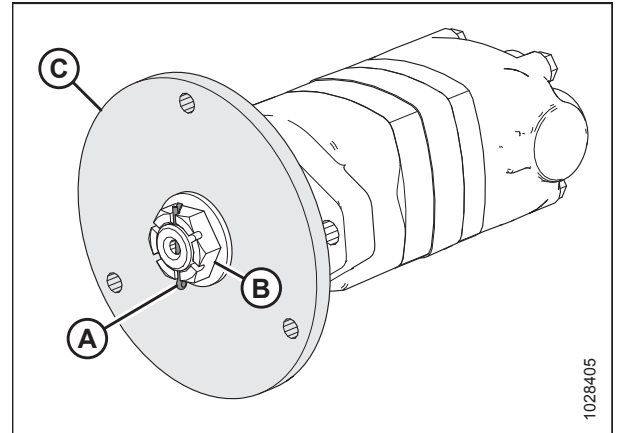


Figure 5.198: Knife Drive Motor

3. Install motor onto bracket (A) using two bolts (B) and nuts. Ensure bracket (A) and motor ports are oriented as shown in illustration.

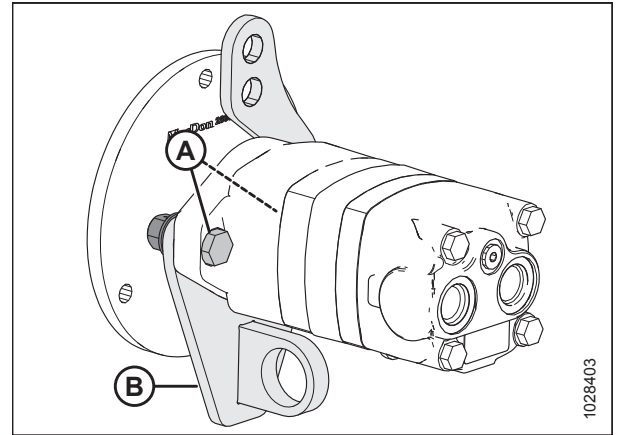


Figure 5.199: Knife Drive Motor

4. Attach the motor hub to flywheel (B) using three M10 x 30 mm hex flange bolts (A). Apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) to the bolt threads.
5. Torque bolts (A) to 75 Nm (55 lbf-ft).

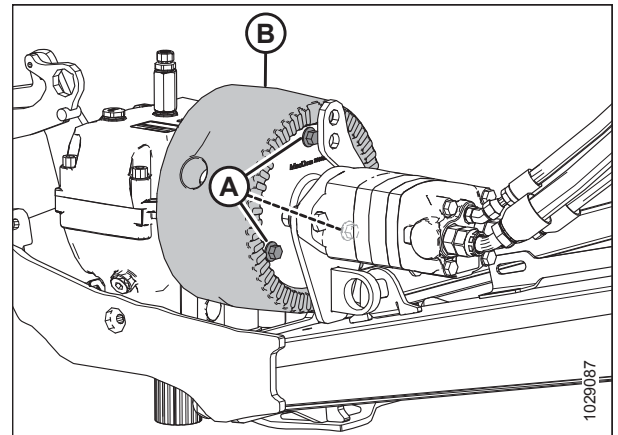


Figure 5.200: Knife Drive Motor

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

6. Attach motor assembly (A) to the header using retained bolt (B), rubber isolator (C), two washers (D), washer (E) and nut (F). Ensure the hardware is installed in the correct sequence as shown in the illustration. Install the large half of the rubber isolator on the inboard side.
7. Torque bolt (B) to 95 Nm (70 lbf-ft).
8. Install fittings and connect the hydraulic hoses to the back of the motor. Ensure the hoses are connected to the correct ports.
9. Close the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Closing Header Endshields, page 34](#).

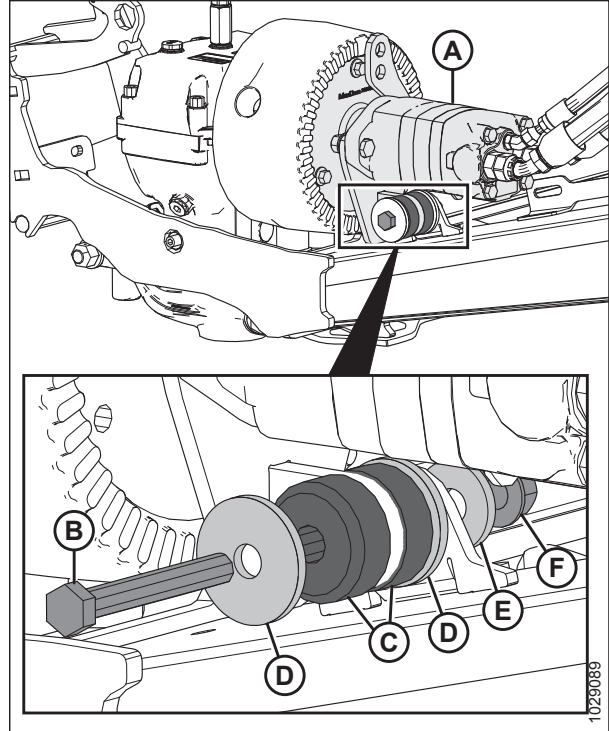


Figure 5.201: Knife Drive Motor



## 5.10 Feed Draper

The feed draper is located on FM200 Float Module and conveys cut crop to the auger.

### CAUTION

To avoid personal injury, before servicing machine or opening drive covers, refer to [5.1 Preparing Machine for Servicing, page 417](#).

### 5.10.1 Replacing Feed Draper

Replace draper if torn, cracked, or missing slats.

### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Raise the reel fully.
3. Raise the header fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Engage the header safety props.
6. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 31](#).
7. Remove five screws (A), retainer (B), and draper seal (C) to access the draper. Repeat on the opposite side of the feed deck.

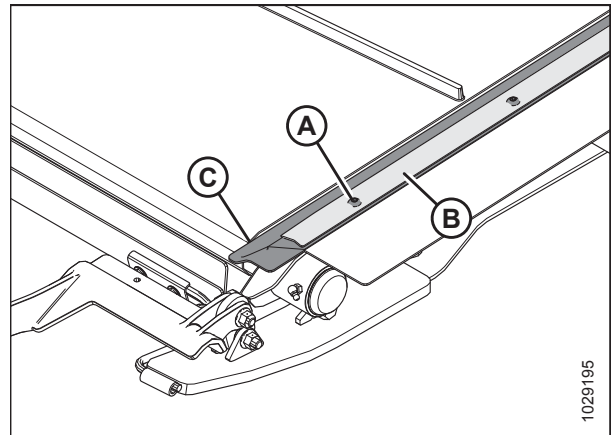


Figure 5.202: Draper Seal

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

- Loosen jam nut (A) and turn bolt (B) counterclockwise to release the draper tension. Repeat at the opposite side of the header.

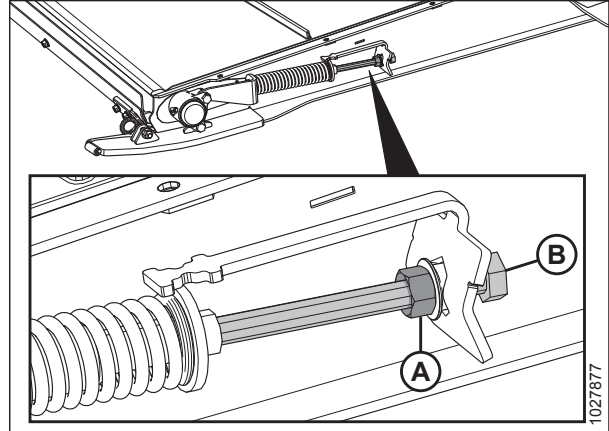


Figure 5.203: Feed Draper Tensioner

- Remove bolt (A) from idler roller casting (B) on both sides of the feed deck.
- Move the idler roller back within the cutout in the frame to aid in draper replacement.

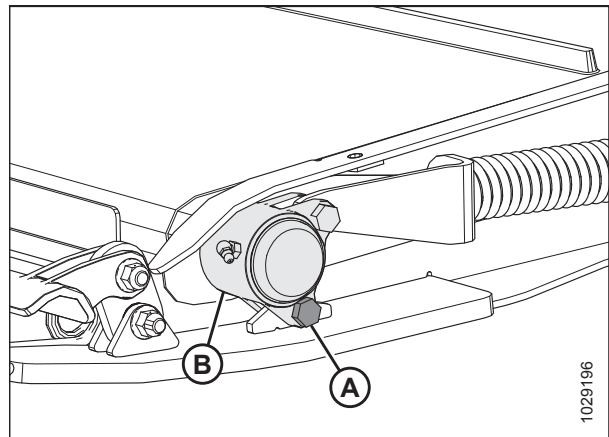


Figure 5.204: Idler Roller

- Unlatch feed deck pan handle (A) from handle latch supports (B) on both sides of the feed deck. This will drop the door down and allow access to feed deck draper and rollers.

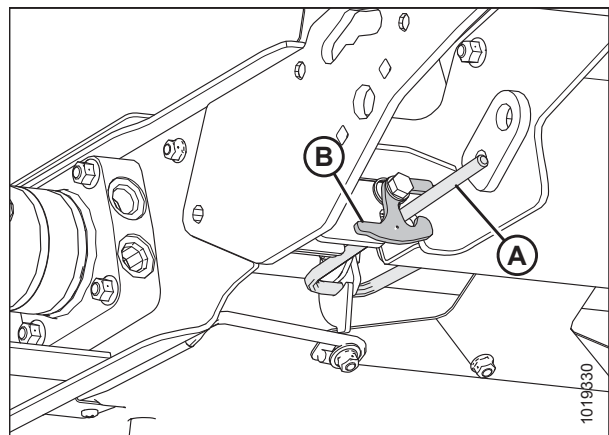


Figure 5.205: Feed Deck Pan Handle and Left Side Pan Handle Latch

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

12. Remove nuts and screws (A), and remove draper connector straps (B).
13. Pull the draper from the deck.

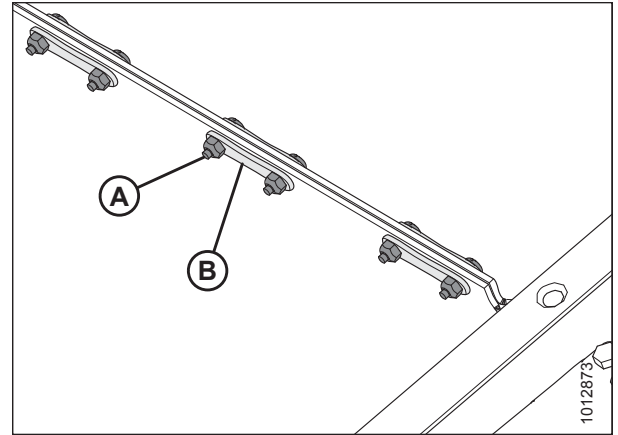


Figure 5.206: Draper Connector

14. Install the new draper over drive roller (A). Make sure the draper guides fit into drive roller grooves (B).
15. Pull draper along bottom of feed deck and over idler roller (C).

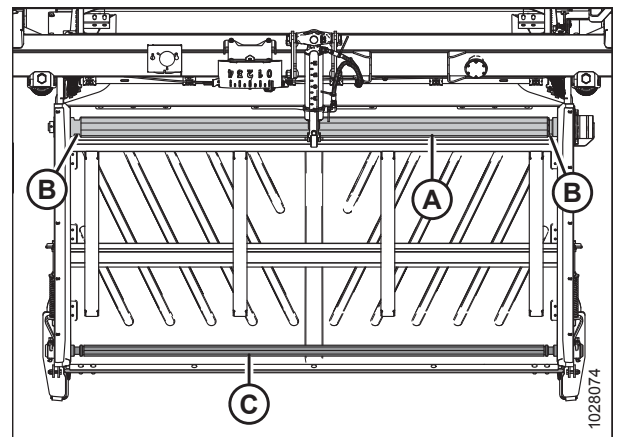


Figure 5.207: Float Module Feed Draper

16. Connect the draper joint with connector straps (B) and secure with nuts and screws (A). Ensure the screw heads face towards the rear of the deck, and tighten only until the end of the screws are flush with the nuts.

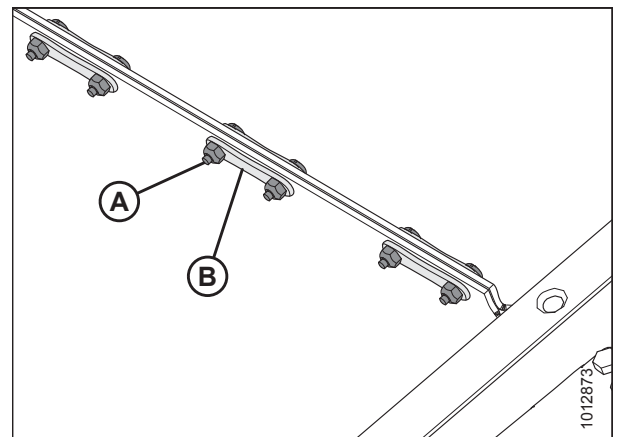


Figure 5.208: Draper Connector Straps

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

17. Move idler back to operating position and reinstall bolt (A) to secure idler roller casting (B) to the frame. Repeat on opposite side of the feed deck.
18. Adjust the draper tension. For instructions, refer to [5.10.2 Checking and Adjusting Feed Draper Tension](#), page 533.

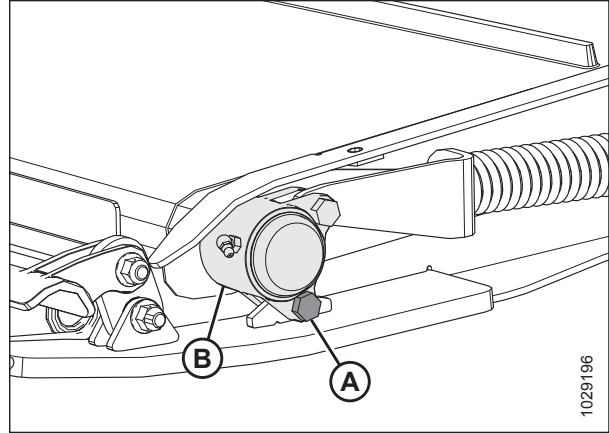


Figure 5.209: Idler Roller

19. Close the feed deck by latching pan handle latch support (B) to feed deck pan handle (A) at both sides of the feed deck.

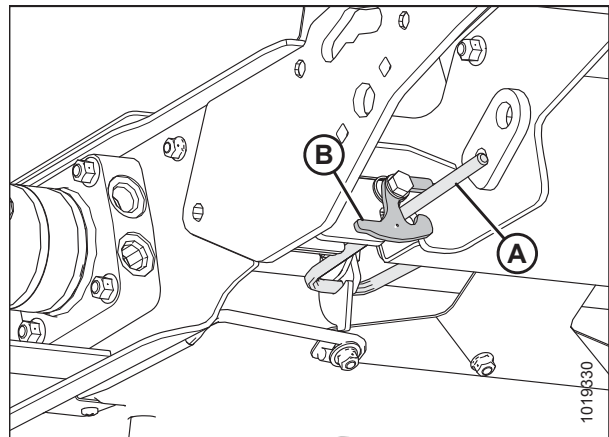


Figure 5.210: Feed Deck Pan Handle and Left Side Pan Handle Latch

20. Reinstall draper seal (C), and secure with retainer (B) and five screws (A). Repeat on the opposite side of the feed deck.

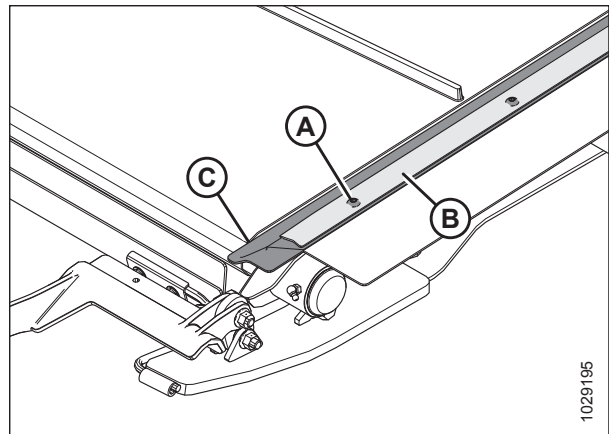


Figure 5.211: Draper Seal

## 5.10.2 Checking and Adjusting Feed Draper Tension

### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Raise the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the header safety props.
5. Ensure the draper guide (the rubber track on the underside of the draper) is properly engaged in the groove on the drive roller and the idler roller is between the guides.

**NOTE:**

Illustrations show the left side of the float module. The right side is opposite.

**NOTE:**

The default position of spring retainer disc (A) is centered in the U shape on indicator (B); however, the position of the disc varies with draper tracking adjustment at the factory.

6. Check the position of spring retainer disc (A). If the feed draper tracks properly and the spring retainers on both sides of the draper are correctly positioned, then no adjustment is necessary.
7. If adjustment is necessary, proceed to Step 8, page 533.

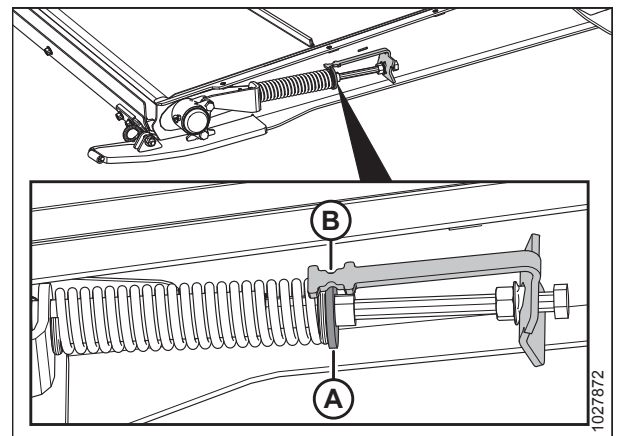


Figure 5.212: Feed Draper Tensioner

**Adjusting draper tension:**

8. Adjust the draper tension by loosening jam nut (A) and turning bolt (B) clockwise to increase draper tension or counterclockwise to decrease draper tension. Retainer disc (C) should be in the middle of indicator (D).

**IMPORTANT:**

For small tension adjustments, you may need to only adjust one side of the draper. For larger tension adjustments and to avoid uneven draper tracking, you may need to adjust both sides of the draper equally.

9. If the draper is not tracking properly, retainer disc (C) can be adjusted so that it is **NOT** in the middle of indicator (D), but within the following range:
  - Loosened to 3 mm (1/8 in.) Retainer disc (C) will move towards the front of the deck from center of indicator (D).

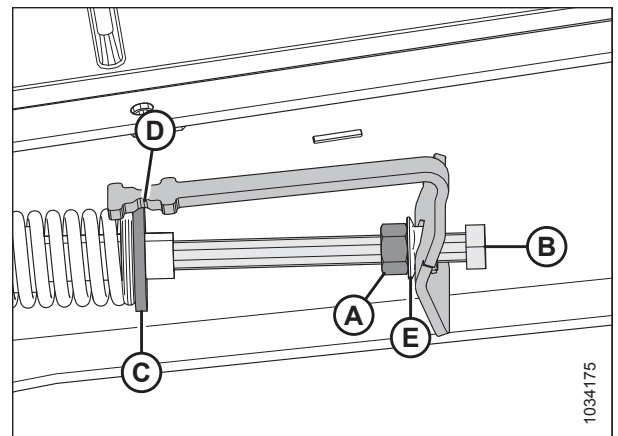


Figure 5.213: Feed Draper Tensioner – Left Side

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

- Tightened to 6 mm (1/4 in.) Retainer disc (C) will move towards the back of the deck from the center of indicator (D).

### IMPORTANT:

For small tension adjustments, you may need to only adjust one side of the draper. For larger tension adjustments and to avoid uneven draper tracking, you may need to adjust both sides of the draper equally.

10. Tighten jam nut (A). Ensure flange nut (E) is tight against the indicator bracket.

### 5.10.3 Feed Draper Drive Roller

This roller is powered and moves the draper on the float module, conveying crop to the auger.

#### *Removing Feed Draper Drive Roller*

### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Raise the reel fully.
3. Raise the header fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to *Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 31*.
6. Engage the header safety props.
7. Loosen jam nut (A) and turn bolt (B) counterclockwise to release the draper tension. Repeat at the opposite side of the header.

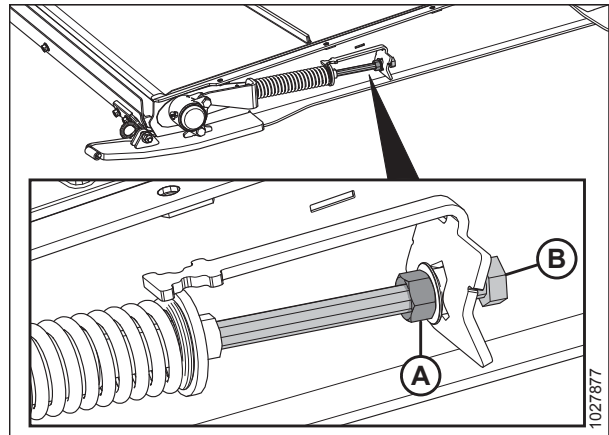


Figure 5.214: Feed Draper Tensioner

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

8. Remove nuts and screws (A), and remove draper connector straps (B).
9. Lift the sides of the draper to expose the rollers.

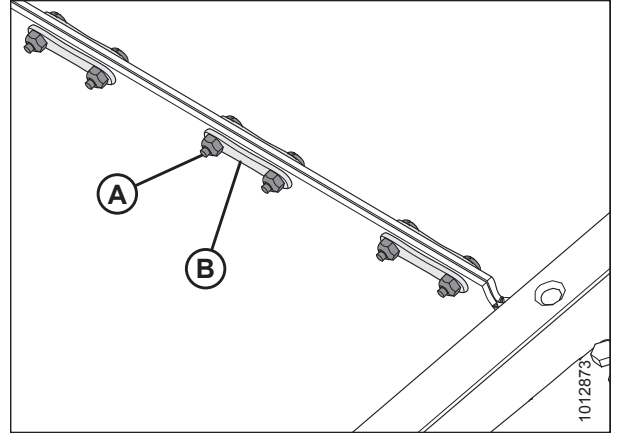


Figure 5.215: Draper Connector

10. On the right side of the deck, remove two nuts (A) and bolts from drive roller cover (B).

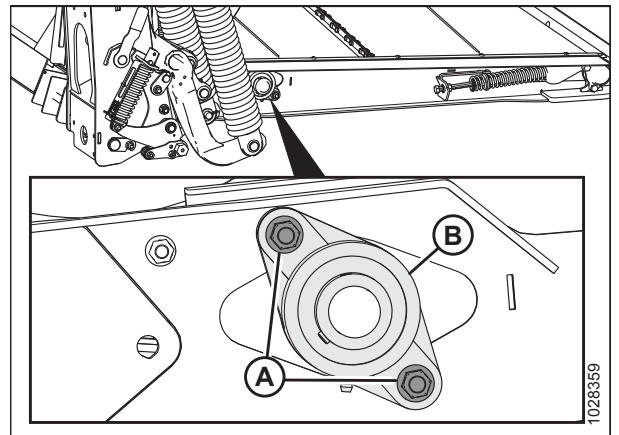


Figure 5.216: Drive Roller Bearing

11. Move drive roller cover plate (A) to the left.

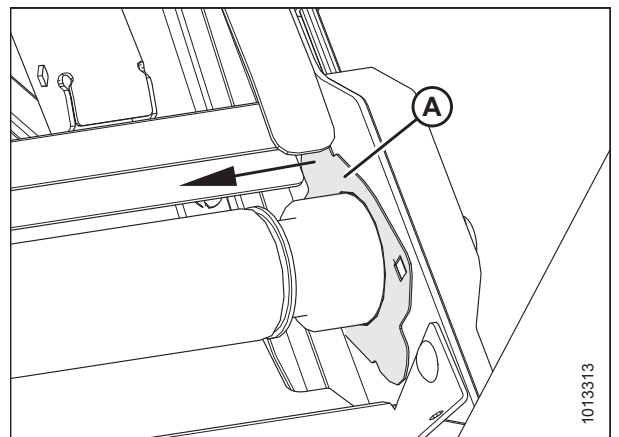


Figure 5.217: Drive Roller

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

- Slide drive roller (A) with bearing assembly (B) to the right until left end comes off of the motor spline.

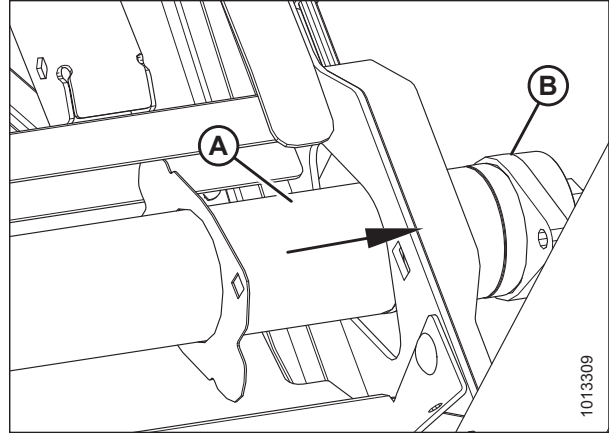


Figure 5.218: Drive Roller

- Lift left end out of the frame.
- Slide assembly (A) to the left, guiding bearing housing (B) through frame opening (C).
- Remove roller (A).

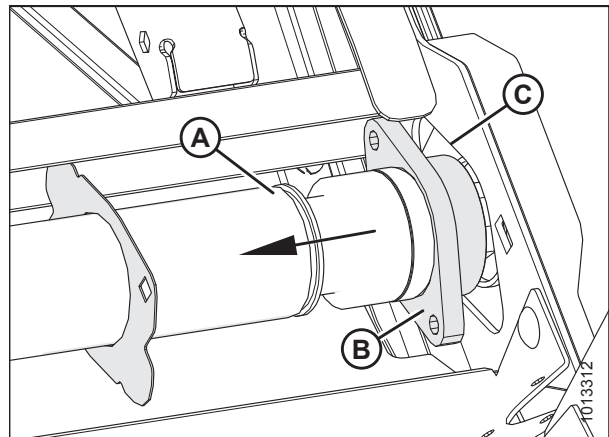


Figure 5.219: Drive Roller

### *Installing Feed Draper Drive Roller*

- Apply grease to the motor spline.
- Slide drive roller cover plate (A) onto right end of roller (B).
- Guide bearing end (C) of drive roller through frame opening (D).

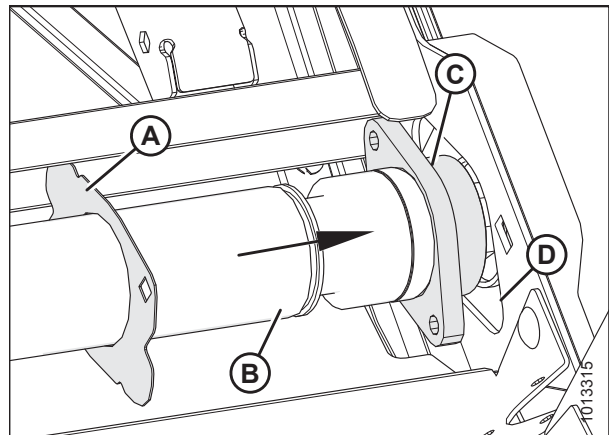


Figure 5.220: Drive Roller – Bearing End



## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

- Slide left end of drive roller (A) onto spline of motor (B).

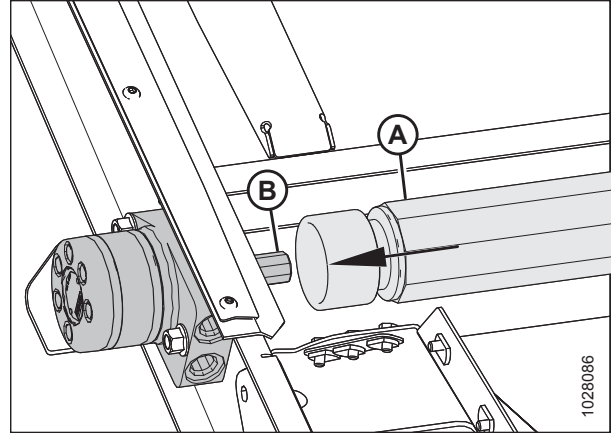


Figure 5.221: Motor

- Secure the bearing and housing (B) with the drive roller cover plate on the frame using two bolts and nuts (A).
- Install the feed deck draper. For instructions, refer to [5.10.1 Replacing Feed Draper, page 529](#).
- Tension the feed draper. For instructions, refer to [5.10.2 Checking and Adjusting Feed Draper Tension, page 533](#).

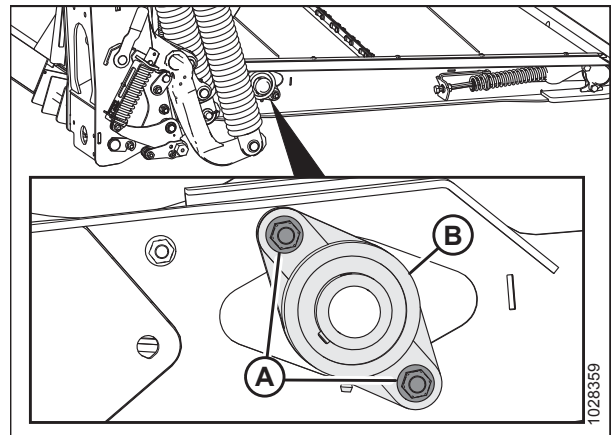


Figure 5.222: Drive Roller Bearing

### Removing Feed Draper Drive Roller Bearing

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

- Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
- Raise the reel fully.
- Raise the header fully.
- Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
- Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 31](#).
- Engage the header safety props.

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

7. Loosen jam nut (A) and turn bolt (B) counterclockwise to release the draper tension. Repeat at the opposite side of the header.

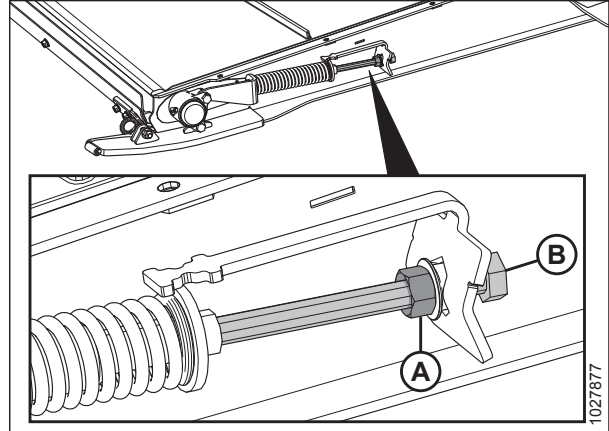


Figure 5.223: Feed Draper Tensioner

8. Loosen set screw (B) on bearing lock (A).
9. Using a hammer and punch, tap bearing lock (A) in the direction opposite to the auger rotation to release the lock.

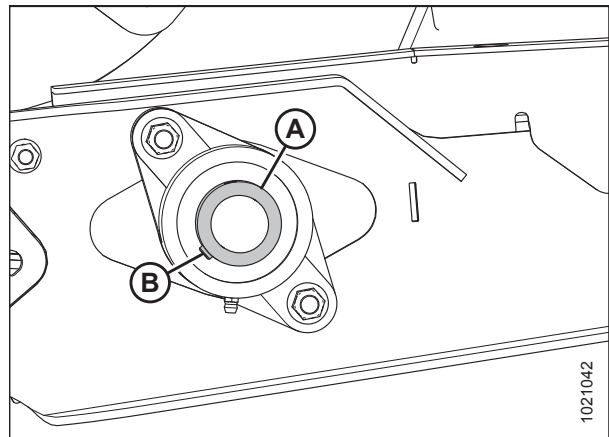


Figure 5.224: Feed Draper Drive Roller Bearing

10. Remove two nuts (A).

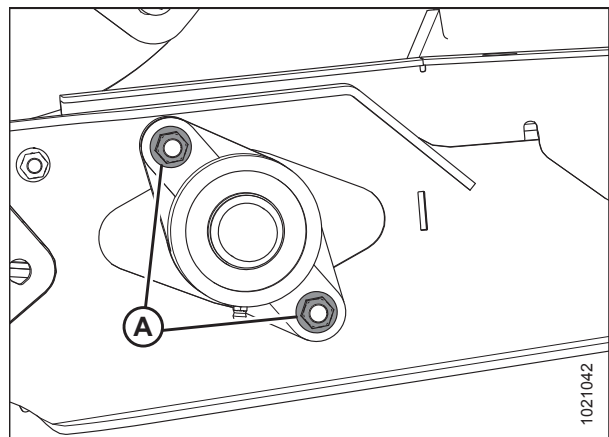


Figure 5.225: Feed Draper Drive Roller Bearing

11. Remove bearing housing (A).

**NOTE:**

If the bearing is seized on the shaft, it may be easier to remove the drive roller assembly. For instructions, refer to [Removing Feed Draper Drive Roller, page 534](#).

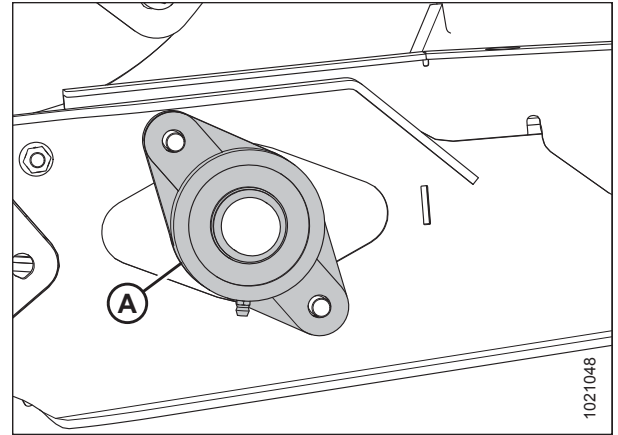


Figure 5.226: Feed Draper Drive Roller Bearing

*Installing Feed Draper Drive Roller Bearing*

1. Install drive roller bearing housing (A) onto shaft (B), and secure with two bolts and nuts (C).

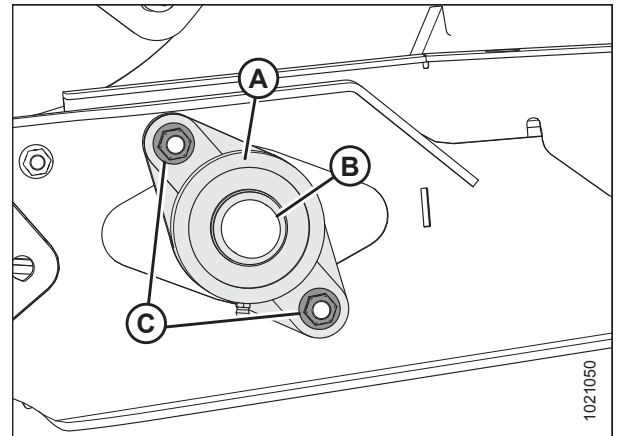


Figure 5.227: Feed Draper Drive Roller Bearing

2. Install bearing lock collar (A) onto the shaft.
3. Using a hammer and punch, tap the bearing lock in the direction of auger rotation to lock.
4. Tighten bearing lock set screw (B).
5. Tension the feed draper. For instructions, refer to [5.10.2 Checking and Adjusting Feed Draper Tension, page 533](#).

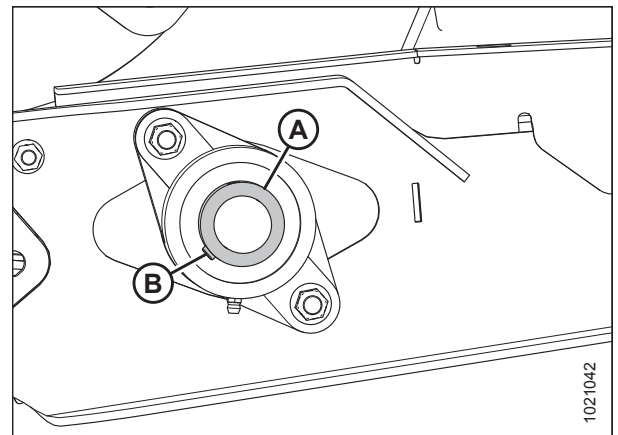


Figure 5.228: Feed Draper Drive Roller Bearing

### 5.10.4 Feed Draper Idler Roller

This roller is non-powered and driven by the feed draper drive roller. Like the drive roller, it conveys crop across the feed draper to the auger.

#### Removing Feed Draper Idler Roller

1. Engage the feeder house safety props. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Loosen jam nut (A) and turn bolt (B) counterclockwise to release the draper tension. Repeat at the opposite side of the header.

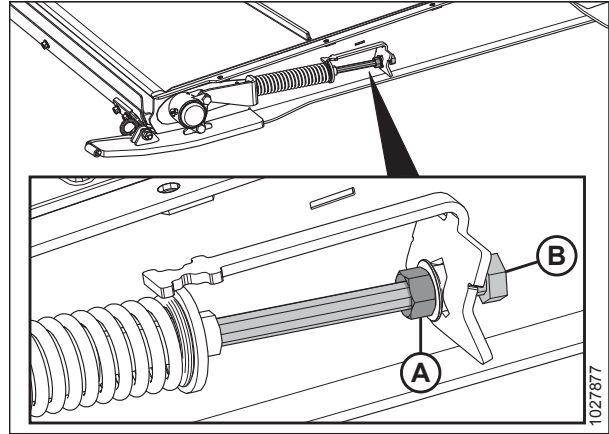


Figure 5.229: Feed Draper Tensioner

3. Remove nuts and screws (A), and remove draper connector straps (B).
4. Separate the draper.
5. Lower the front of the feed deck.

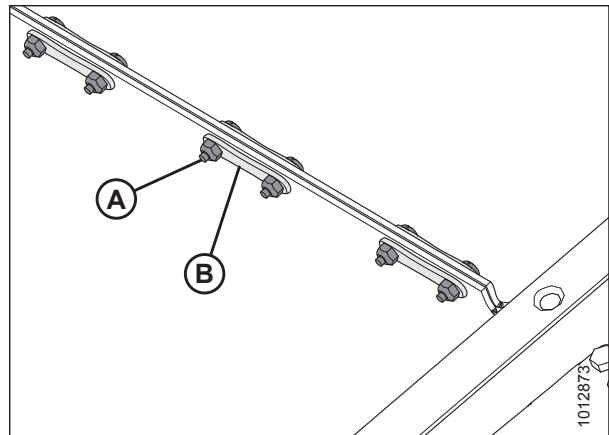


Figure 5.230: Draper Connector

6. Remove dust cap (A) and nut (B) from bearing housing (C).

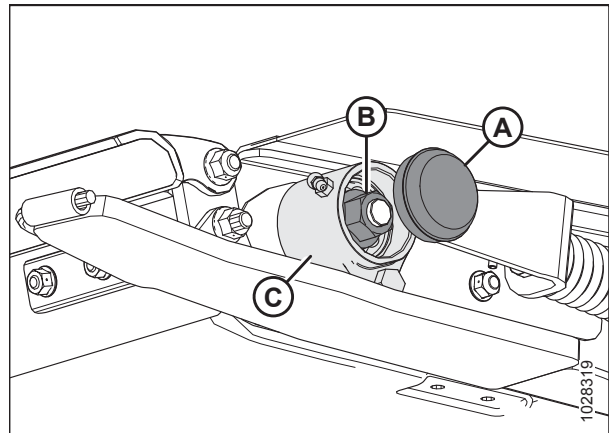


Figure 5.231: Idler Roller Bearing Housing

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

7. Remove two bolts (A) securing bearing housing (B) to the tensioner and deck skid.
8. Remove bearing housing (B) from the idler roller.
9. Repeat Step 6, page 540 to Step 8, page 541 on opposite side of the feed deck.

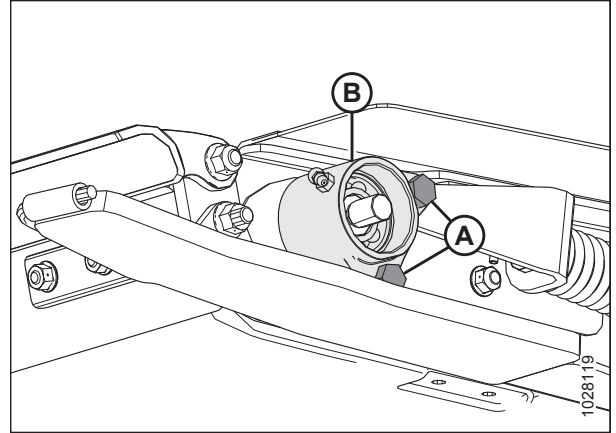


Figure 5.232: Idler Roller Bearing Housing

10. On one side of the deck frame, remove nut (A) and cover (B).

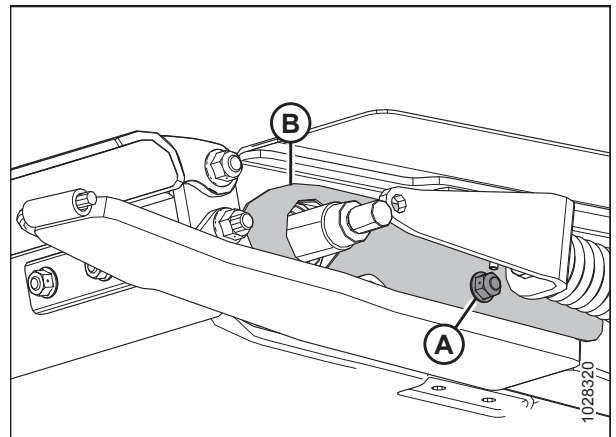


Figure 5.233: Idler Roller Cover

11. Slide idler roller (A) out through the cutout in the deck frame.

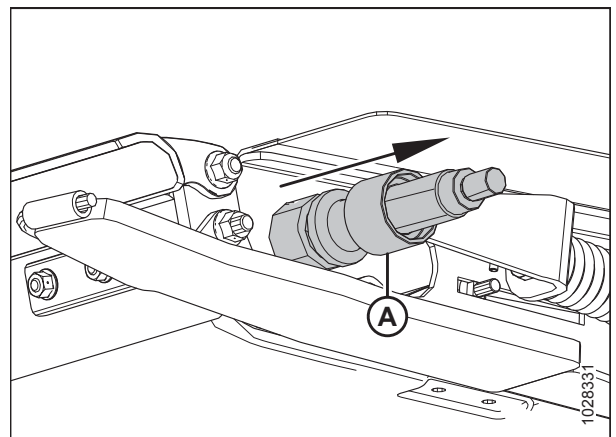


Figure 5.234: Idler Roller

*Installing Feed Draper Idler Roller*

1. Slide cover (A) over one end of the idler roller.
2. Brush idler roller shaft (B) with oil.
3. Carefully rotate bearing assembly (C) onto the shaft by hand to prevent seal damage.

**IMPORTANT:**

Ensure bearing assembly is square to the shaft to prevent seal damage during installation.

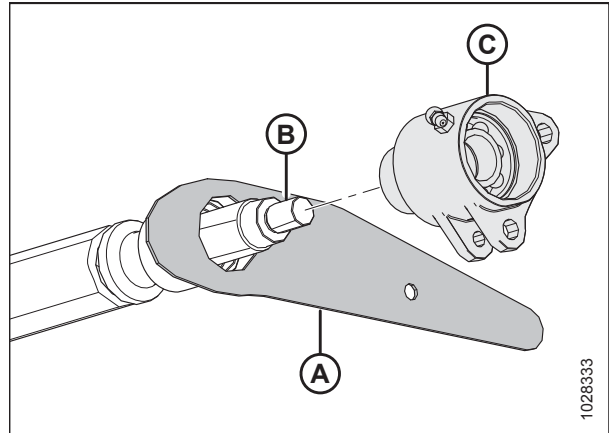


Figure 5.235: Idler Roller

4. After the bearing and both seals are seated around the shaft, install nut (A) and torque to 81 Nm (60 lbf-ft).

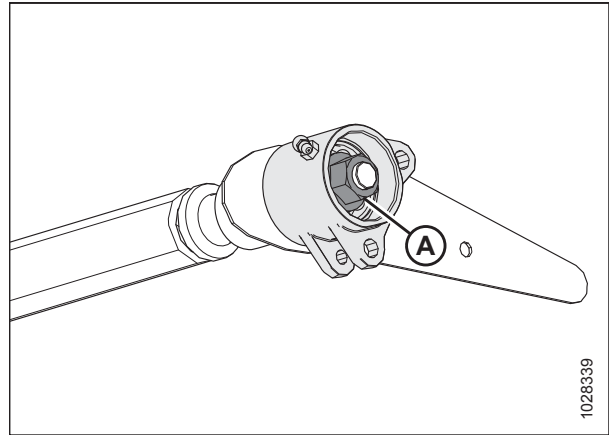


Figure 5.236: Idler Roller

5. Slide idler roller (A) through the cutout in the deck frame.

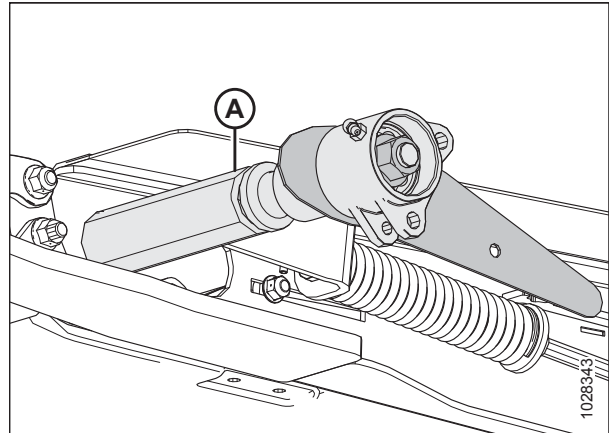


Figure 5.237: Feed Deck – Left Side

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

6. Install the bolt from inside of the feed deck to secure idler cover (B).
7. Install nut (B). Do **NOT** overtighten the nut. It should snug, as it holds the idler cover in place and must move with the idler roller.

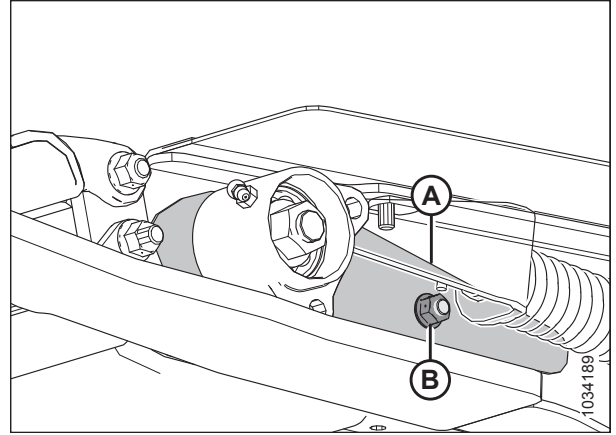


Figure 5.238: Idler Cover – Left Side

8. Slide the idler roller out through the cutout on the opposite side of the deck frame.
9. Brush idler roller shaft (A) with oil.
10. Carefully rotate bearing assembly (B) onto shaft (A) by hand to prevent seal damage.

### IMPORTANT:

Ensure bearing assembly is square to the shaft to prevent seal damage during installation.

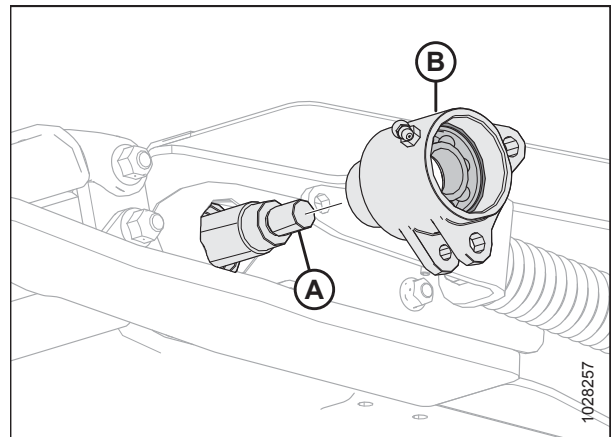


Figure 5.239: Feed Deck – Left Side

11. After the bearing and both seals are seated around the shaft, install nut (A) and torque to 81 Nm (60 lbf-ft).
12. Repeat on opposite side.

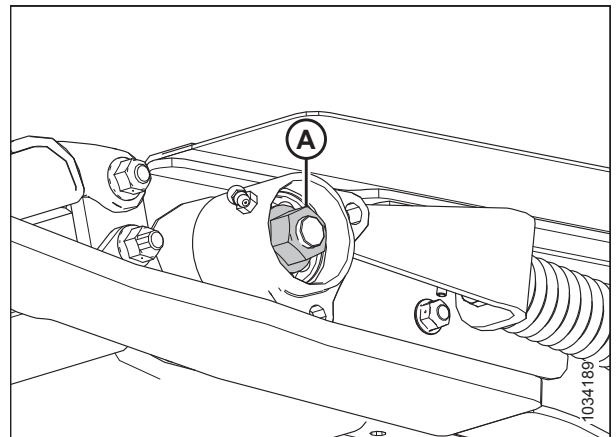


Figure 5.240: Feed Deck – Left Side

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

13. Rotate idler roller housing (A) until the holes in the lower tabs aligns with the hole in welded tab (B).
14. Insert bolt (C).
15. Align the hole in cast support (D) with the holes in the upper tab on idler roller housing (A).
16. Insert bolt (E).
17. Tighten bolts (C) and (E) until the hardware just touches the casting ears.

### IMPORTANT:

Do **NOT** fully tighten bolts as the cast tabs will break.

18. Repeat on opposite side.
19. Fill the bearing cavity with grease, and install dust cap (A) on both ends of the idler roller.
20. Repeat on opposite side.
21. Check that the grease fittings on both sides are working.

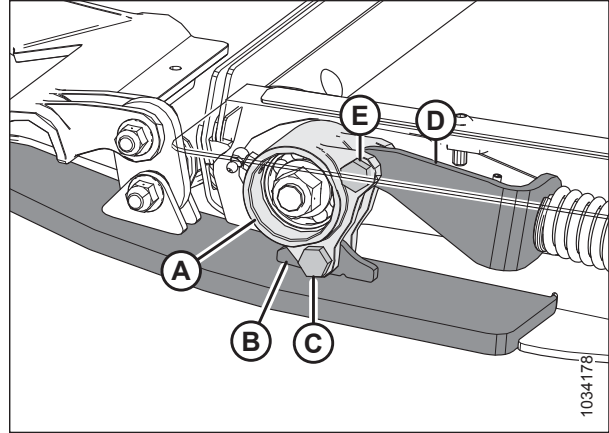


Figure 5.241: Idler Roller Bearing – Left Side

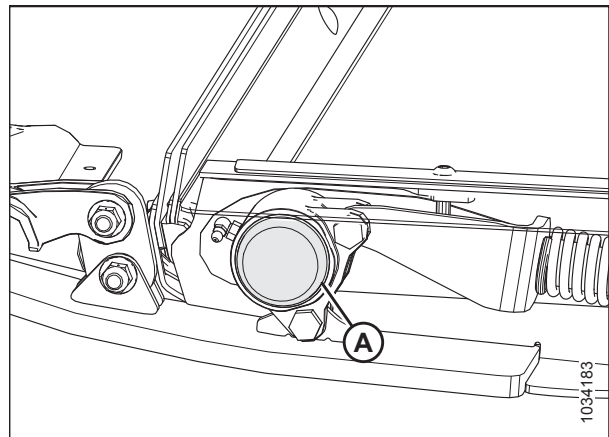


Figure 5.242: Feed Deck – Left Side

22. Close the feed draper and secure with connector straps (B), screws (A), and nuts.
23. Tension the feed draper. For instructions, refer to [5.10.2 Checking and Adjusting Feed Draper Tension, page 533](#).

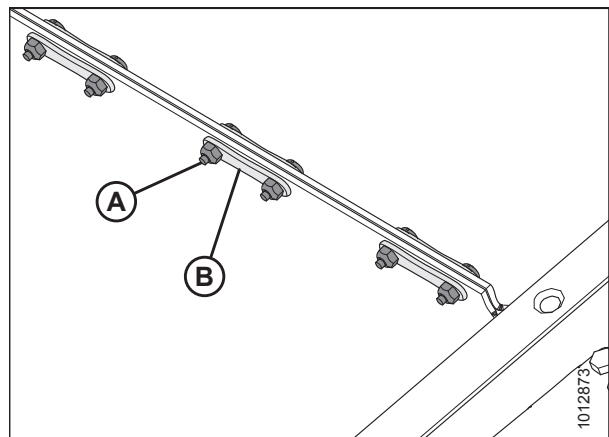


Figure 5.243: Draper Connector

### Replacing Feed Draper Idler Roller Bearing

#### NOTE:

Procedure is the same for both sides. Left side is shown.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Raise the reel fully.



## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

3. Raise the header fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Engage the header safety props.
6. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to *Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 31*.
7. Loosen jam nut (A) and turn bolt (B) counterclockwise to release the draper tension. Repeat at the opposite side of the header.

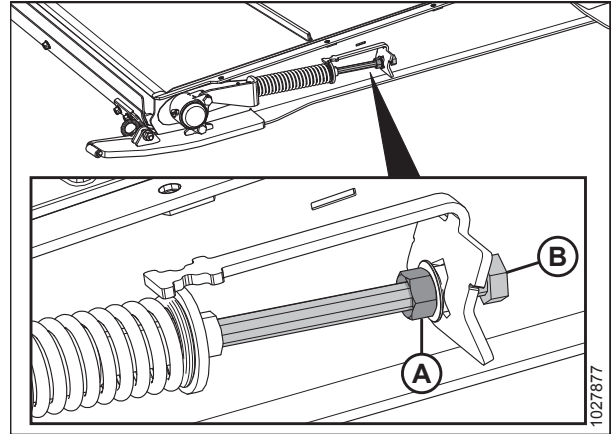


Figure 5.244: Feed Draper Tensioner

8. Unlatch feed deck pan handle (A) from handle latch supports (B) on both sides of the feed deck. This will drop the door down and allow access to feed deck draper and rollers.

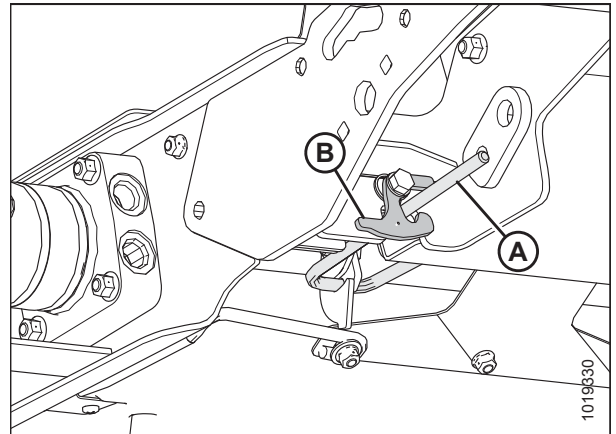


Figure 5.245: Feed Deck Pan Handle and Left Side Pan Handle Latch

9. Remove two bolts (A) and nuts securing the bearing housing to the deck skid and tensioner.
10. Remove dust cap (B).

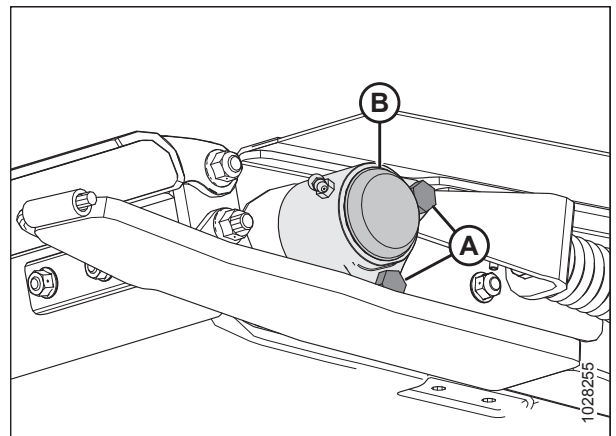


Figure 5.246: Idler Roller Bearing – Left Side

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

11. Remove nut (A), and remove bearing housing (B) from the deck.

**NOTE:**

If bearing is seized on shaft, it may be easier to remove the drive roller assembly. For instructions, refer to *Removing Feed Draper Idler Roller*, page 540.

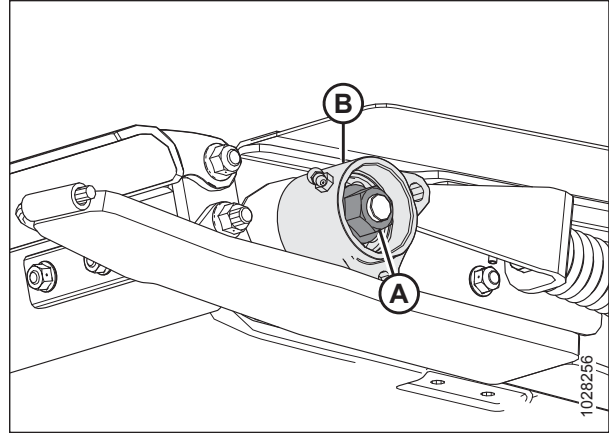


Figure 5.247: Idler Roller Bearing – Left Side

12. Secure housing (D), and remove internal retaining ring (A), bearing (B), and two seals (C).
13. Apply oil to bore before assembly.
14. Install seals (C) into housing (D).

**NOTE:**

Ensure the flat side of the seal is facing inward.

15. Pack bearing (B) with grease and install.
16. Install retaining ring (A).

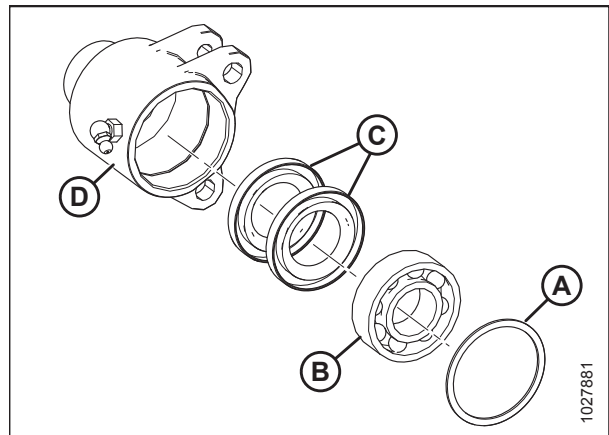


Figure 5.248: Bearing Assembly

17. Brush idler roller shaft (A) with oil.
18. Carefully rotate bearing assembly (B) onto shaft (A) by hand to prevent seal damage.

**IMPORTANT:**

Ensure bearing assembly is square to the shaft to prevent seal damage during installation.

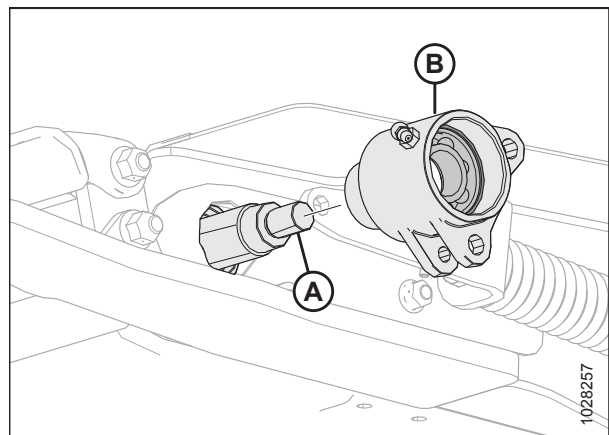


Figure 5.249: Idler Roller Bearing – Left Side

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

19. After the bearing and both seals are seated around the shaft, install nut (A) and torque to 81 Nm (60 lbf-ft).
20. Fill the bearing cavity with grease, and install dust cap (B).

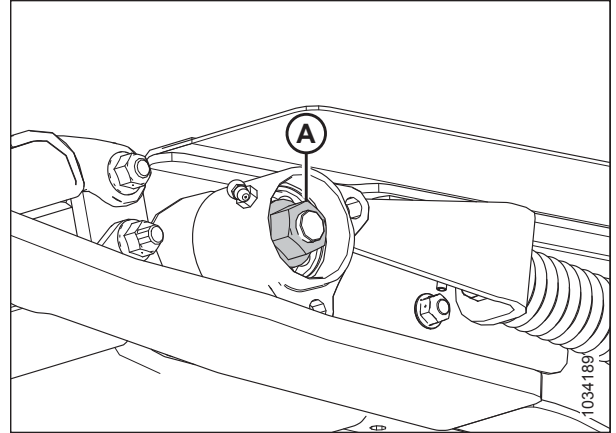


Figure 5.250: Idler Roller Bearing – Left Side

21. Rotate idler roller housing (A) until the holes in the lower tabs aligns with the hole in welded tab (B).
22. Insert bolt (C) and nut.
23. Align the hole in cast support (D) with the holes in the upper tab on idler roller housing (A).
24. Insert bolt (E) and nut.
25. Tighten bolts (C) and (E) until the hardware just touches the casting ears.

**IMPORTANT:**

Do **NOT** fully tighten bolts as the case tabs will break.

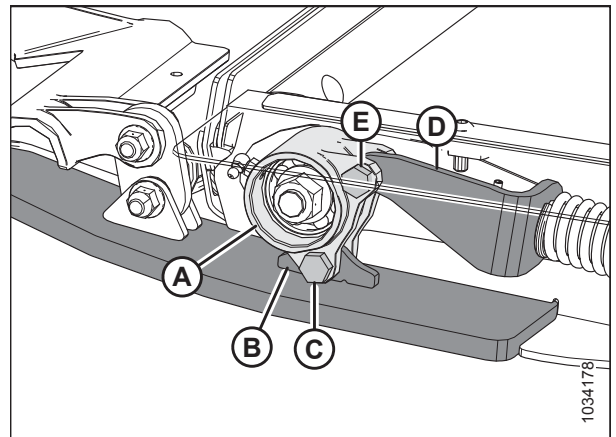


Figure 5.251: Idler Roller Bearing – Left Side

26. Fill the bearing cavity with grease, and install dust cap (A) on both ends of the idler roller.
27. Check that the grease fitting is working.
28. Tension the feed draper. For instructions, refer to [5.10.2 Checking and Adjusting Feed Draper Tension, page 533](#).

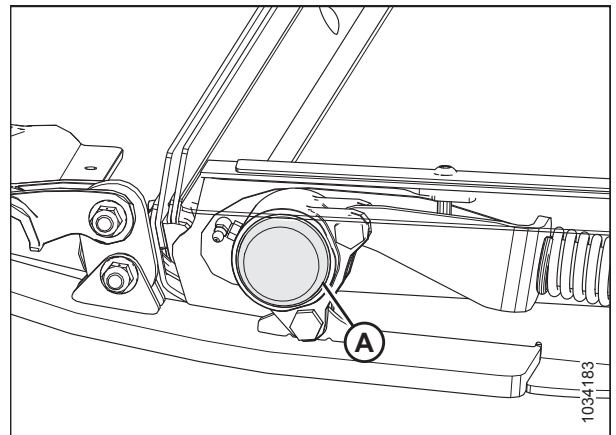


Figure 5.252: Feed Deck – Left Side

## 5.11 Lowering Feed Deck Pan

### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. Start combine, raise header fully, and engage header lift cylinder locks.
2. Stop the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. On the underside of the feed deck, rotate latch (A) to unlock handle (B). Repeat on opposite end of the feed deck.

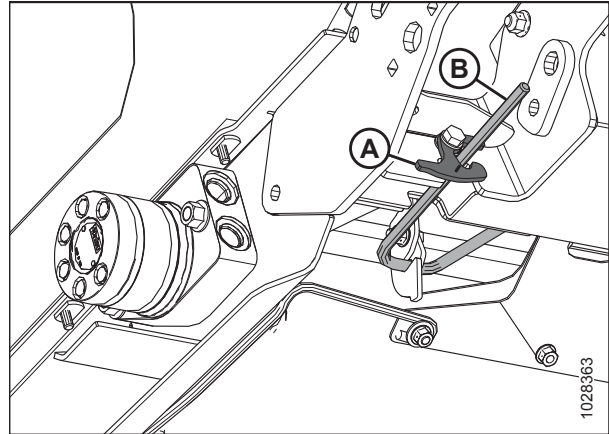


Figure 5.253: Underside of Feed Deck

4. Hold pan (A) and rotate handle (B) downward to release the pan.

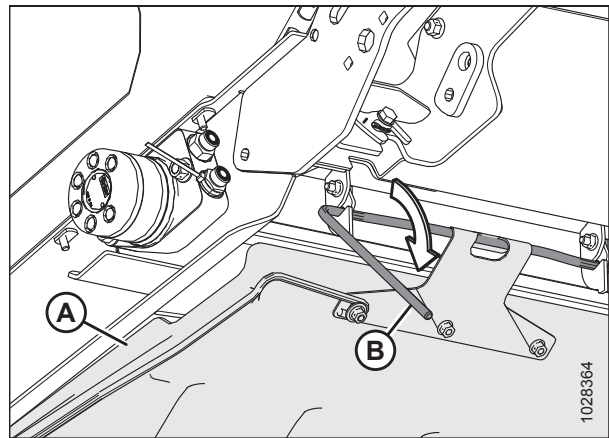


Figure 5.254: Underside of Feed Deck

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

5. Lower fee deck pan (A).

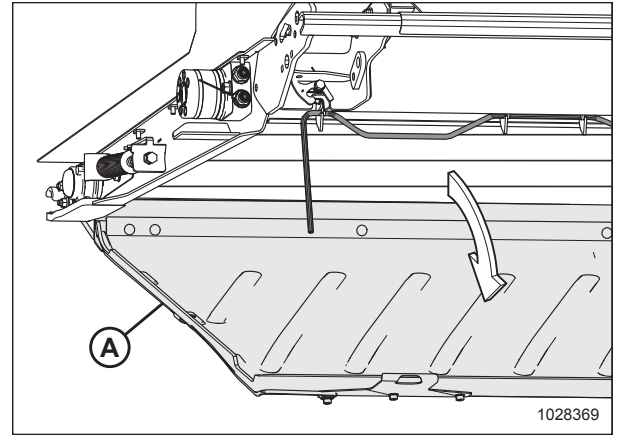


Figure 5.255: Feed Deck Pan

## 5.12 Raising Feed Deck Pan

### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. Raise feed deck pan (A).

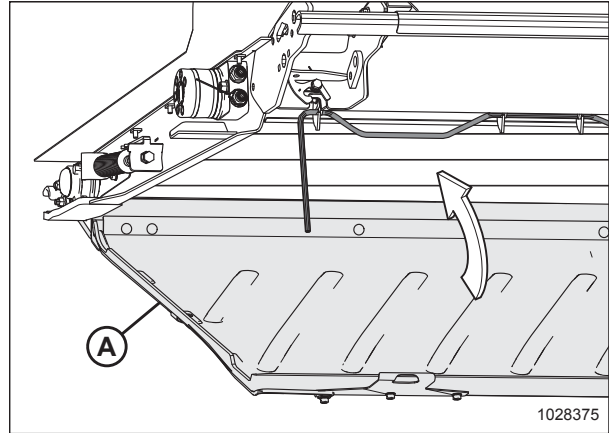


Figure 5.256: Feed Deck Pan

2. Engage lock handle (A) in three feed deck pan hooks (B).

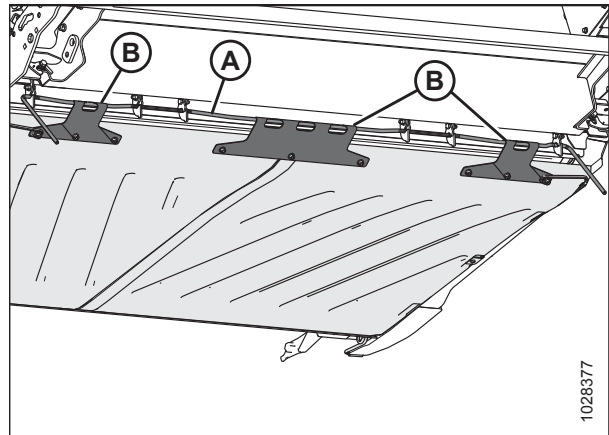


Figure 5.257: Underside of Feed Deck Pan

3. Rotate handles (A) upwards, bringing the feed deck pan into locked position.

**NOTE:**

Ensure that all three deck pan hooks (B) are secured on lock handle.

4. Hold feed deck pan in place, and rotate latches (C) to lock handle (A).

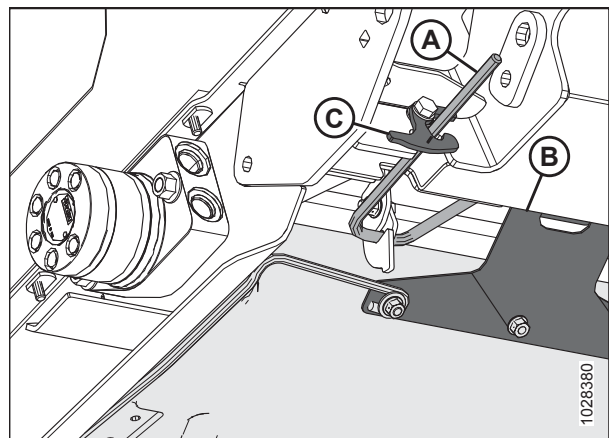


Figure 5.258: Underside of Feed Deck Pan

## 5.13 Checking Link Holder Hooks

Check the left and right link holder hooks **DAILY** to ensure they are not cracked or broken.

### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop engine, remove key, and engage safety props before going under header for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Before operation, ensure both link holder hooks (A) are engaged on the float module under the feed deck as shown.

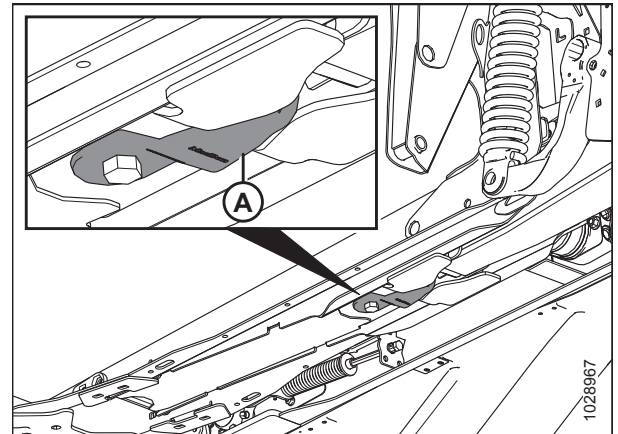


Figure 5.259: Feed Deck – View from Below

- Undamaged link holder hook (A)
- Damaged/broken link holder hook (B)
- Stretched link holder (not shown)

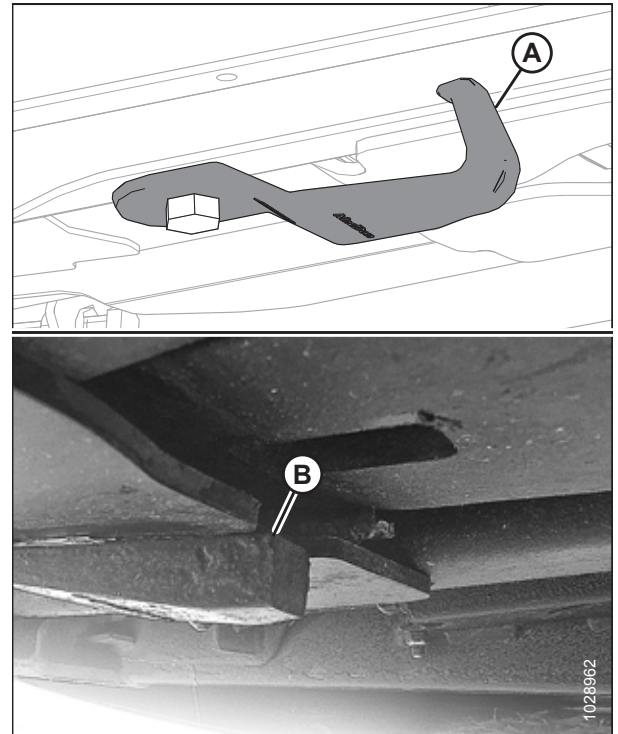


Figure 5.260: Link Holder Hooks

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

### NOTE:

To move hook (A) to storage position, loosen bolt (B) and rotate the hook 90°.

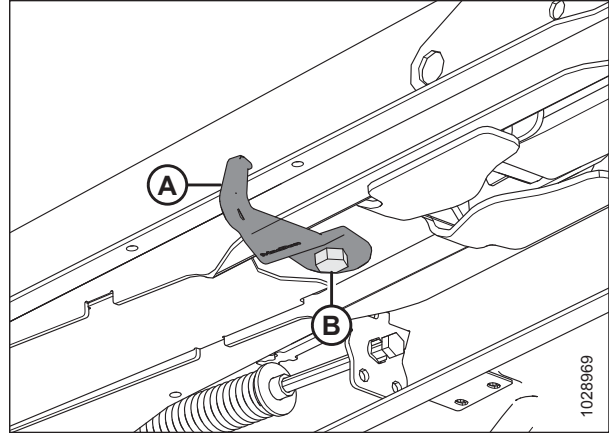


Figure 5.261: Link Holder Hook in Storage Position



## 5.14 FM200 Stripper Bars and Feed Deflectors

### 5.14.1 Removing Stripper Bars

1. Detach the header from the combine. For instructions, refer to [4 Header Attachment/Detachment, page 321](#).
2. Remove four bolts and nuts (A) securing stripper bar (B) to the float module frame, and remove the stripper bar.

**NOTE:**

There may only be two upper bolts on stripper bar (B).

3. Repeat at the opposite side of the header.

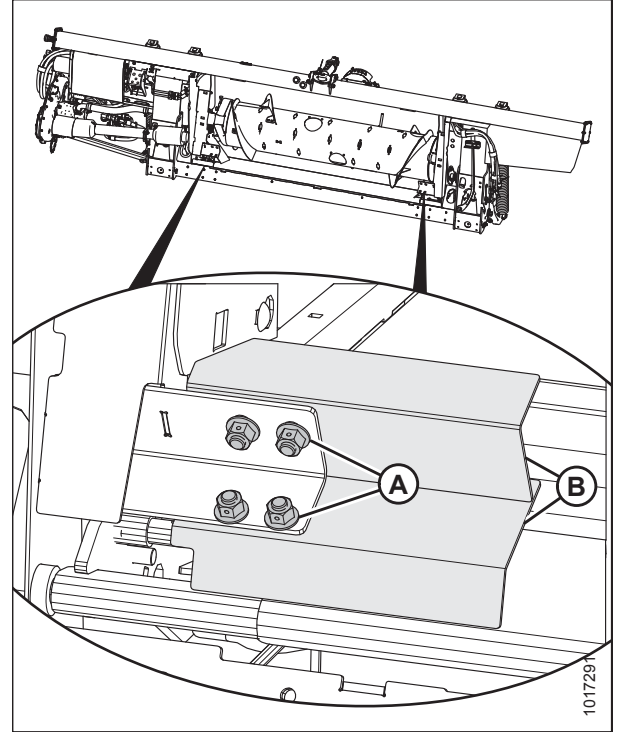


Figure 5.262: Stripper Bar

### 5.14.2 Installing Stripper Bars

1. Detach the header from the combine. For instructions, refer to [4 Header Attachment/Detachment, page 321](#).

2. Position stripper bar (B) as shown so the notch is at the corner of the frame.

**NOTE:**

It is ok to only install the upper two bolts on the stripper bars, if the lower two bolts are too difficult to install.

3. Secure stripper bar (B) to the float module with four bolts and nuts (A). Ensure the nuts are facing the combine.

4. Repeat at the opposite side of the header.

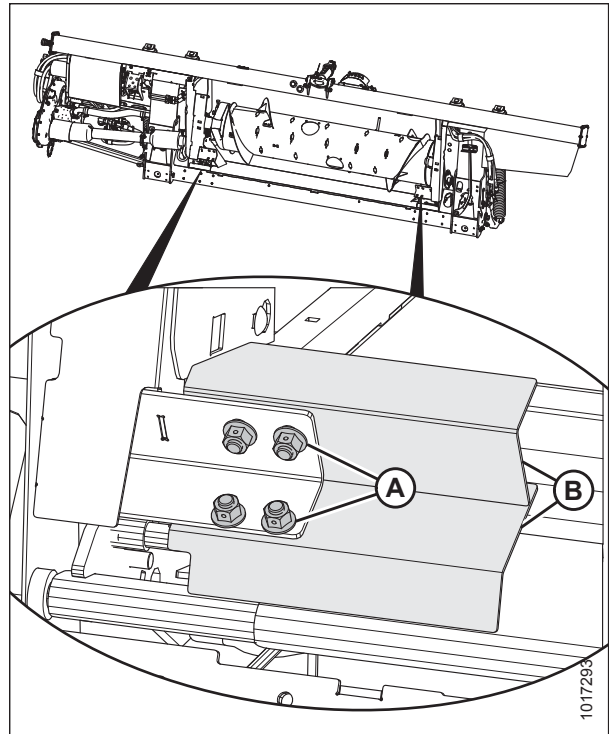


Figure 5.263: Stripper Bar

### 5.14.3 Replacing Feed Deflectors on New Holland CR Combines

This section is for New Holland CR combines only. If operating a New Holland CX combine, remove feed deflectors.

1. Detach the header from the combine. For instructions, refer to [4 Header Attachment/Detachment, page 321](#).

2. Remove two bolts and nuts (B) securing feed deflector (A) to the float module frame, and remove the feed deflector.

3. Position replacement feed deflector (A), and secure with bolts and nuts (B) (ensure the nuts are facing the combine). Do **NOT** tighten nuts.

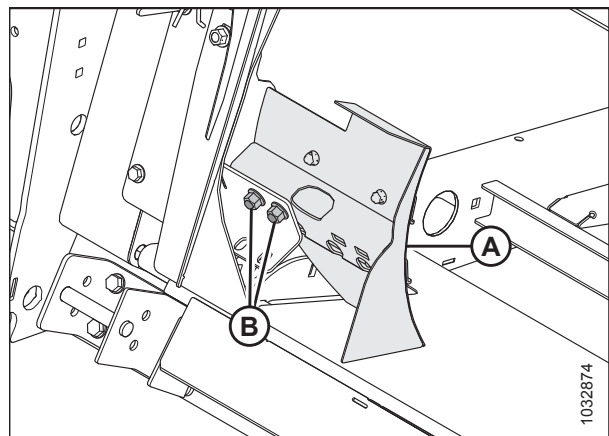


Figure 5.264: Feed Deflector

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

4. Adjust deflector (A) so that distance (C) between pan and deflector is 4–6 mm (5/32–1/4 in.).
5. Tighten nuts (B).
6. Repeat for opposite deflector.
7. Attach header to the combine. For instructions, refer to Chapter 4 *Header Attachment/Detachment*, page 321.
8. After attaching the header to the combine, fully extend the center-link and check the gap between the deflector and pan. Maintain the 4–6 mm (5/32–1/4 in.) gap.

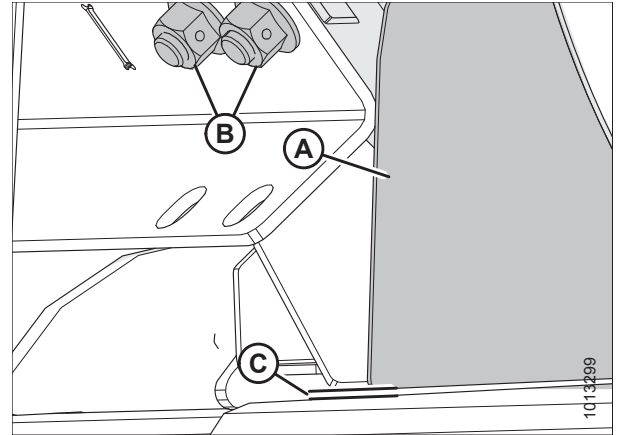


Figure 5.265: Pan and Deflector Distance

## 5.15 Header Side Drapers

There are two header side drapers. They convey cut crop to the float module feed draper and auger. Replace the drapers if torn, cracked, or missing slats.

### 5.15.1 Removing Side Drapers

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Raise the reel fully.
3. Raise the header fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Engage the header safety props.
6. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 31](#).
7. Move the draper until the draper joint is in the work area.
8. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
9. Release the tension on the draper. For instructions, refer to [5.15.3 Adjusting Side Draper Tension, page 558](#).
10. Remove nuts and screws (A), and tube connectors (B) from the draper joint.
11. Remove screws (C), bridge connector (D), and nuts from the front end of the draper joint.
12. Pull the draper from the deck.

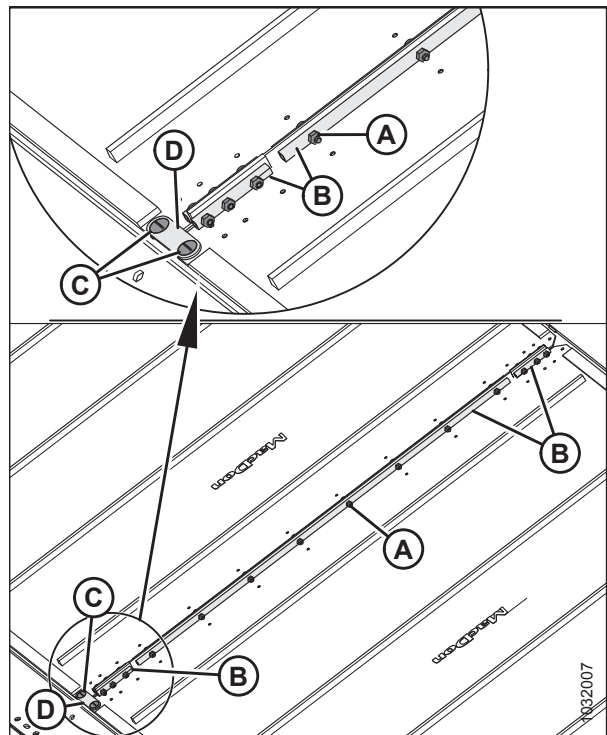


Figure 5.266: Draper Connectors

## 5.15.2 Installing Side Drapers

### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
2. Raise the reel fully.
3. Raise the header fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Engage the header safety props.
6. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to *Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 31*.
7. Apply talc, baby powder, or talc/graphite lubricant mix to the underside of the draper guides and to the draper surface that forms the seal with the cutterbar.
8. Insert the draper into the deck at the inboard end at the drive roller. Pull the draper into the deck while feeding it at the end.
9. Feed in the draper until it can be wrapped around the drive roller.
10. Insert the opposite end of the draper into the deck over the rollers. Pull the draper fully into the deck.
11. Attach the ends of the draper with tube connectors (B), screws (A) (with the heads facing the center opening), and nuts.

**NOTE:**

The two short tube connectors are attached at the front and rear of the draper.

12. Install bridge connector (D), using screws (C), and nuts at the front end of the draper joint.
13. Adjust the draper tension. For instructions, refer to *5.15.3 Adjusting Side Draper Tension, page 558*.
14. Operate the drapers with the engine at idle so the talc or talc/graphite lubricant makes contact and adheres to the draper seal surfaces.

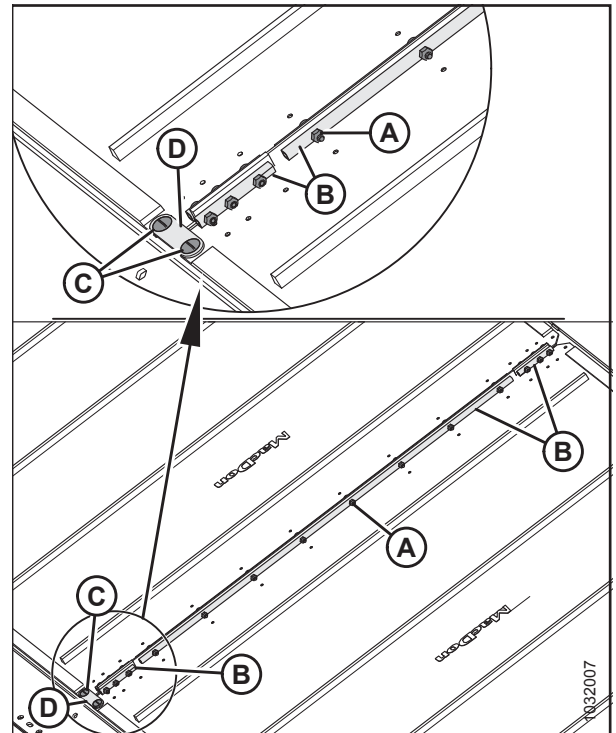


Figure 5.267: Draper Connectors

### 5.15.3 Adjusting Side Draper Tension

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop engine, remove key, and engage safety props before going under machine for any reason.

The drapers are tensioned at the factory and should **NOT** require adjustment. If adjustment is required, draper tension should be just enough to prevent slipping and to keep the draper from sagging below the cutterbar.

1. Ensure tensioner indicator (A) is approximately halfway in the window.

**⚠ DANGER**

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

2. Start the engine. For instructions, refer to the combine operator's manual.
3. Raise the header fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Engage the header safety props.

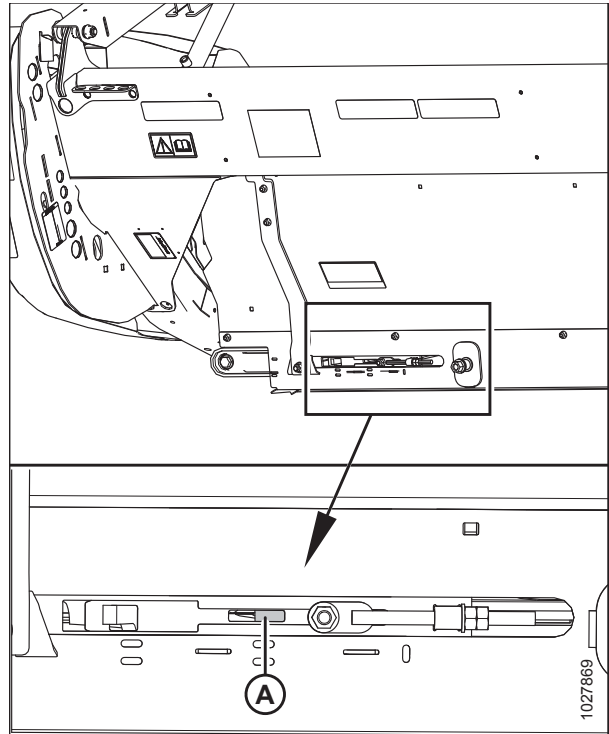


Figure 5.268: Tension Adjuster – Left Side Shown, Right Side Opposite

6. Check that draper guide (rubber track on underside of draper) is properly engaged in groove (A) of drive roller.

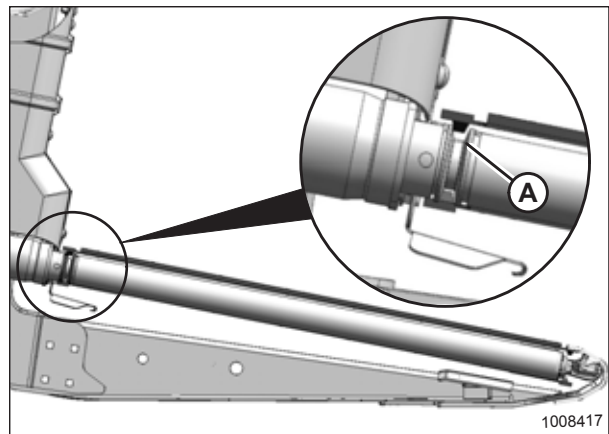


Figure 5.269: Drive Roller

7. Check that idler roller (A) is between guides (B).

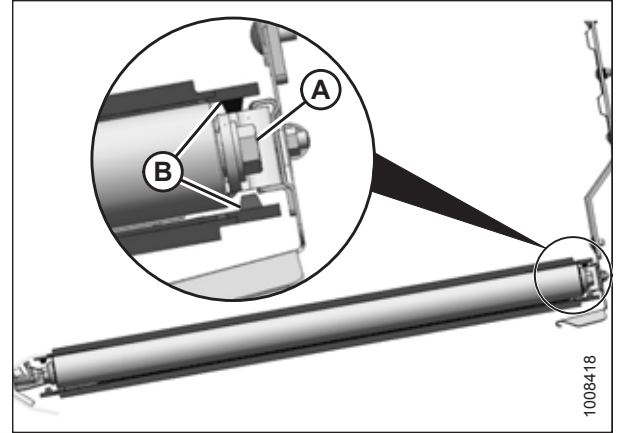


Figure 5.270: Idler Roller

**IMPORTANT:**

Do **NOT** adjust nut (C). This nut is used for draper alignment only.

8. Turn adjuster bolt (A) counterclockwise to loosen. Loosen until the adjuster bolt runs out of adjustment and hits a hard stop.
9. Turn adjuster bolt (A) clockwise to tighten. Tensioner indicator (B) will move inboard to indicate that the draper is tightening. Tighten until the bar is about halfway in the window.

**IMPORTANT:**

To avoid premature failure of the draper, draper rollers, and/or tightener components, do not operate with the tensioner indicator not visible.

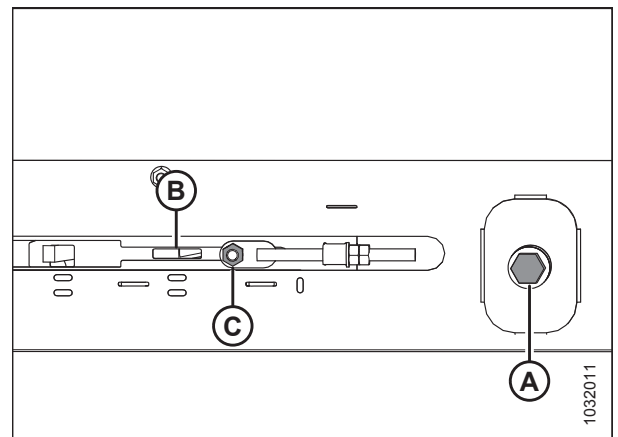


Figure 5.271: Tension Adjuster – Left Side Shown, Right Side Opposite

### 5.15.4 Adjusting Side Draper Tracking

The side draper tracking is adjusted by aligning the drive and idler draper rollers.

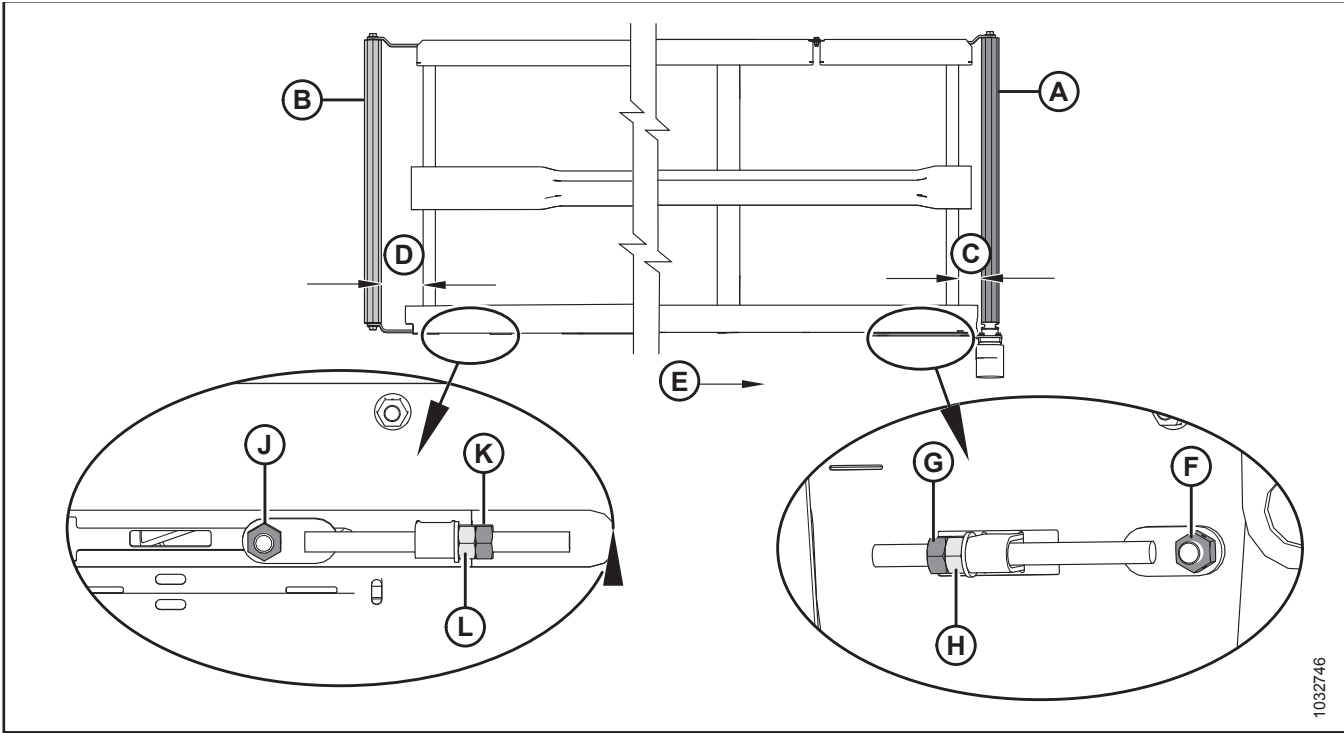
**NOTE:**

The left draper deck is shown in the illustrations in this procedure. The right deck is opposite.

**NOTE:**

Some parts were removed from the illustration for clarity.

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING



**Figure 5.272: Draper Tracking Adjustments**

- |                              |                                   |                              |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| A - Drive Roller             | B - Idler Roller                  | C - Drive Roller Adjust      |
| D - Idler Roller Adjust      | E - Draper Direction              | F - Nut on Drive Roller Side |
| G - Jam Nut for Drive Roller | H - Adjuster Nut for Drive Roller | J - Nut on Idler Roller Side |
| K - Jam Nut for Idler Roller | L - Adjuster Nut for Idler Roller |                              |

1. To determine which roller requires adjustment and which adjustments are necessary, refer to the following table:

**Table 5.1 Draper Tracking**

Tracking	At Location	Adjustment	Method
Backward	Drive roller	Increase <b>C</b>	Tighten adjuster nut (H)
Forward	Drive roller	Decrease <b>C</b>	Loosen adjuster nut (H)
Backward	Idler roller	Increase <b>D</b>	Tighten adjuster nut (L)
Forward	Idler roller	Decrease <b>D</b>	Loosen adjuster nut (L)

2. Adjust drive roller (A) to change **C** (refer to Table 5.1, page 560) as follows:
  - a. Loosen nut (F) and jam nut (G).
  - b. Turn adjuster nut (H).
3. Adjust idler roller (B) to change **D** (refer to Table 5.1, page 560) as follows:
  - a. Loosen nut (J) and jam nut (K).
  - b. Turn adjuster nut (L).

**NOTE:**

If the draper does not track at the idler roller end after the idler roller adjustment, the drive roller is likely not square to the deck. Adjust the drive roller, and then readjust the idler roller.



### 5.15.5 Draper Roller Maintenance

The draper rollers have non-greaseable bearings; however, the external seal should be checked every 200 hours (more frequently in sandy conditions) to achieve maximum bearing life.

#### *Inspecting Draper Roller Bearing*

Using an infrared thermometer, check for bad draper roller bearings as follows:

1. Engage the header and run the drapers for approximately 3 minutes.
2. Check the temperature of the draper roller bearings at each of roller arms (A), (B), and (C) on each deck. Ensure the temperature does not exceed 44°C (80°F) above the ambient temperature.

Replace roller bearings that exceed maximum recommended temperature. For instructions, refer to:

- [Replacing Side Draper Deck Idler Roller Bearing, page 563](#)
- [Replacing Side Draper Drive Roller Bearing, page 569](#)

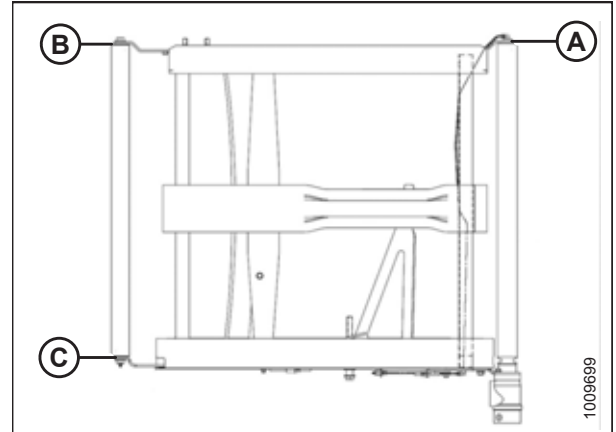


Figure 5.273: Roller Arms

#### *Removing Side Draper Deck Idler Roller*

#### **DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

#### **DANGER**

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. If the draper connector is not visible, engage the header until the connector is accessible (preferably close to the outboard end of the deck).
2. Start the engine.
3. Raise the header fully.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 31](#).
6. Engage the header safety props.

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

- Loosen the draper by turning adjuster bolt (A) counterclockwise until the adjuster bolt runs out of adjustment and hits a hard stop.

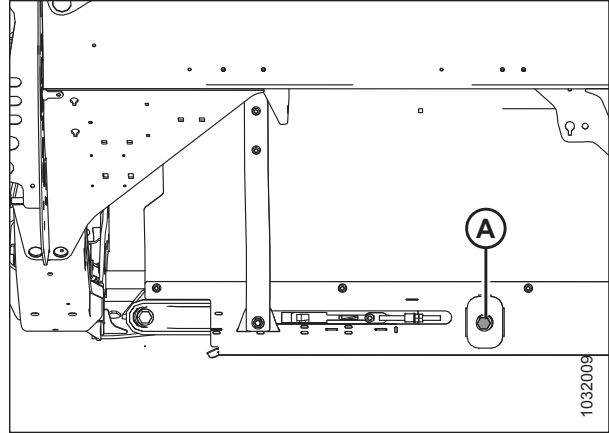


Figure 5.274: Tensioner – Left Side Shown

- Remove nuts and screws (A) and tube connectors (B) from the draper joint.
- Remove screws (C), bridge connector (D), and nuts from the front end of the draper joint.
- Pull the draper off the idler roller.

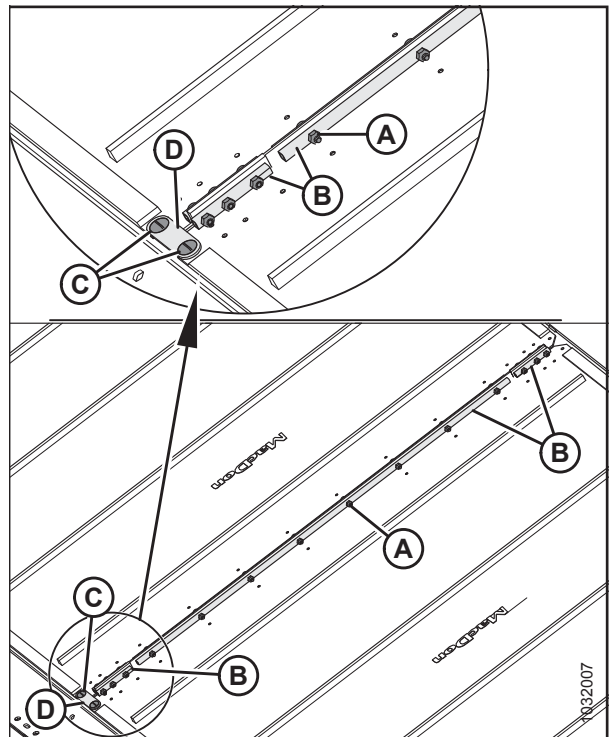


Figure 5.275: Draper Connectors

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

11. Remove bolt (A) and washer from the idler roller at the back of the header deck.
12. Remove bolt (B) and washer from the idler roller at the front of the header deck.
13. Spread roller arms (C) and (D), and remove the idler roller.

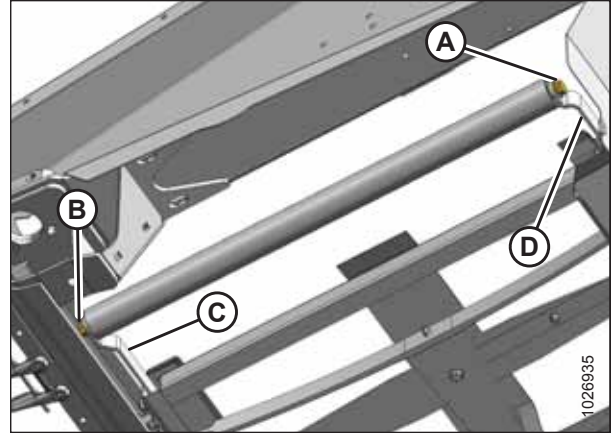


Figure 5.276: Idler Roller

### Replacing Side Draper Deck Idler Roller Bearing

1. Remove draper deck idler roller. For instructions, refer to [Removing Side Draper Deck Idler Roller, page 561](#).
2. Clamp idler roller (A) in a vise, with cloth wrapped around the roller to prevent damage to the roller.
3. Use a slide hammer to remove bearing assembly (B) and seal (C) from the roller.

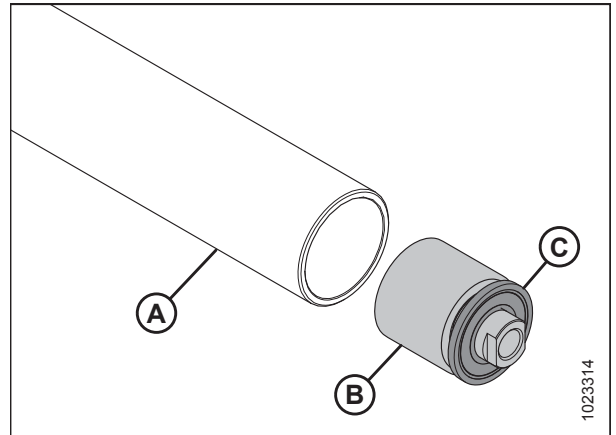


Figure 5.277: Idler Roller Bearing and Seal

### IMPORTANT:

When installing the new bearing, do **NOT** place the end of the roller directly onto the ground. Bearing assembly (A) protrudes past roller tube (B), and placing the end on the ground will push the bearing farther into the tube.

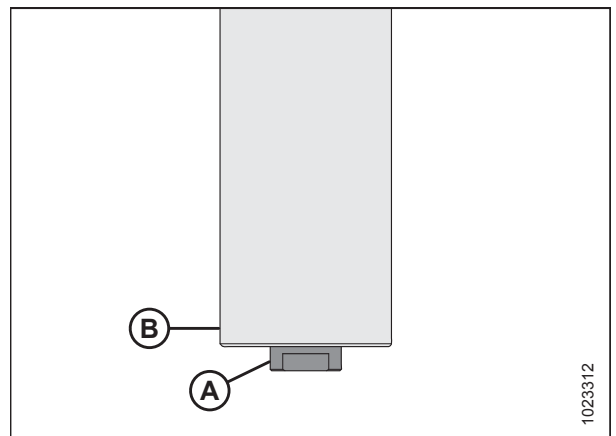


Figure 5.278: Idler Roller

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

4. Cut a relief (A) into a block of wood.
5. Place the end of idler roller (B) onto the block, with the protruding bearing assembly inside relief (A).

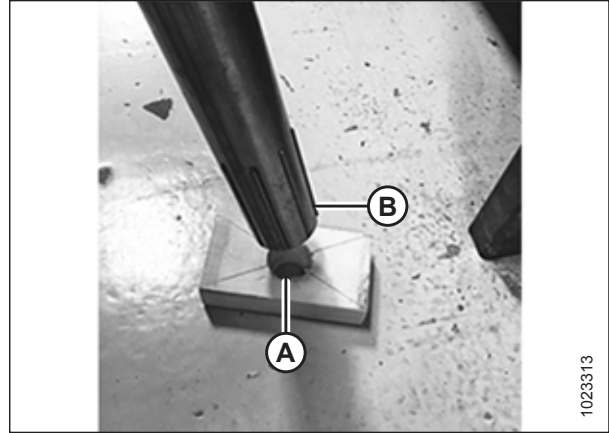


Figure 5.279: Idler Roller

6. Install new bearing assembly (C) by pressing the outer race of the bearing into the tube until it is 14–15 mm (9/16–19/32 in.) (B) from the outside edge of the tube.

**NOTE:**

Before installing new seal, fill area (A) with approximately 8 pumps of grease.

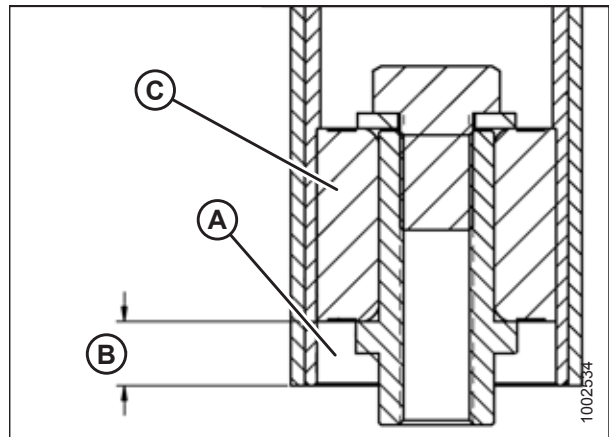


Figure 5.280: Idler Roller Bearing

7. Install new seal (A) by pressing on the inner and outer race of the seal until it is 3–4 mm (1/8–3/16 in.) (B) from the outside edge of the tube.

**NOTE:**

The seal can be oriented in either direction.

8. Reinstall idler roller. For instructions, refer to [Installing Side Draper Deck Idler Roller, page 565](#).

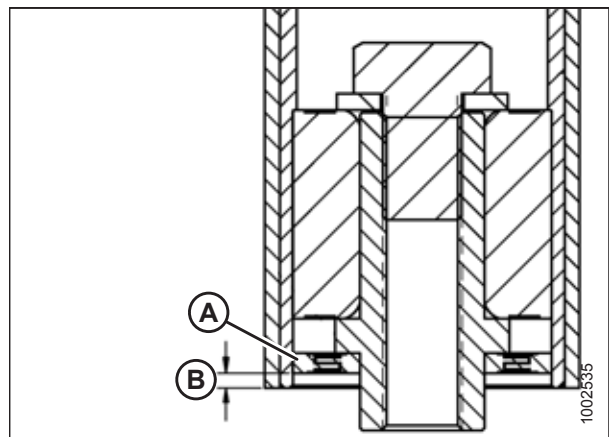


Figure 5.281: Idler Roller Bearing

*Installing Side Draper Deck Idler Roller*

1. Install idler roller (A) between idler arms (B), and secure with two bolts (C) and washers. Tighten bolts to 95 Nm (70 lbf-ft).

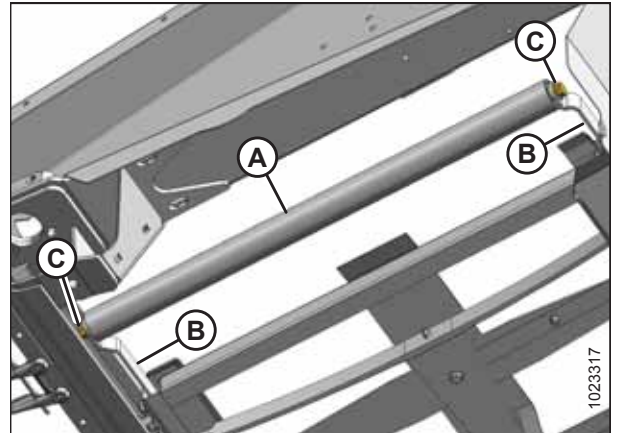


Figure 5.282: Idler Roller

2. Attach the ends of draper with tube connectors (B), screws (A) (with the heads facing the center opening), and nuts.

**NOTE:**

The two short tube connectors are attached at the front and rear of the draper.

3. Install bridge connector (D) using screws (C) and nuts at the front end of the draper joint.

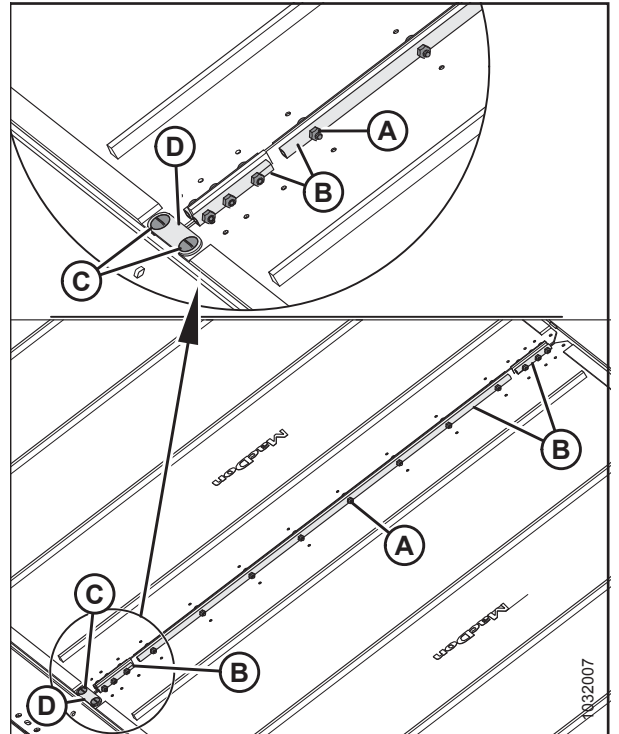


Figure 5.283: Draper Connector

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

4. Tighten the draper by turning adjuster bolt (A) clockwise. For instructions, refer to [5.15.3 Adjusting Side Draper Tension, page 558](#).
5. Disengage the reel and header safety props.

### **WARNING**

Check to be sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

6. Start the engine and lower the header and reel.
7. Run machine to verify that draper tracks correctly. For instructions, refer to [5.15.3 Adjusting Side Draper Tension, page 558](#) if additional adjustment is necessary.

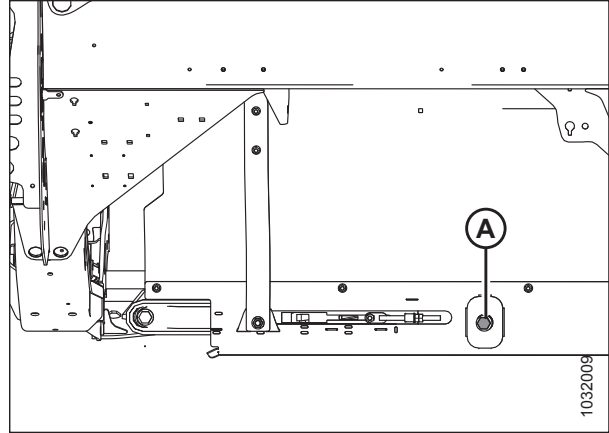


Figure 5.284: Draper Tensioner

### *Removing Side Draper Drive Roller*

### **DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

### **DANGER**

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

1. If the draper connector is not visible, engage the header until the connector is accessible (preferably close to the outboard end of the deck).
2. Start the engine, raise the header, and raise the reel.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Loosen the draper by turning adjuster bolt (A) counterclockwise until the adjuster bolt runs out of adjustment and hits a hard stop.

### **IMPORTANT:**

Do **NOT** adjust nut (B). This nut is used for draper alignment only.

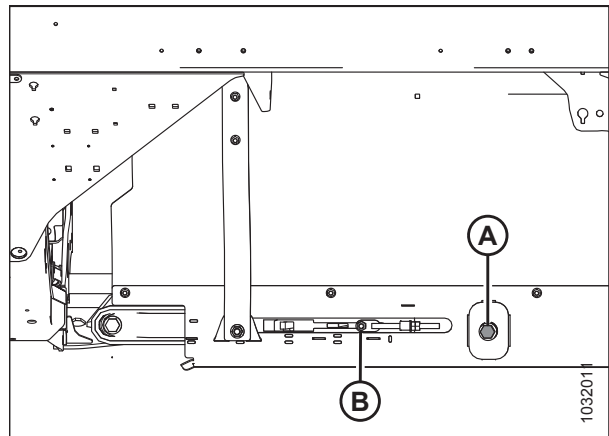


Figure 5.285: Draper Tensioner

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

5. Remove nuts and screws (A) and tube connectors (B) from the draper joint.
6. Remove screws (C), bridge connector (D), and nuts from the front end of the draper joint.
7. Pull the draper off the drive roller.

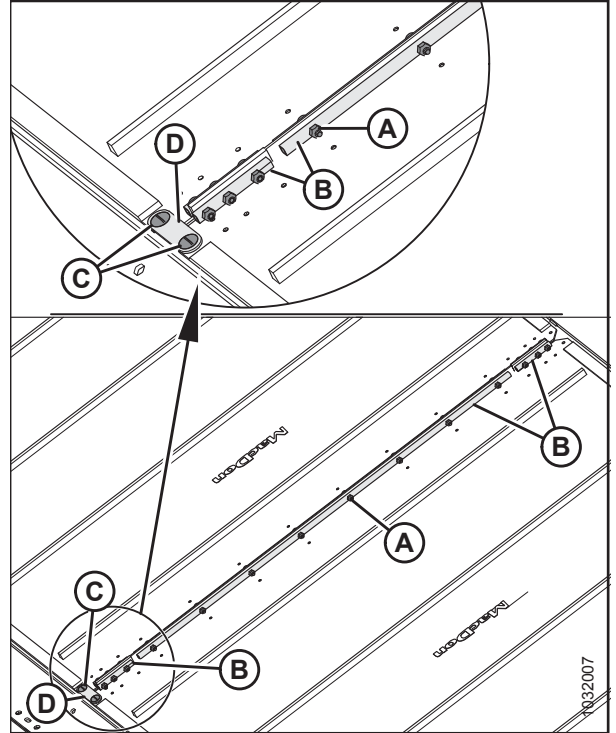


Figure 5.286: Draper Connectors

8. Align set screws with the hole (A) in the guard. Remove the two set screws holding the motor onto the drive roller.

**NOTE:**

The set screws are 1/4 turn apart.

9. Loosen two bolts (B) securing the motor to the drive roller arm.

**NOTE:**

It may be necessary to remove plastic shield (C) to gain access to the top bolt.

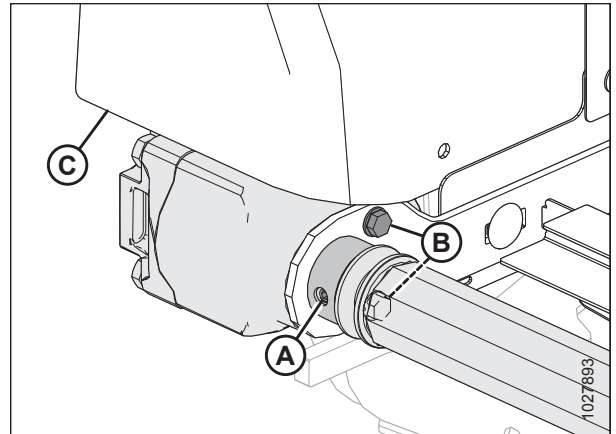


Figure 5.287: Drive Roller

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

### NOTE:

It may be necessary to pry between the roller and bracket (A) to remove the roller from shaft.

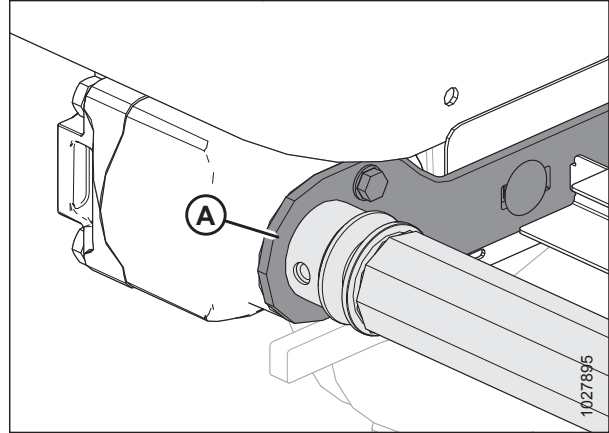


Figure 5.288: Drive Roller

10. Loosen two bolts (A) securing support arm (B).
11. Remove bolt (C) and washer securing the opposite end of the drive roller to support arm (B).
12. Remove drive roller (D).

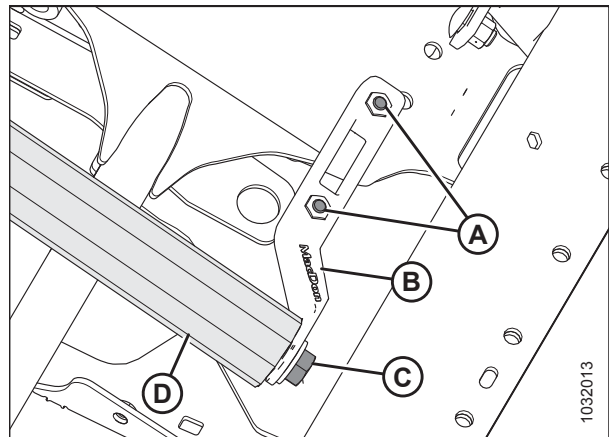


Figure 5.289: Drive Roller



*Replacing Side Draper Drive Roller Bearing*

1. Remove the draper idler roller assembly. For instructions, refer to *Removing Side Draper Drive Roller, page 566*.
2. Remove bearing assembly (A) and seal (B) from roller tube (C) as follows:
  - a. Attach slide hammer (D) to threaded shaft (E) in the bearing assembly.
  - b. Tap out bearing assembly (A) and seal (B).
3. Clean the inside of roller tube (C), check the tube for signs of wear or damage, and replace if necessary.

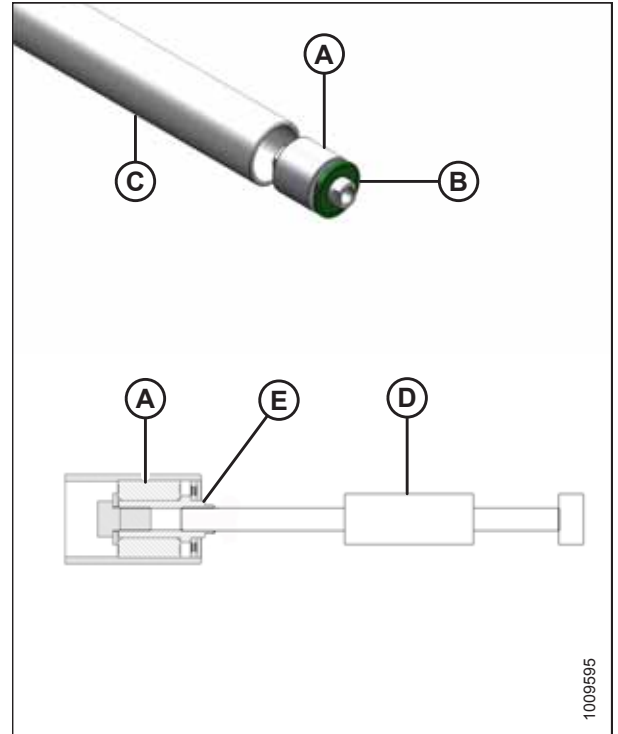


Figure 5.290: Roller Bearing

4. Install new bearing assembly (A) by pressing the outer race of the bearing into the tube until it is 14–15 mm (9/16–19/32 in.) (B) from the outside edge of the tube.
5. Apply grease in front of bearing assembly (A). Refer to the inside back cover of this book for grease specifications.
6. Install new seal (C) at the roller opening, and install a flat washer (1.0 in. I.D. x 2.0 in. O.D.) on the seal.
7. Tap seal (C) into the roller opening with a suitably sized socket. Tap the washer and bearing assembly (A) until the seal is 3–4 mm (1/8–3/16 in.) (D) from the outside edge of the tube.

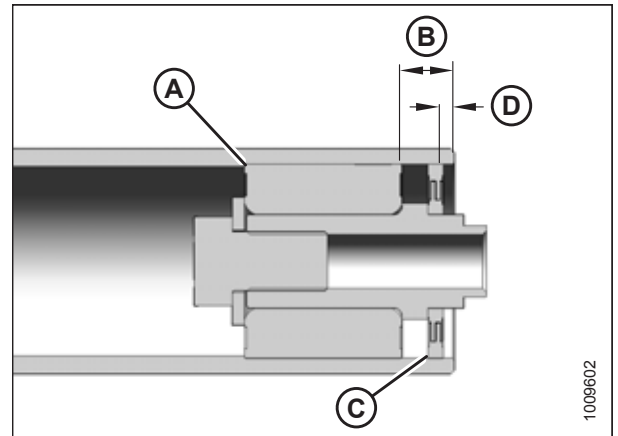


Figure 5.291: Roller Bearing

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

### *Installing Side Draper Drive Roller*

1. Position drive roller (A) between the roller support arms.
2. Secure drive roller with washer and bolt (B).
3. Tighten bolts (C) on the support arm.
4. Torque bolt (B) to 95 Nm (70 lbf-ft).
5. Grease the motor shaft and insert into the end of drive roller (A).

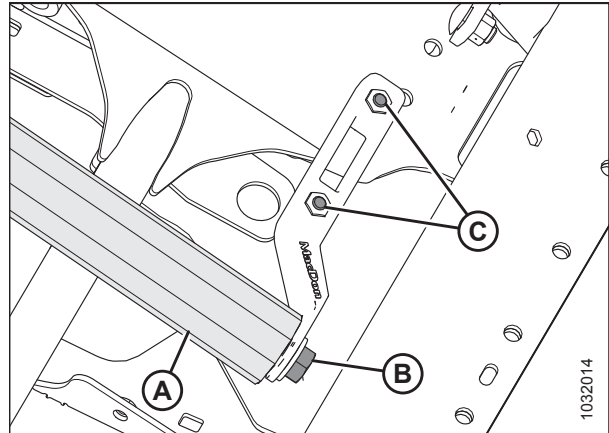


Figure 5.292: Drive Roller

6. Secure the motor to the roller support with two bolts (B). Torque to 27 Nm (20 lbf-ft).
7. Ensure the motor is all the way into the roller, and straight key is still in place when fully inserted.
8. Tighten the two set screws (not shown) through access hole (A).

**NOTE:**

Tighten any loosened bolts and reinstall plastic shield (C) if previously removed.

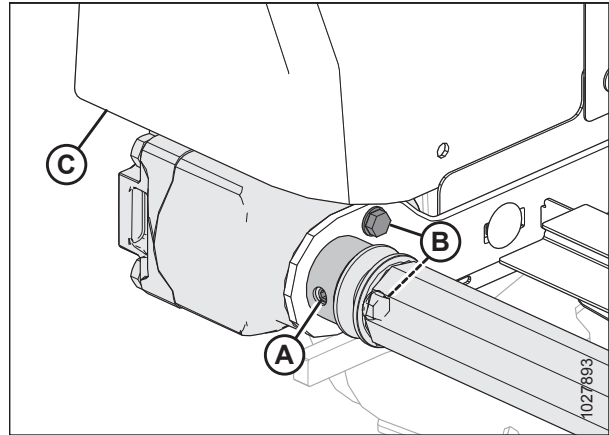


Figure 5.293: Drive Roller

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

9. Wrap the draper over the drive roller, and attach the ends of draper with tube connectors (B), screws (A) (with the heads facing the center opening), and nuts.

### NOTE:

The two short tube connectors are attached at the front and rear of the draper.

10. Install bridge connector (D) using screws (C) and nuts at the front end of the draper joint.

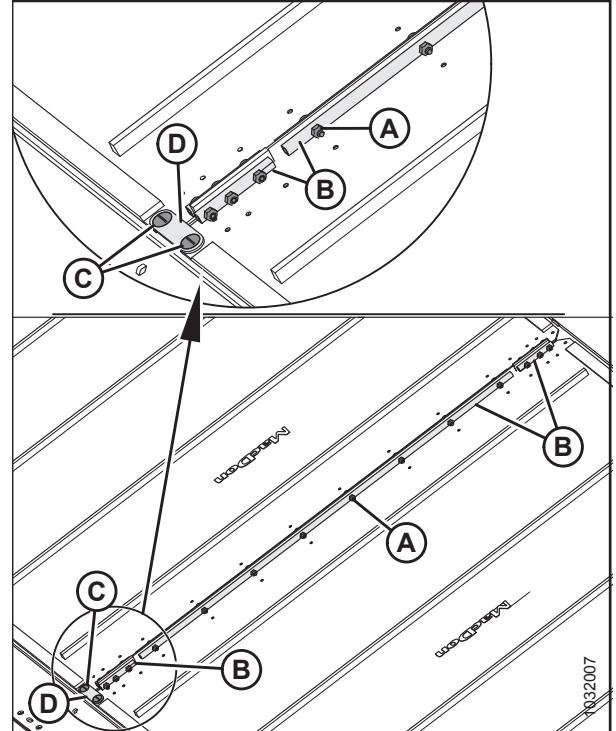


Figure 5.294: Draper Connector

11. Tighten the draper by turning adjuster bolt (A) clockwise. For instructions, refer to [5.15.3 Adjusting Side Draper Tension, page 558](#).
12. Disengage the reel and header safety props. For instructions, refer to [Disengaging Reel Safety Props, page 32](#).



### DANGER

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

13. Start the engine, and lower the header and reel.
14. Run the machine to verify the draper tracks correctly. If additional adjustment is necessary, refer to [5.15.4 Adjusting Side Draper Tracking, page 559](#).

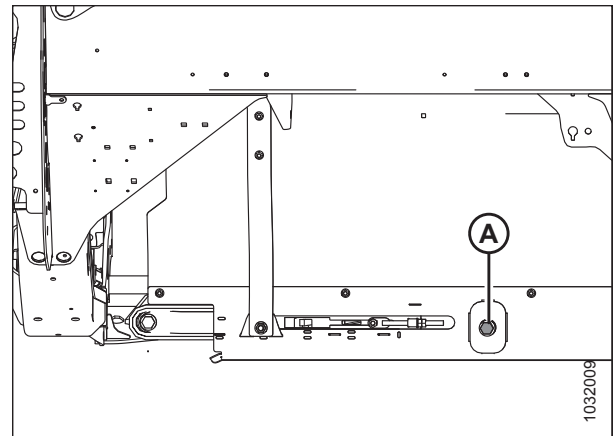


Figure 5.295: Draper Tensioner – Left Side Shown

## 5.16 Reel

The reel features a uniquely shaped cam, which allows the fingers to get underneath lodged crop and pick it up before it's cut.

### CAUTION

To avoid personal injury, before servicing machine or opening drive covers, refer to [5.1 Preparing Machine for Servicing](#), page 417.

### 5.16.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar

The minimum clearance between the reel fingers and the cutterbar ensures that the reel fingers do not contact the cutterbar during operation. The clearance is set at the factory, but some adjustment may be necessary before operation.

The finger to guard/cutterbar clearance (A) is shown in the tables below.

**Table 5.2 Finger to Guard/Cutterbar Clearance – Double Reel**

Header	End Panels	At Hinge Points
FD230	20 mm (0.80 in.)	45 mm (1.77 in.)
FD235 FD240 FD241	20 mm (0.80 in.)	20 mm (0.80 in.)

**Table 5.3 Finger to Guard/Cutterbar Clearance – Triple Reel**

Header	Outer End Panels	Beside Center Arms
FD240 FD241 FD245 FD250	20 mm (0.80 in.)	20 mm (0.80 in.)

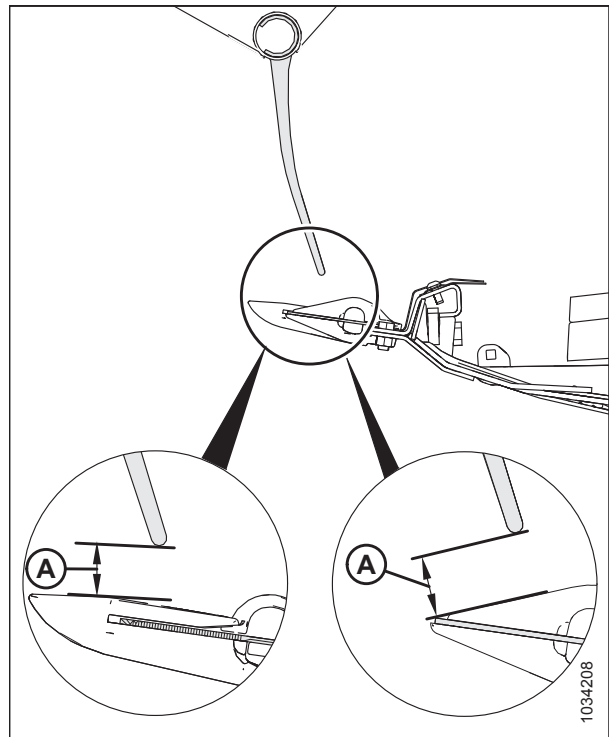


Figure 5.296: Finger Clearance

#### Measuring Reel Clearance

### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under header for any reason.

### DANGER

Never start or move the machine until you are sure all bystanders have cleared the area.

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

1. Park the combine on a level surface.
2. Adjust the reel fore-aft position until the number seven on fore-aft indicator (A) is hidden by sensor support (B).
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

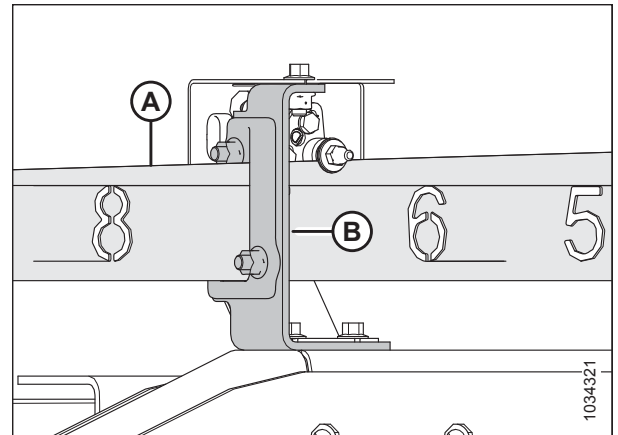


Figure 5.297: Fore-Aft Position

4. Place two 254 mm (10 in.) blocks (A) under the cutterbar, just inboard of the wing flex points.

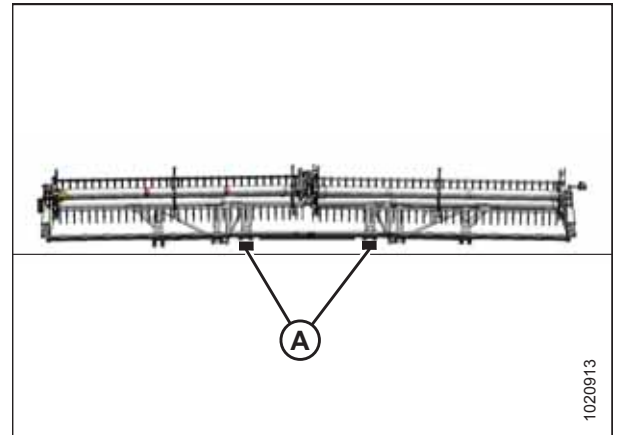


Figure 5.298: FlexDraper® Block Locations

5. Move wing lock spring handles (A) down to UNLOCK position.
6. Lower header fully, allowing it to flex into full frown mode.

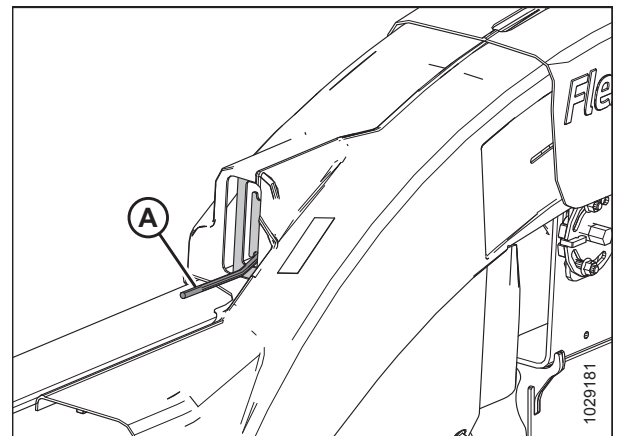


Figure 5.299: Wing Lock in UNLOCK Position

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

7. Measure clearance (A) at the ends of the reels. For clearance specifications, refer to [5.16.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 572](#).

For measurement locations, refer to:

- Figure 5.302, page 575 – double reel
- Figure 5.303, page 575 – triple reel

8. Adjust the reel clearance, if required. For instructions, refer to [Adjusting Reel Clearance, page 575](#).

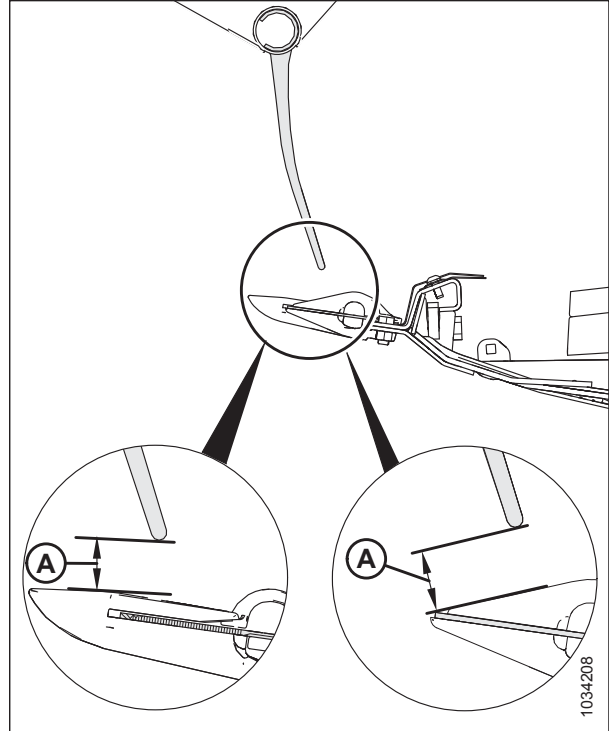


Figure 5.300: Measurement from Finger Tip to Guard

**Double reel measurement location (A):** Both ends of both reels (four places).

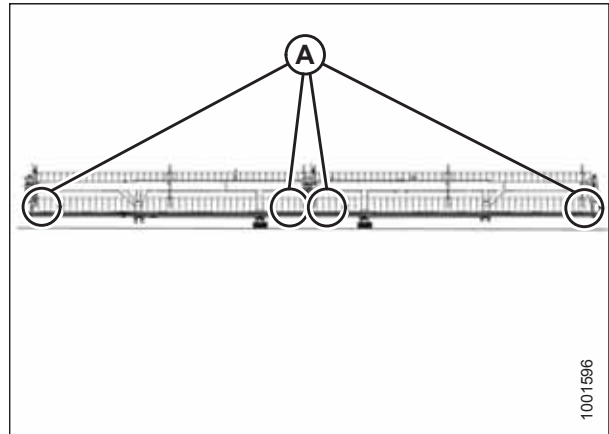


Figure 5.301: Double Reel Measurement Locations

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

**FlexDraper® Measurement location (A):** Outer ends of the reels and at both hinge points (four places).

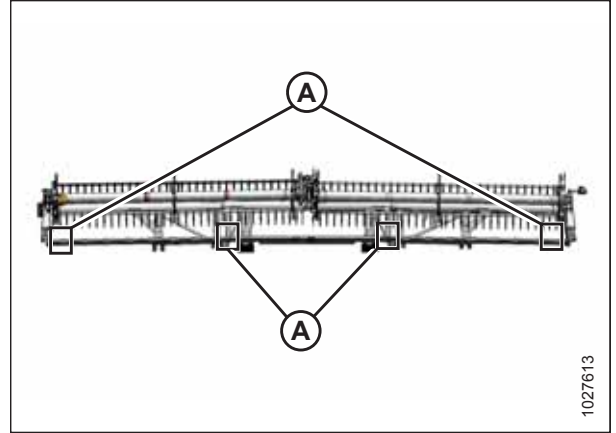


Figure 5.302: FlexDraper® Measurement Locations – Double Reel

**Triple reel measurement location (A):** Both ends of three reels (six places).

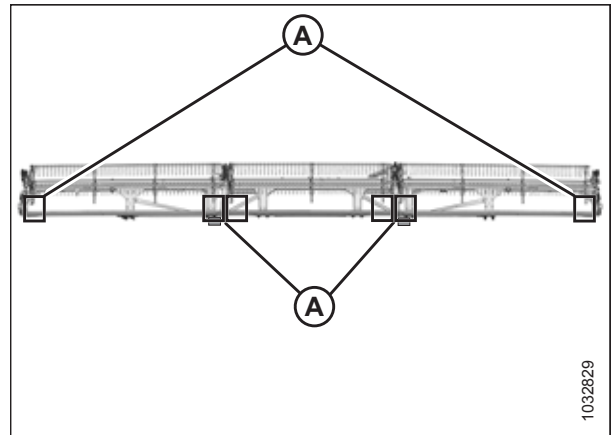


Figure 5.303: FlexDraper® Measurement Locations – Triple Reel

### *Adjusting Reel Clearance*

#### **DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected start-up or fall of raised machine, always stop the engine, remove the key, and engage the safety props before going under header for any reason.

Adjust the clearance at the outboard ends of the reel as follows:

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

2. Loosen bolt (A).
3. Adjust cylinder rod (B) as required:
  - To increase clearance to the cutterbar, turn cylinder rod (B) out of clevis to raise the reel.
  - To decrease clearance to the cutterbar, turn cylinder rod (B) into clevis to lower the reel.
4. Tighten bolt (A).
5. Repeat at opposite side of the header.

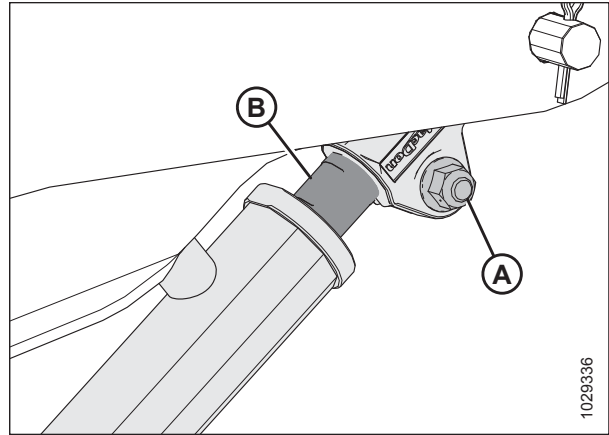


Figure 5.304: Outside Arm Cylinder

Adjust the clearance at the inboard ends of the reels as follows:

6. Loosen bolts (A).
7. Adjust cylinder rods (B) as required:

**IMPORTANT:**

Adjust both cylinder rods equally.

- To increase clearance to the cutterbar, turn cylinder rods (B) out of clevis to raise the reel.
- To decrease clearance to the cutterbar, turn cylinder rods (B) into clevis to lower the reel.

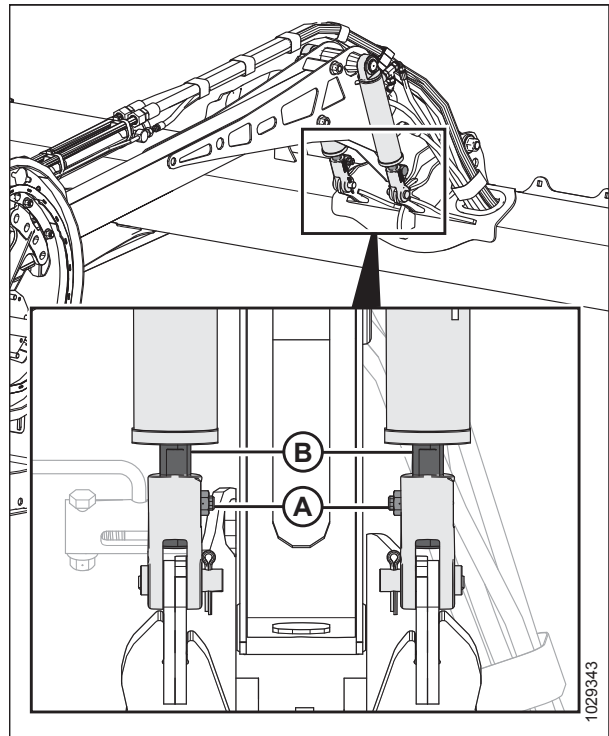


Figure 5.305: Center Arm Cylinders



## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

8. Ensure measurement (A) is equal on both cylinders.
9. Verify that both mounting pins (B) cannot be rotated by hand. If one of the mounting pins is free to rotate, then adjust cylinder rod as required.
10. Tighten bolts (C).

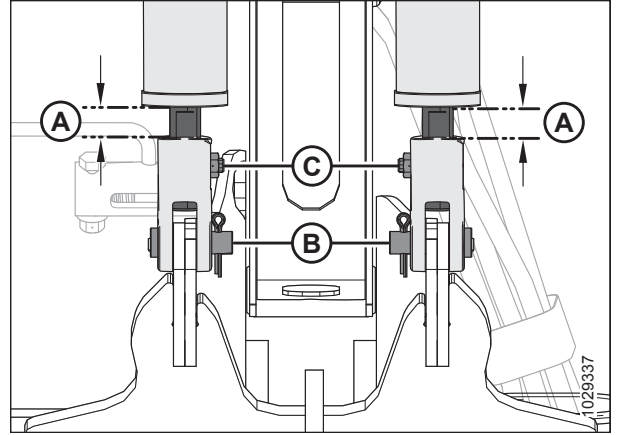


Figure 5.306: Center Arm Cylinders

11. Check measurements and, if necessary, repeat adjustment procedures.
12. Move the reel back to ensure the steel end fingers do not contact the deflector shields.
13. If contact occurs, adjust the reel upward to maintain the clearance at all reel fore-aft positions. If contact cannot be avoided after adjusting the reel, trim the steel end fingers to obtain proper clearance.
14. Periodically check for evidence of contact during operation, and adjust clearance as required.

### 5.16.2 Reel Frown

The reel is factory-set to frown (providing more clearance at the center of the reel than at the ends) to compensate for reel flexing.

#### Adjusting Reel Frown

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before making adjustments to the machine.

1. Position the reel over the cutterbar (between 4 and 5 on fore-aft position indicator [A]) to provide adequate clearance at all reel fore-aft positions. Bracket (B) is the position marker.
2. Record the measurement at each reel disc location for each reel tube.

**NOTE:**

Measure the frown profile before disassembling the reel for servicing so the profile can be maintained during reassembly.

3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
  4. Start with the reel disc closest to the center of the header and proceed outward towards the ends, adjusting the header profile as follows:
    - a. Remove bolts (A).
    - b. Loosen bolt (B) and adjust arm (C) until the desired measurement is obtained between the reel tube and cutterbar.
- NOTE:**  
Allow the reel tubes to curve naturally and position the hardware accordingly.
- c. Reinstall bolts (A) in the aligned holes and tighten.

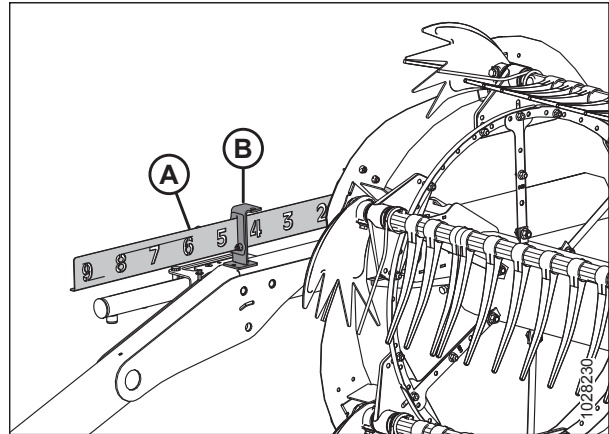


Figure 5.307: Fore-Aft Position Indicator

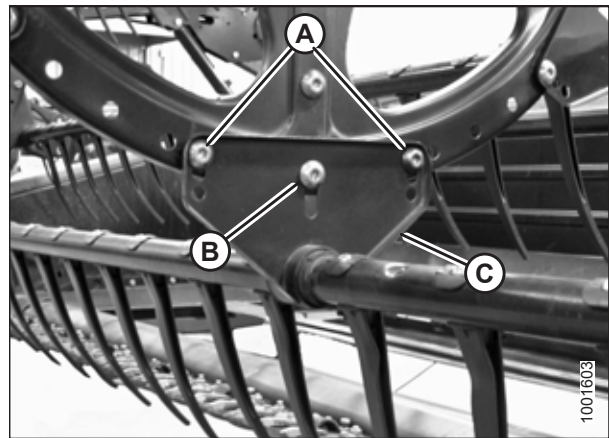


Figure 5.308: Center Reel Disc

### 5.16.3 Centering Reel

#### WARNING

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop engine and remove key before adjusting machine.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Measure clearance (A) at locations (B) between reel tine tube and endsheet at both ends of header. The clearances should be the same if reel is centered. Refer to the following steps to center reel.

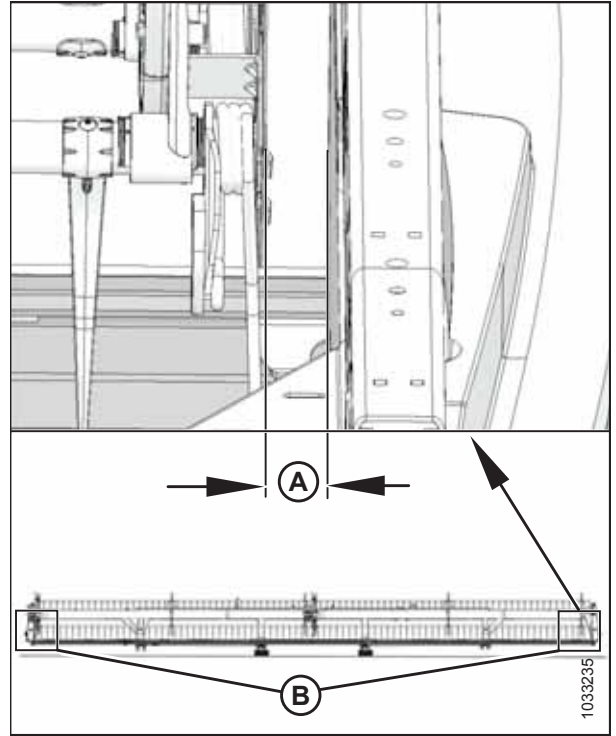


Figure 5.309: Centering Reel

3. Loosen bolt (A) on brace (B) at the center support arm.
4. Move the forward end of reel support arm (C) laterally as required to center the reel.
5. Tighten bolt (A) and torque to 457 Nm (337 lbf-ft).

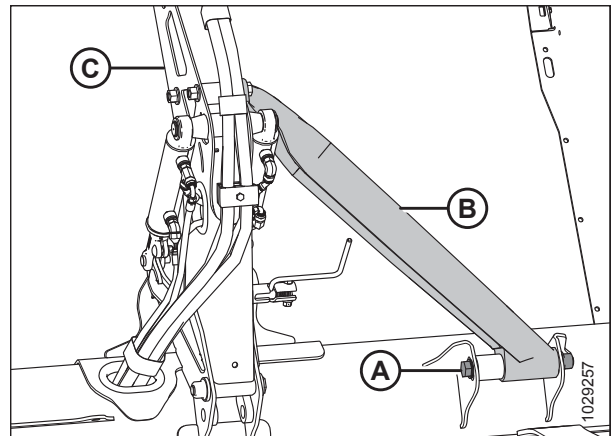


Figure 5.310: Center Support Arm

### 5.16.4 Reel Fingers

#### IMPORTANT:

Keep the reel fingers in good condition and straighten or replace them as necessary.

### Removing Steel Fingers

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

#### WARNING

To avoid bodily injury from fall of raised reel, always engage reel safety props before going under raised reel for any reason.

#### IMPORTANT:

Ensure the tine tube is supported at all times to avoid damaging it and other components.

1. Lower the header fully.
2. Raise the reel fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to [Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 31](#).
5. Remove the tine tube bushings from the applicable tine tube at the center and left reel discs. For instructions, refer to [Removing Bushings from Reels, page 584](#).
6. Attach tine tube arms (B) to the reel disc at original attachment locations (A).
7. Cut the damaged finger so it can be removed from the tine tube.
8. Remove bolts from the existing fingers and slide the fingers over to replace the finger that was cut off in Step 7, [page 580](#) (remove tine tube arms [B] from the tine tubes as necessary).

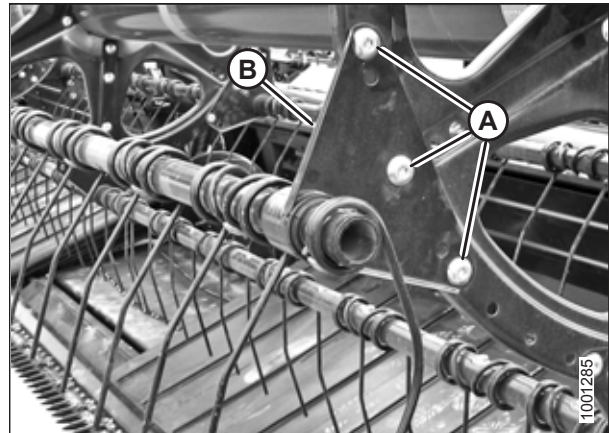


Figure 5.311: Tine Tube Arm

### Installing Steel Fingers

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

#### WARNING

To avoid bodily injury from fall of raised reel, always engage reel safety props before going under raised reel for any reason.

#### IMPORTANT:

Ensure the tine tube is supported at all times to prevent damage to the tube and other components.

**NOTE:**

This procedure assumes a finger has already been removed from the machine. For instructions about removing fingers, refer to *Removing Steel Fingers, page 580*.

1. Slide the new finger and tine tube arm (A) onto the end of the tube.
2. Install the tine tube bushings. For instructions, refer to *Installing Bushings onto Reels, page 588*.
3. Attach the fingers to the tine tube with bolts and nuts (B).

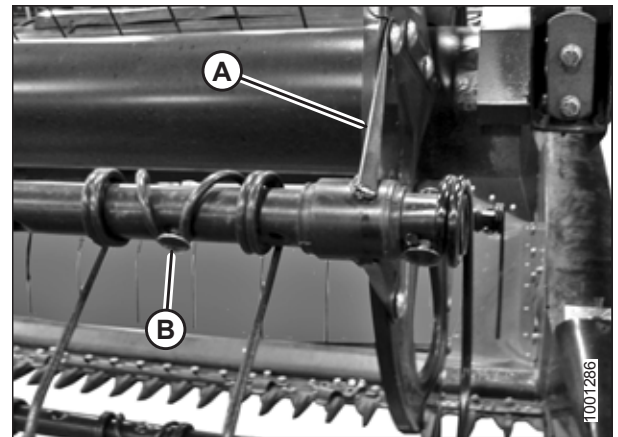


Figure 5.312: Tine Tube

*Removing Plastic Fingers*

 **DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

1. Lower the header fully.
2. Raise the reel fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to *Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 31*.
5. Remove screw (A) using a Torx® Plus 27 IP socket wrench.

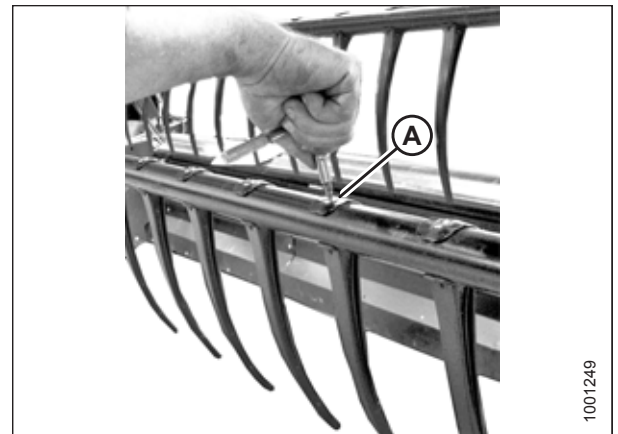


Figure 5.313: Removing Plastic Finger

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

6. Push the clip at the top of the finger back towards the reel tube as shown and remove the finger from the tube.



Figure 5.314: Removing Plastic Finger

1001250

*Installing Plastic Fingers*

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

**⚠ WARNING**

To avoid bodily injury from fall of raised reel, always engage reel safety props before going under raised reel for any reason.

**NOTE:**

This procedure assumes a finger has already been removed from the machine. For instructions, refer to *Removing Plastic Fingers*, page 581.

1. Position the new finger on the rear of the tine tube. Engage the lug at the bottom of the finger in the lower hole in the tine tube.
2. Lift the top flange gently and rotate the finger as shown until the lug in the top of the finger engages the upper hole in the tine tube.



Figure 5.315: Installing Plastic Finger

**IMPORTANT:**

Do **NOT** apply force to the finger prior to tightening the mounting screw. Applying force without tightening the mounting screw will break the finger or shear the locating pins.

3. Install screw (A) using a Torx® Plus 27 IP socket wrench and torque to 8.5–9.0 Nm (75–80 lbf·in).

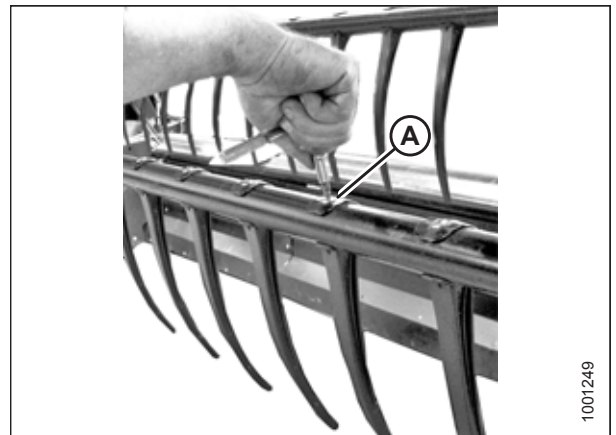


Figure 5.316: Installing Plastic Finger

## 5.16.5 Tine Tube Bushings

### *Removing Bushings from Reels*

Bushing are located at the point where the reel tine connects to the reel disc.

#### **DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from the unexpected start-up or fall of a raised machine, always stop engine and remove key before leaving the operator's seat, and always engage safety props before going under the machine for any reason.

#### **IMPORTANT:**

Ensure the tine tube is supported at all times to prevent damage to the tube and other components.

1. Lower the header fully.
2. Raise the reel fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Engage the reel safety props. For instructions, refer to *Engaging Reel Safety Props, page 31*.

#### **NOTE:**

If replacing only the cam end bushing, proceed to Step *10, page 585*.

#### **Center disc and tail end bushings**

5. Remove the reel endshields and endshield support (C) from the tail end of the reel at the applicable tine tube location.

#### **NOTE:**

There are no endshields on the center disc.

6. Remove bolts (A) securing tine tube arm (B) to the disc.

#### **IMPORTANT:**

Note the hole locations in the arm and disc and ensure bolts (A) are reinstalled at the original locations.

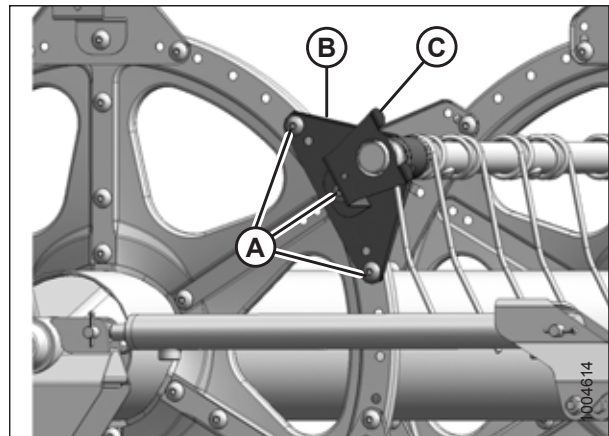


Figure 5.317: Tail End

7. Release bushing clamps (A) using a small screwdriver to separate the serrations. Pull the clamp off the tine tube.

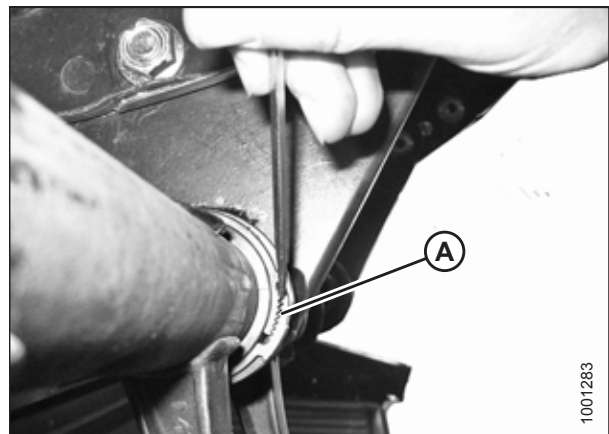


Figure 5.318: Bushing Clamp



## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

8. Rotate tine tube arm (A) until clear of the disc and slide the arm inboard off of bushing (B).
9. Remove bushing halves (B). If required, remove the next steel or plastic finger, so the arm can slide off the bushing. Refer to the following procedures as necessary:
  - *Removing Plastic Fingers, page 581*
  - *Removing Steel Fingers, page 580*

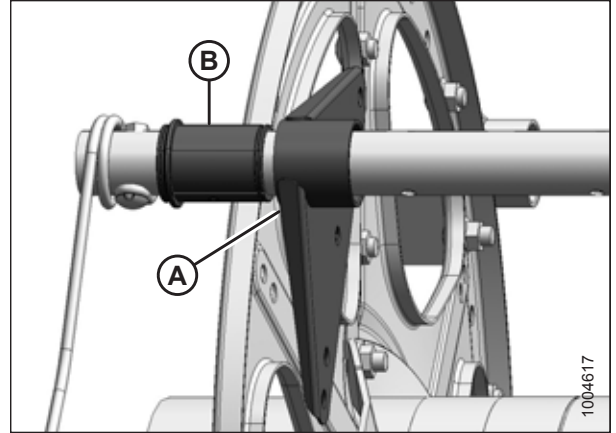


Figure 5.319: Bushing

### Cam end bushings

10. Remove the endshields and endshield support (A) at the applicable tine tube location on the cam end.

**NOTE:**

Removing cam end bushings requires the tine tube to be moved through the disc arms to expose the bushing.

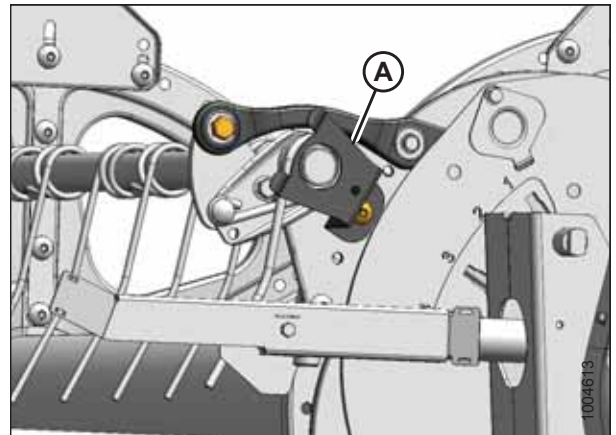


Figure 5.320: Cam End

11. Remove the reel endshields and endshield support (C) from the tail end of the reel at the applicable tine tube location.

**NOTE:**

There are no endshields on the center disc.

12. Remove bolts (A) securing tine tube arms (B) to the tail and center discs.

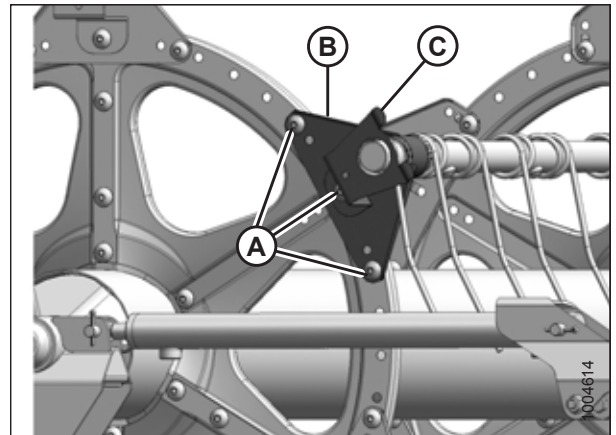
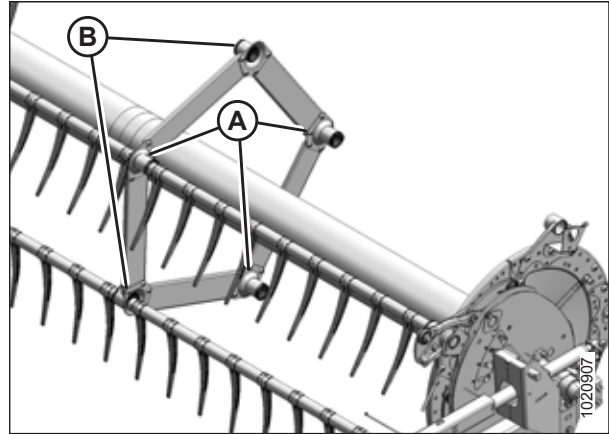


Figure 5.321: Tail End

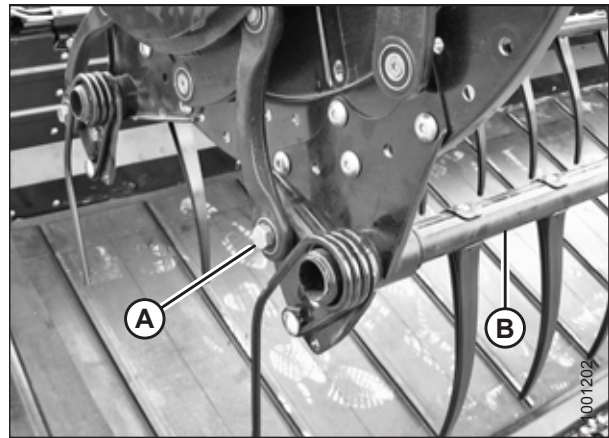
***Tine tube reinforcing kit (option)***<sup>65</sup>

13. Release the bushing clamps or disconnect the support channels from the tine tube support (if installed) depending on which tine tube is being moved. Three tine tubes (A) require channel disconnection and two tine tubes (B) require only bushing clamp removal.



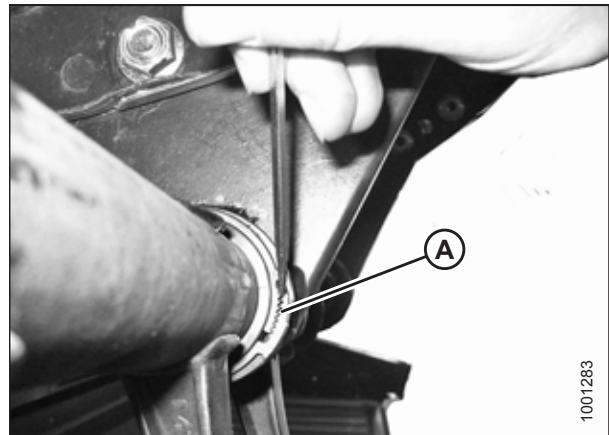
**Figure 5.322: Tine Tube Supports**

14. Remove bolt (A) from the cam linkage so tine tube (B) is free to rotate.



**Figure 5.323: Cam End**

15. Release bushing clamps (A) at the cam disc using a small screwdriver to separate the serrations. Move the clamps off the bushings.



**Figure 5.324: Bushing Clamp**

65. 5-Bat Reel MD #B5825, 6-Bat Reel MD #B5826.

16. Slide tine tube (A) outboard to expose bushing (B).
17. Remove bushing halves (B). If required, remove the next steel or plastic finger so the arm can slide off the bushing. Refer to the following procedures if necessary:
  - [Removing Plastic Fingers, page 581](#)
  - [Removing Steel Fingers, page 580](#)

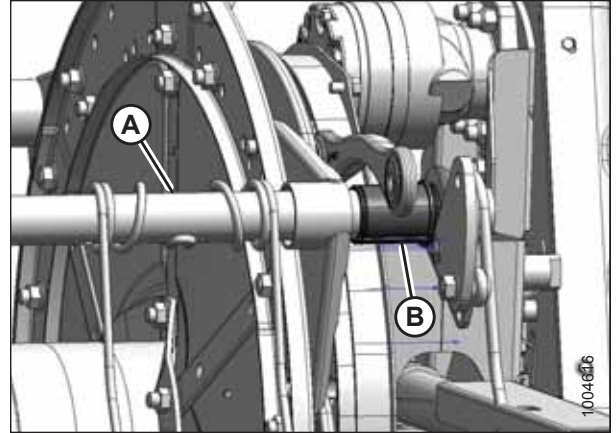


Figure 5.325: Cam End

***Tine tube reinforcing kit bushings (option)***

18. Locate support (A) that requires a new bushing.
19. Remove four bolts (B) securing channel (C) to support (A).
20. Remove screw (E) and remove finger (D) if it is too close to the support to allow access to the bushing. For instructions, refer to [Removing Plastic Fingers, page 581](#) or [Removing Steel Fingers, page 580](#).

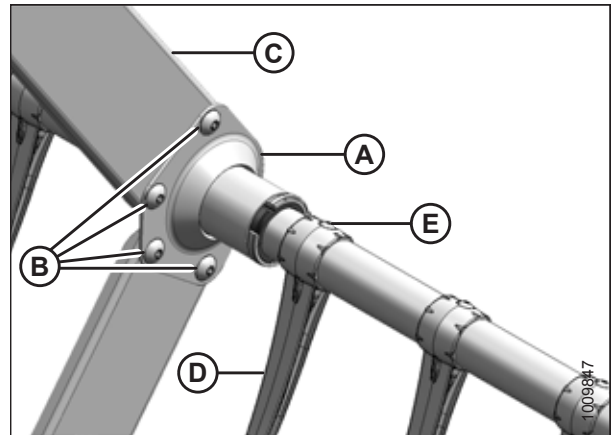


Figure 5.326: Tine Tube Support

21. Release bushing clamps (A) using a small screwdriver to separate the serrations.

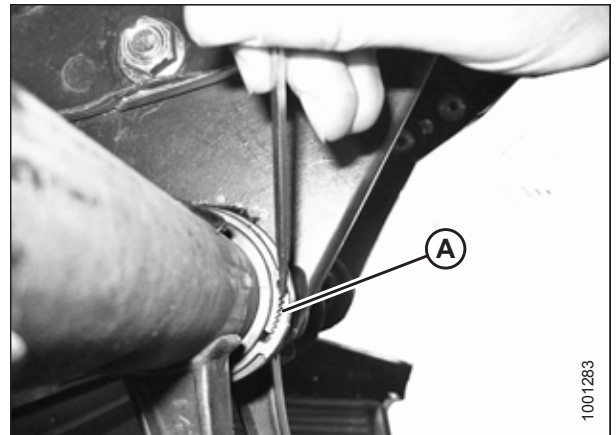


Figure 5.327: Bushing Clamp

22. Move clamps (A) off the bushings.

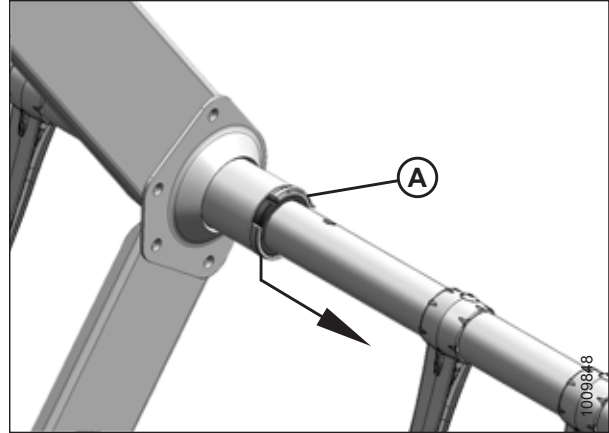


Figure 5.328: Tine Tube Reinforcing Kit Bushing Clamp (Option)

23. On each reel, there are three right-facing supports (A). Slide the support off bushing halves (B).

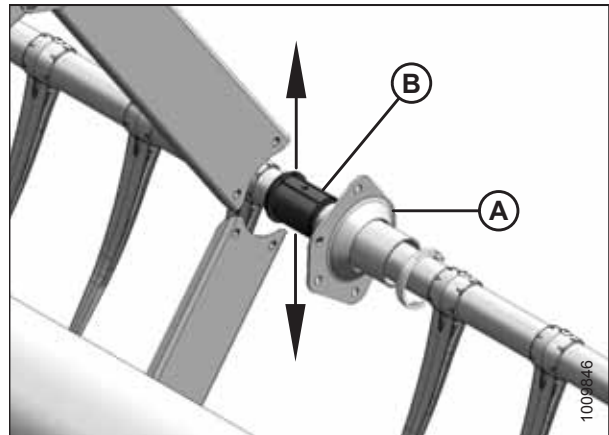


Figure 5.329: Tine Tube Reinforcing Kit Support (Option)

24. On each reel, there are two left-facing supports (A). Rotate the supports until the flanges clear the channels before moving them off bushing (B). Move the tube slightly away from the reel if necessary.

25. Remove bushing halves (B) from the tine tubes.

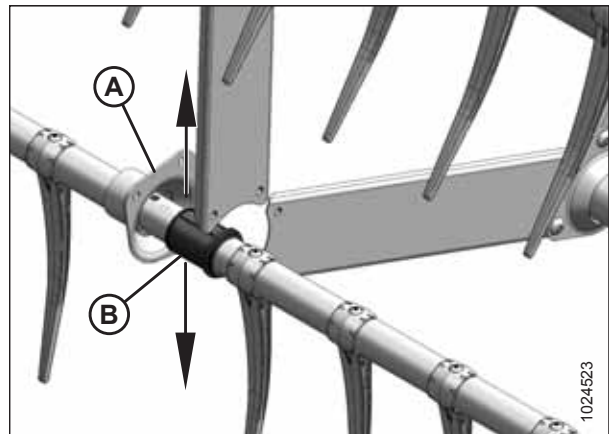


Figure 5.330: Tine Tube Reinforcing Kit Opposite Support (Option)

### *Installing Bushings onto Reels*

**NOTE:**

This procedure assumes the steps for *Removing Bushings from Reels*, page 584 have been completed.

**WARNING**

To avoid bodily injury from fall of raised reel, always engage reel safety props before going under raised reel for any reason.

**IMPORTANT:**

Ensure the tine tube is supported at all times to prevent damage to the tube or other components.

Use a pair of modified channel lock pliers (A) to install bushing clamps (C). Secure pliers in a vise and grind a notch (B) into the end of each arm to fit the clamp as shown.

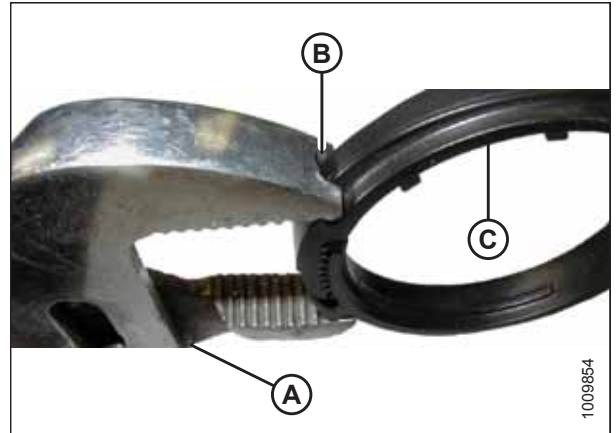


Figure 5.331: Modified Channel Lock Pliers

**Cam end bushings**

1. Position bushing halves (B) on tine tube (A) with the flangeless end adjacent to the tine tube arm, and position the lug in each bushing half into the hole in the tine tube.
2. Slide tine tube (A) towards the tail end of the reel to insert bushing (B) into the tine tube arm. If the tine tube supports are installed, ensure the bushings at those locations slide into the support.
3. Reinstall the previously removed fingers. Refer to the following procedures as necessary:
  - [Removing Plastic Fingers, page 581](#)
  - [Removing Steel Fingers, page 580](#)

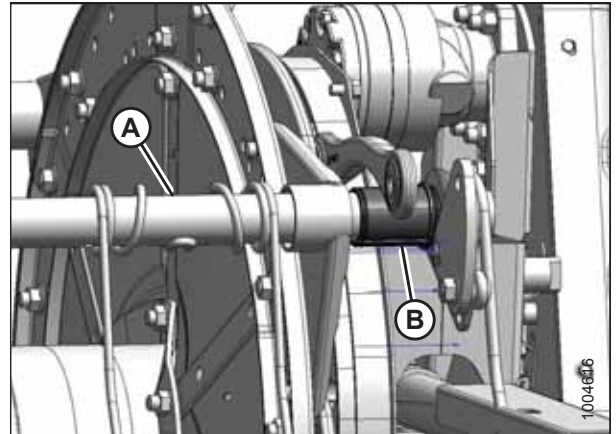


Figure 5.332: Cam End

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

4. Install bushing clamp (A) onto the tine tube adjacent to the flangeless end of bushing (B).
5. Position clamp (A) on bushing (B) so the edges of the clamp and bushing are flush when the clamp is fit into the groove on the bushing and the lock tabs are engaged.

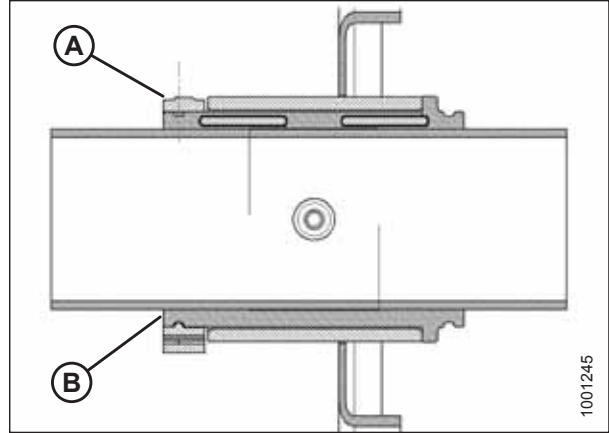


Figure 5.333: Bushing

6. Tighten clamp (A) using modified channel lock pliers (B) until finger pressure will **NOT** move the clamp.

**IMPORTANT:**

Overtightening clamp may result in breakage.

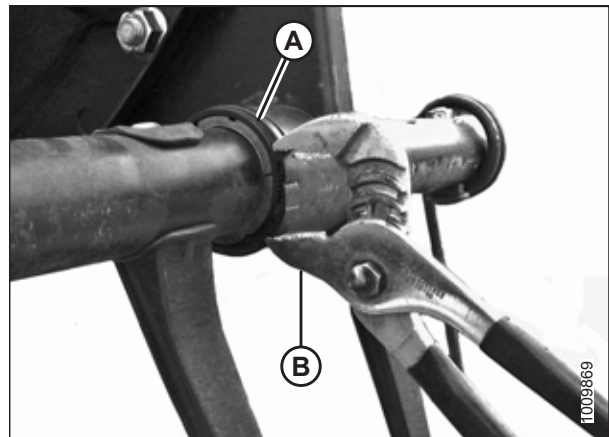


Figure 5.334: Installing Clamp

7. Line up tine tube (B) with the cam arm and install bolt (A). Torque bolt to 165 Nm (120 lbf·ft).

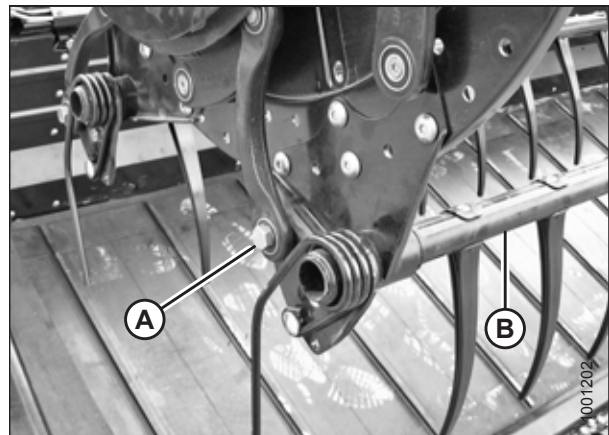


Figure 5.335: Cam End

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

8. Install bolts (A) securing tine tube arm (B) to the center disc.
9. Install tine tube arm (B) and endshield support (C) to the tail end of the reel at the applicable tine tube location and secure with bolts (A).

**NOTE:**

There are no endshields on the center discs.

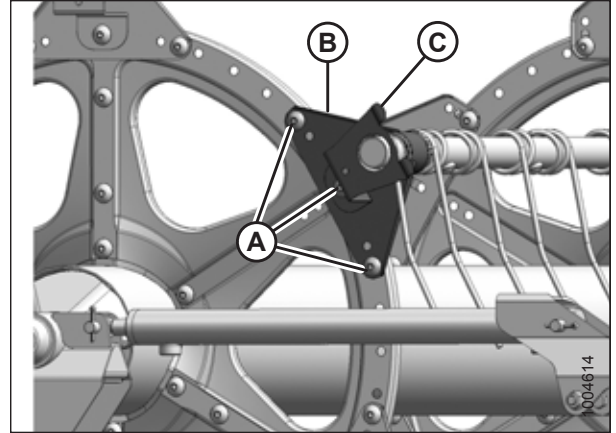


Figure 5.336: Tail End

10. Install endshield support (A) at the applicable tine tube location at the cam end.
11. Reinstall the reel endshields. For instructions, refer to [5.16.6 Reel Endshields, page 596](#).

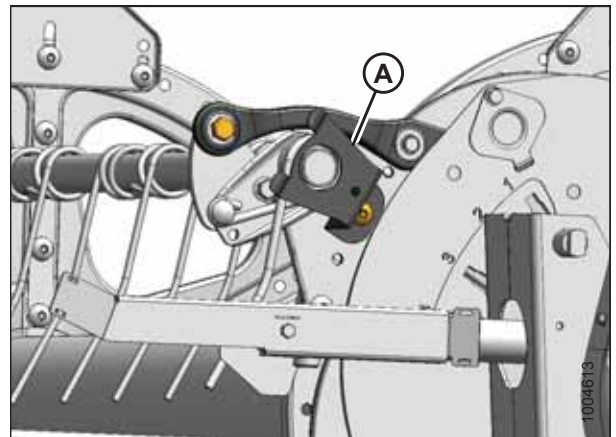


Figure 5.337: Cam End

### **Center disc and tail end bushings**

12. Position bushing halves (B) on tine tube (A) with the flangeless end adjacent to the tine tube arm, and position the lug in each bushing half into the hole in the tine tube.
13. Slide tine tube (A) onto bushing (B) and position against the disc at the original location.
14. Reinstall the previously removed fingers. For instructions, refer to:
  - [Removing Plastic Fingers, page 581](#)
  - [Removing Steel Fingers, page 580](#)

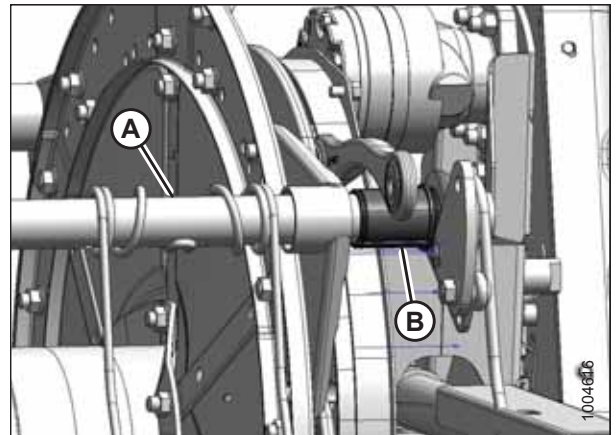


Figure 5.338: Cam End

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

15. Install bushing clamp (A) onto the tine tube adjacent to the flangeless end of bushing (B).
16. Position clamp (A) on bushing (B) so the edges of the clamp and bushing are flush when the clamp is fit into the groove on the bushing and the lock tabs are engaged.

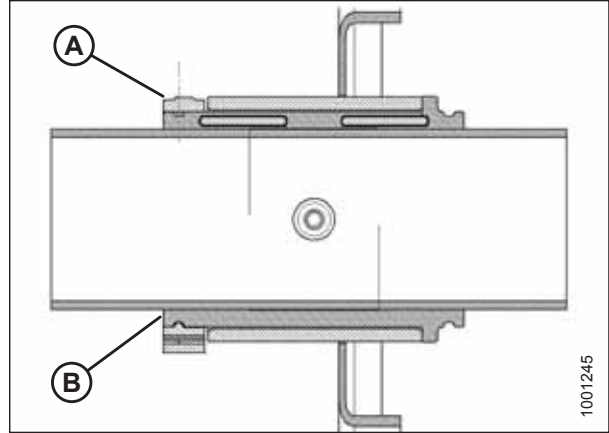


Figure 5.339: Bushing

17. Tighten clamp (A) using modified channel lock pliers (B) until finger pressure will **NOT** move the clamp.

**IMPORTANT:**

Overtightening clamp may result in breakage.

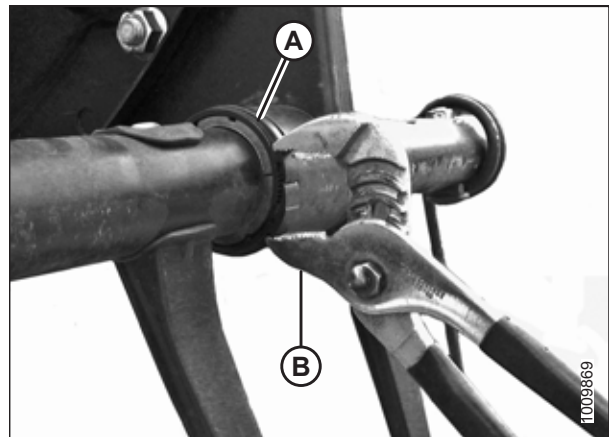


Figure 5.340: Installing Clamp

18. Install bolts (A) securing tine tube arm (B) to the center disc.
19. Install tine tube arm (B) and endshield support (C) to the tail end of the reel at the applicable tine tube location and secure with bolts (A).

**NOTE:**

There are no endshields on the center discs.

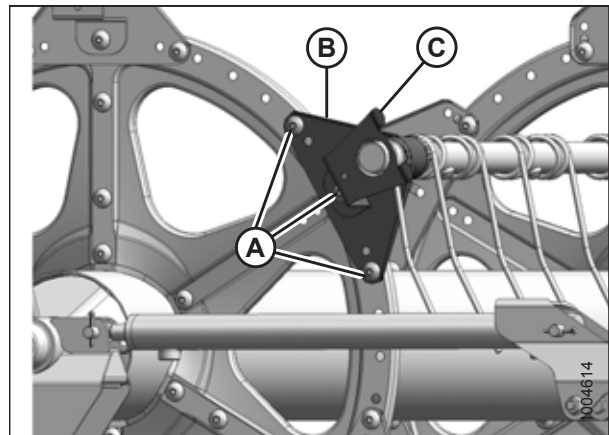


Figure 5.341: Tail End



*Tine tube reinforcing kit (option)*<sup>66</sup>

20. Position bushing halves (B) on tine tube (A) with the flangeless end adjacent to the tine tube arm, and position the lug in each bushing half into the hole in the tine tube.

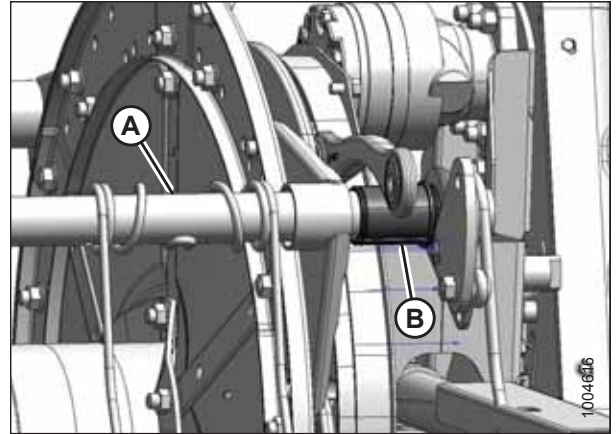


Figure 5.342: Cam End

21. On each reel, there are three right-facing supports (A). Slide the support onto bushing (B).

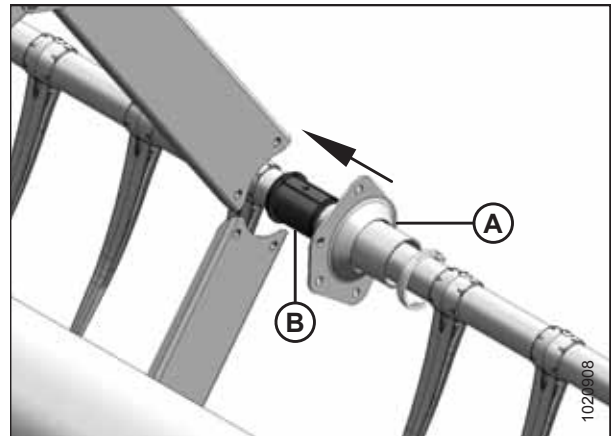


Figure 5.343: Tine Tube Reinforcing Kit Support (Option)

22. On each reel, there are two left-facing supports (A). Rotate support (A) until its flanges clear channels (C) before moving the support onto bushing (B).

**NOTE:**

If necessary, move tine tube (D) slightly away from the reel to allow the support flange enough room to clear the channel.

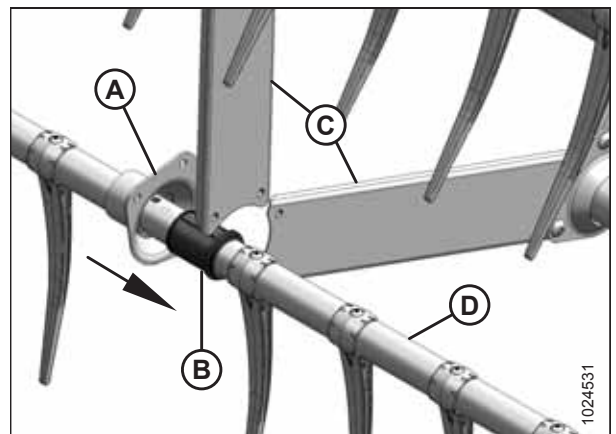


Figure 5.344: Tine Tube Reinforcing Kit Opposite Support (Option)

66. 5-bat reel (MD #B5825), 6-bat reel (MD #B5826).

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

23. Install bushing clamp (A) onto the tine tube adjacent to the flangeless end of bushing (B).
24. Position clamp (A) on bushing (B) so the edges of the clamp and bushing are flush when the clamp is fit into the groove on the bushing and the lock tabs are engaged.

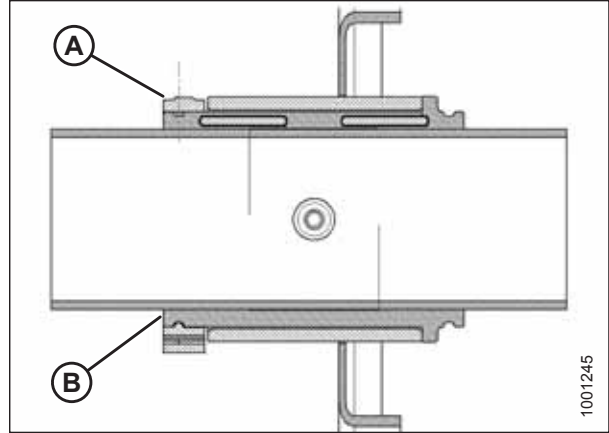


Figure 5.345: Bushing

25. Tighten clamp (A) using modified channel lock pliers (B) until finger pressure will **NOT** move the clamp.

**IMPORTANT:**

Overtightening clamp may result in breakage.

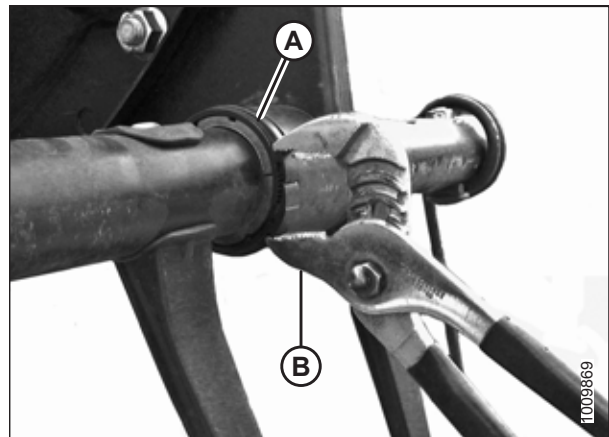


Figure 5.346: Installing Clamp

26. Reattach channels (C) to the three right-facing supports (A) on each reel with screws (B) and nuts. Torque screws to 43 Nm (32 lbf-ft).
27. Using screws (E), reinstall any fingers (D) that were previously removed. For instructions, refer to:
  - [Installing Plastic Fingers, page 583](#)
  - [Installing Steel Fingers, page 580](#)

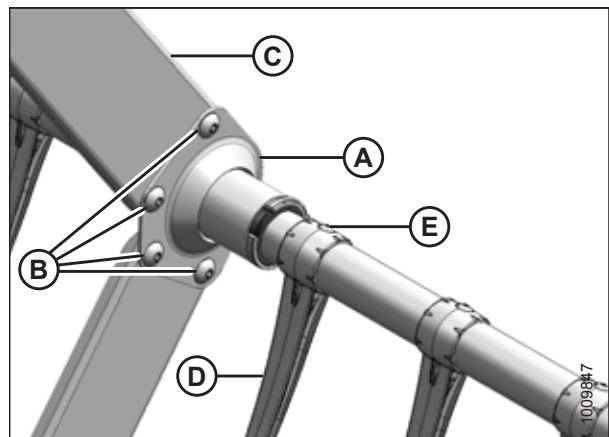
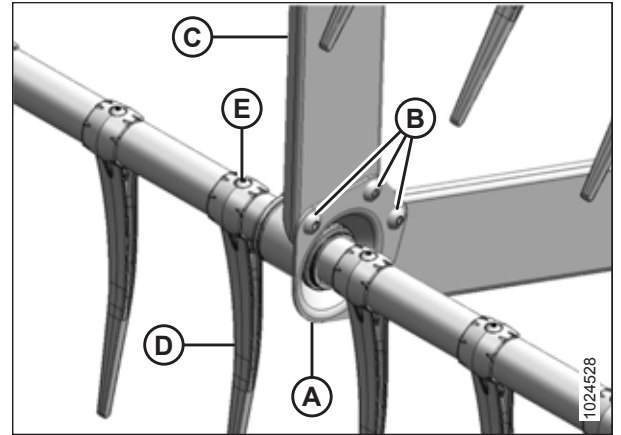


Figure 5.347: Tine Tube Reinforcing Kit Support (Option)

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

28. Reattach channels (C) to two left-facing supports (A) on each reel with screws (B) and nuts. Torque screws to 43 Nm (32 lbf-ft).
29. Using screws (E), reinstall any fingers (D) that were previously removed. For instructions, refer to:
  - [Installing Plastic Fingers, page 583](#)
  - [Installing Steel Fingers, page 580](#)

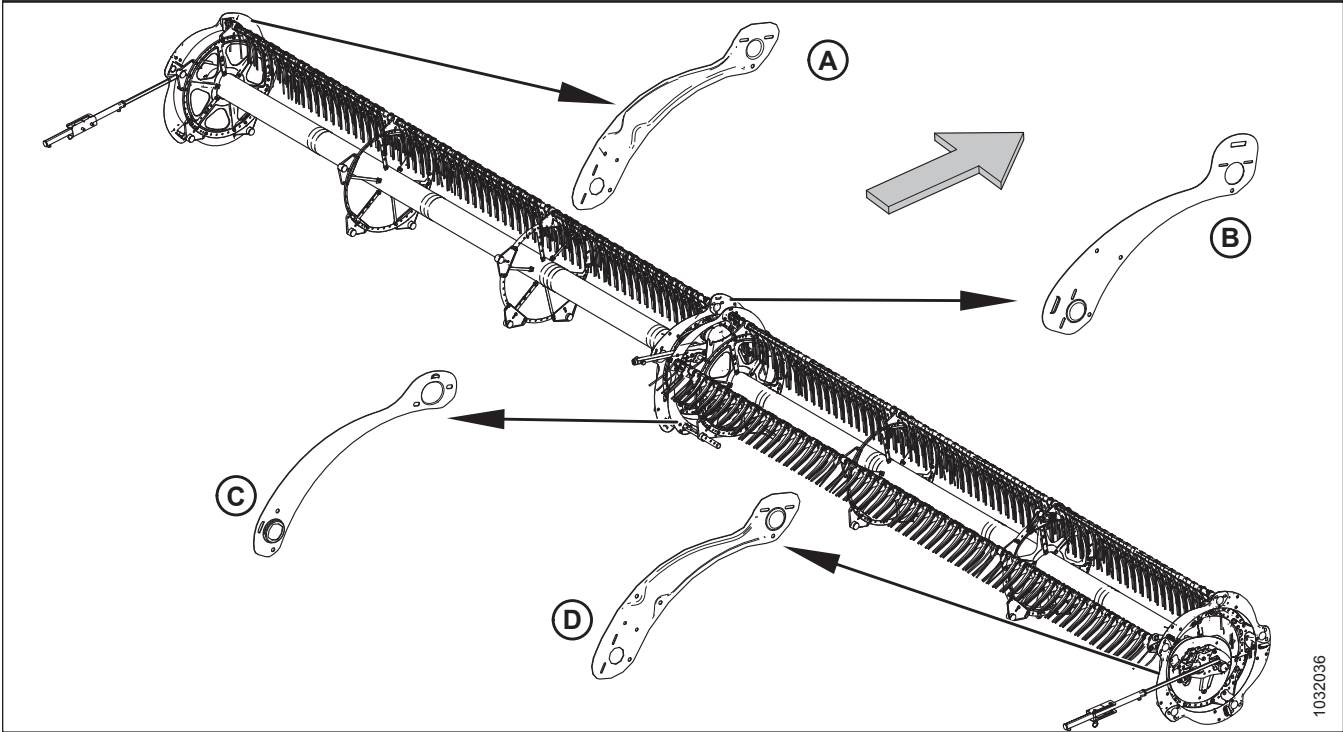


**Figure 5.348: Tine Tube Reinforcing Kit Opposite Support (Option)**

### 5.16.6 Reel Endshields

Reel endshields and supports do not require regular maintenance, but they should be checked periodically for damage and loose or missing fasteners. Slightly dented or deformed endshields and supports are repairable, but it's necessary to replace severely damaged components.

There are four kinds of endshields. Ensure you are installing the correct endshield to the proper location as shown below.



**Figure 5.349: Reel Endshields**

A - Tail End, Outboard (MD #311695)  
 C - Tail End, Inboard (MD #311795)

B - Cam End, Inboard (MD #273823)  
 D - Cam End, Outboard (MD #311694)

**NOTE:**

Arrow points to the front of machine.

*Replacing Reel Endshields at Outboard Cam End*

This is applicable to the inboard and outboard cam end. Exceptions are noted where applicable. Be aware that the endshields are different for inboard and outboard cam end, refer to Figure 5.349, page 596 for reference.

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Lower the header and reel.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

**NOTE:**

Arrows in the following illustrations point to the front of machine.

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

3. Rotate the reel manually until reel endshield (A) requiring replacement is accessible.
4. Remove three bolts (B).

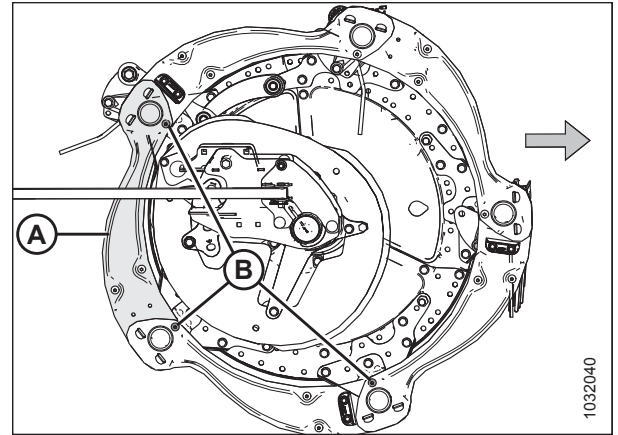


Figure 5.350: Reel Endshields – Outboard Cam End

5. Remove two screws (A), nuts, and outboard cam deflector. Retain for reinstallation.
6. Lift the end of reel endshield (B) off support (C).

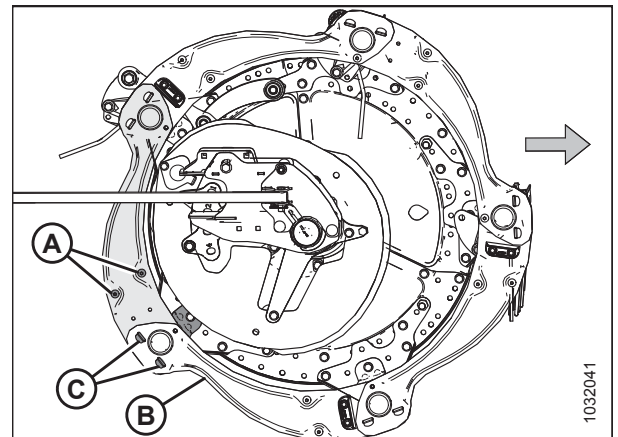


Figure 5.351: Reel Endshields – Outboard Cam End

7. Remove the reel endshield from supports (A).

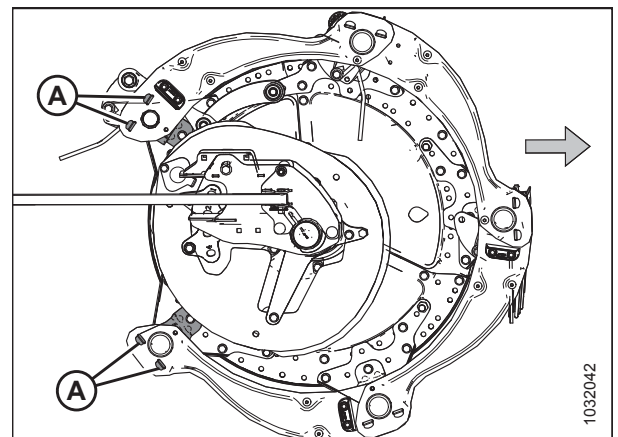


Figure 5.352: Reel Endshield Removed – Outboard Cam End

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

8. Slightly lift the end of existing reel endshield (A) off of support (B).
9. Position new reel endshield (C) onto support (B) under existing reel endshield (A).
10. Position the other end of new reel endshield (C) onto other support (D) over existing reel endshield (E).
11. Reinstall three bolts (F).
12. Reinstall two screws (G), outboard cam deflector, and nuts (removed in Step 5, [page 597](#)) on the new reel endshield.
13. Tighten all hardware.

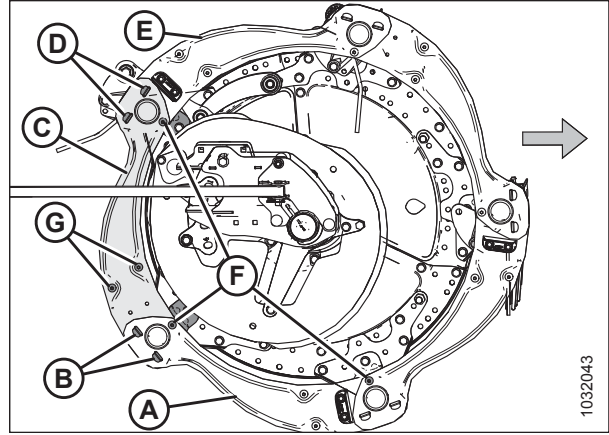


Figure 5.353: Reel Endshields – Outboard Cam End

### *Replacing Reel Endshields at Inboard Cam End*

This is applicable to the inboard and outboard cam end. Exceptions are noted where applicable. Be aware that the endshields are different for inboard and outboard cam end, refer to [Figure 5.349, page 596](#) for reference.

### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Lower the reel fully.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.

#### **NOTE:**

Arrows in the following illustrations point to the front of machine.

4. Rotate the reel manually until reel endshield (A) requiring replacement is accessible.
5. Remove three bolts (B).

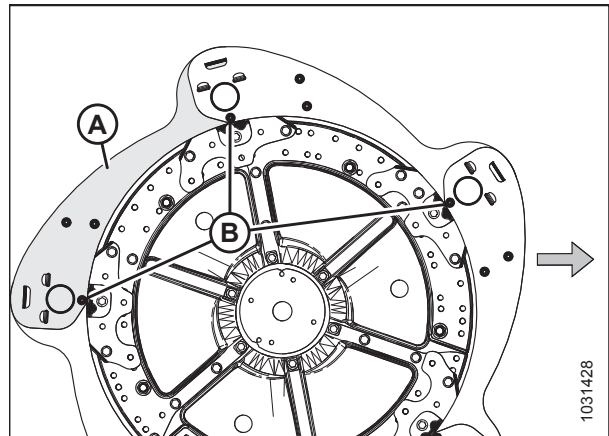


Figure 5.354: Reel Endshields – Inboard Cam End

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

6. Remove and retain two screws (A), cam deflector, and nuts from the reel endshield.
7. Lift the end of reel endshield (B) off support (C).

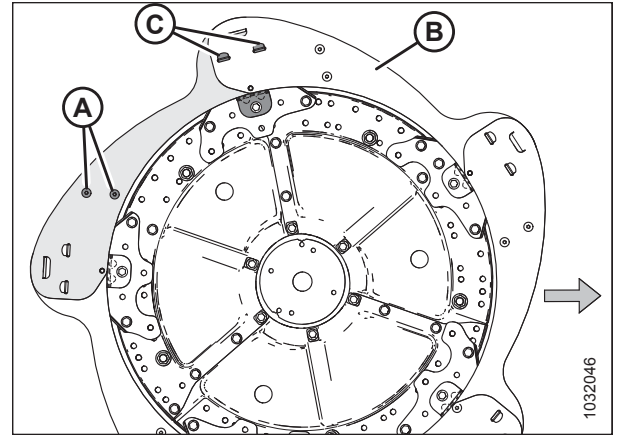


Figure 5.355: Reel Endshields – Inboard Cam End

8. Remove the reel endshield from supports (A).

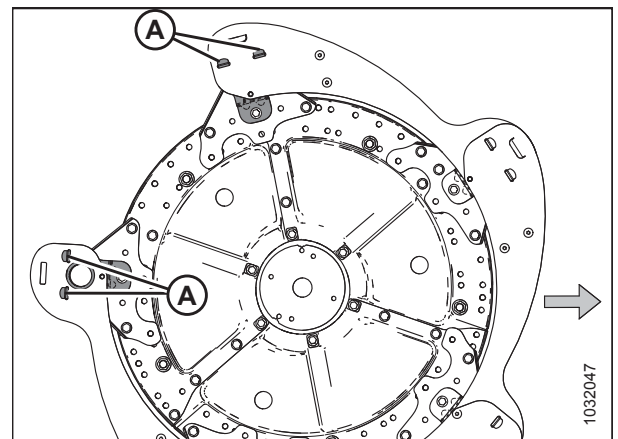


Figure 5.356: Reel Endshield Removed – Inboard Cam End

9. Slightly lift the end of existing reel endshield (A) off of support (B).
10. Position new reel endshield (C) onto support (B) under existing reel endshield (A).
11. Position the other end of new reel endshield (C) onto other support (D) over existing reel endshield (E).
12. Reinstall three bolts (F).
13. Reinstall two screws (G), cam deflector, and nuts (removed in Step 6, page 599) on the new reel endshield.
14. Tighten all hardware.

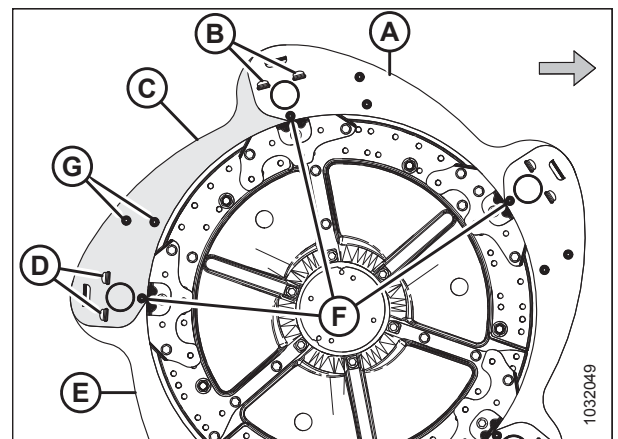


Figure 5.357: Reel Endshields – Inboard Cam End

*Replacing Reel Endshields at Outboard Tail End*

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Lower the reel fully.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Rotate the reel manually until reel endshield (A) requiring replacement is accessible.
6. Remove three bolts (B).

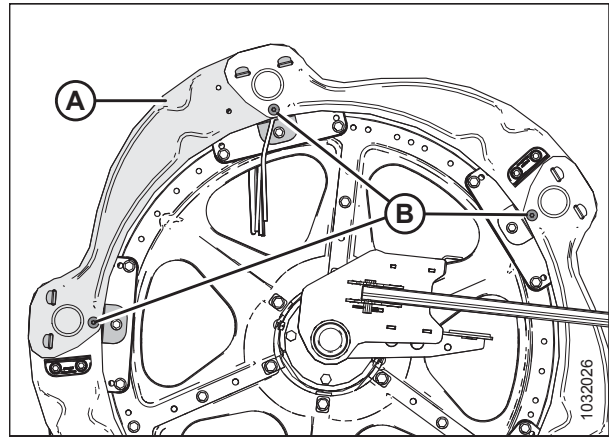


Figure 5.358: Reel Endshields – Outboard Tail End

7. Lift the end of reel endshield (A) off support (B).

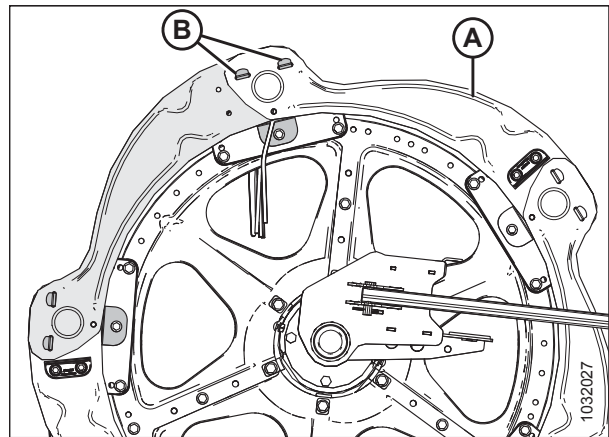


Figure 5.359: Reel Endshields – Outboard Tail End



## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

8. Remove the reel endshield from supports (A).
9. Remove reel paddle if installed on reel endshield.

**NOTE:**

Reel end paddle (B) are installed alternately on reel endshields.

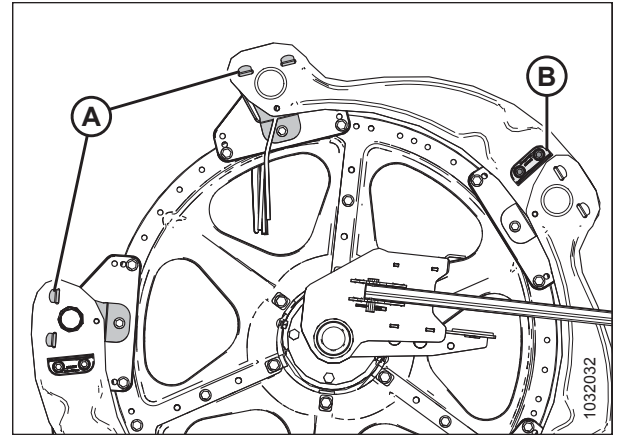


Figure 5.360: Reel Endshield Removed – Outboard Tail End

10. Slightly lift the end of reel endshield (A) off of support (B).
11. Position new reel endshield (C) onto support (B) under existing reel endshield (A).
12. Position the other end of new reel endshield (C) onto other support (E) over the existing reel endshield.
13. Reinstall three bolts (D).
14. Reinstall paddle (removed in Step 9, page 601) onto the new reel endshield if previously installed.
15. Tighten all hardware.

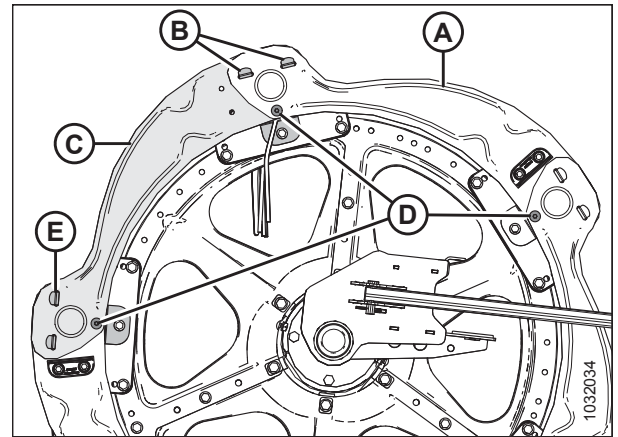


Figure 5.361: Reel Endshields – Outboard Tail End

*Replacing Reel Endshields at Inboard Tail End*

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

**IMPORTANT:**

Reel endshields are different for inboard and outboard tail end of header. For illustration, refer to 5.349, page 596.

1. Lower the reel fully.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
4. Rotate the reel manually until reel endshield (A) requiring replacement is accessible.
5. Remove six M10 screws (B) and nuts. Retain for reinstallation.

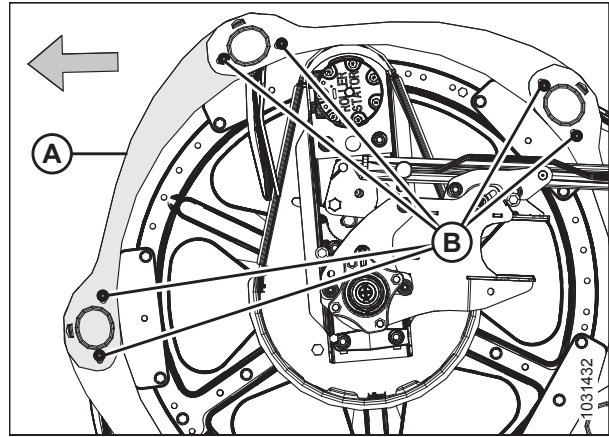


Figure 5.362: Reel Endshields – Inboard Tail End

6. Lift other endshield (A) to disengage the tab from endshield (B).
7. Lift the end of reel endshield (B) off endshield (C), and rotate endshield (B) downward.

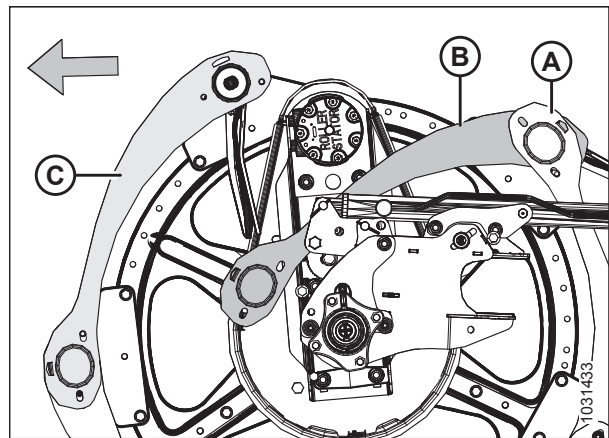


Figure 5.363: Reel Endshields – Inboard Tail End

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

8. Remove M10 bolt (A), nut (B), and end finger retainer (C) from tine tube that secure the bushing and tail end finger. Retain for reassembly.
9. Slide endshield bushing (D) to remove. Retain for reassembly.
10. Remove and discard damaged reel endshield (E).

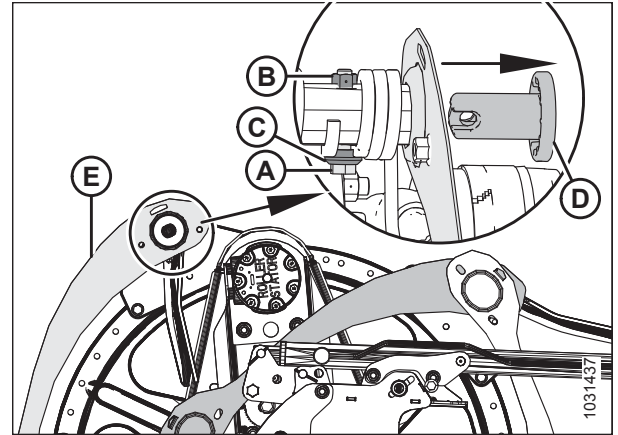


Figure 5.364: Reel Endshields – Inboard Tail End

11. Position new reel endshield (A), and engage tab onto another endshield (B).
12. Position the other end of new endshield (A) on tine tube and secure with bushing (C).

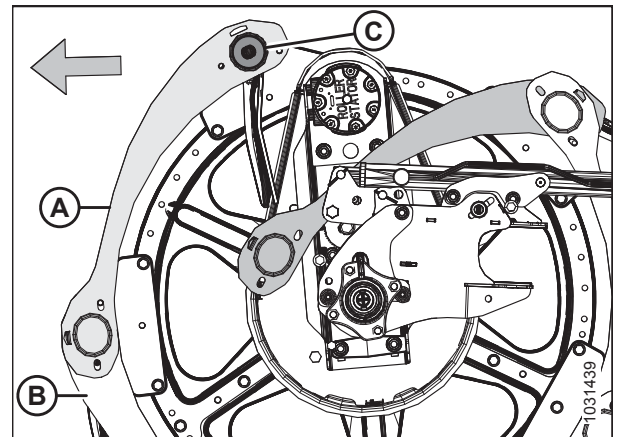


Figure 5.365: Reel Endshields – Inboard Tail End

13. Position tail end finger (A) as shown.
14. Secure tail end finger (A) and bushing (installed in Step 12, [page 603](#)) with M10 bolt (B), end finger retainer (C), and nut (D).

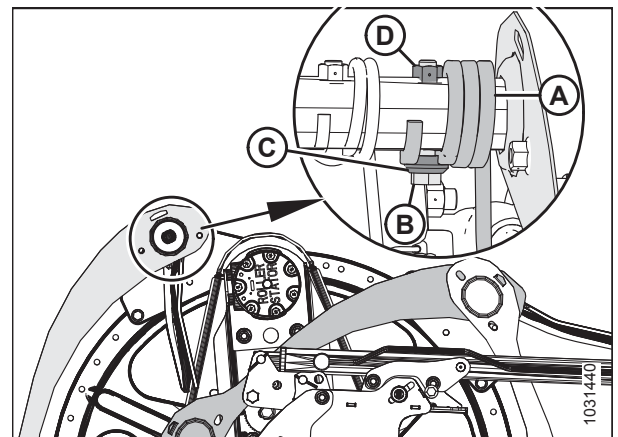


Figure 5.366: Reel Endshields – Inboard Tail End

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

15. Rotate reel endshield (A) upward and engage tabs (B) on both ends.
16. Secure reel endshields using six M10 screws and nuts (C).
17. Torque nuts (C) to 30–40 Nm (22–30 lbf-ft). Do **NOT** overtighten nut to prevent flattening of tube.

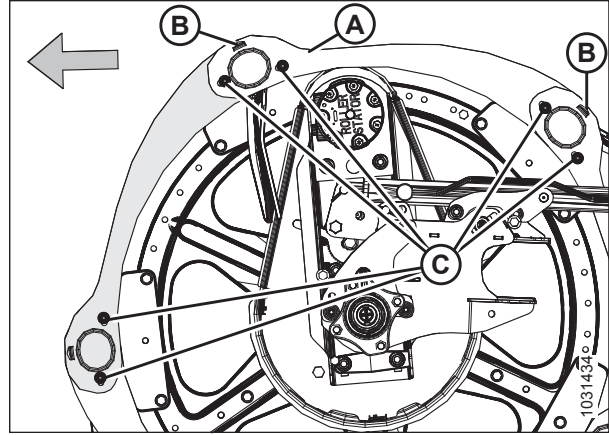


Figure 5.367: Reel Endshields – Inboard Tail End

### Replacing Reel Endshield Supports

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

#### NOTE:

All illustrations shown are from the outboard cam end.

1. Lower the header and reel.
2. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
3. Rotate the reel manually until the reel endshield support (A) requiring replacement is accessible.
4. Remove bolt (B) securing reel endshields to support (A).
5. Remove bolts (C) from support (A) and two adjacent supports.

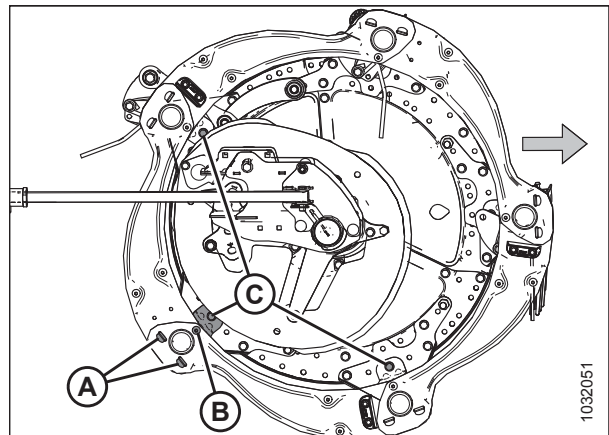


Figure 5.368: Reel Endshield Supports

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

6. Move reel endshields (A) and support (B) away from the tine tube, then remove support from endshields.
7. Insert tabs of new support (B) into the slots in reel endshields (A). Ensure the tabs engage both reel endshields.

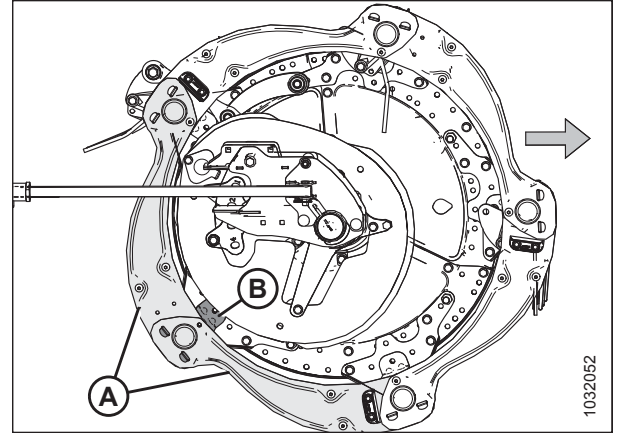


Figure 5.369: Reel Endshield Supports

8. Secure support (A) to the disc sector with bolt (B) and nut. Do **NOT** tighten.
9. Secure reel endshields (C) to support (A) with bolt (D) and nut. Do **NOT** tighten.
10. Reattach the other supports with bolts (E) and nuts.
11. Check the clearance between the tine tube and reel endshield support and adjust if necessary.
12. Torque nuts to 27 Nm (20 lbf-ft).

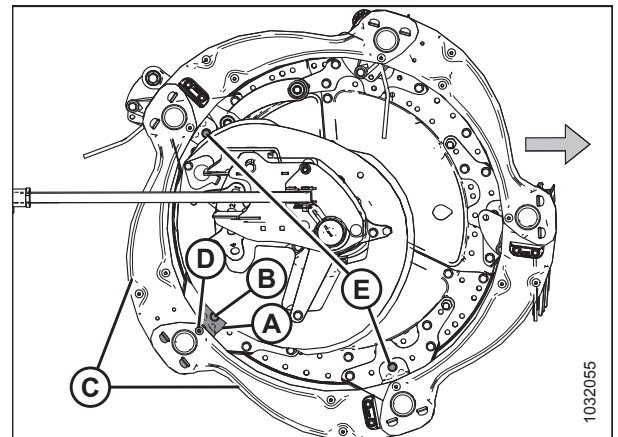


Figure 5.370: Reel Endshield Supports

## 5.17 Reel Drive

The hydraulically driven reel motor drives the chain that is attached between the reels on a double-reel header.

### 5.17.1 Reel Drive Chain Tension

#### *Loosening Reel Drive Chain*

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before making adjustments to the machine.

1. Start the engine.
2. Lower the header fully.
3. Adjust the reel fully forward.
4. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
5. Remove the reel drive cover. For instructions, refer to *Removing Reel Drive Cover, page 38*.
6. Open the endshield. For instructions, refer to *Opening Header Endshields, page 33*.
7. Remove hairpin (A) securing wrench (B) to bracket on left endsheet.
8. Remove wrench (B), and reinstall hairpin on the bracket.

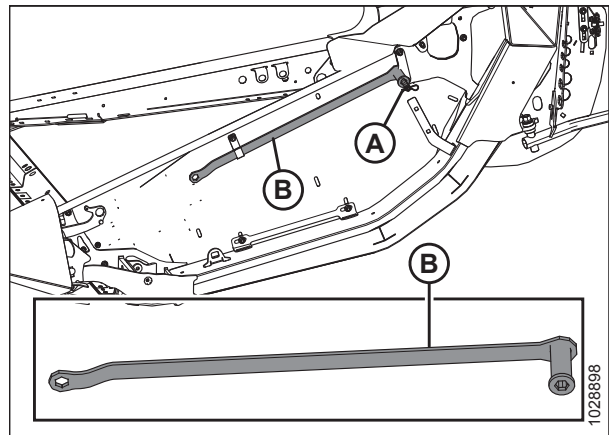


Figure 5.371: Wrench Storage Location

#### **IMPORTANT:**

Do **NOT** loosen the motor mount, it is factory-adjusted and secured together with Belleville washers. The tightening and loosening of the chain is done without having to adjust the drive mounting bolts.

9. Push tension retainer (A) clockwise with your thumb, and hold in the unlocked position.
10. Place wrench (B) onto chain tensioner (C), and rotate wrench upwards to loosen the chain tension.
11. Return the wrench to the storage position.

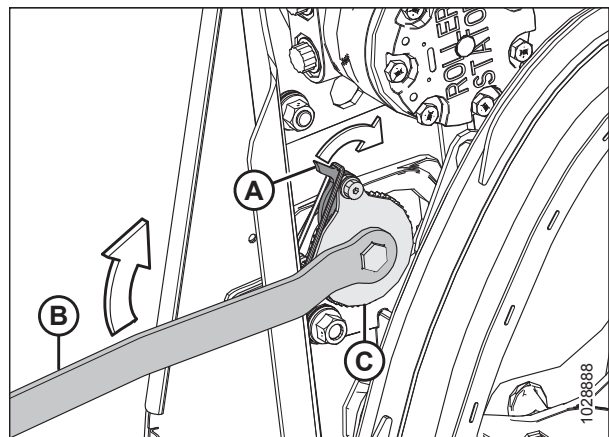


Figure 5.372: Reel Drive

*Tightening Reel Drive Chain*

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before making adjustments to the machine.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Open the endshield. For instructions, refer to *Opening Header Endshields*, page 33.
3. Remove hairpin (A) securing wrench (B) to the bracket on the left endsheet.
4. Remove wrench (B), and reinstall hairpin on the bracket.

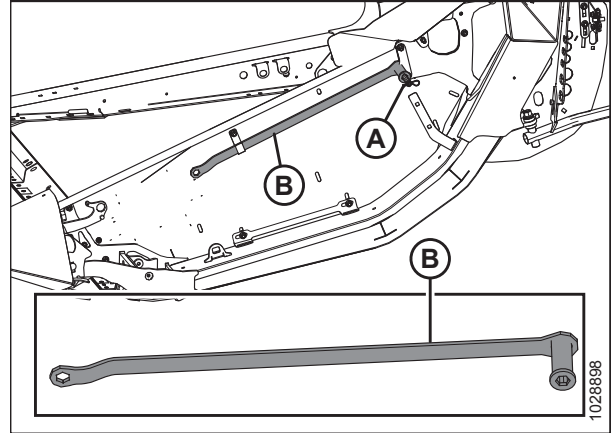


Figure 5.373: Wrench Storage Location – Left Side

**IMPORTANT:**

Do **NOT** loosen the motor mount, it is factory-adjusted and secured together with Belleville washers. The tightening and loosening of the chain is done without having to adjust the drive mounting bolts.

5. Place wrench (A) onto chain tensioner (B).
6. Rotate wrench (A) downward until the chain is tight.

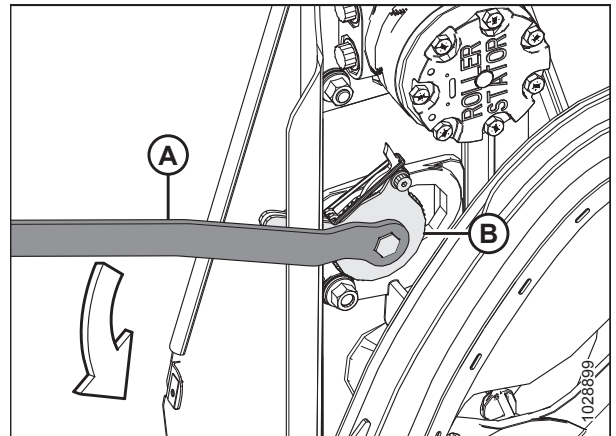


Figure 5.374: Reel Drive

**IMPORTANT:**

There should be approximately 38 mm (1 1/2 in.) of play on one side (A) of the chain, while it is tight on the other side (B). This level of tension and play in the chain is required to skip one notch on the chain tightener.

8. Once the chain is tight, rotate the wrench upward to properly engage the teeth from the lock/latch into the tightener teeth. If the tightener will not skip a tooth before tightening, do **NOT** force the tightener to the next notch.

**IMPORTANT:**

Do **NOT** overtighten the chain. If overtightened the chain will put excessive loads on the sprockets, causing motor bearings and/or other components to fail.

9. Rotate the reel by hand to verify that the chain is still engaged properly on all teeth on lower sprocket (A). To prevent damaging components, ensure the chain does not get too tight as the reel is rotated.
10. Return the wrench to the storage position.
11. Close the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Closing Header Endshields, page 34](#).

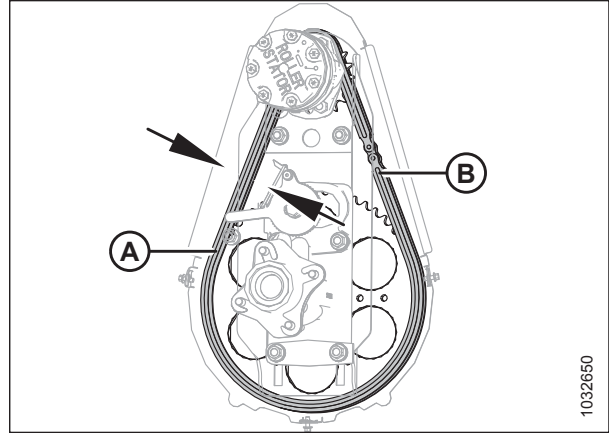


Figure 5.375: Reel Drive

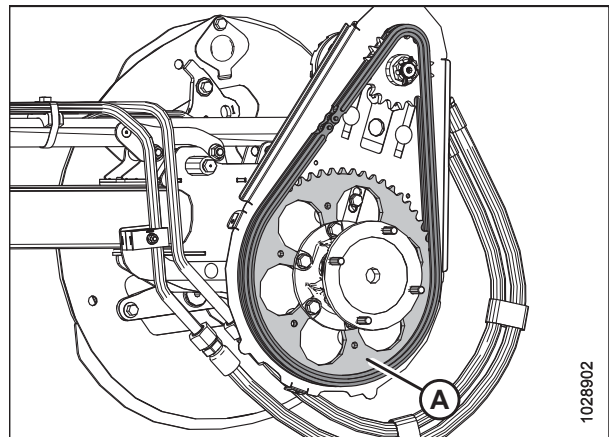


Figure 5.376: Reel Drive

### 5.17.2 Reel Drive Sprocket

The reel drive sprocket is attached to the reel drive motor.

For Case IH and New Holland combine models, configure the combine according to the reel sprocket size in order to optimize the auto reel to ground speed control. Refer to the combine service manual for more information.

**NOTE:**

There is also a two-speed reel drive option available. Order kit MD #311882.

#### *Removing Reel Drive Single Sprocket*

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Remove the reel drive cover. For instructions, refer to [Removing Reel Drive Cover, page 38](#).



## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

3. Loosen reel drive chain (A). For instructions, refer to [Loosening Reel Drive Chain, page 606](#).
4. Remove reel drive chain (A) from reel drive sprocket (B).

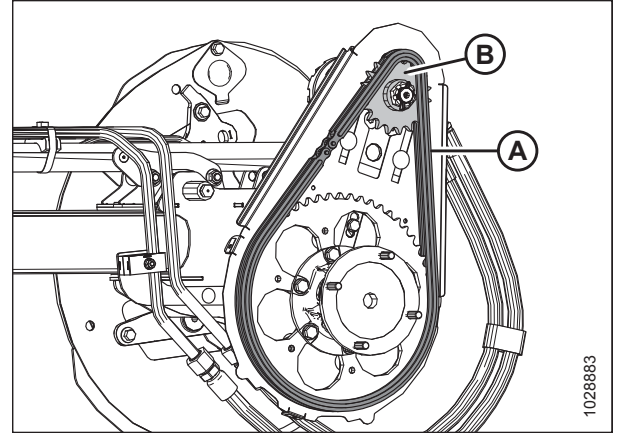


Figure 5.377: Single Sprocket

5. Remove cotter pin and slotted nut (A) from the motor shaft.
6. Remove reel drive sprocket (B). Ensure the key remains in the shaft.

### IMPORTANT:

To avoid damaging the motor, use a puller if drive sprocket (B) does not come off by hand. Do **NOT** use a pry bar and/or hammer to remove the drive sprocket.

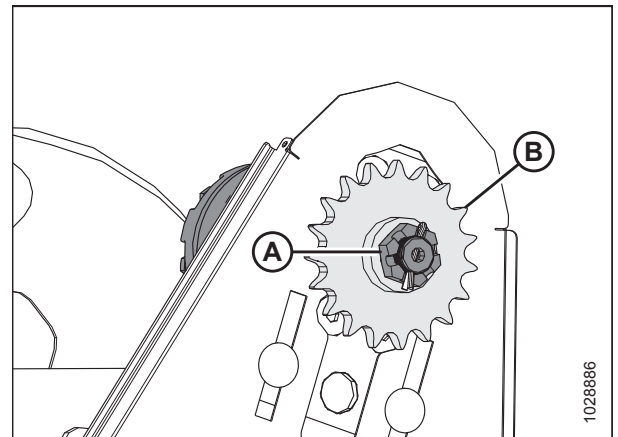


Figure 5.378: Single Sprocket

### Installing Reel Drive Single Sprocket

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Align the keyway in sprocket (B) with the key on the motor shaft, and slide the sprocket onto the shaft. Secure with slotted nut (A).
2. Torque slotted nut (A) to 54 Nm (40 lbf-ft).
3. Install the cotter pin. If necessary, tighten slotted nut (A) to the next slot to install the cotter pin.

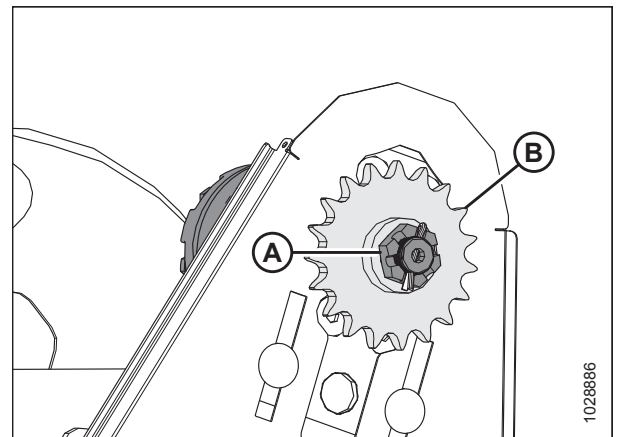


Figure 5.379: Single Sprocket

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

4. Install drive chain (A) onto drive sprocket (B).
5. Tighten the drive chain. For instructions, refer to [Tightening Reel Drive Chain, page 607](#).
6. Reinstall the reel drive cover. For instructions, refer to [Installing Reel Drive Cover, page 39](#).

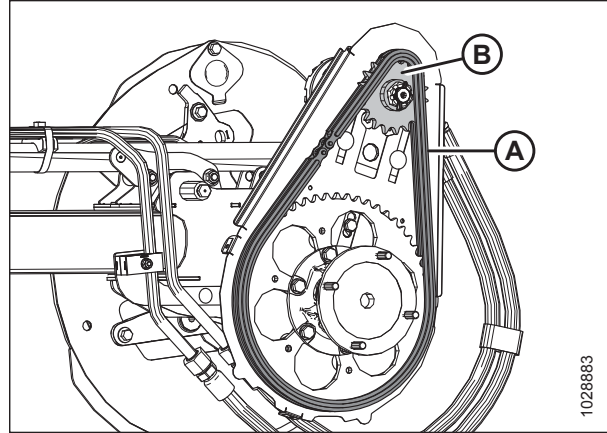


Figure 5.380: Single Sprocket

### 5.17.3 Changing Reel Speed Chain Position with Two Speed Kit Installed

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Open the endshield. For instructions, refer to [Opening Header Endshields, page 33](#).
3. Loosen the reel drive chain. For instructions refer to [Loosening Reel Drive Chain, page 606](#).
4. Move chain (A) from the current set of sprockets to other set (B).

#### NOTE:

The inner set of sprockets are for high torque applications, and the outer set of sprockets are for high speed applications.

#### NOTE:

- If converting from the high speed setting to the high torque setting, move the chain on the top driver sprocket first. This will allow for more chain slack to make the change on the bottom driven sprocket
  - If converting from the high torque setting to the high speed setting, move the chain on the bottom driven sprocket first. This will allow for more slack to make the change on the top driver sprocket.
5. Tighten the reel drive chain. For instructions refer to [Tightening Reel Drive Chain, page 607](#).

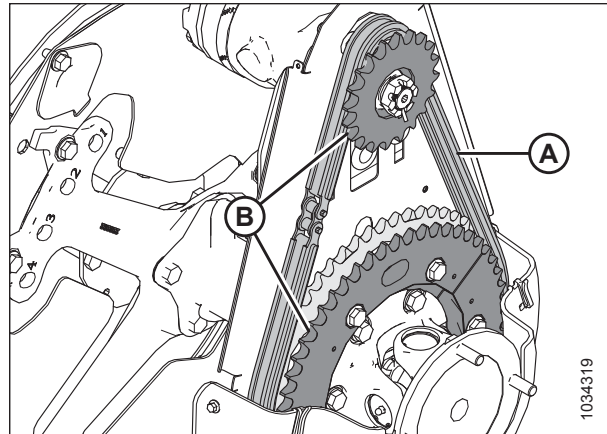


Figure 5.381: Reel Drive Sprocket

### 5.17.4 Double-Reel or Triple Reel Drive U-Joint

The double-reel drive U-joint allows each reel to move independently of the other.

Lubricate the U-joint according to the specifications. For instructions, refer to *5.3 Lubrication and Servicing, page 424*.

Replace the U-joint if severely worn or damaged. For instructions, refer to *Removing Double-Reel or Triple Reel Drive U-Joint, page 611*.

#### Removing Double-Reel or Triple Reel Drive U-Joint

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Remove the drive cover. For instructions, refer to *Removing Reel Drive Cover, page 38*.
3. Support the inboard end of the right reel with a front end loader and nylon slings (A) or equivalent lifting devices.

#### IMPORTANT:

To avoid damaging or denting the center tube, support the reel as close to the end disc as possible.

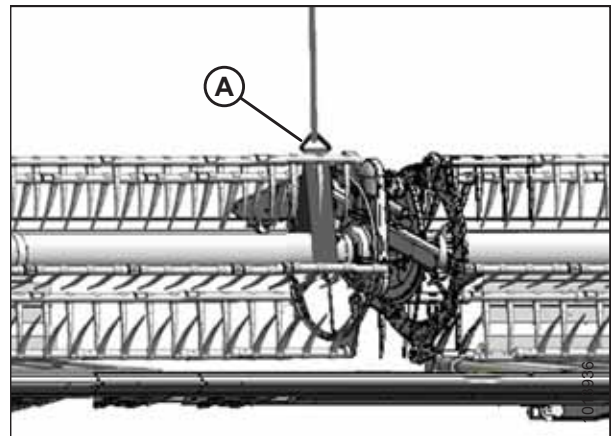


Figure 5.382: Supporting Reel

4. Remove four bolts (A) securing the reel tube to U-joint flange (B), and move the reel sideways.

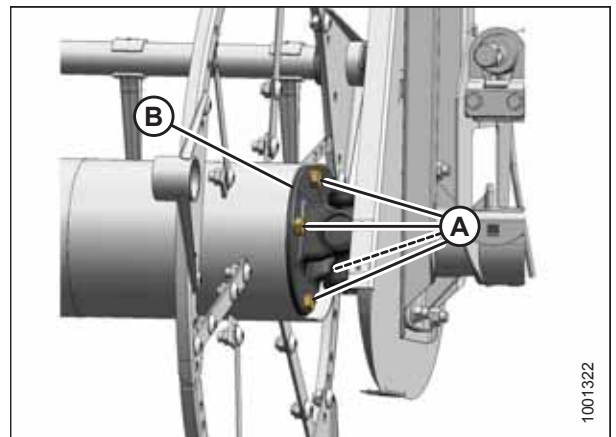


Figure 5.383: U-Joint

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

5. Remove six bolts (A) attaching U-joint flange (B) to driven sprocket (C).
6. Remove the U-joint.

**NOTE:**

It may be necessary to move the right reel sideways so that the U-joint can clear the tube.

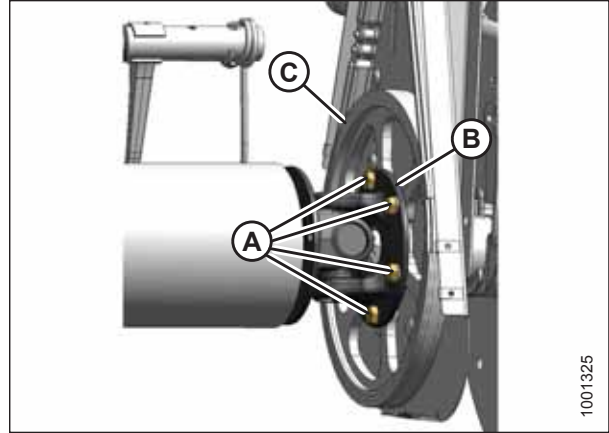


Figure 5.384: U-Joint

### *Installing Double-Reel or Triple Reel U-Joint*

1. Position U-joint flange (B) onto driven sprocket (C) as shown.
2. Apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent), and install six bolts (A) and hand-tighten. Do **NOT** torque the bolts.

**NOTE:**

Only four bolts (A) are shown in the illustration at right.

**NOTE:**

It may be necessary to move the right reel sideways so that the U-joint can clear the reel tube.

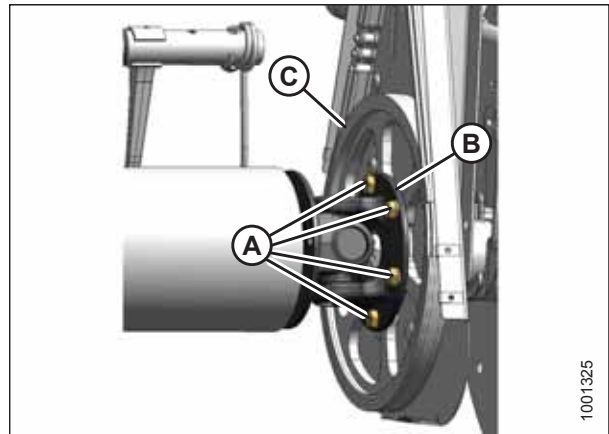


Figure 5.385: U-Joint

3. Position the right reel tube against the reel drive and engage the stub shaft into the U-joint pilot hole.
4. Rotate the reel until the holes in the end of the reel tube and U-joint flange (B) line up.
5. Apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) to four 1/2 in. bolts (A) and secure in the flange.
6. Torque the ten bolts to 108 Nm (80 lbf-ft).

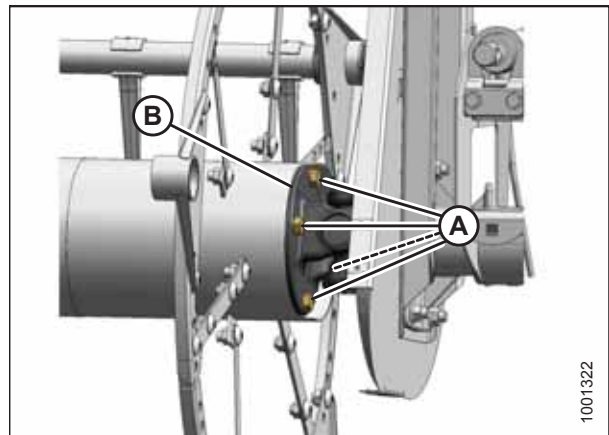


Figure 5.386: U-Joint

7. Remove sling (A) from the reel.
8. Install the drive cover. For instructions, refer to *Installing Reel Drive Cover, page 39*.

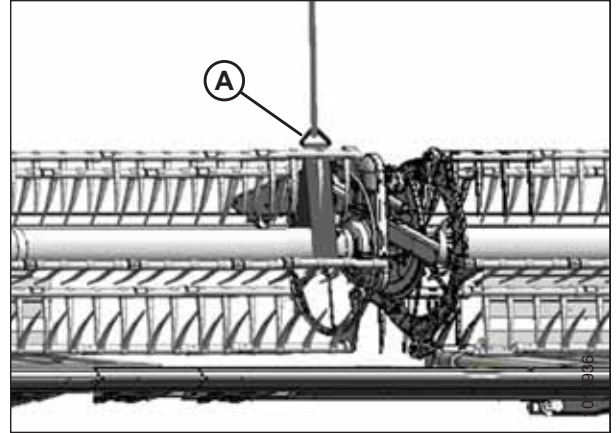


Figure 5.387: Supporting Reel

### 5.17.5 Reel Drive Motor

The reel drive motor is used on the reel drive system on double-reel, and triple reel draper headers. This motor does not require regular maintenance or servicing. If problems occur with the motor, remove it and have it serviced by your MacDon Dealer.

#### Removing Reel Drive Motor



**To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.**

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Loosen the drive chain. For instructions, refer to *Loosening Reel Drive Chain, page 606*.
3. Remove the drive sprocket. For instructions, refer to *Removing Reel Drive Single Sprocket, page 608*.
4. Mark hydraulic lines (A) and their locations in motor (B) to ensure correct reinstallation.

**NOTE:**

Before disconnecting the hydraulic lines, clean the motor's ports and exterior surfaces.

5. Disconnect hydraulic lines (A) at motor (B). Cap or plug open ports and lines.

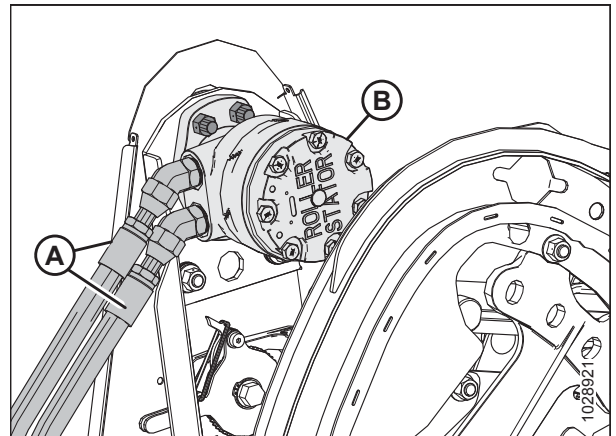


Figure 5.388: Reel Motor and Hoses

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

6. If countersunk screws (B) are not accessible through the openings in the chain case, loosen the mounting hardware on motor mount (A), and slide the motor mount up or down until the screws are accessible.
7. Remove four countersunk screws (B), and remove motor (C).
8. If the motor is being replaced, remove the hydraulic fittings from the old motor and install them in the new motor using the same orientations.

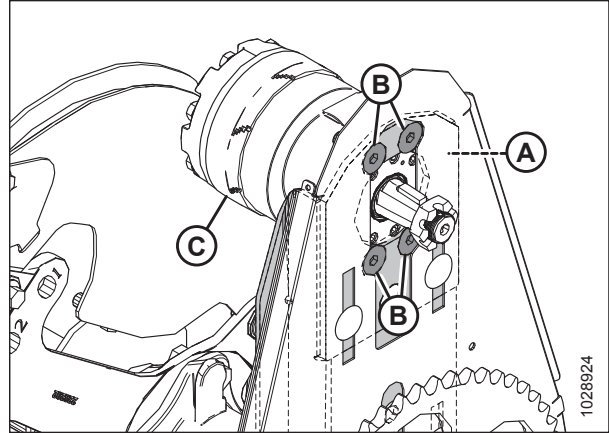


Figure 5.389: Reel Drive Motor Mounting Screws

### Installing Reel Drive Motor

1. If mounting holes (B) are not accessible through the openings in the chain case, loosen the mounting hardware on motor mount (A), and slide the motor mount up or down as required.

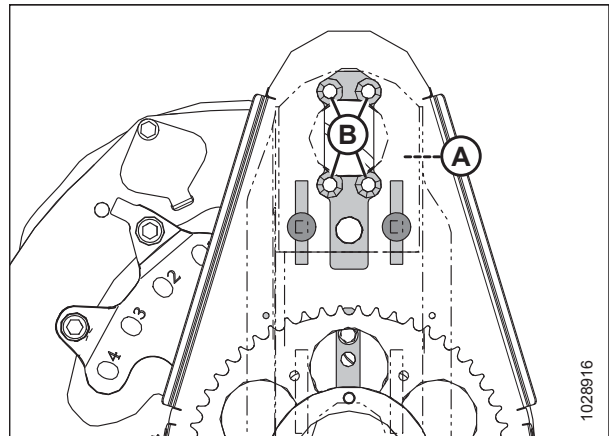


Figure 5.390: Reel Drive Motor Mounting Holes

2. Attach motor (A) to motor mount (B) with four M12 x 40 mm countersunk screws and nuts (C).
3. Torque hardware to 95 Nm (70 lbf-ft).
4. If installing a new motor, install the hydraulic fittings (not shown) from the original motor.

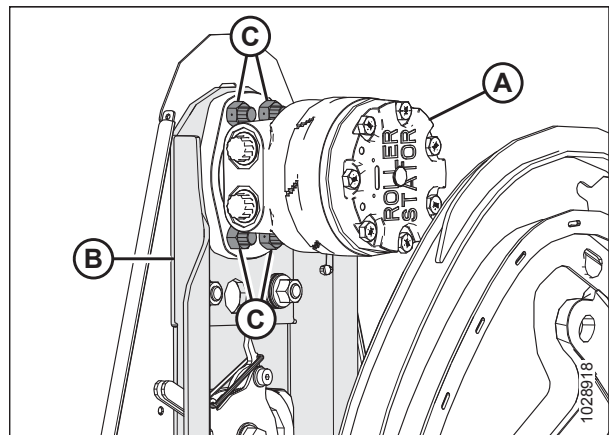


Figure 5.391: Reel Drive Motor

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

5. Align the keyway in sprocket (B) with the key on the motor shaft, and slide the sprocket onto the shaft. Secure with slotted nut (A).
6. Torque slotted nut (A) to 54 Nm (40 lbf-ft).
7. Install the cotter pin. If necessary, tighten slotted nut (A) to the next slot to install the cotter pin.

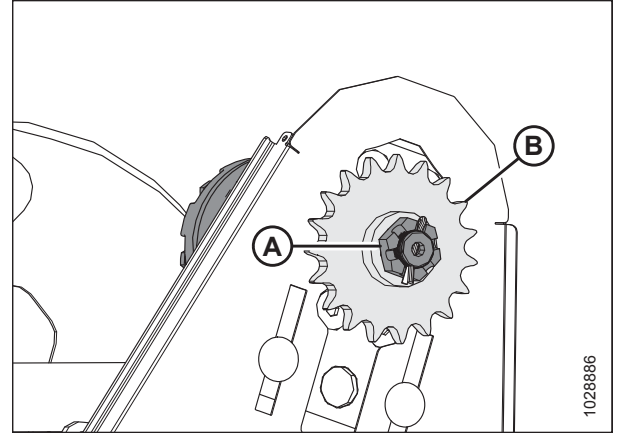


Figure 5.392: Reel Drive

8. Install drive chain (A) onto drive sprocket (B).

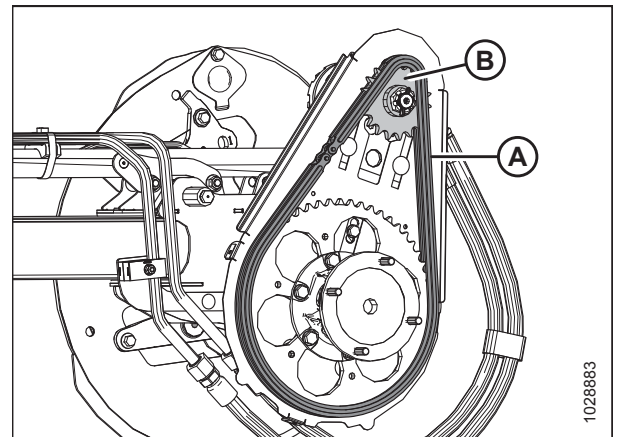


Figure 5.393: Reel Drive

9. If mounting hardware (A) was loosened for this procedure, ensure there are three stacked Belleville washers per bolt (B) before retightening.
10. Orient the Belleville washers so that the outer edge of first washer (C) is against the casting, and the outer edges of the next two washers (D) are facing each other.
11. Tighten nuts (A) until they bottom out (47–54 Nm [35–40 lbf-ft]). Then back off a 3/4 turn.
12. Tighten the drive chain. For instructions, refer to [Tightening Reel Drive Chain, page 607](#).

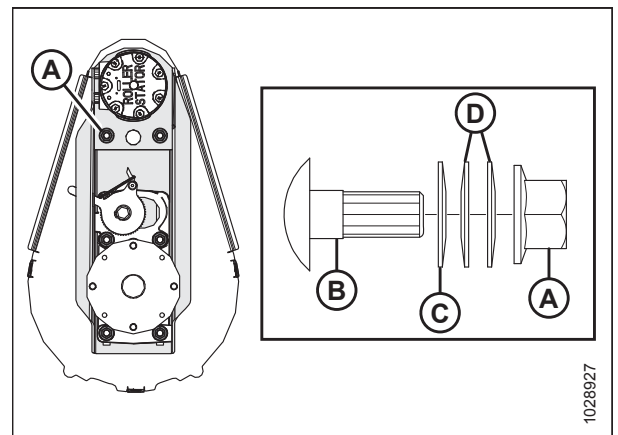


Figure 5.394: Reel Drive Motor Mount

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

13. Remove the caps or plugs from the ports and lines and connect hydraulic lines (A) to hydraulic fittings (B) on motor (C).

**NOTE:**

Ensure hydraulic lines (A) are installed in their original locations.

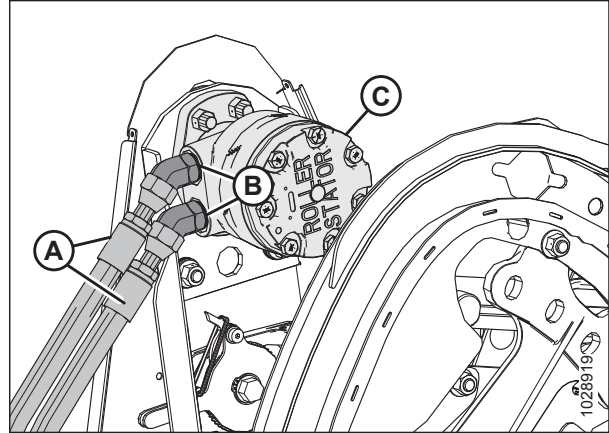


Figure 5.395: Reel Motor and Hoses



## 5.17.6 Replacing Drive Chain on Double Reel or Triple Reel

### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before making adjustments to the machine.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Remove the reel drive cover. For instructions, refer to *Removing Reel Drive Cover*, page 38.
3. Loosen the drive chain. For instructions, refer to *Loosening Reel Drive Chain*, page 606.
4. Support the inboard end of the right reel with a front end loader and nylon slings (A) or equivalent lifting devices.

#### IMPORTANT:

Avoid damaging or denting the center tube by supporting the reel as close to the end of the reel as possible.

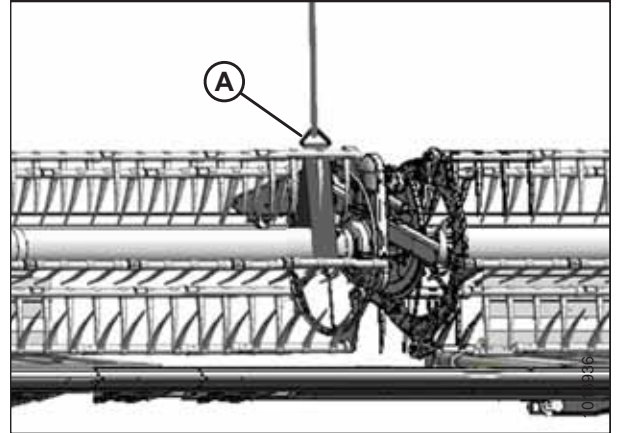


Figure 5.396: Supporting Reel

5. Remove four bolts (A) securing the reel tube to U-joint flange (B).

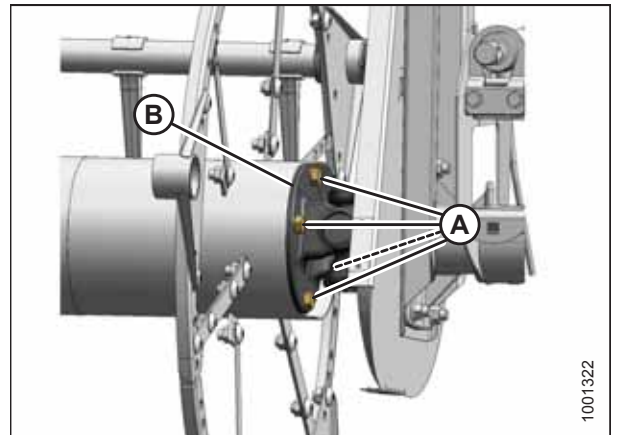


Figure 5.397: U-Joint

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

6. Move the right reel sideways to separate reel tube (A) from U-joint (B).
7. Remove drive chain (C).
8. Route chain (C) over U-joint (B) and position onto the sprockets.

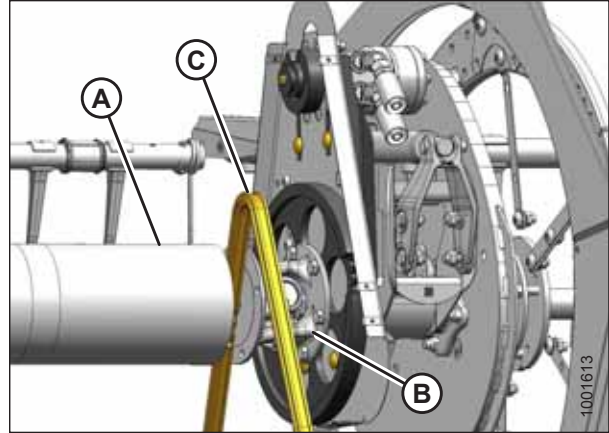


Figure 5.398: Replacing Chain

9. Position the right reel tube against the reel drive and engage the stub shaft into the U-joint pilot hole.
10. Rotate the reel until the holes in end of the reel tube and U-joint flange line up.
11. Apply medium-strength threadlocker (Loctite® 243 or equivalent) to four 1/2 in. bolts (A) and secure to the flange with lock washers.
12. Torque to 102–115 Nm (75–85 lbf·ft).

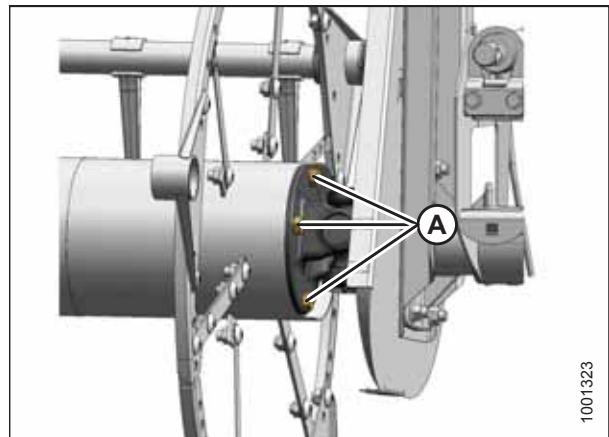


Figure 5.399: U-Joint

13. Remove temporary reel sling (A).
14. Tighten the drive chain. For instructions, refer to [Tightening Reel Drive Chain, page 607](#).
15. Reinstall the reel drive cover. For instructions, refer to [Installing Reel Drive Cover, page 39](#).

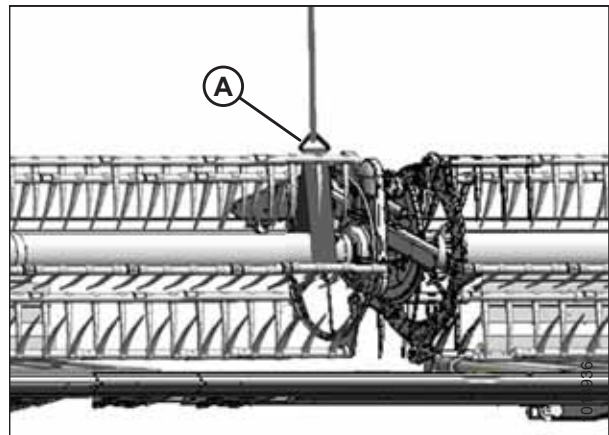


Figure 5.400: Supporting Reel

### 5.17.7 Replacing Reel Speed Sensor

The reel speed sensors (and the procedures for replacing them) vary with the combine model.

Refer to the following topics depending on your combine model:

- [Replacing AGCO Reel Speed Sensor, page 619](#)
- [Replacing John Deere Reel Speed Sensor, page 620](#)
- [Replacing CLAAS Reel Speed Sensor, page 621](#)

#### Replacing AGCO Reel Speed Sensor



#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Remove the drive cover. For instructions, refer to [Removing Reel Drive Cover, page 38](#).
3. Disconnect electrical connector (A).

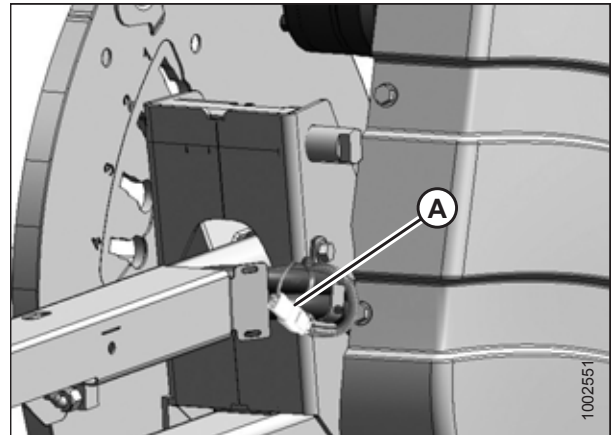


Figure 5.401: Electrical Harness

4. Cut cable tie (A) securing the harness to the cover.
5. Remove two screws (B), sensor (C), and the harness. If necessary, bend cover (D) to remove the harness.
6. Feed the wire of the new sensor behind cover (D) and through the chain case.
7. Locate the new sensor in support (E) and attach with two screws (B).
8. Adjust the gap between sensor disc (F) and sensor (C) to 3.5 mm (0.14 in.).

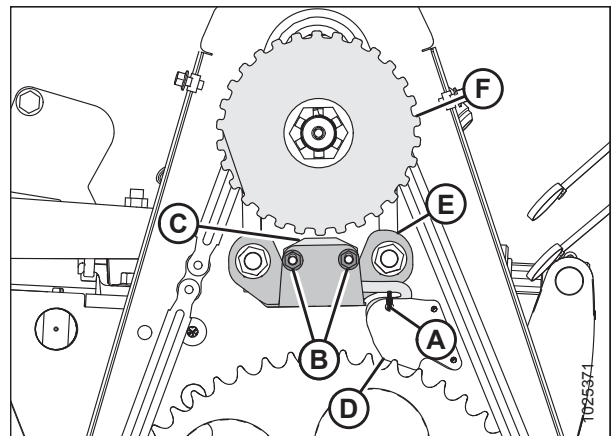


Figure 5.402: Speed Sensor

9. Connect sensor harness with header harness (A).

**IMPORTANT:**

Ensure the sensor electrical harness does **NOT** contact the chain or sprocket.

10. Reinstall the drive cover. For instructions, refer to *Installing Reel Drive Cover, page 39*.
11. Verify proper operation of the sensor.

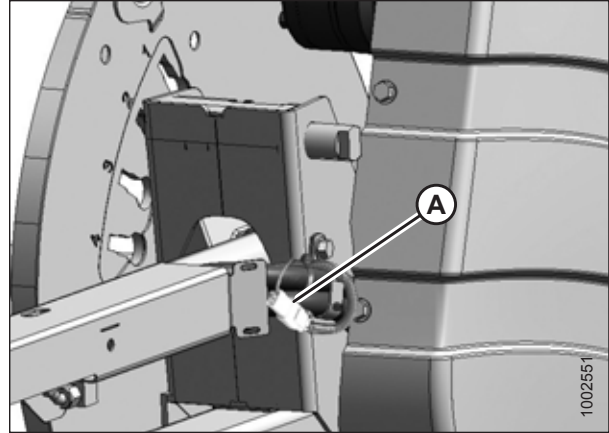


Figure 5.403: Electrical Harness

*Replacing John Deere Reel Speed Sensor*

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Remove the drive cover. For instructions, refer to *Removing Reel Drive Cover, page 38*.
3. Disconnect electrical connector (D).
4. Remove top nut (C) and remove sensor (B).
5. Remove the top nut from the new sensor and position the sensor into the support. Secure with top nut (C).
6. Adjust the gap between sensor disc (A) and sensor (B) to 1 mm (0.04 in.) using nut (C).
7. Connect to sensor connector at (D) and to sensor harness (E).

**IMPORTANT:**

Ensure the sensor electrical harness does **NOT** contact the chain or sprocket.

8. Reinstall the drive cover. For instructions, refer to *Installing Reel Drive Cover, page 39*.

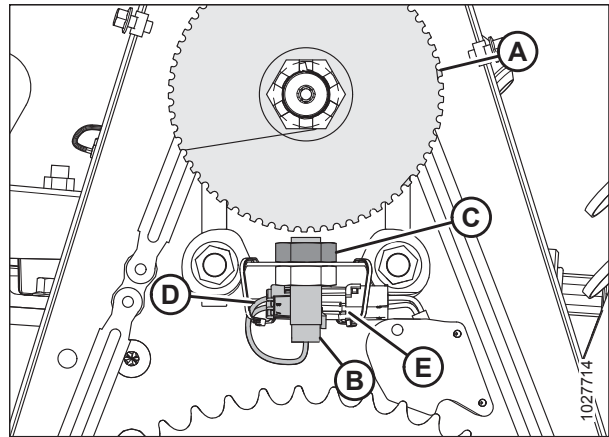


Figure 5.404: Speed Sensor

*Replacing CLAAS 400 Series Reel Speed Sensor*

**⚠ DANGER**

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Remove the drive cover. For instructions, refer to *Removing Reel Drive Cover, page 38*.
3. Disconnect electrical connector located behind the chain case.

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

4. Remove and discard top nut (A) and sensor (B).
5. Remove the top nut from the new sensor, and position new sensor (B) into the support. Secure with top nut (A).
6. Adjust the gap between sensor disc (C) and sensor (B) to 3.5 mm (0.14 in.) using nuts (A) and (D).
7. Route harness through knockout hole (E) and connect to the harness behind the chain case.

### IMPORTANT:

Ensure the sensor electrical harness does **NOT** contact the chain or sprocket.

8. Reinstall the drive cover. For instructions, refer to *Installing Reel Drive Cover*, page 39.

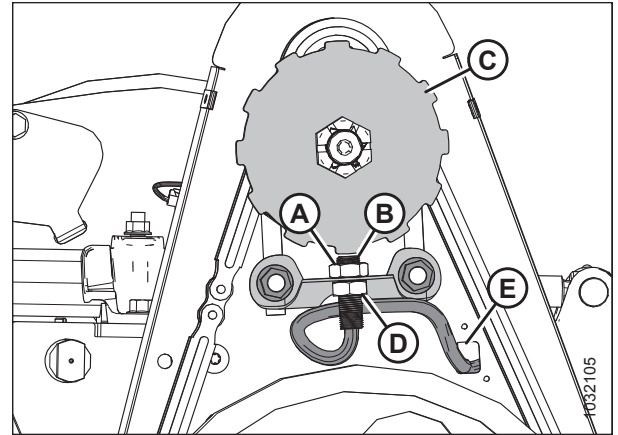


Figure 5.405: Speed Sensor

### Replacing CLAAS Reel Speed Sensor

#### DANGER

To avoid injury or death from unexpected start-up of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition before leaving the operator's seat for any reason.

1. Shut down the engine, and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Remove the drive cover. For instructions, refer to *Removing Reel Drive Cover*, page 38.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector located behind the chain case from sensor (A).
4. Remove cable ties (B).
5. Remove shield (C) and rivets (D).
6. Remove nut (E) and remove sensor (A).
7. Position new sensor (A) into support (F). Secure with nut (E).
8. Adjust the gap between sensor disc (C) and sensor (B) to 3.5 mm (0.14 in.) using nuts (A) and (D).
9. Route harness through knockout hole in panel and connect to sensor (A). Secure harness in place with shield (C) and rivets (D).
10. Secure harness to sensor support with cable ties (B) as shown.

### IMPORTANT:

Ensure the sensor electrical harness does **NOT** contact the chain or sprocket.

11. Reinstall the drive cover. For instructions, refer to *Installing Reel Drive Cover*, page 39.

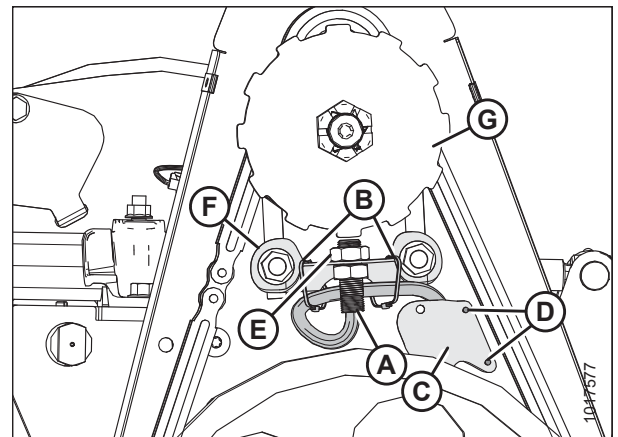


Figure 5.406: Speed Sensor

## 5.18 Transport System (Option)

Refer to *Adjusting Stabilizer / EasyMove™ Transport Wheels, page 62* for more information.

### 5.18.1 Checking Wheel Bolt Torque

If a transport system is installed, follow these steps to torque the wheel bolts:

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before making adjustments to the machine.

1. Turn off the engine and remove the key.
2. Follow the bolt tightening sequence shown, and torque the wheel bolts to 110–120 Nm (80–90 lbf·ft).

#### IMPORTANT:

Whenever a wheel is removed and reinstalled, check the wheel bolt torque after one hour of operation and every 100 hours thereafter.

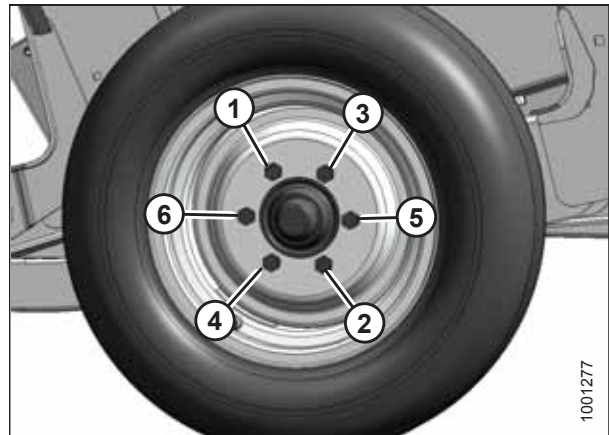
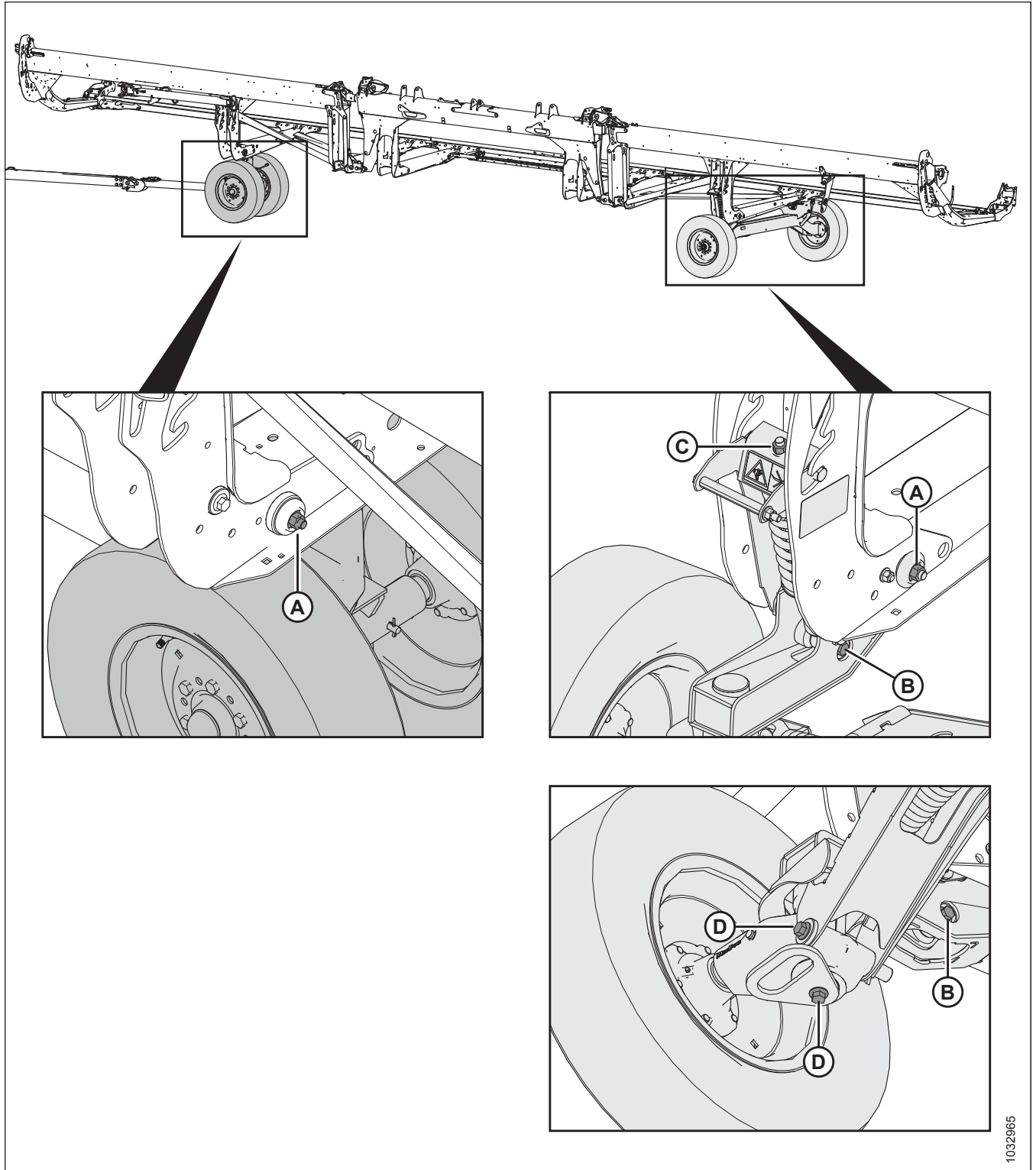


Figure 5.407: Bolt Tightening Sequence

### 5.18.2 Checking Axle Bolt Torque

#### DANGER

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before making adjustments to the machine.



1032965

**Figure 5.408: Axle Bolts**

1. Check axle bolts (A) **DAILY**.
2. Tighten the following bolts:
  - bolts (A) to 234 Nm (173 lbf-ft)
  - bolts (B) to 343 Nm (253 lbf-ft)

- Nut (C) on both sides to 169.5 Nm (127 lbf·ft)
- bolts (D) to 343 Nm (253 lbf·ft)

### 5.18.3 Checking Tire Pressure

Check the tire inflation pressure and inflate according to the information provided in Table 5.4, page 624.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Service tires safely.
- A tire can explode during inflation, which could cause serious injury or death.
- Do NOT stand over tire. Use a clip-on chuck and extension hose.
- Do NOT exceed maximum inflation pressure indicated on tire label or sidewall.
- Replace tires that have defects.
- Replace wheel rims that are cracked, worn, or severely rusted.
- Never weld a wheel rim.
- Never use force on an inflated or partially inflated tire.
- Make sure the tire is correctly seated before inflating to operating pressure.
- If the tire is not correctly positioned on the rim or is overinflated, the tire bead can loosen on one side causing air to escape at high speed and with great force. An air leak of this nature can thrust the tire in any direction endangering anyone in the area.
- Make sure all the air is removed from the tire before removing the tire from the rim.
- Do NOT remove, install, or repair a tire on a rim unless you have the proper equipment and experience to perform the job.
- Take the tire and rim to a qualified tire repair shop.



Figure 5.409: Inflation Warning

Table 5.4 Tire Inflation Pressure

Size	Load Range	Pressure
225/75 R15	E	552 kPa (80 psi)



### 5.18.4 Changing Tow Bar Hitch Connection from Pintle to Clevis

The transport tow bar includes clevis and pintle ring towing mounts, to change tow bar hitch connections, follow this procedure.

1. Remove hairpin from clevis pin (A) and disconnect chain (B). Store clevis pin (A) with pintle hitch adapter.
2. Remove four nuts, four bolts, and eight flat washers (C) from the end of the tow bar. Retain hardware.

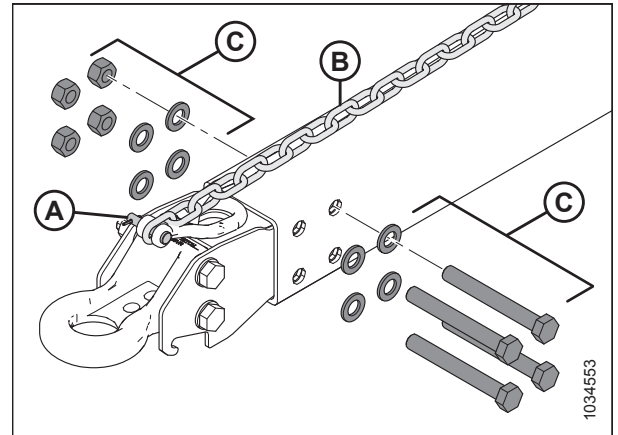


Figure 5.410: Removing Pintle Towing Adapter

3. Tape or tie 6 m (20 ft.) of pull-line to transport end (A) of harness.
4. Remove bolt (B) securing harness in P-clip. Retain bolt for installation.
5. From the hitch end (C), gently pull harness out through opening in pintle (D) until you can see the pull-line, then disconnect pull-line (leave pull-line inside the tow bar) and set pintle aside.

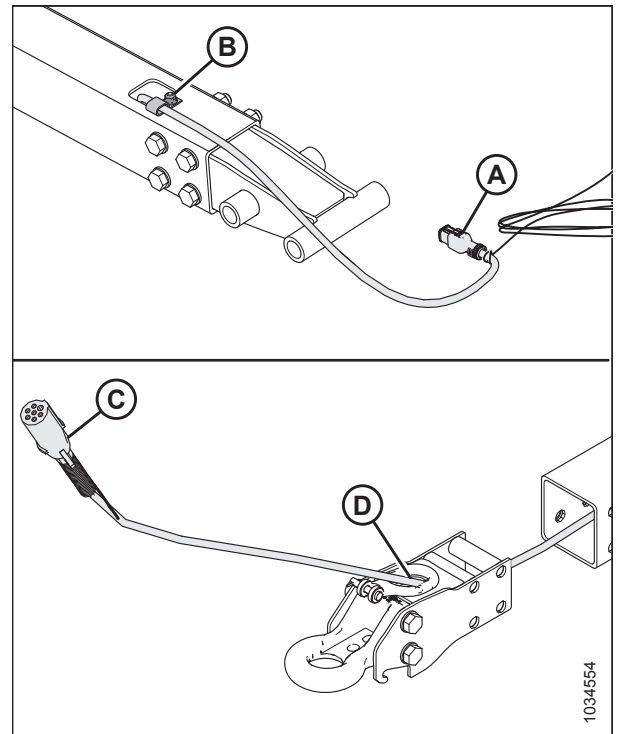


Figure 5.411: Removing Pintle Towing Adapter

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

6. Insert transport connector (A) of electrical harness through opening (B) in clevis ring.
7. Tie or tape pull-line (C) to the harness. Using the pull-line at the transport end, gently pull the harness through the tow bar.
8. Ensure transport end (A) of harness extends 480 mm (18 7/8 in.) past P-clip (D).
9. Secure harness in P-clip with existing bolt removed in Step 6, [page 626](#).

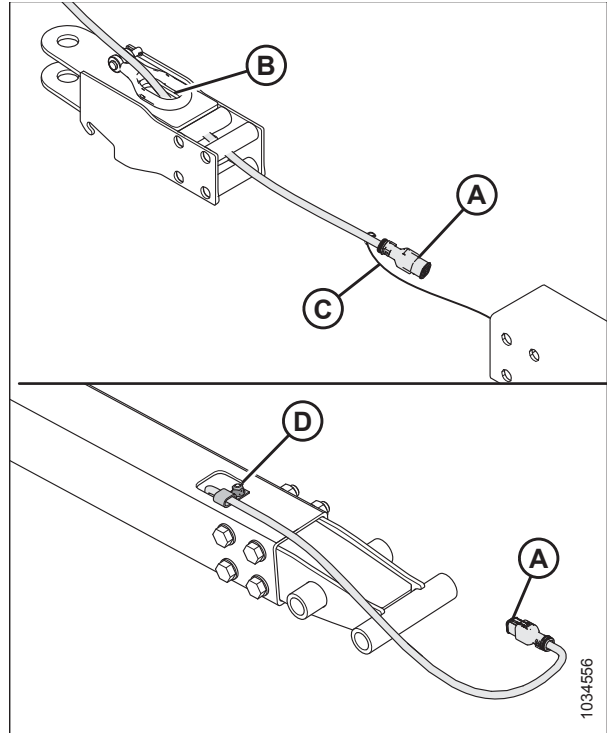


Figure 5.412: Installing Clevis Ring Adapter

10. Install four nuts, four bolts, and eight flat washers (A) to secure the pintle ring onto the tow bar.

**NOTE:**

Ensure hardware (A) is reinstalled in the same direction to prevent interference when storing in backtube.

11. Reconnect chain with clevis pin (B) and secure with cotter pin.

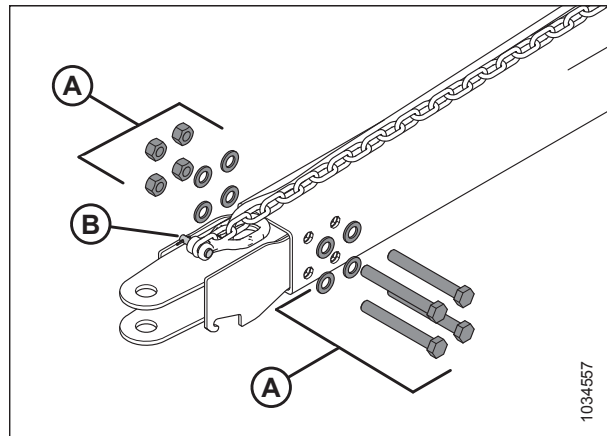


Figure 5.413: Installing Clevis Ring Adapter

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

12. Tighten nuts (A) in the cross pattern as shown. Recheck each nut in sequence until they are torqued to 310 Nm (229 lbf-ft).

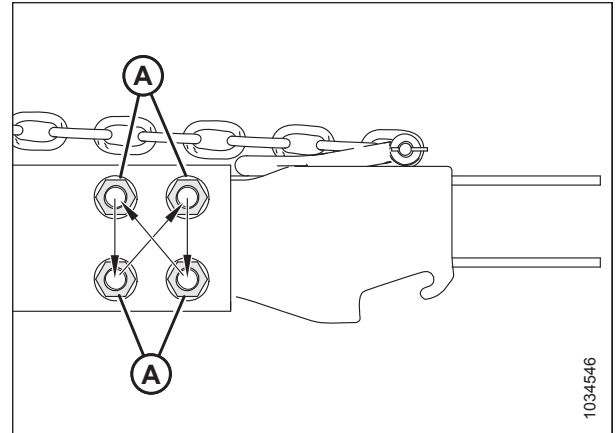


Figure 5.414: Torque Sequence

### 5.18.5 Changing Tow Bar Hitch Connection from Clevis to Pintle

The transport tow bar includes clevis and pintle ring towing mounts, to change tow bar hitch connections, follow this procedure.

1. Remove hairpin from clevis pin (A) and disconnect chain (B). Store clevis pin (A) with clevis hitch adapter.
2. Remove four nuts, four bolts, and eight flat washers (C) from the end of the tow bar. Retain hardware.

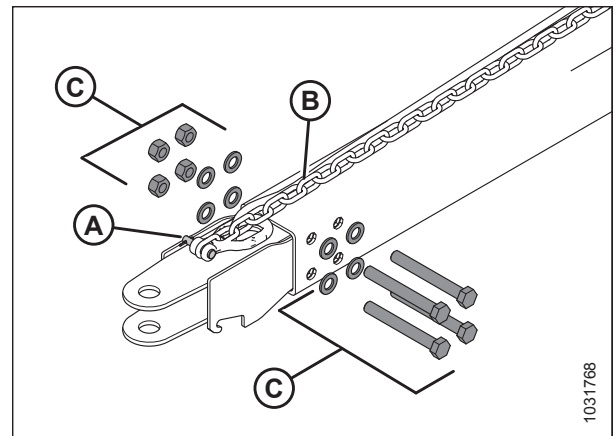


Figure 5.415: Removing Clevis Towing Adapter

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

3. Tape or tie 6 m (20 ft.) of pull-line to transport end (A) of harness.
4. Remove bolt (B) securing harness in P-clip. Retain bolt for installation.
5. From the hitch end (C), gently pull harness out through opening in clevis (D) until you can see the pull-line, then disconnect pull-line (leave pull-line inside the tow bar) and set clevis aside.

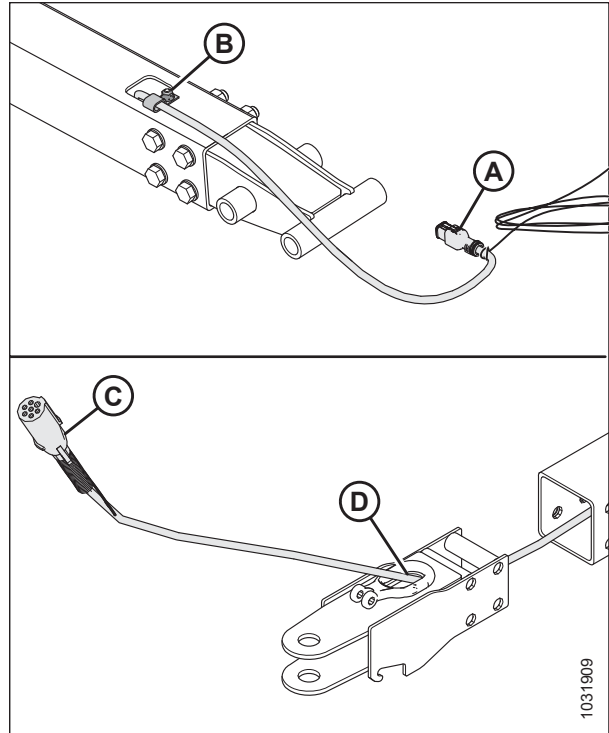


Figure 5.416: Removing Clevis Towing Adapter

6. Insert transport connector (A) of electrical harness through opening (B) in pintle ring.
7. Tie or tape pull-line (C) to the harness. Using the pull-line at the transport end, gently pull the harness through the tow bar.
8. Ensure transport end (A) of harness extends 480 mm (18 7/8 in.) past P-clip (D).
9. Secure harness in P-clip with existing bolt removed in Step 4, [page 628](#).

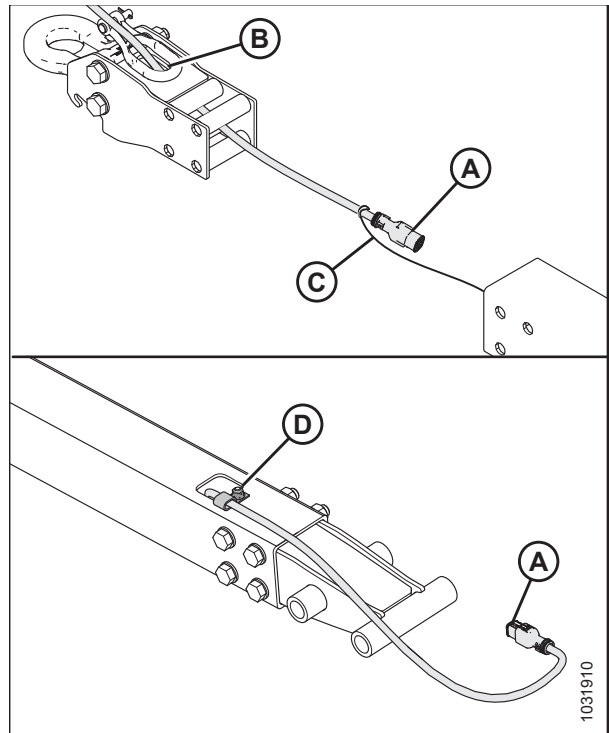


Figure 5.417: Installing Pintle Ring Adapter

## MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

10. Install four nuts, four bolts, and eight flat washers (A) to secure the pintle ring onto the tow bar.

**NOTE:**

Ensure hardware (A) is reinstalled in the same direction to prevent interference when storing in backtube.

11. Reconnect chain with clevis pin (B) and secure with cotter pin.

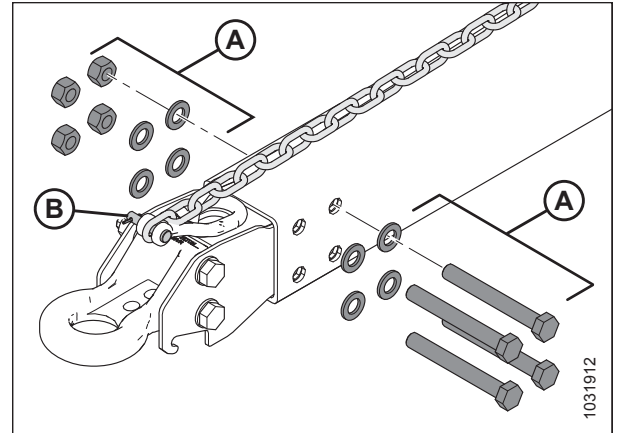


Figure 5.418: Installing Pintle Ring Adapter

12. Tighten nuts (A) in the cross pattern as shown. Recheck each nut in sequence until they are torqued to 310 Nm (229 lbf-ft).

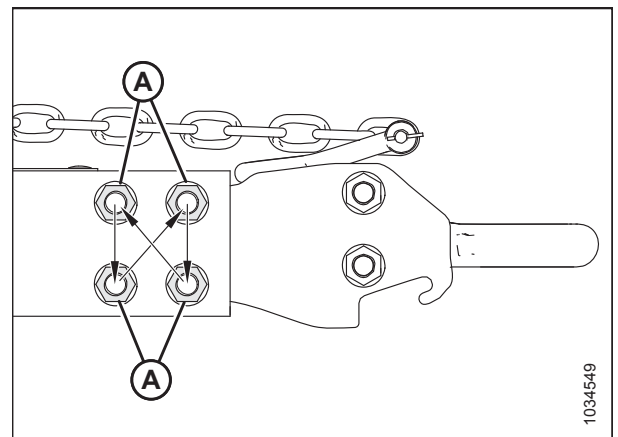


Figure 5.419: Torque Sequence



## Chapter 6: Options and Attachments

The following options and attachments are available for use with your header. See your MacDon Dealer for availability and ordering information.

### 6.1 Crop Delivery

Is the process of how the crop gets from the cutterbar to the feederhouse.

#### 6.1.1 Crop Lifter Storage Rack Kit

Crop lifter racks are used to store crop lifters at the rear of the header.

Installation instructions are included in the kit.

MD #B7023

**NOTE:**

This kit is for one side only. Order two kits for both sides of the header.

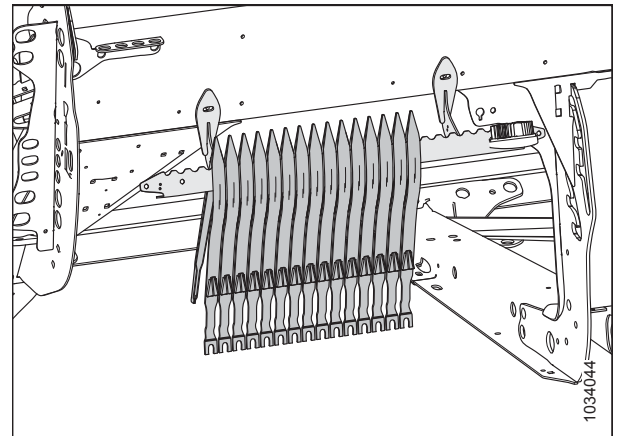


Figure 6.1: Crop Lifter Rack kit – Left Side

### 6.1.2 Divider Storage Bracket Kit

The divider storage bracket kit is used to store the standard divider cones and/or floating crop dividers on header.

Installation instructions are included in the kit.

MD #B7030

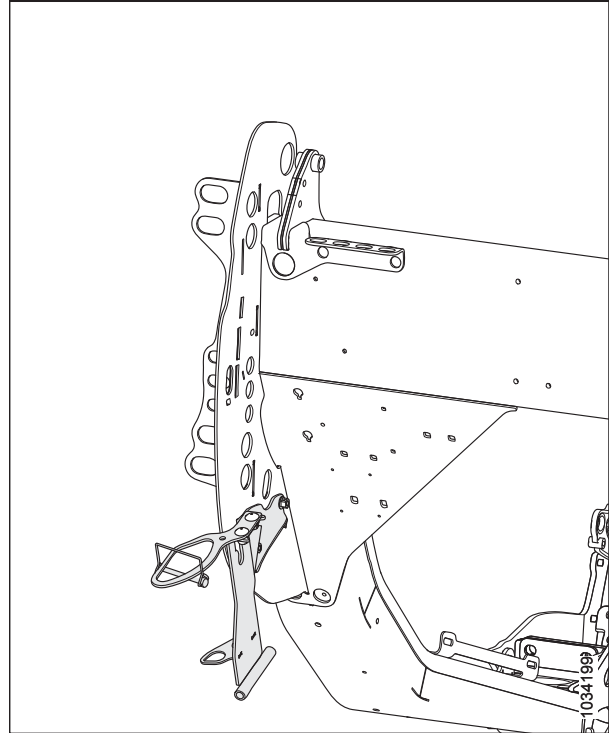


Figure 6.2: Divider Storage Bracket Kit – MD #B7030

### 6.1.3 Grain Crop Lifter Kit

Grain crop lifters are recommended for severely lodged cereal crops where the operator wants maximum possible stubble height.

Installation instructions are included in the kit.

Each kit (MD #B7022) contains 10 lifters. Order the following number of kits depending on header size:

- FD230 – 3 kits
- FD235, FD240, and FD41 – 4 kits
- FD245 and FD250 – 5 kits

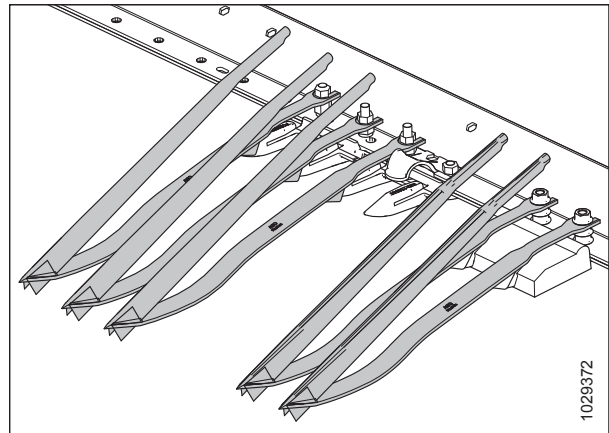


Figure 6.3: Grain Crop Lifter Kit



### 6.1.4 Rice Divider Rod Kit

Rice divider rods attach to the left and right crop dividers and divide tall and tangled rice crops in a similar manner to standard crop divider rods performing in standing crops.

The kit includes both left and right rods, and storage brackets.

Installation instructions are included in the kit.

MD #B7238

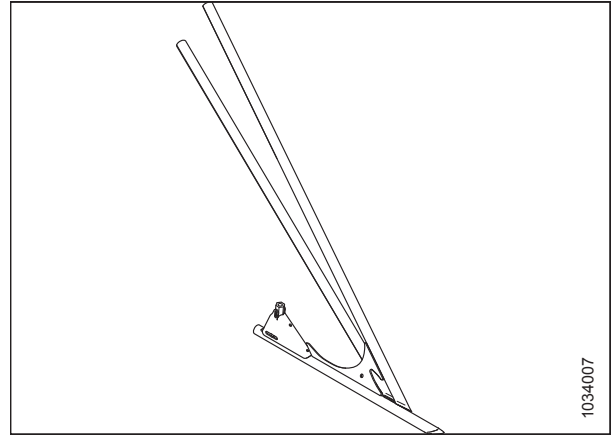


Figure 6.4: Left Rice Divider Rod Kit

### 6.1.5 Full Interface Filler Kit

The Full Interface Filler Kit provides additional sealing between float module and header.

**NOTE:**

This kit is only available for European-configured headers.

Installation instructions are included in the kit.

MD #B7031

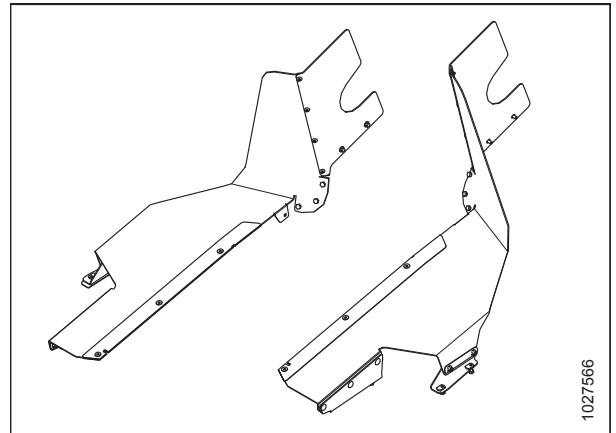


Figure 6.5: Full Interface Filler Kit

### 6.1.6 Full Length Upper Cross Auger

The upper cross auger (A) attaches in front of the backtube and improves crop feeding into the center of the header in heavy crop conditions.

The upper cross is ideal for high-volume harvesting of forages, oats, canola, mustard, and other tall, bushy, hard-to-feed crops. Order the following bundles:

**Base auger package**

Includes auger, mounts, drive, and hydraulic completion plumbing for headers that are upper cross auger ready.

Order from the following list of kits according to your header model:

- FD230 – MD #B6414 (two piece)
- FD235 – MD #B6415 (two piece)
- FD240 – MD #B6417 (three piece)
- FD241 – MD #B6416 (two piece)
- FD245 – MD #B6418 (three piece)
- FD250 – MD #B6419 (three piece)

**Hydraulic Plumbing Package**

Required only for headers without factory installed UCA hydraulics. Includes hydraulic lines to make header UCA ready, if not factory configured.

Order from the following list of kits according to your header model:

- FD230 – MD #B7117 (two piece)
- FD235 – MD #B7118 (two piece)
- FD240 – MD #B7119 (three piece)
- FD241 – MD #B7120 (two piece)
- FD245 – MD #B7194 (three piece)
- FD250 – MD #B7121 (three piece)

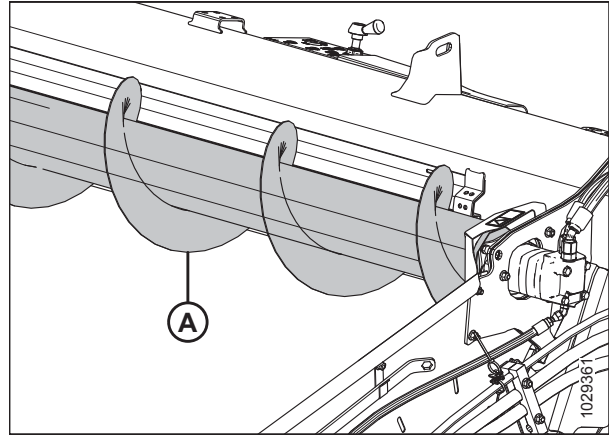


Figure 6.6: Upper Cross Auger

## 6.2 Cutterbar

The cutterbar is located on the front of the header. It supports the knife and guards which is used to cut the crop.

### 6.2.1 Rock Retarder Kit

A rock retarder extends the height of the cutterbar lip to help prevent rocks rolling onto the draper decks.

Order bundles by header size:

- FD230, FD235, and FD241 – MD #B7122
- FD240, FD245, and FD250 – MD #B7123

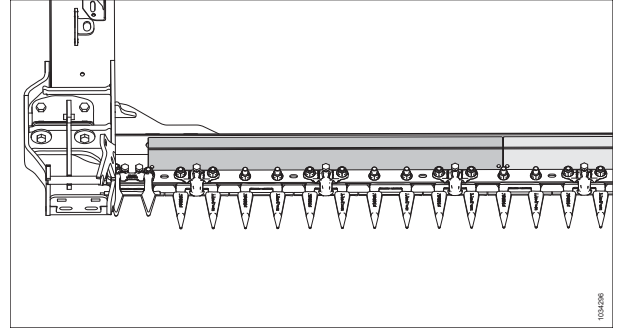


Figure 6.7: Rock Retarder Kit

### 6.2.2 VertiBlade™ Vertical Knife Kit

The vertiblade™ is vertical crop cutter that is mounted to each end of the header. It is used to cut through lodged or tangled crops.

Installation instructions are included in this kit.

Order the following bundles:

#### **Base VertiBlade™**

Includes knives, mounts, drive, and hydraulic completion plumbing to complete installation on power-divider ready header.

MD #B7029

#### **Hydraulic Plumbing Package**

The hydraulic plumbing packages are required only for headers without factory-installed power divider hydraulics. The package includes hydraulic lines to make the header power-divider (VertiBlade™) ready.

Order one of the following based on your header:

- FD230 – MD #B7127
- FD235 – MD #B7128
- FD240 – MD #B7129
- FD241 – MD #B7130
- FD245 – MD #B7195
- FD250 – MD #B7131

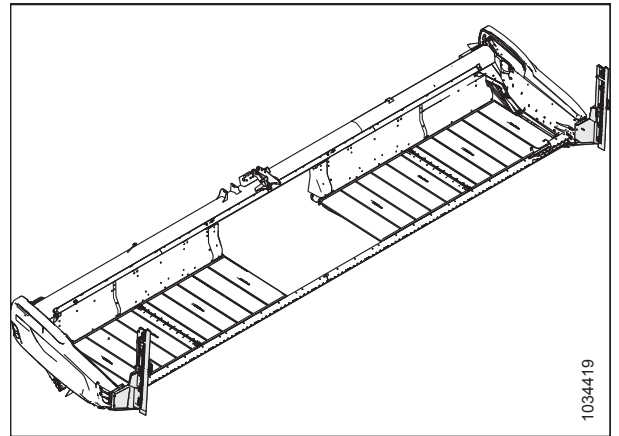


Figure 6.8: VertiBlade™

## 6.3 FM200 Float Module

The float module is used to attach the header to the combine. It combines the crop flow from both side drapers and also pulls crop into the combine feederhouse.

### 6.3.1 Feed Auger High-Wear Flighting Extension Kit

The flighting extension kit may allow better feeding of crop in green/wet straw conditions (for example, rice and green cereals).

Refer to *4.1 FM200 Feed Auger Configurations, page 321* for a list of flighting combinations.

MD #B6400

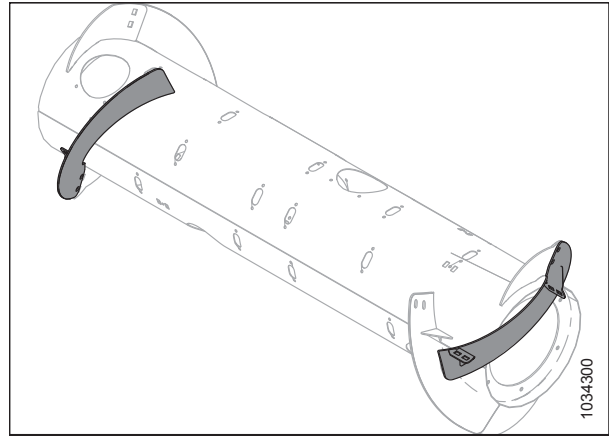


Figure 6.9: Feed Auger High-Wear Flighting Extension Kit

### 6.3.2 Hydraulic Reservoir Extension Kit

The hydraulic reservoir fill extension kit extends the breather cap position. This allows it to operate on steep hillsides while maintaining oil supply to the suction side of the pump.

This kit is recommended when operating on hills exceeding 5°.

Installation instructions are included in the kit.

MD #B6057

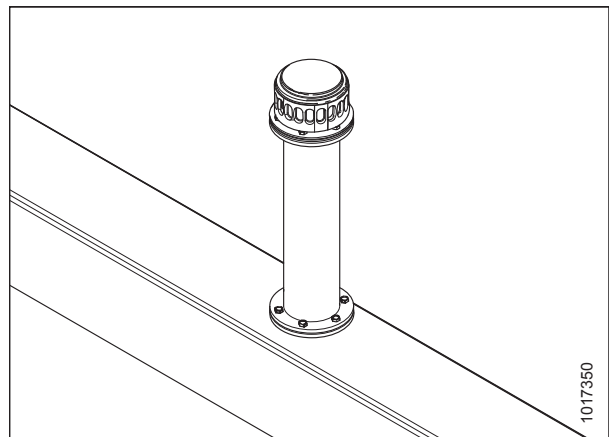


Figure 6.10: Hydraulic Reservoir Extension Kit

### 6.3.3 Stripper Bar Kit

Stripper bars improve feeding in certain crops such as rice. They are **NOT** recommended in cereal crops.

Instructions are included with the kit.

Select the stripper bar kit based on combine feeder house width. For information, refer to Table 6.1 *Stripper Bar Configurations and Recommendations*, page 637.

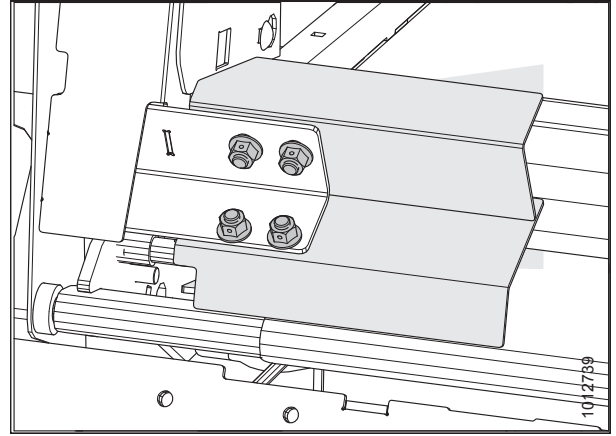


Figure 6.11: Stripper Bar Kit

Table 6.1 Stripper Bar Configurations and Recommendations

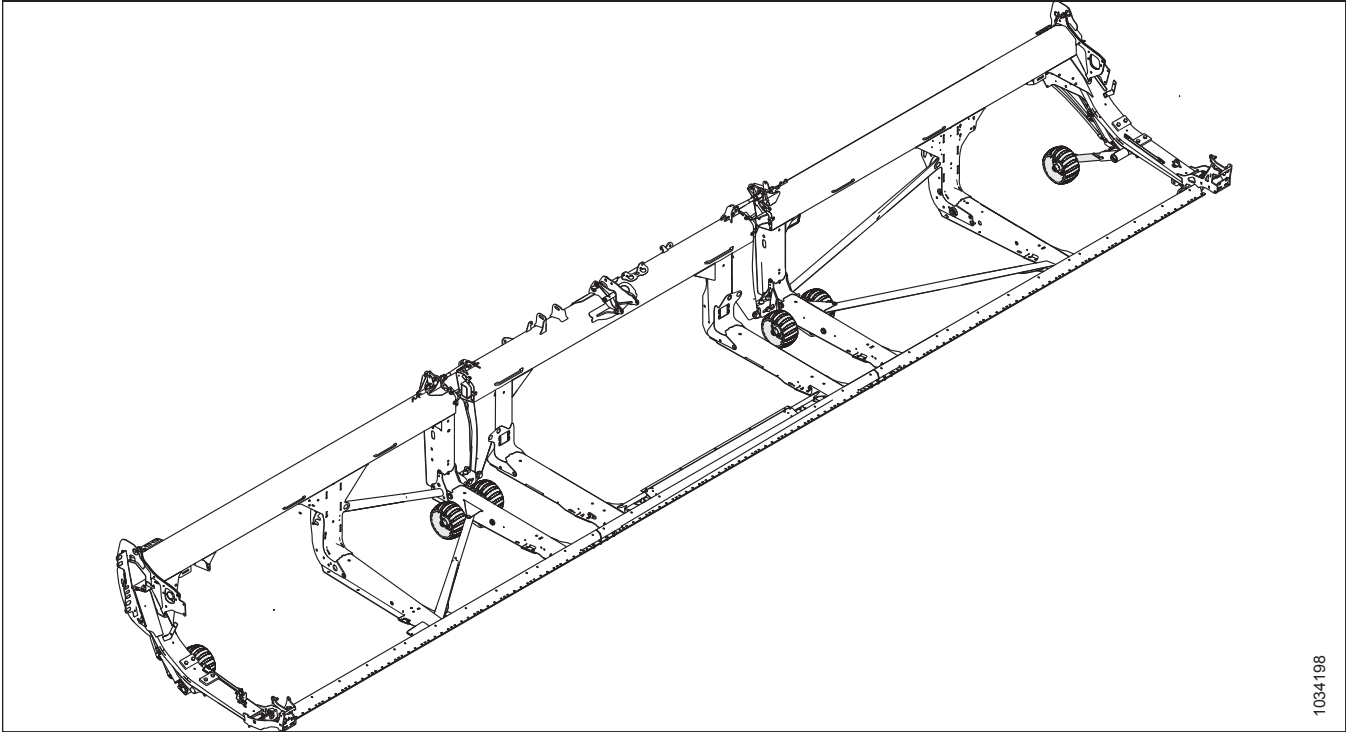
Bundle (MD #)	Stripper Bar Length	Opening Width (Installed on FM200)	Recommended Feeder House Width
B6042	265 mm (10 1/2 in.)	1317 mm (52 in.)	1250–1350 mm (49–65 in.)
B6043	265 mm (10 1/2 in.) (with cutout)	1317 mm (52 in.)	For John Deere S Series only
B6045	365 mm (14 1/2 in.)	1117 mm (44 in.)	<1100 mm (<43 1/2 in.) and below

## 6.4 Header

The header is an attachment that is used on the front of a machine that is used for harvesting,

### 6.4.1 ContourMax™ Contour Wheels Kit

The contourMAX™ Provides flex and auto header height control (AHHC) for stubble heights of 0–457 mm (0–18 in.) (standard header provides 0–152 mm [0–6 in.])



**Figure 6.12: ContourMax™ Contour Wheels**

The kit consists of four wheel sets and hydraulic height actuation from combine cab. Installation instructions are included in the kit. Order the following bundles:

#### ***Base ContourMax™ Package***

Includes wheels, mounts, cylinders, control valve, and hydraulic plumbing to complete installation on ContourMax™ ready header.

MD #B6799

#### ***Hydraulic Plumbing Package***

Includes hydraulic lines to make header ContourMax™ ready if not factory configured. Order from the following list of ContourMax™ Contour Wheel hydraulic lines according to your header model:

- FD230 – MD #B7082
- FD235 – MD #B7083
- FD240 – MD #B7113
- FD241 – MD #B7114
- FD245 – MD #B7193
- FD250 – MD #B7116

## 6.4.2 EasyMove™ Transport System

The EasyMove™ Transport System makes it faster than ever to move your FD2 Series FlexDraper® from field to field. When operating in the field, the wheels are also used for stabilizer wheels.

Installation instructions are included in the kit.

In order to complete the installation of this kit, order the one of the collector numbers be below:

- MD #C2048 – FD230, FD235
- MD #C2050 – FD240, FD241, FD245, FD250

MD #C2048 consists of

- MD #B6288 – Stabilizer Wheels / Slow Speed Transport Base Kit
- MD #B6275 – Wheels and Tires – White Rims
- FD230 and FD235 – Short Tow Pole (MD #B6383)

MD #C2050 consists of

- MD #B6288 – Stabilizer Wheels / Slow Speed Transport Base Kit
- MD #B6275 – Wheels and Tires – White Rims
- FD240, FD241, and FD250 – Long Tow Pole (MD #B6382)

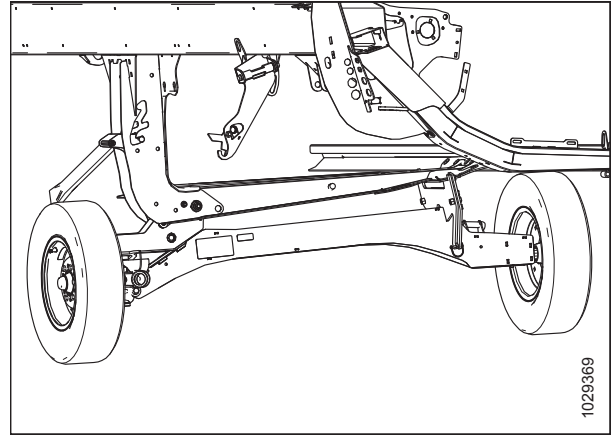
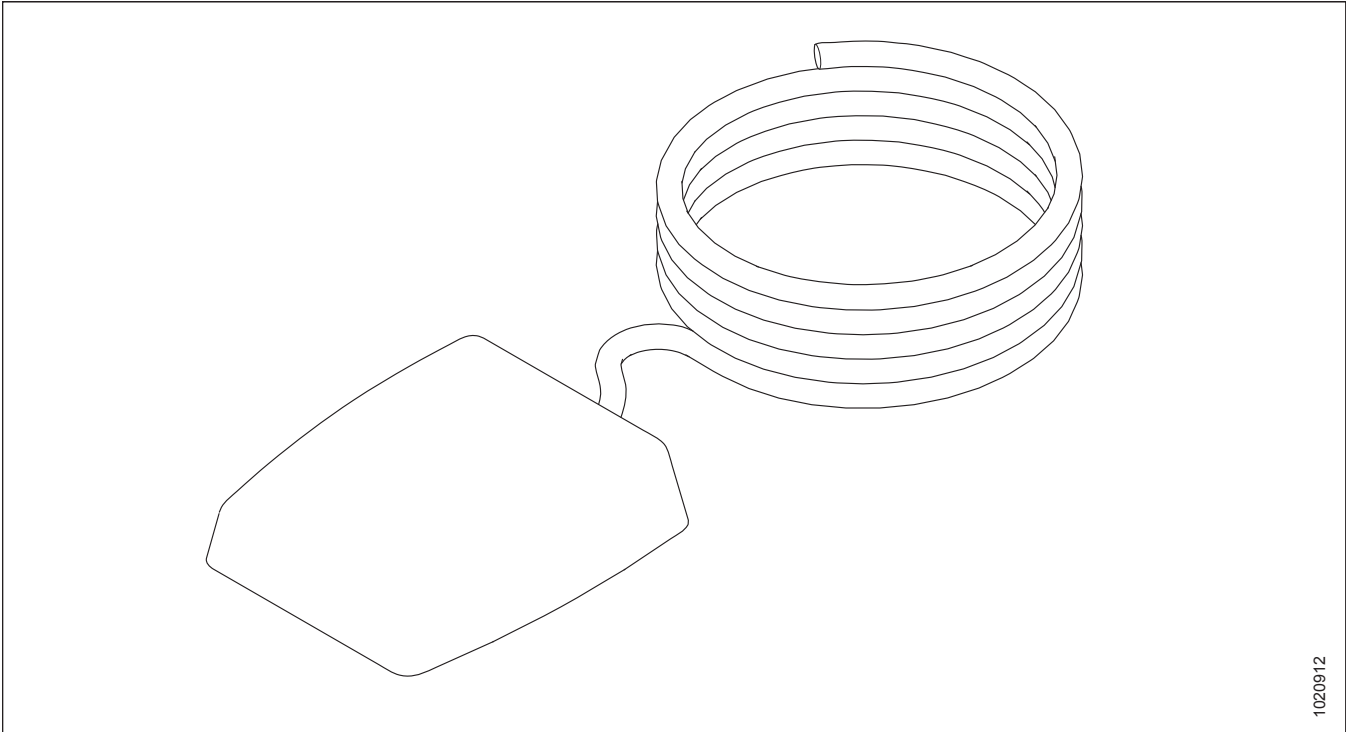


Figure 6.13: EasyMove™ Transport System

### 6.4.3 ContourMax™ Foot switch Kit

The ContourMax™ foot switch allows the operator to change the position of the ContourMax™ without taking their hand off the multifunction handle.



1020912

Figure 6.14: ContourMax™ Foot Switch MD #B7040

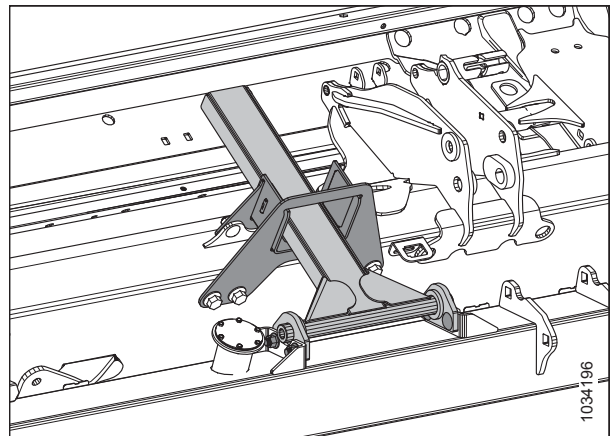
This option is available for John Deere and AGCO (Challenger, Fendt, Gleaner, and Massey Ferguson) combines.

### 6.4.4 Side Hill Stabilizer Kit

The side hill stabilizer kit is recommended for cutting on side hills with a grade steeper than 5°.

Installation instructions are included in the kit.

MD #B7028



1034196

Figure 6.15: Side Hill Stabilizer Kit – MD #B7028



### 6.4.5 Stabilizer Wheel Kit

The stabilizer wheel kit stabilizes the headers lateral movement when cutting at heights higher than possible with the standard skid shoes.

Installation and adjustment instructions are included in the kit.

MD #C2051

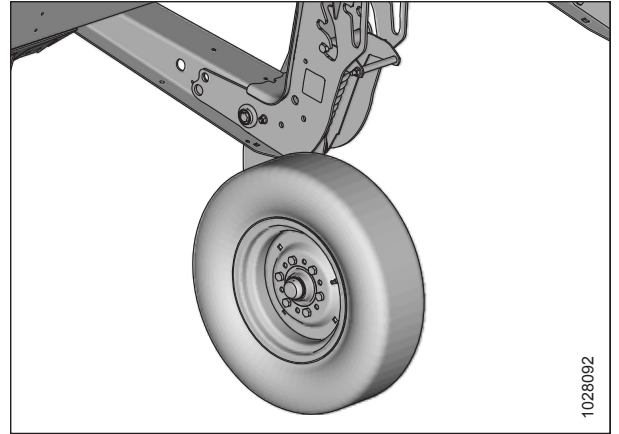


Figure 6.16: Stabilizer Wheel Kit

### 6.4.6 Steel Skid Shoes Kit

The steel skid shoes kit provides extended wear skid shoes for use in rocky, abrasive conditions.

**IMPORTANT:**

Not recommended for wet mud or conditions prone to sparking.

Contains two skid shoes. For full replacement of standard skid shoes, order three bundles (six shoes total).

Installation instructions are included with kit.

MD #B6801

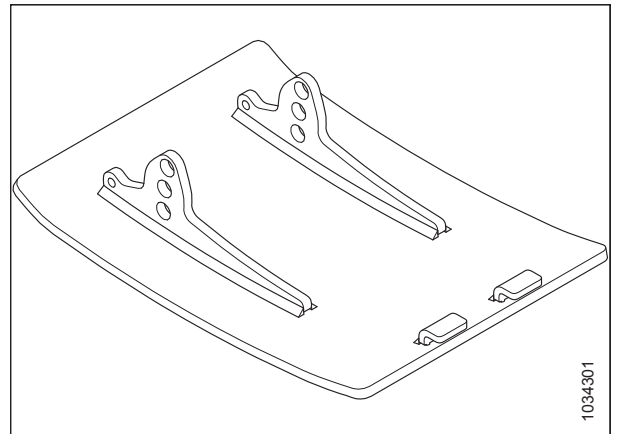
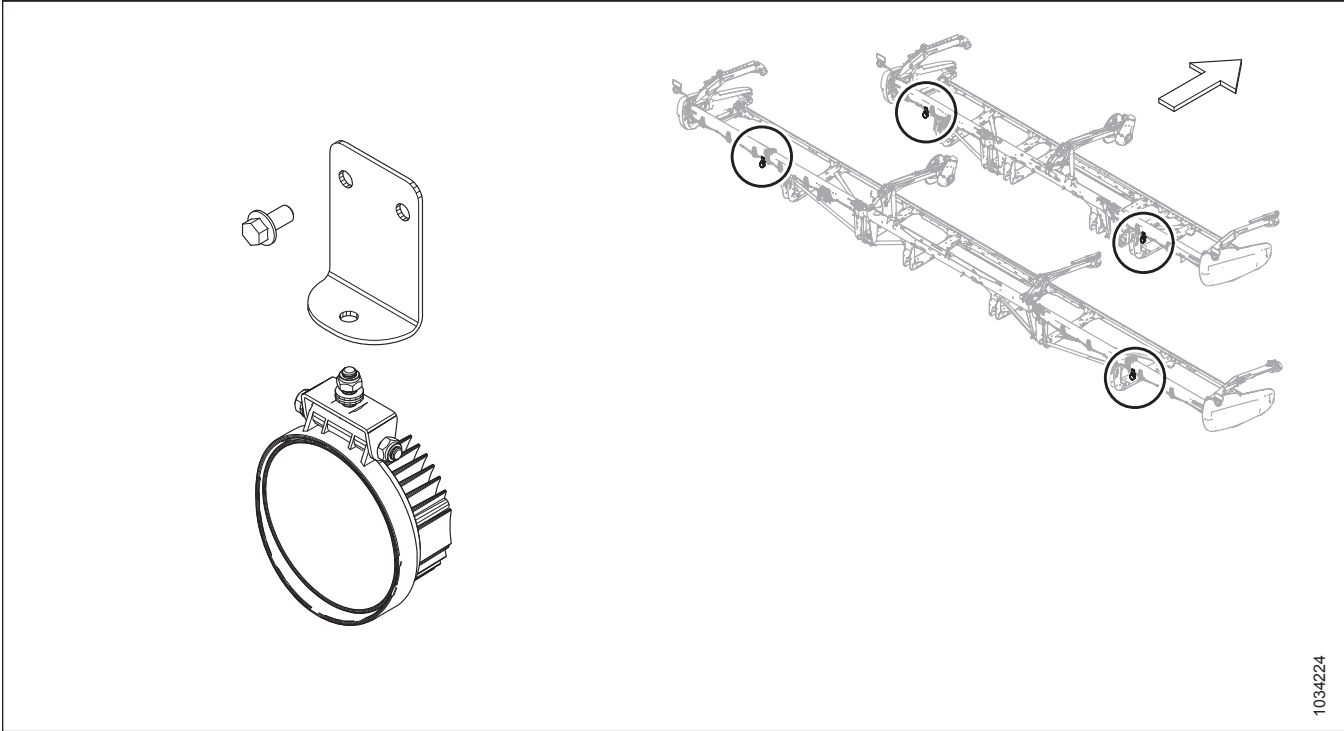


Figure 6.17: Steel Skid Shoes Kit

### 6.4.7 Stubble Light Kit

Stubble lights are used in low light conditions and allow the operator to see the stubble cut behind the header. The Stubble Light kit is available for MacDon FD230, FD235, FD240, FD241, and FD245 headers. This kit is currently compatible with John Deere combines only.



1034224

**Figure 6.18: Stubble Light Kit – MD #B7027**

Installation instructions are included with kit.

MD #B7027

## Chapter 7: Troubleshooting

Machinery can sometimes have issues with installed parts or with operation in certain conditions.

### 7.1 Crop Loss at Cutterbar

Use the following tables to determine the cause of the crop loss at the cutterbar problems and the recommended repair procedure.

**Table 7.1 Troubleshooting – Crop Loss at Cutterbar**

Problem	Solution	Refer to
<b>Symptom: Does not pick up downed crop</b>		
Cutterbar too high	Lower cutterbar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3.7.1 Cutting off the Ground, page 61</li> <li>3.7.2 Cutting on the Ground, page 67</li> </ul>
Header angle too low	Increase header angle	3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91
Reel too high	Lower reel	3.7.10 Reel Height, page 105
Reel too far back	Move reel forward	3.7.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 109
Ground speed too fast for reel speed	Increase reel speed or reduce ground speed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3.7.6 Reel Speed, page 99</li> <li>3.7.7 Ground Speed, page 100</li> </ul>
Reel fingers not lifting crop sufficiently	Increase finger pitch aggressiveness	3.7.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 119
Reel fingers not lifting crop sufficiently	Install crop lifters	See your MacDon Dealer
<b>Symptom: Heads shattering or breaking off</b>		
Reel speed too fast	Reduce reel speed	3.7.6 Reel Speed, page 99
Reel too low	Raise reel	3.7.10 Reel Height, page 105
Ground speed too fast	Reduce ground speed	3.7.7 Ground Speed, page 100
Crop too ripe	Operate at night when humidity is higher	—
<b>Symptom: Material accumulating in the gap between the cut-out in endsheet and the knifehead</b>		
Crop heads leaning away from knifehead hole in endsheet	Add knifehead shields (except in damp or sticky soils)	5.8.9 Knifehead Shield, page 512
<b>Symptom: Strips of uncut material</b>		
Guards plugged with debris	Install short knife guards	5.8.8 Plug-Free™ Knife Guards and Hold-Downs, page 501
Broken knife sections	Replace broken sections	5.8.1 Replacing Knife Section, page 478
<b>Symptom: Excessive bouncing at normal field speed</b>		

## TROUBLESHOOTING

**Table 7.1 Troubleshooting – Crop Loss at Cutterbar (continued)**

Problem	Solution	Refer to
Float set too light	Adjust header float	<i>3.7.3 Header Float, page 69</i>
<b>Symptom: Divider rod running down standing crop</b>		
Divider rods too long	Remove divider rod	<i>3.7.14 Crop Dividers, page 127</i>

## TROUBLESHOOTING

**Table 7.1 Troubleshooting – Crop Loss at Cutterbar (continued)**

Problem	Solution	Refer to
<b>Symptom: Crop not being cut at ends</b>		
Reel not frowning or not centered in header	Adjust reel horizontal position or reel frown	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">3.7.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 109</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">5.16.2 Reel Frown, page 578</a></li> </ul>
Knife hold-down not adjusted properly	Adjust the hold-down so that the knife works freely but still keeps sections from lifting off of the guards	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 495</a> or</li> <li>• <a href="#">Adjusting Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards, page 507</a></li> </ul>
Knife sections or guards are worn or broken	Replace all worn and broken cutting parts	<a href="#">5.8 Knife, page 478</a>
Header is not level	Level the header	<a href="#">3.9 Leveling Header, page 294</a>
Reel fingers not lifting crop properly ahead of knife	Adjust reel position and/or finger pitch	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">3.7.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 109</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">3.7.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 119</a></li> </ul>
Divider runs down thick crop at ends preventing proper feeding due to material bridging the guards	Replace 3–4 end guards with short knife guard	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">5.8.8 Plug-Free™ Knife Guards and Hold-Downs, page 501</a></li> <li>• See your MacDon Dealer</li> </ul>
<b>Symptom: Bushy or tangled crop flows over the divider rod, and builds up on the endsheets</b>		
Divider rods providing insufficient separation	Install long divider rods	<a href="#">3.7.14 Crop Dividers, page 127</a>
<b>Symptom: Cut grain falling ahead of the cutterbar</b>		
Ground speed too slow	Increase ground speed	<a href="#">3.7.7 Ground Speed, page 100</a>
Reel speed too slow	Increase reel speed	<a href="#">3.7.6 Reel Speed, page 99</a>
Reel too high	Lower reel	<a href="#">3.7.10 Reel Height, page 105</a>
Cutterbar too high	Lower cutterbar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">3.7.1 Cutting off the Ground, page 61</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">3.7.2 Cutting on the Ground, page 67</a></li> </ul>
Reel too far forward	Move reel back on arms	<a href="#">3.7.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 109</a>
Cutting at speeds over 10 km/h (6 mph) with 10-tooth reel drive sprocket	Replace with 19-tooth reel drive sprocket	<a href="#">5.17.2 Reel Drive Sprocket, page 608</a>
Worn or broken knife components	Replace components	<a href="#">5.8 Knife, page 478</a>

## 7.2 Cutting Action and Knife Components

Use the following tables to determine the cause of the cutting action and knife component problems and the recommended repair procedure.

**Table 7.2 Troubleshooting – Cutting Action and Knife Components**

Problem	Solution	Refer to
<b>Symptom: Ragged or uneven cutting of crop</b>		
Knife hold-down not adjusted properly	Adjust the hold-down	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 495</i></li> <li>• <i>Adjusting Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards, page 507</i></li> </ul>
Knife sections or guards are worn or broken	Replace all worn and broken cutting parts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Replacing Pointed Center Knife Guard – Double-Knife, page 496</i></li> <li>• <i>Replacing Pointed Knife Guards, page 493</i></li> <li>• <i>Replacing Center Knife Guard – Double-Knife, page 508</i></li> <li>• <i>Replacing Plug-Free™ Knife Guards or End Knife Guards, page 505</i></li> <li>• <i>5.8.1 Replacing Knife Section, page 478</i></li> </ul>
Knife is not operating at recommended speed	Feeder house speed set too low or knife speed not adjusted to proper range	<i>Checking Knife Speed, page 104</i>
Ground speed too fast for reel speed	Reduce ground speed or increase reel speed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>3.7.6 Reel Speed, page 99</i></li> <li>• <i>3.7.7 Ground Speed, page 100</i></li> </ul>
Reel fingers not lifting crop properly ahead of knife	Adjust reel position/finger pitch	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>3.7.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 109</i></li> <li>• <i>3.7.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 119</i></li> </ul>
Cutterbar too high	Lower cutting height	<i>3.7.1 Cutting off the Ground, page 61 or 3.7.2 Cutting on the Ground, page 67</i>
Header angle too flat	Steepen header angle	<i>3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91</i>
Cutting edge of guards not close enough or parallel to knife sections	Align guards	<i>7.2.1 Adjusting Knife Guards and Guard Bar, page 649</i>
Tangled/tough-to-cut crop	Install short knife guards	MacDon Dealer <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 495 or Adjusting Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards, page 507</i></li> </ul>
Reel too far back	Move the reel forward	<i>3.7.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 109</i>

## TROUBLESHOOTING

**Table 7.2 Troubleshooting – Cutting Action and Knife Components (continued)**

Problem	Solution	Refer to
<b>Symptom: Knife plugging</b>		
Reel too high or too far forward	Lower the reel or move reel rearward	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">3.7.10 Reel Height, page 105</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">3.7.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 109</a></li> </ul>
Ground speed too high	Decrease the ground speed	<a href="#">3.7.7 Ground Speed, page 100</a>
Improper knife hold-down adjustment	Adjust the hold-down	<a href="#">Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 495</a> or <a href="#">Adjusting Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards, page 507</a>
Dull or broken knife section	Replace knife section	<a href="#">5.8.1 Replacing Knife Section, page 478</a>
Bent or broken guards	Align or replace the guards	<a href="#">7.2.1 Adjusting Knife Guards and Guard Bar, page 649</a>
Reel fingers not lifting crop properly ahead of knife	Adjust the reel position/finger pitch	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">3.7.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 109</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">3.7.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 119</a></li> </ul>
Steel pick-up fingers contacting knife	Increase the reel clearance to cutterbar or adjust “frown”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">5.16.2 Reel Frown, page 578</a></li> </ul>
Float too heavy	Adjust the springs for lighter float	<a href="#">Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 70</a>
Mud or dirt build-up on cutterbar	Raise the cutterbar by lowering skid shoes	<a href="#">3.7.2 Cutting on the Ground, page 67</a>
Mud or dirt build-up on cutterbar	Flatten the header angle	<a href="#">3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91</a>
Knife is not operating at recommended speed	Check the engine speed of combine or header knife speed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Combine operator’s manual</li> <li>• <a href="#">Checking Knife Speed, page 104</a></li> </ul>
<b>Symptom: Excessive header vibration</b>		
Knife hold-down not adjusted properly	Adjust hold-down	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 495</a> or <a href="#">Adjusting Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards, page 507</a></li> </ul>
Excessive knife wear	Replace knife	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">5.8.2 Removing Knife, page 479</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">5.8.5 Installing Knife, page 481</a></li> </ul>

**TROUBLESHOOTING**

**Table 7.2 Troubleshooting – Cutting Action and Knife Components (continued)**

Problem	Solution	Refer to
Knife hold-down not adjusted properly	Adjust hold-down	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 495</i></li> <li>• <i>Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 500</i></li> <li>• <i>Adjusting Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards, page 507</i></li> <li>• <i>Adjusting Center Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards, page 512</i></li> </ul>
Excessive knife wear	Replace knife	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>5.8.2 Removing Knife, page 479</i></li> <li>• <i>5.8.5 Installing Knife, page 481</i></li> </ul>
Loose or worn knifehead pin or drive arm	Tighten or replace parts	<i>5.8.1 Replacing Knife Section, page 478</i>
<b>Symptom: Excessive vibration of float module and header</b>		
Incorrect knife speed	Adjust knife speed	<i>Checking Knife Speed, page 104</i>
Bent cutterbar	Straighten the cutterbar	MacDon Dealer
<b>Symptom: Excessive breakage of knife sections or guards</b>		
Knife hold-down not adjusted properly	Adjust the hold-down	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Adjusting Hold-Down – Pointed Knife Guards, page 495</i> or</li> <li>• <i>Adjusting Hold-Down – Plug-Free™ Knife Guards, page 507</i></li> </ul>
Cutterbar operating too low in stony conditions	Raise cutterbar using skid shoes	<i>3.7.2 Cutting on the Ground, page 67</i>
Float is set too heavy	Adjust float springs for lighter float	<i>Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 70</i>
Bent or broken guard	Straighten or replace the guard	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>5.8.7 Pointed Knife Guards and Hold-Downs, page 484</i> or</li> <li>• <i>5.8.8 Plug-Free™ Knife Guards and Hold-Downs, page 501</i></li> </ul>
Header angle too steep	Flatten the header angle	<i>3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91</i>
<b>Symptom: Knife back breakage</b>		
Bent or broken guard	Straighten or replace the guard	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>5.8.7 Pointed Knife Guards and Hold-Downs, page 484</i> or</li> <li>• <i>5.8.8 Plug-Free™ Knife Guards and Hold-Downs, page 501</i></li> </ul>



## TROUBLESHOOTING

**Table 7.2 Troubleshooting – Cutting Action and Knife Components (continued)**

Problem	Solution	Refer to
Worn knifehead pin	Replace the knifehead pin	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">5.8.3 Removing Knifehead Bearing, page 480</a> and</li> <li>• <a href="#">5.8.4 Installing Knifehead Bearing, page 481</a></li> </ul>
Dull knife	Replace the knife	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">5.8.2 Removing Knife, page 479</a> and</li> <li>• <a href="#">5.8.5 Installing Knife, page 481</a></li> </ul>
Knife speed too fast	Lower the knife speed	Consult your MacDon Dealer
Loose knife section hardware	Check/tighten all of the knife hardware	—

### 7.2.1 Adjusting Knife Guards and Guard Bar

If a knife guard or the guard bar is misaligned due to contact with a rock or similar obstruction, use the guard straightening tool (MD #286705) available from your MacDon Dealer to correct the issue.

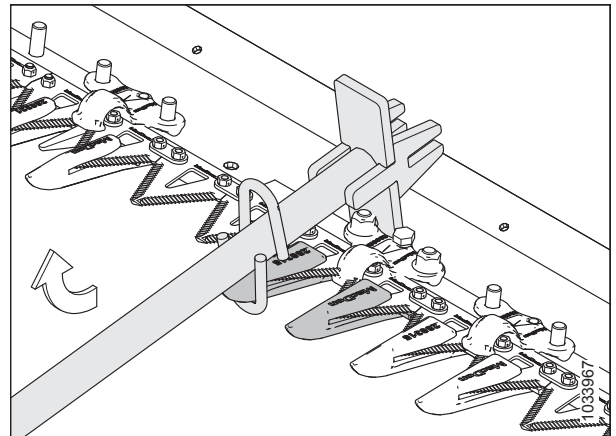
#### **DANGER**

To avoid bodily injury or death from unexpected startup of machine, always stop the engine and remove the key before making adjustments to the machine.

#### **CAUTION**

Wear heavy gloves when working around or handling knives.

1. To adjust the guard tips upwards, position tool (A) as shown, and pull up.



**Figure 7.1: Upward Adjustment – Pointed Guard**

## TROUBLESHOOTING

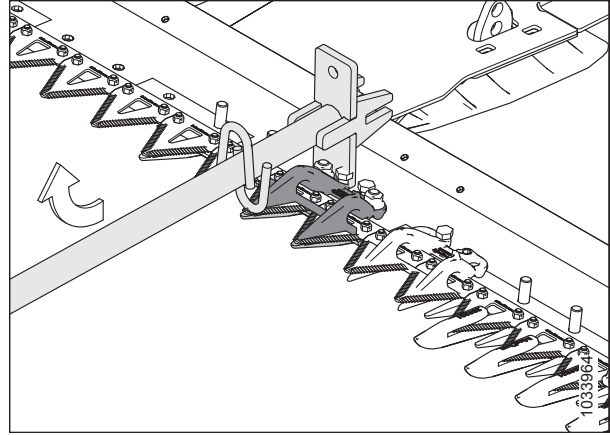


Figure 7.2: Upward Adjustment – Short Knife Guards

2. To adjust the guard tips downwards, position tool (A) as shown, and push down.

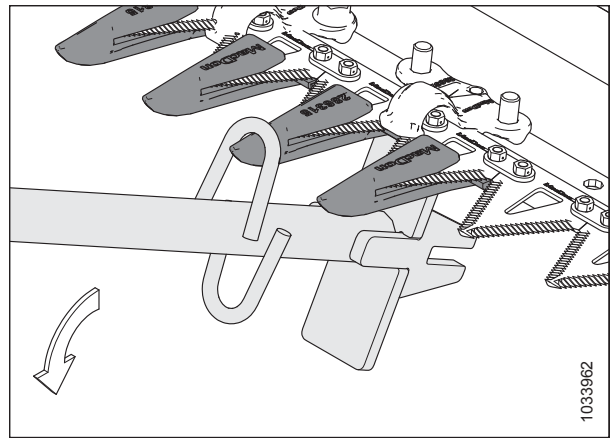


Figure 7.3: Downward Adjustment – Pointed Guard

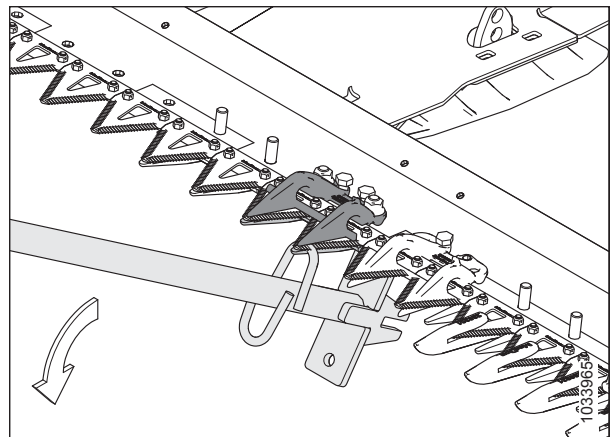


Figure 7.4: Downward Adjustment – Short Knife Guards

## TROUBLESHOOTING

3. To adjust the guard bar up or down, position tool (A) as shown, and push on the tool accordingly.

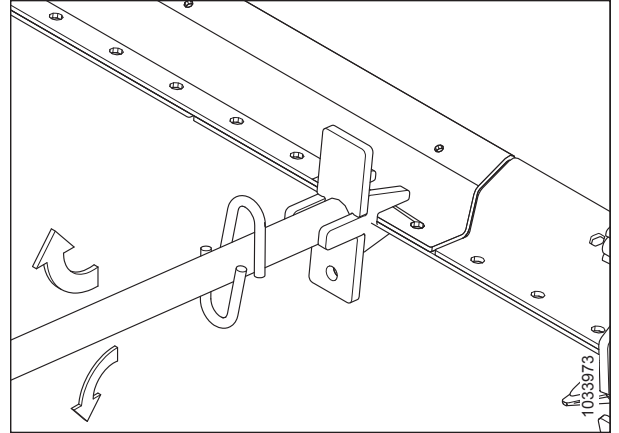


Figure 7.5: Guard Bar Adjustment – No Guards

TROUBLESHOOTING

## 7.3 Reel Delivery

Use the following tables to determine the cause of reel delivery problems and the recommended repair procedure.

**Table 7.3 Troubleshooting – Reel Delivery**

Problem	Solution	Refer to
<b>Symptom – Reel not releasing material in normal standing crop</b>		
Reel speed too fast	Reduce the reel speed	<i>3.7.6 Reel Speed, page 99</i>
Reel too low	Raise the reel	<i>3.7.10 Reel Height, page 105</i>
Reel tines too aggressive	Reduce the cam setting	<i>3.7.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 119</i>
Reel too far back	Move the reel forward	<i>3.7.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 109</i>
<b>Symptom – Reel not releasing material in lodged and standing crop (reel fully lowered)</b>		
Reel tines too aggressive for standing crop	Reduce the cam setting (one or two) or move reel forward	<i>3.7.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 119</i>
<b>Symptom – Wrapping on reel end</b>		
Reel tines too aggressive	Reduce the cam setting	<i>3.7.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 119</i>
Reel too low	Raise the reel	<i>3.7.10 Reel Height, page 105</i>
Reel speed too fast	Reduce the reel speed	<i>3.7.6 Reel Speed, page 99</i>
Reel not centered in header	Center the reel in the header	<i>5.16.3 Centering Reel, page 579</i>
<b>Symptom – Reel releases crop too quickly</b>		
Reel tines not aggressive enough	Increase the cam setting to match reel delivery to the reel fore-aft position	<i>3.7.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 119</i>
Reel too far forward	Move the reel back to match the reel cam setting	<i>3.7.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 109</i>
<b>Symptom – Reel will not lift</b>		
Reel lift couplers are incompatible or defective	Change the quick coupler	MacDon dealer
<b>Symptom – Reel will not turn</b>		
Quick couplers not properly connected	Connect the couplers	<i>4 Header Attachment/Detachment, page 321</i>
Reel drive chain disconnected or broken	Connect/replace the chain	<i>5.17.6 Replacing Drive Chain on Double Reel or Triple Reel, page 617</i>
<b>Symptom – Reel motion uneven under no load</b>		
Excessive slack in reel drive chain	Tighten the chain	<i>Tightening Reel Drive Chain, page 607</i>

## TROUBLESHOOTING

**Table 7.3 Troubleshooting – Reel Delivery (continued)**

Problem	Solution	Refer to
<b>Symptom – Reel motion is uneven or stalls in heavy crops</b>		
Reel speed too fast	Reduce the reel speed	<a href="#">3.7.6 Reel Speed, page 99</a>
Reel fingers not aggressive enough	Move to a more aggressive finger pitch notch	<a href="#">3.7.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 119</a>
Reel too low	Raise the reel	<a href="#">3.7.10 Reel Height, page 105</a>
Relief valve on combine (not on combine float module) has low relief pressure setting	Increase the relief pressure to the manufacturer’s recommendations	Combine operator’s manual
Low oil reservoir level on combine <b>NOTE:</b> Sometimes there is more than one reservoir	Fill to the proper level	Combine operator’s manual
Relief valve malfunction	Replace the relief valve	Combine operator’s manual
Cutting tough crops with standard torque (19-tooth) reel drive sprocket	Replace the sprocket with an appropriate high torque sprocket to match the combine reel circuit pressure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">5.17.2 Reel Drive Sprocket, page 608</a></li> <li>• Install Two Speed Kit (MD #311882)</li> </ul>
<b>Symptom – Plastic fingers cut at tip</b>		
Insufficient reel to cutterbar clearance	Increase the clearance	<a href="#">5.16.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 572</a>
<b>Symptom – Plastic fingers bent rearward at tip</b>		
Reel digging into ground with reel speed slower than ground speed	Raise the header	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">3.7.1 Cutting off the Ground, page 61</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">3.7.2 Cutting on the Ground, page 67</a></li> </ul>
Reel digging into ground with reel speed slower than ground speed	Decrease the header tilt	<a href="#">3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91</a>
Reel digging into ground with reel speed slower than ground speed	Move the reel aft	<a href="#">3.7.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 109</a>
<b>Symptom – Plastic fingers bent forward at tip</b>		
Reel digging into ground with reel speed faster than ground speed	Raise the header	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">3.7.1 Cutting off the Ground, page 61</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">3.7.2 Cutting on the Ground, page 67</a></li> </ul>
Reel digging into ground with reel speed faster than ground speed	Decrease the header tilt	<a href="#">3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91</a>
Reel digging into ground with reel speed faster than ground speed	Move the reel aft	<a href="#">3.7.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 109</a>

## TROUBLESHOOTING

**Table 7.3 Troubleshooting – Reel Delivery (continued)**

Problem	Solution	Refer to
<b>Symptom – Plastic fingers bent close to tine tube</b>		
Excessive plugging at cutterbar with wads of crop accumulating at cutterbar while maintaining reel operation	Correct the plugging/cutting issues	<i>3.10 Unplugging the Cutterbar, page 297</i>
Excessive plugging at cutterbar with wads of crop accumulating at cutterbar while maintaining reel operation	Stop the reel before plugging becomes excessive	<i>3.10 Unplugging the Cutterbar, page 297</i>

## TROUBLESHOOTING

### 7.4 Header and Drapers

Use the following tables to determine the header and draper problems and the recommended repair procedure.

**Table 7.4 Troubleshooting – Header and Drapers**

Problem	Solution	Refer to
<b>Symptom: Insufficient header lift</b>		
Low relief pressure	Increase the relief pressure	MacDon Dealer
<b>Symptom: Insufficient side draper speed</b>		
Speed control set too low	Increase the speed control setting	<a href="#">3.7.8 Side Draper Speed, page 101</a>
Combine header drive too slow	Adjust to the correct speed for the combine model	Combine operator's manual
<b>Symptom: Insufficient feed draper speed</b>		
Relief pressure too low	Test the side draper hydraulic system	See your MacDon Dealer
Combine header drive too slow	Adjust to the correct speed for the combine model	Combine operator's manual
<b>Symptom: Feed draper will not move</b>		
Drapers are loose	Tighten the drapers	<a href="#">5.10.2 Checking and Adjusting Feed Draper Tension, page 533</a>
Drive or idler roller wrapped with material	Loosen the draper and clean the rollers	<a href="#">5.10.2 Checking and Adjusting Feed Draper Tension, page 533</a>
Slat or connector bar jammed by frame or material	Loosen the draper and clear the obstruction	<a href="#">5.10.2 Checking and Adjusting Feed Draper Tension, page 533</a>
Roller bearing seized	Replace the roller bearing	<a href="#">Replacing Feed Draper Idler Roller Bearing, page 544</a>
Low hydraulic oil	Fill the combine hydraulic oil reservoir to the full level	Combine operator's manual
Material not feeding evenly off knife	Lower the reel	<a href="#">3.7.10 Reel Height, page 105</a>
Material not feeding evenly off knife	Install short knife guards	<a href="#">5.8.8 Plug-Free™ Knife Guards and Hold-Downs, page 501</a>
<b>Symptom: Hesitation in the flow of bulky crop</b>		
Header angle too low	Increase the header angle	<a href="#">3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91</a>
Material overload on drapers	Increase the side draper speed	<a href="#">3.7.8 Side Draper Speed, page 101</a>
Material overload on drapers	Install an upper cross auger	<a href="#">6.1.6 Full Length Upper Cross Auger, page 634</a>
Material overload on drapers	Add flighting extensions	See your MacDon Dealer
<b>Symptom: Drapers back-feed</b>		
Drapers running too slow in heavy crop	Increase the draper speed	<a href="#">3.7.8 Side Draper Speed, page 101</a>
<b>Symptom: Crop is thrown across the opening and under opposite side draper</b>		

## TROUBLESHOOTING

**Table 7.4 Troubleshooting – Header and Drapers (continued)**

Problem	Solution	Refer to
Drapers running too fast in light crop	Reduce the draper speed	<i>3.7.8 Side Draper Speed, page 101</i>
<b>Symptom: Material accumulating on the end deflectors and releasing in bunches</b>		
End deflectors too wide	For headers with manual deck shift only, trim the deflector or replace with a narrow deflector (MD #172381)	<i>3.10 Unplugging the Cutterbar, page 297</i>



## TROUBLESHOOTING

### 7.5 Cutting Edible Beans

Use the following tables to determine the cause of the cutting edible bean problems and the recommended repair procedure.

**Table 7.5 Troubleshooting – Cutting Edible Beans**

Problem	Solution	Refer to
<b>Symptom: Plants being stripped and complete or partial plants left behind</b>		
Header off ground	Lower the header to ground and run it on the skid shoes and/or the cutterbar	<a href="#">3.7.2 Cutting on the Ground, page 67</a>
Float set too light—rides on high spots and does not lower soon enough	Set the float to 335–338 N (75–85 lbf). Increase or decrease as necessary to prevent the header from bouncing excessively or plowing into soft ground	<a href="#">3.7.3 Header Float, page 69</a>
Reel too high with cylinders fully retracted	Adjust the reel height	<a href="#">3.7.10 Reel Height, page 105</a>
Finger pitch not aggressive enough	Adjust the finger pitch	<a href="#">3.7.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 119</a>
Reel too far aft	Move the reel forward until the fingertips skim the soil surface with the header on the ground and the header angle properly adjusted	<a href="#">3.7.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 109</a>
Header angle too shallow	Adjust the header angle	<a href="#">Adjusting Header Angle from Combine, page 93</a>
Header angle too shallow	Increase the header angle by fully retracting lift cylinders (if cutting on ground)	<a href="#">Adjusting Header Angle from Combine, page 93</a>
Reel too slow	Adjust the reel speed to be marginally faster than ground speed	<a href="#">3.7.6 Reel Speed, page 99</a>
Ground speed too fast	Lower the ground speed	<a href="#">3.7.7 Ground Speed, page 100</a>
Skid shoes too low	Raise the skid shoes to the highest setting	<a href="#">3.7.2 Cutting on the Ground, page 67</a>
Dirt packing on bottom of cutterbar with plastic wear strips on cutterbar; raises the cutterbar off the ground	Ground too wet – allow soil to dry	—
Dirt packing on bottom of cutterbar with plastic wear strips on cutterbar; raises the cutterbar off the ground	Float too heavy	<a href="#">Checking and Adjusting Header Float, page 70</a>
Dirt packing on bottom of cutterbar with plastic wear strips on cutterbar; raises the cutterbar off the ground	Manually clean the bottom of the cutterbar when excessive accumulation occurs	—
Header not level	Level the header	<a href="#">3.9 Leveling Header, page 294</a>
Worn or damaged knife sections	Replace the sections or replace the knife	<a href="#">5.8 Knife, page 478</a>

## TROUBLESHOOTING

**Table 7.5 Troubleshooting – Cutting Edible Beans (continued)**

Problem	Solution	Refer to
Parts of vines get caught in pointed guard tip. (Occurs more in row-cropped beans that are hilled from cultivating.)	Install the short knife guard conversion kit	<i>5.8.8 Plug-Free™ Knife Guards and Hold-Downs, page 501</i>
Pushing of crop debris on the ground	Install the short knife guards	<i>5.8.8 Plug-Free™ Knife Guards and Hold-Downs, page 501</i>
Knife speed too low	Increase the feeder house speed or check that the knife speed is set within the recommended range	<i>3.7.9 Knife Speed Information, page 103 or Checking Knife Speed, page 104</i>
<b>Symptom: Excessive losses at dividers</b>		
Divider rod running down crop and shattering the pods	Remove the divider rod	<i>3.7.14 Crop Dividers, page 127</i>
Vines and plants build up on the endsheet	Install the divider rod	<i>3.7.14 Crop Dividers, page 127</i>
<b>Symptom: Plant vines pinched between top of draper and cutterbar</b>		
Cutterbar fills with debris when draper to cutterbar gap is properly adjusted	Raise the header fully at each end of the field (or as required) and shift decks back and forth to help clean out the cutterbar	—
Shifting the decks with the header raised does not clean out the cutterbar debris.	Manually remove the debris from the cutterbar cavity to prevent damaging the drapers	—
<b>Symptom: Crop accumulating at guards and not moving rearward onto the drapers</b>		
Reel finger pitch not aggressive enough	Increase the finger aggressiveness (cam position)	<i>3.7.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 119</i>
Reel too high	Lower the reel	<i>3.7.10 Reel Height, page 105</i>
Minimum reel clearance to cutterbar setting too high	Adjust the minimum reel height with cylinders fully retracted	<i>5.16.1 Reel Clearance to Cutterbar, page 572</i>
Reel too far forward	Reposition the reel	<i>3.7.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 109</i>
<b>Symptom: Crop wrapping around reel</b>		
Reel too low	Raise the reel	<i>3.7.10 Reel Height, page 105</i>
<b>Symptom: Reel shattering pods</b>		
Reel too far forward	Reposition the reel	<i>3.7.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 109</i>
Reel speed too high	Reduce the reel speed	<i>3.7.6 Reel Speed, page 99</i>
Bean pods too dry	Cut at night when heavy dew is present and pods have softened	—
Reel finger pitch not aggressive enough	Increase the finger aggressiveness (cam position)	<i>3.7.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 119</i>
<b>Symptom: Cutterbar guards breaking</b>		

## TROUBLESHOOTING

**Table 7.5 Troubleshooting – Cutting Edible Beans (continued)**

Problem	Solution	Refer to
Float insufficient (float setting too heavy)	Increase the float (adjust to lighter float setting)	<i>3.7.3 Header Float, page 69</i>
Excessive number of rocks in field	Consider installing optional short knife guards <b>Note:</b> With the installation of short knife guards, you are trading guard damage for section damage (although changing sections with short knife guards is easier)	Order parts

**TROUBLESHOOTING**

**Table 7.5 Troubleshooting – Cutting Edible Beans (continued)**

Problem	Solution	Refer to
<b>Symptom: Cutterbar pushing too much debris and dirt</b>		
Header too heavy	Readjust the float to make the header lighter	<a href="#">3.7.3 Header Float, page 69</a>
Header angle too steep	Decrease the header angle	<a href="#">3.7.5 Header Angle, page 91</a>
Guards plug with debris or and soil	Install the short knife guard	<a href="#">5.8.8 Plug-Free™ Knife Guards and Hold-Downs, page 501</a>
Insufficient support for the header	Install the center skid shoes	<a href="#">3.7.2 Cutting on the Ground, page 67</a>
<b>Symptom: Crop wrapping around reel ends</b>		
Uncut crop interfering on reel ends	Add reel endshields	Header parts catalog
<b>Symptom: Cutterbar fills up with dirt</b>		
Excessive gap between the draper and the cutterbar	Raise the header fully at each end of field (or as required) and shift the decks back and forth to help clean out the cutterbar	—
<b>Symptom: Reel occasionally carries over plants in the same location</b>		
Steel fingers bent and hooking plants from drapers	Straighten the fingers (steel)	—
Dirt accumulation on end of fingers preventing plants from falling off fingers onto drapers	Raise the reel	<a href="#">3.7.10 Reel Height, page 105</a>
Dirt accumulation on end of fingers preventing plants from falling off fingers onto drapers	Adjust the reel fore-aft position to move the fingers out of the ground	<a href="#">3.7.11 Reel Fore-Aft Position, page 109</a>
<b>Symptom: Cutterbar pushing soil</b>		
Tire tracks or row crop ridges	Cut at an angle to crop rows or ridges	—
Rolling terrain along length of field	Cut at 90° to the rolling terrain (provided knife floats across without digging in)	—
<b>Symptom: Reel carries over an excessive amount of plants or wads</b>		
Excessive accumulation of crop on drapers (up to reel center tube)	Increase the draper speed	<a href="#">3.7.8 Side Draper Speed, page 101</a>
Finger pitch too slow	Increase the finger pitch	<a href="#">3.7.12 Reel Tine Pitch, page 119</a>

# Chapter 8: Reference

Use this section as a source for reference information.

## 8.1 Torque Specifications

The following tables provide correct torque values for various bolts, cap screws, and hydraulic fittings.

- Tighten all bolts to torque values specified in charts (unless otherwise noted throughout this manual).
- Replace hardware with same strength and grade of bolt.
- Use torque value tables as a guide and periodically check tightness of bolts.
- Understand torque categories for bolts and cap screws by using their identifying head markings.

### Jam nuts

When applying torque to finished jam nuts, multiply the torque applied to regular nuts by  $f=0.65$ .

### Self-tapping screws

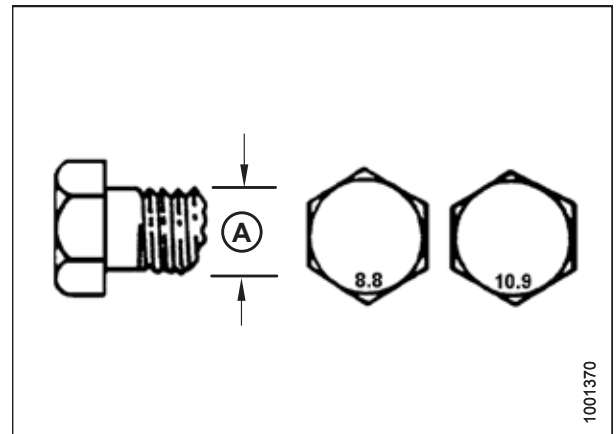
Standard torque is to be used (**NOT** to be used on critical or structurally important joints).

### 8.1.1 Metric Bolt Specifications

Torque values shown in following tables are valid for non-greased, or non-oiled threads and heads; therefore, do **NOT** grease or oil bolts or cap screws unless otherwise specified in this manual.

**Table 8.1 Metric Class 8.8 Bolts and Class 9 Free Spinning Nut**

Nominal Size (A)	Torque (Nm)		Torque (lbf-ft) (*lbf-in)	
	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
3-0.5	1.4	1.6	*13	*14
3.5-0.6	2.2	2.5	*20	*22
4-0.7	3.3	3.7	*29	*32
5-0.8	6.7	7.4	*59	*66
6-1.0	11.4	12.6	*101	*112
8-1.25	28	30	20	23
10-1.5	55	60	40	45
12-1.75	95	105	70	78
14-2.0	152	168	113	124
16-2.0	236	261	175	193
20-2.5	460	509	341	377
24-3.0	796	879	589	651



**Figure 8.1: Bolt Grades**

REFERENCE

Table 8.2 Metric Class 8.8 Bolts and Class 9 Distorted Thread Nut

Nominal Size (A)	Torque (Nm)		Torque (lbf·ft) (*lbf·in)	
	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
3-0.5	1	1.1	*9	*10
3.5-0.6	1.5	1.7	*14	*15
4-0.7	2.3	2.5	*20	*22
5-0.8	4.5	5	*40	*45
6-1.0	7.7	8.6	*69	*76
8-1.25	18.8	20.8	*167	*185
10-1.5	37	41	28	30
12-1.75	65	72	48	53
14-2.0	104	115	77	85
16-2.0	161	178	119	132
20-2.5	314	347	233	257
24-3.0	543	600	402	444

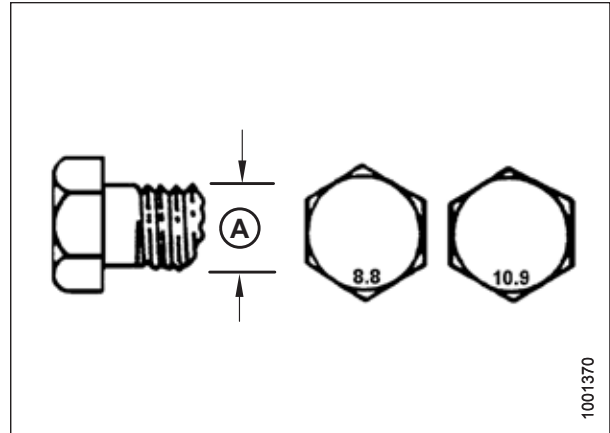


Figure 8.2: Bolt Grades

Table 8.3 Metric Class 10.9 Bolts and Class 10 Free Spinning Nut

Nominal Size (A)	Torque (Nm)		Torque (lbf·ft) (*lbf·in)	
	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
3-0.5	1.8	2	*18	*19
3.5-0.6	2.8	3.1	*27	*30
4-0.7	4.2	4.6	*41	*45
5-0.8	8.4	9.3	*82	*91
6-1.0	14.3	15.8	*140	*154
8-1.25	38	42	28	31
10-1.5	75	83	56	62
12-1.75	132	145	97	108
14-2.0	210	232	156	172
16-2.0	326	360	242	267
20-2.5	637	704	472	521
24-3.0	1101	1217	815	901

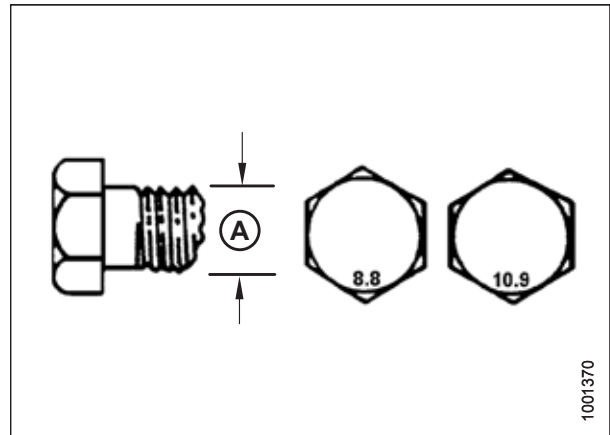


Figure 8.3: Bolt Grades

REFERENCE

Table 8.4 Metric Class 10.9 Bolts and Class 10 Distorted Thread Nut

Nominal Size (A)	Torque (Nm)		Torque (lbf-ft) (*lbf-in)	
	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
3-0.5	1.3	1.5	*12	*13
3.5-0.6	2.1	2.3	*19	*21
4-0.7	3.1	3.4	*28	*31
5-0.8	6.3	7	*56	*62
6-1.0	10.7	11.8	*95	*105
8-1.25	26	29	19	21
10-1.5	51	57	38	42
12-1.75	90	99	66	73
14-2.0	143	158	106	117
16-2.0	222	246	165	182
20-2.5	434	480	322	356
24-3.0	750	829	556	614

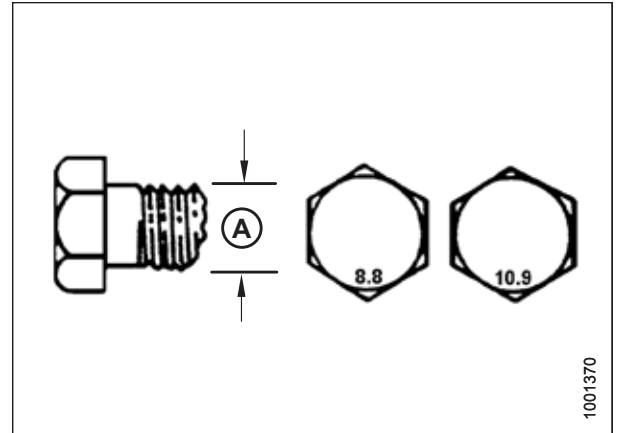


Figure 8.4: Bolt Grades

### 8.1.2 Metric Bolt Specifications Bolting into Cast Aluminum

Torque values shown in following tables are valid for non-greased, or non-oiled threads and heads; therefore, do **NOT** grease or oil bolts or cap screws unless otherwise specified in this manual.

Table 8.5 Metric Bolt Bolting into Cast Aluminum

Nominal Size (A)	Bolt Torque			
	8.8 (Cast Aluminum)		10.9 (Cast Aluminum)	
	Nm	lbf-ft	Nm	lbf-ft
M3	–	–	–	1
M4	–	–	4	2.6
M5	–	–	8	5.5
M6	9	6	12	9
M8	20	14	28	20
M10	40	28	55	40
M12	70	52	100	73
M14	–	–	–	–
M16	–	–	–	–

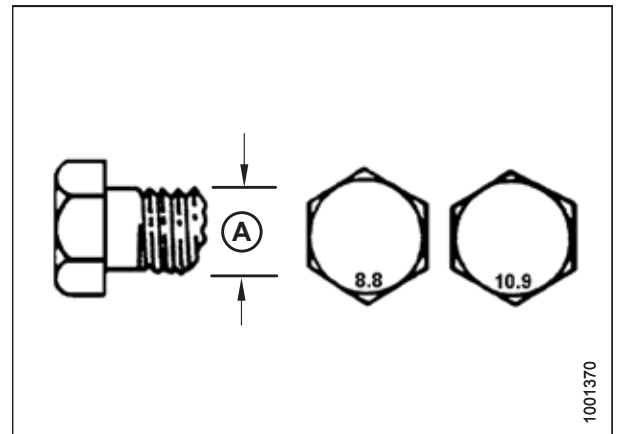


Figure 8.5: Bolt Grades

### 8.1.3 O-Ring Boss Hydraulic Fittings – Adjustable

Torque values are shown in following table below.

1. Inspect O-ring (A) and seat (B) for dirt or obvious defects.
2. Back off lock nut (C) as far as possible. Ensure that washer (D) is loose and is pushed toward lock nut (C) as far as possible.
3. Check that O-ring (A) is **NOT** on threads and adjust if necessary.
4. Apply hydraulic system oil to O-ring (A).

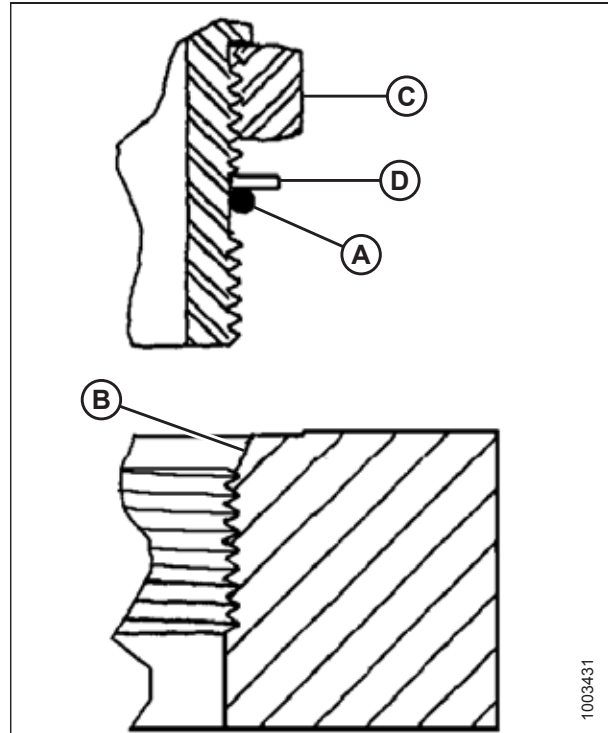


Figure 8.6: Hydraulic Fitting

5. Install fitting (B) into port until backup washer (D) and O-ring (A) contact part face (E).
6. Position the angle fittings by unscrewing no more than one turn.
7. Turn lock nut (C) down to washer (D) and tighten to torque shown. Use two wrenches, one on fitting (B) and other on lock nut (C).
8. Check the final condition of the fitting.

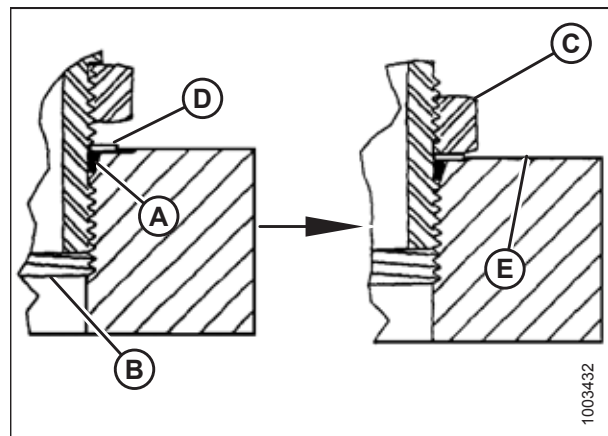


Figure 8.7: Hydraulic Fitting



REFERENCE

Table 8.6 O-Ring Boss (ORB) Hydraulic Fittings – Adjustable

SAE Dash Size	Thread Size (in.)	Torque Value <sup>67</sup>	
		Nm	lbf·ft (*lbf·in)
-2	5/16-24	6-7	*53-62
-3	3/8-24	12-13	*106-115
-4	7/16-20	19-21	14-15
-5	1/2-20	21-33	15-24
-6	9/16-18	26-29	19-21
-8	3/4-16	46-50	34-37
-10	7/8-14	75-82	55-60
-12	1 1/16-12	120-132	88-97
-14	1 3/8-12	153-168	113-124
-16	1 5/16-12	176-193	130-142
-20	1 5/8-12	221-243	163-179
-24	1 7/8-12	270-298	199-220
-32	2 1/2-12	332-365	245-269

67. Torque values shown are based on lubricated connections as in reassembly.

REFERENCE

### 8.1.4 O-Ring Boss Hydraulic Fittings – Non-Adjustable

Torque values are shown in following table below.

1. Inspect O-ring (A) and seat (B) for dirt or obvious defects.
2. Check that O-ring (A) is **NOT** on the threads and adjust if necessary.
3. Apply hydraulic system oil to the O-ring.
4. Install fitting (C) into port until the fitting is hand-tight.
5. Torque fitting (C) according to values in Table 8.7, page 666.
6. Check the final condition of the fitting.

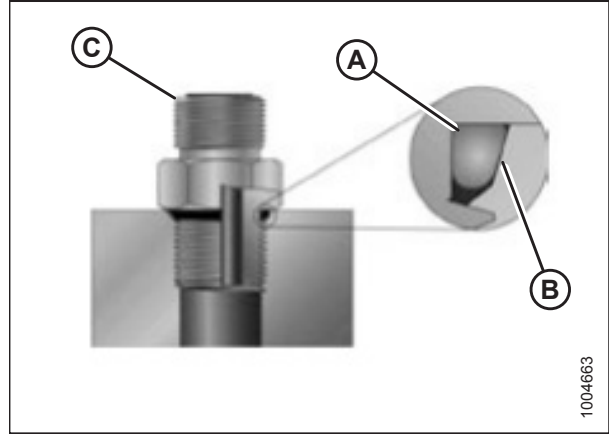


Figure 8.8: Hydraulic Fitting

Table 8.7 O-Ring Boss (ORB) Hydraulic Fittings – Non-Adjustable

SAE Dash Size	Thread Size (in.)	Torque Value <sup>68</sup>	
		Nm	lbf·ft (*lbf·in)
-2	5/16-24	6-7	*53-62
-3	3/8-24	12-13	*106-115
-4	7/16-20	19-21	14-15
-5	1/2-20	21-33	15-24
-6	9/16-18	26-29	19-21
-8	3/4-16	46-50	34-37
-10	7/8-14	75-82	55-60
-12	1 1/16-12	120-132	88-97
-14	1 3/8-12	153-168	113-124
-16	1 5/16-12	176-193	130-142
-20	1 5/8-12	221-243	163-179
-24	1 7/8-12	270-298	199-220
-32	2 1/2-12	332-365	245-269

68. Torque values shown are based on lubricated connections as in reassembly.

### 8.1.5 O-Ring Face Seal Hydraulic Fittings

Torque values are shown in following table below.

1. Check the components to ensure that the sealing surfaces and fitting threads are free of burrs, nicks, scratches, and any foreign material.



Figure 8.9: Hydraulic Fitting

2. Apply hydraulic system oil to O-ring (B).
3. Align the tube or hose assembly so that the flat face of sleeve (A) or (C) comes in full contact with O-ring (B).
4. Thread tube or hose nut (D) until it is hand-tight. The nut should turn freely until it is bottomed out.
5. Torque the fittings according to values in Table 8.8, page 667.

**NOTE:**

If applicable, hold the hex on fitting body (E) to prevent the rotation of fitting body and the hose when tightening fitting nut (D).

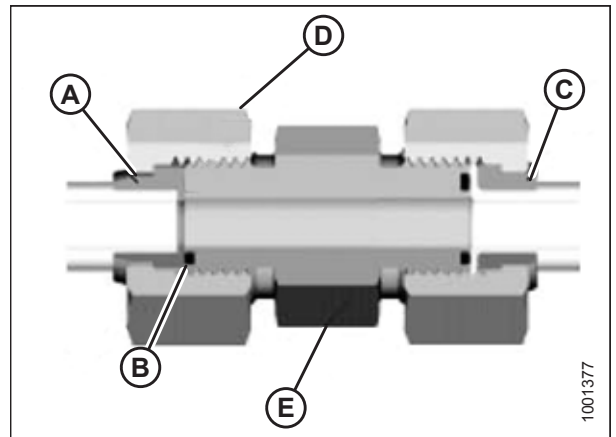


Figure 8.10: Hydraulic Fitting

6. Use three wrenches when assembling unions or joining two hoses together.
7. Check the final condition of the fitting.

**Table 8.8 O-Ring Face Seal (ORFS) Hydraulic Fittings**

SAE Dash Size	Thread Size (in.)	Tube O.D. (in.)	Torque Value <sup>69</sup>	
			Nm	lbf-ft
-3	Note <sup>70</sup>	3/16	–	–
-4	9/16	1/4	25–28	18–21
-5	Note <sup>70</sup>	5/16	–	–
-6	11/16	3/8	40–44	29–32
-8	13/16	1/2	55–61	41–45

69. Torque values and angles shown are based on lubricated connection as in reassembly.

70. O-ring face seal type end not defined for this tube size.

**REFERENCE**

**Table 8.8 O-Ring Face Seal (ORFS) Hydraulic Fittings (continued)**

SAE Dash Size	Thread Size (in.)	Tube O.D. (in.)	Torque Value <sup>71</sup>	
			Nm	lbf-ft
-10	1	5/8	80–88	59–65
-12	1 3/16	3/4	115–127	85–94
-14	Note <sup>70</sup>	7/8	–	–
-16	1 7/16	1	150–165	111–122
-20	1 11/16	1 1/4	205–226	151–167
-24	1–2	1 1/2	315–347	232–256
-32	2 1/2	2	510–561	376–414

### 8.1.6 Tapered Pipe Thread Fittings

Torque values are shown in following table below.

Assemble pipe fittings as follows:

1. Check components to ensure that the fitting and port threads are free of burrs, nicks, scratches, and any form of contamination.
2. Apply pipe thread sealant (paste type) to the external pipe threads.
3. Thread the fitting into the port until it is hand-tight.
4. Torque the connector to the appropriate torque angle. The turns from finger tight (TFFT) and flats from finger tight (FFFT) values are shown in Table 8.9, page 668. Make sure that the tube end of a shaped connector (typically 45° or 90°) is aligned to receive the incoming tube or hose assembly. Always finish alignment of fitting in the direction of tightening. Never back off (loosen) the pipe threaded connectors to achieve alignment.
5. Clean all the residue and any excess thread conditioner with an appropriate cleaner.
6. Assess the final condition of the fitting. Pay special attention to the possibility of cracks to port opening.
7. Mark the final position of the fitting. If a fitting leaks, disassemble the fitting and check it for damage.

**NOTE:**

Overtorque failure of fittings may not be evident until fittings are disassembled.

**Table 8.9 Hydraulic Fitting Pipe Thread**

Tapered Pipe Thread Size	Recommended TFFT	Recommended FFFT
1/8–27	2–3	12–18
1/4–18	2–3	12–18
3/8–18	2–3	12–18
1/2–14	2–3	12–18
3/4–14	1.5–2.5	12–18

71. Torque values and angles shown are based on lubricated connection as in reassembly.

REFERENCE

Table 8.9 Hydraulic Fitting Pipe Thread (continued)

Tapered Pipe Thread Size	Recommended TFFT	Recommended FFFT
1-11 1/2	1.5-2.5	9-15
1 1/4-11 1/2	1.5-2.5	9-15
1 1/2-11 1/2	1.5-2.5	9-15
2-11 1/2	1.5-2.5	9-15

REFERENCE

## 8.2 Conversion Chart

Use the formulas below if a conversion is required.

Table 8.10 Conversion Chart

Quantity	SI Units (Metric)		Factor	US Customary Units (Standard)	
	Unit Name	Abbreviation		Unit Name	Abbreviation
Area	hectare	ha	x 2.4710 =	acre	acres
Flow	liters per minute	L/min	x 0.2642 =	US gallons per minute	gpm
Force	Newton	N	x 0.2248 =	pound force	lbf
Length	millimeter	mm	x 0.0394 =	inch	in.
Length	meter	m	x 3.2808 =	foot	ft.
Power	kilowatt	kW	x 1.341 =	horsepower	hp
Pressure	kilopascal	kPa	x 0.145 =	pounds per square inch	psi
Pressure	megapascal	MPa	x 145.038 =	pounds per square inch	psi
Pressure	bar (Non-SI)	bar	x 14.5038 =	pounds per square inch	psi
Torque	Newton meter	Nm	x 0.7376 =	pound feet or foot pounds	lbf-ft
Torque	Newton meter	Nm	x 8.8507 =	pound inches or inch pounds	lbf-in
Temperature	degrees Celsius	°C	(°C x 1.8) + 32 =	degrees Fahrenheit	°F
Velocity	meters per minute	m/min	x 3.2808 =	feet per minute	ft/min
Velocity	meters per second	m/s	x 3.2808 =	feet per second	ft/s
Velocity	kilometers per hour	km/h	x 0.6214 =	miles per hour	mph
Volume	liter	L	x 0.2642 =	US gallon	US gal
Volume	milliliter	mL	x 0.0338 =	ounce	oz.
Volume	cubic centimeter	cm <sup>3</sup> or cc	x 0.061 =	cubic inch	in. <sup>3</sup>
Weight	kilogram	kg	x 2.2046 =	pound	lb.

# Index

## A

### AGCO combines

#### Challenger

- attaching header to combine ..... 351
- detaching combine from header..... 355

#### Gleaner

- attaching header to combine ..... 351
- detaching combine from header..... 355

#### IDEAL™ Series

- attaching header to combine ..... 359
- detaching combine from header..... 362

#### Massey Ferguson

- attaching header to combine ..... 351
- detaching combine from header..... 355
- replacing reel speed sensors ..... 619

### AGCO Combines

#### auger configurations..... 321

#### Challenger® combines

- auger configurations ..... 321

#### Gleaner® combines

- auger configurations ..... 321

#### Massey Ferguson® combines ..... 321

### AGCO IDEAL™ Series combines

#### feed auger configurations..... 321

#### replacing reel speed sensors ..... 619

### AHHC, *See* auto header height control

### API

- definition..... 19

### ASTM

- definition..... 19

### augers ..... 457

#### auger drive sprockets

- adjusting auger drive chain tension..... 461

#### auger position ..... 133

#### auger to pan clearance..... 457

#### drive chains

- adjusting chain tension ..... 461
- checking chain tension..... 459
- installing ..... 467
- lubricating ..... 436
- removing..... 464

#### feed auger configurations..... 321

#### medium configuration ..... 327

#### narrow configuration..... 324

#### ultra narrow configuration ..... 332

#### ultra wide configuration..... 336

#### wide configuration ..... 330

#### fingers..... 470

- adjusting finger timing ..... 476

- checking finger timing ..... 475

- installing ..... 348, 472

- removing..... 346, 470

- flighting..... 350, 470

- installing ..... 340, 343

- optional feed auger flighting..... 633, 636

- removing..... 337

#### tension springs

- checking and adjusting..... 57

#### tines, *See* fingers

### auto header height control, *See* specific combine section

### AGCO IDEAL™ series combines

- calibrating the header ..... 149

- sensor operation ..... 137

### AGCO IDEAL™ Series combines..... 142

- calibrating reel ..... 146

- operating ..... 152

- reviewing header in-field settings ..... 153

- setting automatic header controls ..... 148

- setting minimum reel speed ..... 146

- setting up the header ..... 142

### Case IH 120 series combines ..... 163

#### adjusting

- preset cutting height..... 174

#### calibrating

- auto header height control..... 165

- sensor operation ..... 137

#### sensor output voltage

- checking voltage range from the cab..... 163

### Case IH 130 series combines ..... 154

- sensor operation ..... 137

### Case IH 140 series combines ..... 154

- sensor operation ..... 137

### Case IH 230 series combines ..... 163

#### adjusting

- preset cutting height..... 174

#### calibrating

- auto header height control..... 165

- sensor operation ..... 137

#### sensor output voltage

- checking voltage range from the cab..... 163

### Case IH 2300 combines

#### calibrating

- maximum stubble height ..... 275

- how auto header height control works ..... 136

- sensor operation ..... 137

#### sensor output voltage

- combine output voltage requirements ..... 137

### Case IH 240 series combines ..... 163

#### adjusting

- preset cutting height..... 174

#### calibrating

- auto header height control..... 165

- sensor operation ..... 137

#### sensor output voltage

## INDEX

checking voltage range from the cab.....	163
Case IH 250 series combines .....	163
adjusting	
preset cutting height.....	174
calibrating	
auto header height control.....	165
sensor operation .....	137
sensor output voltage	
checking voltage range from the cab.....	163
Case IH 2500 combines	
calibrating	
maximum stubble height .....	275
how auto header height control works .....	136
sensor operation .....	137
sensor output voltage	
combine output voltage requirements .....	137
Case IH 5088/6088/7088 combines	
calibrating	
maximum stubble height .....	275
how auto header height control works .....	136
sensor operation .....	137
sensor output voltage	
combine output voltage requirements .....	137
Case IH 5130/6130/7130 combines	
adjusting	
preset cutting height.....	160
calibrating	
auto header height control.....	159
maximum stubble height .....	275
how auto header height control works .....	136
sensor operation .....	137
sensor output voltage	
checking voltage range from the cab.....	156
combine output voltage requirements .....	137
setting up header on combine display .....	154
Case IH 5140/6140/7140 combines	
adjusting	
preset cutting height.....	160
sensor output voltage	
checking voltage range from the cab.....	156
setting up header on combine display .....	154
Case IH 7010 combines	
calibrating	
maximum stubble height .....	275
how auto header height control works .....	136
sensor operation .....	137
sensor output voltage	
checking voltage range from the cab.....	163
Case IH 7120/8120/9120 combines	
calibrating	
maximum stubble height .....	275
how auto header height control works .....	136
sensor operation .....	137
sensor output voltage	
combine output voltage requirements .....	137
Case IH 7230/8230/9230 combines	
calibrating	
maximum stubble height .....	275
how auto header height control works .....	136
sensor operation .....	137
sensor output voltage	
combine output voltage requirements .....	137
Case IH 8010 combines	
calibrating	
maximum stubble height .....	275
how auto header height control works .....	136
sensor operation .....	137
Case IH combines	
checking reel height sensor voltage.....	172
Case IH combines with version 28.00 software	
calibrating auto header height control.....	169
Challenger 6 series combines .....	175
adjusting	
header height .....	180
raise/lower rate .....	180
sensitivity.....	181
calibrating	
auto header height control.....	177
maximum stubble height .....	275
engaging auto header height control.....	177
how auto header height control works .....	136
sensor operation .....	137
sensor output voltage	
checking voltage range from the cab.....	175
Challenger 7 series combines .....	175
calibrating	
maximum stubble height .....	275
how auto header height control works .....	136
sensor operation .....	137
sensor output voltage	
checking voltage range from the cab.....	175
Challenger B series combines	
sensor output voltage	
combine output voltage requirements .....	137
CLAAS 500 series combines.....	182
adjusting	
auto reel speed.....	189
cutting height .....	184
cutting height manually .....	186
preset cutting height.....	184
sensitivity.....	186
calibrating	
auto header height control.....	182
maximum stubble height .....	275
how auto header height control works .....	136
sensor operation .....	137
CLAAS 600 series combines.....	191
adjusting	
auto reel speed.....	195
cutting height .....	194



## INDEX

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>reel height ..... 200</li> <li>sensitivity..... 194</li> <li>calibrating <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>auto header height control..... 191</li> <li>reel height ..... 197</li> </ul> </li> <li>sensor operation ..... 137</li> <li>CLAAS 700 series combines..... 191 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>adjusting <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>auto reel speed..... 195</li> <li>cutting height ..... 194</li> <li>reel height ..... 200</li> <li>sensitivity..... 194</li> </ul> </li> <li>calibrating <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>auto header height control..... 191</li> <li>maximum stubble height ..... 275</li> <li>reel height ..... 197</li> </ul> </li> <li>how auto header height control works ..... 136</li> <li>sensor operation ..... 137</li> </ul> </li> <li>CLAAS 7000/8000 series combines ..... 201 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>adjusting auto reel speed ..... 206</li> <li>calibrating ..... 202</li> <li>setting cut and reel height..... 205</li> <li>setting the sensitivity ..... 205</li> <li>setup ..... 201</li> </ul> </li> <li>CLAAS 8000/7000 series combines <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>sensor operation ..... 137</li> </ul> </li> <li>definition..... 19</li> <li>float height sensor <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>replacing ..... 140</li> </ul> </li> <li>Gleaner A6 series combines <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>sensor output voltage <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>combine output voltage requirements ..... 137</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>Gleaner R62/R72 series combines <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>calibrating <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>maximum stubble height ..... 275</li> <li>combine output voltage requirements..... 137</li> <li>how auto header height control works ..... 136</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>Gleaner R65/R66/R75/R76 series combines <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>sensor operation ..... 137</li> <li>sensor output voltage <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>checking voltage range from the cab..... 210</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>Gleaner R65/R75 series combines ..... 210 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>adjusting ground pressure ..... 215</li> <li>adjusting raise/lower rate ..... 215</li> <li>adjusting sensitivity..... 216</li> <li>calibrating <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>maximum stubble height ..... 275</li> <li>calibrating auto header height control..... 213</li> <li>engaging auto header height control..... 211</li> <li>how auto header height control works ..... 136</li> <li>sensor output voltage <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>combine output voltage requirements ..... 137</li> <li>troubleshooting alarms and faults..... 217</li> <li>turning the accumulator off..... 214</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>Gleaner S series combines ..... 210 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>sensor operation ..... 137</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
--

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Gleaner S series combines (pre-2016) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>adjusting ground pressure ..... 215</li> <li>adjusting raise/lower rate ..... 215</li> <li>adjusting sensitivity..... 216</li> <li>calibrating auto header height control..... 213</li> <li>engaging auto header height control..... 211</li> <li>sensor output voltage <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>checking voltage range from the cab..... 210</li> <li>troubleshooting alarms and faults..... 217</li> <li>turning the accumulator off..... 214</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>Gleaner S9 series combines ..... 218 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>calibrating reel ..... 223</li> <li>calibrating the header ..... 227</li> <li>operating ..... 231</li> <li>reviewing header in-field settings ..... 232</li> <li>sensor operation ..... 137</li> <li>setting automatic header controls ..... 224</li> <li>setting minimum reel speed ..... 223</li> <li>setting up the header ..... 218</li> </ul> </li> <li>John Deere 50 series combines <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>calibrating <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>maximum stubble height ..... 275</li> </ul> </li> <li>sensor output voltage <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>combine output voltage requirements ..... 137</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>John Deere 60 series combines <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>calibrating <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>maximum stubble height ..... 275</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>John Deere 70 series combines..... 233 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>calibrating <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>maximum stubble height ..... 275</li> <li>how auto header height control works ..... 136</li> </ul> </li> <li>sensor operation ..... 137</li> <li>sensor output voltage <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>checking voltage range from the cab..... 233</li> <li>combine output voltage requirements ..... 137</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>John Deere S series combines..... 240 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>adjusting <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>preset cutting height..... 247</li> <li>sensitivity..... 246</li> </ul> </li> <li>adjusting raise/lower rate manually ..... 243</li> <li>calibrating <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>maximum stubble height ..... 275</li> <li>reel height ..... 256</li> <li>calibrating auto header height control..... 244</li> <li>calibrating feeder house fore-aft tilt..... 250</li> <li>checking reel height sensor voltage..... 252</li> <li>how auto header height control works ..... 136</li> <li>sensor operation ..... 137</li> <li>sensor output voltage <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>checking voltage range from the cab..... 240</li> <li>combine output voltage requirements ..... 137</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>John Deere S7 series combines..... 258 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>sensor operation ..... 137</li> <li>sensor output voltage</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li></ul>
--

## INDEX

- checking voltage range from cab ..... 262
  - setting up header ..... 258
  - John Deere T series combines ..... 240
    - adjusting
      - preset cutting height ..... 247
      - sensitivity ..... 246
    - adjusting raise/lower rate manually ..... 243
    - calibrating
      - reel height ..... 256
    - calibrating auto header height control ..... 244
    - calibrating feeder house fore-aft tilt ..... 250
    - checking reel height sensor voltage ..... 252
    - sensor operation ..... 137
    - sensor output voltage
      - checking voltage range from the cab ..... 240
      - combine output voltage requirements ..... 137
  - New Holland 2015 CR series combines ..... 279
    - calibrating auto header height control ..... 285
    - engaging auto header height control ..... 282
    - sensor output voltage
      - checking voltage range from the cab ..... 279
      - setting preset cutting height ..... 289
  - New Holland combines
    - 10 V adapter (MD #B7241) ..... 142
    - checking reel height sensor voltage ..... 288
  - New Holland CR series combines
    - setting maximum work height ..... 290
  - New Holland CR/CX series combines ..... 270
    - adjusting
      - header lower rate ..... 276
      - header raise rate ..... 276
      - preset cutting height ..... 278
      - sensitivity ..... 277
    - calibrating
      - auto header height control ..... 273
      - maximum stubble height ..... 275
    - configuring
      - header tilt ..... 291
      - header type ..... 291
      - reel fore-aft ..... 291
    - engaging auto header height control ..... 272
    - how auto header height control works ..... 136
    - sensor operation ..... 137
    - sensor output voltage
      - checking voltage range from the cab ..... 270
      - combine output voltage requirements ..... 137
  - Rostelmash RSM161 series combines
    - sensor output voltage
      - combine output voltage requirements ..... 137
  - Rostelmash Torum series combines
    - sensor output voltage
      - combine output voltage requirements ..... 137
  - sensor output voltage
    - checking voltage limits ..... 137
  - Versatile RT490 series combines
    - sensor output voltage
      - combine output voltage requirements ..... 137
  - auto header height control (AHHC)
    - John Deere 70 series combines
      - adjusting
        - raise/lower rate manually ..... 236
        - sensitivity ..... 239
      - calibrating
        - AHHC ..... 238
        - feeder house speed ..... 236
    - John Deere S7 series combines
      - calibrating
        - feeder house ..... 264
        - header ..... 267
  - axle bolts ..... 622
- ## B
- bearings
    - feed draper
      - drive roller bearing
        - installing ..... 539
        - removing ..... 537
    - idler roller bearings
      - replacing ..... 563
    - knifehead bearings
      - installing ..... 481
      - removing ..... 480
    - side draper
      - inspecting draper roller bearing ..... 561
      - replacing drive roller bearing ..... 569
  - bolts
    - definition ..... 19
  - break-in inspections ..... 421
  - break-in periods ..... 43
- ## C
- cams
    - adjusting reel cam ..... 123
    - reel cam settings ..... 120
  - Case IH combines
    - attaching combine to header ..... 365
    - auger configurations ..... 321
    - detaching combine from header ..... 370
  - center-links
    - definition ..... 19
  - CGVW
    - definition ..... 19
  - chains
    - auger drive chain
      - adjusting chain tension ..... 461
      - checking auger drive chain tension ..... 459
      - installing ..... 467

## INDEX

lubricating .....	436
removing.....	464
completion gearbox drive chain	
adjusting chain tension .....	455
main gearbox drive chain	
adjusting chain tension .....	453
reel drive chain	
adjusting chain tension .....	606
loosening .....	606
replacing	
double-reel drive.....	617
triple-reel drive.....	617
tightening.....	607
Challenger combines	
replacing reel speed sensors .....	619
CLAAS combines	
7000, 8000	
attaching combine to header .....	380
attaching combine to header .....	373
auger configurations.....	321
detaching combine from header .....	376
reel speed sensors	
replacing .....	621
replacing on CLAAS 400 .....	620
Tucano	
attaching combine to header .....	383
combines	
attaching header to combine	
Case IH .....	365
CLAAS .....	373
CLAAS 7000, 8000.....	380
CLAAS Tucano .....	383
IDEAL™ Series .....	359
John Deere .....	388
New Holland CR/CX.....	395
attaching/detaching header .....	321
detaching combine from header	
Case IH .....	370
CLAAS .....	376
John Deere .....	392
New Holland CR/CX.....	399
detaching header to combine	
IDEAL™ Series .....	362
side-hill driveline	
attaching to combine.....	414
detaching from combine .....	415
transporting header.....	299
on combine .....	299
towing the header .....	300
attaching to towing vehicle .....	300
component identification	
FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header .....	25
float module – FM200.....	26
conversion chart .....	670
CR feeder deflectors .....	402
crop delivery	
options.....	631
crop divider rods .....	130
removing .....	131
crop dividers.....	127
installing on header.....	129
removing from header .....	127
crop lifter rack kit .....	631
cutterbars	
options.....	635
unplugging.....	297
cutting	
off the ground .....	61
adjusting stabilizer wheels.....	62
adjusting stabilizer/EasyMove™ transport	
wheels .....	62
on the ground .....	67
<b>D</b>	
daily start-up checks .....	42
definition of terms.....	19
divider rods .....	130
removing .....	131
divider storage bracket kit.....	632
DK	
definition.....	19
DR	
definition.....	19
draper roller bearings	
inspecting .....	561
drapers	
adjusting side draper speed .....	102
draper rollers	
maintaining .....	561
float module .....	529
adjusting draper tension .....	533
checking draper tension.....	533
replacing feed draper .....	529
side draper decks	
drive rollers	
installing .....	570
removing .....	566
idler rollers	
installing .....	565
removing .....	561
replacing bearing.....	563
side draper speed.....	101
side drapers	
adjusting tracking .....	559
installing .....	557
removing.....	556
drive roller bearings	
feed draper drive roller	
installing .....	539

## INDEX

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>removing..... 537</li> <li>side draper drive roller               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>replacing drive roller bearing ..... 569</li> </ul> </li> <li>drive rollers               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>feed draper ..... 534                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>installing ..... 536</li> <li>removing..... 534</li> </ul> </li> <li>side draper                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>installing ..... 570</li> <li>removing..... 566</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>drivelines               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>adjusting chain tension – completion gearbox..... 455</li> <li>adjusting chain tension – main gearbox..... 453</li> <li>driveline guards                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>installing ..... 451</li> <li>removing..... 449</li> </ul> </li> <li>installing driveline from combine to float module ..... 447</li> <li>removing driveline from combine to float module ..... 446</li> </ul> </li> <li>drives               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>header drive..... 446</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>E</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>electrical system               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>maintaining electrical system ..... 445</li> <li>replacing light bulbs ..... 445</li> </ul> </li> <li>sensors               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>AHHC sensors..... 137</li> <li>reel height sensor                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>replacing..... 108</li> </ul> </li> <li>reel speed sensor                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>replacing on AGCO..... 619</li> <li>replacing on CLAAS ..... 621</li> <li>replacing on CLAAS 400 ..... 620</li> <li>replacing on John Deere ..... 620</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>
--

## F

- FD2 Series
  - definition..... 19
- feed auger configurations ..... 321
  - medium configuration..... 327
  - narrow configuration ..... 324
  - ultra narrow configuration..... 332
  - ultra wide configuration ..... 336
  - wide configuration ..... 330
- feed auger flighting.....633, 636
- feed deck
  - checking link holder hooks..... 551
- feed deck pan
  - lowering feed deck pan ..... 548
  - raising feed deck pan ..... 550

- feed deflectors..... 402
  - float module
    - installing on New Holland CR combines ..... 554
- feed drapers ..... 529
  - adjusting draper tension..... 533
  - adjusting speed ..... 103
  - checking draper tension ..... 533
  - drive roller bearing
    - installing ..... 539
    - removing..... 537
  - drive rollers..... 534
    - installing ..... 536
    - removing..... 534
  - idler roller..... 540
    - installing idler roller..... 542
    - removing idler roller ..... 540
  - replacing feed draper..... 529
  - replacing idler roller bearing ..... 544
- FFFT
  - definition..... 19
- finger tight
  - definition..... 19
- fingers
  - auger fingers ..... 470
    - adjusting finger timing..... 476
    - checking finger timing ..... 475
    - installing ..... 348, 472
    - removing..... 346, 470
  - plastic reel fingers
    - installing ..... 583
    - removing..... 581
  - steel reel fingers
    - installing ..... 580
    - removing..... 580
- flex float system
  - flex frown limiter
    - disable ..... 80
    - enable ..... 81
- flex modes
  - operating in flex mode ..... 78
- flighting ..... 350, 470
  - installing..... 340, 343
  - removing ..... 337
- float ..... 69
  - header float
    - checking and adjusting..... 70
  - header float locks..... 75
  - wing float locks
    - lock/unlock..... 75
    - locked..... 79
    - unlocked ..... 78
- float modules ..... 636
  - attaching float module to header..... 408
  - auger drive
    - adjusting auger drive chain tension..... 461

## INDEX

- augers..... 457
    - auger fingers..... 470
      - checking finger timing ..... 475
      - installing ..... 348, 472
      - removing ..... 346, 470
    - auger to pan clearance ..... 457
    - fingers
      - adjusting finger timing..... 476
      - optional feed auger flighting..... 636
  - detaching from combine and header ..... 404
  - feed auger configurations ..... 321
  - feed deck
    - checking link holder hooks ..... 551
  - feed deck pan
    - lowering..... 548
    - raising..... 550
  - feed deflectors
    - replacing on New Holland CR combines ..... 554
  - feed draper..... 529
    - adjusting draper tension ..... 533
    - checking draper tension ..... 533
  - drive roller..... 534
    - installing ..... 536
    - removing ..... 534
  - drive roller bearing
    - installing ..... 539
    - removing ..... 537
  - idler roller ..... 540
    - installing idler roller ..... 542
    - removing idler roller..... 540
  - replacing feed draper ..... 529
  - replacing idler roller bearing ..... 544
- flighting..... 350, 470
- optional feed auger flighting ..... 633
- setup ..... 350
- stripper bars
  - installing ..... 554
  - kits..... 350
  - removing..... 553
- stripper bars and feed deflectors ..... 553
- unplugging..... 298
- FM200 component identification ..... 26
- FM200 float module
  - definition..... 19
- FSI
  - definition..... 19
- ### G
- gearboxes
  - completion
    - adding oil ..... 440
    - changing oil ..... 441
    - checking oil level ..... 440
    - lubricating ..... 440
  - completion gearbox
    - adjusting chain tension ..... 455
  - main
    - adding oil ..... 439
    - changing oil ..... 439
    - checking oil level ..... 438
    - lubricating ..... 438
  - main gearbox
    - adjusting chain tension ..... 453
- Gleaner combines
  - replacing reel speed sensors ..... 619
- glossary ..... 19
- grain crop lifter kit..... 632
- greasing
  - every 10 hours..... 424
  - every 100 hours..... 430
  - every 25 hours..... 425
  - every 250 hours..... 432
  - every 50 hours..... 426
  - every 500 hours..... 434
  - greasing procedure..... 434
  - maintenance schedule/records..... 418
- ground speeds ..... 100
- guards
  - adjusting knife guards ..... 491, 649
  - replacing center knife guards ..... 508
  - replacing end knife guards ..... 505
  - replacing pointed center knife guards ..... 496
  - replacing pointed knife guards..... 493
  - replacing short knife guards ..... 505
- GVW
  - definition..... 19
- ### H
- header angles
  - adjustment range..... 91
- header drapers, *See* side drapers
- adjusting side draper tension ..... 558
- header drives..... 446
  - completion gearbox drive chain ..... 455
  - driveline guards
    - installing ..... 451
    - removing..... 449
  - main gearbox drive chain ..... 453
- header endshields ..... 33
  - adjusting ..... 35
  - checking ..... 35
  - closing ..... 34
  - installing..... 38
  - opening..... 33
  - removing ..... 37
- header safety props ..... 30
- headers
  - attaching float module ..... 408

## INDEX

attachments.....	46
checking and adjusting.....	70
controls.....	45
detaching from combine and float module.....	404
float.....	69–70
float locks.....	75
header angle	
adjusting from combine.....	93
leveling.....	294
operating variables.....	61
optimizing for straight combining canola.....	57
options.....	638
recommended settings.....	46
setup.....	46
storing header.....	319
towing header.....	300
transporting header	
on combine.....	299
towing the header.....	300
attaching to towing vehicle.....	300
hex keys	
definition.....	19
hold-down	
pointed center hold-down	
adjusting.....	500
checking.....	498
pointed knife guard	
checking.....	494
pointed knife guard hold-downs	
adjusting.....	495
short knife guard	
adjusting.....	507
short knife guard center hold-down	
adjusting.....	512
checking.....	510
short knife guards	
checking.....	506
hoses and lines	
hydraulic.....	423
hydraulics	
changing oil filter.....	444
changing reservoir oil.....	443
fittings	
O-ring boss (ORB) adjustable.....	664
O-ring boss (ORB) non-adjustable.....	666
O-ring face seal (ORFS).....	667
tapered pipe thread fittings.....	668
hoses and lines.....	423
hydraulic safety.....	6
reservoir.....	442
adding oil.....	442
checking oil level in reservoir.....	442

## I

inspections	
break-in inspections.....	421
maintenance schedule/records.....	418

## J

John Deere combines	
attaching combine to header.....	388
auger configurations.....	321
detaching combine from header.....	392
replacing reel speed sensors.....	620

## K

knife drive boxes	
changing oil.....	524
checking box.....	514
checking mounting bolts.....	515
installing box.....	519
installing flywheel.....	518
removing box.....	515
removing flywheel.....	518
knife drive system.....	514
knife drive box.....	514
knife guards	
pointed knife guards and hold-downs.....	484
short knife guards and hold-downs.....	501
knife drives	
knife speed	
checking knife speed.....	104
knife speed values.....	103
knife guards	
adjusting guards.....	491, 649
pointed knife guards	
configurations.....	484
replacing center knife guards.....	508
replacing end knife guards.....	505
replacing pointed center knife guards.....	496
replacing pointed knife guards.....	493
replacing short knife guards.....	505
short knife guards	
configurations.....	501
knife guards and hold-down	
double knife	
FD235 pointed guard configuration.....	486
double-knife	
FD245 pointed guard configuration.....	489
knifehead bearings	
installing.....	481
removing.....	480
knifehead shields.....	512
installing.....	513
knives.....	478

## INDEX

- installing knife ..... 481
  - removing knife ..... 479
  - replacing knife sections ..... 478
  - spare knife location ..... 483
  - troubleshooting ..... 646
- L**
- light bulbs – replacing ..... 445
  - lubrication and servicing ..... 424
    - auger drive chains ..... 436
    - greasing procedure ..... 434
    - header drive completion gearbox
      - changing oil ..... 441
      - checking oil level ..... 440
      - lubricating gearbox ..... 440
    - header drive main gearbox
      - changing oil ..... 439
      - checking oil level ..... 438
      - lubricating gearbox ..... 438
    - reel drive chain ..... 435
- M**
- maintenance and servicing ..... 417
    - electrical system ..... 445
    - lubrication ..... 424
    - preparing for servicing ..... 417
    - preseason servicing ..... 421
    - requirements ..... 418
    - safety ..... 5
    - schedule ..... 418
    - service intervals ..... 424
    - storage ..... 319
  - maintenance requirements
  - servicing
    - break-in inspections ..... 421
    - end of season servicing ..... 422
  - maintenance schedule/records ..... 418
  - Massey Ferguson combines
    - replacing reel speed sensors ..... 619
  - metric bolts
    - torque specifications ..... 661
  - model numbers
    - records ..... x
  - motors
    - knife drive motor ..... 525
      - installing ..... 527
      - removing ..... 525
    - reel drive motor
      - installing ..... 614
      - removing ..... 613
    - reel drive motors ..... 613
- N**
- New Holland combines
    - 10 V adapter (MD #B7241) ..... 142
    - auger configurations ..... 321
  - New Holland CR/CX combines
    - attaching combine to header ..... 395
    - detaching combine from header ..... 399
  - NPT
    - definition ..... 19
- O**
- oils
    - changing knife drive box oil ..... 524
    - header drive completion gearbox
      - adding oil ..... 440
    - header drive main gearbox
      - adding oil ..... 439
  - operating modes
    - flex mode ..... 78
    - rigid mode ..... 79
  - operating variables
    - headers ..... 61
  - operations ..... 29
  - optimizing headers
    - straight combining canola ..... 57
  - options ..... 631
    - crop delivery ..... 631
      - feed auger flighting ..... 633, 636
      - stripper bar kit ..... 637
      - upper cross auger (UCA) ..... 634
    - cutterbars ..... 635
      - rock retarder kit ..... 635
      - vertical knife kit ..... 635
    - float modules ..... 636
      - hydraulic reservoir extension kit ..... 636
    - header ..... 638
      - ContourMax™ foot switch (AGCO and John Deere only) ..... 640
      - crop lifter rack kit ..... 631
      - divider storage bracket kit ..... 632
      - grain crop lifter kit ..... 632
      - rice divider rod kit ..... 633
      - stubble light kit (John Deere only) ..... 642
      - wheels
        - stabilizer wheel kit ..... 641
  - knifehead shields ..... 512
    - installing ..... 513
  - reel drive sprockets ..... 99
  - rice divider rods ..... 132
  - transport systems ..... 622
- ORB**
- definition ..... 19
  - owner/operator responsibilities ..... 29

## INDEX

### P

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>pick-up reels ..... 572               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>adjusting reel frown..... 578</li> <li>centering ..... 579</li> <li>fore-aft position                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>adjusting ..... 111</li> <li>repositioning cylinders                       <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>double reel..... 111</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>frown..... 578</li> <li>recommended setting..... 59</li> </ul> </li> <li>reel cam               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>adjusting reel cam..... 123</li> <li>settings and guidelines ..... 120</li> </ul> </li> <li>reel clearance..... 572               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>adjusting ..... 575</li> <li>measuring ..... 572</li> </ul> </li> <li>reel drive motors ..... 613</li> <li>reel drive system..... 606</li> <li>reel drives               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>adjusting chain tension ..... 606</li> <li>covers..... 38                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>installing ..... 39</li> <li>removing ..... 38</li> </ul> </li> <li>double-reel drive U-joint..... 611                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>installing ..... 612</li> <li>removing ..... 611</li> </ul> </li> <li>drive sprockets..... 608                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>optional for special conditions ..... 99</li> </ul> </li> <li>dual sprocket (optional)                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>installing ..... 610</li> </ul> </li> <li>installing motors..... 614</li> <li>loosening chain ..... 606</li> <li>removing motor ..... 613</li> <li>replacing chain                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>double reel..... 617</li> <li>triple reel..... 617</li> </ul> </li> <li>single sprocket                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>removing ..... 608</li> </ul> </li> <li>single sprockets                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>installing ..... 609</li> </ul> </li> <li>tightening chain..... 607</li> <li>triple-reel drive U-joint                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>removing ..... 611–612</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>reel endshields ..... 596               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>replacing endshield supports ..... 604</li> <li>replacing endshields at inboard cam end ..... 598</li> <li>replacing endshields at outboard cam end ..... 596</li> <li>replacing inboard tail end..... 602</li> <li>replacing outboard tail end..... 600</li> </ul> </li> <li>reel fingers..... 579               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>installing plastic fingers..... 583</li> <li>installing steel fingers ..... 580</li> <li>removing plastic fingers ..... 581</li> <li>removing steel fingers ..... 580</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>reel height ..... 105               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>reel height sensor ..... 105</li> <li>replacing sensor ..... 108</li> </ul> </li> <li>reel safety props ..... 31               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>disengaging ..... 32</li> <li>engaging ..... 31</li> </ul> </li> <li>reel speed..... 99</li> <li>reel tine pitch..... 119</li> <li>replacing reel speed sensors ..... 619               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>AGCO combines..... 619</li> <li>CLAAS ..... 621</li> <li>CLAAS 400 ..... 620</li> <li>John Deere combines ..... 620</li> </ul> </li> <li>tine tube bushings..... 584               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>installing ..... 588</li> <li>removing..... 584</li> </ul> </li> <li>pointed knife guards and hold-down               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>double knife                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FD240 pointed knife guard configuration ..... 487</li> <li>FD241 pointed knife guard configuration ..... 488</li> <li>FD250 pointed knife guard configuration ..... 490</li> </ul> </li> <li>single knife                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>pointed knife guard configuration..... 485</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>PR15 pick-up reels               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>fore-aft position                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>repositioning cylinders                       <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>double reel..... 115</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>preseason servicing ..... 421</li> <li>product overview ..... 19</li> </ul>
<h3 style="text-align: left;">R</h3>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>recommended fluids and lubricants ..... 685</li> <li>recommended settings           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>header ..... 46</li> <li>reel..... 59</li> </ul> </li> <li>reel clearance           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>adjusting ..... 575</li> <li>measuring..... 572</li> </ul> </li> <li>reel drive chains           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>loosening..... 606</li> <li>replacing on double-reel drive ..... 617</li> <li>replacing on triple-reel drive ..... 617</li> <li>tightening ..... 607</li> </ul> </li> <li>reel drive motors..... 613           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>installing..... 614</li> <li>removing ..... 613</li> </ul> </li> <li>reel drive system ..... 606</li> <li>reel drives           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>double-reel drive U-joint ..... 611</li> <li>double-reel U-joint               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>installing ..... 612</li> <li>removing..... 611</li> </ul> </li> <li>triple-reel U-joint               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>removing..... 611–612</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>	



## INDEX

reel endshields.....	596	definition.....	19
replacing endshield supports.....	604	sensors	
replacing endshields at inboard cam end.....	598	AHC sensors.....	137
replacing endshields at outboard cam end.....	596	checking and adjusting reel height sensor.....	105
replacing inboard tail end.....	602	reel height sensor	
replacing outboard tail end.....	600	replacing.....	108
reel fingers.....	579	reel speed sensor	
installing plastic fingers.....	583	replacing on AGCO.....	619
installing steel fingers.....	580	replacing on CLAAS.....	621
removing plastic fingers.....	581	replacing on CLAAS 400 series.....	620
removing steel fingers.....	580	replacing on John Deere.....	620
reel fore-aft positions.....	109	serial numbers	
adjusting.....	111	locations.....	x
reel frown.....	578	records.....	x
adjusting.....	578	service intervals	
reel height sensor		lubrication.....	424
CLAAS 7000/8000 series combines		servicing, <i>See</i> maintenance and servicing	
calibrating.....	208	short knife guards and hold-down	
reel safety props.....	31	double knife	
disengaging.....	32	short knife guard configuration – all except	
engaging.....	31	FD241.....	503
reel speeds.....	99	short knife guard configuration – FD241.....	504
reel system		short knife guards and hold-downs	
recommended reel settings.....	59	single knife	
references		short knife guard configuration.....	502
torque specifications.....	661	shutting down procedures.....	44
rice divider rod kit.....	633	side draper systems	
rice divider rods.....	132	inspecting draper roller bearing.....	561
rigid modes		replacing drive roller bearing.....	569
operating in rigid mode.....	79	skid shoes, <i>See</i> cutting on the ground	
rock retarder kit.....	635	adjusting inner skid shoes.....	68
rpm		adjusting outer skid shoes.....	68
definition.....	19	soft joints	
		definition.....	19
<b>S</b>		spare knives.....	483
SAE		specifications	
definition.....	19	FD2 Series FlexDraper® Header and float module	
safety.....	1	specifications.....	21
daily start-up checks.....	42	FD2 series FlexDraper® header dimensions.....	24
general safety.....	3	torque specifications.....	661
header safety props.....	30	speeds	
hydraulic safety.....	6	adjusting side draper speed.....	102
maintenance safety.....	5	feed draper speed.....	103
operational safety.....	30	ground speed.....	100
reel safety props.....	31	knife speed	
safety alert symbols.....	1	checking knife speed.....	104
safety sign decals.....	7	knife speed data.....	103
installing decals.....	7	reel speed.....	99
interpreting decals.....	12	side draper speed.....	101
locations.....	8	sprockets.....	38–39, 608
signal words.....	2	adjusting reel drive chain tension.....	606
screws		loosening reel drive chain.....	606
definition.....	19	optional reel drive sprocket.....	99
SDD		reel drive	
		installing dual sprocket (optional).....	610

## INDEX

installing single sprocket .....	609
removing single sprocket.....	608
tightening reel drive chain .....	607
stabilizer wheel Kit .....	641
stabilizer wheels	
adjusting .....	62
stabilizer/EasyMove™ transport wheels	
adjusting .....	62
start-up	
daily checks.....	42
storing the header .....	319
straight combining canola	
optimizing headers.....	57
stripper bars .....	350, 637
float module	
installing .....	554
removing.....	553

## T

TFFT	
definition.....	19
tine tube bushings	
installing.....	588
removing.....	584
tire inflation/pressures.....	624
torque	
definition.....	19
torque angles	
definition.....	19
torque specifications.....	661
axle bolts.....	622
metric bolt specifications.....	661
bolting into cast aluminum.....	663
O-ring boss (ORB) hydraulic fittings – adjustable.....	664
O-ring boss (ORB) hydraulic fittings – non-adjustable.....	666
O-ring face seal (ORFS) fittings.....	667
tapered pipe thread fittings.....	668
torque-tension	
definition.....	19
tow-bar	
storing .....	314
tow-bars	
attaching .....	315
removing.....	302
storing .....	305
towing the header .....	300
attaching to towing vehicle.....	300
converting from field to transport.....	310
moving wheels	
front (left) wheels to transport position.....	311
rear (right) wheels to transport position.....	312
converting from transport to field.....	301
moving wheels	

front (left) wheels to field position .....	306
rear (right) wheels to field position.....	308
removing tow-bar .....	302
removing tow-bar from storage.....	314
storing tow-bar.....	305
transport systems.....	622
axle bolt torques.....	622
converting from field to transport.....	310
moving wheels	
front (left) wheels to transport position.....	311
rear (right) wheels to transport position.....	312
converting from transport to field.....	301
moving wheels	
front (left) wheels to field position .....	306
rear (right) wheels to field position.....	308
removing tow-bar .....	302
removing tow-bar from storage.....	314
storing tow-bar.....	305
tire inflation/pressures.....	624
transporting header.....	299
on combine .....	299
towing the header .....	300
attaching to towing vehicle .....	300
wheel bolt torques .....	622
troubleshooting .....	643
crop loss at cutterbar.....	643
cutting action and knife components.....	646
cutting edible beans .....	657
header and drapers .....	655
reel delivery .....	652

## U

U-joints	
double-reel drive U-joint .....	611
double-reel U-joint	
installing .....	612
removing.....	611
triple-reel U-joint	
removing.....	611–612
UCA	
definition.....	19
unplugging	
cutterbar .....	297
float module .....	298
upper cross augers.....	124, 634
adjusting position.....	124

## V

Versatile combines	
auger configurations.....	321
vertical knife kits .....	635

**W**

washers  
    definition ..... 19

wheels and tires  
    stabilizer wheel Kit (option) ..... 641  
    tire inflation/pressures..... 624  
    wheel bolt torques ..... 622

wing balance ..... 82  
    adjusting wing balance ..... 89  
    checking wing balance ..... 82

wobble boxes, *See* knife drive system, knife drive box



# Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Ensure your machine operates at top efficiency by using clean fluids and lubricants only.

- Use clean containers to handle all fluids and lubricants.
- Store fluids and lubricants in an area protected from dust, moisture, and other contaminants.

**Table: Recommended Fluids and Lubricants**

Lubricant	Specification	Description	Use	Capacities
<b>Grease</b>	SAE multi-purpose	High temperature extreme pressure (EP) performance with 1% max. molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base	As required unless otherwise specified	—
		High temperature extreme pressure (EP) performance with 10% max. molybdenum disulphide (NLGI Grade 2) lithium base	Driveline slip-joints	—
<b>Gear Lubricant</b>	SAE 85W-140	API service class GL-5	Knife drive box	1.5 liters (1.3 quarts)
			Main gearbox	1.5 liters (1.3 quarts)
			Completion gearbox	1.5 liters (1.3 quarts)
<b>Hydraulic Oil</b>	Single grade trans-hydraulic oil. Recommend viscosity: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 60.1 cSt @ 40° C (104° F)</li> <li>• 9.5 cSt @ 100° C (212° F)</li> </ul> Recommended brands: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Petro-Canada Duratran</li> <li>• John Deere Hy-Gard J20C</li> <li>• Case Hy-Tran Ultraction</li> <li>• AGCO Power Fluid 821 XL</li> </ul>	Lubricant trans / hydraulic oil	Header drive systems reservoir	95 liters (25.1 US gallons)

**MacDon Industries Ltd.**

680 Moray Street  
Winnipeg, Manitoba  
Canada R3J 3S3  
t. (204) 885 5590 f. (204) 832 7749

**MacDon, Inc.**

10708 N. Pomona Avenue  
Kansas City, Missouri  
United States 64153-1924  
t. (816) 891 7313 f. (816) 891 7323

**MacDon Australia Pty. Ltd.**

A.C.N. 079 393 721  
54 National Boulevard, Campbellfield, Victoria,  
Australia 3061  
t. +61 3 8301 1911 f. +61 3 8301 1912

**MacDon Brasil Agribusiness Ltda.**

Rua Grã Nicco, 113, Sala 404, B. 04  
Mossunguê, Curitiba, Paraná  
CEP 81200-200 Brasil  
t. +55 41 2101 1713 f. +55 41 2101 1699

**LLC MacDon Russia Ltd.**

123317 Moscow, Russia  
10 Presnenskaya nab, Block C  
Floor 5, Office No. 534, Regus Business Centre  
t. +7 495 775 6971 f. +7 495 967 7600

**MacDon Europe GmbH**

Edisonstrasse 63  
Haus A, 12459 Berlin  
Germany  
t. +49 30 408 172 839

CUSTOMERS

**MacDon.com**

DEALERS

**Portal.MacDon.com**

Trademarks of products are the marks of their  
respective manufacturers and/or distributors.

Printed in Canada